National Fuel Gas Code Handbook

National Fuel Gas Code Handbook

NINTH EDITION

Edited by

Denise Beach
Senior Engineer, NFPA

With the complete text of the 2015 edition of NFPA® 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*

National Fire Protection Association®
Quincy, Massachusetts

American Gas Association
Washington, DC

Product Management: Debra Rose
Development and Production: Irene Herlihy
Copyediting: Barbara Ingalls
Permissions: Josiane Domenici
Art Direction: Cheryl Langway
Illustrations: Shepherd, Inc.
Cover Design: Twist Creative Group
Interior Design: Cheryl Langway
Composition: Shepherd, Inc.
Manufacturing: Ellen Glisker
Printing/Binding: R.R. Donnelley/Willard

One Batterymarch Park
Quincy, Massachusetts 02169-7471

American Gas Association
400 N. Capitol St. NW
Suite 450
Washington, DC 20001

Important Notices and Disclaimers: Publication of this handbook is for the purpose of circulating information and opinion among those concerned for fire and electrical safety and related subjects. While every effort has been made to achieve a work of high quality, neither the NFPA®, AGA, nor the contributors to this handbook guarantee or warrantee the accuracy or completeness of or assume any liability in connection with the information and opinions contained in this handbook. The NFPA, AGA, and the contributors shall in no event be liable for any personal injury, property, or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential, or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance upon this handbook.

This handbook is published with the understanding that the NFPA, AGA, and the contributors to this handbook are supplying information and opinion but are not attempting to render engineering or other professional services. If such services are required, the assistance of an appropriate professional should be sought.

NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code* ("NFPA 54"), is, like all NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards"), made available for use subject to Important Notices and Legal Disclaimers, which appear at the end of this handbook and can also be viewed at *www.nfpa.org/disclaimers.*

Notice Concerning Code Interpretations: This ninth edition of the *National Fuel Gas Handbook* is based on the 2015 edition of NFPA 54. All NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards") are developed in accordance with the published procedures of the NFPA by technical committees comprised of volunteers drawn from a broad array of relevant interests. The handbook contains the complete text of *NFPA 70E* and any applicable Formal Interpretations issued by the NFPA at the time of publication. This NFPA Standard is accompanied by explanatory commentary and other supplementary materials.

The commentary and supplementary materials in this handbook are not a part of the NFPA Standard and do not constitute Formal Interpretations of the NFPA (which can be obtained only through requests processed by the responsible technical committees in accordance with the published procedures of the NFPA). The commentary and supplementary materials, therefore, solely reflect the personal opinions of the editor or other contributors and do not necessarily represent the official position of the NFPA or its technical committees.

REMINDER: UPDATING OF NFPA STANDARDS

NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code,* like all NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards"), may be amended from time to time through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments or corrected by Errata. An official NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document together with any Tentative Interim Amendment and any Errata then in effect. In order to determine whether an NFPA Standard has been amended through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments or corrected by Errata, visit the Document Information Pages on NFPA's website. The Document Information Pages provide up-to-date, document specific information including any issued Tentative Interim Amendments and Errata. To access the Document Information Page for a specific NFPA Standard go to *http://www.nfpa.org/document* for a list of NFPA Standards, and click on the appropriate Standard number (e.g., NFPA 54). In addition to posting all existing Tentative Interim Amendments and Errata, the Document Information Page also includes the option to sign-up for an "Alert" feature to receive an email notification when new updates and other information are posted regarding the document.

NFPA No.: 54HB15
ISBN (book): 978-1-455-90869-1
ISBN (PDF): 978-1-455-9870-7
ISBN (e-book): 978-1-455-91001-4

Printed in the United States of America
14 15 16 17 18 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Annexes

PART TWO

Preface

This ninth edition of the *National Fuel Gas Code Handbook* continues the work begun in 1988 to help users of the *National Fuel Gas Code* to understand and use the code more easily. The code must be written using a technically clear, usable, and enforceable style suitable for adoption into law. This handbook provides commentary that brings the legalistic language of the code to life.

This handbook has grown considerably since its first edition, published in 1988. New material in the code accounts for part of this growth, but most of the increase comes from added commentary, revised supplements, and calculation worksheets that are intended to be reproduced and used.

The purpose of this handbook is to assist enforcers and users of the *National Fuel Gas Code* in inspecting and installing gas piping, gas appliances, and venting for gas appliances.

The 2015 edition of the code contains several important changes. The reader is referred to Supplement 8, Technical/Substantive Changes from the 2012 Edition to the 2015 Edition of NFPA 54, where the significant changes and the reasons thereof are explained.

Acknowledgments

The contributions of all those who participated in the development of this ninth edition of the handbook are very much appreciated. First and foremost, I express gratitude to the National Fuel Gas Code Committee, the authors of the code. The committee's attention to technical detail and hard work within the consensus code-making process make NFPA 54 a document that commands respect.

For each edition, the assistance of experts in a field covered by the code is obtained to assist in keeping the commentary up to date, to the degree possible. The development of this ninth edition of the *National Fuel Gas Code Handbook* was assisted by two contributors, Pennie Feehan and Jason Woodruff.

In addition, I thank Paul Cabot, committee secretary and staff liaison to the ANSI Z223 committee, for his review of the commentary and recommendations to improve the book.

Of course, any edition of a book builds on the editions that have preceded it, and the following people are acknowledged for their work on previous editions of this handbook:

- Richard White, Orrin Burwell, J. Herbert Witte, and Forrest G. Hammaker, Jr., assisted with the editing of the inaugural edition of the *National Fuel Gas Code Handbook* in 1988.
- Joseph Drechsler contributed significantly to the second edition, published in 1992.
- Alan Callahan assisted with the editing of the second edition. Committee members Ross Burnside and Mike Gorham were contributing authors to the third edition.
- Robert Borgeson and Bradford Wong were contributing authors to the fourth edition.
- Bradley Wong and Jay Mullowney were contributing authors to the fifth edition.
- Jim Brewer and Roger Rotundo were contributing authors to the sixth edition.

- Thomas Crane, Scott Sollars, and Matt Wilbur were contributing authors to the seventh edition. Hall Virgil made additional contributions to the venting chapters in the seventh edition.
- William Raleigh and Franklin Switzer were contributing authors to the eighth edition.

I also appreciate the efforts of the NFPA staff who made this book possible. My sincere thanks go to Product Manager Debra Rose for her assistance and gentle reminders of the practical side of producing a handbook. Thanks also go to Irene Herlihy, Developmental and Production Editor; Josiane Domenici, Permissions Editor; and Barbara Ingalls, Copy Editor.

Finally, I would like to thank Theodore (Ted) Lemoff, the originator of the NFPA 54 handbook effort and editor of all previous editions. Ted is the reason I joined the NFPA staff, and it is with his "seal of approval" that I endeavor to fill his shoes as Bearer of the Flame.

Denise Beach
Editor

History of the *National Fuel Gas Code*

The *National Fuel Gas Code* covers the installation of gas piping and gas appliances in buildings. The history of the code dates back approximately 90 years and involves a number of organizations, all with the common goal of providing for the safe use of gas-burning equipment.

The following highlights significant steps in the development of the *National Fuel Gas Code*:

1913 The National Fire Protection Association's Committee on Explosives and Combustibles, whose scope covered flammable gases, appointed a subcommittee to prepare a fire protection code for city gas installation.

1920 After several years of cooperative work with the U.S. Bureau of Standards and other interested agencies, the NFPA Committee on Explosives and Combustibles presented the NFPA with a preliminary code, which was adopted in 1920.

The American Gas Association (AGA) asked the American Engineering Standards Committee to draft a *Gas Safety Code* on installation practices under its customary procedure for standards development.

1927–1928 On March 10, 1927, the American Standards Association approved the *American Standard Gas Safety Code for Installation and Work in Buildings,* K2-1927. The first edition of AGA's *Requirements for House Piping and Appliance Installation* was published in June 1928.

1933 The NFPA's code for city gas installation, revised in 1932 with the active cooperation of the AGA and the U.S. Bureau of Standards, was approved by the American Standards Association as the *American Recommended Practice for the Installation, Maintenance and Use of Piping and Fittings for City Gas*, Z27-1933. It was printed by NFPA in 1938 in the *National Fire Codes*, Vol. I, "Flammable Liquids, Gases, Chemicals and Explosives." (It was not until 1950 that the NFPA established a general policy of identifying its standards by a number, as well as a title.)

1940 AGA published the second edition of the *Requirements and Recommended Practice for House Piping and Appliance Installation.*

1950 *Installation of Gas Appliances and Gas Piping* was published under two separate covers, as ASA Z21.30-1950 and NFPA 54-1950.

1959 The 1959 edition of the standard incorporated the essential features of NFPA 52, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Piping and Appliance Installation in Buildings*.

1971 A Conference Group on Piping and Installation Standards, comprised of representatives of AGA, ASME, and NFPA, was held to consider the development of a national fuel gas code. The work of this group led to the combination of American National Standards Z21.30 and NFPA 54, Z83.1 and NFPA 54A, and ASME B31.2, *Fuel Gas Piping,* into a national fuel gas code. ANSI approved the formation and the scope of activities of an American National Standards Committee on National Fuel Gas Code, Z223, cosponsored by AGA, ASME, and NFPA. ASME left the project after withdrawing ASME B31.4, *Building Services Piping.*

1974 ANSI and NFPA approved the first edition of the *National Fuel Gas Code* in 1974. Subsequent editions of the *National Fuel Gas Code* were issued in 1980, 1984, 1988, 1992, 1996, 1999, 2002, 2006, 2009, 2012, and 2015.

About the Contributors

Paul Cabot

Paul Cabot started his career in the gas utility industry after college by joining the Brooklyn Union Gas Company in 1981. He held a number of engineering positions while at BUG before joining AGA in 1991. He assists the association's efforts to help ensure that uniform and safe installation practices for natural gas are adopted into the nation's building codes. He currently serves as the Secretary to the National Fuel Gas Code Committees, ANSI Z223 and NFPA 54, and is responsible for coordinating efforts between the International Code Council and AGA on the International Fuel Gas Code.

Paul is also the Secretary to ANSI Accredited Standards Committee Z380, Gas Piping Technology Committee, which writes guidance material on the federal safety regulations that govern the operation of natural gas pipeline and distribution systems. He also serves on various code committees, such as the ICC International Fuel Gas Code, the IAPMO Uniform Plumbing and Mechanical Code Committees, and ASHRAE SSPC 90.2 on Residential Energy. ASHRAE awarded him the Distinguished Service award in 2013.

Pennie Feehan

Pennie Feehan is a former Chief Plumbing and Mechanical Inspector for the City of Oakland, California, and Instructor for IAPMO. Currently, she is the owner of Pennie L. Feehan Consulting, providing technical and expert services for engineers, manufacturers, contractors, code officials, and consumers for plumbing and mechanical systems associated with developing and adaptations of new and existing codes, standards, design, installation, and product use. She is a member of IAPMO's UPC and UMC Technical committees, NFPA 54/Z223 National Fuel Gas Code Technical Committee, and ICC's Plumbing, Mechanical, Fuel Gas, Pool, and Spa Interpretations Committee.

Theodore C. Lemoff, P.E.

After graduating from the City College of New York with a Bachelor of Engineering (Chemical) degree, Theodore C. Lemoff was employed in the chemical and petrochemical industry by Procter and Gamble Company, Sun Chemical Corporation, and Badger Engineers, Inc., in various engineering positions. He joined NFPA in 1985 and served as NFPA's principal gases engineer until his retirement from NFPA in November 2010. He also served as the NFPA staff liaison to the National Fuel Gas Code Committee, and he was also responsible for other NFPA standards on flammable gases.

Mr. Lemoff represented NFPA on the ASME Code for Pressure Piping Committee (National Interest Review Group) (B31), the pipeline safety advisory committee of the U.S. Department of Transportation, and the IAPMO Mechanical and Plumbing Code committees.

Mr. Lemoff is a registered professional engineer in the Commonwealth of Massachusetts and is a member of the American Institute of Chemical Engineers, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, American Society of Plumbing Engineers, and the International Association of Plumbing and Mechanical Officials (IAPMO). In 2010, Mr. Lemoff received the Howard Card Safety Award from the New Jersey Propane Gas Association.

John S. Roberts, Ph.D.

John S. Roberts, a division manager at Rimkus Consulting Group, has more than 40 years of experience as a chemist. He has worked for Phillips Petroleum Company as a sulfur chemist and new products development specialist. During this time, he began working in the area of gas odorization for propane, LPG, and natural gas. Since leaving Phillips, he has worked for a variety of consulting companies in the areas of gas odorization and fuel quality. He is a member of the National Propane Gas Association and of its Technical Standards and Safety (TS&S) Committee.

Jason Woodruff

Jason Woodruff has 15 years of experience in the construction industry. He has specialized in natural drafting appliances for the past 10 years. He has worked in both residential and commercial projects. He is a certified Fireplace and Chimney Inspector from the Fireplace, Investigation, Research, and Education Service, and has the designation Master Hearth Professional from the National Fireplace Institute. He has served as a subject matter expert for the California Contractors State License Board on the Masonry (c-43) and Sheet Metal (c-29) examination workshops. He has either authored or co-authored several educational programs and has worked as a consultant on construction defect cases. He has served as a board member on the Hearth, Patio, Barbeque Association (HPBA) Pacific Affiliate. He is currently an alternate on the NFPA 211 Technical Committee on Chimney, Fireplace, and Venting Systems for Heat-Producing Appliances.

About the Editor

Denise Beach

After graduating from the Georgia Institute of Technology with a Bachelor of Mechanical Engineering degree, Denise Beach was employed in the air-conditioning industry by York International Corporation and Baltimore Aircoil Company. She then worked as a standards and certification engineer with the trade association for the HVAC industry, now known as the Air-Conditioning, Heating, and Refrigeration Institute. Denise continued in trade association work as the director of certification and technical services for the National Propane Gas Association. She joined NFPA in 2009 as Senior Engineer and currently serves as the staff liaison to the National Fuel Gas Code Committee and other NFPA standards on flammable gases.

In addition to being the editor of the *National Fuel Gas Code Handbook*, Denise is the editor of the *LP-Gas Code Handbook*.

PART 1

NFPA® 54, *National Fuel Gas Code,* with Commentary

Part One of this *National Fuel Gas Code Handbook* includes the complete text and figures of the 2015 edition of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*. The text, tables, and figures from the code are printed in black and are the official requirements of NFPA 54. Line drawings and photographs from the code are labeled as "Figures."

An asterisk (*) following a code paragraph number indicates that advisory annex material pertaining to that paragraph appears in Annex A. Paragraphs that begin with the letter A are extracted from Annex A of the code. Although printed in black ink, this nonmandatory material is purely explanatory in nature. For ease of use, this handbook places Annex A material immediately after the code paragraph to which it refers.

In addition to code text and annexes, Part One includes explanatory commentary that provides the history and other background information for specific paragraphs in the code. This insightful commentary takes the reader behind the scenes, into the reasons underlying the requirements.

Commentary text, captions, and tables are overprinted with a color tint panel to clarify identification of commentary material. So that the reader can easily distinguish between line drawings and photographs of the code and those of the commentary, line drawings, graphs, and photographs in the commentary are labeled as "Exhibits."

The 2015 edition of the handbook includes a frequently asked questions feature. The FAQs are based on the questions most commonly asked of the NFPA 54 staff. This edition also features new tools — an icon in the margin to help users easily identify important new or revised elements in the code and another marginal icon that cross-references sections of the handbook that are relevant to the topic under discussion.

Administration

1

Chapter 1 provides the administrative requirements in the areas of the scope, purpose, retroactivity, equivalency, and enforcement for NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1, *National Fuel Gas Code*. These areas are required by the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents*. Chapter 1 covers the following:

- *Scope and application of the code*: This section includes both installations that are covered by the code and those that are not.
- *Purpose*: Although NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1 does not have an official purpose statement, the commentary accompanying Section 1.2 explains why this section is reserved for future use.
- *Retroactivity*: NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1 is retroactive only when this is specifically stated in the code. There are no retroactive requirements in the 2015 edition.
- *Equivalent materials, methods of construction, or installation procedures not specifically addressed in the code*: This section of Chapter 1 explains the basis for the authority having jurisdiction to permit alternatives.
- *Enforcement of the code*: This section of Chapter 1 reminds users that only the authority having jurisdiction can enforce the code. The definition and explanatory material for authority having jurisdiction is located in 3.2.2.

1.1 Scope

The scope defines the application (and nonapplication) of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1. The scope is important because users of this or any code must know whether or not the right document is being used.

1.1.1 Applicability.

FAQ What does NFPA 54 cover?

The *National Fuel Gas Code* is the American National Standard that applies to the installation of fuel gas piping systems and equipment and appliances that are supplied with natural gas; manufactured gas; liquefied petroleum gas (LP-Gas) in the vapor phase only; LP-Gas–air mixtures; mixtures of these gases; and gas–air mixtures in the flammable range.

Natural gas, as its name implies, is a naturally occurring product found in many parts of the world. It is recovered by drilling wells into underground pockets of natural gas. The recovered gas is piped to homes and businesses via collection, cleanup, transmission, and utility distribution piping. Another source of natural gas is synthetic natural gas, which is produced by cracking naphtha or other chemical feedstocks to supplement natural gas supplies. Under suitable conditions of elevated pressure and low temperature, natural gas can be liquefied to reduce its volume for purposes of storage or transportation. Liquefied natural gas (LNG) is the source of a larger amount of the natural gas used in North America over the last 5 years, and it appears it will have a larger share in the foreseeable future. The increased use of LNG will have minimal impact on this code, as the gas being delivered to homes and businesses remains the same.

There are no standards or conventions that specify a composition of natural gas. Natural gas consists principally of methane, but it also contains ethane and small amounts of propane, butane, and higher hydrocarbons. Also, natural gas can contain small amounts of nitrogen, carbon dioxide, hydrogen sulfide, and helium. Normally, natural gas contracts specify a heating value [usually 940 Btu/ft^3 to 1080 Btu/ft^3 (35.0 kJ/m^3 to 40.2 kJ/m^3)] and a maximum amount of hydrogen sulfide [typically 0.3 gr/100 ft^3 (6.8 mg/m^3)]. Hydrogen sulfide is a natural gas contaminant that is corrosive to copper and brass. Some contractual arrangements also limit the carbon dioxide content and water content of natural gas.

Manufactured gas was the first fuel gas distributed in piping systems in cities. It was used in most communities in North America until the early 1950s, when the natural gas transmission system was significantly expanded in the United States. Manufactured gas, a low Btu fuel gas produced by one of several processes, was used primarily for lighting and cooking. Although no longer used in North America (except where produced as a byproduct of the manufacture of metallurgical coke), manufactured gas is still used in some other parts of the world.

LP-Gases include propane and butane, which are used as fuel gases. Pure propane, due to its low boiling point of approximately −44°F (−42°C), vaporizes rapidly and is used extensively as a fuel gas in colder climates. Pure normal butane, due to its higher boiling point of approximately 31°F (−0.6°C), requires a vaporizer for most applications. It is not widely used in the United States as a fuel gas. It is used in warmer countries as a fuel gas and for other applications not covered by this code.

Propane–air mixtures are used by some gas utility companies to supplement natural gas supplies during peak demand periods, such as in extremely cold weather, and by some large users of natural gas as a standby fuel during periods when natural gas supplies are curtailed or are economically unattractive.

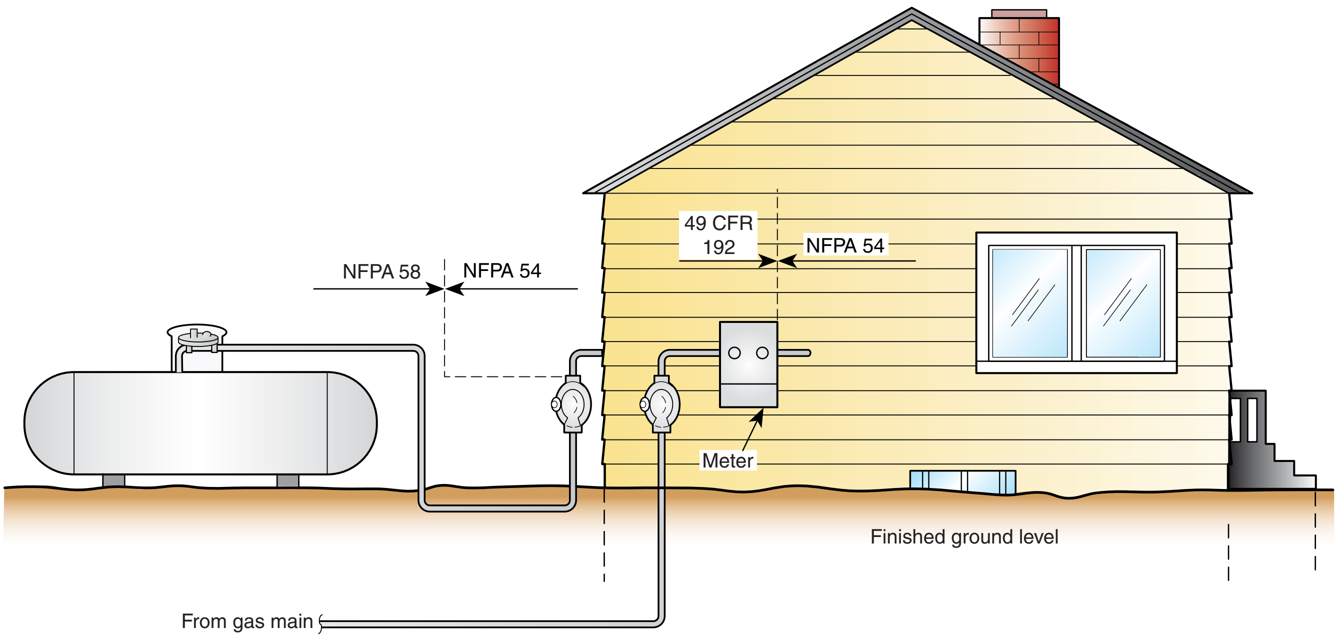
Propane has a significantly higher heating value per unit of vapor volume than natural gas [approximately 2500 Btu/ft^3 (93 kJ/m^3) versus approximately 1000 Btu/ft^3 (37 kJ/m^3) for natural gas], and mixing propane with air provides a fuel with burning characteristics similar to those of natural gas. Propane–air mixtures are always well above the upper flammable limit of approximately 10 percent for propane in air.

The storage, handling, and use of liquid LP-Gas are not included under the scope of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1. NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, covers liquid LP-Gas. LP-Gas has two sources: it is a by-product of natural gas production that is removed during the cleanup of natural gas prior to its entering the gas transmission system, and it is a product of petroleum refineries.

1.1.1.1 This code is a safety code that shall apply to the installation of fuel gas piping systems, appliances, equipment, and related accessories as shown in 1.1.1.1(A) through 1.1.1.1(D).

(A)* Coverage of piping systems shall extend from the point of delivery to the appliance connections. For other than undiluted liquefied petroleum gas (LP-Gas) systems, the point of delivery shall be the outlet of the service meter assembly or the outlet of the service regulator or service shutoff valve where no meter is provided. For undiluted LP-Gas systems, the point of delivery shall be considered to be the outlet of the final pressure regulator, exclusive of line gas regulators where no meter is installed. Where a meter is installed, the point of delivery shall be the outlet of the meter.

EXHIBIT 1.1



Code Jurisdictions for Typical Propane Supply and Typical Natural Gas Supply.

A.1.1.1.1(A) The final pressure regulator in an undiluted liquefied petroleum gas (LP-Gas) system can include any one of the following:

(1) The second stage regulator or integral two-stage regulator
(2) A 2 psi (14 kPa) service regulator or integral 2 psi (14 kPa) service regulator
(3) A single-stage regulator, where single-stage systems are permitted by NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*.

As addressed in 1.1.1.1(A), the point of delivery is the outlet of the gas meter where a meter is used, or it is the outlet of the service regulator or service shutoff valve when no meter is installed. The installation of transmission and distribution piping and the gas meter in the United States is covered by the U.S. Department of Transportation (49 CFR 192). These regulations can be found in ANSI Z380, *Guide for Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems*.

The point of delivery where LP-Gas is used is the outlet of the final pressure regulator. Prior to the 1996 edition of this code, the point of delivery was the outlet of the first-stage pressure regulator. This modification recognized a change in NFPA 58 that mandated two-stage pressure regulation for most LP-Gas systems covered by the *National Fuel Gas Code*. Prior to this change in NFPA 58, buildings could be supplied using a single-stage regulator or a two-stage regulator system. Therefore, to prevent confusion on the part of code users, the split was at the discharge of the first-stage pressure regulator, which could be the only propane pressure regulator in the system.

Exhibit 1.1 shows a typical propane supply (illustrating the split between the *National Fuel Gas Code* and NFPA 58) and a typical natural gas supply (illustrating the split between the *National Fuel Gas Code* and Federal Pipeline Regulations [49 CFR 192]). Normally, only one gas supply will serve a building; however, this code does not prohibit more than one fuel gas being used in a building. In many industrial buildings, it is normal to have a fuel and a standby fuel (typically natural gas and propane, respectively) for economic reasons.

(B) The maximum operating pressure shall be 125 psi (862 kPa).

Since the 1988 edition, the maximum operating gas pressure covered by the *National Fuel Gas Code* has been 125 psi (862 kPa). Prior to the 1988 edition, the limit was 60 psi (410 kPa), and ASME B31.2, *Fuel Gas Piping*, published by the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, covered gas piping for pressures of 60 psi to 125 psi (410 kPa to 862 kPa). Originally, ASME had planned to incorporate the ASME B31.2 standard into a new standard to cover all building service piping systems, including gas piping above 60 psi (410 kPa). Instead, the ASME committee chose to delete all coverage for fuel gas piping systems and to withdraw ASME B31.2. Because there was no longer any standard covering fuel gas piping systems operating at pressures in excess of 60 psi (410 kPa) downstream of the point of delivery, the *National Fuel Gas Code* was revised to address this area.

The *National Fuel Gas Code* does not prohibit the use of gas at pressures over 125 psi (862 kPa), but users of fuel gases at pressures higher than 125 psi (862 kPa) must find other codes for piping requirements.

Additional information regarding the design of gas piping systems above 125 psi (862 kPa) can be found in ASME B31.1, *Power Piping*, or in ASME B31.3, *Process Piping*.

Exception No. 1: Piping systems for gas–air mixtures within the flammable range are limited to a maximum pressure of 10 psi (69 kPa).

The pressure of flammable gas–air mixtures (5 percent to 15 percent natural gas in air and 2.15 percent to 9.6 percent propane in air) is limited to 10 psi (69 kPa) to minimize any hazard. If ignited, flammable gas–air mixtures can propagate flame back through a piping system. Flame propagation can cause the pipe to explode. The hazard is increased with increased gas pressure.

Exception No. 2: LP-Gas piping systems are limited to 20 psi (140 kPa), except as provided in 5.5.1(6).

The pressure of LP-Gas piping systems is limited to 20 psi (140 kPa) to ensure that propane remains in the vapor phase. Below this pressure, propane will liquefy at temperatures below approximately −5°F (−21°C). Systems designed to operate below −5°F (−21°C) and butane systems are permitted by 5.5.2, but they must be designed either to accommodate liquid LP-Gas or to prevent LP-Gas vapor from condensing. LP-Gas systems operating above 20 psi (140 kPa) are not likely to be found in residential or commercial installations, but they are occasionally used in industrial processes requiring high gas flows. Such systems must be designed to prevent condensation of liquid.

NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, contains coverage for LP-Gas vapor systems with pressures of 20 psi through 50 psi (140 kPa through 345 kPa) for appliances in industrial occupancies. Paragraph 5.5.1(6) permits such systems designed in accordance with NFPA 58 to be installed inside buildings.

(C) Requirements for piping systems shall include design, materials, components, fabrication, assembly, installation, testing, inspection, operation, and maintenance.

(D) Requirements for appliances, equipment, and related accessories shall include installation, combustion, and ventilation air and venting.

The safe operation of gas appliances occurs when the following conditions are met:

- The necessary amount of gas is provided at the intended pressure.
- Sufficient air is provided to completely burn the gas.

- The installation is such that heat produced by the appliance does not cause a building fire.
- The products of combustion are removed from the building, either by a flue or vent, or, for smaller appliances, by the normal air exchange in a building.

1.1.1.2 This code shall not apply to the following items (reference standards for some of which appear in Annex K):

(1) Portable LP-Gas appliances and equipment of all types that are not connected to a fixed fuel piping system

FAQ What does NFPA 54 *not* cover?

This code does not cover or address the use of any type of portable LP-Gas equipment, such as outdoor gas grills, handheld soldering torches, and butane lighters, that is not connected to fixed fuel piping systems. Some of these appliances are covered by other codes and standards. For example, NFPA 58 covers portable outdoor gas grill cylinders connected to self-contained LP-Gas supply systems, and ANSI Z21.58/CSA 1.6, *Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliances*, covers gas grill construction and testing. NFPA 58 also covers handheld soldering torches. The use of butane lighters is not covered by any national standard.

(2) Installation of appliances such as brooders, dehydrators, dryers, and irrigation equipment used for agricultural purposes

Natural gas distribution mains do not serve the vast majority of farms. Most gas-fired farm equipment operates on LP-Gas directly from a container. Examples of such appliances include LP-Gas engine–driven pumps, crop dryers, and poultry building heaters. NFPA 58 covers these and similar appliances.

(3) Raw material (feedstock) applications except for piping to special atmosphere generators

Because this code limits its scope to fuel gases, excluding other applications is appropriate. Natural gas or LP-Gas, when used as a raw material or feedstock for a chemical, petrochemical, or other application, is outside the scope of this code and, therefore, is not covered. Such uses may fall under the scope of ASME B31.3.

The code, however, does cover piping to special atmosphere generators and special-use ovens that employ a reducing atmosphere. Special atmosphere generators include gas-burning devices in greenhouses. They are usually small units, and the gas supply is similar to piping serving other appliances covered under this code.

(4) Oxygen–fuel gas cutting and welding systems

NFPA 51, *Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen–Fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes*, covers fuel gas cutting and welding systems. As both natural gas and propane are used with oxygen in buildings, the use of NFPA 51 is important to prevent fires and explosions. Fires and explosions can occur if fuel gas and oxygen mix in piping systems that are not designed for such components. Examples of the use of oxygen and fuel gas are found in jewelry manufacturing and repair shops and automobile muffler repair shops, where natural gas or LP-Gas is used with oxygen to cut off mufflers.

(5) Industrial gas applications using such gases as acetylene and acetylenic compounds, hydrogen, ammonia, carbon monoxide, oxygen, and nitrogen

Acetylene and acetylenic compounds, hydrogen, ammonia, carbon monoxide, oxygen, and nitrogen are excluded specifically from coverage in the *National Fuel Gas Code* because their properties are inherently different from methane, propane, and similar hydrocarbons. Many of these compressed gases are covered by NFPA 55, *Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids Code*. This code covers only fuel gases that are distributed commercially. The use of hydrogen as a fuel gas is not covered by the code. Where hydrogen is used as a fuel gas (for example, for a fuel cell), other standards, such as NFPA 2, *Hydrogen Technologies Code*, must be used for the installation of the hydrogen piping, installation of the appliance, and venting.

(6) Petroleum refineries, pipeline compressor or pumping stations, loading terminals, compounding plants, refinery tank farms, and natural gas processing plants

Petroleum refineries and natural gas processing plants have tanks and vessels that hold flammable liquids and gases (including butane and propane) with differing compositions, as well as some toxic compounds. The piping requirements for these materials are beyond the scope of this code.

(7) Large integrated chemical plants or portions of such plants where flammable or combustible liquids or gases are produced by chemical reactions or used in chemical reactions
(8) LP-Gas installations at utility gas plants

NFPA 59, *Utility LP-Gas Plant Code*, covers LP-Gas installations at utility gas plants. A utility gas plant can refer to a plant that mixes propane and air to make a heating fuel used by gas utility companies to supplement natural gas supplies during periods of peak demand, such as during extremely cold weather. A utility gas plant can also refer to any undiluted LP-Gas plant that serves 10 or more customers on a single distribution system.

(9) Liquefied natural gas (LNG) installations

NFPA 59A, *Standard for the Production, Storage, and Handling of Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG)*, covers liquefied natural gas installations. NFPA 52, *Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code*, covers the use of compressed natural gas (CNG) and liquefied natural gas (LNG) as a vehicle fuel.

(10) Fuel gas piping in electric utility power plants

ASME B31.1, *Power Piping*, addresses fuel gas piping in power plants.

(11) Proprietary items of equipment, apparatus, or instruments such as gas generating sets, compressors, and calorimeters

Proprietary items of equipment, such as gas-fueled generator sets, compressors, and calorimeters, represent specialized equipment that is therefore excluded from the code. However, NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*, covers gas-fueled generator sets, and NFPA 853, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems*, covers the installation of fuel cells.

(12) LP-Gas equipment for vaporization, gas mixing, and gas manufacturing

NFPA 58 covers LP-Gas vaporization and mixing.

(13) LP-Gas piping for buildings under construction or renovations that is not to become part of the permanent building piping system — that is, temporary fixed piping for building heat

NFPA 58 covers temporary LP-Gas piping.

(14) Installation of LP-Gas systems for railroad switch heating

NFPA 58 covers railroad switch heating.

(15) Installation of LP-Gas and compressed natural gas (CNG) systems on vehicles

The *National Fuel Gas Code* does not cover vehicular gaseous fuel systems. The following standards should be referenced for these installation requirements:

- NFPA 58 covers LP-Gas vehicle fuel systems.
- NFPA 52 covers compressed natural gas (CNG) and liquefied natural gas (LNG) fuel systems for vehicles.

(16) Gas piping, meters, gas pressure regulators, and other appurtenances used by the serving gas supplier in distribution of gas, other than undiluted LP-Gas

The gas piping, meters, gas pressure regulators, and other appurtenances in the utility distribution system may be installed by the gas supplier, the mechanical contractor, or a plumber. U.S. Department of Transportation regulations cover these items. Where LP-Gas is supplied, NFPA 58 covers first-stage and second-stage regulators, as well as any meters located upstream of the second-stage pressure regulator.

(17) Building design and construction, except as specified herein

The *National Fuel Gas Code* is not intended to cover building design and construction, including means for limiting the spread of heat and smoke, which are the responsibility of NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®; *NFPA 5000*®, *Building Construction and Safety Code*®; or the locally adopted building code. Installers of fuel gas system components should be aware of the possible impact of the gas system on the spread of heat and smoke, especially in multistory buildings, and coordinate their activities with building safety authorities.

(18) Fuel gas systems on recreational vehicles manufactured in accordance with NFPA 1192, *Standard on Recreational Vehicles*

(19) Fuel gas systems using hydrogen as a fuel

Hydrogen is specifically excluded from the code because there is the possibility that hydrogen may be used as a fuel for fuel cells, and the piping requirements do not address the unique properties of hydrogen that require special considerations when installing a piping system. Specifically, hydrogen is much lighter than both natural gas and propane, and it has a much higher flame speed and lower minimum ignition energy than other fuel gases. In addition, the flammable range of hydrogen (4 percent to 75 percent) is much broader than that of natural gas (5 percent to 15 percent) and propane (2 percent to 10 percent). Finally, hydrogen is a very small molecule and can diffuse through metal piping and valves. These properties make hydrogen much easier to ignite than other fuel gases, and it has a much higher burning rate, which results in a higher probability of an explosion, as compared to other fuel gases. The significantly lower density allows hydrogen to mix with air much faster than other fuel gases.

NFPA 2, *Hydrogen Technologies Code*, addresses many uses for gaseous and liquefied hydrogen, including as fuel gas for fuel cells and vehicles. NFPA 2 extracts requirements specific to hydrogen from other NFPA documents, including those for storage, handling, and use.

NFPA 54 covers natural gas piping and connection to a fuel cell assembly that uses natural gas either directly or as a feedstock for conversion into hydrogen.

(20) Construction of appliances

The construction of appliances is not covered in the code. There has been some confusion, because many appliances use aluminum piping and regulators, which are covered by the code. Standards exist for the construction of appliances, and these should be used rather than the code. Many appliance construction standards can be found in Annex K.

1.1.2 Other Standards. In applying this code, reference shall also be made to the manufacturers' instructions and the serving gas supplier regulations.

For a list of standards specifically referenced in applying this code and other standards that can be used, see Chapter 2 and Annex K.

This code lists the rules that govern the fuel gas industry. The code recognizes that appliances vary considerably and that it is impractical for the code to include all variations. Therefore, 1.1.2 requires compliance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for appliances, equipment, and some piping and venting materials. Manufacturer's instructions contain the specific instructions and rules for the proper installation of a manufacturer's appliance. The relevant listing laboratories have reviewed the installation instructions for listed products. These instructions include items specific to the product and reflect the testing of that product.

The fuel gas supplier may also add rules for installations, based on conditions in the area. Such issues as climate, geographical conditions, and the composition of the fuel can affect how appliances and piping should be installed in order to ensure a safe installation. When a state, a city, or other political entity adopts the code, it can also amend the code based on local experience. The local rule should specify which part of the code is being altered. A local authority can require that the local municipality license the installer, or the local authority can alter the code if there is a local rule that is different from that specified in the code. For instance, the local authority can adopt a correction to the code that might be stated as follows: "In applying this code, reference shall also be made to the manufacturers' instructions, the serving gas supplier regulations, and state fuel gas code modifications." Such a requirement would indicate that the state has a set of modifications that must be followed in addition to the *National Fuel Gas Code*. In cases where local rules differ from the code, the local rules would be in effect.

1.2 Purpose

(Reserved)

The *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents* reserves Section 1.2 for a purpose statement. NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1 does not have a statement of purpose, but this section has been reserved so that, if a statement is added in the future, Chapter 1 will not need to be renumbered.

1.3 Retroactivity

Unless otherwise stated, the provisions of this code shall not be applied retroactively to existing systems that were in compliance with the provisions of the code in effect at the time of installation.

FAQ Can the requirements of NFPA 54 be applied retroactively?

In a standard that is widely adopted by public safety regulatory agencies and used in litigation, as is the *National Fuel Gas Code*, the subject of retroactivity is important. Although the Technical Committee on National Fuel Gas Code has the authority to make a provision retroactive, it has never done so. If a matter was a hazard to life and property, it could induce the committee to take such an action.

The code, therefore, is not intended to be retroactive. Any equipment or system complying with the code at the time of installation can be maintained in use as long as the equipment is not changed significantly.

A state, a city, or other government body adopting the code could require retroactivity. If a question exists on this subject, the authority having jurisdiction should be consulted or local legislation reviewed.

1.4 Equivalency

The provisions of this code are not intended to prevent the use of any material, method of construction, or installation procedure not specifically prescribed by this code, provided any such alternative is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. The authority having jurisdiction shall require that sufficient evidence be submitted to substantiate any claims made regarding the safety of such alternatives.

It is not the intent of the code to prohibit safe practices in the installation of gas piping and equipment that have not yet been developed, or to prohibit new technology. Section 1.4 allows the authority having jurisdiction to require evidence to substantiate any claims and, with that evidence, to permit an installation using an alternate or new method or procedure. [See the definition of *authority having jurisdiction* (3.2.2 and A.3.2.2) for additional information on who may be an authority having jurisdiction.]

1.5 Enforcement

This code shall be administered and enforced by the authority having jurisdiction designated by the governing authority.

Section 1.5 provides a statement on who enforces the code. Refer to the definition of *authority having jurisdiction* (3.2.2 and A.3.2.2) for more information on who may be an authority having jurisdiction.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publications are available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, (800) 344-3555, www.nfpa.org.

NFPA 2, *Hydrogen Technologies Code*, 2011 edition.
NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 51, *Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen–Fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 52, *Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 55, *Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids Code*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 59, *Utility LP-Gas Plant Code*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 59A, *Standard for the Production, Storage, and Handling of Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG)*, 2013 edition.
NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, 2015 edition.
NFPA 853, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems,* 2010 edition.
NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code*®, 2015 edition.
Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents, 2004 edition.

The following publications are available from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990, (800) 843-2763, www.asme.org.

ANSI/ASME B31.1, *Power Piping*, 2012.
ASME B31.2, *Fuel Gas Piping*, 1968.
ANSI/ASME B31.3, *Process Piping*, 2012.

The following publication is available from CSA America, Inc., 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, (216) 524-4990, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI Z21.58/CSA 1.6, *Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliances*, 2012.

The following publication is available from the American Gas Association, 400 North Capitol Street, NW, Washington, DC 20001, (202) 824-7000, www.aga.org.

ANSI Z380, *Guide for Gas Transmission and Distribution Piping Systems*, 2009.

The following publication is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, www.access.gpo.gov.

Title 49, *Code of Federal Regulations,* Part 192, "Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards."

Referenced Publications

2

Chapter 2, Referenced Publications, is a list of the codes and standards that are referenced in the *National Fuel Gas Code*.

FAQ What is the difference between the documents listed in Chapter 2 and those listed in Annex K?

This chapter lists mandatory referenced publications. Annex K lists nonmandatory referenced publications. By locating the information immediately after Chapter 1, Administration, the user is presented with the complete list of publications needed for effective use of the code before reading the specific requirements. The provisions of the publications that are mandated by NFPA 54 are also requirements. Regardless of whether an actual requirement resides within NFPA 54 or is mandatorily referenced and appears only in the referenced publication, it is a requirement that must be met to achieve compliance with NFPA 54.

The reasons for locating all mandatory references in a single chapter are, first, to simplify use of the code and, second, to make it easier for adopting jurisdictions to update the references in only one location rather than throughout the code. The editions of the referenced publications listed in Chapter 2 are legally referenced editions, unless the jurisdiction, when adopting the code, has updated the list of codes and standards.

NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1 can mandate the use of a referenced document only if that document is a consensus-based code or standard.

2.1 General

The documents or portions thereof listed in this chapter are referenced within this code and shall be considered part of the requirements of this document.

2.2 NFPA Publications

National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471.

NFPA 30A, *Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages,* 2015 edition.

NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines,* 2015 edition.

NFPA 51, *Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen–Fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes,* 2013 edition.

NFPA 52, *Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code,* 2013 edition.

NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code,* 2014 edition.

NFPA 70®, National Electrical Code®, 2014 edition.

NFPA 82, *Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment,* 2014 edition.

NFPA 88A, *Standard for Parking Structures,* 2015 edition.

NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems,* 2015 edition.
NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems,* 2015 edition.
NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations,* 2014 edition.
NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 409, *Standard on Aircraft Hangars,* 2011 edition.
NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems,* 2014 edition.
NFPA 853, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems,* 2015 edition.
NFPA 1192, *Standard on Recreational Vehicles,* 2015 edition.

2.3 Other Publications

2.3.1 ASME Publications.

American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990, (800) 843-2763, www.asme.org.

ANSI/ASME B1.20.1, *Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch,* 1983 (Reaffirmed 2006).
ANSI/ASME B16.1, *Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 25, 125, and 250,* 2010.
ANSI/ASME B16.5, *Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: NPS 1/2 through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard,* 2009.
ANSI/ASME B16.20, *Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges: Ring-Joint, Spiral-Wound and Jacketed,* 2007.
ANSI/ASME B16.21, *Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges,* 2011.
ANSI/ASME B16.24, *Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500,* 2011.
ANSI/ASME B16.42, *Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150 and 300,* 2011.
ANSI/ASME B16.47, *Large Diameter Steel Flanges: NPS 26 through NPS 60 Metric/Inch Standard,* 2011.
ANSI/ASME B36.10M, *Welded and Seamless Wrought Steel Pipe,* 2004 (Reaffirmed 2010).

2.3.2 ASTM Publications.

ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, (610) 832-9585, www.astm.org.

ASTM A 53, *Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless,* 2012.
ASTM A 106, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service,* 2011.
ASTM A 254, *Standard Specification for Copper-Brazed Steel Tubing,* 1997 (Reaffirmed 2007).
ASTM B 88, *Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube,* 2009.
ASTM B 210, *Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes,* 2004.
ASTM B 241, *Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube,* 2010.
ASTM B 280, *Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service,* 2008.

ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings,* 2012a.

ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings,* 2008.

ASTM E 136, *Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C,* 2012.

ASTM F 1973, *Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide 11 (PA11) and Polyamide 12 (PA12) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems,* 2008.

ASTM F 2509, *Standard Specification for Field-Assembled Anodeless Riser Kits for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing,* 2006 (Reaffirmed 2012).

ASTM E 2652, *Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Tube Furnace with a Cone-shaped Airflow Stabilizer, at 750°C,* 2012.

2.3.3 CSA America Publications.

Canadian Standards Association, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, (216) 524-4990, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST),* 2005.

ANSI LC 4/CSA 6.32, *Press-Connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems,* 2012.

ANSI Z21.8, *Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners,* 1994 (Reaffirmed 2000).

ANSI Z21.11.2, *Gas-Fired Room Heaters — Volume II, Unvented Room Heaters,* 2011.

ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10, *Connectors for Gas Appliances,* 2006 (Reaffirmed 2011).

ANSI Z21.41/CSA 6.9, *Quick-Disconnect Devices for Use with Gas Fuel Appliances,* 2003.

ANSI Z21.54/CSA 8.4, *Gas Hose Connectors for Portable Outdoor Gas-Fired Appliances,* 2002 (Reaffirmed 2007).

ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16, *Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances,* 2009.

ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27, *Connectors for Outdoor Gas Appliances and Manufactured Homes,* 2007.

ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22, *Line Pressure Regulators,* 2011.

ANSI Z21.90/CSA 6.24, *Gas Convenience Outlets and Optional Enclosures,* 2001 (Reaffirmed 2005).

ANSI Z21.93/CSA 6.30, *Excess Flow Valves for Natural and LP-Gas with Pressures Up to 5 psig,* 2013.

ANSI Z83.4/CSA 3.7, *Non-Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters,* 2013.

ANSI Z83.18, *Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters,* 2004.

2.3.4 MSS Publications.

Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, 127 Park Street, NE, Vienna, VA 22180-6671, (703) 281-6613, www.mss-hq.com.

ANSI/MSS SP-58, *Pipe Hangers and Supports — Materials, Design, Manufacture, Selection, Application, and Installation,* 2009.

2.3.5 UL Publications.

Underwriters Laboratories Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096, www.ul.com.

ANSI/UL 467, *Grounding and Bonding Equipment,* 2013.

ANSI/UL 651, *Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings,* 2011.

2.3.6 U.S. Government Publications.

U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, www.access.gpo.gov.

Title 49, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 192, "Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Standards."

2.3.7 Other Publications.

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, 11th edition, Merriam-Webster, Inc., Springfield, MA, 2003.

2.4 References for Extracts in Mandatory Sections

NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment,* 2011 edition.
NFPA 70®, National Electrical Code®, 2014 edition.
NFPA 88A, *Standard for Parking Structures,* 2015 edition.
NFPA *101®, Life Safety Code®*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances,* 2010 edition.
NFPA 501, *Standard on Manufactured Housing,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 5000®, Building Construction and Safety Code®, 2015 edition.

Definitions

3

Many of the terms used throughout the *National Fuel Gas Code* are unique to the fuel gas industry, and they are defined for the reader in Chapter 3, Definitions. The definitions are organized into the following categories:

- General — Use of terms and general dictionary references
- NFPA Official Definitions — Specific administrative terms as defined by the NFPA Standards Council
- General Definitions — General technical terms

3.1 General

The definitions contained in this chapter shall apply to the terms used in this code. Where terms are not defined in this chapter or within another chapter, they shall be defined using their ordinarily accepted meanings within the context in which they are used. *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary,* 11th edition, shall be the source for the ordinarily accepted meaning.

The code recognizes that many of the technical terms used in the code are defined in the dictionary, and their definitions are not needed in the code. A specific dictionary, *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary,* 11th edition, is to be used for terms not defined in Chapter 3.

3.2 NFPA Official Definitions

Section 3.2 provides NFPA official definitions of terms that are used in all NFPA codes and standards.

3.2.1* Approved. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

A.3.2.1 Approved. The American Gas Association, American National Standards Institute, and the National Fire Protection Association do not approve, inspect, or certify any installations, procedures, appliances, equipment, or materials; nor do they approve or evaluate testing laboratories. In determining the acceptability of installations, procedures, appliances, equipment, or materials, the authority having jurisdiction may base acceptance on compliance with NFPA or other appropriate standards. In the absence of such standards, said authority may require evidence of proper installation, procedure, or use. The authority having jurisdiction may also refer to the listings or labeling practices *(see 3.2.4)* of an organization that is concerned with product evaluations and is thus in a position to determine compliance with AGA, ANSI, CSA, NFPA, or appropriate standards for the current production of listed items. Additional information regarding the coordination of appliance design, construction, and maintenance can be found in Annex B.

3.2.2* Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). An organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcing the requirements of a code or standard, or for approving equipment, materials, an installation, or a procedure.

A.3.2.2 Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). The phrase "authority having jurisdiction," or its acronym AHJ, is used in NFPA documents in a broad manner, since jurisdictions and approval agencies vary, as do their responsibilities. Where public safety is primary, the authority having jurisdiction may be a federal, state, local, or other regional department or individual such as a fire chief; fire marshal; chief of a fire prevention bureau, labor department, or health department; building official; electrical inspector; or others having statutory authority. For insurance purposes, an insurance inspection department, rating bureau, or other insurance company representative may be the authority having jurisdiction. In many circumstances, the property owner or his or her designated agent assumes the role of the authority having jurisdiction; at government installations, the commanding officer or departmental official may be the authority having jurisdiction.

As used in the definition of Authority Having Jurisdiction, equipment includes appliances and materials.

3.2.3* Code. A standard that is an extensive compilation of provisions covering broad subject matter or that is suitable for adoption into law independently of other codes and standards.

A.3.2.3 Code. The decision to designate a standard as a "code" is based on such factors as the size and scope of the document, its intended use and form of adoption, and whether it contains substantial enforcement and administrative provisions.

3.2.4 Labeled. Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials, and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

3.2.5* Listed. Equipment, materials, or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services, and whose listing states that either the equipment, material, or service meets appropriate designated standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

A.3.2.5 Listed. The means for identifying listed appliances and equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation; some organizations do not recognize appliances and equipment as listed unless it is also labeled. The authority having jurisdiction should utilize the system employed by the listing organization to identify a listed product.

As used in the definition of Listed, equipment includes appliances and materials.

3.2.6 Shall. Indicates a mandatory requirement.

The term *shall,* which is defined in 3.2.6, indicates a requirement of this code and mandates that a specific provision of NFPA 54 be followed. When the term *shall* is attached to a specific provision of the code, compliance with that provision is not optional.

3.3 General Definitions

Section 3.3 contains all the technical definitions of terms used in the code.

3.3.1 Accessible. Having access to but which first requires the removal of a panel, door, or similar covering of the item described.

3.3.1.1 Readily Accessible. Having direct access without the need of removing or moving any panel, door, or similar covering of the item described.

FAQ What is the difference between the terms *accessible* and *readily accessible*?

The term *accessible* is used where it is acceptable to locate an item behind a panel or other covering, but that should not require the use of any special tools. The term *readily accessible* is used where direct access to appliance controls or a shutoff valve is required without the removal of a panel, door, or similar covering.

3.3.2 Air.

3.3.2.1 Circulating Air. Air for cooling, heating, or ventilation distributed to habitable spaces.

3.3.2.2 Dilution Air. Air that enters a draft hood or draft regulator and mixes with the flue gases.

Dilution air is air that is drawn from the room into the venting system by draft. In gas venting systems, dilution air is beneficial because it mixes dry room air with the relatively moist flue gases, thereby reducing flue gas dew point and the likelihood for condensation. Also, dilution air allows additional air into the system, which increases flow through the venting system, promoting faster warm-up of the venting system, which helps reduce condensation in the venting system.

3.3.2.3 Excess Air. Air that passes through the combustion chamber and the appliance flues in excess of that which is theoretically required for complete combustion.

3.3.2.4 Primary Air. The air introduced into a burner that mixes with the gas before it reaches the port or ports.

3.3.3 Air Conditioning. The treatment of air so as to control simultaneously its temperature, humidity, cleanness, and distribution to meet the requirements of a conditioned space.

3.3.4 Anodeless Riser. An assembly of steel-cased plastic pipe used to make the transition between plastic piping installed underground and metallic piping installed aboveground.

3.3.5 Appliance. Any device that utilizes a fuel to produce light, heat, power, refrigeration, or air conditioning.

3.3.5.1 Automatically Controlled Appliance. Appliance equipped with an automatic burner ignition and safety shutoff device and other automatic devices.

3.3.5.2 Decorative Appliance for Installation in a Vented Fireplace. A self-contained, freestanding, fuel gas–burning appliance designed for installation only in a vented fireplace and whose primary function lies in the aesthetic effect of the flame.

3.3.5.3 Direct Vent Appliances. Appliances that are constructed and installed so that all air for combustion is derived directly from the outdoors and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoors.

3.3.5.4 Fan-Assisted Combustion Appliance. An appliance equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.

3.3.5.5 Food Service Appliance.

3.3.5.5.1 Baking and Roasting Gas Oven. An oven primarily intended for volume food preparation that is composed of one or more sections or units of the following types: (1) cabinet oven, an oven having one or more cavities heated by a single burner or group of burners; (2) reel-type oven, an oven employing trays that are moved by mechanical means; or (3) sectional oven, an oven composed of one or more independently heated cavities.

3.3.5.5.2 Gas Counter Appliance. An appliance such as a gas coffee brewer and coffee urn and any appurtenant water heating appliance, food and dish warmer, hot plate, and griddle.

3.3.5.5.3 Gas Deep Fat Fryer. An appliance, including a cooking vessel in which oils or fats are placed to such a depth that the cooking food is essentially supported by displacement of the cooking fluid or a perforated container immersed in the cooking fluid rather than by the bottom of the vessel, designed primarily for use in hotels, restaurants, clubs, and similar institutions.

3.3.5.5.4 Gas Range. A self-contained gas range providing for cooking, roasting, baking, or broiling, or any combination of these functions, and not designed specifically for domestic use.

3.3.5.5.5 Gas Steam Cooker. An appliance that cooks, defrosts, or reconstitutes food by direct contact with steam.

3.3.5.5.6 Gas Steam Generator. A separate appliance primarily intended to supply steam for use with food service appliances.

3.3.5.5.7 Kettle. An appliance with a cooking chamber that is heated either by a steam jacket in which steam is generated by gas heat or by direct gas heat applied to the cooking chamber.

3.3.5.6 Gas Counter Appliances. See 3.3.5.5.2.

3.3.5.7 Household Cooking Appliance. An appliance for domestic food preparation, providing at least one function of (1) top or surface cooking, (2) oven cooking, or (3) broiling.

3.3.5.7.1 Household Broiler Cooking Appliance. A unit that cooks primarily by radiated heat.

3.3.5.7.2 Household Built-In Unit Cooking Appliance. A unit designed to be recessed into, placed upon, or attached to the construction of a building, but not for installation on the floor.

Code Update

3.3.5.8 Nonresidential, Low-Heat Appliance. An appliance needing a chimney capable of withstanding a continuous flue gas temperature not exceeding 1000°F (538°C).

In the 2015 edition, the definition of *nonresidential, low-heat appliance* has been revised to remove the references to the occupancy applications, because the flue gas temperature is a criterion not related to the type of occupancy.

3.3.5.9 Nonresidential, Medium-Heat Appliance. An appliance needing a chimney capable of withstanding a continuous flue gas temperature not exceeding 1800°F (982°C).

In the 2015 edition, the definition of *nonresidential, medium-heat appliance* has been revised to remove the references to the occupancy applications, because the flue gas temperature is a criterion not related to the type of occupancy.

3.3.5.10 Outdoor Cooking Appliance. A gas-fired cooking appliance for outdoor use only that is provided with a means of support by the manufacturer and is connected to a fixed gas piping system.

The definition of *outdoor cooking appliance* is intended to reflect the variety of outdoor cooking appliances currently being produced.

3.3.5.11 Vented Appliance.

3.3.5.11.1* Category I Vented Appliance. An appliance that operates with a nonpositive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.

A.3.3.5.11.1 Category I Vented Appliance. For additional information on appliance categorization as shown in 3.3.5.11.1 through 3.3.5.11.4, see the appropriate Z21 and Z83 American National Standards.

3.3.5.11.2 Category II Vented Appliance. An appliance that operates with a nonpositive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that can cause excessive condensate production in the vent.

3.3.5.11.3 Category III Vented Appliance. An appliance that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that avoids excessive condensate production in the vent.

3.3.5.11.4 Category IV Vented Appliance. An appliance that operates with a positive vent static pressure and with a vent gas temperature that can cause excessive condensate production in the vent.

3.3.6 Appliance Categorized Vent Diameter/Area. The minimum vent diameter/area permissible for Category I appliances to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

3.3.7 Automatic Firecheck. A device for stopping the progress of a flame front in burner mixture lines (flashback) and for automatically shutting off the fuel–air mixture.

3.3.8 Automatic Vent Damper. A device that is intended for installation in the venting system, in the outlet of or downstream of the appliance draft hood, of an individual automatically operated appliance and that is designed to automatically open the venting system when the appliance is in operation and to automatically close off the venting system when the appliance is in a standby or shutdown condition.

3.3.9 Backfire Preventer. See 3.3.86, Safety Blowout.

3.3.10 Baffle. An object placed in an appliance to change the direction of or retard the flow of air, air–gas mixtures, or flue gases.

3.3.11 Boiler.

3.3.11.1 Hot Water Heating Boiler. A boiler designed to heat water for circulation through an external space heating system.

3.3.11.2 Hot Water Supply Boiler. A boiler used to heat water for purposes other than space heating.

3.3.11.3 Low Pressure Boiler. A boiler for generating steam at gauge pressures not in excess of 15 psi (103 kPa) or for furnishing water at a maximum temperature of 250°F (121°C) at a maximum gauge pressure of 160 psi (gauge pressure of 1100 kPa). [**31,** 2011]

3.3.11.4 Steam Boiler. A boiler designed to convert water into steam that is supplied to an external system.

3.3.12 Bonding Jumper. A reliable conductor to ensure the required electrical conductivity between metal parts required to be electrically connected. [***70,*** 2014]

3.3.13 Branch Line. Gas piping that conveys gas from a supply line to the appliance.

3.3.14 Breeching. See 3.3.101, Vent Connector.

3.3.15 Broiler. A general term including broilers, salamanders, barbecues, and other devices cooking primarily by radiated heat, excepting toasters.

3.3.15.1 Unit Broiler. A broiler constructed as a separate appliance.

3.3.16 Btu. Abbreviation for British thermal unit, which is the quantity of heat required to raise the temperature of 1 pound of water 1 degree Fahrenheit (equivalent to 1055 joules).

3.3.17 Burner. A device for the final conveyance of gas, or a mixture of gas and air, to the combustion zone.

3.3.17.1 Forced-Draft Burner. See 3.3.17.5, Power Burner.

3.3.17.2 Gas Conversion Burner. A unit consisting of a burner and its controls utilizing gaseous fuel for installation in an appliance originally utilizing another fuel.

3.3.17.3 Injection- (Bunsen-) Type Burner. A burner employing the energy of a jet of gas to inject air for combustion into the burner and mix it with the gas.

3.3.17.4 Main Burner. A device or group of devices essentially forming an integral unit for the final conveyance of gas or a mixture of gas and air to the combustion zone and on which combustion takes place to accomplish the function for which the appliance is designed.

3.3.17.5 Power Burner. A burner in which either gas or air, or both, are supplied at a pressure exceeding, for gas, the line pressure, and for air, atmospheric pressure; this added pressure being applied at the burner. A burner for which air for combustion is supplied by a fan ahead of the appliance is commonly designated as a forced-draft burner.

3.3.17.5.1 Fan-Assisted Power Burner. A burner that uses either induced or forced draft.

3.3.18 Chimney. One or more passageways, vertical or nearly so, for conveying flue or vent gases to the outdoors.

3.3.18.1 Exterior Masonry Chimneys. Masonry chimneys exposed to the outdoors on one or more sides below the roof line.

3.3.18.2 Factory-Built Chimney. A chimney composed of listed factory-built components assembled in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions to form the completed chimney.

3.3.18.3 Masonry Chimney. A field-constructed chimney of solid masonry units, bricks, stones, listed masonry chimney units, or reinforced Portland cement concrete, lined with suitable chimney flue liners.

3.3.18.4 Metal Chimney. A field-constructed chimney of metal.

3.3.19 Clothes Dryer. An appliance used to dry wet laundry by means of heat.

3.3.19.1 Type 1 Clothes Dryer. Primarily used in family living environment. May or may not be coin-operated for public use.

3.3.19.2 Type 2 Clothes Dryer. Used in business with direct intercourse of the function with the public. May or may not be operated by public or hired attendant. May or may not be coin-operated.

There are two definitions that differentiate dryers by their usage. A Type 1 clothes dryer is used much less than a Type 2 clothes dryer. The higher usage increases the probability of lint blockage and potential for a lint fire.

3.3.20 Combustion. A chemical process of oxidation that occurs at a rate fast enough to produce heat and usually light in the form of either a glow or flame. [**5000,** 2015]

3.3.21 Combustion Chamber. The portion of an appliance within which combustion occurs.

3.3.22 Combustion Products. Constituents resulting from the combustion of a fuel with the oxygen of the air, including the inert but excluding excess air.

Note that excess air is not a combustion product, but it is the air that passes through the combustion chamber and the appliance flue in excess of that which, theoretically, is required for complete combustion.

3.3.23 Condensate (Condensation). The liquid that separates from a gas (including flue gas) due to a reduction in temperature or an increase in pressure.

3.3.24 Controls. Devices designed to regulate the gas, air, water, or electrical supply to an appliance, either manually or automatically.

3.3.24.1 Limit Control. A device responsive to changes in pressure, temperature, or liquid level for turning on, shutting off, or throttling the gas supply to an appliance.

Code Update

3.3.25 Copper Alloy. A homogenous mixture of two or more metals in which copper is the primary component, such as brass and bronze.

A definition was added to the 2015 edition for copper alloy to be consistent with other code changes. Brass and bronze have been removed throughout the code to refer to the general category of copper alloy.

3.3.26 Cubic Foot (ft^3) of Gas. The amount of gas that would occupy 1 ft^3 (0.03 m^3) when at a temperature of 60°F (16°C), saturated with water vapor and under a pressure equivalent to that of 30 in. w.c. (7.5 kPa).

3.3.27 Deep Fat Fryer. See 3.3.5.5.3, Gas Deep Fat Fryer.

3.3.28 Device.

3.3.28.1 Automatic Gas Shutoff Device. A device constructed so that the attainment of a water temperature in a hot water supply system in excess of some predetermined limit acts in such a way as to cause the gas to the system to be shut off.

3.3.28.2 Pressure Limiting Device. Equipment that under abnormal conditions will act to reduce, restrict, or shut off the supply of gas flowing into a system in order to prevent the gas pressure in that system from exceeding a predetermined value.

3.3.28.3 Quick-Disconnect Device. A hand-operated device that provides a means for connecting and disconnecting an appliance or an appliance connector to a gas supply and that is equipped with an automatic means to shut off the gas supply when the device is disconnected.

3.3.28.4 Safety Shutoff Device. A device that will shut off the gas supply to the controlled burner(s) in the event the source of ignition fails. This device can interrupt the flow of gas to main burner(s) only or to pilot(s) and main burner(s) under its supervision.

3.3.29 Diversity Factor. Ratio of the maximum probable demand to the maximum possible demand.

3.3.30 Draft. A pressure difference that causes gases or air to flow through a chimney, vent, flue, or appliance.

3.3.30.1 Mechanical Draft. Draft produced by a fan or an air or steam jet. When a fan is located so as to push the flue gases through the chimney or vent, the draft is forced. When the fan is located so as to pull the flue gases through the chimney or vent, the draft is induced.

3.3.30.2 Natural Draft. Draft produced by the difference in the weight of a column of flue gases within a chimney or vent system and a corresponding column of air of equal dimension outside the chimney or vent system. [**211,** 2013]

The phrase *difference in the weight* in the definition of *natural draft* is a characteristic created by the heat of the vent gases. Hot gas has a lower weight per unit of volume than cold gas. This comparison is a fancy way of saying that hot gas rises, a fact well known to those who operate hot air balloons. The difference in weight is the driving force for natural draft venting.

3.3.31 Draft Hood. A nonadjustable device built into an appliance, or made a part of the vent connector from an appliance, that is designed to (1) provide for the ready escape of the flue gases from the appliance in the event of no draft, backdraft, or stoppage beyond the draft hood, (2) prevent a backdraft from entering the appliance, and (3) neutralize the effect of stack action of the chimney or gas vent upon the operation of the appliance.

3.3.32 Drip. The container placed at a low point in a system of piping to collect condensate and from which it may be removed.

3.3.33 Dry Gas. A gas having a moisture and hydrocarbon dew point below any normal temperature to which the gas piping is exposed.

3.3.34 Effective Ground-Fault Current Path. An intentionally constructed, low impedance electrically conductive path designed and intended to carry current under ground-fault conditions from the point of a ground fault on a wiring system to the electrical supply source and that facilitates the operation of the overcurrent protective device or ground-fault detectors on high-impedance grounded systems. [***70,*** 2014]

The definition of *effective ground-fault current path* is an unusual one for this code because it is an electrical definition. The term is used in Section 7.13, Electrical Bonding and Grounding. Refer to the commentary following Section 7.13 for an explanation of the subject.

3.3.35 Equipment. Devices other than appliances.

3.3.36 Explosion Heads (Soft Heads or Rupture Discs). A protective device for relieving excessive pressure in a premix system by bursting of a rupturable disc.

3.3.37 FAN Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I, fan-assisted appliance attached to a vent or connector.

3.3.38 FAN Min. The minimum input rating of a Category I, fan-assisted appliance attached to a vent or connector.

See Chapter 13 and Annex F for more information.

The terms *FAN Max* and *FAN Min* are venting terms that are used only in Chapter 13, Sizing of Category I Venting Systems, and in Annex F, Sizing of Venting Systems Serving Appliances Equipped with Draft Hoods, Category I Appliances, and Appliances Listed for Use with Type B Vents. The terms are shorthand used in the vent sizing Tables 13.1(a) through 13.1(f) to determine chimney and vent capacity; in Tables 13.2(a) through 13.2(d) to determine common vent capacity (when more than one appliance is connected to a vent); and in Annex F, which provides examples of the use of the tables.

Commentary Table 3.1 is an excerpt from Table 13.1(a) showing the use of FAN Min and FAN Max for a Type B vent with a diameter of 3 in. (80 mm). A fan-assisted combustion appliance installed with a 6 ft (1.8 m) vent height and a 2 ft (0.6 m) lateral has a single appliance capacity of 13,000 Btu/hr to 51,000 Btu/hr (4 kW to 15 kW). The highlighted column, NAT Max, is used for Category I appliances that are not fan assisted.

COMMENTARY TABLE 3.1 *FAN Min and FAN Max*

Vent Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	FAN		NAT Max
		Min	Max	
6	0	0	78	46
	2	13	51	36
	4	21	49	34
	6	25	46	32

For SI units: 1 ft = 0.305 m; 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

3.3.39 FAN+FAN. The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I, fan-assisted appliances attached to the common vent.

3.3.40 FAN+NAT. The maximum combined appliance input rating of one or more Category I, fan-assisted appliances and one or more Category I, draft hood–equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

The terms *FAN+FAN*, *FAN+NAT*, and *NAT+NAT* (3.3.69) are used only in Chapter 13, Sizing of Category I Venting Systems, and in Annex F, Sizing of Venting Systems Serving Appliances Equipped with Draft Hoods, Category I Appliances, and Appliances Listed for Use with Type B Vents. The terms are shorthand used in vent sizing Tables 13.2(a) through 13.2(d) to determine vent connector capacity for vent connectors connecting one appliance to a chimney, common vent, or vent manifold.

See Chapter 13 and Annex F for more information.

Commentary Table 3.2 is an excerpt from the common vent capacity section of Table 13.2(a) showing the use of the terms with a 4 in. (100 mm) diameter common vent. Note that a 4 in. (100 mm) diameter common vent that is 6 ft (1.8 m) high and serves two or more Category I appliances has the following capacities:

- A maximum capacity of 92,000 Btu/hr (27 kW) if both appliances are fan assisted
- A maximum capacity of 81,000 Btu/hr (24 kW) if both fan-assisted and non-fan-assisted appliances are connected
- A capacity of 65,000 Btu/hr (19 kW) if only non-fan-assisted appliances are connected

COMMENTARY TABLE 3.2 *FAN+FAN, FAN+NAT, and NAT+NAT*

Vent Height H (ft)	FAN+FAN	FAN+NAT	NAT+NAT
6	92	81	65
8	101	90	73
10	110	97	79
15	125	112	91
20	136	123	102

The highlighted column, NAT+NAT, is used for Category I appliances that are not fan assisted.

3.3.41 Fireplace. A fire chamber and hearth constructed of noncombustible material for use with solid fuels and provided with a chimney.

3.3.41.1 Gas Fireplace.

3.3.41.1.1 Direct Vent Gas Fireplace. A system consisting of (1) an appliance for indoor installation that allows the view of flames and provides the simulation of a solid fuel fireplace, (2) combustion air connections between the appliance and the vent air intake terminal, (3) flue-gas connections between the appliance and the vent-air intake terminal, and (4) a vent air intake terminal for installation outdoors, constructed such that all air for combustion is obtained from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere.

3.3.41.1.2 Vented Gas Fireplace. A vented appliance that allows the view of flames and provides the simulation of a solid fuel fireplace.

3.3.42 Flame Arrester. A nonvalve device for use in a gas–air mixture line containing a means for temporarily stopping the progress of a flame front (flashback).

Flame arresters are used with central premix systems (see 7.12.1), with some regulator vents [see 9.1.19(5)], and for bleed lines for diaphragm-type valves [see 9.1.20(4)].

3.3.43 Flue.

3.3.43.1 Appliance Flue. The passage(s) within an appliance through which combustion products pass from the combustion chamber of the appliance to the draft hood inlet opening on an appliance equipped with a draft hood or to the outlet of the appliance on an appliance not equipped with a draft hood.

3.3.43.2 Chimney Flue. The passage(s) in a chimney for conveying the flue or vent gases to the outdoors.

3.3.44 Flue Collar. That portion of an appliance designed for the attachment of a draft hood, vent connector, or venting system.

3.3.45 Furnace.

3.3.45.1 Central Furnace. A self-contained appliance for heating air by transfer of heat of combustion through metal to the air and designed to supply heated air through ducts to spaces remote from or adjacent to the appliance location.

3.3.45.2 Direct Vent Wall Furnace. A system consisting of an appliance, combustion air, and flue gas connections between the appliance and the outdoor atmosphere, and a vent cap supplied by the manufacturer and constructed so that all air for combustion is obtained from the outdoor atmosphere and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoor atmosphere.

3.3.45.3 Duct Furnace. A furnace normally installed in distribution ducts of air-conditioning systems to supply warm air for heating. This definition applies only to an appliance that, for air circulation, depends on a blower not furnished as part of the furnace.

3.3.45.4 Enclosed Furnace. A specific heating, or heating and ventilating, furnace incorporating an integral total enclosure and using only outdoor air for combustion.

3.3.45.5 Floor Furnace. A completely self-contained unit furnace suspended from the floor of the space being heated, taking air for combustion from outside this space.

3.3.45.6 Forced-Air Furnace. A furnace equipped with a fan or blower that provides the primary means for circulation of air.

3.3.45.7 Vented Wall Furnace. A self-contained, vented, fuel gas–burning appliance complete with grilles or equivalent, designed for incorporation in or permanent attachment to the structure of a building and furnishing heated air, circulated by gravity or by a fan, directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing.

3.3.46 Furnace Plenum. A compartment or chamber that is supplied with the furnace or constructed of ductwork that is attached to the inlet or outlet of a furnace or air-handling unit and has one or more circulating air ducts connected to it.

3.3.47 Garage.

3.3.47.1 Repair Garage. A building, structure, or portions thereof wherein major repair, painting, or body and fender work is performed on motorized vehicles or automobiles, and includes associated floor space used for offices, parking, and showrooms.

3.3.47.2 Residential Garage. A building or room in which self-propelled passenger vehicles are or can be stored and that will not normally be used for other than minor service or repair operations on such stored vehicles.

3.3.48 Gas Convenience Outlet. A permanently mounted, hand-operated device providing a means for connecting and disconnecting an appliance or an appliance connector to the gas supply piping. The device includes an integral, manually operated gas valve with a nondisplaceable valve member so that disconnection can be accomplished only when the manually operated gas valve is in the closed position.

3.3.49 Gases. Include natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum (LP) gas in the vapor phase only, liquefied petroleum gas–air mixtures, and mixtures of these gases, plus gas–air mixtures within the flammable range, with the fuel gas or the flammable component of a mixture being a commercially distributed product.

3.3.49.1 Flue Gases. Products of combustion plus excess air in appliance flues or heat exchangers.

Note that flue gases include combustion products and excess air. (See commentary concerning the term *combustion products* following 3.3.22.) Vent gases also include dilution air. (See the definitions of *vent gases* in 3.3.49.3 and *dilution air* in 3.3.2.2.)

3.3.49.2 Utility Gases. Natural gas, manufactured gas, liquefied petroleum gas–air mixtures, or mixtures of any of these gases.

3.3.49.3 Vent Gases. Products of combustion from appliances plus excess air, plus dilution air in the venting system above the draft hood or draft regulator.

3.3.50 Gas-Fired Air Conditioner. An automatically operated appliance for supplying cooled and/or dehumidified air or chilled liquid.

3.3.51 Gas-Fired Heat Pump. An automatically operated appliance utilizing a refrigeration system for supplying either heated air or liquid or heated and/or cooled air or liquid.

3.3.52 Gas-Mixing Machine. Any combination of automatic proportioning control devices, blowers, or compressors that supply mixtures of gas and air to multiple burner installations where control devices or other accessories are installed between the mixing device and burner.

3.3.53* Gas Vent. A passageway composed of listed factory-built components assembled in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for conveying vent gases from appliances or their vent connectors to the outdoors.

Code Update

The definition of *gas vent* has been relocated in the 2015 edition to be a primary definition. The subdefinitions for types of gas vent have been relocated accordingly. For an item to be called a *gas vent,* as defined in 3.3.53, it must be factory-made and listed for conveying vent gases, which are defined as products of combustion plus excess air plus dilution air. Therefore, installers cannot fabricate gas vents. In order to be called a gas vent and installed as required in Section 12.7, the materials used must be listed as a gas vent.

A.3.3.53 Gas Vent. This definition does not apply to plastic plumbing piping that is specified as a venting material in the manufacturer's instructions for gas-fired appliances that are listed for venting with such piping.

3.3.53.1 Common Vent. That portion of a vent or chimney system that conveys vent gases from more than one appliance.

3.3.53.2 Special-Type Gas Vent. Gas vents for venting listed Category II, III, and IV appliances.

3.3.53.3 Type B Gas Vent. A gas vent for venting listed gas appliances with draft hoods and other Category I appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents.

A Type B gas vent is a double-wall type with a relatively low permissible temperature of vent gases due to its construction, which incorporates an aluminum inner tube. An air space between the inner aluminum tube and the outer galvanized steel tube has insulating properties, which minimize heat loss. Where higher vent temperatures are anticipated, a Type L vent can be used. Type B gas vents (and all other gas vents) must be factory-made and listed.

3.3.53.4 Type B-W Gas Vent. A gas vent for venting listed wall furnaces.

The Type B-W gas vent is usually an oval-shaped, double-wall type designed to fit within a conventional stud wall. The most common use for this type of vent is to vent wall furnaces. See Exhibit 12.13 for examples of Type B and Type B-W vent fittings. Type B-W gas vents (and all other gas vents) must be factory-made and listed.

3.3.53.5 Type L Gas Vent. A gas vent for venting appliances listed for use with Type L vents and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents.

A Type L gas vent is rated for higher temperature vent gases than a Type B gas vent. It differs from Type B gas vents in that the inner tube is stainless steel rather than aluminum. Type L gas vents can be used with appliances that are listed for Type B, but not vice versa. Type L gas vents (and all other gas vents) must be factory-made and listed.

3.3.54 Gravity. See 3.3.91, Specific Gravity.

3.3.55 Grounding Electrode. A conducting object through which a direct connection to earth is established. [***70,*** 2014]

3.3.56 Heater.

3.3.56.1 Direct Gas-Fired Nonrecirculating Industrial Air Heater. A nonrecirculating industrial air heater in which all the products of combustion generated by the appliance are released into the outdoor airstream being heated.

3.3.56.2 Direct Gas-Fired Recirculating Industrial Air Heater. An air recirculating heater in which all of the products of combustion generated by the appliance are released into the airstream being heated.

EXHIBIT 3.1

An Example of an Infrared Heater. (Courtesy of Rasmussen Gas Logs & Grills)

3.3.56.3 Infrared Heater. A heater that directs a substantial amount of its energy output in the form of infrared energy into the area to be heated. Such heaters may be of either the vented or unvented type.

See Exhibit 3.1.

3.3.56.4 Pool Heater. An appliance designed for heating nonpotable water stored at atmospheric pressure, such as water in swimming pools, therapeutic pools, and similar applications.

3.3.56.5 Unit Heater. A self-contained, automatically controlled, vented, fuel gas–burning, space-heating appliance intended for installation in the space to be heated without the use of ducts, having integral means for circulation of air.

3.3.56.6 Unvented Room Heater. An unvented, self-contained, freestanding, nonrecessed, fuel gas–burning appliance for furnishing warm air by gravity or fan circulation to the space in which installed, directly from the heater without duct connection.

3.3.56.7 Water Heater. An appliance for supplying hot water for domestic or commercial purposes.

3.3.57 Heating Value (Total). The number of British thermal units produced by the combustion, at constant pressure, of 1 ft^3 (0.03 m^3) of gas when the products of combustion are cooled to the initial temperature of the gas and air, when the water vapor formed during combustion is condensed, and when all the necessary corrections have been applied.

3.3.58 Hot Plate. See 3.3.5.5.2, Gas Counter Appliance.

3.3.58.1 Domestic Hot Plate. A fuel gas–burning appliance consisting of one or more open-top-type burners mounted on short legs or a base.

3.3.59 Ignition.

3.3.59.1 Automatic Ignition. Ignition of gas at the burner(s) when the gas-controlling device is turned on, including re-ignition if the flames on the burner(s) have been extinguished by means other than by the closing of the gas-controlling device.

3.3.59.2 Sources of Ignition. Appliances or equipment that, because of their intended modes of use or operation, are capable of providing sufficient thermal energy to ignite flammable gas–air mixtures.

3.3.60 Insulating Millboard. A factory-fabricated board formed with noncombustible materials, normally fibers, and having a thermal conductivity in the range of 1 Btu/in./ft^2/°F/hr (0.14 W/m/°K).

3.3.61 Kettle. See 3.3.5.5.7.

3.3.62 Manifold.

3.3.62.1 Common Vent Manifold. A horizontal extension of the common vent within the room in which the appliances are installed.

3.3.62.2 Gas Manifold. The conduit of an appliance that supplies gas to the individual burners.

3.3.63 Manufactured Home. A structure, transportable in one or more sections, that, in the traveling mode, is 8 body-ft (2.4 m) or more in width or 40 body-ft (12.2 m) or more in length or, that on site is 320 ft^2 (29.7 m^2) or more, is built on a permanent chassis, is designed to be used as a dwelling with or without a permanent foundation, whether or not connected to the utilities, and includes plumbing, heating, air-conditioning, and electrical systems contained therein. Such terms shall include any structure that meets all the requirements of this paragraph except the size requirements and with respect to which the manufacturer voluntarily files a certification required by the regulatory agency. Calculations used to determine the number of square feet in a structure are based on the structure's exterior dimensions, include all expandable rooms, cabinets, and other projections containing interior space, but do not include bay windows. [**501,** 2013]

3.3.64 Material.

Code Update

3.3.64.1* Combustible (Material). A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will ignite and burn; a material that does not meet the definition of noncombustible. [***101,*** 2015].

A.3.3.64.1 Combustible (Material). Materials are considered to be combustible even if they have been fire-retardant treated.

3.3.64.2 Noncombustible Material. A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will not ignite, burn, support combustion, or release flammable vapors when subjected to fire or heat.

The definitions of *combustible material* and *noncombustible material* were revised in the 2015 edition to be consistent with changes made in other NFPA documents. The test requirements for noncombustible material were relocated to Chapter 4, because the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents* prohibits the inclusion of requirements in definitions.

3.3.65 Meter. An instrument installed to measure the volume of gas delivered through it.

3.3.66 Mixing Blower. A motor-driven blower to produce gas–air mixtures for combustion through one or more gas burners or nozzles on a single-zone industrial heating appliance or on each control zone of a multizone industrial appliance or on each control zone of a multizone installation.

3.3.67 NA. Vent configuration that is not allowed due to potential for condensate formation or pressurization of the venting system or that is not applicable due to physical or geometric restraints.

3.3.68 NAT Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I, draft hood–equipped appliance attached to a vent or connector.

3.3.69 NAT+NAT. The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I, draft hood–equipped appliances attached to the common vent.

3.3.70 Occupancy.

3.3.70.1 Health Care Occupancy. An occupancy used to provide medical or other treatment or care simultaneously to four or more patients on an inpatient basis, where such patients are mostly incapable of self-preservation due to age, physical or mental disability, or because of security measures not under the occupants' control. [**5000,** 2015]

3.3.70.2 Residential Board and Care Occupancy. An occupancy used for lodging and boarding of four or more residents, not related by blood or marriage to the owners or operators, for the purpose of providing personal care services. [**5000,** 2015]

The occupancy definitions are included in NFPA 54 to clarify the use of occupancy classifications in 10.22.3, which prohibits gas-fired room heaters to be used in some occupancies.

3.3.71 Orifice. The opening in a cap, spud, or other device whereby the flow of gas is limited and through which the gas is discharged to the burner.

3.3.72 Oven, Gas Baking and Roasting. See 3.3.5.5.1, Baking and Roasting Gas Oven.

3.3.73 Parking Structure. A building, structure, or portion thereof used for the parking, storage, or both, of motor vehicles. [**88A,** 2011]

3.3.73.1 Basement or Underground Parking Structure. A parking structure or portion thereof located below finished ground level.

3.3.73.2 Enclosed Parking Structure. Having exterior enclosing walls that have less than 25 percent of the total wall area open to atmosphere at each level using at least two sides of the structure.

3.3.74 Pilot. A small flame that is utilized to ignite the gas at the main burner or burners.

3.3.75 Pipe. Rigid conduit of iron, steel, copper, copper alloy, aluminum, or plastic.

3.3.75.1 Equivalent Length Pipe. The resistance of valves, controls, and fittings to gas flow expressed as equivalent length of straight pipe for convenience in calculating pipe sizes.

3.3.76 Piping. Pipe or tubing.

3.3.76.1 Concealed Gas Piping. Gas piping that, when in place in a finished building, would require removal of permanent construction to gain access to the piping.

3.3.76.2 Control Piping. All piping, valves, and fittings used to interconnect air, gas, or hydraulically operated control apparatus or instrument transmitters and receivers.

3.3.77 Plenum. A compartment or chamber to which one or more ducts are connected and that forms part of the air distribution system.

3.3.78 Pressure. Unless otherwise stated, a measurement expressed in pounds per square inch above atmospheric pressure.

3.3.78.1 Atmospheric Pressure. The pressure of the weight of air on the surface of the earth, approximately 14.7 pounds per square inch (psia) (101 kPa absolute) at sea level.

3.3.78.2 Back Pressure. Pressure against which a fluid is flowing, resulting from friction in lines, restrictions in pipes or valves, pressure in vessel to which fluid is flowing, hydrostatic head, or other impediment that causes resistance to fluid flow.

3.3.78.3 Design Pressure. The maximum operating pressure permitted by this code, as determined by the design procedures applicable to the materials involved.

The term *design pressure* defines the maximum gas pressure allowed for a given installation and takes into account the nature of the equipment, type of occupancy, piping location, and so forth.

3.3.78.4 Maximum Working Pressure. The maximum pressure at which a piping system can be operated in accordance with the provisions of this code.

FAQ How is the term *maximum working pressure* different from the term *design pressure*?

Maximum working pressure can be determined from allowable stress considerations for piping material or from the nature of the installation itself and the code limitations thereon. The term *design pressure*, which is defined in 3.3.78.3, limits the pressure based on system considerations or appliance limitations. As defined in 3.3.78.4, the term *maximum working pressure* is nearly interchangeable with the term *design pressure*.

However, this practical application demonstrates their difference. For example, a gas piping system in a building has a maximum working pressure, which is determined by the materials used. For a steel piping system, it might be 150 psi (1000 kPa). The design pressure of the piping system is lower and is determined by the lowest inlet pressure of all appliances connected to the piping system, which could be 11 in. w.c. (2.7 kPa) or 2 psi (14 kPa).

3.3.79 Pressure Drop. The loss in pressure due to friction or obstruction in pipes, valves, fittings, regulators, and burners.

3.3.80 Purge. To free a gas conduit of air or gas, or a mixture of gas and air.

3.3.81 Qualified Agency. Any individual, firm, corporation, or company that either in person or through a representative is engaged in and is responsible for (1) the installation, testing, or replacement of gas piping or (2) the connection, installation, testing, repair, or servicing of appliances and equipment; that is experienced in such work; that is familiar with all precautions required; and that has complied with all the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

3.3.82 Range. See 3.3.5.5.4, Gas Range.

3.3.83 Refrigerator (Using Gas Fuel). An appliance that is designed to extract heat from a suitable chamber.

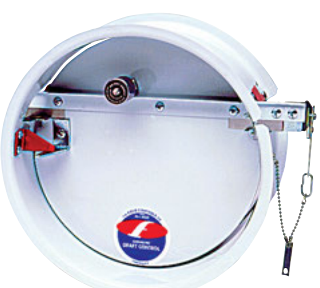
3.3.84 Regulator.

3.3.84.1 Draft Regulator. A device that functions to maintain a desired draft in the appliance by automatically reducing the draft to the desired value.

3.3.84.1.1 Barometric Draft Regulator. A balanced damper device attached to a chimney, vent connector, breeching, or flue gas manifold to control chimney draft.

A barometric draft regulator, such as the one shown in Exhibit 3.2, controls draft by opening and closing a gate that allows room air to enter the venting system. The gate responds to changes in chimney draft, opening to allow more air into the venting system as draft increases, and closing to reduce air entering the venting system as draft decreases.

EXHIBIT 3.2



Barometric Draft Regulator. (Courtesy of Field Controls, LLC)

It should be noted that a barometric draft regulator can only decrease draft through the appliance and venting system. It cannot increase draft. Also see commentary following 12.13.4 for more information on the use of barometric draft regulators with gas appliances.

3.3.84.2 Gas Appliance Pressure Regulator. A pressure regulator for controlling pressure to the appliance manifold.

3.3.84.3 Line Pressure Regulator. A pressure regulator placed in a gas line between the service regulator and the appliance regulator.

3.3.84.4 Monitoring Regulator. A pressure regulator set in series with another pressure regulator for the purpose of automatically taking over in an emergency the control of the pressure downstream of the regulator in case that pressure tends to exceed a set maximum.

3.3.84.5 Pressure Regulator. Equipment placed in a gas line for reducing, controlling, and maintaining the pressure in that portion of the piping system downstream of the equipment.

3.3.84.6 Series Regulator. A pressure regulator in series with one or more other pressure regulators.

3.3.84.7 Service Regulator. A pressure regulator installed by the serving gas supplier to reduce and limit the service line gas pressure to delivery pressure.

3.3.85 Relief Opening. The opening provided in a draft hood to permit the ready escape to the atmosphere of the flue products from the draft hood in the event of no draft, backdraft, or stoppage beyond the draft hood and to permit inspiration of air into the draft hood in the event of a strong chimney updraft.

3.3.86 Safety Blowout (Backfire Preventer). A protective device located in the discharge piping of large mixing machines, incorporating a bursting disc for excessive pressure release, means for stopping a flame front, and an electric switch or other release mechanism for actuating a built-in or separate safety shutoff.

3.3.87 Service Head Adapter. A transition fitting for use with plastic piping (which is encased in non-pressure-carrying metal pipe) that connects the metal pipe casing and plastic pipe and tubing to the remainder of the piping system.

3.3.88 Service Meter Assembly. The piping and fittings installed by the serving gas supplier to connect the inlet side of the meter to the gas service and to connect the outlet side of the meter to the customer's house or yard piping.

FAQ Does the *National Fuel Gas Code* cover the service meter assembly?

The code does not cover the service meter assembly because it precedes the gas meter. Coverage of the *National Fuel Gas Code* typically starts at the discharge of the utility gas meter. (See Exhibit 1.1.)

3.3.89 Service Regulator. See 3.3.84.5, Pressure Regulator; and 3.3.84.7, Service Regulator.

3.3.90 Shutoff. See 3.3.99, Valve.

3.3.91 Specific Gravity. As applied to gas, the ratio of the weight of a given volume to that of the same volume of air, both measured under the same conditions.

3.3.92 Steam Cooker. See 3.3.5.5.5, Gas Steam Cooker.

3.3.93 Steam Generator. See 3.3.5.5.6, Gas Steam Generator.

3.3.94 Stress. The resultant internal force that resists change in the size or shape of a body acted on by external forces. In this code, the term *stress* is often used as being synonymous with unit stress, which is the stress per unit area (psi).

3.3.94.1 Hoop Stress. The stress in a pipe wall, acting circumferentially in a plane perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the pipe and produced by the pressure of the fluid in the pipe.

3.3.95 System.

3.3.95.1 Central Premix System. A system that distributes flammable gas–air mixtures to two or more remote stations.

3.3.95.2 Fan-Assisted Combustion System. An appliance equipped with an integral mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber or heat exchanger.

3.3.95.3 Hybrid Pressure System. A piping system in which the pressure at the point of delivery is reduced by one or more line pressure regulators prior to the appliance connection.

3.3.95.4 Mechanical Exhaust System. Equipment installed in and made a part of the vent to provide the required flow of gases through the vent.

Gas flow can be accomplished through either forced draft (positive pressure in the vent) or induced draft (negative pressure in the vent). See also 3.3.30.1, *Mechanical Draft.*

3.3.95.5 Natural Draft Venting System. A venting system that relies on natural draft to convey the products of combustion.

3.3.95.6 Piping System. All pipe, tubing, valves, and fittings from the point of delivery to the outlets of the appliance shutoff valves.

3.3.95.7* Venting System. A continuous open passageway from the flue collar or draft hood of an appliance to the outdoors for the purpose of removing flue or vent gases.

A.3.3.95.7 Venting System. A venting system is usually composed of a vent or a chimney and vent connector(s), if used, assembled to form the open passageway.

3.3.95.7.1 Forced Mechanical Draft Venting System. A venting system in which a fan or other mechanical device is used to cause the flow of flue or vent gases under positive vent pressure.

3.3.95.7.2 Mechanical Draft Venting System. A venting system designed to remove flue or vent gases by mechanical means, which can consist of an induced draft portion under nonpositive static pressure or a forced draft portion under positive static pressure.

3.3.96 Tensile Strength. The highest unit tensile stress (referred to the original cross section) a material can sustain before failure (psi).

3.3.97 Thread Joint Compounds. Nonhardening materials used on pipe threads to ensure a seal.

3.3.98 Tubing. Semirigid conduit of copper, steel, aluminum, corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST), or plastic.

This definition specifically lists CSST as tubing because some code users have considered it to be a different material and did not apply the requirements for tubing to CSST.

3.3.99 Valve. A device used in piping to control the gas supply to any section of a system of piping or to an appliance.

3.3.99.1 Appliance Shutoff Valve. A valve located in the piping system used to shut off individual equipment.

3.3.99.2 Automatic Valve. An automatic or semiautomatic device consisting essentially of a valve and operator that control the gas supply to the burner(s) during operation of an appliance.

3.3.99.3 Excess Flow Valve (EFV). A valve designed to activate when the fuel gas passing through it exceeds a prescribed flow rate.

3.3.99.4 Manual Reset Valve. An automatic shutoff valve installed in the gas supply piping and set to shut off when unsafe conditions occur. The device remains closed until manually reopened.

3.3.99.5 Relief Valve. A safety valve designed to forestall the development of a dangerous condition by relieving either pressure, temperature, or vacuum in a hot water supply system.

3.3.99.5.1 Pressure Relief Valve. A valve that automatically opens and closes a relief vent, depending on whether the pressure is above or below a predetermined value.

3.3.99.5.2 Temperature Relief Valve. A valve that automatically opens and automatically closes a relief vent, depending on whether the temperature is above or below a predetermined value.

3.3.99.5.3 Vacuum Relief Valve. A valve that automatically opens and closes a vent for relieving a vacuum within the hot water supply system, depending on whether the vacuum is above or below a predetermined value.

3.3.99.6 Service Shutoff Valve. A valve, installed by the serving gas supplier between the service meter or source of supply and the customer piping system, to shut off the entire piping system.

3.3.100 Valve Member. That part of a gas valve rotating within or in respect to the valve body that, by its position with respect to the valve body, controls the flow of gas.

3.3.100.1 Nondisplaceable Valve Member. A valve member that cannot be moved from its seat by a force applied to the handle or to any exterior portion of the valve.

3.3.101 Vent Connector. The pipe or duct that connects a fuel gas–burning appliance to a vent or chimney.

3.3.102 Vent Offset. An arrangement of two or more fittings and pipe installed for the purpose of locating a vertical section of vent pipe in a different but parallel plane with respect to an adjacent section of vertical vent pipe.

3.3.103 Venting. The conveyance of combustion products to the outdoors.

3.3.104 Wall Head Adapter. A transition fitting for terminating plastic pipe inside of buildings at the building wall.

3.3.105 Zero Governor. A regulating device that is normally adjusted to deliver gas at atmospheric pressure within its flow rating.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publication is available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, (800) 344-3555, www.nfpa.org.

Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents, 2004 edition.

The following publication is available from Merriam-Webster, Inc., 47 Federal Street, P. O. Box 281, Springfield, MA 01102, 413-731-5979.

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, 11th edition, 2003.

General

4

Chapter 4 covers the general requirements for fuel gas. Other general requirements concerning scope, purpose, retroactivity, equivalency, and enforcement are covered in Chapter 1. Chapter 4 general requirements cover the following:

- Limitation of installations, modifications, and repairs performed under the code to a qualified agency
- What must be done prior to and following an interruption of gas service
- Prevention of accidental ignition while repairs are made to gas piping

4.1 Qualified Agency

Installation, testing, purging, and replacement of gas piping, appliances, or accessories, and repair and servicing of equipment, shall be performed only by a qualified agency.

Fuel gases are potentially dangerous if they are not handled properly. For this reason, the code specifically states (and defines) that only qualified persons are permitted to install and maintain gas appliances.

FAQ How can the consumer identify a qualified agency?

The term *qualified agency* is defined in 3.3.81. A representative of the serving gas supplier is an example of a qualified agency. Many states, counties, cities, and municipalities permit only licensed plumbers or gas fitters to install and maintain gas distribution systems and equipment. These entities may conduct examinations or recognize certificates of national testing organizations to establish a list of qualified agencies and individuals.

4.2 Interruption of Service

Following an interruption of service, the requirements of Chapter 8 must be followed prior to putting the gas system back into service.

4.2.1 Notification of Interrupted Service. When the gas supply is to be turned off, it shall be the duty of the qualified agency to notify all affected users. Where two or more users are served from the same supply system, precautions shall be exercised to ensure that service only to the proper user is turned off.

Exception: In cases of emergency, affected users shall be notified as soon as possible of the actions taken by the qualified agency.

When gas service must be interrupted for other than emergency situations, users must be notified. It is the responsibility of the qualified agency shutting off the gas supply to notify all affected users and to be aware of cross connections.

4.2.2 Work Interruptions. When interruptions in work occur while repairs or alterations are being made to an existing piping system, the system shall be left in a safe condition.

If interruptions in work occur, all open-ended piping should be capped or plugged to prevent leakage if valves are opened inadvertently. Supply valves should be tagged "out of service" and locked.

4.3 Prevention of Accidental Ignition

4.3.1 Potential Ignition Sources. Where work is being performed on piping that contains or has contained gas, the following shall apply:

(1) Provisions for electrical continuity shall be made before alterations are made in a metallic piping system.
(2) Smoking, open flames, lanterns, welding, or other sources of ignition shall not be permitted.
(3) A metallic electrical bond shall be installed around the location of cuts in metallic gas pipes made by other than cutting torches. Where cutting torches, welding, or other sources of ignition are to be used, it shall be determined that all sources of gas or gas–air mixtures have been secured and that all flammable gas or liquids have been cleared from the area. Piping shall be purged as required in Section 8.3 before welding or cutting with a torch is attempted.
(4) Artificial illumination shall be restricted to listed safety-type flashlights and safety lamps. Electric switches shall not be turned on or turned off.

EXHIBIT 4.1

Combustible Gas Detector. (Courtesy of SENSIT Technologies — www.gasleaksensors.com)

Electrical continuity must be maintained to prevent sparks, which are a source of ignition. A combustible gas detector can be used to determine if flammable gas–air mixtures are present. See Exhibit 4.1 for a picture of a combustible gas detector.

For additional information on safety in cutting and welding, refer to NFPA 51B, *Standard for Fire Prevention During Welding, Cutting, and Other Hot Work*.

4.3.2 Handling of Flammable Liquids.

Gasoline is an extremely flammable liquid that usually is present as a fuel for portable welding machines, generators, or other internal combustion engines. Extreme caution must be observed when handling or storing this fuel. For additional information, refer to NFPA 30, *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*.

4.3.2.1 Drip Liquids. Liquid that is removed from a drip in existing gas piping shall be handled to avoid spillage or ignition. The gas supplier shall be notified when drip liquids are removed.

FAQ Why would liquids captured in the drip leg of a gas system be of concern to the serving gas supplier?

Drip liquids, which are liquids that condense from natural gas or LP-Gas in piping systems, can be highly flammable and can cause operational problems for valves and other piping components. Extreme caution must be observed when drip liquids are found in piping systems that are open for work.

Although natural gas is mostly "dry," the lubrication used at compressor stations on the pipeline facilities may result in oil in the system. When oil is found in piping systems, care must be taken because the type and source of the liquid cannot be determined by sight. If it is suspected that the oil is from the transmission line, the local utility should be contacted as soon as possible, and the oil should be treated as a potential hazard until it is identified.

4.3.2.2 Other Flammable Liquids. Flammable liquids used by the installer shall be handled with precaution and shall not be left within the premises from the end of one working day to the beginning of the next.

4.4* Noncombustible Material

Code Update

A material that complies with any of the following shall be considered a noncombustible material:

(1) A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will not ignite, burn, support combustion, or release flammable vapors when subjected to fire or heat
(2) A material that is reported as passing ASTM E 136, *Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C*
(3) A material that is reported as complying with the pass/fail criteria of ASTM E 136 when tested in accordance with the test method and procedure in ASTM E 2652, *Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Tube Furnace with a Cone-shaped Airflow Stabilizer, at 750 Degrees C*

Section 4.4 has been added to the 2015 edition to capture the text requirements for noncombustible materials. The test requirements were previously included in the definition and were relocated to Chapter 4 in accordance with the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents*.

A.4.4 The provisions of Section 4.4 do not require noncombustible materials to be tested in order to be classified as noncombustible materials. Materials such as steel, concrete, and cement blocks are generally accepted to be noncombustible.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publications are available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, (800) 344-3555, www.nfpa.org.

NFPA 30, *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 51B, *Standard for Fire Prevention During Welding, Cutting, and Other Hot Work*, 2014 edition.
Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents, 2004 edition.

Gas Piping System Design, Materials, and Components

5

Chapter 5 covers the requirements for piping design, materials, and components. Chapter 5 includes detailed requirements for the following:

- A piping sketch or plan, which can be required by the authority having jurisdiction for new and modified gas piping systems
- Provisions for location of the point of delivery
- Interconnection between gas piping systems to prevent contamination and inaccurate metering of gas
- Sizing of gas piping systems to ensure that sufficient fuel can be provided to each appliance. Sizing tables are in Chapter 6.
- Piping system operating pressure limitations, which limit gas pressure in piping systems in residential and most commercial buildings
- Acceptable piping materials and joining methods requirements for all aspects of pipe joining, threads, flanges, and gaskets. This section also contains requirements for both metallic and plastic piping.
- Gas meters
- Requirements for the location, protection, ventilation, and identification of gas pressure regulators
- Overpressure protection devices to prevent the high pressures of gas distribution systems and propane tanks from entering building piping systems
- Back-pressure protection to prevent contamination of piped air, oxygen, or alternative fuel gas
- Low-pressure protection
- Shutoff valves
- Sizing excess flow valves and locations
- Expansion and flexibility of gas piping systems and thermal and seismic stresses

5.1 Piping Plan

5.1.1 Installation of Piping System. Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, a piping sketch or plan shall be prepared before proceeding with the installation. The plan shall show the proposed location of piping, the size of different branches, the various load demands, and the location of the point of delivery.

The authority having jurisdiction may require a piping sketch, drawing, or plan to be submitted for approval prior to issuing a permit. A sketch, drawing, or plan should include location, scope of work, piping materials, piping loads, sizes and lengths, and appliance fuel demand

and locations. The locations of the meter, seismic gas shutoff valves, pressure regulator, appliances, and any other items or equipment attached to the gas piping system must be identified. In addition, the manufacturer's installation instructions for all appliances and equipment may be required. This is also an opportunity to identify any unusual appliances or unique piping system for approval. For example, a decision to use a particular piece of equipment for an operation immediately leads to the question of whether or not there is sufficient access and clearances for the equipment. The best money spent is the money spent on designing and developing a clear sketch, drawing, or plan. It is less expensive to make changes on paper than to remove or change a gas piping system after installation.

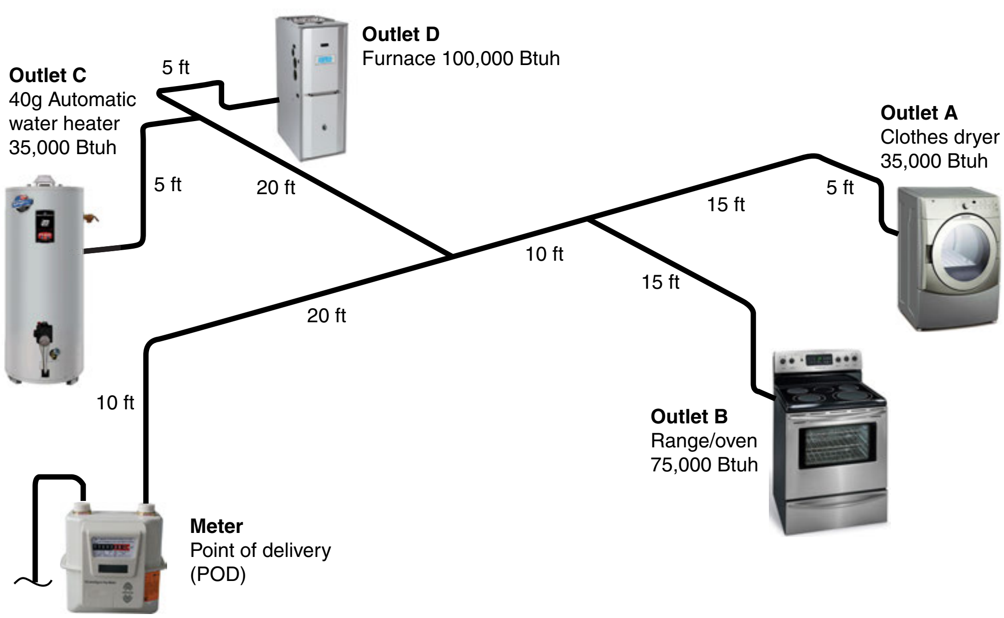
The authority having jurisdiction should review the piping plan and ensure it contains the following details:

- Total length
- Length of the branches
- Total demand of the appliances, in cubic feet per hour for natural gas or Btu/hr for propane
- Type of piping material (e.g., Schedule 40 metallic, copper, or corrugated stainless steel)
- Pressure of gas serving the system (after the service regulator)
- Type of fuel gas (natural gas, propane, etc.)
- Pipe sizing table used

Examples of piping plans are shown in Exhibit 5.1 and in Annex B of the code.

See Annex B for more information.

EXHIBIT 5.1



Typical Piping Layout.

5.1.2 Addition to Existing System.

5.1.2.1 When additional appliances are being connected to a gas piping system, the existing piping shall be checked to determine whether it has adequate capacity.

5.1.2.2 If inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as required, or separate gas piping of adequate capacity shall be provided.

Preparing a sketch, drawing, or plan of the proposed piping system is necessary, whether it is new or an extension of an existing system, to ensure that the gas piping system is adequately sized and will not "starve" any gas appliances.

5.2 Provision for Location of Point of Delivery

The location of the point of delivery shall be acceptable to the serving gas supplier.

Prior to the installation of piping, the gas supplier should be consulted to determine the best point of delivery. A natural gas supplier determines the point of delivery based on company policies or the regulations of the U.S. Department of Transportation or state public utility commission. State law may also govern the point of delivery for LP-Gas systems. The installer must know the point of delivery so that the length of the piping system can be properly determined in order to provide sufficient gas for proper appliance operation. Failure to do so may result in unnecessary field changes, an inadequate piping system, or one that does not coincide with the point of delivery.

5.3 Interconnections Between Gas Piping Systems

5.3.1 Interconnections Supplying Separate Users. Where two or more meters, or two or more service regulators where meters are not provided, are located on the same premises and supply separate users, the gas piping systems shall not be interconnected on the outlet side of the meters or service regulators.

Interconnected gas systems can be a safety issue. A problem can occur in apartment buildings and condominiums where each specific living unit is piped separately to a meter for proper billing. If a cross connection exists, maintenance, emergency, and utility personnel have no way of knowing that all services must be turned off to take the system safely out of service.

Interconnected gas systems are not to be confused with a natural gas supplier providing multiple meters or service regulators to a user. Such an interconnection falls under the meter or service regulator assembly, which is governed by the Department of Transportation in the United States.

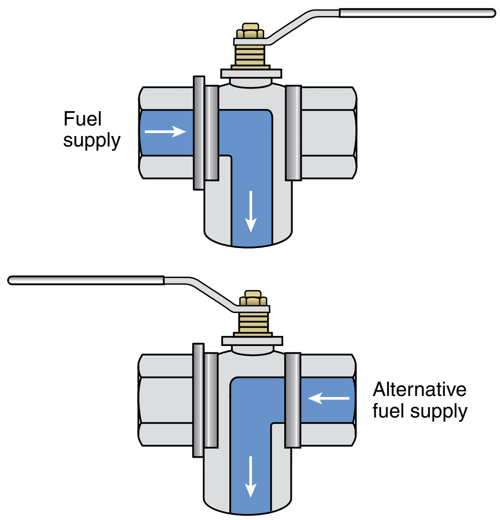
5.3.2 Interconnections for Standby Fuels.

5.3.2.1 Where a supplementary gas for standby use is connected downstream from a meter or a service regulator where a meter is not provided, equipment to prevent backflow shall be installed.

5.3.2.2 A three-way valve installed to admit the standby supply and at the same time shut off the regular supply shall be permitted to be used for this purpose.

Large industrial users may use standby fuels for economic reasons. Where more than one fuel gas is used, the different gas supplies must not be mixed. If a building is served by a natural gas pipeline and uses a propane system for standby, it is most important that propane is not

EXHIBIT 5.2



Three-Way L-Type Valve Showing Different Operating Modes.

fed into the natural gas main and that natural gas is not fed into the propane storage tanks. The former will lead to an increased heating value of the natural gas, resulting in different combustion properties. Appliances adjusted for natural gas will not operate properly on a mixture of natural gas and propane. The latter will lead to operation of the pressure relief valves on propane tanks when the tanks are filled. The use of a three-way valve, such as the one shown in Exhibit 5.2, is one way to prevent the accidental mixing of two fuel supplies.

5.4 Sizing of Gas Piping Systems

See Annex B and Chapter 6 for more information.

The code requires that gas piping be sized to provide sufficient gas to meet the maximum load. Any of the three sizing methods specified in 5.4.3 can be used. The graphical sizing method shown in Annex B also may be used if approved by the authority having jurisdiction. The sizing methods specified include the following:

- The pipe sizing tables or equations in Chapter 6 (Three methods are provided in Chapter 6 to use the tables — the longest length method, the branch length method, and the hybrid pressure method.)
- Other approved engineering methods, such as the graphical method in Annex B
- Sizing tables included in the manufacturer's installation instructions for listed piping systems

No matter which method is used, the piping system must provide sufficient gas for all appliances to operate properly at any time.

5.4.1* General Considerations. Gas piping systems shall be of such size and so installed as to provide a supply of gas sufficient to meet the maximum demand and supply gas to each appliance inlet at not less than the minimum supply pressure required by the appliance.

The code requirement simply states that the appliances operate properly and the gas piping system be properly sized. Gas piping systems must supply the volume of gas required by each gas appliance such that the following criteria are met:

- The pressure required by each appliance is at least the minimum in order for all appliances to perform properly under all operating conditions.
- The maximum pressure specified by each appliance manufacturer is not exceeded.

Providing a sufficient volume of gas to meet the maximum demand required by each appliance is the essence of the piping sizing requirements of the *National Fuel Gas Code*. Although the code provides many gas pipe sizing tables, they are not the code requirement.

In addition, ensuring that gas pressure to the connected equipment remains within the manufacturer's design limits when the equipment cycles "off" is important. A gas piping system's operating pressure has an effect on capacity, with higher initial pressures and their corresponding greater pressure drops enabling greater capacities for a given pipe or tube size. Gas piping systems that operate at pressures exceeding the connected gas appliance's rated inlet pressure, or that deliver gas at a pressure that varies outside the equipment manufacturer's design pressure limits, must incorporate pressure regulators so that gas delivered to the equipment is within the design pressure range. See Section 5.8 for line pressure regulator requirements.

Regardless of which method is used to size the gas piping system, the volume of gas required by each appliance, and the pressure at which it operates, must be known. Knowing the amount of gas each appliance requires is not as straightforward as many users believe. In new construction, the appliances may not be selected until after the piping is installed, and reasonable assumptions must be made. Replacement appliances may not be of the same input as the appliances they replace and can use more or less gas. When the maximum input of the appliance is not known, the person responsible for designing and sizing the gas piping system must make reasonable assumptions to estimate the installed appliance's maximum input rating.

A.5.4.1 The size of gas piping depends on the following factors:

(1) Allowable loss in pressure from point of delivery to appliance
(2) Maximum gas demand
(3) Length of piping and number of fittings
(4) Specific gravity of the gas
(5) Diversity factor
(6) Foreseeable future demand

5.4.2* Maximum Gas Demand.

A.5.4.2 To obtain the cubic feet per hour of gas required, divide the Btu per hour rating by the Btu per cubic foot heating value of the gas supplied. The heating value of the gas can be obtained from the local gas supplier.

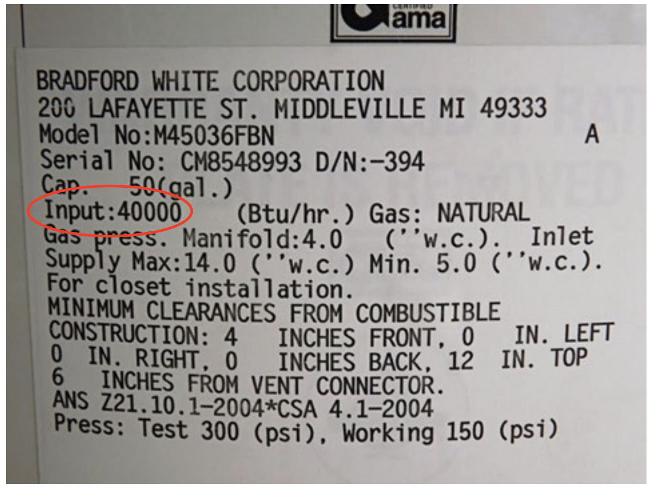
Where the ratings of the appliances to be installed are not known, Table A.5.4.2.1 shows the approximate demand of typical appliances by types.

5.4.2.1* The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided shall be the sum of the maximum inputs of the appliances served.

Natural gas has a nominal heating value of 1000 Btu/ft^3 (37 kJ/m^3), and Table 6.2(a) through Table 6.2(x), for sizing natural gas systems, provide capacity in cubic feet per hour. Propane gas has a heating value of about 2500 Btu/ft^3 (93 kJ/m^3), and Table 6.3(a) through Table 6.3(m), for sizing propane systems, provide capacity in thousands of Btu per hour. There is no technical reason for this difference, but it represents a system with which many people have become comfortable.

Gas piping systems must supply the volume of gas required by each gas appliance. The designer is cautioned because the input ratings of such domestic appliances as ranges, gas logs, and ovens vary widely. The gas input rating can be found on the appliance rating plate. See Exhibit 5.3.

EXHIBIT 5.3



Representative Appliance Nameplate Highlighting Heat Input. (Courtesy of Pennie L. Feehan Consulting)

In some commercial and industrial applications, equipment requires pressure greater than the normal 7 in. w.c. (1.7 kPa) for natural gas or 11 in. w.c. (2.7 kPa) for propane. In the case of natural gas systems, the gas supplier should be contacted to determine the availability of gas at a higher pressure, and the piping system should be designed according to that supply pressure. For propane systems, the propane regulator must be selected appropriately, and the propane storage containers must provide sufficient vaporization capacity over the range of temperatures anticipated.

The piping provisions of this code can be used for piping systems up to 125 psi (862 kPa). Pressure higher than 125 psi (862 kPa) is not prohibited, but other codes must be used for piping design and installation. [See the commentary following 1.1.1.1(B).]

Code Update

A.5.4.2.1 Some older appliances do not have a nameplate. In this case Table A.5.4.2.1 or an estimate of the appliance input should be used. The input can be based on the following:

(1) A rating provided by the manufacturer
(2) The rating of similar appliances
(3) Recommendations of the gas supplier
(4) Recommendations of a qualified agency
(5) A gas flow test
(6) Measurement of the orifice size of the appliance

The requirement of 5.4.1 that the piping system provide sufficient gas to each appliance inlet must be complied with.

Table A.5.4.2.1 previously appeared in the body of the code. The table provides approximate values of heat input for common residential appliances. As guidance material, this is more appropriate as an annex item.

5.4.2.2 The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided shall be adjusted for altitude where the installation is above 2,000 ft.

TABLE A.5.4.2.1 Approximate Gas Input for Typical Appliances

Appliance	*Input Btu/hr (Approx.)*	*Appliance*	*Input Btu/hr (Approx.)*
Space Heating Units		Water heater, automatic instantaneous	
Warm air furnace		Capacity at 2 gal/min	142,800
Single family	100,000	Capacity at 4 gal/min	285,000
Multifamily, per unit	60,000	Capacity at 6 gal/min	428,400
Hydronic boiler		Water heater, domestic, circulating or side-arm	35,000
Single family	100,000	**Cooking Appliances**	
Multifamily, per unit	60,000	Range, freestanding, domestic	65,000
Space and Water Heating Units		Built-in oven or broiler unit, domestic	25,000
Hydronic boiler		Built-in top unit, domestic	40,000
Single family	120,000	**Other Appliances**	
Multifamily, per unit	75,000	Refrigerator	3,000
Water Heating Appliances		Clothes dryer, Type 1 (domestic)	35,000
Water heater, automatic storage 30 gal to 40 gal tank	35,000	Gas fireplace direct vent	40,000
		Gas log	80,000
Water heater, automatic storage 50 gal tank	50,000	Barbecue	40,000
		Gas light	2,500

The effect of altitude on combustion becomes relevant above altitudes of 2000 ft (600 m). At this altitude, water boils at approximately 208°F (98°C) instead of 212°F, and adjustments sometimes need to be made to compensate for the reduced air pressure and water boiling point. Altitude affects cooking in three different ways:

- The higher the elevation, the lower the boiling point of water. When water boils at lower temperatures, it takes longer for foods to cook in or over water.
- The higher the elevation, the faster moisture evaporates.
- The higher the elevation, the faster leavening gases (air, carbon dioxide, and water vapor) expand.

5.4.2.3 The total connected hourly load shall be used as the basis for piping sizing, assuming all appliances are operating at full capacity simultaneously.

Exception: Sizing shall be permitted to be based upon established load diversity factors.

Diversity of load is the reduction of load per unit in piping serving multiple units. Diversity of load is important in buildings such as apartment buildings, where many apartments are served by common supply piping, and there are many gas ranges, water heaters, and furnaces or boilers on a single gas supply system. The reduction of pipe sizing of the supply system where a diversity of load exists assumes that appliances will not operate simultaneously. It is reasonable to assume that all occupants will not take showers at the same time, that they all will not operate cooking appliances at the same time, and that all furnaces will not operate simultaneously, because of the cyclical nature of their operation. Gas suppliers may provide load diversity factors applicable to their service areas. Load diversity factors may vary by region or climate. Check with the local gas utility or propane supplier for more information.

5.4.3* Sizing Methods. Gas piping shall be sized in accordance with one of the following:

(1) Pipe sizing tables or sizing equations in Chapter 6
(2) Other approved engineering methods acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Sizing tables included in a listed piping system manufacturer's installation instructions

A.5.4.3 The gas-carrying capacities for different sizes and lengths of iron pipe, or equivalent rigid pipe, and semirigid tubing are shown in the capacity tables in Chapter 6.

Table 6.2(a) through Table 6.2(v) indicate approximate capacities for single runs of piping. If the specific gravity of the gas is other than 0.60, correction factors should be applied. Correction factors for use with these tables are given in Table B.3.4.

For any gas piping system, for special appliances, or for conditions other than those covered by the capacity tables in Chapter 6, such as longer runs, greater gas demands, or greater pressure drops, the size of each gas piping system should be determined by the pipe sizing equations in Section 6.4 or by standard engineering methods acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

A suggested procedure for using the Chapter 6 tables to size a gas piping system is illustrated in Annex B.

Several pipe sizing methods are recognized in the code. These include the pipe sizing equations in Chapter 6, the longest length and branch length sizing methods, sizing tables provided by manufacturers of listed piping materials, such as CSST, and other approved sizing methods.

Although the code never mandated the use of the longest length method, most code users choose this method because it is easy to use and it provides adequate pipe sizing with an ample margin for future expansion. The branch length method can also be selected, as well as the pipe sizing tables provided for listed piping systems. The pipe sizing equations in Chapter 6 can also be used. Other engineering methods, such as the graphical method provided in Annex B, are also permitted, but only when approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

See Chapter 6 and Annex B for more information.

Longest Length Method. The longest length method, using the tables or sizing equations in Chapter 6, is the most widely used method of sizing gas piping. The tables contain gas-carrying capacities for different sizes and lengths of iron pipe (or equivalently dimensioned rigid pipe), semirigid tubing, and CSST. The tables for natural gas are located in Section 6.2 and those for propane are located in Section 6.3. Both sections are arranged in order by piping material (pipe, tube, CSST, and polyethylene), pressure, and pressure drop allowed.

The longest length method is straightforward and can be used by any gas piping installer. The tables for pipe and tubing do not attempt to optimize pipe size to minimize material costs, because the potential savings to be had on a house or a small multifamily dwelling or commercial building will be much less than the cost of the time it would take an engineer to precisely calculate the system. In larger installations, an architect or engineer is usually involved, and it can be economical to use another sizing method because significant savings can result.

FAQ Why might the branch length method of calculating pipe size be useful?

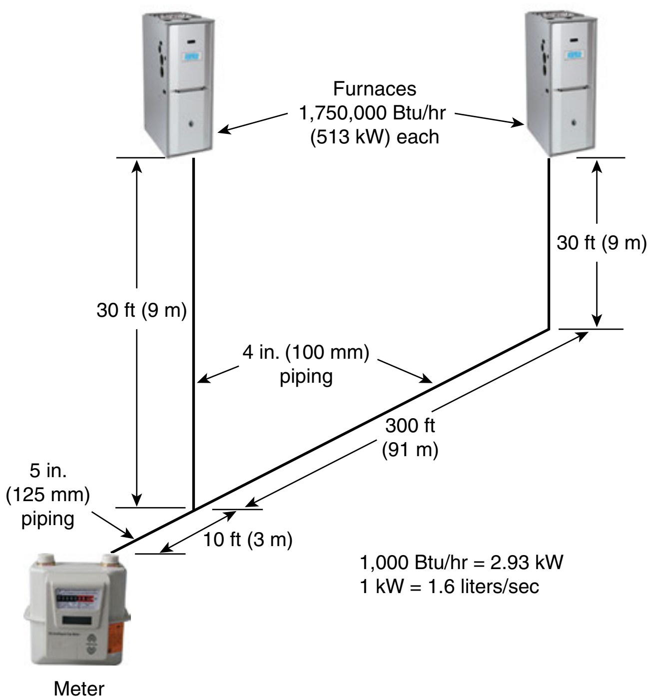
Branch Length Method. The branch length method may provide smaller pipe diameters than the longest length method in systems of widely varying lengths from the point of delivery to the appliances.

Exhibit 5.4 and Exhibit 5.5 show the pipe size reduction of a small system using the branch length method versus the longest length method. Refer to the commentary in Chapter 6 for more information on the branch length method.

5.4.4 Allowable Pressure Drop. The design pressure loss in any piping system under maximum probable flow conditions, from the point of delivery to the inlet connection of the appliance, shall be such that the supply pressure at the appliance is greater than or equal to the minimum pressure required by the appliance.

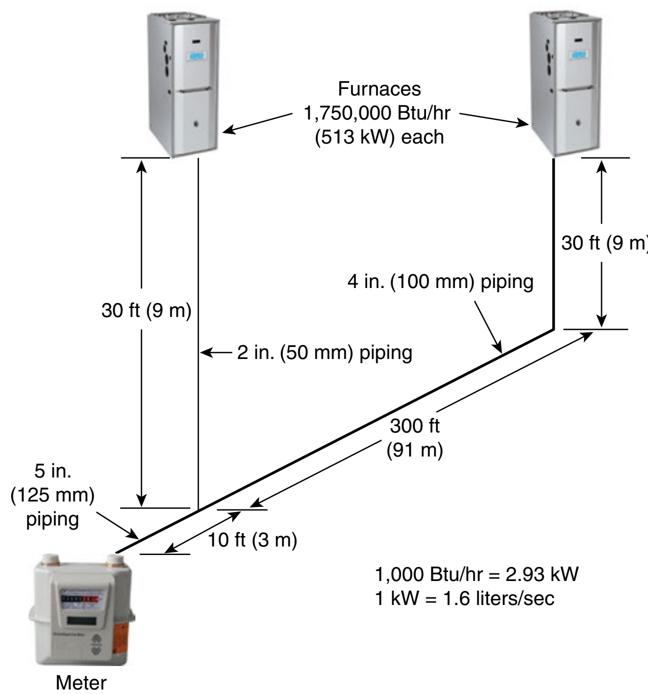
Many code users do not understand the term *pressure drop* as used in a gas piping system. Pressure drop is an important concept because it affects gas pipe sizing. In any gas piping system with flowing gas, there is a certain amount of friction, which slows the flow of gas and can be

EXHIBIT 5.4



Piping System Sized Using the Longest Length Method.

EXHIBIT 5.5



Piping System Sized Using the Branch Length Method.

measured by the difference in pressure measurements along the piping system. Of interest is the difference, or pressure drop, between the inlet pressure and the pressure at the most remote appliance. Pressure drop is important because an appliance will not operate properly if the gas pressure at the inlet to the appliance is less than that required by the manufacturer.

The appliance nameplate, such as one shown in Exhibit 5.3, usually identifies the minimum gas inlet pressure. The piping designer should specify an allowable pressure drop between the point of delivery and the appliance. The tables in Chapter 6 identify the pressure drops used to calculate the flows for the table in the identification block at the top right of each table. When selecting a table, the user should check the pressure drop given for that table. If an excessive pressure drop is used, some appliances may not operate properly when the system is under full load. It is possible to use a compressor to boost gas pressure to make up for the pressure drop due to friction. This is rarely done, however, because the cost of a compressor and the energy to operate it will almost always exceed the cost of larger pipe.

5.5 Piping System Operating Pressure Limitations

5.5.1 Maximum Design Operating Pressure. The maximum design operating pressure for piping systems located inside buildings shall not exceed 5 psi (34 kPa) unless one or more of the following conditions are met:

(1)*The piping system is welded.
(2) The piping is located in a ventilated chase or otherwise enclosed for protection against accidental gas accumulation.

(3) The piping is located inside buildings or separate areas of buildings used exclusively for one of the following:
 (a) Industrial processing or heating
 (b) Research
 (c) Warehousing
 (d) Boiler or mechanical rooms

FAQ Why is gas pressure normally limited to 5 psi (34 kPa)?

When a leak occurs in a 5 psi gas piping system, the flow of gas is proportional to the pressure. Most gas appliances are designed for and operate substantially below 5 psi (34 kPa). Leakage in a piping system that operates at 7 in. w.c. (1.7 kPa) (natural gas) or 11 in. w.c. (2.7 kPa) (propane) would be significantly less than a system operating at 5 psi (34 kPa) or 20 psi (140 kPa). The 5 psi (34 kPa) general pressure limit for threaded gas piping systems in buildings recognizes these facts. For piping above 5 psi (34 kPa), welding is the most common method used to comply with 5.5.1. Welded pipe joints have a lower possibility of leakage compared to threaded pipe joints.

(4) The piping is a temporary installation for buildings under construction.

Temporary piping systems used during construction are exempt from the pressure limit because there is no exposure to the public.

(5) The piping serves appliances or equipment used for agricultural purposes.

Gas piping systems that are exclusively for agricultural purposes are exempt from the 5 psi service pressure limitation. This exemption recognizes that higher pressures are typically used on farms for livestock facilities and other purposes. Examples of such buildings are greenhouses, poultry breeding facilities, tobacco drying barns, and others. Note that 1.1.1.2(2) exempts farm appliances and equipment from the scope of NFPA 54.

(6) The piping system is an LP-Gas piping system with a design operating pressure greater than 20 psi (138 kPa) and complies with NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*.

Propane piping systems complying with NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, for systems above 20 psig (140 kPa) are exempt from the 5 psi limitation.

A.5.5.1(1) For welding specifications and procedures that can be used, see the API 1104, *Welding of Pipelines and Related Facilities*; AWS B2.1, *Specification for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification*; or ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX.

5.5.2 LP-Gas Systems. LP-Gas systems designed to operate below –5°F (–21°C) or with butane or a propane–butane mix shall be designed to either accommodate liquid LP-Gas or to prevent LP-Gas vapor from condensing back into a liquid.

When LP-Gas condenses into a liquid and enters a burner designed for vapor, it will produce a significant increase in flame size, which can damage the equipment and create a fire hazard. At higher pressures, propane droplets begin to form at temperatures below 25°F (–4°C). There are many areas in the United States and Canada where ambient temperatures are 25°F (–4°C) or below.

In areas where the ambient temperatures can reach –5°F (–21°C) or below, systems need to be designed to accommodate liquid LP-Gas or prevent the LP-Gas from condensing.

Commentary Table 5.1 shows the pressure at which liquefaction occurs for the minimum expected system temperature for propane systems. Commentary Table 5.2 presents similar data for butane systems.

COMMENTARY TABLE 5.1 *Liquefaction of Propane*

Minimum Anticipated Temperature (°F)	Liquefaction Pressure (psi)
−5	20.0
−10	16.7
−15	13.6
−20	10.7
−25	8.0
−30	5.6
−35	3.4
−40	1.5

For SI units: °C = 5/9 (°F −32); 1 psi = 6.894 kPa.

COMMENTARY TABLE 5.2 *Liquefaction of Butane*

Minimum Anticipated Temperature (°F)	Liquefaction Pressure (psi)
80	22.9
75	19.8
70	16.9
65	14.2
60	11.6
55	9.1
50	6.9
45	4.9
40	3.0
35	1.3

For SI units: °C = 5/9 (°F − 32); 1 psi = 6.894 kPa.

5.6* Acceptable Piping Materials and Joining Methods

A.5.6 Table A.5.6 is a list of piping materials and fittings that are allowed in the Code.

TABLE A.5.6 *Pipe, Tube, Fittings, and Joints for Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum Gas Applications*

Pipe		Fitting Types		
Material	**Standard**	**Metallic Pipe**	**Joint Types**	**Other Requirements**
Black Steel *Minimum Schedule 40*	ASTM A 106*	Steel Malleable Iron Steel Cast Iron ASME B16.1* Copper Alloy Special Copper Alloy	Threaded Flanged	5.6.5, 5.6.6, 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.8.4, 7.13
Galvanized Steel *Minimum Schedule 40*	ASTM A 53*			
Wrought Iron *Minimum Schedule 40* *Also known as low iron or wrought steel*	ASME B 36.10M*			
Copper	None Specified	Cast Copper Alloy Copper Alloy Special	None Specified	5.6.2.3, 5.6.2.4, 5.6.5, 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.8.2, 5.6.8.4, 7.13

(continues)

TABLE A.5.6 Continued

Pipe		*Fitting Types*		
Material	***Standard***	***Metallic Pipe***	***Joint Types***	***Other Requirements***
Copper Alloy (Brass)	None Specified			
Aluminum	ASTM B 241*	Aluminum Special	None Specified	5.6.2.4, 5.6.2.5, 5.6.3, 5.6.5, 5.6.6, 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.8.4, 7.13
Metallic Tubing				
Copper	ASTM B 88* ASTM B 280*	Cast Copper Alloy Wrought Copper Press fittings meeting ANSI LC4* Forged Copper Alloy Special	Brazed Flanged/Brazed Brazed Mechanically Pressed (Crimped) Flared	5.6.3, 5.6.3.2, 5.6.5, 5.6.6, 5.6.8.1, 5.6.8.2, 7.13
CSST	ANSI LC 1/ CSA 6.26*	ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26*	Manufacturer's installation instructions	5.6.5, 5.6.6, 7.2.8, 7.13, 9.6.1(5)
Aluminum	ASTM B 210* ASTM B 241*	Copper Alloy (Brass) Special	Compression	5.6.5, 5.6.6, 7.13, 9.6.1(2), 9.6.1(8)
Steel	ASTM A 254*	Special		5.6.3, 5.6.5, 5.6.6, 5.6.8.4, 7.13
Non-Metallic Pipe				
Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide (PA)	ASTM D 2513*	Polyethylene (PE) or Polyamide (PA) ASTM D 2513* (Heat fusion) Service head adapters meeting Category I of ASTM D 2513* Connections to Metallic Pipe meeting ASTM D 2513*, ASTM F 1973*, or ASTM F 2509*	Manufacturer's instructions Compression-type mechanical joints Heat Fusion	5.6.5, 5.6.6, 5.6.9, 7.1.7

*Required standard. See Annex K for standard title.

Table A.5.6 provides a summary of allowed pipe, tubing, and fittings. It was added to provide users with a guide to quickly find the applicable code text for their chosen pipe, tubing, and fittings.

5.6.1 General.

5.6.1.1 Acceptable Materials. Materials used for piping systems shall either comply with the requirements of this chapter or be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

All piping material listed in this chapter is allowed for gas piping systems. Materials other than those listed in this chapter may be used when approved by the authority having jurisdiction. The most widely used piping materials are listed in the code to assist users, but they are not intended to restrict the use of other materials that may be preferred in other cases. One example is stainless steel pipe, which is not widely used due to its higher cost, but in chemical plants with corrosive atmospheres, it may be preferred.

Specific criteria for approval of piping materials are not provided in the code; however, the authority having jurisdiction should require proof that the material can hold the anticipated pressure, is compatible with the gas being used, has the mechanical strength needed for the installation, and has resistance to any corrosive environment in which the piping system may be placed.

5.6.1.2 Used Materials. Pipe, fittings, valves, or other materials shall not be used again unless they are free of foreign materials and have been ascertained to be adequate for the service intended.

While materials are not often reused in gas piping systems, there is no reason to prevent them from being used again if they retain their original strength and thickness. Approval should be obtained prior to installation because an inspection of the used material may be required.

5.6.1.3 Other Materials. Material not covered by the standards specifications listed herein shall meet the following criteria:

(1) Be investigated and tested to determine that it is safe and suitable for the proposed service
(2) Be recommended for that service by the manufacturer
(3) Be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

The code's intent is not to prohibit the use of new or different materials or technology. The intent is to provide the authority having jurisdiction with a basis on which to judge the acceptability of alternate piping materials that are not recognized specifically in the code (i.e., requiring evidence to substantiate the safety and suitability of the new piping materials or practices).

5.6.2 Metallic Pipe.

5.6.2.1 Cast Iron. Cast-iron pipe shall not be used.

5.6.2.2 Steel and Wrought Iron. Steel and wrought-iron pipe shall be at least of standard weight (Schedule 40) and shall comply with one of the following standards:

(1) ANSI/ASME B36.10M, *Welded and Seamless Wrought-Steel Pipe*
(2) ASTM A 53, *Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated Welded and Seamless*
(3) ASTM A 106, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service*

5.6.2.3* Copper and Copper Alloy. Copper and copper alloy pipe shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 scf of gas (0.7 mg/100 L).

A.5.6.2.3 An average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 scf of gas (0.7 mg/100 L) is equivalent to a trace as determined by ANSI/ASTM D 2385, *Method of Test for Hydrogen Sulfide and Mercaptan Sulfur in Natural Gas (Cadmium Sulfate — Iodometric Titration Method),* or ANSI/ASTM D 2420, *Method of Test for Hydrogen Sulfide in Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gases (Lead Acetate Method).*

Hydrogen sulfide is a naturally occurring impurity in natural gas and crude oil. LP-Gas is produced from two sources. Propane is one of the byproducts of natural gas processing and is also produced by refining crude oil. Hydrogen sulfide is removed at the natural gas processing plant and in the crude oil–refining process. The remaining trace amounts of hydrogen sulfide should not have any significant corrosive effect on copper or copper alloy pipe.

FAQ Where can information on the hydrogen sulfide content of the gas supplied be found locally?

Natural gas is tested for the presence of hydrogen sulfide. Information on hydrogen sulfide levels should be available from the natural gas supplier. Propane is usually tested in the distribution system, and information may be available from the propane supplier.

FAQ Why is hydrogen sulfide limited in fuel gases?

Hydrogen sulfide is highly corrosive to copper and copper alloys. Copper and copper alloys are used as a residential gas piping material and in valves, and corrosion by the gas is not acceptable.

FAQ How can I tell if hydrogen sulfide has caused corrosion in a piping system?

If inspection of the inside of the pipe or tubing reveals accumulation of a fine black powder or black flakes that may have a shiny finish, then hydrogen sulfide should be suspected. Hydrogen sulfide reacts with copper (or the copper in copper alloy) to form copper sulfide. In such cases, replacement of all copper and copper alloy components should be considered. The gas supplier should be notified, because other systems may also be similarly affected.

5.6.2.4 Threaded Copper, Copper Alloy, and Aluminum. Threaded copper, copper alloy, or aluminum alloy pipe shall not be used with gases corrosive to such material.

5.6.2.5 Aluminum Alloy. Aluminum alloy pipe shall comply with ASTM B 241, *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube* (except that the use of alloy 5456 is prohibited), and shall be marked at each end of each length indicating compliance. Aluminum alloy pipe shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or is subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergents, or sewage.

Aluminum tubing must be marked so that technicians and inspectors can see that the tubing meets the ASTM B 241, *Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube* specification. The coating requirement and prohibition of underground and exterior applications minimize corrosion.

Strong acids and strong bases readily corrode aluminum and its alloys. The assistance of a metallurgist or qualified corrosion specialist is recommended strongly in selecting an aluminum alloy, because the corrosion behavior of aluminum alloys varies significantly. Although they are used in some other countries, aluminum pipe and tubing are not generally used for gas piping in the United States. Aluminum tubing is used for piping that is part of appliances; however, this code does not cover such piping.

5.6.2.6 Aluminum Installation. Aluminum alloy pipe shall not be used in exterior locations or underground.

5.6.3 Metallic Tubing. Seamless copper, aluminum alloy, or steel tubing shall not be used with gases corrosive to such material.

Copper, aluminum alloy, and steel tubing are permitted for the types and grades listed in the following subparagraphs, provided that the gas is not corrosive to the tubing material. Note that aluminum alloy tubing is subject to the same restrictions as aluminum alloy pipe.

5.6.3.1 Steel. Steel tubing shall comply with ASTM A 254, *Standard Specification for Copper Brazed Steel Tubing.*

5.6.3.2* Copper and Copper Alloy. Copper and copper alloy tubing shall not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 scf of gas (0.7 mg/100 L). Copper tubing shall comply with standard Type K or Type L of ASTM B 88, *Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube,* or ASTM B 280, *Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service*.

A.5.6.3.2 Copper and copper alloy tubing and fittings (except tin-lined copper tubing) should not be used if the gas contains more than an average of 0.3 grains of hydrogen sulfide per 100 scf of gas (0.7 mg/100 L).

Prohibiting copper and copper alloy tubing when gas contains more than a trace of hydrogen sulfide is consistent with the requirement for copper and copper alloy pipe. All natural gas that is distributed in pipelines, and all LP-Gas in the United States today, is treated to remove hydrogen sulfide. If natural gas is obtained directly from a gas well, this prohibition is important because there is no removal of hydrogen sulfide when gas is used directly from a well.

5.6.3.3 Aluminum. Aluminum alloy tubing shall comply with ASTM B 210, *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes,* or ASTM B 241, *Specification for Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube.* Aluminum alloy tubing shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where it is in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or is subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water, detergent, or sewage. Aluminum alloy tubing shall not be used in exterior locations or underground.

5.6.3.4 Corrugated Stainless Steel. Corrugated stainless steel tubing shall be listed in accordance with ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing.*

Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) was introduced to the North American market in the mid-1980s as a new gas piping material. It has been accepted and is being used throughout most areas. A supplement titled Update on the Design and Installation Requirements for CSST Gas Piping Systems provides more detail and is available for free download at www.nfpa.org/54HB. (See also Exhibit 5.6.)

The *National Fuel Gas Code* permits the installation of systems using CSST listed in accordance with the requirements of ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*. Note that the manufacturer's installation instructions include any installation requirements in ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26. There should not be any conflicts between the code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Note also that there are specific electrical bonding and grounding requirements for CSST installations in Section 7.13.

EXHIBIT 5.6

Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing. (Courtesy of Gastite Division of Titeflex)

5.6.4 Plastic Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings.

5.6.4.1 Standard and Marking.

5.6.4.1.1 Polyethylene plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings used to supply fuel gas shall conform to ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings.* Pipe to be used shall be marked "gas" and "ASTM D 2513."

5.6.4.1.2 Plastic pipe, tubing and fittings, other than polyethylene, shall be identified in and conform to the 2008 edition of ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*. Pipe to be used shall be marked "gas" and "ASTM D 2513."

Code Update

5.6.4.1.3 Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) and chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings shall not be used to supply fuel gas.

PVC and CPVC piping products are "rigid" thermoplastic materials. Rigid thermoplastic materials are not recommend for the testing, transport, or storage of compressed air or gases. The compressibility of air and/or other gases results in tremendous amounts of stored energy, even at lower pressures. Should a failure occur in a compressed air or gas system for any reason (e.g., improper assembly, mechanical damage), the failure will be dramatic in nature due to the physical characteristics of the rigid piping in combination with the immediate release of this stored energy.

5.6.4.2* Regulator Vent Piping. Plastic pipe and fittings used to connect regulator vents to remote vent terminations shall be PVC conforming to ANSI/UL 651, *Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings*. PVC vent piping shall not be installed indoors.

A.5.6.4.2 The reference to ANSI/UL 651, *Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings*, is to require that PVC be a minimum of Schedule 40 and that it be resistant to the effects of ultraviolet light because it is likely to be exposed to the outdoors when used for regulator vents.

5.6.4.3 Anodeless Risers. Anodeless risers shall comply with the following:

(1) Factory-assembled anodeless risers shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used and shall be leak tested by the manufacturer in accordance with written procedures.
(2) Service head adapters and field-assembled anodeless risers incorporating service head adapters shall be recommended by the manufacturer for the gas used and shall be design-certified to meet the requirements of Category I of ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings,* and 49 CFR 192.281(e). The manufacturer shall provide the user qualified installation instructions as prescribed by 49 CFR 192.283(b).
(3) The use of plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings in undiluted LP-Gas piping systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*.

An anodeless riser, such as the one shown in Exhibit 5.7, is an assembly that makes the transition from underground plastic pipe or tubing to aboveground metal pipe or tubing.

Risers are available as one-piece, factory-assembled units and as field-assembled units. Factory-assembled risers have a baked, protective coating that makes the use of a sacrificial anode for corrosion protection unnecessary.

5.6.5 Workmanship and Defects. Gas pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be clear and free from cutting burrs and defects in structure or threading and shall be thoroughly brushed and

EXHIBIT 5.7

Riser.

chip and scale blown. Defects in pipe, tubing, and fittings shall not be repaired. Defective pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be replaced.

Installers must inspect and clean piping materials before assembly to ensure compliance with the code. Small pieces of metal can clog the small clearances between moving parts and burner orifices.

FAQ Can defective pipe or fittings be repaired?

Defects in pipe, tubing, or fittings must not be repaired. When defective pipe, tubing, or fittings are located in a system, the defective material must be replaced. Repairing defective components is not an appropriate remedy.

Paragraph 8.1.1.3 covers testing requirements for repairs and additions to systems, including those in which defective materials have been replaced.

5.6.6 Protective Coating. Where in contact with material or atmosphere exerting a corrosive action, metallic piping and fittings coated with a corrosion-resistant material shall be used. External or internal coatings or linings used on piping or components shall not be considered as adding strength.

Materials commonly used for protective coating include paint, polyethylene jacketing over a mastic primer, and fusion-bonded epoxy. Paint is often used on abovegrade applications, and the other coatings are used on underground pipe. Galvanization is not considered to be an adequate protective coating on underground installations. Galvanizing, or coating with zinc, provides a sacrificial coating, because the zinc will be corroded before steel. When the zinc is gone, the steel will corrode. It is not possible to inspect buried pipe to determine when all the zinc is gone.

Using a corrosion-resistant material for these applications is often more satisfactory than providing a corrosion protection system that inherently has a limited life.

5.6.7 Metallic Pipe Threads.

5.6.7.1 Specifications for Pipe Threads. Metallic pipe and fitting threads shall be taper pipe threads and shall comply with ANSI/ASME B1.20.1, *Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch.*

5.6.7.2 Damaged Threads. Pipe with threads that are stripped, chipped, corroded, or otherwise damaged shall not be used. Where a weld opens during the operation of cutting or threading, that portion of the pipe shall not be used.

5.6.7.3 Number of Threads. Field threading of metallic pipe shall be in accordance with Table 5.6.7.3.

***TABLE 5.6.7.3** Specifications for Threading Metallic Pipe*

Iron Pipe Size (in.)	*Approximate Length of Threaded Portion (in.)*	*Approximate No. of Threads to Be Cut*
½	¾	10
¾	¾	10
1	⅞	10
1¼	1	11
1½	1	11
2	1	11
2½	1½	12
3	1½	12
4	1⅝	13

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm.

Paragraph 5.6.7.3 establishes requirements for the number of threads for a given pipe size by reference to Table 5.6.7.3. National Pipe Thread (NPT) taper is a U.S. standard for tapered threads used on threaded pipes and fittings. NPT is defined by ANSI/ASME B1.20.1, *Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch*.

FAQ Why is the correct number of threads on metallic pipe so critical?

The taper on NPT threads allows them to form a seal when torqued, as the sides of the threads compress against each other. In comparison, parallel/straight thread fittings or compression fittings have threads that merely hold the pieces together and do not provide a seal. As the thread body is tapered, a larger diameter keeps compressing into a smaller diameter and finally forms a seal (no clearance remains between the crests and roots of the threads because of the taper). NPT fittings should be free of burrs and lubricated using a material like lubricating paste or tape. The use of tape also helps to limit corrosion on the threads, which otherwise can make future disassembly difficult. It is equally important that the couplings are also tapered.

If common threading dies (e.g., fixed cutting heads) are run too far onto the pipe during the threading process, the resulting threads will be straight (untapered) for a portion of the threads and then will taper. These straight threads are known as "running threads," because the thread has been "run" down the pipe. An improperly threaded pipe may bottom out in the fitting before the tapered threads are firmly seated. Because pipe fittings depend on a tapered thread on the pipe to seal properly, an improperly threaded pipe can easily result in a leak at the joint. Proper use of a fixed die requires the threading operation to stop as soon as the end of the pipe exits the die.

5.6.7.4* Thread Joint Compounds. Thread joint compounds shall be resistant to the action of LP-Gas or to any other chemical constituents of the gases to be conducted through the piping.

Thread compounds should be applied only to the male pipe connection to avoid having the compound enter the piping system during assembly.

Thread seal tape is a polytetrafluoroethylene (PTFE) film cut to specified widths and thicknesses for use in sealing pipe threads. It is also known as plumber's tape, PTFE tape, tape dope, or popularly but incorrectly as Teflon (a DuPont trade name) tape. PTFE tape sometimes is sold in small spools like those shown in Exhibit 5.8.

EXHIBIT 5.8

Spools of PTFE Tape. (Photograph by Krysta S. Doerfler, Fine Homebuilding Magazine © 2009, The Taunton Press, Inc.)

The PTFE tape is wrapped around the exposed threads of a pipe before the pipe is screwed into place. The tape is commonly used in pressurized gas piping systems using thread joints with coarse threads. One of the defining characteristics of PTFE is how good it is at defeating friction. PTFE tape is appropriate for use on tapered threads, where the sealing force is a wedge action. The use of PTFE tape on tapered pipe threads performs a lubricating function, which more easily allows the threads to be screwed together to the point of deformation, which is what creates the seal. PTFE tape is typically wrapped three times around the pipe threads, as shown in Exhibit 5.9, to ensure a tight seal and to prevent leaks.

The use of PTFE tape is not prohibited by the code. Appliance manufacturers may have restrictions on the use of PTFE tape used on gas valves or connections. Refer to the manufacturer's installation instructions for direction.

A.5.6.7.4 Joint sealing compounds are used in tapered pipe thread joints to provide lubrication to the joint as it is tightened so that less tightening torque is "used up" to overcome friction and also to provide a seal of the small leak paths that would otherwise remain in a metal-to-metal threaded joint.

Commonly used joint sealing compounds include pipe dope and polytetrafluoroethylene tape, also known as PTFE or Teflon® tape. Some pipe dopes also contain PTFE. Joint sealing compounds should be applied so that no sealing compound finds its way into the interior of a completed joint.

Pipe dope application should be made only to the male pipe thread of the joint and should coat all of the threads commencing one thread back from the end of the threaded pipe.

PTFE tape application should be made by wrapping the tape tightly around the male thread in a clockwise direction when viewed from the end of the pipe to which the tape is being applied. Tape application should wrap all of the threads commencing one thread back from the end of the threaded pipe.

EXHIBIT 5.9

Winding PTFE Tape on a Male Pipe Connection. (Photograph by Krysta S. Doerfler, Fine Homebuilding Magazine © 2009, The Taunton Press, Inc.)

5.6.8 Metallic Piping Joints and Fittings. The type of piping joint used shall be suitable for the pressure and temperature conditions and shall be selected giving consideration to joint tightness and mechanical strength under the service conditions. The joint shall be able to sustain the maximum end force due to the internal pressure and any additional forces due to temperature expansion or contraction, vibration, fatigue, or the weight of the pipe and its contents.

When choosing the joining methods for a gas piping system, pressure and temperature conditions need to be considered. Some approved joining methods may be inappropriate for some ambient conditions. For example, a threaded joint is not desirable for a system that is exposed to significant vibration or external mechanical loads.

5.6.8.1* Pipe Joints. Pipe joints shall be threaded, flanged, brazed, or welded. Where nonferrous pipe is brazed, the brazing materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus.

A.5.6.8.1 For welding and brazing specifications and procedures that can be used, see API 1104, *Welding Pipelines and Related Facilities*; AWS B2.1, *Specification for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification*; AWS B2.2, *Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification*; or ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code*, Section IX.

Because some fuel gases can contain trace amounts of sulfur, brazing alloys containing more than 0.05 percent phosphorus are not permitted. If both are present, sulfur and phosphorus will combine to destroy the joint. This prohibition applies even if a current gas supply contains no sulfur, because the gas supply can shift to a source containing a trace amount of sulfur. Most commercially available brazing alloys contain less than 0.05 percent phosphorus.

EXHIBIT 5.10

A Press-Connect Tool. (Courtesy of RIDGID)

5.6.8.2 Tubing Joints. Tubing joints shall be made with approved gas tubing fittings, be brazed with a material having a melting point in excess of 1000°F (538°C), or be made by press-connect fittings complying with ANSI LC-4, *Press-Connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems*. Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05 percent phosphorus.

Press-connect fittings are tubing fittings that are placed on the tube, and a tool is used to seal the fitting to the tube (see Exhibit 5.10). This tubing connection system has been in use for a number of years in plumbing applications, and it has been found to be reliable. CSA America has developed a standard for the press-connect fitting, which is cited in the code. ANSI LC 4/CSA 6.32, *Press-Connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems,* is a standard for the fittings and the integrity of the connections. It does not cover the tool used to assemble the fittings.

The definition of *approved* in 3.2.1 is as follows:

3.2.1* Approved. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

5.6.8.3 Flared Joints. Flared joints shall be used only in systems constructed from nonferrous pipe and tubing where experience or tests have demonstrated that the joint is suitable for the conditions and where provisions are made in the design to prevent separation of the joints.

5.6.8.4 Metallic Pipe Fittings. Metallic fittings shall comply with the following:

(1) Threaded fittings in sizes larger than 4 in. (100 mm) shall not be used

The authority having jurisdiction must approve metallic threaded fittings larger than 4 in. (100 mm). Threaded fittings larger than 4 in. are difficult to install without leaks. Alternate fittings include welded and flanged fittings.

(2) Fittings used with steel or wrought-iron pipe shall be steel, copper alloy, malleable iron, or cast iron.
(3) Fittings used with copper or copper alloy pipe shall be copper or copper alloy.
(4) Fittings used with aluminum alloy pipe shall be of aluminum alloy.
(5) *Cast-Iron Fittings.* Cast-iron fittings shall comply with the following:
    (a) Flanges shall be permitted.
    (b) Bushings shall not be used.

Cast-iron bushings are prohibited because of the brittle nature of cast iron. Brittleness makes bushings less able to withstand overtightening during assembly or external mechanical abuse in service. Flammable gas–air mixtures in piping systems require more shock resistance than cast-iron fittings can provide. Large cast-iron fittings cannot resist external loads adequately and are only allowed where approved.

(c) Fittings shall not be used in systems containing flammable gas–air mixtures.
(d) Fittings in sizes 4 in. (100 mm) and larger shall not be used indoors unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction.
(e) Fittings in sizes 6 in. (150 mm) and larger shall not be used unless approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

(6) *Aluminum Alloy Fittings.* Threads shall not form the joint seal.

Threaded aluminum pipe-to-pipe connections are not permitted. Flanges, welded fittings, flared fittings, or metallic ball sleeve compression fittings are recognized by the code. It is very difficult to form a gastight connection using aluminum threads because of the inherent low strength of the metal.

(7) *Zinc–Aluminum Alloy Fittings.* Fittings shall not be used in systems containing flammable gas–air mixtures.
(8) *Special Fittings.* Fittings such as couplings, proprietary-type joints, saddle tees, gland-type compression fittings, and flared, flareless, or compression-type tubing fittings shall be as follows:
(a) Used within the fitting manufacturer's pressure–temperature recommendations
(b) Used within the service conditions anticipated with respect to vibration, fatigue, thermal expansion, or contraction
(c) Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

A summary of the requirements for metal fittings in 5.6.8.4 is provided in Commentary Table 5.3.

COMMENTARY TABLE 5.3 *Metal Fitting Requirements*

Fitting Material/Application	Requirement
Threaded >4 in.	Must be approved.
Used with steel or wrought-iron pipe	Steel, copper alloy, copper alloy, malleable iron, or cast iron only.
Used with copper or copper alloy pipe	Copper or copper alloy only.
Used with aluminum alloy pipe	Aluminum alloy only. Threads shall not form the joint seal.
Cast iron	No flanges or bushings. Do not use in systems containing flammable gas–air mixtures.
Cast-iron fittings, >4 in. indoors	Must be approved.
Cast-iron fittings, ≥ 6 in. in all locations	Must be approved.
Zinc–aluminum alloy fittings	Do not use in systems containing flammable gas–air mixtures.
Special fittings (i.e., couplings, proprietary-type joints, saddle tees, gland-type compression fittings, and flared, flareless, or compression-type tubing fittings)	1. Use within the fitting manufacturer's pressure-temperature recommendations. 2. Use within the service conditions anticipated with respect to vibration, fatigue, thermal expansion, or contraction. 3. Must be approved.

Code Update

(9) When pipe fittings are drilled and tapped in the field, the operation shall be in accordance with the following:
   (a) The operation shall be performed on systems having operating pressures of 5 psi or less.
   (b) The operation shall be performed by the gas supplier or their designated representative.
   (c) The drilling and tapping operation shall be performed in accordance with written procedures prepared by the gas supplier.
   (d) The fittings shall be located outdoors.
   (e) The tapped fitting assembly shall be inspected and proven to be free of leaks.

Only the gas supplier or their designated representative is permitted to perform drilling and tapping in the field. Drilling and tapping is also known as hot tapping. Hot tapping strictly refers to the installation of connections to pipelines while they remain in service. In the welding context, it is commonly used for any welding onto in-service equipment. Hot tapping is frequently used in order to repair areas that have undergone mechanical damage or corrosion or to add branches for system modifications.

5.6.9 Plastic Piping Joints and Fittings. Plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings shall be joined in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. The following shall be observed when making such joints:

(1) The joint shall be designed and installed so that the longitudinal pullout resistance of the joint will be at least equal to the tensile strength of the plastic piping material.
(2) Heat fusion joints shall be made in accordance with qualified procedures that have been established and proven by test to produce gastight joints at least as strong as the pipe or tubing being joined. Joints shall be made with the joining method recommended by the pipe manufacturer. Heat fusion fittings shall be marked "ASTM D 2513."
(3) Where compression-type mechanical joints are used, the gasket material in the fitting shall be compatible with the plastic piping and with the gas distributed by the system. An internal tubular rigid stiffener shall be used in conjunction with the fitting. The stiffener shall be flush with the end of the pipe or tubing and shall extend at least to the outside end of the compression fitting when installed. The stiffener shall be free of rough or sharp edges and shall not be a force fit in the plastic. Split tubular stiffeners shall not be used.
(4) Plastic piping joints and fittings for use in LP-Gas piping systems shall be in accordance with NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*.

EXHIBIT 5.11

Mechanical Fittings. (Courtesy of R.W. Lyall & Company, Inc.)

Because the manufacturers' instructions must be followed for any joining procedures, their recommendations become the basis of all installation procedures. Systems that are in common use and are recommended by most manufacturers for the joining of plastic gas pipe are butt fusion, saddle fusion, socket fusion, electrofusion, and mechanical fittings or joints. One type of mechanical fitting is shown in Exhibit 5.11.

The code places additional requirements in 5.6.9(1), 5.6.9(2), and 5.6.9(3) to ensure a safe system. Note that, as with all issues involving the use of plastic pipe in LP-Gas systems, NFPA 58 is the applicable standard.

5.6.10 Flanges.

Code Update

Subsection 5.6.10 has been updated and restructured in the 2015 edition to provide thorough coverage of the types of flanges used in fuel gas systems and the standards governing their construction and use.

5.6.10.1 Flange Specifications.

5.6.10.1.1 Cast iron flanges shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.1, *Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 25, 125, and 250*.

5.6.10.1.2 Steel flanges shall be in accordance with the following: ANSI/ASME B16.5, *Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: NPS ½ through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard*, or ANSI/ASME B16.47, *Large Diameter Steel Flanges: NPS 26 through NPS 60 Metric/Inch Standard*.

5.6.10.1.3 Non-ferrous flanges shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.24, Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150, 300, 600. 900, 1500, and 2500.

5.6.10.1.4 Ductile iron flanges shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.42, Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Classes 150 and 300.

5.6.10.2 Dissimilar Flange Connections. Raised-face flanges shall not be joined to flat-faced cast iron, ductile iron or non-ferrous material flanges.

FAQ Why must the raised face of a steel flange be ground off when mated with a cast-iron flange?

Dissimilar flange connections could be problematic. For example, if a steel flange with a raised face is connected to a cast-iron flange, the resulting structural forces could cause the cast-iron flange to break.

5.6.10.3 Flange Facings. Standard facings shall be permitted for use under this code. Where 150 psi (1034 kPa) steel flanges are bolted to Class 125 cast-iron flanges, the raised face on the steel flange shall be removed.

5.6.10.4 Lapped Flanges. Lapped flanges shall be used only aboveground or in exposed locations accessible for inspection.

5.6.11 Flange Gaskets. The material for gaskets shall be capable of withstanding the design temperature and pressure of the piping system and the chemical constituents of the gas being conducted without change to its chemical and physical properties. The effects of fire exposure to the joint shall be considered in choosing the material.

5.6.11.1 Acceptable materials shall include the following:

(1) Metal (plain or corrugated)
(2) Composition
(3) Aluminum "O" rings
(4) Spiral-wound metal gaskets
(5) Rubber-faced phenolic
(6) Elastomeric

5.6.11.2 Gasket Specifications.

5.6.11.2.1 Metallic flange gaskets shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.20, *Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges: Ring-Joint, Spiral-Wound and Jacketed*.

5.6.11.2.2 Non-metallic flange gaskets shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.21, *Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges*.

5.6.11.3 Full-face flange gaskets shall be used with all non-steel flanges.

"O" rings, spiral-wound metal gaskets, and some other types of flange gaskets either do not extend to the outside edge of the flange face or are not of full thickness all the way to the edge of the flange face. Either condition could place unacceptable mechanical strain on bronze or cast-iron flanges.

5.6.11.4 When a flanged joint is separated, the gasket shall be replaced.

5.7* Gas Meters

The scope of NFPA 54 specifically states the following:

> **1.1.1.1(A)** Coverage of piping systems shall extend from the point of delivery to the appliance connections. For other than undiluted liquefied petroleum gas (LP-Gas) systems, the point of delivery shall be the outlet of the service meter assembly or the outlet of the service regulator or service shutoff valve where no meter is provided. . . .

Gas meters installed upstream of the point of delivery are covered by federal law in 49 CFR Part 192. NFPA 54 applies to any meters installed downstream of the point of delivery of the gas-supplier's meters in natural gas systems and downstream of the second-stage regulator in propane systems. Premises-owned meters are typically submeters that are downstream of the gas supplier's meter (sometimes called a master meter) in applications such as manufactured home courts, apartment buildings, or industrial properties where measurement of the gas flow downstream of the gas supplier's meter is necessary. The intent is to ensure safe, trouble-free service from the meters and to protect them from physical damage. (See Exhibit 5.12.)

EXHIBIT 5.12

Gas Meter Protection. (Courtesy of AGL Resources)

A.5.7 This section applies to premises-owned meters.

5.7.1 Capacity. Gas meters shall be selected for the maximum expected pressure and permissible pressure drop.

Small, residential-size meters, such as the one shown in Exhibit 5.13, measure their rated flow with a ½ in. w.c. (0.1 kPa) pressure drop. Larger meters are dual-rated, and the designer can choose between the rated flow at a ½ in. w.c. (0.1 kPa) pressure drop or a larger flow at a 2 in. w.c. (0.5 kPa) pressure drop.

EXHIBIT 5.13

Gas Meter with a Plastic Cover, Showing the Diaphragm.

5.7.2 Location.

5.7.2.1 Gas meters shall be located in ventilated spaces readily accessible for examination, reading, replacement, or necessary maintenance.

Gas meters are not typically a source of gas discharge; however, the ventilated space requirement anticipates the release of a small amount of gas when a meter is serviced or replaced. Gas meters must be readily accessible. *Readily accessible* is defined in 3.3.1.1 as follows:

> **3.3.1.1 Readily Accessible.** Having direct access without the need of removing or moving any panel, door, or similar covering of the item described.

5.7.2.2 Gas meters shall not be placed where they will be subjected to damage, such as adjacent to a driveway, under a fire escape, in public passages, halls, or where they will be subject to excessive corrosion or vibration.

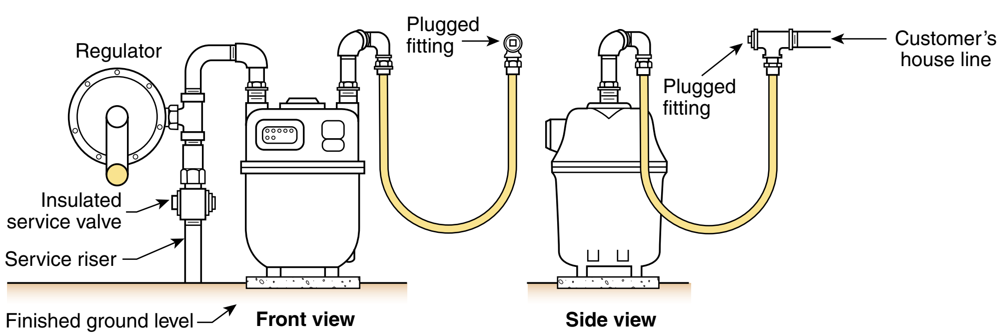
5.7.2.3 Gas meters shall not be located where they will be subjected to extreme temperatures or sudden extreme changes in temperature or in areas where they are subjected to temperatures beyond those recommended by the manufacturer.

There are many types of meters, but diaphragm or bellows meters are the most commonly used. Within the meter are two or more chambers formed by movable diaphragms. Extreme temperatures and temperature changes can have an adverse effect on gas meters and their operation.

5.7.3 Supports. Gas meters shall be supported or connected to rigid piping so as not to exert a strain on the meters. Where flexible connectors are used to connect a gas meter to downstream piping at mobile homes in mobile home parks, the meter shall be supported by a post or bracket placed in a firm footing or by other means providing equivalent support.

When flexible connectors are used to connect the gas meter to the downstream piping, the meter must be supported. (See Exhibit 5.14.)

EXHIBIT 5.14



Gas Meter Supported on a Concrete Pre-Cast Slab.

5.7.4 Meter Protection. Meters shall be protected against overpressure, back pressure, and vacuum.

Gas meters have a maximum allowable operating pressure (MAOP) that must not be exceeded. Residential meters typically have MAOPs of 5 psi (34 kPa). Larger or special-application meters can carry MAOPs of 10 psi (70 kPa) or 25 psi (170 kPa), or higher. Meters can leak air into the gas under vacuum conditions, which is undesirable because the gas will be diluted with air. The amount of dilution will be relatively small, and it is highly unlikely to be large enough to create a flammable gas–air mixture. The amount may be sufficient to cause improper appliance operation, and it may result in the meter reading the gas–air mixture and the user being billed for air.

5.7.5 Identification. Gas piping at multiple meter installations shall be marked by a metal tag or other permanent means designating the building or the part of the building being supplied and attached by the installing agency.

When installing gas piping systems at a multiple meter location, the installer is the person who knows which piping system belongs to which appliances and to which designated part of the building. Therefore, the installer is in an ideal position to identify and attach to the piping system the permanent marking in the form of an ID tag, as shown in Exhibit 5.15 and as required by 5.7.5. It is important that the designations used on the tag be the same as those used for the location. For example, if a building is being divided into units 1 and 2, the piping system markings should read "unit 1" and "unit 2," not "left" and "right" or "101" and "102." If a meter is not provided, the marking should be done at multiple piping locations, where the point of delivery may be the service shutoff valve or service regulator. [See 1.1.1.1(A).]

EXHIBIT 5.15

ID Tag. (Courtesy of Marking Services, Inc.)

5.8* Gas Pressure Regulators

A.5.8 This section applies to premises-owned regulators.

With increasing uses for gas appliances and with the economy of using higher pressures that allow the use of smaller-diameter gas piping systems (hybrid pressure systems), a need exists for line pressure regulators to deliver proper gas pressures to equipment or groups of equipment. This system parallels the use of higher electrical voltage (pressure) and smaller wires (pipes) with transformers (regulators) to supply the loads properly.

5.8.1 Where Required. A line pressure regulator or gas appliance pressure regulator, as applicable, shall be installed where the gas supply pressure is higher than that at which the branch supply line or appliances are designed to operate or vary beyond design pressure limits.

Where natural gas is used, the gas supplier should be consulted to determine the supply pressure being delivered. Where propane is used, the second-stage regulator determines the system supply pressure. If the piping system pressure at the inlet of any appliance on the piping system is greater than its maximum allowable inlet pressure, a line regulator must be installed. The piping system pressure determines the type and design of the line pressure regulator. The line pressure regulator must be selected to meet the requirements of the system, including the inlet and outlet pressure rating and the volume of gas needed.

Where natural gas is supplied, the gas utility usually installs a pressure regulator upstream of the gas meter. This placement ensures constant pressure at the meter and correct metering and billing. As with the utility's gas meters, the regulator is upstream of the discharge of the meter and is covered by federal regulations, not by the *National Fuel Gas Code*.

5.8.2 Listing. Line pressure regulators shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22, *Line Pressure Regulators*.

5.8.3 Location. The gas pressure regulator shall be accessible for servicing.

Opening a door or removing a cover plate that may be attached with screws or other operable fasteners provides access to regulators. Note the definition for *accessible* is as follows:

> **3.3.1 Accessible.** Having access to but which first requires the removal of a panel, door, or similar covering of the item described.

5.8.4 Regulator Protection. Pressure regulators shall be protected against physical damage.

5.8.5 Venting.

5.8.5.1 Line Pressure Regulators. Line pressure regulators shall comply with all of the following:

(1) An independent vent to the exterior of the building, sized in accordance with the regulator manufacturer's instructions, shall be provided where the location of a regulator is such that a ruptured diaphragm will cause a hazard.
   (a) Where more than one regulator is at a location, each regulator shall have a separate vent to the outdoors or, if approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the vent lines shall be permitted to be manifolded in accordance with accepted engineering practices to minimize back pressure in the event of diaphragm failure.

A vent is required when a line pressure regulator is installed in a building where the rupture of a diaphragm can cause a hazard. Although the term *hazard* is not defined, a hazard occurs if the release of gas can reach the flammable range and ignite.

FAQ Does the code permit manifolding of regulator vents?

Manifolding (or combining more than one vent in one pipe) of regulator vents is allowed by the code but requires that manifolding of vents be approved to ensure that the vent piping is of adequate size. The term *approved* is defined as "acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction." The manifolding of such vents presents the following two potential problems:

1. A diaphragm on one of the connected regulators could fail. If the manifolded vent is not large enough, the flow from the failed diaphragm can build a back pressure in the manifold. The back pressure is applied to the top of the diaphragm of the other regulators, which has the same effect as tightening the regulator spring; that is, it creates a higher discharge pressure. A higher discharge pressure can increase the pressure of the piping system, which can create a hazardous condition.
2. The manifolded vent termination could become plugged and a diaphragm could subsequently fail. This failure could result in high-pressure gas in the vent line that will drive all of the remaining regulators wide open and completely negate their installation.

Any approval of vent line manifolding should address these potential problems. Even single regulator vents must be sized per the manufacturer's installation instructions. Very long runs may restrict free air movement to the top of the diaphragm, causing fluctuating gas pressure delivery to the burner. Many manufacturers specify a larger-diameter vent on long vent runs.

Note that the vent piping used within the building must be constructed using materials approved for that use.

   (b) Materials for vent piping shall be in accordance with Section 5.6.

Exception: A regulator and vent limiting means combination listed as complying with ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22, Line Pressure Regulators, shall be permitted to be used without a vent to the outdoors.

ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22, *Line Pressure Regulators*, provides requirements for line pressure regulators and optional vent limiters. Where vent limiters are used, they limit vented gas in the unlikely event of a diaphragm rupture so that a flammable concentration is not reached. Line pressure regulators, like all pressure regulators, incorporate a flexible diaphragm that moves up and down to regulate pressure. The space above the diaphragm must be free to allow movement, and the space above the diaphragm has a vent to the atmosphere to avoid compressing the air above the diaphragm, which would interfere with the operation of the regulator. No gas flows out of the vent during normal operation. Gas can only flow out of the vent if the diaphragm fails. The vent limiter is an orifice that restricts this flow of gas out of the regulator.

The requirement that the installation be made in a ventilated location is not intended to require mechanical ventilation, but rather to prohibit installation in spaces where flammable gas–air mixtures can accumulate. Line pressure regulators installed in places where gas appliances are installed under this code, for instance, will meet the requirement of this paragraph. The regulator and vent limiter are listed as a combination, and the vent limiter cannot be removed and used on a different regulator.

Exhibit 5.16 illustrates an example of a line pressure regulator with vent limiting means addressed in the exception to 5.8.5.1(1). Note the vent hole in the exhibit. Common vent limiting means can be installation-sensitive. The manufacturer's instructions should be consulted to ensure proper installation and functioning. For example, vent limiting means intended for upright horizontal installation cannot function properly in any other position.

Care should be taken when multiple regulators with vent limiters are located in a tight area. This may occur when multiple appliances are located in close proximity or in industrial installations when a complex pipe train has multiple components, such as regulators and switches, which may all have vent limiters installed. The air exchange rate should be checked closely to ensure that gas cannot build up to dangerous levels in the event of multiple discharge points of gas from the vent limiters present.

EXHIBIT 5.16

Line Pressure Regulator with Vent Limiting Means. (Courtesy of Maxitrol)

(2) The vent shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects, or other foreign materials that could cause blockage.
(3) The regulator vent shall terminate at least 3 ft (0.9 m) from a source of ignition.
(4) At locations where regulators might be submerged during floods, a special antiflood-type breather vent fitting shall be installed, or the vent line shall be extended above the height of the expected flood waters.
(5) A regulator shall not be vented to the appliance flue or exhaust system.

Discharging natural gas from a malfunctioning pressure regulator into an appliance flue or into a pressurized exhaust system creates a hazard because a flue or exhaust system cannot safely handle the amount of gas that is likely to be discharged through a failed diaphragm.

5.8.5.2 Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. For venting of gas appliance pressure regulators, see 9.1.19.

5.8.6 Bypass Piping. Valved and regulated bypasses shall be permitted to be placed around gas line pressure regulators where continuity of service is imperative.

A bypass is allowed to ensure continued system operation in the event of failure of a line pressure regulator when gas service is critical. Bypasses are not normally installed in residential gas piping systems, as brief shutdowns to replace a malfunctioning regulator are acceptable.

5.8.7 Identification. Line pressure regulators at multiple regulator installations shall be marked by a metal tag or other permanent means designating the building or the part of the building being supplied.

Permanent marking can be in the form of an ID tag as shown in Exhibit 5.15. See the commentary following 5.7.5 for information on permanent means of marking regulator installations.

5.9 Overpressure Protection Devices

Code Update

Section 5.9 has been extensively revised in the 2015 edition, because the previous text was applicable only to regulators supplied by the gas utility or LP-Gas supplier, which are properly governed by either 49 CFR Part 192 or NFPA 58. In addition, the requirements are now limited to installations where gas supply at a pressure greater than 2 psi (14 kPa) is serving appliances operating at 14 in. w.c. (3.5 kPa) or less. Most new residential and commercial appliances rated for a maximum operating inlet pressure of 14 in. w.c. (3.5 kPa) will withstand an inlet pressure of 2 psi to 2.5 psi (14 kPa to 17 kPa) without failing.

Overpressure protection (OPP) is defined as a system preventing the pressure in a piping system or an appliance from exceeding a predetermined value. An overpressure situation can occur if a regulator malfunctions. Regulator malfunctions are caused by a number of reasons, such as mechanical failure, a foreign body between the valve and its seat, diaphragm failure, and blocked or undersized vent openings.

Where the supply piping system pressure is over 2 psi (14 kPa) and an appliance operates at less than 14 in. w.c. (3.5 kPa), a regulator malfunction and the resulting overpressure condition could damage the appliance or components and cause gas leaks. Burner flames become enlarged or unstable and unsafe. It is important to maintain a safe gas installation by protecting against overpressure.

5.9.1 Where Required. Where the serving gas supplier delivers gas at a pressure greater than 2 psi for piping systems serving appliances designed to operate at a gas pressure of 14 in.

w.c. or less, overpressure protection devices shall be installed. Piping systems serving equipment designed to operate at inlet pressures greater than 14 in. w.c. shall be equipped with overpressure protection devices as required by the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

5.9.2 Pressure Limitation Requirements.

5.9.2.1 Where piping systems serving appliances designed to operate with a gas supply pressure of 14 in. w.c. or less are required to be equipped with overpressure protection by 5.9.1, each overpressure protection device shall be adjusted to limit the gas pressure to each connected appliance to 2 psi or less upon a failure of the line pressure regulator.

5.9.2.2 Where piping systems serving appliances designed to operate with a gas supply pressure greater than 14 in. w.c. are required to be equipped with overpressure protection by 5.9.1, each overpressure protection device shall be adjusted to limit the gas pressure to each connected appliance as required by the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

5.9.2.3 Each overpressure protection device installed to meet the requirements of this section shall be capable of limiting the pressure to its connected appliance(s) as required by this section independently of any other pressure control equipment in the piping system.

5.9.2.4 Each gas piping system for which an overpressure protection device is required by this section shall be designed and installed so that a failure of the primary pressure control device(s) is detectable.

The requirements in 5.9.2.1 through 5.9.2.4 ensure that a single point of failure will not result in a dangerous system overpressure. Each overpressure protection device must be adjusted in accordance with the service limitations of the connected appliance and must operate independently of any other pressure control equipment. In addition, the revised text requires that the piping system be installed such that a failure of the primary pressure control device is detectable so that repairs can be made promptly, and the safe delivery of fuel to the appliance does not depend solely on the overpressure device.

5.9.2.5 If a pressure relief valve is used to meet the requirements of this section, it shall have a flow capacity such that the pressure in the protected system is maintained at or below the limits specified in 5.9.2.1 under the following conditions:

(1) The line pressure regulator for which the relief valve is providing overpressure protection has failed wide open.
(2) The gas pressure at the inlet of the line pressure regulator for which the relief valve is providing overpressure protection is not less than the regulator's normal operating inlet pressure.

If a relief valve is used to comply with the overpressure protection requirements, that relief valve must have a flow capacity at least as large as the failed-wide-open regulator for which it is providing overpressure protection. In other words, the relief has to "keep up" with a failed regulator without allowing greater-than-2 psi (14 kPa) gas pressures to be delivered to the connected 14 in. w.c. (3.5 kPa)-rated appliances.

5.9.3 Devices.

5.9.3.1 Pressure relieving or pressure limiting devices shall be one of the following:

(1) Pressure relief valve

A pressure relief valve is a type of valve used to control or limit the pressure in a piping system and is defined in 3.3.99.5.1 as "a valve that automatically opens and closes a relief vent, depending on whether the pressure is above or below a predetermined value."

(2) Monitoring regulator

A monitoring regulator, as defined in 3.3.84.4, consists of two regulators installed in series such that the second regulator can take over in the event of an emergency. Typically, the regulators are installed with the downstream control line of both units connected to the line downstream of both units; one unit is adjusted for the desired control pressure, the other for a slightly higher pressure.

(3) Series regulator installed upstream from the line regulator and set to continuously limit the pressure on the inlet of the line regulator to the maximum values specified by 5.9.2.1 or less

Series regulators are typically used in systems requiring highly accurate pressure regulation.

(4) Automatic shutoff device installed in series with the line pressure regulator and set to shut off when the pressure on the downstream piping system reaches the maximum values specified by 5.9.2.1 or less. This device shall be designed so that it will remain closed until manually reset.

An automatic shutoff device closes when the pressure reaches its predetermined pressure and must be reset manually.

5.9.3.2 The devices in 5.9.3.1 shall be installed either as an integral part of the service or line pressure regulator or as separate units. Where separate pressure relieving or pressure limiting devices are installed, they shall comply with 5.9.4 through 5.9.9.

5.9.4 Construction and Installation. All pressure relieving or pressure limiting devices shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Be constructed of materials so that the operation of the device is not impaired by corrosion of external parts by the atmosphere or of internal parts by the gas.
(2) Be designed and installed so they can be operated to determine whether the valve is free. The devices shall also be designed and installed so they can be tested to determine the pressure at which they operate and be examined for leakage when in the closed position.

5.9.5 External Control Piping. External control piping shall be designed and installed so that damage to the control piping of one device does not render both the regulator and the overpressure protective device inoperative.

5.9.6 Setting. Each pressure limiting or pressure relieving device shall be set so that the gas pressure supplied to the connected appliance(s) does not exceed the limits specified in 5.9.2.1.

Paragraph 5.9.6 requires that a pressure relief or limiting device, if used, must be set to prevent gas pressure damage to equipment in accordance with the expanded requirements in 5.9.1 and 5.9.2.

5.9.7 Unauthorized Operation. Where unauthorized operation of any shutoff valve could render a pressure relieving valve or pressure limiting device inoperative, one of the following shall be accomplished:

(1) The valve shall be locked in the open position. Instruct authorized personnel in the importance of leaving the shutoff valve open and of being present while the shutoff valve is closed so that it can be locked in the open position before leaving the premises.

(2) Duplicate relief valves shall be installed, each having adequate capacity to protect the system, and arrange the isolating valves or three-way valve so that only one relief valve can be rendered inoperative at a time.

5.9.8 Vents.

The manufacturer's data should be consulted to properly size all vents. A vent diameter larger than the device outlet diameter may be required. The vent termination should be located so that the discharge does not re-enter the building through a door, a window, or other building opening. The blocking effect of screening the vent opening should be taken into consideration when sizing the terminal outlet.

5.9.8.1 The discharge stacks, vents, or outlet parts of all pressure relieving and pressure limiting devices shall be located so that gas is safely discharged to the outdoors. Discharge stacks or vents shall be designed to prevent the entry of water, insects, or other foreign material that could cause blockage.

5.9.8.2 The discharge stack or vent line shall be at least the same size as the outlet of the pressure relieving device.

5.9.9 Size of Fittings, Pipe, and Openings. The fittings, pipe, and openings located between the system to be protected and the pressure relieving device shall be sized to prevent hammering of the valve and to prevent impairment of relief capacity.

Consideration must be given to the piping between the pressure relieving device and the gas system it is protecting. Excessive use of fittings or long lengths of piping could hamper the operation of the valve.

5.10 Back Pressure Protection

5.10.1 Where to Install.

Industrial applications may involve equipment that uses a mixture of gases in its processes. If the system uses compressed air, back pressure protection is required because of the possibility of injecting air into the gas piping system. For example, natural gas and oxygen may be used in handheld brazing torches. The torch assembly at the point of use could easily overpressure one side of the gas supply, creating a hazard. Appropriate check valves (5.10.2) installed prior to torch assembly, as required by 5.10.1, alleviate this concern.

Venturi-type standby fuel systems require that the served gas piping system be provided with backflow protection, because a failure of the Venturi gas valves could cause an overpressure of the gas piping system.

Gas systems connected to zero governor–equipped mixing equipment require no further back pressure prevention devices, as permitted by 5.10.1, because the standby gas will not flow until the blower is operating to "pull" the gas through the zero governor. This setup is very resistant to failure.

5.10.1.1 Protective devices shall be installed as close to the equipment as practical where the design of equipment connected is such that air, oxygen, or standby gases could be forced into the gas supply system.

5.10.1.2 Gas and air combustion mixers incorporating double diaphragm "zero" or "atmosphere" governors or regulators shall require no further protection unless connected directly to compressed air or oxygen at pressures of 5 psi (34 kPa) or more.

5.10.2 Protective Devices. Protective devices shall include but not be limited to the following:

(1) Check valves
(2) Three-way valves (of the type that completely closes one side before starting to open the other side)
(3) Reverse flow indicators controlling positive shutoff valves
(4) Normally closed air-actuated positive shutoff pressure regulators

Perhaps the most common backflow prevention device used to meet the requirements is the utility service regulator. The standby fuel in this case is set up to operate at a pressure that "locks up" the service regulator. As long as the standby system has means to ensure that the service regulator is not overpressurized during operation of the standby system, this scheme is safe and effective. Most installations using this means also incorporate a secondary backflow check valve, or a combination manual valve and backflow check valve, in the utility gas piping immediately downstream of the meter.

5.11* Low-Pressure Protection

A protective device shall be installed between the meter and the appliance or equipment if the operation of the appliance or equipment is such that it could produce a vacuum or a dangerous reduction in gas pressure at the meter. Such protective devices include, but are not limited to, mechanical, diaphragm-operated, or electrically operated low-pressure shutoff valves.

If a low-pressure shutoff valve is installed, a manual reset device is recommended. This device ensures that the gas will not come back on unexpectedly. It is very important to protect the gas supply system from low pressure and vacuum. If the equipment could cause low pressure or vacuum in the supply system, it could adversely affect the supply pressure of other customers on the line. The low-pressure situation could create a dangerous condition for an unsuspecting user, and it would be difficult to determine the source if caused by another customer.

A.5.11 Appliances that can produce a vacuum or dangerous reduction in pressure include, but are not limited to, gas compressors.

5.12 Shutoff Valves

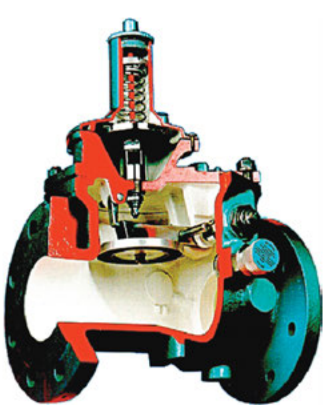
Shutoff valves shall be approved and shall be selected giving consideration to pressure drop, service involved, emergency use, and reliability of operation. Shutoff valves of size 1 in. (25 mm) National Pipe Thread and smaller shall be listed.

Pressure drop across a valve is a measure of its flow capacity. Although "full-ported" valves are available, they generally are not necessary for satisfactory results; although the flow port of a valve is smaller than that of the connecting pipe, the restriction is short and behaves more like a very large orifice at normal flows. If rough or unauthorized operation is anticipated, or if the valve is installed in a location where it is subject to being hit, attention should be paid to the mechanical strength of the valve and its operating means.

Exhibit 5.17 shows a safety shutoff valve with a manual reset. These valves are installed upstream of the regulator with their control line tied into the piping downstream of the regulator. The valves close automatically in the event of an overpressure condition.

Requiring shutoff valves smaller than 1 in. (25 mm) National Pipe Thread (NPT) to be listed comes from adverse experience with some unlisted valves of these small sizes. This requirement recognizes that larger valves usually are not listed.

EXHIBIT 5.17



Safety Shutoff Valve with Manual Reset. (Courtesy of Bryan Donkin, RMG – Canada Limited)

5.13 Excess Flow Valve(s)

Where automatic excess flow valves are installed, they shall be listed to ANSI Z21.93/CSA 6.30, *Excess Flow Valves for Natural and LP-Gas with Pressures Up to 5 psig*, and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

The code does not require the installation of excess flow valves. Excess flow valves are valves that close when the flow of fluid exceeds a preset maximum. They are intended to stop the flow of gas in the event of pipe separation or breakage. Sizing of excess flow valves is critical to their effectiveness. The valve must be sized for a flow above the normal fuel gas flow in a section of piping but below the maximum fuel gas flow that will occur under failure conditions.

5.14 Expansion and Flexibility

If a branch run is taken from a very long main or a main that is subject to changes in temperature, the branch should be made long enough to distribute the movement of the main over the longest practical distance of branch line. Swing joints, which are used to provide flexibility necessitated by expansion and contraction, eventually leak. For this reason, flex connectors can isolate gas lines that are expected to move during operation. Anchoring the piping so that expansion takes place where it is planned to take place should also be considered.

5.14.1 Design. Piping systems shall be designed to prevent failure from thermal expansion or contraction.

5.14.2 Special Local Conditions. Where local conditions include earthquake, tornado, unstable ground, or flood hazards, special consideration shall be given to increased strength and flexibility of piping supports and connections.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publication is available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, (800) 344-3555, www.nfpa.org.

NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, 2014 edition.

The following publication is available from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990, (800) 843-2763, www.asme.org.

ANSI/ASME B1.20.1, *Pipe Threads, General Purpose, Inch*, 2013.

The following publications are available from CSA America, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, (216) 524-4990, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*, 2005 (R2011).

ANSI LC 4/CSA 6.32, *Press-Connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems*, 2012.

ANSI Z21.80/CSA 6.22, *Line Pressure Regulators*, 2011.

The following publication is available from ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, (610) 832-9585, www.astm.org.

ASTM B 241, *Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube,* 2010.

The following publication is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20401, www.gpo.gov.

Title 49, *Code of Federal Regulations*, Part 192.

Pipe Sizing

6

Chapter 6 and Annex B contain pipe and tubing sizing tables. The tables have been coordinated to have the following common features that make them easier to use. Annex B contains additional tables and information relating to the sizing and capacities of gas piping systems.

- All tables have a title block with the type of gas, inlet pressure, pressure drop, and gas specific gravity.
- The maximum length of pipe included in the table is 2000 ft (610 m) for smooth wall pipe and 300 ft (90 m) or 500 ft (150 m) for corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST), and 500 ft (150 m) for all polyethylene under 2 psi (14 kPa).
- All table entries are rounded to three significant digits.
- Very small table entries of less than 10 cfh (0.3 m^3/hr) natural gas or 10,000 Btu/hr use N/A (not applicable).

Tables for natural gas at pressures of 5 psi (34 kPa) and higher, included in the code prior to the 2002 edition, were deleted from the code because gas piping systems operating above 5 psi (34 kPa) are generally designed using engineering methods rather than the tables. The tables for natural gas at pressures of 10 psi (69 kPa), 20 psi (140 kPa), and 50 psi (340 kPa) have been retained in this handbook for use if needed. (See Commentary Table 6.1, Commentary Table 6.2, and Commentary Table 6.3 at the end of Section 6.2.)

Section 6.1 specifies the pipe sizing methods that can be used to size piping systems. These include the longest length method (6.1.1), the branch length method (6.1.2), and the hybrid pressure method for systems using multiple gas pressures (6.1.3).

Section 6.2 provides a reference to the tables for sizing gas piping systems using natural gas. Section 6.3 provides a reference to the tables for sizing gas piping systems using propane. Section 6.4 provides sizing equations for low-pressure (6.4.1) and high-pressure systems (6.4.2).

See Annex B for more information.

6.1* Pipe Sizing Methods

Where the pipe size is to be determined using any of the methods in 6.1.1 through 6.1.3, the diameter of each pipe segment shall be obtained from the pipe sizing tables in Section 6.2 or Section 6.3 or from the sizing equations in Section 6.4. For SI units, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1 in. w.c. = 0.249 kPa, 1 psi = 6.894 kPa, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

TABLE A.6.1 Nominal Pipe

Nominal Pipe Diameter	
in.	*mm*
⅛	6
3⁄16	7
¼	8
⅜	10
½	15
⅝	18
¾	20
1	25
1¼	32
1½	40
2	50
2½	65
3	80
3½	90
4	100
4½	115
5	125
6	150
8	200
10	250
12	300

For pipe sizes >12 in. diam., use 1 in. = 25 mm.

A.6.1 Table A.6.1 provides nominal metric pipe size equivalents.

6.1.1* Longest Length Method. The pipe size of each section of gas piping shall be determined using the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet and the load of the section.

A.6.1.1 The Longest Length Method is the traditional method used to determine the equivalent piping length *L* that is then used along with the pipe sizing tables to determine the appropriate pipe diameter size.

The longest length method is the simplest method and is effective for all piping systems, but it can result in using larger pipe sizes than needed. For additional information on the longest length method, see B.4.1.

6.1.2* Branch Length Method. Pipe shall be sized as follows:

(1) Pipe size of each section of the longest pipe run from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet shall be determined using the longest run of piping and the load of the section.
(2) The pipe size of each section of branch piping not previously sized shall be determined using the length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet in each branch and the load of the section.

A.6.1.2 The Branch Length Method is an alternate sizing method that could permit slightly smaller pipe diameters in some segments of a piping system when compared with the Longest Length Method.

The branch length method can reduce the branch pipe sizes on systems with long runs between branches. This method is a little more complicated than the longest length method because the size of the main line and the branch lines must be determined using different lengths. In the longest length method, all sizes are determined using the same longest length. For additional information on the branch length method, see B.4.2.

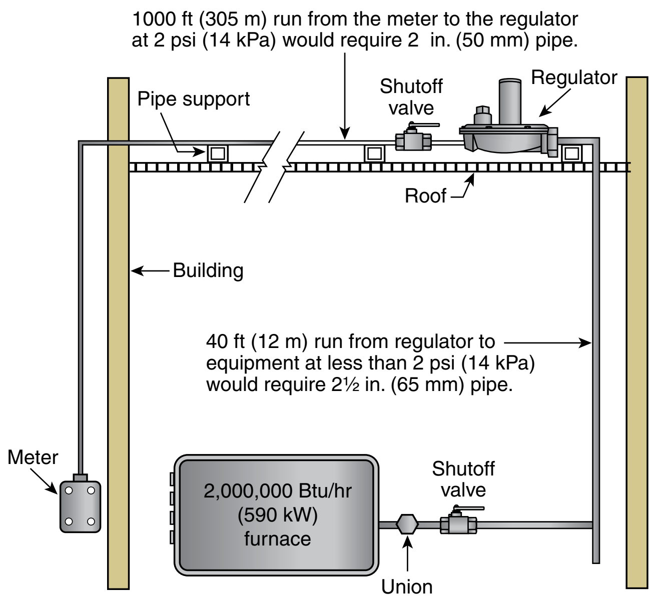
6.1.3 Hybrid Pressure. The pipe size for each section of higher pressure gas piping shall be determined using the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote line pressure regulator. The pipe size from the line pressure regulator to each outlet shall be determined using the length of piping from the regulator to the most remote outlet served by the regulator.

FAQ Why does the hybrid pressure method prove advantageous on systems with very long runs of piping?

The diameter of a fuel gas piping system is proportional to the pressure of the fuel gas. By distributing fuel gas at a higher pressure, smaller pipe or tubing can be used, with corresponding cost savings, or existing piping may be able to be reused if appliances are added to an existing system. For example, at less than 2 psi (14 kPa), a 100 ft (30 m) length run of 1 in. (25 mm) Schedule 40 steel pipe has a capacity of 195 ft^3/hr (5.5 m^3/hr) [per Table 6.2(b)], or 195,000 Btu/hr (57 kW). At 2 psi (14 kPa), the same pipe has a capacity of 1710 ft^3/hr (48 m^3/hr) [per Table 6.2(e)] or about 1,700,000 Btu/hr (290 kW), which is roughly a nine times increase in capacity. Of course, a regulator will be needed to reduce the pressure to that required by the appliance. For additional information on the hybrid pressure method, see B.4.3.

The illustration in Exhibit 6.1 shows a marked reduction in pipe size between the longest length method and the hybrid pressure method.

EXHIBIT 6.1



Advantages of the Hybrid Pressure Method.

6.2 Tables for Sizing Gas Piping Systems Using Natural Gas

Table 6.2(a) through Table 6.2(x) shall be used to size gas piping in conjunction with one of the methods described in 6.1.1 through 6.1.3.

Examples of the use of the pipe sizing tables in Section 6.2 are found in Annex B of the code. Calculation worksheets that can be copied and used are included in Supplement 4 of this handbook and are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.

Commentary Table 6.1, Commentary Table 6.2, and Commentary Table 6.3 can be used to size natural gas piping systems operating at 10 psi (69 kPa), 20 psi (140 kPa), and 50 psi (340 kPa), respectively. These tables were last included in the 1999 edition but were deleted because most piping systems under the code are at 5 psi (34 kPa) or less. The tables from the 1999 edition have been included here in the event that they are needed. The values in the tables are unchanged from those in previous editions.

TABLE 6.2(a) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

Gas:	***Natural***
Inlet Pressure:	***Less than 2 psi***
Pressure Drop:	***0.3 in. w.c.***
Specific Gravity:	***0.60***

	Pipe Size (in.)													
Nominal:	***½***	***¾***	***1***	***1¼***	***1½***	***2***	***2½***	***3***	***4***	***5***	***6***	***8***	***10***	***12***
Actual ID:	***0.622***	***0.824***	***1.049***	***1.380***	***1.610***	***2.067***	***2.469***	***3.068***	***4.026***	***5.047***	***6.065***	***7.981***	***10.020***	***11.938***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***													
10	131	273	514	1,060	1,580	3,050	4,860	8,580	17,500	31,700	51,300	105,000	191,000	303,000
20	90	188	353	726	1,090	2,090	3,340	5,900	12,000	21,800	35,300	72,400	132,000	208,000
30	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
40	62	129	243	499	747	1,440	2,290	4,050	8,270	15,000	24,200	49,800	90,400	143,000
50	55	114	215	442	662	1,280	2,030	3,590	7,330	13,300	21,500	44,100	80,100	127,000
60	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
70	46	95	179	368	552	1,060	1,690	3,000	6,110	11,100	17,900	36,800	66,800	106,000
80	42	89	167	343	514	989	1,580	2,790	5,680	10,300	16,700	34,200	62,100	98,400
90	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
100	38	79	148	304	455	877	1,400	2,470	5,040	9,110	14,800	30,300	55,100	87,200
125	33	70	131	269	403	777	1,240	2,190	4,460	8,080	13,100	26,900	48,800	77,300
150	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
175	28	58	109	224	336	648	1,030	1,820	3,720	6,730	10,900	22,400	40,700	64,400
200	26	54	102	209	313	602	960	1,700	3,460	6,260	10,100	20,800	37,900	59,900
250	23	48	90	185	277	534	851	1,500	3,070	5,550	8,990	18,500	33,500	53,100
300	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
350	19	40	75	154	231	445	709	1,250	2,560	4,630	7,490	15,400	28,000	44,300
400	18	37	70	143	215	414	660	1,170	2,380	4,310	6,970	14,300	26,000	41,200
450	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
500	16	33	62	127	191	367	585	1,030	2,110	3,820	6,180	12,700	23,100	36,500
550	15	31	59	121	181	349	556	982	2,000	3,620	5,870	12,100	21,900	34,700
600	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
650	14	29	54	110	165	318	508	897	1,830	3,310	5,360	11,000	20,000	31,700
700	13	27	52	106	159	306	488	862	1,760	3,180	5,150	10,600	19,200	30,400
750	13	26	50	102	153	295	470	830	1,690	3,060	4,960	10,200	18,500	29,300
800	12	26	48	99	148	285	454	802	1,640	2,960	4,790	9,840	17,900	28,300
850	12	25	46	95	143	275	439	776	1,580	2,860	4,640	9,530	17,300	27,400
900	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
950	11	23	44	90	135	259	413	731	1,490	2,700	4,370	8,970	16,300	25,800
1,000	11	23	43	87	131	252	402	711	1,450	2,620	4,250	8,720	15,800	25,100
1,100	10	21	40	83	124	240	382	675	1,380	2,490	4,030	8,290	15,100	23,800
1,200	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700
1,300	NA	20	37	76	114	219	349	617	1,260	2,280	3,680	7,570	13,700	21,800
1,400	NA	19	35	73	109	210	335	592	1,210	2,190	3,540	7,270	13,200	20,900
1,500	NA	18	34	70	105	203	323	571	1,160	2,110	3,410	7,010	12,700	20,100
1,600	NA	18	33	68	102	196	312	551	1,120	2,030	3,290	6,770	12,300	19,500
1,700	NA	17	32	66	98	189	302	533	1,090	1,970	3,190	6,550	11,900	18,800
1,800	NA	16	31	64	95	184	293	517	1,050	1,910	3,090	6,350	11,500	18,300
1,900	NA	16	30	62	93	178	284	502	1,020	1,850	3,000	6,170	11,200	17,700
2,000	NA	16	29	60	90	173	276	488	1,000	1,800	2,920	6,000	10,900	17,200

NA: A flow of less than 10 cfh.

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(b) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

													Gas:	*Natural*
													Inlet Pressure:	*Less than 2 psi*
													Pressure Drop:	*0.5 in. w.c.*
													Specific Gravity:	*0.60*
	Pipe Size (in.)													
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4	5	6	8	10	12
Actual ID:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026	5.047	6.065	7.981	10.020	11.938
Length (ft)	*Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour*													
10	172	360	678	1,390	2,090	4,020	6,400	11,300	23,100	41,800	67,600	139,000	252,000	399,000
20	118	247	466	957	1,430	2,760	4,400	7,780	15,900	28,700	46,500	95,500	173,000	275,000
30	95	199	374	768	1,150	2,220	3,530	6,250	12,700	23,000	37,300	76,700	139,000	220,000
40	81	170	320	657	985	1,900	3,020	5,350	10,900	19,700	31,900	65,600	119,000	189,000
50	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660	17,500	28,300	58,200	106,000	167,000
60	65	137	257	528	791	1,520	2,430	4,290	8,760	15,800	25,600	52,700	95,700	152,000
70	60	126	237	486	728	1,400	2,230	3,950	8,050	14,600	23,600	48,500	88,100	139,000
80	56	117	220	452	677	1,300	2,080	3,670	7,490	13,600	22,000	45,100	81,900	130,000
90	52	110	207	424	635	1,220	1,950	3,450	7,030	12,700	20,600	42,300	76,900	122,000
100	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640	12,000	19,500	40,000	72,600	115,000
125	44	92	173	355	532	1,020	1,630	2,890	5,890	10,600	17,200	35,400	64,300	102,000
150	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330	9,650	15,600	32,100	58,300	92,300
175	37	77	144	296	443	854	1,360	2,410	4,910	8,880	14,400	29,500	53,600	84,900
200	34	71	134	275	412	794	1,270	2,240	4,560	8,260	13,400	27,500	49,900	79,000
250	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050	7,320	11,900	24,300	44,200	70,000
300	27	57	108	221	331	638	1,020	1,800	3,670	6,630	10,700	22,100	40,100	63,400
350	25	53	99	203	305	587	935	1,650	3,370	6,100	9,880	20,300	36,900	58,400
400	23	49	92	189	283	546	870	1,540	3,140	5,680	9,190	18,900	34,300	54,300
450	22	46	86	177	266	512	816	1,440	2,940	5,330	8,620	17,700	32,200	50,900
500	21	43	82	168	251	484	771	1,360	2,780	5,030	8,150	16,700	30,400	48,100
550	20	41	78	159	239	459	732	1,290	2,640	4,780	7,740	15,900	28,900	45,700
600	19	39	74	152	228	438	699	1,240	2,520	4,560	7,380	15,200	27,500	43,600
650	18	38	71	145	218	420	669	1,180	2,410	4,360	7,070	14,500	26,400	41,800
700	17	36	68	140	209	403	643	1,140	2,320	4,190	6,790	14,000	25,300	40,100
750	17	35	66	135	202	389	619	1,090	2,230	4,040	6,540	13,400	24,400	38,600
800	16	34	63	130	195	375	598	1,060	2,160	3,900	6,320	13,000	23,600	37,300
850	16	33	61	126	189	363	579	1,020	2,090	3,780	6,110	12,600	22,800	36,100
900	15	32	59	122	183	352	561	992	2,020	3,660	5,930	12,200	22,100	35,000
950	15	31	58	118	178	342	545	963	1,960	3,550	5,760	11,800	21,500	34,000
1,000	14	30	56	115	173	333	530	937	1,910	3,460	5,600	11,500	20,900	33,100
1,100	14	28	53	109	164	316	503	890	1,810	3,280	5,320	10,900	19,800	31,400
1,200	13	27	51	104	156	301	480	849	1,730	3,130	5,070	10,400	18,900	30,000
1,300	12	26	49	100	150	289	460	813	1,660	3,000	4,860	9,980	18,100	28,700
1,400	12	25	47	96	144	277	442	781	1,590	2,880	4,670	9,590	17,400	27,600
1,500	11	24	45	93	139	267	426	752	1,530	2,780	4,500	9,240	16,800	26,600
1,600	11	23	44	89	134	258	411	727	1,480	2,680	4,340	8,920	16,200	25,600
1,700	11	22	42	86	130	250	398	703	1,430	2,590	4,200	8,630	15,700	24,800
1,800	10	22	41	84	126	242	386	682	1,390	2,520	4,070	8,370	15,200	24,100
1,900	10	21	40	81	122	235	375	662	1,350	2,440	3,960	8,130	14,800	23,400
2,000	NA	20	39	79	119	229	364	644	1,310	2,380	3,850	7,910	14,400	22,700

NA: A flow of less than 10 cfh.

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(c) Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe

							Gas:	***Natural***
							Inlet Pressure:	***Less than 2 psi***
							Pressure Drop:	***3.0 in. w.c.***
							Specific Gravity:	***0.60***

INTENDED USE: Initial Supply Pressure of 8.0 in. w.c. or Greater.

	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	***½***	***¾***	***1***	***1¼***	***1½***	***2***	***2½***	***3***	***4***
Actual ID:	***0.622***	***0.824***	***1.049***	***1.380***	***1.610***	***2.067***	***2.469***	***3.068***	***4.026***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***								
10	454	949	1,790	3,670	5,500	10,600	16,900	29,800	60,800
20	312	652	1,230	2,520	3,780	7,280	11,600	20,500	41,800
30	250	524	986	2,030	3,030	5,840	9,310	16,500	33,600
40	214	448	844	1,730	2,600	5,000	7,970	14,100	28,700
50	190	397	748	1,540	2,300	4,430	7,060	12,500	25,500
60	172	360	678	1,390	2,090	4,020	6,400	11,300	23,100
70	158	331	624	1,280	1,920	3,690	5,890	10,400	21,200
80	147	308	580	1,190	1,790	3,440	5,480	9,690	19,800
90	138	289	544	1,120	1,670	3,230	5,140	9,090	18,500
100	131	273	514	1,060	1,580	3,050	4,860	8,580	17,500
125	116	242	456	936	1,400	2,700	4,300	7,610	15,500
150	105	219	413	848	1,270	2,450	3,900	6,890	14,100
175	96	202	380	780	1,170	2,250	3,590	6,340	12,900
200	90	188	353	726	1,090	2,090	3,340	5,900	12,000
250	80	166	313	643	964	1,860	2,960	5,230	10,700
300	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660
350	66	139	261	536	803	1,550	2,470	4,360	8,890
400	62	129	243	499	747	1,440	2,290	4,050	8,270
450	58	121	228	468	701	1,350	2,150	3,800	7,760
500	55	114	215	442	662	1,280	2,030	3,590	7,330
550	52	109	204	420	629	1,210	1,930	3,410	6,960
600	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640
650	47	99	187	384	575	1,110	1,760	3,120	6,360
700	46	95	179	368	552	1,060	1,690	3,000	6,110
750	44	92	173	355	532	1,020	1,630	2,890	5,890
800	42	89	167	343	514	989	1,580	2,790	5,680
850	41	86	162	332	497	957	1,530	2,700	5,500
900	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330
950	39	81	152	312	468	901	1,440	2,540	5,180
1,000	38	79	148	304	455	877	1,400	2,470	5,040
1,100	36	75	141	289	432	833	1,330	2,350	4,780
1,200	34	71	134	275	412	794	1,270	2,240	4,560
1,300	33	68	128	264	395	761	1,210	2,140	4,370
1,400	31	65	123	253	379	731	1,160	2,060	4,200
1,500	30	63	119	244	366	704	1,120	1,980	4,050
1,600	29	61	115	236	353	680	1,080	1,920	3,910
1,700	28	59	111	228	342	658	1,050	1,850	3,780
1,800	27	57	108	221	331	638	1,020	1,800	3,670
1,900	27	56	105	215	322	619	987	1,750	3,560
2,000	26	54	102	209	313	602	960	1,700	3,460

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(d) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

					Gas:		***Natural***	
					Inlet Pressure:		***Less than 2 psi***	
					Pressure Drop:		***6.0 in. w.c.***	
					Specific Gravity:		***0.60***	

INTENDED USE: Initial Supply Pressure of 11.0 in. w.c. or Greater.									
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	***½***	***¾***	***1***	***1¼***	***1½***	***2***	***2½***	***3***	***4***
Actual ID:	***0.622***	***0.824***	***1.049***	***1.38***	***1.61***	***2.067***	***2.469***	***3.068***	***4.026***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***								
10	660	1,380	2,600	5,340	8,000	15,400	24,600	43,400	88,500
20	454	949	1,790	3,670	5,500	10,600	16,900	29,800	60,800
30	364	762	1,440	2,950	4,410	8,500	13,600	24,000	48,900
40	312	652	1,230	2,520	3,780	7,280	11,600	20,500	41,800
50	276	578	1,090	2,240	3,350	6,450	10,300	18,200	37,100
60	250	524	986	2,030	3,030	5,840	9,310	16,500	33,600
70	230	482	907	1,860	2,790	5,380	8,570	15,100	30,900
80	214	448	844	1,730	2,600	5,000	7,970	14,100	28,700
90	201	420	792	1,630	2,440	4,690	7,480	13,200	27,000
100	190	397	748	1,540	2,300	4,430	7,060	12,500	25,500
125	168	352	663	1,360	2,040	3,930	6,260	11,100	22,600
150	153	319	601	1,230	1,850	3,560	5,670	10,000	20,500
175	140	293	553	1,140	1,700	3,270	5,220	9,230	18,800
200	131	273	514	1,056	1,580	3,050	4,860	8,580	17,500
250	116	242	456	936	1,400	2,700	4,300	7,610	15,500
300	105	219	413	848	1,270	2,450	3,900	6,890	14,100
350	96	202	380	780	1,170	2,250	3,590	6,340	12,900
400	90	188	353	726	1,090	2,090	3,340	5,900	12,000
450	84	176	332	681	1,020	1,960	3,130	5,540	11,300
500	80	166	313	643	964	1,860	2,960	5,230	10,700
550	76	158	297	611	915	1,760	2,810	4,970	10,100
600	72	151	284	583	873	1,680	2,680	4,740	9,660
650	69	144	272	558	836	1,610	2,570	4,540	9,250
700	66	139	261	536	803	1,550	2,470	4,360	8,890
750	64	134	252	516	774	1,490	2,380	4,200	8,560
800	62	129	243	499	747	1,440	2,290	4,050	8,270
850	60	125	235	483	723	1,390	2,220	3,920	8,000
900	58	121	228	468	701	1,350	2,150	3,800	7,760
950	56	118	221	454	681	1,310	2,090	3,690	7,540
1,000	55	114	215	442	662	1,280	2,030	3,590	7,330
1,100	52	109	204	420	629	1,210	1,930	3,410	6,960
1,200	50	104	195	400	600	1,160	1,840	3,260	6,640
1,300	47	99	187	384	575	1,110	1,760	3,120	6,360
1,400	46	95	179	368	552	1,060	1,690	3,000	6,110
1,500	44	92	173	355	532	1,020	1,630	2,890	5,890
1,600	42	89	167	343	514	989	1,580	2,790	5,680
1,700	41	86	162	332	497	957	1,530	2,700	5,500
1,800	40	83	157	322	482	928	1,480	2,610	5,330
1,900	39	81	152	312	468	901	1,440	2,540	5,180
2,000	38	79	148	304	455	877	1,400	2,470	5,040

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(e) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

						Gas:		*Natural*	
						Inlet Pressure:		*2.0 psi*	
						Pressure Drop:		*1.0 psi*	
						Specific Gravity:		*0.60*	
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	***½***	***¾***	***1***	***1¼***	***1½***	***2***	***2½***	***3***	***4***
Actual ID:	***0.622***	***0.824***	***1.049***	***1.380***	***1.610***	***2.067***	***2.469***	***3.068***	***4.026***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***								
10	1,510	3,040	5,560	11,400	17,100	32,900	52,500	92,800	189,000
20	1,070	2,150	3,930	8,070	12,100	23,300	37,100	65,600	134,000
30	869	1,760	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
40	753	1,520	2,780	5,710	8,550	16,500	26,300	46,400	94,700
50	673	1,360	2,490	5,110	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
60	615	1,240	2,270	4,660	6,980	13,500	21,400	37,900	77,300
70	569	1,150	2,100	4,320	6,470	12,500	19,900	35,100	71,600
80	532	1,080	1,970	4,040	6,050	11,700	18,600	32,800	67,000
90	502	1,010	1,850	3,810	5,700	11,000	17,500	30,900	63,100
100	462	934	1,710	3,510	5,260	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,200
125	414	836	1,530	3,140	4,700	9,060	14,400	25,500	52,100
150	372	751	1,370	2,820	4,220	8,130	13,000	22,900	46,700
175	344	695	1,270	2,601	3,910	7,530	12,000	21,200	43,300
200	318	642	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,960	11,100	19,600	40,000
250	279	583	1,040	2,140	3,210	6,180	9,850	17,400	35,500
300	253	528	945	1,940	2,910	5,600	8,920	15,800	32,200
350	232	486	869	1,790	2,670	5,150	8,210	14,500	29,600
400	216	452	809	1,660	2,490	4,790	7,640	13,500	27,500
450	203	424	759	1,560	2,330	4,500	7,170	12,700	25,800
500	192	401	717	1,470	2,210	4,250	6,770	12,000	24,400
550	182	381	681	1,400	2,090	4,030	6,430	11,400	23,200
600	174	363	650	1,330	2,000	3,850	6,130	10,800	22,100
650	166	348	622	1,280	1,910	3,680	5,870	10,400	21,200
700	160	334	598	1,230	1,840	3,540	5,640	9,970	20,300
750	154	322	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
800	149	311	556	1,140	1,710	3,290	5,250	9,280	18,900
850	144	301	538	1,100	1,650	3,190	5,080	8,980	18,300
900	139	292	522	1,070	1,600	3,090	4,930	8,710	17,800
950	135	283	507	1,040	1,560	3,000	4,780	8,460	17,200
1,000	132	275	493	1,010	1,520	2,920	4,650	8,220	16,800
1,100	125	262	468	960	1,440	2,770	4,420	7,810	15,900
1,200	119	250	446	917	1,370	2,640	4,220	7,450	15,200
1,300	114	239	427	878	1,320	2,530	4,040	7,140	14,600
1,400	110	230	411	843	1,260	2,430	3,880	6,860	14,000
1,500	106	221	396	812	1,220	2,340	3,740	6,600	13,500
1,600	102	214	382	784	1,180	2,260	3,610	6,380	13,000
1,700	99	207	370	759	1,140	2,190	3,490	6,170	12,600
1,800	96	200	358	736	1,100	2,120	3,390	5,980	12,200
1,900	93	195	348	715	1,070	2,060	3,290	5,810	11,900
2,000	91	189	339	695	1,040	2,010	3,200	5,650	11,500

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(f) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

						Gas:	***Natural***	
						Inlet Pressure:	***3.0 psi***	
						Pressure Drop:	***2.0 psi***	
						Specific Gravity:	***0.60***	
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual ID:	***0.622***	***0.824***	***1.049***	***1.380***	***1.610***	***2.067***	***2.469***	***3.068***	***4.026***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***								
10	2,350	4,920	9,270	19,000	28,500	54,900	87,500	155,000	316,000
20	1,620	3,380	6,370	13,100	19,600	37,700	60,100	106,000	217,000
30	1,300	2,720	5,110	10,500	15,700	30,300	48,300	85,400	174,000
40	1,110	2,320	4,380	8,990	13,500	25,900	41,300	73,100	149,000
50	985	2,060	3,880	7,970	11,900	23,000	36,600	64,800	132,000
60	892	1,870	3,520	7,220	10,800	20,800	33,200	58,700	120,000
70	821	1,720	3,230	6,640	9,950	19,200	30,500	54,000	110,000
80	764	1,600	3,010	6,180	9,260	17,800	28,400	50,200	102,000
90	717	1,500	2,820	5,800	8,680	16,700	26,700	47,100	96,100
100	677	1,420	2,670	5,470	8,200	15,800	25,200	44,500	90,800
125	600	1,250	2,360	4,850	7,270	14,000	22,300	39,500	80,500
150	544	1,140	2,140	4,400	6,590	12,700	20,200	35,700	72,900
175	500	1,050	1,970	4,040	6,060	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,100
200	465	973	1,830	3,760	5,640	10,900	17,300	30,600	62,400
250	412	862	1,620	3,330	5,000	9,620	15,300	27,100	55,300
300	374	781	1,470	3,020	4,530	8,720	13,900	24,600	50,100
350	344	719	1,350	2,780	4,170	8,020	12,800	22,600	46,100
400	320	669	1,260	2,590	3,870	7,460	11,900	21,000	42,900
450	300	627	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,000	11,200	19,700	40,200
500	283	593	1,120	2,290	3,430	6,610	10,500	18,600	38,000
550	269	563	1,060	2,180	3,260	6,280	10,000	17,700	36,100
600	257	537	1,010	2,080	3,110	5,990	9,550	16,900	34,400
650	246	514	969	1,990	2,980	5,740	9,150	16,200	33,000
700	236	494	931	1,910	2,860	5,510	8,790	15,500	31,700
750	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
800	220	460	866	1,780	2,660	5,130	8,180	14,500	29,500
850	213	445	838	1,720	2,580	4,960	7,910	14,000	28,500
900	206	431	812	1,670	2,500	4,810	7,670	13,600	27,700
950	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,000	195	407	767	1,580	2,360	4,550	7,240	12,800	26,100
1,100	185	387	729	1,500	2,240	4,320	6,890	12,200	24,800
1,200	177	369	695	1,430	2,140	4,120	6,570	11,600	23,700
1,300	169	353	666	1,370	2,050	3,940	6,290	11,100	22,700
1,400	162	340	640	1,310	1,970	3,790	6,040	10,700	21,800
1,500	156	327	616	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
1,600	151	316	595	1,220	1,830	3,530	5,620	10,000	20,300
1,700	146	306	576	1,180	1,770	3,410	5,440	9,610	19,600
1,800	142	296	558	1,150	1,720	3,310	5,270	9,320	19,000
1,900	138	288	542	1,110	1,670	3,210	5,120	9,050	18,400
2,000	134	280	527	1,080	1,620	3,120	4,980	8,800	18,000

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(g) Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe

						Gas:		*Natural*	
						Inlet Pressure:		*5.0 psi*	
						Pressure Drop:		*3.5 psi*	
						Specific Gravity:		*0.60*	
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual ID:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	3,190	6,430	11,800	24,200	36,200	69,700	111,000	196,000	401,000
20	2,250	4,550	8,320	17,100	25,600	49,300	78,600	139,000	283,000
30	1,840	3,720	6,790	14,000	20,900	40,300	64,200	113,000	231,000
40	1,590	3,220	5,880	12,100	18,100	34,900	55,600	98,200	200,000
50	1,430	2,880	5,260	10,800	16,200	31,200	49,700	87,900	179,000
60	1,300	2,630	4,800	9,860	14,800	28,500	45,400	80,200	164,000
70	1,200	2,430	4,450	9,130	13,700	26,400	42,000	74,300	151,000
80	1,150	2,330	4,260	8,540	12,800	24,700	39,300	69,500	142,000
90	1,060	2,150	3,920	8,050	12,100	23,200	37,000	65,500	134,000
100	979	1,980	3,620	7,430	11,100	21,400	34,200	60,400	123,000
125	876	1,770	3,240	6,640	9,950	19,200	30,600	54,000	110,000
150	786	1,590	2,910	5,960	8,940	17,200	27,400	48,500	98,900
175	728	1,470	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,600
200	673	1,360	2,490	5,100	7,650	14,700	23,500	41,500	84,700
250	558	1,170	2,200	4,510	6,760	13,000	20,800	36,700	74,900
300	506	1,060	1,990	4,090	6,130	11,800	18,800	33,300	67,800
350	465	973	1,830	3,760	5,640	10,900	17,300	30,600	62,400
400	433	905	1,710	3,500	5,250	10,100	16,100	28,500	58,100
450	406	849	1,600	3,290	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
500	384	802	1,510	3,100	4,650	8,950	14,300	25,200	51,500
550	364	762	1,440	2,950	4,420	8,500	13,600	24,000	48,900
600	348	727	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,900	46,600
650	333	696	1,310	2,690	4,030	7,770	12,400	21,900	44,600
700	320	669	1,260	2,590	3,880	7,460	11,900	21,000	42,900
750	308	644	1,210	2,490	3,730	7,190	11,500	20,300	41,300
800	298	622	1,170	2,410	3,610	6,940	11,100	19,600	39,900
850	288	602	1,130	2,330	3,490	6,720	10,700	18,900	38,600
900	279	584	1,100	2,260	3,380	6,520	10,400	18,400	37,400
950	271	567	1,070	2,190	3,290	6,330	10,100	17,800	36,400
1,000	264	551	1,040	2,130	3,200	6,150	9,810	17,300	35,400
1,100	250	524	987	2,030	3,030	5,840	9,320	16,500	33,600
1,200	239	500	941	1,930	2,900	5,580	8,890	15,700	32,000
1,300	229	478	901	1,850	2,770	5,340	8,510	15,000	30,700
1,400	220	460	866	1,780	2,660	5,130	8,180	14,500	29,500
1,500	212	443	834	1,710	2,570	4,940	7,880	13,900	28,400
1,600	205	428	806	1,650	2,480	4,770	7,610	13,400	27,400
1,700	198	414	780	1,600	2,400	4,620	7,360	13,000	26,500
1,800	192	401	756	1,550	2,330	4,480	7,140	12,600	25,700
1,900	186	390	734	1,510	2,260	4,350	6,930	12,300	25,000
2,000	181	379	714	1,470	2,200	4,230	6,740	11,900	24,300

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

***TABLE 6.2(h)** Semirigid Copper Tubing*

						Gas:	Natural	
						Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi	
						Pressure Drop:	0.3 in. w.c.	
						Specific Gravity:	0.60	

		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	K & L:	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR:	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside:		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10		20	42	85	148	210	448	806	1,270	2,650
20		14	29	58	102	144	308	554	873	1,820
30		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
40		10	20	40	70	99	211	381	600	1,250
50		NA	17	35	62	88	187	337	532	1,110
60		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
70		NA	14	29	52	73	156	281	443	924
80		NA	13	27	48	68	145	262	413	859
90		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
100		NA	12	24	43	60	129	232	366	761
125		NA	11	22	38	53	114	206	324	675
150		NA	10	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
175		NA	NA	18	31	45	95	171	270	563
200		NA	NA	17	29	41	89	159	251	523
250		NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
300		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
350		NA	NA	12	22	31	65	118	186	387
400		NA	NA	11	20	28	61	110	173	360
450		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
500		NA	NA	10	18	25	54	97	153	319
550		NA	NA	NA	17	24	51	92	145	303
600		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
650		NA	NA	NA	15	22	47	84	133	277
700		NA	NA	NA	15	21	45	81	128	266
750		NA	NA	NA	14	20	43	78	123	256
800		NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	75	119	247
850		NA	NA	NA	13	19	40	73	115	239
900		NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
950		NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	69	108	225
1,000		NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	67	105	219
1,100		NA	NA	NA	12	16	35	63	100	208
1,200		NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199
1,300		NA	NA	NA	11	15	32	58	91	190
1,400		NA	NA	NA	10	14	31	56	88	183
1,500		NA	NA	NA	NA	14	30	54	84	176
1,600		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	29	52	82	170
1,700		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	28	50	79	164
1,800		NA	NA	NA	NA	13	27	49	77	159
1,900		NA	NA	NA	NA	12	26	47	74	155
2,000		NA	NA	NA	NA	12	25	46	72	151

NA: A flow of less than 10 cfh.

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.2(i) *Semirigid Copper Tubing*

					Gas:		*Natural*		
					Inlet Pressure:		*Less than 2 psi*		
					Pressure Drop:		*0.5 in. w.c.*		
					Specific Gravity:		*0.60*		
		Tube Size (in.)							
Nominal:	*K & L:*	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
	ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:		0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
*Inside:**		0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		*Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour*								
10		27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
20		18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
30		15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
40		13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
50		11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
60		10	21	42	74	105	224	403	635	1,320
70		NA	19	39	68	96	206	371	585	1,220
80		NA	18	36	63	90	192	345	544	1,130
90		NA	17	34	59	84	180	324	510	1,060
100		NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
125		NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
150		NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
175		NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
200		NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
250		NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
300		NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
350		NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
400		NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
450		NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
500		NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
550		NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
600		NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
650		NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
700		NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
750		NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
800		NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
850		NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
900		NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
950		NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
1,000		NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289
1,100		NA	NA	NA	15	22	46	84	132	274
1,200		NA	NA	NA	15	21	44	80	126	262
1,300		NA	NA	NA	14	20	42	76	120	251
1,400		NA	NA	NA	13	19	41	73	116	241
1,500		NA	NA	NA	13	18	39	71	111	232
1,600		NA	NA	NA	13	18	38	68	108	224
1,700		NA	NA	NA	12	17	37	66	104	217
1,800		NA	NA	NA	12	17	36	64	101	210
1,900		NA	NA	NA	11	16	35	62	98	204
2,000		NA	NA	NA	11	16	34	60	95	199

NA: A flow of less than 10 cfh.

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.2(j) *Semirigid Copper Tubing*

					Gas:	Natural			
					Inlet Pressure:	Less than 2 psi			
					Pressure Drop:	1.0 in. w.c.			
					Specific Gravity:	0.60			
INTENDED USE: Tube Sizing Between House Line Regulator and the Appliance.									
	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
Nominal: ACR:	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10	39	80	162	283	402	859	1,550	2,440	5,080
20	27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
30	21	44	89	156	222	474	853	1,350	2,800
40	18	38	77	134	190	406	730	1,150	2,400
50	16	33	68	119	168	359	647	1,020	2,130
60	15	30	61	107	152	326	586	925	1,930
70	13	28	57	99	140	300	539	851	1,770
80	13	26	53	92	131	279	502	791	1,650
90	12	24	49	86	122	262	471	742	1,550
100	11	23	47	82	116	247	445	701	1,460
125	NA	20	41	72	103	219	394	622	1,290
150	NA	18	37	65	93	198	357	563	1,170
175	NA	17	34	60	85	183	329	518	1,080
200	NA	16	32	56	79	170	306	482	1,000
250	NA	14	28	50	70	151	271	427	890
300	NA	13	26	45	64	136	245	387	806
350	NA	12	24	41	59	125	226	356	742
400	NA	11	22	39	55	117	210	331	690
450	NA	10	21	36	51	110	197	311	647
500	NA	NA	20	34	48	103	186	294	612
550	NA	NA	19	32	46	98	177	279	581
600	NA	NA	18	31	44	94	169	266	554
650	NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	255	531
700	NA	NA	16	28	40	86	155	245	510
750	NA	NA	16	27	39	83	150	236	491
800	NA	NA	15	26	38	80	144	228	474
850	NA	NA	15	26	36	78	140	220	459
900	NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	214	445
950	NA	NA	14	24	34	73	132	207	432
1,000	NA	NA	13	23	33	71	128	202	420
1,100	NA	NA	13	22	32	68	122	192	399
1,200	NA	NA	12	21	30	64	116	183	381
1,300	NA	NA	12	20	29	62	111	175	365
1,400	NA	NA	11	20	28	59	107	168	350
1,500	NA	NA	11	19	27	57	103	162	338
1,600	NA	NA	10	18	26	55	99	156	326
1,700	NA	NA	10	18	25	53	96	151	315
1,800	NA	NA	NA	17	24	52	93	147	306
1,900	NA	NA	NA	17	24	50	90	143	297
2,000	NA	NA	NA	16	23	49	88	139	289

NA: A flow of less than 10 cfh.

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.2(k) *Semirigid Copper Tubing*

					Gas:	**Natural**			
					Inlet Pressure:	**Less than 2.0 psi**			
					Pressure Drop:	**17.0 in. w.c.**			
					Specific Gravity:	**0.60**			
	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**								
10	190	391	796	1,390	1,970	4,220	7,590	12,000	24,900
20	130	269	547	956	1,360	2,900	5,220	8,230	17,100
30	105	216	439	768	1,090	2,330	4,190	6,610	13,800
40	90	185	376	657	932	1,990	3,590	5,650	11,800
50	79	164	333	582	826	1,770	3,180	5,010	10,400
60	72	148	302	528	749	1,600	2,880	4,540	9,460
70	66	137	278	486	689	1,470	2,650	4,180	8,700
80	62	127	258	452	641	1,370	2,460	3,890	8,090
90	58	119	243	424	601	1,280	2,310	3,650	7,590
100	55	113	229	400	568	1,210	2,180	3,440	7,170
125	48	100	203	355	503	1,080	1,940	3,050	6,360
150	44	90	184	321	456	974	1,750	2,770	5,760
175	40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
200	38	77	157	275	390	834	1,500	2,370	4,930
250	33	69	140	244	346	739	1,330	2,100	4,370
300	30	62	126	221	313	670	1,210	1,900	3,960
350	28	57	116	203	288	616	1,110	1,750	3,640
400	26	53	108	189	268	573	1,030	1,630	3,390
450	24	50	102	177	252	538	968	1,530	3,180
500	23	47	96	168	238	508	914	1,440	3,000
550	22	45	91	159	226	482	868	1,370	2,850
600	21	43	87	152	215	460	829	1,310	2,720
650	20	41	83	145	206	441	793	1,250	2,610
700	19	39	80	140	198	423	762	1,200	2,500
750	18	38	77	135	191	408	734	1,160	2,410
800	18	37	74	130	184	394	709	1,120	2,330
850	17	35	72	126	178	381	686	1,080	2,250
900	17	34	70	122	173	370	665	1,050	2,180
950	16	33	68	118	168	359	646	1,020	2,120
1,000	16	32	66	115	163	349	628	991	2,060
1,100	15	31	63	109	155	332	597	941	1,960
1,200	14	29	60	104	148	316	569	898	1,870
1,300	14	28	57	100	142	303	545	860	1,790
1,400	13	27	55	96	136	291	524	826	1,720
1,500	13	26	53	93	131	280	505	796	1,660
1,600	12	25	51	89	127	271	487	768	1,600
1,700	12	24	49	86	123	262	472	744	1,550
1,800	11	24	48	84	119	254	457	721	1,500
1,900	11	23	47	81	115	247	444	700	1,460
2,000	11	22	45	79	112	240	432	681	1,420

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.2(l) *Semirigid Copper Tubing*

									Gas:	Natural
									Inlet Pressure:	2.0 psi
									Pressure Drop:	1.0 psi
									Specific Gravity:	0.60

		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	K & L:	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
	ACR:	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
	Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
	Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)		Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour								
10		245	506	1,030	1,800	2,550	5,450	9,820	15,500	32,200
20		169	348	708	1,240	1,760	3,750	6,750	10,600	22,200
30		135	279	568	993	1,410	3,010	5,420	8,550	17,800
40		116	239	486	850	1,210	2,580	4,640	7,310	15,200
50		103	212	431	754	1,070	2,280	4,110	6,480	13,500
60		93	192	391	683	969	2,070	3,730	5,870	12,200
70		86	177	359	628	891	1,900	3,430	5,400	11,300
80		80	164	334	584	829	1,770	3,190	5,030	10,500
90		75	154	314	548	778	1,660	2,990	4,720	9,820
100		71	146	296	518	735	1,570	2,830	4,450	9,280
125		63	129	263	459	651	1,390	2,500	3,950	8,220
150		57	117	238	416	590	1,260	2,270	3,580	7,450
175		52	108	219	383	543	1,160	2,090	3,290	6,850
200		49	100	204	356	505	1,080	1,940	3,060	6,380
250		43	89	181	315	448	956	1,720	2,710	5,650
300		39	80	164	286	406	866	1,560	2,460	5,120
350		36	74	150	263	373	797	1,430	2,260	4,710
400		33	69	140	245	347	741	1,330	2,100	4,380
450		31	65	131	230	326	696	1,250	1,970	4,110
500		30	61	124	217	308	657	1,180	1,870	3,880
550		28	58	118	206	292	624	1,120	1,770	3,690
600		27	55	112	196	279	595	1,070	1,690	3,520
650		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
700		25	51	103	181	256	548	986	1,550	3,240
750		24	49	100	174	247	528	950	1,500	3,120
800		23	47	96	168	239	510	917	1,450	3,010
850		22	46	93	163	231	493	888	1,400	2,920
900		22	44	90	158	224	478	861	1,360	2,830
950		21	43	88	153	217	464	836	1,320	2,740
1,000		20	42	85	149	211	452	813	1,280	2,670
1,100		19	40	81	142	201	429	772	1,220	2,540
1,200		18	38	77	135	192	409	737	1,160	2,420
1,300		18	36	74	129	183	392	705	1,110	2,320
1,400		17	35	71	124	176	376	678	1,070	2,230
1,500		16	34	68	120	170	363	653	1,030	2,140
1,600		16	33	66	116	164	350	630	994	2,070
1,700		15	31	64	112	159	339	610	962	2,000
1,800		15	30	62	108	154	329	592	933	1,940
1,900		14	30	60	105	149	319	575	906	1,890
2,000		14	29	59	102	145	310	559	881	1,830

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.2(m) *Semirigid Copper Tubing*

						Gas:	*Natural*		
						Inlet Pressure:	*2.0 psi*		
						Pressure Drop:	*1.5 psi*		
						Specific Gravity:	*0.60*		

INTENDED USE: Pipe Sizing Between Point of Delivery and the House Line Regulator. Total Load Supplied by a Single House Line Regulator Not Exceeding 150 Cubic Feet per Hour.*

	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:[†]	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***								
10	303	625	1,270	2,220	3,150	6,740	12,100	19,100	39,800
20	208	430	874	1,530	2,170	4,630	8,330	13,100	27,400
30	167	345	702	1,230	1,740	3,720	6,690	10,600	22,000
40	143	295	601	1,050	1,490	3,180	5,730	9,030	18,800
50	127	262	532	931	1,320	2,820	5,080	8,000	16,700
60	115	237	482	843	1,200	2,560	4,600	7,250	15,100
70	106	218	444	776	1,100	2,350	4,230	6,670	13,900
80	98	203	413	722	1,020	2,190	3,940	6,210	12,900
90	92	190	387	677	961	2,050	3,690	5,820	12,100
100	87	180	366	640	907	1,940	3,490	5,500	11,500
125	77	159	324	567	804	1,720	3,090	4,880	10,200
150	70	144	294	514	729	1,560	2,800	4,420	9,200
175	64	133	270	472	670	1,430	2,580	4,060	8,460
200	60	124	252	440	624	1,330	2,400	3,780	7,870
250	53	110	223	390	553	1,180	2,130	3,350	6,980
300	48	99	202	353	501	1,070	1,930	3,040	6,320
350	44	91	186	325	461	984	1,770	2,790	5,820
400	41	85	173	302	429	916	1,650	2,600	5,410
450	39	80	162	283	402	859	1,550	2,440	5,080
500	36	75	153	268	380	811	1,460	2,300	4,800
550	35	72	146	254	361	771	1,390	2,190	4,560
600	33	68	139	243	344	735	1,320	2,090	4,350
650	32	65	133	232	330	704	1,270	2,000	4,160
700	30	63	128	223	317	676	1,220	1,920	4,000
750	29	60	123	215	305	652	1,170	1,850	3,850
800	28	58	119	208	295	629	1,130	1,790	3,720
850	27	57	115	201	285	609	1,100	1,730	3,600
900	27	55	111	195	276	590	1,060	1,680	3,490
950	26	53	108	189	268	573	1,030	1,630	3,390
1,000	25	52	105	184	261	558	1,000	1,580	3,300
1,100	24	49	100	175	248	530	954	1,500	3,130
1,200	23	47	95	167	237	505	910	1,430	2,990
1,300	22	45	91	160	227	484	871	1,370	2,860
1,400	21	43	88	153	218	465	837	1,320	2,750
1,500	20	42	85	148	210	448	806	1,270	2,650
1,600	19	40	82	143	202	432	779	1,230	2,560
1,700	19	39	79	138	196	419	753	1,190	2,470
1,800	18	38	77	134	190	406	731	1,150	2,400
1,900	18	37	74	130	184	394	709	1,120	2,330
2,000	17	36	72	126	179	383	690	1,090	2,270

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*When this table is used to size the tubing upstream of a line pressure regulator, the pipe or tubing downstream of the line pressure regulator shall be sized using a pressure drop no greater than 1 in. w.c.

[†]Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.2(n) *Semirigid Copper Tubing*

					Gas:	***Natural***			
					Inlet Pressure:	***5.0 psi***			
					Pressure Drop:	***3.5 psi***			
					Specific Gravity:	***0.60***			
	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	***¼***	***⅜***	***½***	***⅝***	***¾***	***1***	***1¼***	***1½***	***2***
Nominal: ACR:	***⅜***	***½***	***⅝***	***¾***	***⅞***	***1⅛***	***1⅜***	***—***	***—***
Outside:	***0.375***	***0.500***	***0.625***	***0.750***	***0.875***	***1.125***	***1.375***	***1.625***	***2.125***
Inside:*	***0.305***	***0.402***	***0.527***	***0.652***	***0.745***	***0.995***	***1.245***	***1.481***	***1.959***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***								
10	511	1,050	2,140	3,750	5,320	11,400	20,400	32,200	67,100
20	351	724	1,470	2,580	3,650	7,800	14,000	22,200	46,100
30	282	582	1,180	2,070	2,930	6,270	11,300	17,800	37,000
40	241	498	1,010	1,770	2,510	5,360	9,660	15,200	31,700
50	214	441	898	1,570	2,230	4,750	8,560	13,500	28,100
60	194	400	813	1,420	2,020	4,310	7,750	12,200	25,500
70	178	368	748	1,310	1,860	3,960	7,130	11,200	23,400
80	166	342	696	1,220	1,730	3,690	6,640	10,500	21,800
90	156	321	653	1,140	1,620	3,460	6,230	9,820	20,400
100	147	303	617	1,080	1,530	3,270	5,880	9,270	19,300
125	130	269	547	955	1,360	2,900	5,210	8,220	17,100
150	118	243	495	866	1,230	2,620	4,720	7,450	15,500
175	109	224	456	796	1,130	2,410	4,350	6,850	14,300
200	101	208	424	741	1,050	2,250	4,040	6,370	13,300
250	90	185	376	657	932	1,990	3,580	5,650	11,800
300	81	167	340	595	844	1,800	3,250	5,120	10,700
350	75	154	313	547	777	1,660	2,990	4,710	9,810
400	69	143	291	509	722	1,540	2,780	4,380	9,120
450	65	134	273	478	678	1,450	2,610	4,110	8,560
500	62	127	258	451	640	1,370	2,460	3,880	8,090
550	58	121	245	429	608	1,300	2,340	3,690	7,680
600	56	115	234	409	580	1,240	2,230	3,520	7,330
650	53	110	224	392	556	1,190	2,140	3,370	7,020
700	51	106	215	376	534	1,140	2,050	3,240	6,740
750	49	102	207	362	514	1,100	1,980	3,120	6,490
800	48	98	200	350	497	1,060	1,910	3,010	6,270
850	46	95	194	339	481	1,030	1,850	2,910	6,070
900	45	92	188	328	466	1,000	1,790	2,820	5,880
950	43	90	182	319	452	967	1,740	2,740	5,710
1,000	42	87	177	310	440	940	1,690	2,670	5,560
1,100	40	83	169	295	418	893	1,610	2,530	5,280
1,200	38	79	161	281	399	852	1,530	2,420	5,040
1,300	37	76	154	269	382	816	1,470	2,320	4,820
1,400	35	73	148	259	367	784	1,410	2,220	4,630
1,500	34	70	143	249	353	755	1,360	2,140	4,460
1,600	33	68	138	241	341	729	1,310	2,070	4,310
1,700	32	65	133	233	330	705	1,270	2,000	4,170
1,800	31	63	129	226	320	684	1,230	1,940	4,040
1,900	30	62	125	219	311	664	1,200	1,890	3,930
2,000	29	60	122	213	302	646	1,160	1,830	3,820

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.2(o) *Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

												Gas:	***Natural***	
												Inlet Pressure:	***Less than 2 psi***	
												Pressure Drop:	***0.5 in. w.c.***	
												Specific Gravity:	***0.60***	
	Tube Size (EHD)													
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***39***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***													
5	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,037	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
10	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	746	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
15	25	35	66	77	132	157	267	310	524	615	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
20	22	31	58	67	116	137	231	269	456	536	888	1,050	1,850	2,080
25	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	482	793	936	1,660	1,860
30	18	25	47	55	96	112	188	218	374	442	723	856	1,520	1,700
40	15	21	41	47	83	97	162	188	325	386	625	742	1,320	1,470
50	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	292	347	559	665	1,180	1,320
60	12	17	34	38	68	80	131	153	267	318	509	608	1,080	1,200
70	11	16	31	36	63	74	121	141	248	295	471	563	1,000	1,110
80	10	15	29	33	60	69	113	132	232	277	440	527	940	1,040
90	10	14	28	32	57	65	107	125	219	262	415	498	887	983
100	9	13	26	30	54	62	101	118	208	249	393	472	843	933
150	7	10	20	23	42	48	78	91	171	205	320	387	691	762
200	6	9	18	21	38	44	71	82	148	179	277	336	600	661
250	5	8	16	19	34	39	63	74	133	161	247	301	538	591
300	5	7	15	17	32	36	57	67	95	148	226	275	492	540

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(p) *Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

Gas:	***Natural***
Inlet Pressure:	***Less than 2 psi***
Pressure Drop:	***3.0 in. w.c.***
Specific Gravity:	***0.60***

INTENDED USE: Initial Supply Pressure of 8.0 in. w.c. or Greater.

	Tube Size (EHD)												
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***												
5	120	160	277	327	529	649	1,180	1,370	2,140	4,430	5,010	8,800	10,100
10	83	112	197	231	380	462	828	958	1,530	3,200	3,560	6,270	7,160
15	67	90	161	189	313	379	673	778	1,250	2,540	2,910	5,140	5,850
20	57	78	140	164	273	329	580	672	1,090	2,200	2,530	4,460	5,070
25	51	69	125	147	245	295	518	599	978	1,960	2,270	4,000	4,540
30	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
40	39	54	100	116	196	234	407	471	778	1,550	1,800	3,180	3,590
50	35	48	89	104	176	210	363	421	698	1,380	1,610	2,850	3,210
60	32	44	82	95	161	192	330	383	639	1,260	1,470	2,600	2,930
70	29	41	76	88	150	178	306	355	593	1,170	1,360	2,420	2,720
80	27	38	71	82	141	167	285	331	555	1,090	1,280	2,260	2,540
90	26	36	67	77	133	157	268	311	524	1,030	1,200	2,140	2,400
100	24	34	63	73	126	149	254	295	498	974	1,140	2,030	2,280
150	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	793	936	1,660	1,860
200	17	23	45	52	91	106	178	207	355	686	812	1,440	1,610
250	15	21	40	46	82	95	159	184	319	613	728	1,290	1,440
300	13	19	37	42	75	87	144	168	234	559	665	1,180	1,320

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(q) *Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

										Gas:		***Natural***	
										Inlet Pressure:		***Less than 2 psi***	
										Pressure Drop:		***6.0 in. w.c.***	
										Specific Gravity:		***0.60***	
INTENDED USE: Initial Supply Pressure of 11.0 in. w.c. or Greater.													
	Tube Size (EHD)												
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***												
5	173	229	389	461	737	911	1,690	1,950	3,000	6,280	7,050	12,400	14,260
10	120	160	277	327	529	649	1,180	1,370	2,140	4,430	5,010	8,800	10,100
15	96	130	227	267	436	532	960	1,110	1,760	3,610	4,100	7,210	8,260
20	83	112	197	231	380	462	828	958	1,530	3,120	3,560	6,270	7,160
25	74	99	176	207	342	414	739	855	1,370	2,790	3,190	5,620	6,400
30	67	90	161	189	313	379	673	778	1,250	2,540	2,910	5,140	5,850
40	57	78	140	164	273	329	580	672	1,090	2,200	2,530	4,460	5,070
50	51	69	125	147	245	295	518	599	978	1,960	2,270	4,000	4,540
60	46	63	115	134	225	270	471	546	895	1,790	2,070	3,660	4,140
70	42	58	106	124	209	250	435	505	830	1,660	1,920	3,390	3,840
80	39	54	100	116	196	234	407	471	778	1,550	1,800	3,180	3,590
90	37	51	94	109	185	221	383	444	735	1,460	1,700	3,000	3,390
100	35	48	89	104	176	210	363	421	698	1,380	1,610	2,850	3,210
150	28	39	73	85	145	172	294	342	573	1,130	1,320	2,340	2,630
200	24	34	63	73	126	149	254	295	498	974	1,140	2,030	2,280
250	21	30	57	66	114	134	226	263	447	870	1,020	1,820	2,040
300	19	27	52	60	104	122	206	240	409	793	936	1,660	1,860

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.

(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(r) *Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

Gas:	***Natural***
Inlet Pressure:	***2.0 psi***
Pressure Drop:	***1.0 psi***
Specific Gravity:	***0.60***

	Tube Size (EHD)													
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***39***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***													
10	270	353	587	700	1,100	1,370	2,590	2,990	4,510	5,037	9,600	10,700	18,600	21,600
25	166	220	374	444	709	876	1,620	1,870	2,890	3,258	6,040	6,780	11,900	13,700
30	151	200	342	405	650	801	1,480	1,700	2,640	2,987	5,510	6,200	10,900	12,500
40	129	172	297	351	567	696	1,270	1,470	2,300	2,605	4,760	5,380	9,440	10,900
50	115	154	266	314	510	624	1,140	1,310	2,060	2,343	4,260	4,820	8,470	9,720
75	93	124	218	257	420	512	922	1,070	1,690	1,932	3,470	3,950	6,940	7,940
80	89	120	211	249	407	496	892	1,030	1,640	1,874	3,360	3,820	6,730	7,690
100	79	107	189	222	366	445	795	920	1,470	1,685	3,000	3,420	6,030	6,880
150	64	87	155	182	302	364	646	748	1,210	1,389	2,440	2,800	4,940	5,620
200	55	75	135	157	263	317	557	645	1,050	1,212	2,110	2,430	4,290	4,870
250	49	67	121	141	236	284	497	576	941	1,090	1,890	2,180	3,850	4,360
300	44	61	110	129	217	260	453	525	862	999	1,720	1,990	3,520	3,980
400	38	52	96	111	189	225	390	453	749	871	1,490	1,730	3,060	3,450
500	34	46	86	100	170	202	348	404	552	783	1,330	1,550	2,740	3,090

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds ¾ psi, do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.
(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
(3) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger number of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing according to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

***TABLE 6.2(s)** Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

											Gas:		***Natural***	
											Inlet Pressure:		***5.0 psi***	
											Pressure Drop:		***3.5 psi***	
											Specific Gravity:		***0.60***	
	Tube Size (EHD)													
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***39***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***													
10	523	674	1,080	1,300	2,000	2,530	4,920	5,660	8,300	9,140	18,100	19,800	34,400	40,400
25	322	420	691	827	1,290	1,620	3,080	3,540	5,310	5,911	11,400	12,600	22,000	25,600
30	292	382	632	755	1,180	1,480	2,800	3,230	4,860	5,420	10,400	11,500	20,100	23,400
40	251	329	549	654	1,030	1,280	2,420	2,790	4,230	4,727	8,970	10,000	17,400	20,200
50	223	293	492	586	926	1,150	2,160	2,490	3,790	4,251	8,020	8,930	15,600	18,100
75	180	238	403	479	763	944	1,750	2,020	3,110	3,506	6,530	7,320	12,800	14,800
80	174	230	391	463	740	915	1,690	1,960	3,020	3,400	6,320	7,090	12,400	14,300
100	154	205	350	415	665	820	1,510	1,740	2,710	3,057	5,650	6,350	11,100	12,800
150	124	166	287	339	548	672	1,230	1,420	2,220	2,521	4,600	5,200	9,130	10,500
200	107	143	249	294	478	584	1,060	1,220	1,930	2,199	3,980	4,510	7,930	9,090
250	95	128	223	263	430	524	945	1,090	1,730	1,977	3,550	4,040	7,110	8,140
300	86	116	204	240	394	479	860	995	1,590	1,813	3,240	3,690	6,500	7,430
400	74	100	177	208	343	416	742	858	1,380	1,581	2,800	3,210	5,650	6,440
500	66	89	159	186	309	373	662	766	1,040	1,422	2,500	2,870	5,060	5,760

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds 1 psi, do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drop across regulator may vary with the flow rate.
(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity of selected regulator. Consult with tubing manufacturer for guidance.
(3) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

***TABLE 6.2(t)** Polyethylene Plastic Pipe*

					Gas:	*Natural*		
					Inlet Pressure:	*Less than 2 psi*		
					Pressure Drop:	*0.3 in. w.c.*		
					Specific Gravity:	*0.60*		
	Pipe Size (in.)							
Nominal OD:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	3	4
Designation:	SDR 9.3	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID:	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**							
10	153	305	551	955	1,440	2,590	7,170	13,900
20	105	210	379	656	991	1,780	4,920	9,520
30	84	169	304	527	796	1,430	3,950	7,640
40	72	144	260	451	681	1,220	3,380	6,540
50	64	128	231	400	604	1,080	3,000	5,800
60	58	116	209	362	547	983	2,720	5,250
70	53	107	192	333	503	904	2,500	4,830
80	50	99	179	310	468	841	2,330	4,500
90	46	93	168	291	439	789	2,180	4,220
100	44	88	159	275	415	745	2,060	3,990
125	39	78	141	243	368	661	1,830	3,530
150	35	71	127	221	333	598	1,660	3,200
175	32	65	117	203	306	551	1,520	2,940
200	30	60	109	189	285	512	1,420	2,740
250	27	54	97	167	253	454	1,260	2,430
300	24	48	88	152	229	411	1,140	2,200
350	22	45	81	139	211	378	1,050	2,020
400	21	42	75	130	196	352	974	1,880
450	19	39	70	122	184	330	914	1,770
500	18	37	66	115	174	312	863	1,670

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(u) *Polyethylene Plastic Pipe*

				Gas:	***Natural***		
				Inlet Pressure:	***Less than 2 psi***		
				Pressure Drop:	***0.5 in. w.c.***		
				Specific Gravity:	***0.60***		

	Pipe Size (in.)							
Nominal OD:	***½***	***¾***	***1***	***1¼***	***1½***	***2***	***3***	***4***
Designation:	***SDR 9.3***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 10***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***
Actual ID:	***0.660***	***0.860***	***1.077***	***1.328***	***1.554***	***1.943***	***2.864***	***3.682***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***							
10	201	403	726	1,260	1,900	3,410	9,450	18,260
20	138	277	499	865	1,310	2,350	6,490	12,550
30	111	222	401	695	1,050	1,880	5,210	10,080
40	95	190	343	594	898	1,610	4,460	8,630
50	84	169	304	527	796	1,430	3,950	7,640
60	76	153	276	477	721	1,300	3,580	6,930
70	70	140	254	439	663	1,190	3,300	6,370
80	65	131	236	409	617	1,110	3,070	5,930
90	61	123	221	383	579	1,040	2,880	5,560
100	58	116	209	362	547	983	2,720	5,250
125	51	103	185	321	485	871	2,410	4,660
150	46	93	168	291	439	789	2,180	4,220
175	43	86	154	268	404	726	2,010	3,880
200	40	80	144	249	376	675	1,870	3,610
250	35	71	127	221	333	598	1,660	3,200
300	32	64	115	200	302	542	1,500	2,900
350	29	59	106	184	278	499	1,380	2,670
400	27	55	99	171	258	464	1,280	2,480
450	26	51	93	160	242	435	1,200	2,330
500	24	48	88	152	229	411	1,140	2,200

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(v) Polyethylene Plastic Pipe

					Gas:		**Natural**	
					Inlet Pressure:		**2.0 psi**	
					Pressure Drop:		**1.0 psi**	
					Specific Gravity:		**0.60**	
	Pipe Size (in.)							
Nominal OD:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	3	3
Designation:	SDR 9.3	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID:	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**							
10	1,860	3,720	6,710	11,600	17,600	31,600	87,300	169,000
20	1,280	2,560	4,610	7,990	12,100	21,700	60,000	116,000
30	1,030	2,050	3,710	6,420	9,690	17,400	48,200	93,200
40	878	1,760	3,170	5,490	8,300	14,900	41,200	79,700
50	778	1,560	2,810	4,870	7,350	13,200	36,600	70,700
60	705	1,410	2,550	4,410	6,660	12,000	33,100	64,000
70	649	1,300	2,340	4,060	6,130	11,000	30,500	58,900
80	603	1,210	2,180	3,780	5,700	10,200	28,300	54,800
90	566	1,130	2,050	3,540	5,350	9,610	26,600	51,400
100	535	1,070	1,930	3,350	5,050	9,080	25,100	48,600
125	474	949	1,710	2,970	4,480	8,050	22,300	43,000
150	429	860	1,550	2,690	4,060	7,290	20,200	39,000
175	395	791	1,430	2,470	3,730	6,710	18,600	35,900
200	368	736	1,330	2,300	3,470	6,240	17,300	33,400
250	326	652	1,180	2,040	3,080	5,530	15,300	29,600
300	295	591	1,070	1,850	2,790	5,010	13,900	26,800
350	272	544	981	1,700	2,570	4,610	12,800	24,700
400	253	506	913	1,580	2,390	4,290	11,900	22,900
450	237	475	856	1,480	2,240	4,020	11,100	21,500
500	224	448	809	1,400	2,120	3,800	10,500	20,300
550	213	426	768	1,330	2,010	3,610	9,990	19,300
600	203	406	733	1,270	1,920	3,440	9,530	18,400
650	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300	9,130	17,600
700	187	374	674	1,170	1,760	3,170	8,770	16,900
750	180	360	649	1,130	1,700	3,050	8,450	16,300
800	174	348	627	1,090	1,640	2,950	8,160	15,800
850	168	336	607	1,050	1,590	2,850	7,890	15,300
900	163	326	588	1,020	1,540	2,770	7,650	14,800
950	158	317	572	990	1,500	2,690	7,430	14,400
1,000	154	308	556	963	1,450	2,610	7,230	14,000
1,100	146	293	528	915	1,380	2,480	6,870	13,300
1,200	139	279	504	873	1,320	2,370	6,550	12,700
1,300	134	267	482	836	1,260	2,270	6,270	12,100
1,400	128	257	463	803	1,210	2,180	6,030	11,600
1,500	124	247	446	773	1,170	2,100	5,810	11,200
1,600	119	239	431	747	1,130	2,030	5,610	10,800
1,700	115	231	417	723	1,090	1,960	5,430	10,500
1,800	112	224	404	701	1,060	1,900	5,260	10,200
1,900	109	218	393	680	1,030	1,850	5,110	9,900
2,000	106	212	382	662	1,000	1,800	4,970	9,600

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(w) *Polyethylene Plastic Tubing*

	Gas:	***Natural***
	Inlet Pressure:	***Less than 2.0 psi***
	Pressure Drop:	***0.3 in. w.c.***
	Specific Gravity:	***0.60***
	Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (in.)	
Nominal OD:	***½***	***1***
Designation:	***SDR 7***	***SDR 11***
Actual ID:	***0.445***	***0.927***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***	
10	54	372
20	37	256
30	30	205
40	26	176
50	23	156
60	21	141
70	19	130
80	18	121
90	17	113
100	16	107
125	14	95
150	13	86
175	12	79
200	11	74
225	10	69
250	NA	65
275	NA	62
300	NA	59
350	NA	54
400	NA	51
450	NA	47
500	NA	45

CTS: Copper tube size.
NA: A flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.2(x) *Polyethylene Plastic Tubing*

	Gas:	***Natural***
	Inlet Pressure:	***Less than 2.0 psi***
	Pressure Drop:	***0.5 in. w.c.***
	Specific Gravity:	***0.60***
	Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (in.)	
Nominal OD:	***½***	***1***
Designation:	***SDR 7***	***SDR 11***
Actual ID:	***0.445***	***0.927***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour***	
10	72	490
20	49	337
30	39	271
40	34	232
50	30	205
60	27	186
70	25	171
80	23	159
90	22	149
100	21	141
125	18	125
150	17	113
175	15	104
200	14	97
225	13	91
250	12	86
275	11	82
300	11	78
350	10	72
400	NA	67
450	NA	63
500	NA	59

CTS: Copper tube size.
NA: A flow of less than 10 cfh.
Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

COMMENTARY TABLE 6.1 *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe (10 psi)*

											Gas:	**Natural**	
											Inlet Pressure:	**10.0 psi**	
											Pressure Drop:	**10%**	
											Specific Gravity:	**0.60**	
	Pipe Size (in.)												
Nominal:	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2½**	**3**	**3½**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**8**	**10**	**12**
Actual ID:	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**3.548**	**4.026**	**5.047**	**6.065**	**7.981**	**10.020**	**11.938**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**												
50	3,259	6,690	10,024	19,305	30,769	54,395	79,642	110,948	200,720	325,013	667,777	1,212,861	1,920,112
100	2,240	4,598	6,889	13,268	21,148	37,385	54,737	76,254	137,954	223,379	458,959	833,593	1,319,682
150	1,798	3,692	5,532	10,655	16,982	30,022	43,956	61,235	110,782	179,382	368,561	669,404	1,059,751
200	1,539	3,160	4,735	9,119	14,535	25,695	37,621	52,409	94,815	153,527	315,440	572,924	907,010
250	1,364	2,801	4,197	8,082	12,882	22,773	33,343	46,449	84,033	136,068	279,569	507,772	803,866
300	1,236	2,538	3,802	7,323	11,672	20,634	30,211	42,086	76,140	123,288	253,310	460,078	728,361
400	1,058	2,172	3,254	6,268	9,990	17,660	25,857	36,020	65,166	105,518	216,800	393,767	623,383
500	938	1,925	2,884	5,555	8,854	15,652	22,916	31,924	57,755	93,519	192,146	348,988	552,493
1,000	644	1,323	1,982	3,818	6,085	10,757	15,750	21,941	39,695	64,275	132,061	239,858	379,725
1,500	517	1,062	1,592	3,066	4,886	8,638	12,648	17,620	31,876	51,615	106,050	192,614	304,933
2,000	443	909	1,362	2,624	4,182	7,393	10,825	15,080	27,282	44,176	90,765	164,853	260,983

COMMENTARY TABLE 6.2 *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe (20 psi)*

											Gas:	**Natural**	
											Inlet Pressure:	**20.0 psi**	
											Pressure Drop:	**10%**	
											Specific Gravity:	**0.60**	
	Pipe Size (in.)												
Nominal:	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2½**	**3**	**3½**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**8**	**10**	**12**
Actual ID:	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**3.548**	**4.026**	**5.047**	**6.065**	**7.981**	**10.020**	**11.938**
Length (ft)	**Capacity of Pipe in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**												
50	5,674	11,649	17,454	33,615	53,577	94,714	138,676	193,187	349,503	565,926	1,162,762	2,111,887	3,343,383
100	3,900	8,006	11,996	23,103	36,823	65,097	95,311	132,777	240,211	388,958	799,160	1,451,488	2,297,888
150	3,132	6,429	9,633	18,553	29,570	52,275	76,538	106,624	192,898	312,347	641,754	1,165,596	1,845,285
200	2,680	5,503	8,245	15,879	25,308	44,741	65,507	91,257	165,096	267,329	549,258	997,600	1,579,326
250	2,375	4,877	7,307	14,073	22,430	39,653	58,058	80,879	146,322	236,928	486,797	884,154	1,399,727
300	2,152	4,419	6,621	12,751	20,323	35,928	52,604	73,282	132,578	214,674	441,074	801,108	1,268,254
400	1,842	3,782	5,667	10,913	17,394	30,750	45,023	62,720	113,470	183,733	377,502	685,645	1,085,462
500	1,633	3,352	5,022	9,672	15,416	27,253	39,903	55,538	100,566	162,840	334,573	607,674	962,025
1,000	1,122	2,304	3,452	6,648	10,595	18,731	27,425	38,205	69,118	111,919	229,950	417,651	661,194
1,500	901	1,850	2,772	5,338	8,509	15,042	22,023	30,680	55,505	89,875	184,658	335,388	530,962
2,000	771	1,583	2,372	4,569	7,282	12,874	18,849	26,258	47,505	76,921	158,043	287,049	454,435

COMMENTARY TABLE 6.3 *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe (50 psi)*

											Gas:	Natural
											Inlet Pressure:	50.0 psi
											Pressure Drop:	10%
											Specific Gravity:	0.60

	Pipe Size (in.)												
Nominal:	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2½**	**3**	**3½**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**8**	**10**	**12**
Actual ID:	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**3.548**	**4.026**	**5.047**	**6.065**	**7.981**	**10.020**	**11.938**
Length (ft)	**Capacity of Pipe in Cubic Feet of Gas per Hour**												
50	12,993	26,676	39,970	76,977	122,690	216,893	317,564	442,393	800,352	1,295,955	2,662,693	4,836,161	7,656,252
100	8,930	18,335	27,471	52,906	84,324	149,070	218,260	304,054	550,077	890,703	1,830,054	3,323,866	5,262,099
150	7,171	14,723	22,060	42,485	67,715	119,708	175,271	244,166	441,732	715,266	1,469,598	2,669,182	4,225,651
200	6,138	12,601	18,881	36,362	57,955	102,455	150,009	208,975	378,065	612,175	1,257,785	2,284,474	3,616,611
250	5,440	11,168	16,733	32,227	51,365	90,804	132,950	185,211	335,072	542,559	1,114,752	2,024,687	3,205,335
300	4,929	10,119	15,162	29,200	46,540	82,275	120,463	167,814	303,600	491,598	1,010,046	1,834,514	2,904,266
400	4,218	8,661	12,976	24,991	39,832	70,417	103,100	143,627	259,842	420,744	864,469	1,570,106	2,485,676
500	3,739	7,676	11,501	22,149	35,303	62,409	91,376	127,294	230,293	372,898	766,163	1,391,556	2,203,009
1,000	2,570	5,276	7,904	15,223	24,263	42,893	62,802	87,489	158,279	256,291	526,579	956,409	1,514,115
1,500	2,063	4,236	6,348	12,225	19,484	34,445	50,432	70,256	127,104	205,810	422,862	768,030	1,215,888
2,000	1,766	3,626	5,433	10,463	16,676	29,480	43,164	60,130	108,784	176,147	361,915	657,334	1,040,643

6.3 Tables for Sizing Gas Piping Systems Using Propane

Table 6.3(a) through Table 6.3(m) shall be used to size gas piping in conjuction with one of the methods described in 6.1.1 through 6.1.3.

Examples of the use of the pipe sizing tables in Section 6.3 are found in Annex B. Calculation worksheets that can be copied and used are included in Supplement 4 of this handbook and are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.

TABLE 6.3(a) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

					Gas:	*Undiluted Propane*			
					Inlet Pressure:	*10.0 psi*			
					Pressure Drop:	*1.0 psi*			
					Specific Gravity:	*1.50*			
INTENDED USE: Pipe Sizing Between First-Stage (High-Pressure) Regulator and Second-Stage (Low-Pressure) Regulator.									
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal Inside:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	2½	3	4
Actual:	0.622	0.824	1.049	1.380	1.610	2.067	2.469	3.068	4.026
Length (ft)	*Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour*								
10	3,320	6,950	13,100	26,900	40,300	77,600	124,000	219,000	446,000
20	2,280	4,780	9,000	18,500	27,700	53,300	85,000	150,000	306,000
30	1,830	3,840	7,220	14,800	22,200	42,800	68,200	121,000	246,000
40	1,570	3,280	6,180	12,700	19,000	36,600	58,400	103,000	211,000
50	1,390	2,910	5,480	11,300	16,900	32,500	51,700	91,500	187,000
60	1,260	2,640	4,970	10,200	15,300	29,400	46,900	82,900	169,000
70	1,160	2,430	4,570	9,380	14,100	27,100	43,100	76,300	156,000
80	1,080	2,260	4,250	8,730	13,100	25,200	40,100	70,900	145,000
90	1,010	2,120	3,990	8,190	12,300	23,600	37,700	66,600	136,000
100	956	2,000	3,770	7,730	11,600	22,300	35,600	62,900	128,000
125	848	1,770	3,340	6,850	10,300	19,800	31,500	55,700	114,000
150	768	1,610	3,020	6,210	9,300	17,900	28,600	50,500	103,000
175	706	1,480	2,780	5,710	8,560	16,500	26,300	46,500	94,700
200	657	1,370	2,590	5,320	7,960	15,300	24,400	43,200	88,100
250	582	1,220	2,290	4,710	7,060	13,600	21,700	38,300	78,100
300	528	1,100	2,080	4,270	6,400	12,300	19,600	34,700	70,800
350	486	1,020	1,910	3,930	5,880	11,300	18,100	31,900	65,100
400	452	945	1,780	3,650	5,470	10,500	16,800	29,700	60,600
450	424	886	1,670	3,430	5,140	9,890	15,800	27,900	56,800
500	400	837	1,580	3,240	4,850	9,340	14,900	26,300	53,700
550	380	795	1,500	3,070	4,610	8,870	14,100	25,000	51,000
600	363	759	1,430	2,930	4,400	8,460	13,500	23,900	48,600
650	347	726	1,370	2,810	4,210	8,110	12,900	22,800	46,600
700	334	698	1,310	2,700	4,040	7,790	12,400	21,900	44,800
750	321	672	1,270	2,600	3,900	7,500	12,000	21,100	43,100
800	310	649	1,220	2,510	3,760	7,240	11,500	20,400	41,600
850	300	628	1,180	2,430	3,640	7,010	11,200	19,800	40,300
900	291	609	1,150	2,360	3,530	6,800	10,800	19,200	39,100
950	283	592	1,110	2,290	3,430	6,600	10,500	18,600	37,900
1,000	275	575	1,080	2,230	3,330	6,420	10,200	18,100	36,900
1,100	261	546	1,030	2,110	3,170	6,100	9,720	17,200	35,000
1,200	249	521	982	2,020	3,020	5,820	9,270	16,400	33,400
1,300	239	499	940	1,930	2,890	5,570	8,880	15,700	32,000
1,400	229	480	903	1,850	2,780	5,350	8,530	15,100	30,800
1,500	221	462	870	1,790	2,680	5,160	8,220	14,500	29,600
1,600	213	446	840	1,730	2,590	4,980	7,940	14,000	28,600
1,700	206	432	813	1,670	2,500	4,820	7,680	13,600	27,700
1,800	200	419	789	1,620	2,430	4,670	7,450	13,200	26,900
1,900	194	407	766	1,570	2,360	4,540	7,230	12,800	26,100
2,000	189	395	745	1,530	2,290	4,410	7,030	12,400	25,400

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(b) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

						Gas:	**Undiluted Propane**	
						Inlet Pressure:	**10.0 psi**	
						Pressure Drop:	**3.0 psi**	
						Specific Gravity:	**1.50**	

INTENDED USE: Pipe Sizing Between First-Stage (High-Pressure) Regulator and Second-Stage (Low-Pressure) Regulator.									
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal Inside:	**½**	**¾**	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2½**	**3**	**4**
Actual:	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	5,890	12,300	23,200	47,600	71,300	137,000	219,000	387,000	789,000
20	4,050	8,460	15,900	32,700	49,000	94,400	150,000	266,000	543,000
30	3,250	6,790	12,800	26,300	39,400	75,800	121,000	214,000	436,000
40	2,780	5,810	11,000	22,500	33,700	64,900	103,000	183,000	373,000
50	2,460	5,150	9,710	19,900	29,900	57,500	91,600	162,000	330,000
60	2,230	4,670	8,790	18,100	27,100	52,100	83,000	147,000	299,000
70	2,050	4,300	8,090	16,600	24,900	47,900	76,400	135,000	275,000
80	1,910	4,000	7,530	15,500	23,200	44,600	71,100	126,000	256,000
90	1,790	3,750	7,060	14,500	21,700	41,800	66,700	118,000	240,000
100	1,690	3,540	6,670	13,700	20,500	39,500	63,000	111,000	227,000
125	1,500	3,140	5,910	12,100	18,200	35,000	55,800	98,700	201,000
150	1,360	2,840	5,360	11,000	16,500	31,700	50,600	89,400	182,000
175	1,250	2,620	4,930	10,100	15,200	29,200	46,500	82,300	167,800
200	1,160	2,430	4,580	9,410	14,100	27,200	43,300	76,500	156,100
250	1,030	2,160	4,060	8,340	12,500	24,100	38,400	67,800	138,400
300	935	1,950	3,680	7,560	11,300	21,800	34,800	61,500	125,400
350	860	1,800	3,390	6,950	10,400	20,100	32,000	56,500	115,300
400	800	1,670	3,150	6,470	9,690	18,700	29,800	52,600	107,300
450	751	1,570	2,960	6,070	9,090	17,500	27,900	49,400	100,700
500	709	1,480	2,790	5,730	8,590	16,500	26,400	46,600	95,100
550	673	1,410	2,650	5,450	8,160	15,700	25,000	44,300	90,300
600	642	1,340	2,530	5,200	7,780	15,000	23,900	42,200	86,200
650	615	1,290	2,420	4,980	7,450	14,400	22,900	40,500	82,500
700	591	1,240	2,330	4,780	7,160	13,800	22,000	38,900	79,300
750	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,900	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,400
800	550	1,150	2,170	4,450	6,660	12,800	20,500	36,200	73,700
850	532	1,110	2,100	4,300	6,450	12,400	19,800	35,000	71,400
900	516	1,080	2,030	4,170	6,250	12,000	19,200	33,900	69,200
950	501	1,050	1,970	4,050	6,070	11,700	18,600	32,900	67,200
1,000	487	1,020	1,920	3,940	5,900	11,400	18,100	32,000	65,400
1,100	463	968	1,820	3,740	5,610	10,800	17,200	30,400	62,100
1,200	442	923	1,740	3,570	5,350	10,300	16,400	29,000	59,200
1,300	423	884	1,670	3,420	5,120	9,870	15,700	27,800	56,700
1,400	406	849	1,600	3,280	4,920	9,480	15,100	26,700	54,500
1,500	391	818	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,130	14,600	25,700	52,500
1,600	378	790	1,490	3,060	4,580	8,820	14,100	24,800	50,700
1,700	366	765	1,440	2,960	4,430	8,530	13,600	24,000	49,000
1,800	355	741	1,400	2,870	4,300	8,270	13,200	23,300	47,600
1,900	344	720	1,360	2,780	4,170	8,040	12,800	22,600	46,200
2,000	335	700	1,320	2,710	4,060	7,820	12,500	22,000	44,900

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(c) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

					Gas:	**Undiluted Propane**		
					Inlet Pressure:	**2.0 psi**		
					Pressure Drop:	**1.0 psi**		
					Specific Gravity:	**1.50**		

INTENDED USE: Pipe Sizing Between 2 psig Service and Line Pressure Regulator.									
	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal:	**½**	**¾**	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2 ½**	**3**	**4**
Actual ID:	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	2,680	5,590	10,500	21,600	32,400	62,400	99,500	176,000	359,000
20	1,840	3,850	7,240	14,900	22,300	42,900	68,400	121,000	247,000
30	1,480	3,090	5,820	11,900	17,900	34,500	54,900	97,100	198,000
40	1,260	2,640	4,980	10,200	15,300	29,500	47,000	83,100	170,000
50	1,120	2,340	4,410	9,060	13,600	26,100	41,700	73,700	150,000
60	1,010	2,120	4,000	8,210	12,300	23,700	37,700	66,700	136,000
70	934	1,950	3,680	7,550	11,300	21,800	34,700	61,400	125,000
80	869	1,820	3,420	7,020	10,500	20,300	32,300	57,100	116,000
90	815	1,700	3,210	6,590	9,880	19,000	30,300	53,600	109,000
100	770	1,610	3,030	6,230	9,330	18,000	28,600	50,600	103,000
125	682	1,430	2,690	5,520	8,270	15,900	25,400	44,900	91,500
150	618	1,290	2,440	5,000	7,490	14,400	23,000	40,700	82,900
175	569	1,190	2,240	4,600	6,890	13,300	21,200	37,400	76,300
200	529	1,110	2,080	4,280	6,410	12,300	19,700	34,800	71,000
250	469	981	1,850	3,790	5,680	10,900	17,400	30,800	62,900
300	425	889	1,670	3,440	5,150	9,920	15,800	27,900	57,000
350	391	817	1,540	3,160	4,740	9,120	14,500	25,700	52,400
400	364	760	1,430	2,940	4,410	8,490	13,500	23,900	48,800
450	341	714	1,340	2,760	4,130	7,960	12,700	22,400	45,800
500	322	674	1,270	2,610	3,910	7,520	12,000	21,200	43,200
550	306	640	1,210	2,480	3,710	7,140	11,400	20,100	41,100
600	292	611	1,150	2,360	3,540	6,820	10,900	19,200	39,200
650	280	585	1,100	2,260	3,390	6,530	10,400	18,400	37,500
700	269	562	1,060	2,170	3,260	6,270	9,990	17,700	36,000
750	259	541	1,020	2,090	3,140	6,040	9,630	17,000	34,700
800	250	523	985	2,020	3,030	5,830	9,300	16,400	33,500
850	242	506	953	1,960	2,930	5,640	9,000	15,900	32,400
900	235	490	924	1,900	2,840	5,470	8,720	15,400	31,500
950	228	476	897	1,840	2,760	5,310	8,470	15,000	30,500
1,000	222	463	873	1,790	2,680	5,170	8,240	14,600	29,700
1,100	210	440	829	1,700	2,550	4,910	7,830	13,800	28,200
1,200	201	420	791	1,620	2,430	4,680	7,470	13,200	26,900
1,300	192	402	757	1,550	2,330	4,490	7,150	12,600	25,800
1,400	185	386	727	1,490	2,240	4,310	6,870	12,100	24,800
1,500	178	372	701	1,440	2,160	4,150	6,620	11,700	23,900
1,600	172	359	677	1,390	2,080	4,010	6,390	11,300	23,000
1,700	166	348	655	1,340	2,010	3,880	6,180	10,900	22,300
1,800	161	337	635	1,300	1,950	3,760	6,000	10,600	21,600
1,900	157	327	617	1,270	1,900	3,650	5,820	10,300	21,000
2,000	152	318	600	1,230	1,840	3,550	5,660	10,000	20,400

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(d) *Schedule 40 Metallic Pipe*

Gas:	**Undiluted Propane**
Inlet Pressure:	**11.0 in. w.c.**
Pressure Drop:	**0.5 in. w.c.**
Specific Gravity:	**1.50**

INTENDED USE: Pipe Sizing Between Single- or Second-Stage (Low-Pressure) Regulator and Appliance.

	Pipe Size (in.)								
Nominal Inside:	**½**	**¾**	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**	**2½**	**3**	**4**
Actual:	**0.622**	**0.824**	**1.049**	**1.380**	**1.610**	**2.067**	**2.469**	**3.068**	**4.026**
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	291	608	1,150	2,350	3,520	6,790	10,800	19,100	39,000
20	200	418	787	1,620	2,420	4,660	7,430	13,100	26,800
30	160	336	632	1,300	1,940	3,750	5,970	10,600	21,500
40	137	287	541	1,110	1,660	3,210	5,110	9,030	18,400
50	122	255	480	985	1,480	2,840	4,530	8,000	16,300
60	110	231	434	892	1,340	2,570	4,100	7,250	14,800
80	101	212	400	821	1,230	2,370	3,770	6,670	13,600
100	94	197	372	763	1,140	2,200	3,510	6,210	12,700
125	89	185	349	716	1,070	2,070	3,290	5,820	11,900
150	84	175	330	677	1,010	1,950	3,110	5,500	11,200
175	74	155	292	600	899	1,730	2,760	4,880	9,950
200	67	140	265	543	814	1,570	2,500	4,420	9,010
250	62	129	243	500	749	1,440	2,300	4,060	8,290
300	58	120	227	465	697	1,340	2,140	3,780	7,710
350	51	107	201	412	618	1,190	1,900	3,350	6,840
400	46	97	182	373	560	1,080	1,720	3,040	6,190
450	42	89	167	344	515	991	1,580	2,790	5,700
500	40	83	156	320	479	922	1,470	2,600	5,300
550	37	78	146	300	449	865	1,380	2,440	4,970
600	35	73	138	283	424	817	1,300	2,300	4,700
650	33	70	131	269	403	776	1,240	2,190	4,460
700	32	66	125	257	385	741	1,180	2,090	4,260
750	30	64	120	246	368	709	1,130	2,000	4,080
800	29	61	115	236	354	681	1,090	1,920	3,920
850	28	59	111	227	341	656	1,050	1,850	3,770
900	27	57	107	220	329	634	1,010	1,790	3,640
950	26	55	104	213	319	613	978	1,730	3,530
1,000	25	53	100	206	309	595	948	1,680	3,420
1,100	25	52	97	200	300	578	921	1,630	3,320
1,200	24	50	95	195	292	562	895	1,580	3,230
1,300	23	48	90	185	277	534	850	1,500	3,070
1,400	22	46	86	176	264	509	811	1,430	2,930
1,500	21	44	82	169	253	487	777	1,370	2,800
1,600	20	42	79	162	243	468	746	1,320	2,690
1,700	19	40	76	156	234	451	719	1,270	2,590
1,800	19	39	74	151	226	436	694	1,230	2,500
1,900	18	38	71	146	219	422	672	1,190	2,420
2,000	18	37	69	142	212	409	652	1,150	2,350

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(e) Semirigid Copper Tubing

						Gas:	**Undiluted Propane**		
						Inlet Pressure:	**10.0 psi**		
						Pressure Drop:	**1.0 psi**		
						Specific Gravity:	**1.50**		
INTENDED USE: Tube Sizing Between First-Stage (High-Pressure) Regulator and Second-Stage (Low-Pressure) Regulator.									
	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
Nominal: ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	1⅛	1⅜	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10	513	1,060	2,150	3,760	5,330	11,400	20,500	32,300	67,400
20	352	727	1,480	2,580	3,670	7,830	14,100	22,200	46,300
30	283	584	1,190	2,080	2,940	6,290	11,300	17,900	37,200
40	242	500	1,020	1,780	2,520	5,380	9,690	15,300	31,800
50	215	443	901	1,570	2,230	4,770	8,590	13,500	28,200
60	194	401	816	1,430	2,020	4,320	7,780	12,300	25,600
70	179	369	751	1,310	1,860	3,980	7,160	11,300	23,500
80	166	343	699	1,220	1,730	3,700	6,660	10,500	21,900
90	156	322	655	1,150	1,630	3,470	6,250	9,850	20,500
100	147	304	619	1,080	1,540	3,280	5,900	9,310	19,400
125	131	270	549	959	1,360	2,910	5,230	8,250	17,200
150	118	244	497	869	1,230	2,630	4,740	7,470	15,600
175	109	225	457	799	1,130	2,420	4,360	6,880	14,300
200	101	209	426	744	1,060	2,250	4,060	6,400	13,300
250	90	185	377	659	935	2,000	3,600	5,670	11,800
300	81	168	342	597	847	1,810	3,260	5,140	10,700
350	75	155	314	549	779	1,660	3,000	4,730	9,840
400	70	144	292	511	725	1,550	2,790	4,400	9,160
450	65	135	274	480	680	1,450	2,620	4,130	8,590
500	62	127	259	453	643	1,370	2,470	3,900	8,120
550	59	121	246	430	610	1,300	2,350	3,700	7,710
600	56	115	235	410	582	1,240	2,240	3,530	7,350
650	54	111	225	393	558	1,190	2,140	3,380	7,040
700	51	106	216	378	536	1,140	2,060	3,250	6,770
750	50	102	208	364	516	1,100	1,980	3,130	6,520
800	48	99	201	351	498	1,060	1,920	3,020	6,290
850	46	96	195	340	482	1,030	1,850	2,920	6,090
900	45	93	189	330	468	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,910
950	44	90	183	320	454	970	1,750	2,750	5,730
1,000	42	88	178	311	442	944	1,700	2,680	5,580
1,100	40	83	169	296	420	896	1,610	2,540	5,300
1,200	38	79	161	282	400	855	1,540	2,430	5,050
1,300	37	76	155	270	383	819	1,470	2,320	4,840
1,400	35	73	148	260	368	787	1,420	2,230	4,650
1,500	34	70	143	250	355	758	1,360	2,150	4,480
1,600	33	68	138	241	343	732	1,320	2,080	4,330
1,700	32	66	134	234	331	708	1,270	2,010	4,190
1,800	31	64	130	227	321	687	1,240	1,950	4,060
1,900	30	62	126	220	312	667	1,200	1,890	3,940
2,000	29	60	122	214	304	648	1,170	1,840	3,830

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.3(f) *Semirigid Copper Tubing*

Gas:	Undiluted Propane
Inlet Pressure:	11.0 in. w.c.
Pressure Drop:	0.5 in. w.c.
Specific Gravity:	1.50

INTENDED USE: Tube Sizing Between Single- or Second-Stage (Low-Pressure) Regulator and Appliance.									
	Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal: K & L:	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1	1 1/4	1 1/2	2
Nominal: ACR:	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	7/8	1 1/8	1 3/8	—	—
Outside:	0.375	0.500	0.625	0.750	0.875	1.125	1.375	1.625	2.125
Inside:*	0.305	0.402	0.527	0.652	0.745	0.995	1.245	1.481	1.959
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
10	45	93	188	329	467	997	1,800	2,830	5,890
20	31	64	129	226	321	685	1,230	1,950	4,050
30	25	51	104	182	258	550	991	1,560	3,250
40	21	44	89	155	220	471	848	1,340	2,780
50	19	39	79	138	195	417	752	1,180	2,470
60	17	35	71	125	177	378	681	1,070	2,240
70	16	32	66	115	163	348	626	988	2,060
80	15	30	61	107	152	324	583	919	1,910
90	14	28	57	100	142	304	547	862	1,800
100	13	27	54	95	134	287	517	814	1,700
125	11	24	48	84	119	254	458	722	1,500
150	10	21	44	76	108	230	415	654	1,360
175	NA	20	40	70	99	212	382	602	1,250
200	NA	18	37	65	92	197	355	560	1,170
250	NA	16	33	58	82	175	315	496	1,030
300	NA	15	30	52	74	158	285	449	936
350	NA	14	28	48	68	146	262	414	861
400	NA	13	26	45	63	136	244	385	801
450	NA	12	24	42	60	127	229	361	752
500	NA	11	23	40	56	120	216	341	710
550	NA	11	22	38	53	114	205	324	674
600	NA	10	21	36	51	109	196	309	643
650	NA	NA	20	34	49	104	188	296	616
700	NA	NA	19	33	47	100	180	284	592
750	NA	NA	18	32	45	96	174	274	570
800	NA	NA	18	31	44	93	168	264	551
850	NA	NA	17	30	42	90	162	256	533
900	NA	NA	17	29	41	87	157	248	517
950	NA	NA	16	28	40	85	153	241	502
1,000	NA	NA	16	27	39	83	149	234	488
1,100	NA	NA	15	26	37	78	141	223	464
1,200	NA	NA	14	25	35	75	135	212	442
1,300	NA	NA	14	24	34	72	129	203	423
1,400	NA	NA	13	23	32	69	124	195	407
1,500	NA	NA	13	22	31	66	119	188	392
1,600	NA	NA	12	21	30	64	115	182	378
1,700	NA	NA	12	20	29	62	112	176	366
1,800	NA	NA	11	20	28	60	108	170	355
1,900	NA	NA	11	19	27	58	105	166	345
2,000	NA	NA	11	19	27	57	102	161	335

NA: A flow of less than 10,000 Btu/hr.

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.3(g) Semirigid Copper Tubing

							Gas:		**Undiluted Propane**	
							Inlet Pressure:		**2.0 psi**	
							Pressure Drop:		**1.0 psi**	
							Specific Gravity:		**1.50**	
INTENDED USE: Tube Sizing Between 2 psig Service and Line Pressure Regulator.										
		Tube Size (in.)								
Nominal:	**K & L:**	¼	⅜	½	⅝	¾	**1**	**1¼**	**1½**	**2**
	ACR:	⅜	½	⅝	¾	⅞	**1⅛**	**1⅜**	—	—
	Outside:	**0.375**	**0.500**	**0.625**	**0.750**	**0.875**	**1.125**	**1.375**	**1.625**	**2.125**
	Inside:*	**0.305**	**0.402**	**0.527**	**0.652**	**0.745**	**0.995**	**1.245**	**1.481**	**1.959**
Length (ft)		**Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour**								
10		413	852	1,730	3,030	4,300	9,170	16,500	26,000	54,200
20		284	585	1,190	2,080	2,950	6,310	11,400	17,900	37,300
30		228	470	956	1,670	2,370	5,060	9,120	14,400	29,900
40		195	402	818	1,430	2,030	4,330	7,800	12,300	25,600
50		173	356	725	1,270	1,800	3,840	6,920	10,900	22,700
60		157	323	657	1,150	1,630	3,480	6,270	9,880	20,600
70		144	297	605	1,060	1,500	3,200	5,760	9,090	18,900
80		134	276	562	983	1,390	2,980	5,360	8,450	17,600
90		126	259	528	922	1,310	2,790	5,030	7,930	16,500
100		119	245	498	871	1,240	2,640	4,750	7,490	15,600
125		105	217	442	772	1,100	2,340	4,210	6,640	13,800
150		95	197	400	700	992	2,120	3,820	6,020	12,500
175		88	181	368	644	913	1,950	3,510	5,540	11,500
200		82	168	343	599	849	1,810	3,270	5,150	10,700
250		72	149	304	531	753	1,610	2,900	4,560	9,510
300		66	135	275	481	682	1,460	2,620	4,140	8,610
350		60	124	253	442	628	1,340	2,410	3,800	7,920
400		56	116	235	411	584	1,250	2,250	3,540	7,370
450		53	109	221	386	548	1,170	2,110	3,320	6,920
500		50	103	209	365	517	1,110	1,990	3,140	6,530
550		47	97	198	346	491	1,050	1,890	2,980	6,210
600		45	93	189	330	469	1,000	1,800	2,840	5,920
650		43	89	181	316	449	959	1,730	2,720	5,670
700		41	86	174	304	431	921	1,660	2,620	5,450
750		40	82	168	293	415	888	1,600	2,520	5,250
800		39	80	162	283	401	857	1,540	2,430	5,070
850		37	77	157	274	388	829	1,490	2,350	4,900
900		36	75	152	265	376	804	1,450	2,280	4,750
950		35	72	147	258	366	781	1,410	2,220	4,620
1,000		34	71	143	251	356	760	1,370	2,160	4,490
1,100		32	67	136	238	338	721	1,300	2,050	4,270
1,200		31	64	130	227	322	688	1,240	1,950	4,070
1,300		30	61	124	217	309	659	1,190	1,870	3,900
1,400		28	59	120	209	296	633	1,140	1,800	3,740
1,500		27	57	115	201	286	610	1,100	1,730	3,610
1,600		26	55	111	194	276	589	1,060	1,670	3,480
1,700		26	53	108	188	267	570	1,030	1,620	3,370
1,800		25	51	104	182	259	553	1,000	1,570	3,270
1,900		24	50	101	177	251	537	966	1,520	3,170
2,000		23	48	99	172	244	522	940	1,480	3,090

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.
*Table capacities are based on Type K copper tubing inside diameter (shown), which has the smallest inside diameter of the copper tubing products.

TABLE 6.3(h) *Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

Gas:	***Undiluted Propane***
Inlet Pressure:	***11.0 in. w.c.***
Pressure Drop:	***0.5 in. w.c.***
Specific Gravity:	***1.50***

INTENDED USE: CSST Sizing Between Single- or Second-Stage (Low-Pressure) Regulator and Appliance Shutoff Valve.

	Tube Size (EHD)													
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***39***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour***													
5	72	99	181	211	355	426	744	863	1,420	1,638	2,830	3,270	5,780	6,550
10	50	69	129	150	254	303	521	605	971	1,179	1,990	2,320	4,110	4,640
15	39	55	104	121	208	248	422	490	775	972	1,620	1,900	3,370	3,790
20	34	49	91	106	183	216	365	425	661	847	1,400	1,650	2,930	3,290
25	30	42	82	94	164	192	325	379	583	762	1,250	1,480	2,630	2,940
30	28	39	74	87	151	177	297	344	528	698	1,140	1,350	2,400	2,680
40	23	33	64	74	131	153	256	297	449	610	988	1,170	2,090	2,330
50	20	30	58	66	118	137	227	265	397	548	884	1,050	1,870	2,080
60	19	26	53	60	107	126	207	241	359	502	805	961	1,710	1,900
70	17	25	49	57	99	117	191	222	330	466	745	890	1,590	1,760
80	15	23	45	52	94	109	178	208	307	438	696	833	1,490	1,650
90	15	22	44	50	90	102	169	197	286	414	656	787	1,400	1,550
100	14	20	41	47	85	98	159	186	270	393	621	746	1,330	1,480
150	11	15	31	36	66	75	123	143	217	324	506	611	1,090	1,210
200	9	14	28	33	60	69	112	129	183	283	438	531	948	1,050
250	8	12	25	30	53	61	99	117	163	254	390	476	850	934
300	8	11	23	26	50	57	90	107	147	234	357	434	777	854

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger numbers of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
(2) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(i) *Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

Gas:	***Undiluted Propane***
Inlet Pressure:	***2.0 psi***
Pressure Drop:	***1.0 psi***
Specific Gravity:	***1.50***

INTENDED USE: CSST Sizing Between 2 psig Service and Line Pressure Regulator.

	Tube Size (EHD)													
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***39***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour***													
10	426	558	927	1,110	1,740	2,170	4,100	4,720	7,130	7,958	15,200	16,800	29,400	34,200
25	262	347	591	701	1,120	1,380	2,560	2,950	4,560	5,147	9,550	10,700	18,800	21,700
30	238	316	540	640	1,030	1,270	2,330	2,690	4,180	4,719	8,710	9,790	17,200	19,800
40	203	271	469	554	896	1,100	2,010	2,320	3,630	4,116	7,530	8,500	14,900	17,200
50	181	243	420	496	806	986	1,790	2,070	3,260	3,702	6,730	7,610	13,400	15,400
75	147	196	344	406	663	809	1,460	1,690	2,680	3,053	5,480	6,230	11,000	12,600
80	140	189	333	393	643	768	1,410	1,630	2,590	2,961	5,300	6,040	10,600	12,200
100	124	169	298	350	578	703	1,260	1,450	2,330	2,662	4,740	5,410	9,530	10,900
150	101	137	245	287	477	575	1,020	1,180	1,910	2,195	3,860	4,430	7,810	8,890
200	86	118	213	248	415	501	880	1,020	1,660	1,915	3,340	3,840	6,780	7,710
250	77	105	191	222	373	448	785	910	1,490	1,722	2,980	3,440	6,080	6,900
300	69	96	173	203	343	411	716	829	1,360	1,578	2,720	3,150	5,560	6,300
400	60	82	151	175	298	355	616	716	1,160	1,376	2,350	2,730	4,830	5,460
500	53	72	135	158	268	319	550	638	1,030	1,237	2,100	2,450	4,330	4,880

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds ½ psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.
(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
(3) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger number of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing according to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(j) *Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*

									Gas:	***Undiluted Propane***				
									Inlet Pressure:	***5.0 psi***				
									Pressure Drop:	***3.5 psi***				
									Specific Gravity:	***1.50***				
	Tube Size (EHD)													
Flow Designation:	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***	***25***	***30***	***31***	***37***	***39***	***46***	***48***	***60***	***62***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour***													
10	826	1,070	1,710	2,060	3,150	4,000	7,830	8,950	13,100	14,441	28,600	31,200	54,400	63,800
25	509	664	1,090	1,310	2,040	2,550	4,860	5,600	8,400	9,339	18,000	19,900	34,700	40,400
30	461	603	999	1,190	1,870	2,340	4,430	5,100	7,680	8,564	16,400	18,200	31,700	36,900
40	396	520	867	1,030	1,630	2,030	3,820	4,400	6,680	7,469	14,200	15,800	27,600	32,000
50	352	463	777	926	1,460	1,820	3,410	3,930	5,990	6,717	12,700	14,100	24,700	28,600
75	284	376	637	757	1,210	1,490	2,770	3,190	4,920	5,539	10,300	11,600	20,300	23,400
80	275	363	618	731	1,170	1,450	2,680	3,090	4,770	5,372	9,990	11,200	19,600	22,700
100	243	324	553	656	1,050	1,300	2,390	2,760	4,280	4,830	8,930	10,000	17,600	20,300
150	196	262	453	535	866	1,060	1,940	2,240	3,510	3,983	7,270	8,210	14,400	16,600
200	169	226	393	464	755	923	1,680	1,930	3,050	3,474	6,290	7,130	12,500	14,400
250	150	202	352	415	679	828	1,490	1,730	2,740	3,124	5,620	6,390	11,200	12,900
300	136	183	322	379	622	757	1,360	1,570	2,510	2,865	5,120	5,840	10,300	11,700
400	117	158	279	328	542	657	1,170	1,360	2,180	2,498	4,430	5,070	8,920	10,200
500	104	140	251	294	488	589	1,050	1,210	1,950	2,247	3,960	4,540	8,000	9,110

EHD: Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.

Notes:

(1) Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds ½ psi (based on 13 in. w.c. outlet pressure), do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.
(2) CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.
(3) Table includes losses for four 90 degree bends and two end fittings. Tubing runs with larger number of bends and/or fittings shall be increased by an equivalent length of tubing according to the following equation: $L = 1.3n$, where L is additional length (ft) of tubing and n is the number of additional fittings and/or bends.
(4) All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(k) *Polyethylene Plastic Pipe*

Gas:	***Undiluted Propane***
Inlet Pressure:	***11.0 in. w.c.***
Pressure Drop:	***0.5 in. w.c.***
Specific Gravity:	***1.50***

INTENDED USE: PE Pipe Sizing Between Integral Second-Stage Regulator at Tank or Second-Stage (Low-Pressure) Regulator and Building.

	Pipe Size (in.)							
Nominal OD:	***½***	***¾***	***1***	***1¼***	***1½***	***2***	***3***	***4***
Designation:	***SDR 9.3***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 10***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***	***SDR 11***
Actual ID:	***0.660***	***0.860***	***1.077***	***1.328***	***1.554***	***1.943***	***2.864***	***3.682***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour***							
10	340	680	1,230	2,130	3,210	5,770	16,000	30,900
20	233	468	844	1,460	2,210	3,970	11,000	21,200
30	187	375	677	1,170	1,770	3,180	8,810	17,000
40	160	321	580	1,000	1,520	2,730	7,540	14,600
50	142	285	514	890	1,340	2,420	6,680	12,900
60	129	258	466	807	1,220	2,190	6,050	11,700
70	119	237	428	742	1,120	2,010	5,570	10,800
80	110	221	398	690	1,040	1,870	5,180	10,000
90	103	207	374	648	978	1,760	4,860	9,400
100	98	196	353	612	924	1,660	4,590	8,900
125	87	173	313	542	819	1,470	4,070	7,900
150	78	157	284	491	742	1,330	3,690	7,130
175	72	145	261	452	683	1,230	3,390	6,560
200	67	135	243	420	635	1,140	3,160	6,100
250	60	119	215	373	563	1,010	2,800	5,410
300	54	108	195	338	510	916	2,530	4,900
350	50	99	179	311	469	843	2,330	4,510
400	46	92	167	289	436	784	2,170	4,190
450	43	87	157	271	409	736	2,040	3,930
500	41	82	148	256	387	695	1,920	3,720

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(l) *Polyethylene Plastic Pipe*

Gas:	*Undiluted Propane*
Inlet Pressure:	*2.0 psi*
Pressure Drop:	*1.0 psi*
Specific Gravity:	*1.50*

INTENDED USE: PE Pipe Sizing Between 2 psi Service Regulator and Line Pressure Regulator.

	Pipe Size (in.)							
Nominal OD:	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2	3	4
Designation:	SDR 9.3	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 10	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11	SDR 11
Actual ID:	0.660	0.860	1.077	1.328	1.554	1.943	2.864	3.682
Length (ft)	Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour							
10	3,130	6,260	11,300	19,600	29,500	53,100	147,000	284,000
20	2,150	4,300	7,760	13,400	20,300	36,500	101,000	195,000
30	1,730	3,450	6,230	10,800	16,300	29,300	81,100	157,000
40	1,480	2,960	5,330	9,240	14,000	25,100	69,400	134,100
50	1,310	2,620	4,730	8,190	12,400	22,200	61,500	119,000
60	1,190	2,370	4,280	7,420	11,200	20,100	55,700	108,000
70	1,090	2,180	3,940	6,830	10,300	18,500	51,300	99,100
80	1,010	2,030	3,670	6,350	9,590	17,200	47,700	92,200
90	952	1,910	3,440	5,960	9,000	16,200	44,700	86,500
100	899	1,800	3,250	5,630	8,500	15,300	42,300	81,700
125	797	1,600	2,880	4,990	7,530	13,500	37,500	72,400
150	722	1,450	2,610	4,520	6,830	12,300	33,900	65,600
175	664	1,330	2,400	4,160	6,280	11,300	31,200	60,300
200	618	1,240	2,230	3,870	5,840	10,500	29,000	56,100
250	548	1,100	1,980	3,430	5,180	9,300	25,700	49,800
300	496	994	1,790	3,110	4,690	8,430	23,300	45,100
350	457	914	1,650	2,860	4,320	7,760	21,500	41,500
400	425	851	1,530	2,660	4,020	7,220	12,000	38,600
450	399	798	1,440	2,500	3,770	6,770	18,700	36,200
500	377	754	1,360	2,360	3,560	6,390	17,700	34,200
550	358	716	1,290	2,240	3,380	6,070	16,800	32,500
600	341	683	1,230	2,140	3,220	5,790	16,000	31,000
650	327	654	1,180	2,040	3,090	5,550	15,400	29,700
700	314	628	1,130	1,960	2,970	5,330	14,700	28,500
750	302	605	1,090	1,890	2,860	5,140	14,200	27,500
800	292	585	1,050	1,830	2,760	4,960	13,700	26,500
850	283	566	1,020	1,770	2,670	4,800	13,300	25,700
900	274	549	990	1,710	2,590	4,650	12,900	24,900
950	266	533	961	1,670	2,520	4,520	12,500	24,200
1,000	259	518	935	1,620	2,450	4,400	12,200	23,500
1,100	246	492	888	1,540	2,320	4,170	11,500	22,300
1,200	234	470	847	1,470	2,220	3,980	11,000	21,300
1,300	225	450	811	1,410	2,120	3,810	10,600	20,400
1,400	216	432	779	1,350	2,040	3,660	10,100	19,600
1,500	208	416	751	1,300	1,960	3,530	9,760	18,900
1,600	201	402	725	1,260	1,900	3,410	9,430	18,200
1,700	194	389	702	1,220	1,840	3,300	9,130	17,600
1,800	188	377	680	1,180	1,780	3,200	8,850	17,100
1,900	183	366	661	1,140	1,730	3,110	8,590	16,600
2,000	178	356	643	1,110	1,680	3,020	8,360	16,200

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

TABLE 6.3(m) *Polyethylene Plastic Tubing*

	Gas:	***Undiluted Propane***
	Inlet Pressure:	***11.0 in. w.c.***
	Pressure Drop:	***0.5 in. w.c***
	Specific Gravity:	***1.50***
INTENDED USE: Sizing Between Integral 2-Stage Regulator at Tank or Second-Stage (Low-Pressure Regulator) and the Building.		
	Plastic Tubing Size (CTS) (in.)	
Nominal OD:	***½***	***1***
Designation:	***SDR 7***	***SDR 11***
Actual ID:	***0.445***	***0.927***
Length (ft)	***Capacity in Thousands of Btu per Hour***	
10	121	828
20	83	569
30	67	457
40	57	391
50	51	347
60	46	314
70	42	289
80	39	269
90	37	252
100	35	238
125	31	211
150	28	191
175	26	176
200	24	164
225	22	154
250	21	145
275	20	138
300	19	132
350	18	121
400	16	113
450	15	106
500	15	100

CTS: Copper tube size.

Note: All table entries are rounded to 3 significant digits.

6.4 Sizing Equations

The inside diameter of smooth wall pipe or tubing shall be determined by the sizing equations in 6.4.1 and 6.4.2 using the equivalent pipe length determined by the methods in 6.1.1 through 6.1.3.

See Section B.5 for an example of the use of sizing equations.

6.4.1* Low-Pressure Gas Formula. Less than 1.5 psi (10.3 kPa):

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{19.17\left(\frac{\Delta H}{Cr \times L}\right)^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{[6.4.1]}$$

where:

D = inside diameter of pipe (in.)

Q = input rate appliance(s) (cubic feet per hour at 60°F and 30 in. mercury column)

ΔH = pressure drop [in. w.c. (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi)]

L = equivalent length of pipe (ft)

See Table 6.4.2 for values of *Cr*.

A.6.4.1 The Low-Pressure Formula is the standard flow formula located in Annex B but rearranged to solve for the pipe diameter.

6.4.2* High-Pressure Gas Formula. 1.5 psi (10.3 kPa) and above:

$$D = \frac{Q^{0.381}}{18.93\left(\frac{\left(P_1^2 - P_2^2\right)\cdot Y}{Cr \times L}\right)^{0.206}} \qquad \textbf{[6.4.2]}$$

where:

D = inside diameter of pipe (in.)

Q = input rate appliance(s) (cubic feet per hour at 60°F and 30 in. mercury column)

P_1 = upstream pressure [psia (P_1 + 14.7)]

P_2 = downstream pressure [psia (P_2 + 14.7)]

L = equivalent length of pipe (ft)

See Table 6.4.2 for values of *Cr* and *Y*.

TABLE 6.4.2 Cr *and* Y *for Natural Gas and Undiluted Propane at Standard Conditions*

	Formula Factors	
Gas	**Cr**	**Y**
Natural gas	0.6094	0.9992
Undiluted propane	1.2462	0.9910

A.6.4.2 The High-Pressure Formula is the standard flow formula located in Annex B but rearranged to solve for the pipe diameter.

Gas Piping Installation

7

Chapter 7 includes requirements for the installation of piping systems. Chapter 7 complements Chapter 5, which specifies piping materials. Testing and purging of gas piping systems are covered in Chapter 8. Chapter 7 covers the following:

- Piping installed underground, including protection against mechanical damage, corrosion, freezing, piping through foundation walls and beneath buildings, and the use of plastic pipe
- Piping and pipe supports installed aboveground indoors (and not concealed), including prohibited locations for gas piping, and outdoors
- Concealed piping in buildings, including restrictions on piping and valves in concealed spaces, and piping in floors
- Piping in vertical chases at pressures exceeding 5 psi (34 kPa), including location of pressure regulators
- Gas pipe turns, including equipment and methods to make bends in piping
- Drips, which are needed when the gas supplied contains liquids, and sediment traps, which prevent debris from clogging equipment and controls
- Outlets, including detailed requirements for the location and capping of outlets
- Branch pipe connection, which allows for future expansion of gas piping systems
- Manual gas shutoff valves, which are required at gas pressure regulators and at buildings served by gas, for each individual unit supplied by gas (Also included are requirements for the exterior location and marking of emergency shutoff valves.)
- Prohibited devices that could restrict the flow of gas
- Systems containing gas–air mixtures outside the flammable range for which requirements are provided to prevent the mixture from entering the flammable range
- Systems containing flammable gas–air mixtures, including minimum requirements for piping and equipment
- Electrical bonding and grounding, electrical circuits, and electrical connections, which are consistent with *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®* (*NEC®*)

7.1 Piping Underground

7.1.1 Clearances. Underground gas piping shall be installed with sufficient clearance from any other underground structure to avoid contact therewith, to allow maintenance, and to protect against damage from proximity to other structures. In addition, underground plastic piping shall be installed with sufficient clearance or shall be insulated from any source of heat so as to prevent the heat from impairing the serviceability of the pipe.

The requirement in 7.1.1 recognizes the possible hazard from the pipe being in contact with, or in close proximity to, other underground structures. Such contact can be a hazard and can cause harm to the pipe during backfilling or later, due to settlement of the structure(s).

A potential hazard to underground gas piping is the possibility of a lightning strike, which may cause failure of the underground gas piping or could cause the interior gas piping to become energized. This hazard is not addressed in the code because of the very small number of known incidents. In areas where lightning occurs more frequently, installers may consider spacing gas pipe (both metal and plastic) at a distance from other underground pipes, cables, and conduits serving the building where multiple services are installed in a common trench. In the United States, the National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration (www.noaa.gov) is a source of information on the frequency of lightning strikes. There have been a number of reported incidents where an indirect lightning strike caused the underground piping to become energized and resulted in a failure of the building interior piping system. See Section 7.13 for discussion of bonding requirements for metallic piping systems and lightning-related incidents.

7.1.2 Protection Against Damage. Means shall be provided to prevent excessive stressing of the piping where vehicular traffic is heavy or soil conditions are unstable and settling of piping or foundation walls could occur. Piping shall be buried or covered in a manner so as to protect the piping from physical damage. Piping shall be protected from physical damage where it passes through flower beds, shrub beds, and other such cultivated areas where such damage is reasonably expected.

7.1.2.1 Cover Requirements. Underground piping systems shall be installed with a minimum of 12 in. (300 mm) of cover.

(A) The minimum cover shall be increased to 18 in. (460 mm) if external damage to the pipe or tubing from external forces is likely to result.

(B) Where a minimum of 12 in. (300 mm) of cover cannot be provided, the pipe shall be installed in conduit or bridged (shielded).

Underground piping systems must be protected from corrosion and physical damage, such as from being subjected to heavy vehicle loads or impact from digging. In general, deeper burial [at a depth of 18 in. (460 mm) or more] or encasing of the gas pipe system may be necessary to comply with the requirement in 7.1.2.1. Deeper burial applies to cultivated areas, with depth of cover requirements depending on the anticipated risk, which can vary from garden hand tools to tillage equipment pulled by large tractors. Damage to pipes is not limited to plastic pipe. Copper tubing is severed easily with a shovel, and digging tools can damage the coating on steel pipe, leading to corrosion. Steel pipe may be damaged by powered digging equipment, such as a backhoe or trenching equipment.

There are two ways to protect the pipe from damage caused by digging:

1. Install protection from digging tools of sufficient strength to protect the pipe. Such protection can be provided by installing the gas pipe inside a larger pipe, which acts as a shield, or by locating a protective material such as a steel plate with corrosion protection above the pipe. When a larger pipe is used to encase and protect a gas line, steps must be taken to prevent the accumulation of water. The presence of water in the shielding pipe could accelerate corrosion or crush the gas line if freezing occurs. In most cases, pipe should be buried at a sufficient depth so that protective devices are not needed.
2. Provide excavators with an indicator that a pipe is buried below. Many gas utilities use a "terra tape" (a yellow plastic tape printed with a warning that gas pipe is buried below) placed a few inches above the pipe to warn future diggers that a gas pipe is buried below. (See Exhibit 7.1.) The tape is an indicator and not a protective device.

EXHIBIT 7.1

Terra Tape. (Courtesy of Reef Industries)

Even for small projects such as installing a mailbox or planting shrubs, it is important to know what is buried below. Before starting any excavation work, including home improvements, planting a tree, installing a fence or deck, or running a gas piping system, call 811 to avoid utility service disruption, harm to you and those around you, as well as fines and repair costs. Whether you do it yourself or hire a professional, a safe job starts with a call to 811. All underground utilities, including gas, electricity, telephone, and cable TV companies, are members of 811. The call center notifies utility companies of excavation work near their underground installations and directs them to mark the approximate location of your underground lines, pipes, and cables, so you'll know what's below.

The Dig Safe program covers gas lines installed by gas transmission companies and by local gas utilities to buildings. It does not include gas lines run from a building to another building, such as a garage, or outdoor appliance, such as a gas grill or pool heater. To avoid incidents, excavators should be made aware of underground gas lines that were not installed by gas utility companies.

More information on Dig Safe programs can be obtained from www.call811.com, a website maintained by the Common Ground Alliance. The website provides information on when to call and explains how the program works. The website also offers free promotional outreach material, such as the advertisement shown in Exhibit 7.2.

If protective devices are needed, they must be of sufficient strength to protect the pipe and must be made of a material that will not corrode over time. Plastic pipe or PVC is often used as a protective material. Split along its length, plastic pipe or PVC provides the necessary strength and does not corrode underground.

EXHIBIT 7.2

Advertisement for the Call 811 Program. (Courtesy of Common Ground Alliance)

7.1.2.2 Trenches. The trench shall be graded so that the pipe has a firm, substantially continuous bearing on the bottom of the trench.

7.1.2.3 Backfilling. Where flooding of the trench is done to consolidate the backfill, care shall be exercised to see that the pipe is not floated from its firm bearing on the trench bottom.

7.1.3* Corrosion Protection of Piping. Steel pipe and steel tubing installed underground shall be installed in accordance with 7.1.3.1 through 7.1.3.9.

Code Update

A.7.1.3 For information on corrosion protection of underground pipe, see NACE SP 0169, *Control of External Corrosion on Underground or Submerged Metallic Piping Systems.* Information on installation, maintenance, and corrosion protection might be available from the gas supplier.

Depending on a number of reasons, such as geographic location, aggressive soil conditions, and selection of piping materials, specific corrosion methods and materials may be required. The authority having jurisdiction should approve the corrosion protection methods and materials for metal pipe prior to installation. (See the definition of the term *approved* in 3.2.1.) Selection of corrosion protection methods or materials should be based either on experience or on recommendations from experts in the field. Steel pipe that is installed underground or in contact with water deteriorates through galvanic corrosion, which is an electrochemical process. This electrochemical process can be prevented by stopping the flow of electricity between the pipe and the soil. Subsection 7.1.3, specifically 7.1.3.2, provides three methods to stop this flow of electricity.

7.1.3.1 Zinc coating (galvanizing) shall not be deemed adequate protection for underground gas piping.

Galvanization or zinc coating is the process of applying a protective zinc coating to steel or iron in order to prevent rusting. Zinc coatings prevent corrosion by forming a physical barrier and by acting as a sacrificial anode. Although galvanizing will obstruct the attack of steel, rusting will be unavoidable. The elevated electrical conductivity of marine environments, salty environments, and seawater increases the rate of corrosion, which affects the life of galvanized steel. Steel can last for many years if other means of protection are used. Because rusting is unavoidable, zinc coating is not adequate protection.

7.1.3.2 Underground piping shall comply with one or more of the following unless approved technical justification is provided to demonstrate that protection is unnecessary:

(1) The piping shall be made of corrosion-resistant material that is suitable for the environment in which it will be installed.

The main purpose of all codes is to provide a minimum standard to safeguard life, property, and public welfare. This is obtained by regulating and controlling the design, construction, and installation of building systems. It is imperative that the materials used in a gas piping system are correct and made of corrosion-resistant material that is suitable for the environment in which the gas piping is installed. Improper materials can lead to piping failure.

(2) Pipe shall have a factory-applied, electrically insulating coating. Fittings and joints between sections of coated pipe shall be coated in accordance with the coating manufacturer's instructions.

Stopping electricity flow can be accomplished by coating the pipe as shown in Exhibit 7.3. The natural gas piping industry uses several types of pipe coatings. Historically, pipeline companies coated pipe with coal tar enamel or an enamel tape wrap. Today, a fusion bonded epoxy coating, also known as fusion bond epoxy powder coating and commonly referred to as FBE, is used. FBE coatings can be recognized by their color, often seen on pipe being transported by rail or truck. Regardless of the type of coating used, the purpose is the same — to prevent external corrosion by prohibiting moisture from coming into direct contact with the metal. The code allows the use of factory-applied protective coatings on metallic gas piping and fittings. Installers may use field-applied coatings and wrappings on nipples, fittings, and places where the factory-applied coating has been damaged. These coatings and wrappings must be applied according to the manufacturer's instructions.

EXHIBIT 7.3

Examples of Gas Piping with Protective Coating. (Courtesy of Mueller Industries)

(3) The piping shall have a cathodic protection system installed, and the system shall be maintained in accordance with 7.1.3.3 or 7.1.3.6.

FAQ Why is cathodic protection highly recommended in underground steel pipe installations?

Another method of properly protecting a steel pipe underground is to maintain an electrical charge on the pipe. Cathodic protection controls the corrosion of a metal surface by making it the cathode of an electrochemical cell. A simple method of protection connects protected metal to a more easily corroded "sacrificial metal" to act as the anode. The sacrificial metal then corrodes instead of the protected metal. For structures such as long pipelines, where passive galvanic cathodic protection is not adequate, an external DC electrical power source is used to provide sufficient current. This is referred to as "impressed current cathodic protection."

7.1.3.3 Cathodic protection systems shall be monitored by testing and the results shall be documented. The test results shall demonstrate one of the following:

(1) A pipe-to-soil voltage of –0.85 volts or more negative is produced, with reference to a saturated copper-copper sulfate half cell
(2) A pipe-to-soil voltage of –0.78 volts or more negative is produced, with reference to a saturated KCl calomel half cell
(3) A pipe-to-soil voltage of –0.80 volts or more negative is produced, with reference to a silver-silver chloride half cell
(4) Compliance with a method described in Appendix D of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Part 192

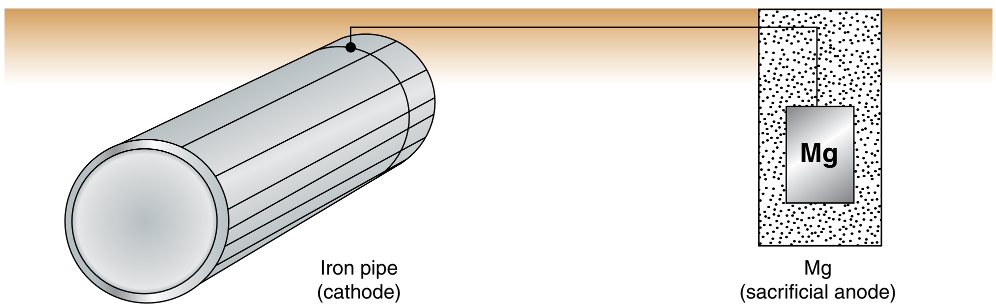
7.1.3.4 Sacrificial anodes shall be tested in accordance with the following:

(1) Upon installation of the cathodic protection system, except where prohibited by climatic conditions, in which case the testing shall be performed not later than 180 days after the installation of the system

(2) 12 to 18 months after the initial test
(3) Upon successful verification testing in accordance with (1) and (2), periodic follow-up testing shall be performed at intervals not to exceed 36 months

Exhibit 7.4 shows an example of an underground pipe installation. Passive, or sacrificial, cathodic protection is where a galvanic anode (a more electrochemically active metal) is attached to a vulnerable metal surface when it is exposed to an electrolyte (liquid or gel that contains ions and can be decomposed by electrolysis). In order for passive cathodic protection to work, the galvanic anode must possess a lower or more negative electrochemical potential than that of the cathode, in this case the steel. Galvanic anodes are selected because they have more active voltage (more negative electrochemical potential) than the typical steel used for gas piping. The galvanic anode will continue to corrode by consuming the anode material. Eventually the anode will need to be replaced, as indicated by the testing required in 7.1.3.3 and in accordance with 7.1.3.5. Galvanic or sacrificial anodes are made in various shapes and sizes typically using alloys of zinc, magnesium, and aluminum. ASTM F1182, *Standard Specification for Anodes, Sacrificial Zinc Alloy*, provides additional information about the requirements for sacrificial anodes.

EXHIBIT 7.4



Underground Pipe Installation. (Courtesy of E. Generalic, http://glossary.periodni.com/glossary.php?en=cathodic+protection)

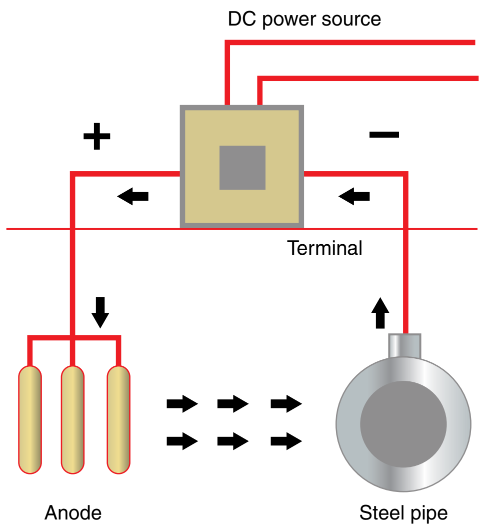
7.1.3.5 Systems failing a test shall be repaired not more than 180 days after the date of the failed testing. The testing schedule shall be restarted as required in 7.1.3.4(1) and (2), and the results shall comply with 7.1.3.3.

7.1.3.6 Impressed current cathodic protection systems shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the following schedule:

(1) The impressed current rectifier voltage output shall be checked at intervals not exceeding two months.
(2) The pipe-to-soil voltage shall be tested at least annually.

Impressed current systems, such as the one shown in Exhibit 7.5, are typically used on larger structures where electrolyte resistivity is high and a galvanic anode cannot deliver enough current to provide protection. Anodes in an impressed current system are connected to a DC power source created by a transformer-rectifier connected to AC power. Alternative power sources must be used to ensure a constant current source, such as solar panels or wind- or gas-powered thermoelectric generators. This method may be very costly for relatively short lengths of underground piping; therefore, it is very rare in residential or commercial applications.

EXHIBIT 7.5



Impressed Current Cathodic Protection System.

7.1.3.7 Documentation of the results of the two most recent tests shall be retained.

7.1.3.8 Where dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used.

Exhibit 7.6 shows a typical insulating coupling.

EXHIBIT 7.6

Insulating Coupling. (Courtesy of plumbingsupply.com)

7.1.3.9 Steel risers, other than anodeless risers, connected to plastic piping shall be cathodically protected by means of a welded anode.

7.1.4* Protection Against Freezing. Where the formation of hydrates or ice is known to occur, piping shall be protected against freezing.

A.7.1.4 The gas supplier can be consulted for recommendations.

Ice problems are all but nonexistent with pipeline natural gas and propane, but they can still exist in gas from alternative sources such as local wells, landfills, or waste treatment plants. The user should consult the gas supplier about the possibility of ice, which can block lines and prevent gas flow.

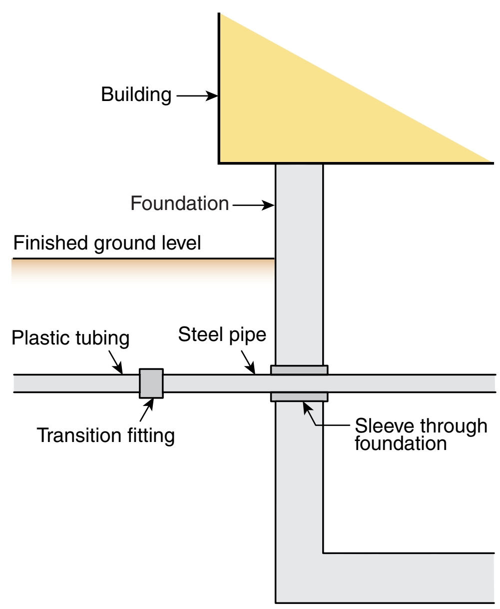
7.1.5 Piping Through Foundation Wall. Underground piping, where installed through the outer foundation or basement wall of a building, shall be encased in a protective sleeve or protected by an approved device or method. The space between the gas piping and the sleeve and between the sleeve and the wall shall be sealed to prevent entry of gas and water.

Gas leaks in outdoor underground piping have been known to migrate along the buried piping and potentially into the basement instead of dispersing in the atmosphere above ground level. This condition can be extremely hazardous and can result in a fire or explosion. The requirement to seal the casing against water entry is intended to also block this leakage path. See Exhibit 7.7 for an illustration of underground foundation wall penetration.

Caulking material should be used to seal the pipe penetration at foundation walls. Pipe can move relative to the foundation, and the caulking may fail if the penetration exceeds the capability of the caulking material. Depending on the size of the penetration, some caulks may not be suitable. Check and follow the manufacturer's installation requirements for proper protection.

The use of an inert wrapping material provides an additional method of protection. The material must be approved and be suitable for the application. The material must also be able to seal around the pipe and the wall to prevent the entry of gas or water.

EXHIBIT 7.7



Piping Through a Foundation Wall. (Courtesy of J.J. Drechsler)

7.1.6 Piping Underground Beneath Buildings. Where gas piping is installed underground beneath buildings, the piping shall be either of the following:

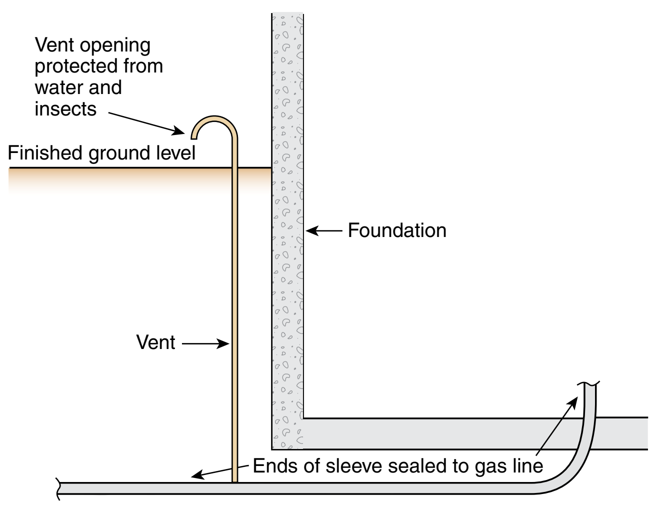
(1) Encased in an approved conduit designed to withstand the imposed loads and installed in accordance with 7.1.6.1 or 7.1.6.2
(2) A piping/encasement system listed for installation beneath buildings.

The need to install gas piping under buildings has been recognized in NFPA 54 since 1959. There are many circumstances when it is necessary for the gas piping system to be installed under buildings.

- Pipe under a building that originates and terminates inside a building, such as a pipe that extends gas piping in a building under a concrete floor to another part of the building
- Pipe that originates outside a building and terminates inside a building, such as a commercial building where the gas service enters under a casement window, basement, or utility vault

Gas leaking from a pipe installed underneath a building can migrate into the building. The code requires that any such pipes be encased and that the annular space between the pipe and the case be vented to the outdoors. (See Exhibit 7.8.) The authority having jurisdiction may require that the sleeve be tested in the same manner as the gas pipe it contains. Although the resulting installation is perfectly safe, the installation is difficult and the repairs costly. For these reasons, practicality demands that most pipes run through buildings rather than under them.

EXHIBIT 7.8



Vented Sleeve.

7.1.6.1 Conduit with One End Terminating Outdoors. The conduit shall extend into an accessible portion of the building and, at the point where the conduit terminates in the building, the space between the conduit and the gas piping shall be sealed to prevent the possible entrance of any gas leakage. Where the end sealing is of a type that retains the full pressure of the pipe, the conduit shall be designed for the same pressure as the pipe. The conduit shall extend at least 4 in. (100 mm) outside the building, be vented outdoors above finished ground level, and be installed so as to prevent the entrance of water and insects.

7.1.6.2 Conduit with Both Ends Terminating Indoors. Where the conduit originates and terminates within the same building, the conduit shall originate and terminate in an accessible portion of the building and shall not be sealed.

The most common use is for island ranges or cooktops in kitchens. This option allows shorter pipe runs in many cases and eliminates the need for a vent to the outdoors.

7.1.7 Plastic Piping.

Plastic pipe is to be used outdoors, underground only, and must be installed 12 in. (300 mm) or 18 in. (460 mm) below finished ground level. Plastic pipe may not be used inside buildings for fuel gas. The prohibition of the use of any plastic pipe recognizes that it will fail under fire conditions, and the released gas will accelerate any building fire.

Risers and wall head adapters (also called service head adapters) are also covered by 7.1.7. These fittings are used to install polyethylene pipe and tubing. Polyethylene has been used successfully for more than 30 years in gas distribution service upstream of the gas meter.

Plastic pipe and tubing is more susceptible to inadvertent damage during installation than most metallic pipe. For this reason, special attention should be given to proper compaction below the pipe, to the elimination of shear points on connections during backfilling, and to the materials in the backfill, making certain that angular and large materials are not used near the pipe.

Note that while the code uses the word *plastic* in this section, only polyethylene or polyamide materials are allowed. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) cannot be used for gas piping, as noted in 5.6.4.1.3.

7.1.7.1 Connection of Plastic Piping. Plastic piping shall be installed outdoors, underground only.

The use of transition fittings and anode-type risers with anodes (Exhibit 7.9 and Exhibit 7.10) has been allowed for several editions of the code. In both of these applications, the plastic-to-steel transition is made below grade and meets the requirement in 7.1.7.1. An anode-type riser uses a sacrificial anode, such as those discussed in the commentary following 7.1.3.4, to protect the steel portion of the riser from corrosion.

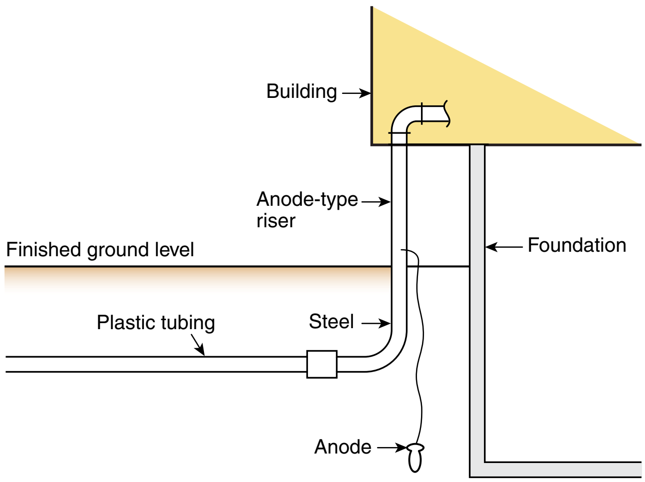
EXHIBIT 7.9

Transition Fitting. (Courtesy of Ray Murray, Inc.)

Exception No. 1: Plastic piping shall be permitted to terminate aboveground where an anodeless riser is used.

Anodeless risers, such as the one in Exhibit 7.11, are a type of factory-assembled transition fitting used to terminate plastic piping aboveground and outside of buildings. The design of the anodeless riser is a popular choice because the transition fitting is factory fabricated and factory leak-tested. No joining qualification or training is required of the installer. Anodeless risers are constructed with the plastic pipe running inside steel. Also, since the plastic pipe is the gas carrier to an aboveground delivery point, no cathodic protection (galvanic anode) is required as the steel casing is not located underground. These risers are accepted by the code because their design addresses the concerns regarding plastic pipe terminating aboveground.

EXHIBIT 7.10



Anode-Type Riser Installation.

EXHIBIT 7.11

Anodeless Riser.

EXHIBIT 7.12

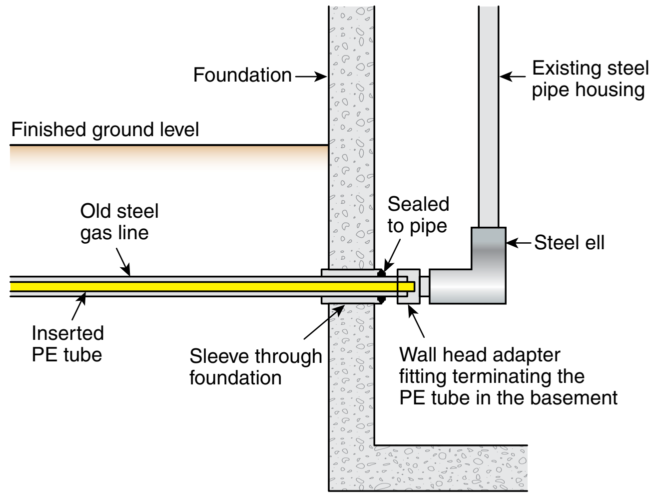
Service/Wall Head Adapters (Cutaway). (Courtesy of R.W. Lyall & Company, Inc.)

Exception No. 2: Plastic piping shall be permitted to terminate with a wall head adapter aboveground in buildings, including basements, where the plastic piping is inserted in a piping material permitted for use in buildings.

Wall head adapters, which are shown in Exhibit 7.12, often are used by gas utilities for insertion renewals of steel service lines. Within the scope of this code, wall head adapters can be used for renewals of steel pipes from meters at the property line or in renewals of existing underground steel pipes between buildings, as well as for making a clean-sleeved, foundation wall penetration below finished ground level.

See Exhibit 7.13 for a typical steel line renewal using a wall head adapter. The line is renewed by inserting plastic pipe through the old steel pipe all the way from the outer end into the basement (i.e., insertion renewal). The inserted plastic in the basement is terminated by installing an appropriately sized wall head adapter to the end of the plastic pipe or tube in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. The wall head adapter/plastic pipe assembly is then pushed back toward and threaded onto the old steel service pipe that extends through the basement wall. Next, the house piping is fitted to the male threads of the wall head adapter. The plastic pipe and house piping are pressure tested. At this point, the plastic is hooked up at the other end and purged, completing the renewal installation.

EXHIBIT 7.13



Basement Termination of Plastic Pipe.

7.1.7.2 Connections Between Metallic and Plastic Piping. Connections made between metallic and plastic piping shall be made with fittings conforming to one of the following:

(1) ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*, Category I transition fittings
(2) ASTM F 1973, *Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide 11 (PA11) and Polyamide 12 (PA 12) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems*
(3) ASTM F 2509, *Standard Specification for Field-Assembled Anodeless Riser Kits for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing*

7.1.7.3 Tracer Wire. An electrically continuous corrosion-resistant tracer shall be buried with the plastic pipe to facilitate locating.

7.1.7.3.1 The tracer shall be one of the following:

(1) A product specifically designed for that purpose
(2) Insulated copper conductor not less than 14 AWG

7.1.7.3.2 Where tracer wire is used, access shall be provided from aboveground or one end of the tracer wire or tape shall be brought aboveground at a building wall or riser.

FAQ Why must tracer wire be installed where underground plastic gas pipe is installed?

Because pipe locators cannot locate plastic pipe or tubing, a tracer, such as tracer wire or a product designed for the purpose, is required. Tracer wire is copper electrical wire, AWG 14 or larger. Other products that can be used to identify the location of plastic pipe are detectable warning tape or radio frequency markers. Where used, the tracer wire or tape must be continuous and the wire must be able to conduct current all the way to the end. The ends of the tracer wire or tape must terminate aboveground at the riser locations. Where tracer wire is used, special equipment, as shown in Exhibit 7.14, sends a current through the wire, creating a magnetic field that can then be located using a special detector.

Tracer tape is plastic tape with a continuous foil backing that can be detected by a metal detector. Where metalized tape is used, a metal detector is usually used to locate the tape.

EXHIBIT 7.14

Plastic Pipe Locator. (Courtesy of Michael A. Twohig)

7.2 Installation of Piping

7.2.1 Piping installed aboveground shall be securely supported and located where it will be protected from physical damage. Where passing through an exterior wall, the piping shall also be protected from corrosion by coating or wrapping with an inert material approved for such applications. The piping shall be sealed around its circumference at the point of the exterior penetration to prevent the entry of water, insects, and rodents. Where piping is encased in a protective pipe sleeve, the annular spaces between the gas piping and the sleeve and between the sleeve and the wall opening shall be sealed.

Aboveground piping must be supported properly without stress, strain, or vibration and must be protected from damage. Piping systems installed under stress or that are strained or subject to continuous or intermittent vibration can cause problems, including the loosening of threaded connections or leaking flanges. In extreme cases, pipes can be knocked off their supports or a pipe fatigue failure can occur. The location of an aboveground gas piping system is very important. Piping in carports, garages, and driveways where autos or other operating equipment may be used need to be protected. Leaking gas from any damaged or broken pipe could cause a fire, an explosion, property damage, and serious bodily injury.

Piping that passes through an outside wall must be protected. This penetration is often overlooked. Usually the pipe is protected only when the pipe passes through a concrete wall.

However, when the pipe passes through a noncorrosive wall, such as wood, it must be sealed to prevent the entry of insects and water. Piping in contact with building materials can corrode due to chemical reactions with those materials or due to galvanic corrosion from contact with metallic siding. The inert wrapping material must be approved for these applications. Refer to the commentary following 7.1.5, where the use of caulking is discussed.

7.2.2 Building Structure.

7.2.2.1 The installation of gas piping shall not cause structural stresses within building components to exceed allowable design limits.

The support of gas piping must be properly designed so as not to damage the structure or building in which it is installed. Steel piping can be heavy and may need extra support spanning several support members. Guidance on support should come from design professionals. The structural integrity of the building must be taken into consideration when drilling, boring, or notching structural members. For example, the bottom chord of wooden trusses may not have any load-carrying capacity.

7.2.2.2 Approval shall be obtained before any beams or joists are cut or notched.

Building codes govern the notching and boring of joists, studs, rafters, and beams. Notching should be avoided whenever possible. Drilling holes or boring can create the same complications as notches, as they create weak points in load-bearing members. The formulas and rules for notching and boring are complicated. Restrictions on the allowable notching and boring of joists, studs, rafters, and beams are meant to retain the structural integrity of the structure. Installers are strongly discouraged from notching or boring any structural members of a building.

The authority having jurisdiction may request supporting documentation allowing notching and boring of joists, studs, rafters, beams, or structural members from a structural engineer or a registered design professional.

7.2.3 Gas Piping to Be Sloped. Piping for other than dry gas conditions shall be sloped not less than ¼ in. in 15 ft (7 mm in 4.6 m) to prevent traps.

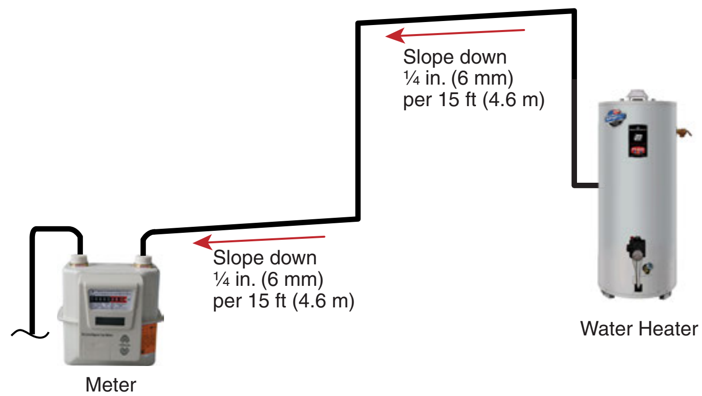
Piping must be sloped in order to prevent low spots or traps when transporting gases that contain significant water vapor, as shown in Exhibit 7.15. Generally, natural gas is considered to be dry, but it can contain trace amounts of water vapor. Water vapor, compressor oils, and other liquids have been known to be corrosive and damage valves and orifices. The installer determines the most effective way to install the pipe to prevent traps or low spots. The horizontal piping should be sloped so that the drips or sediment traps will trap any liquids.

7.2.4* Prohibited Locations. Gas piping inside any building shall not be installed in or through a clothes chute, chimney or gas vent, dumbwaiter, elevator shaft, or air duct, other than combustion air ducts.

A.7.2.4 The intent is that gas piping, shutoff valves required by this code, and regulators be allowed to be installed in accessible portions of plenums, accessible ducts used to supply combustion and ventilation air in accordance with Section 9.3, and accessible spaces between a fixed ceiling and dropped ceiling.

The migration of leaking gas throughout the building is hazardous and can cause a fire. Piping can be installed in combustion and ventilation ducts because they connect directly to the area containing the appliance. If there is any leakage, it will not be distributed throughout the building.

EXHIBIT 7.15



Sloping of Gas Piping for Other than Dry Gas. (Courtesy of J.J. Drechsler)

7.2.5 Hangers, Supports, and Anchors.

7.2.5.1 Piping shall be supported with metal pipe hooks, metal pipe straps, metal bands, metal brackets, metal hangers, or building structural components, suitable for the size of piping, of adequate strength and quality, and located at intervals so as to prevent or damp out excessive vibration. Piping shall be anchored to prevent undue strains on connected appliances and equipment and shall not be supported by other piping. Pipe hangers and supports shall conform to the requirements of ANSI/MSS SP-58, *Pipe Hangers and Supports — Materials, Design and Manufacture.*

7.2.5.2 Spacings of supports in gas piping installations shall not be greater than shown in Table 7.2.5.2. Spacing of supports of CSST shall be in accordance with the CSST manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 7.2.5.2 *Support of Piping*

Steel Pipe, Nominal Size of Pipe (in.)	*Spacing of Supports (ft)*	*Nominal Size of Tubing Smooth Wall (in. O.D.)*	*Spacing of Supports (ft)*
½	6	½	4
¾ or 1	8	⅝ or ¾	6
1¼ or larger (horizontal)	10	⅞ or 1 (horizontal)	8
1¼ or larger (vertical)	Every floor level	1 or larger (vertical)	Every floor level

For SI units, 1 ft = 0.305 m.

FAQ Do the support requirements of Table 7.2.5.2 apply to vertical gas piping?

The maximum distances allowable for supports of piping, including steel pipe and smooth-wall tubing, are listed in Table 7.2.5.2. Threaded pipe should also be supported at each change of direction to help support the fittings. Pipe and tubing with vertical drops to appliances should be supported by hangers independent from the appliance or connectors. This allows the appliance and connectors to be removed or repaired without disturbing the gas piping system. When installing vertical gas piping, it is important that the piping be supported and secured to a wall. The support of CSST is not covered in this table, and the manufacturer's installation instructions should be used where supports are needed for CSST.

7.2.5.3 Supports, hangers, and anchors shall be installed so as not to interfere with the free expansion and contraction of the piping between anchors. All parts of the supporting system shall be designed and installed so they are not disengaged by movement of the supported piping.

Long, straight piping runs should be supported in a manner that allows for expansion and contraction. Pipe firmly affixed to a support and subjected to temperature fluctuations such as those outside of the building could dislodge the support and cause an unsafe condition. These installations may feature roller-type supports to accommodate expansion. See Exhibit 7.16 for an example of a support for a roof.

EXHIBIT 7.16

Roof Base with Roller-Type Support. (Courtesy of Cooper B-Line)

7.2.5.4 Piping on Roof Tops. Gas piping installed on the roof surfaces shall be elevated above the roof surface and shall be supported in accordance with Table 7.2.5.2.

The support interval required for rooftop piping installations is the same as the support intervals required for all indoor piping. Rooftop installations are increasingly used for "big box" retailing, commercial buildings, and other applications. Note that the requirement does not specify a height the pipe needs to be elevated above the roof. Depending on local weather conditions and construction practices, the authority having jurisdiction may have specific height requirements for piping installed on rooftops, particularly where snow or rain may accumulate on a flat roof.

7.2.6 CSST. CSST piping systems shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) is a flexible, stainless steel tubing used to supply natural gas and propane, which is coated with a yellow or a black exterior plastic coating. Because of CSST's flexibility, it easily snakes through walls and around obstacles without the need for multiple joints. It is installed beneath, through, and alongside floor joists in crawl spaces, in the basement, in interior wall cavities, and on top of ceiling joists in attic spaces. Subsection 7.13.2 contains additional provisions for bonding and grounding of CSST systems.

7.3 Concealed Piping in Buildings

Typically, concealed locations are spaces not generally accessible after the project is completed. An attic or a crawl space with an entrance is not a concealed space. Concealed locations are rendered inaccessible by the structure or finish of the building, such as furred spaces, spaces above ceilings, joist or truss spaces that are part of floor–ceiling assemblies, stud spaces inside framed walls, fire-rated enclosures for chimneys and vents, and vertical chases between floors for pipes, ducts, and mechanical systems. Piping that is concealed by fixed construction is of greater concern than exposed piping because of the potential for damage, such as by nail puncture (especially to tubing) during alterations or when pictures are hung on a wall where any damage will not be seen.

7.3.1 General. Gas piping in concealed locations shall be installed in accordance with this section.

7.3.2 Fittings in Concealed Locations. Fittings installed in concealed locations shall be limited to the following types:

(1) Threaded elbows, tees, couplings, caps, and plugs
(2) Brazed fittings
(3) Welded fittings

(4) Fittings listed to ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*, or ANSI LC 4, *Press-Connect Metallic Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems*

Fittings not within these parameters are not allowed.

7.3.3 Piping in Partitions. Concealed gas piping shall not be located in solid partitions.

Solid partitions are building spaces between walls that are completely solid. They can be solid wood, masonry blocks with concrete filling the spaces, or partitions with rigid, solid insulation.

FAQ Why is gas piping prohibited in solid partitions?

Gas piping (pipe and tubing) installed in solid partitions is prohibited because the pipe or tubing is rigidly held in place and can be damaged by saws penetrating the partition during construction or by nails being hammered into the partition.

7.3.4 Tubing in Partitions. This provision shall not apply to tubing that pierces walls, floors, or partitions. Tubing installed vertically and horizontally inside hollow walls or partitions without protection along its entire concealed length shall meet the following requirements:

(1) A steel striker barrier not less than 0.0508 in. (1.3 mm) thick, or equivalent, is installed between the tubing and the finished wall and extends at least 4 in. (100 mm) beyond concealed penetrations of plates, firestops, wall studs, and so on.

Tubing is typically a softer material and needs special protection when installed in walls, floors, or partitions. Material of 0.0508 in. thickness is approximately 16 gauge. Plates are required near penetrations because nails and screws are more likely to penetrate the tubing where it is restrained by the penetration. This hazard is also the basis for the requirement that tubing away from a penetration must not be strapped or restricted. If the tube is free to move, a nail or screw will have difficulty penetrating the tubing because it will likely be pushed out of the way.

As noted in 7.2.6, CSST must be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation requirements of the listing standard, ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*. ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26 requires protection based on the distance of the penetration to the edge of the stud, joist, or plate and on the size of the CSST.

ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26 also requires that the width of the striker plate be at least 1.5 times the outside diameter of the tubing. If the manufacturer's instructions differ from the requirements of this code for installing tubing, the more stringent of the two should be followed.

These requirements are summarized in Commentary Table 7.1.

COMMENTARY TABLE 7.1 *Length of Striker Plate at CSST Penetrations*

Distance Between Finished Wall Surface and the CSST (in.)	CSST Size (in.) ≤1	CSST Size (in.) >1
	Length of Striker Plate Beyond Penetration	
<2	5	Along entire concealed length where 2 × 4 studs are used**
≥2 to ≤3	0*	
>3	Not required	

**Strike plate with no extension required.*
***Where studs or joist 2 × 6 or larger are used, use the ≤1 in. column.*

(2) The tubing is installed in single runs and is not rigidly secured.

FAQ Why is it prohibited to secure multiple runs of tubing together in a hollow wall?

Strapping multiple pieces of tubing would make the assembly more rigid and less likely to be moved by a nail penetrating the hollow wall. If a nail penetrates the tubing, leaks will occur.

FAQ Why are plates required for tubing penetrating wall studs or plates?

Plates are required near penetrations. At this point, nails and screws are more apt to be able to pin down and penetrate a tube because it is restrained by the penetration. The required overlap of the plates protects against drywall installers missing the stud or plate with their screw or nail. This hazard is also the basis for the requirement that tubing away from penetrations must not be secured. Unsecured tubing can move. Thus, nails and screws will have difficulty penetrating the tubing because the tubing can be moved to the side by a nail or screw.

7.3.5 Piping in Floors.

7.3.5.1 Industrial Occupancies. In industrial occupancies, gas piping in solid floors such as concrete shall be laid in channels in the floor and covered to permit access to the piping with a minimum of damage to the building. Where piping in floor channels could be exposed to excessive moisture or corrosive substances, the piping shall be protected in an approved manner.

7.3.5.2 Other Occupancies. In other than industrial occupancies and where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, gas piping embedded in concrete floor slabs constructed with Portland cement shall be surrounded with a minimum of 1½ in. (38 mm) of concrete and shall not be in physical contact with other metallic structures such as reinforcing rods or electrically neutral conductors. All piping, fittings, and risers shall be protected against corrosion in accordance with 5.6.6. Piping shall not be embedded in concrete slabs containing quickset additives or cinder aggregate.

Cinder aggregate is composed primarily of pyroclastic rocks or pyroclastic composed solely or primarily of volcanic materials. Calcium of chloride in small amounts is produced directly from limestone and in large amounts is produced as a by-product of the Solvay process for the production of soda ash. Calcium chloride is used in many applications, but the major uses are as road salt and as an additive in concrete mixes to help speed up the initial setting. Concrete mixtures containing these products are corrosive to steel, and embedding steel pipe would be dangerous.

It is important to remember that different requirements apply to piping in floors in industrial occupancies than in other occupancies. In industrial processes areas, access to the piping may be necessary because corrosive materials may be used that can corrode the piping system.

Code Update

7.3.6 Shutoff Valves in Tubing Systems. Shutoff valves in tubing systems in concealed locations shall be rigidly and securely supported independently of the tubing.

It is common to see a key-operated (T-handle) gas shutoff valve installed in a wall or floor area for copper tubing and CSST systems. This valve must be supported and securely fastened independently so that it does not cause stress or strain on the gas tubing system.

7.4 Piping in Vertical Chases

Where gas piping exceeding 5 psi (34 kPa) is located within vertical chases in accordance with 5.5.1(2), the requirements of 7.4.1 through 7.4.3 shall apply.

7.4.1 Pressure Reduction. Where pressure reduction is required in branch connections for compliance with 5.5.1, such reduction shall take place either inside the chase or immediately adjacent to the outside wall of the chase. Regulator venting and downstream overpressure protection shall comply with 5.8.5 and Section 5.9. The regulator shall be accessible for service and repair and vented in accordance with one of the following:

(1) Where the fuel gas is lighter than air, regulators equipped with a vent limiting means shall be permitted to be vented into the chase. Regulators not equipped with a vent limiting means shall be permitted to be vented either directly to the outdoors or to a point within the top 1 ft (0.3 m) of the chase.
(2) Where the fuel gas is heavier than air, the regulator vent shall be vented only directly to the outdoors.

7.4.2 Chase Construction. Chase construction shall comply with local building codes with respect to fire resistance and protection of horizontal and vertical openings.

7.4.3* Ventilation. A chase shall be ventilated to the outdoors and only at the top. The opening(s) shall have a minimum free area [in square inches (square meters)] equal to the product of one-half of the maximum pressure in the piping [in pounds per square inch (kilopascals)] times the largest nominal diameter of that piping [in inches (millimeters)], or the cross-sectional area of the chase, whichever is smaller. Where more than one fuel gas piping system is present, the free area for each system shall be calculated and the largest area used.

A.7.4.3 Only vertical chases are recognized by the coverage. It is believed that welded joints for a horizontal gas line would be preferable to a horizontal chase.

A chase is a vertical passage for ducts, pipes, or wires in a building. It is ventilated to the outdoors and only at the top. The chase construction must comply with local building codes with respect to the type of construction and may or may not have openings. It is important to note that, because a chase is ventilated at the top, any vented or leaked gas will dissipate to the outdoors, not into the building.

7.5 Gas Pipe Turns

Changes in direction of gas pipe shall be made by the use of fittings, factory bends, or field bends.

7.5.1 Metallic Pipe. Metallic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

(1) Bends shall be made only with bending tools and procedures intended for that purpose.
(2) All bends shall be smooth and free from buckling, cracks, or other evidence of mechanical damage.
(3) The longitudinal weld of the pipe shall be near the neutral axis of the bend.
(4) Pipe shall not be bent through an arc of more than 90 degrees.
(5) The inside radius of a bend shall be not less than 6 times the outside diameter of the pipe.

Whenever bending pipe or tubing, it is important to use the proper tool, such as those shown in Exhibits 7.17 and 7.18. When bending welded pipe, it is important to bend it without stressing the longitudinal weld. The neutral axis of the bend is the area where the metal is not stretched or compressed during the bending operation. The axis lies at the sides of the pipe at the approximate midpoint between the inside and the outside of the bend. (See Exhibit 7.19.)

7.5.2 Plastic Pipe. Plastic pipe bends shall comply with the following:

(1) The pipe shall not be damaged, and the internal diameter of the pipe shall not be effectively reduced.

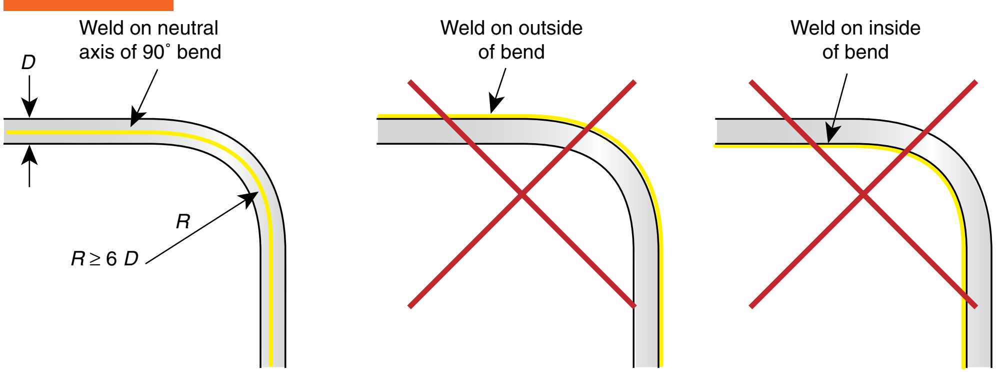
EXHIBIT 7.17

Pipe Bending Tool. (Courtesy of Hilmor)

EXHIBIT 7.18

Tubing Benders. (Courtesy of Hilmor)

EXHIBIT 7.19



Examples of Bending Welded Pipe.

(2) Joints shall not be located in pipe bends.
(3) The radius of the inner curve of such bends shall not be less than 25 times the inside diameter of the pipe.
(4) Where the piping manufacturer specifies the use of special bending tools or procedures, such tools or procedures shall be used.

FAQ What is the smallest radius bend for plastic pipe allowed by the code?

Plastic pipe requires the bend radius to be at least 25 times the inside diameter. As an example, a 2 in. (50 mm) nominal size pipe has an inside diameter of 1.943 in. (48.4 mm), per Table 6.2(t). The minimum radius of the bend is 25 × 1.943 in. (25 × 48.4 mm), or 48.6 in. (1.23 m), which is about 4 ft.

7.5.3 Elbows. Factory-made welding elbows or transverse segments cut therefrom shall have an arc length measured along the crotch of at least 1 in. (25 mm) for pipe sizes 2 in. (50 mm) and larger.

7.6 Drips and Sediment Traps

A drip leg and sediment trap, such as those shown in Exhibits 7.20 and 7.21, are the same assemblies of piping but serve different purposes. Drips are used where the gas is "wet" or contains liquids. Sediment traps are installed to remove debris in the gas piping system before it reaches critical components or appliances. Some authorities having jurisdiction or appliance manufacturers require drip legs or sediment traps in all gas piping systems.

Typically, the major source of debris is introduced during and immediately after the installation of the gas piping system, such as weld slag or dirt that entered the system before pressure testing or charging with fuel gas.

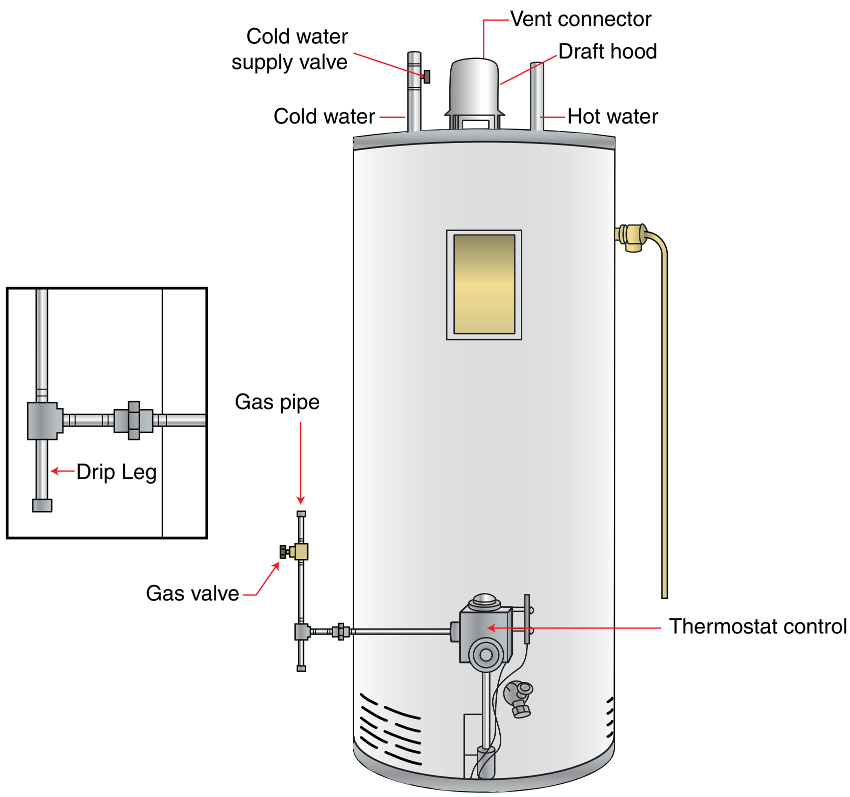
7.6.1 Provide Drips Where Necessary. For other than dry gas conditions, a drip shall be provided at any point in the line of pipe where condensate could collect. Where required by the authority having jurisdiction or the serving gas supplier, a drip shall also be provided at the outlet of the meter. This drip shall be installed so as to constitute a trap wherein an accumulation of condensate shuts off the flow of gas before it runs back into the meter.

Drips collect condensate from gases that contain condensable products (usually water) or oil added in the gas transmission process. Drips are required by the code if required by the gas supplier, manufacturer, or the authority having jurisdiction. Usually, drips are located near the outlet of the meter or the service entrance and at other locations where condensate could collect. The drip is installed at the bottom of a downward-flowing line by placing a tee at the bottom of the line, installing a nipple and cap in the run of the tee, and continuing the pipe run out the side of the tee. Drips must be located so that they can be emptied. Drip locations also must be protected from freezing.

A drip can be required if the natural gas supplier expects condensate in the gas received from the transmission company. Drips may not be required when the fuel gas is LP-Gas.

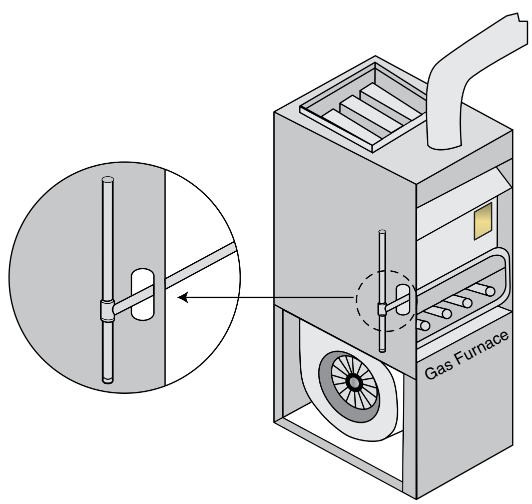
7.6.2 Location of Drips. All drips shall be installed only in such locations that they are readily accessible to permit cleaning or emptying. A drip shall not be located where the condensate is likely to freeze.

EXHIBIT 7.20



Water Heater Drip Trap. (Courtesy of InterNACHI)

EXHIBIT 7.21



FAU Sediment Trap. (Courtesy of InterNACHI)

7.6.3 Sediment Traps. The installation of sediment traps shall be in accordance with 9.6.8.

Sediment traps, sometimes confused with drip traps, are installed to collect solid foreign particles to prevent such material from entering close-fitting parts or small passageways (e.g., valves and orifices). Although some fuel gases can contain foreign solids, this situation is not likely to be a problem in either utility gas or LP-Gas because of the methods and equipment used in handling these products. Dirt and pipe material cuttings that are placed unavoidably in the system itself (usually during construction) and are present in limited amounts are the targets of sediment traps. Thus, sediment traps seldom need to be opened for service or cleaning. See Exhibit 9.16 for a depiction of a sediment trap.

Many appliance manufacturers are incorporating sediment traps in their appliances, and a number of the standards for gas appliances require the installation of a sediment trap.

Subsection 9.6.8 requires the installation of a sediment trap at the time of installation of most appliances if the appliance is not already equipped with one. It also states that "illuminating appliances, ranges, clothes dryers, decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces, gas fireplaces, and outdoor cooking appliances shall not be required to be so equipped" with a sediment trap.

FAQ Why are sediment traps not required on appliances that are not automatically operated?

These appliances are manually ignited, either with a match or by an electrical igniter. If the appliance does not light because sediment restricts the flow of fuel gas, the user will be aware of that in a relatively short time and will take corrective action. For example, if a load of wet clothing is not dried, the user will call for repair. A central heating furnace, boiler, or water heater is more critical, and a sediment trap is therefore required to prevent a shutdown, which could result in freezing of building piping. Sediment traps are required for automatically (thermostatically) operated appliances, such as central heating furnaces and boilers, water heaters, and space heaters.

7.7 Outlets

7.7.1 Location and Installation.

7.7.1.1 The outlet fittings or piping shall be securely fastened in place.

7.7.1.2 Outlets shall not be located behind doors.

7.7.1.3 Outlets shall be located far enough from floors, walls, patios, slabs, and ceilings to permit the use of wrenches without straining, bending, or damaging the piping.

7.7.1.4 The unthreaded portion of gas piping outlets shall extend not less than 1 in. (25 mm) through finished ceilings or indoor or outdoor walls.

FAQ Why is a specified minimum length of unthreaded pipe projected past the penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors?

During new construction, the gas piping system is installed with pipe ends capped or plugged. This keeps the gas piping system clean and free from debris. Once the finished walls, ceilings, and floor coverings are installed, the caps and plugs are removed and valves and/or appliance connectors are installed. It is very important that there is enough pipe extending through the walls to allow a wrench to grip the pipe. This requirement becomes very important when working on existing or older gas piping systems so as to not disturb the joints behind the covering. In the case of floors, the extra projection will tend to protect the threads from flooding and mechanical damage.

7.7.1.5 The unthreaded portion of gas piping outlets shall extend not less than 2 in. (50 mm) above the surface of floors or outdoor patios or slabs.

7.7.1.6 The provisions of 7.7.1.4 and 7.7.1.5 shall not apply to listed quick-disconnect devices of the flush-mounted type or listed gas convenience outlets. Such devices shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.

Because gas convenience outlets are listed as an installed assembly, the location and installation concerns are addressed by their listing, and the provisions of 7.7.1.4 and 7.7.1.5 need not apply.

7.7.2 Cap All Outlets.

7.7.2.1 Each outlet, including a valve, shall be closed gastight with a threaded plug or cap immediately after installation and shall be left closed until the appliance or equipment is connected thereto. When an appliance or equipment is disconnected from an outlet and the outlet is not to be used again immediately, it shall be capped or plugged gastight.

The importance of this requirement cannot be stressed enough. Fires can be caused by gas leakage from open pipes in buildings. They can occur during construction where a pipe end is not plugged or capped prior to turning on the gas. Often there is the intent to plug the opening the next day, but it does not happen. If the gas system is not pressure tested, the open end may not be found. They can also occur where an appliance has been removed, and the gas valve is turned off but not plugged or capped. The valve, usually a quarter-turn gas cock, is accidentally opened by contact with moving furniture or other accidental contact with the valve handle.

All these accidents can be prevented by capping or plugging pipe ends and valves when the appliance is not connected and immediately after removal or disconnection.

Exception No. 1: Laboratory appliances installed in accordance with 9.6.2(1) shall be permitted.

Laboratory equipment, such as Bunsen burners, is connected and disconnected from hose-end valves as a normal, everyday operation. Laboratory equipment is exempted from the requirement for a plug or cap because of the frequency of use.

Exception No. 2: The use of a listed quick-disconnect device with integral shutoff or listed gas convenience outlet shall be permitted.

Listed quick-disconnect devices, such as shown in Exhibit 7.22, and gas convenience outlets are not required to be capped or plugged. Quick-disconnect devices are specially designed fittings used to provide a fast and automatic shutoff upon disconnection. Hand-operated without the use of tools, they replace threaded and flanged connections. The device works by having an internal valve that opens and closes as needed. Quick-disconnect devices are very useful when used on equipment or appliances that are altered or moved frequently.

7.7.2.2 Appliance shutoff valves installed in fireplaces shall be removed and the piping capped gastight where the fireplace is used for solid fuel burning.

When a fireplace is converted from burning gas to burning solid fuel, the removal of the appliance shutoff valve from the fireplace is required. Gas shutoff valves are not designed to withstand the extreme temperatures from a wood fire.

EXHIBIT 7.22

Quick-Disconnect Device. (Courtesy of EATON)

7.8 Branch Pipe Connection

When a branch outlet is placed on a main supply line before it is known what size pipe will be connected to it, the outlet shall be of the same size as the line that supplies it.

FAQ Is a branch connection placed in a gas line before the size of the branch is known required to be the size of the largest main gas supply line?

When installing a new system with a branch outlet or tapping into an existing system, and the heat input required in the branch is not known, the branch fitting installed must be the same size as the main branch. The reason is to prevent undersizing the branch connection.

In other words, a 1 in. (25 mm) branch fitting is sufficient, because 1 in. (25 mm) is the size of the main supply line. The installer must remember that when any modification is made to a fuel distribution system, the system must be recalculated to be certain that it can provide the necessary fuel without an excessive pressure drop. If the system cannot provide fuel without an excessive pressure drop, then larger or additional pipe must be installed.

See Chapter 5 for more information.

7.9 Manual Gas Shutoff Valves

7.9.1 Valves at Regulators. An accessible gas shutoff valve shall be provided upstream of each gas pressure regulator. Where two gas pressure regulators are installed in series in a single gas line, a manual valve shall not be required at the second regulator.

The purpose of an accessible gas shutoff valve is to be able to remove the regulator without shutting off other branches of the piping system, which would affect appliances not served by the regulator. If there are only two regulators in series, such as in an LP-Gas piping system serving a home, the valve at the LP-Gas tank meets the intent of this requirement even though it is installed outside the scope of NFPA 54.

7.9.2 Valves Controlling Multiple Systems.

7.9.2.1 Accessibility of Gas Valves. Main gas shutoff valves controlling several gas piping systems shall be readily accessible for operation and installed so as to be protected from physical damage. They shall be marked with a metal tag or other permanent means attached by the installing agency so that the gas piping systems supplied through them can be readily identified.

The main gas shutoff valve serving multiple gas systems must be readily accessible, allowing emergency responders to shut off the flow of gas in an emergency. The term *readily accessible* is defined in 3.3.1.1 as follows:

> **3.3.1.1 Readily Accessible.** Having direct access without the need of removing or moving any panel, door, or similar covering of the item described.

Note that the code is silent as to the need for a tool to close the valve. The valves on natural gas meters are usually not provided with handles or other means of closing. Fire fighters are generally equipped with the proper tools to close main gas shutoff valves.

Main gas shutoff valves must be marked so that they can be easily identified. Main gas shutoff valves at propane tanks are usually not marked, because the propane tank itself is sufficient.

7.9.2.2 Shutoff Valves for Multiple House Lines. In multiple-tenant buildings supplied through a master meter, through one service regulator where a meter is not provided, or where meters or service regulators are not readily accessible from the appliance or equipment location, an individual shutoff valve for each apartment or tenant line shall be provided at a convenient point of general accessibility. In a common system serving a number of individual buildings, shutoff valves shall be installed at each building.

The reason for requiring a shutoff valve for each line or building is to allow for the gas system to be separated for repair or maintenance. In a case where only part of the system has to be shut down for repair, the remaining system can continue to operate. Shutoff valves must be plainly marked so that in the future, service persons can determine which lines service which units or buildings.

7.9.2.3 Emergency Shutoff Valves. An exterior shutoff valve to permit turning off the gas supply to each building in an emergency shall be provided. The emergency shutoff valves shall be plainly marked as such and their locations posted as required by the authority having jurisdiction.

In natural gas installations, the emergency shutoff valve is part of the utility's service and meter installation. The natural gas supplier provides a shutoff valve for the supply to their gas meter under U.S. Department of Transportation regulations (49 CFR 192). The emergency shutoff valve required in 7.9.2.3 can be the same valve that is required in 7.9.2.2 for multiple house lines.

FAQ Can the shutoff valve in front of the meter serve as the emergency shutoff valve?

If the natural gas supplier installs a shutoff valve and gas meter (or shutoff valve if no meter is provided), the shutoff valve can also serve as the emergency shutoff valve. If the fuel line is run from this location to another building underground, the line must be brought up outside and another shutoff valve installed. This second shutoff will be the emergency shutoff valve for the building it serves. In any piping system, there must be an accessible exterior shutoff valve.

The installations just described are presumed to be obvious enough to emergency responders to meet the requirement of being "plainly marked" per 7.9.2.3. The requirement of posting the location is not treated uniformly by different gas suppliers and local fire departments. Where an installation is not obvious (e.g., an underground propane tank or a meter/regulator concealed by vegetation), a sign or other marking may be needed or required by the authority having jurisdiction. The intent of this provision is to enable emergency responders to shut off the gas supply to a building in the event of a fire. The local fire department is normally the authority having jurisdiction for this requirement.

In LP-Gas systems, the emergency shutoff valve is normally the propane tank shutoff valve.

7.9.2.4 Shutoff Valve for Laboratories. Each laboratory space containing two or more gas outlets installed on tables, benches, or in hoods in educational, research, commercial, and industrial occupancies shall have a single shutoff valve through which all such gas outlets are supplied. The shutoff valve shall be accessible, located within the laboratory or adjacent to the laboratory's egress door, and identified.

Laboratory gas piping systems are generally designed with multiple gas outlets for use with many different laboratory burners and equipment. Because of this design and possible infrequent use, a single master shutoff valve is required to control gas supply to all gas outlets.

7.10 Prohibited Devices

No device shall be placed inside the gas piping or fittings that reduces the cross-sectional area or otherwise obstructs the free flow of gas, except where proper allowance in the piping system design has been made for such a device and where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Reducing, restricting, or starving the gas flow to equipment or appliances may create a hazard and will cause performance issues, including nuisance shutdowns. If the gas pressure falls too low, the burner flame could be extinguished and possibly allow a small amount of gas to accumulate. Any resulting combustible mixture could create conditions for an explosion or flame rollout.

7.11 Systems Containing Gas–Air Mixtures Outside the Flammable Range

Where gas–air mixing machines are employed to produce mixtures above or below the flammable range, they shall be provided with stops to prevent adjustment of the mixture to within or approaching the flammable range.

7.12 Systems Containing Flammable Gas–Air Mixtures

7.12.1 Required Components. A central premix system with a flammable mixture in the blower or compressor shall consist of the following components:

(1) Gas-mixing machine in the form of an automatic gas–air proportioning device combined with a downstream blower or compressor
(2) Flammable mixture piping, minimum Schedule 40
(3) Automatic firecheck(s)
(4) Safety blowout(s) or backfire preventers for systems utilizing flammable mixture lines above 2½ in. (64 mm) nominal pipe size or the equivalent

7.12.2 Optional Components. The following components shall also be permitted to be utilized in any type of central premix system:

(1) Flowmeter(s)
(2) Flame arrester(s)

7.12.3 Additional Requirements. Gas-mixing machines shall have nonsparking blowers and shall be constructed so that a flashback does not rupture machine casings.

7.12.4* Special Requirements for Mixing Blowers. A mixing blower system shall be limited to applications with minimum practical lengths of mixture piping, limited to a maximum mixture pressure of 10 in. w.c. (2.5 kPa) and limited to gases containing no more than 10 percent hydrogen. The blower shall be equipped with a gas control valve at its air entrance arranged so that gas is admitted to the airstream, entering the blower in proper proportions for correct combustion by the type of burners employed, the said gas control valve being of either the zero governor or mechanical ratio valve type that controls the gas and air adjustment simultaneously. No valves or other obstructions shall be installed between the blower discharge and the burner or burners.

A.7.12.4 The mixing blower is acknowledged as a special case because of its inability to tolerate control valves or comparable restrictions between mixing blower(s) and burner(s). With these limitations, mixing blower installations are not required to utilize safety blowouts, backfire preventers, explosion heads, flame arresters, or automatic firechecks that introduce pressure losses.

7.12.5 Installation of Gas-Mixing Machines.

7.12.5.1* Location. The gas-mixing machine shall be located in a well-ventilated area or in a detached building or cutoff room provided with room construction and explosion vents in accordance with sound engineering principles. Such rooms or belowgrade installations shall have adequate positive ventilation.

A.7.12.5.1 For information on venting of deflagrations, see NFPA 68, *Standard on Explosion Protection by Deflagration Venting*.

7.12.5.2 Electrical Requirements. Where gas-mixing machines are installed in well-ventilated areas, the type of electrical equipment shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, for general service conditions unless other hazards in the area prevail. Where gas-mixing machines are installed in small detached buildings or cutoff rooms, the electrical equipment and wiring shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70* for hazardous locations (Articles 500 and 501, Class I, Division 2).

7.12.5.3 Air Intakes. Air intakes for gas-mixing machines using compressors or blowers shall be taken from outdoors whenever practical.

7.12.5.4* Controls. Controls for gas-mixing machines shall include interlocks and a safety shutoff valve of the manual reset type in the gas supply connection to each machine arranged to automatically shut off the gas supply in the event of high or low gas pressure. Except for open burner installations only, the controls shall be interlocked so that the blower or compressor stops operating following a gas supply failure. Where a system employs pressurized air, means shall be provided to shut off the gas supply in the event of air failure.

A.7.12.5.4 Additional interlocks might be necessary for safe operation of appliances supplied by the gas-mixing machine.

7.12.5.5 Installation in Parallel. Centrifugal gas-mixing machines in parallel shall be reviewed by the user and equipment manufacturer before installation, and means or plans for minimizing the effects of downstream pulsation and equipment overload shall be prepared and utilized as needed.

Gas–air mixers are used to premix gas and air where required by a few appliances. They are found only in industrial installations and require extensive precautions.

If a gas–air mixer is installed in a well-ventilated area of a building, no electrical area classification requirements are needed, but if the area is not well ventilated, the possibility of the accumulation of a flammable gas–air mixture exists. The electrical equipment in the area must be designed with this in mind. For more information, see NFPA 68, *Standard on Explosion Protection by Deflagration Venting*, which provides requirements for sizing of deflagration vents and other design information.

7.12.6 Use of Automatic Firechecks, Safety Blowouts, or Backfire Preventers. Automatic firechecks and safety blowouts or backfire preventers shall be provided in piping systems distributing flammable air–gas mixtures from gas-mixing machines to protect the piping and the machines in the event of flashback, in accordance with the following:

(1)* Approved automatic firechecks shall be installed upstream as close as practical to the burner inlets following the firecheck manufacturers' instructions.
(2) A separate manually operated gas valve shall be provided at each automatic firecheck for shutting off the flow of the gas–air mixture through the firecheck after a flashback has occurred. The valve shall be located upstream as close as practical to the inlet of the automatic firecheck. Caution: these valves shall not be reopened after a flashback has occurred until the firecheck has cooled sufficiently to prevent re-ignition of the flammable mixture and has been reset properly.
(3) A safety blowout or backfiring preventer shall be provided in the mixture line near the outlet of each gas-mixing machine where the size of the piping is larger than 2½ in. (64 mm) NPS, or equivalent, to protect the mixing equipment in the event of an explosion passing through an automatic firecheck. The manufacturers' instructions shall be followed when installing these devices, particularly after a disc has burst. The discharge from the safety blowout or backfire preventer shall be located or shielded so that particles from the ruptured disc cannot be directed toward personnel. Wherever there are interconnected installations of gas-mixing machines with safety blowouts or backfire preventers, provision shall be made to keep the mixture from other machines from reaching any ruptured disc opening. Check valves shall not be used for this purpose.
(4) Large-capacity premix systems provided with explosion heads (rupture discs) to relieve excessive pressure in pipelines shall be located at and vented to a safe outdoor location. Provisions shall be provided for automatically shutting off the supply of the gas–air mixture in the event of rupture.

Any installation of a large-capacity premix system, given its complexity and the potential for fire, may require the advice and assistance of an engineer or registered design professional.

A.7.12.6(1) Two basic methods are generally used. One calls for a separate firecheck at each burner, the other a firecheck at each group of burners. The second method is generally more practical if a system consists of many closely spaced burners.

An approved automatic firecheck should be installed as near as practical upstream from a flame arrester used for local protection where test burners or lighting torches are employed.

7.13 Electrical Bonding and Grounding

7.13.1 Pipe and Tubing Other than CSST. Each aboveground portion of a gas piping system, other than CSST, that is likely to become energized shall be electrically continuous and bonded to an effective ground-fault current path. Gas piping, other than CSST, shall be considered to be bonded when it is connected to appliances that are connected to the appliance grounding conductor of the circuit supplying that appliance.

The key phrase is *likely to become energized*. There is more than one way that a gas piping system can become electrically energized. As an example, gas piping can become energized if the appliance wiring or an electrical component within the equipment fails. The gas piping system can also become energized by other means, such as unintended contact with high voltage lines and lightning strikes. If this type of failure occurs, the equipment grounding conductor provided to the appliance (typical in a three-wire circuit) will provide a low-impedance pathway back to the service enclosure and the circuit breaker. The sizing of this bonding connection is, therefore, based on the size of the branch circuit that is used to energize the equipment. If there are gas appliances with no electrically powered components, then the gas piping system is not likely to become energized in this manner, and no bonding is required. However, if contact is possible with higher voltage lines and lightning strikes, the bonding requirements for these situations must be more robust, and this is typically beyond the capacity of the equipment grounding conductor and is not addressed in the *NEC*.

FAQ When does gas piping need to have a separate bonding connection?

Gas piping does not require a separate bonding connection unless one of the following situations occurs:

- There are gas appliances with electrical connections that are connected to ungrounded wiring systems (two-pronged plugs).
- There are sources of high voltage electricity outside the piping system that could energize the gas piping system. This situation is highly unusual or unlikely.
- The gas piping material is CSST (see 7.13.2).

Code Update

7.13.2* CSST. CSST gas piping systems, and gas piping systems containing one or more segments of CSST, shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system or, where provided, lightning protection grounding electrode system.

A.7.13.2 The required bonding connection may be made from the piping to the electrical service equipment enclosure, to the grounded conductor at the electrical service, to the grounding electrode conductor (where of sufficient size), or directly to the grounding electrode. The bond may also be made to a lightning protection system grounding electrode (but not to down conductors) if the resulting length of the bonding conductor is shorter. Lightning protection grounding systems are bonded to the electrical service grounding electrodes, in accordance with NFPA 780, using a method to minimize impedance between the systems.

Listed clamps are manufactured to facilitate attachment of the bonding conductor to either a segment of rigid pipe or to a CSST-copper alloy fitting. Clamps should be installed to remain accessible when building construction is complete.

The maximum length of the bonding connection was established based on studies conducted by the Gas Technology Institute in Project Number 21323, *Validation of Installation Methods for CSST Gas Piping to Mitigate Indirect Lightning Related Damage.* The shortest practical length should always be used. State and local laws can limit who can attach the bonding connection to the building grounding system.

The size of the bonding conductor, a 6 AWG copper wire, is a minimum size, and larger wire can be used. The requirement also permits conductors of different materials (of equivalent size) and both single wire and multi-strand.

See Supplement 7 for more information.

Subsection 7.13.2 has been extensively revised in the 2015 edition as a result of a research project on the efficacy of bonding and grounding of CSST to mitigate the danger related to indirect lightning strikes, causing the CSST to become energized, and the resulting current to arc to nearby conductors within a building. Supplement 7 contains a complete discussion of the hazard and the research project conducted by the Gas Technology Institute.

7.13.2.1 The bonding jumper shall connect to a metallic pipe, pipe fitting, or CSST fitting.

7.13.2.2 The bonding jumper shall not be smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent.

7.13.2.3 The length of the jumper between the connection to the gas piping system and the grounding electrode system shall not exceed 75 ft (22 m). Any additional electrodes shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system or, where provided, lightning protection grounding electrode system.

7.13.2.4 Bonding connections shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70, National Electrical Code*.

7.13.2.5 Devices used for the bonding connection shall be listed for the application in accordance with ANSI/UL 467, *Grounding and Bonding Equipment*.

FAQ Why are the bonding requirements for CSST different from those for other fuel gas piping materials?

CSST systems now require additional bonding to address its vulnerability to damage during electrical storms.

The damage to CSST related to lightning strikes appears to be caused by both direct and indirect strikes, where lightning strikes the ground nearby or a part of a building. The resulting electrical forces can energize the gas piping and, depending on the level of bonding, can lead to differences in voltage buildup between the CSST and other electrically conductive systems in the building (such as copper water pipe, coax cable, and electric wiring). When energized in this fashion, any differences in electrical potential can lead to arcing between the metallic pathways to ground that are close to each other. This arcing can result in a perforation through the wall of the CSST, which is thinner when compared to other gas piping materials. Gas leaking from this hole can be ignited, and in the presence of combustible material, it can result in a building fire.

The size of the bonding conductor is a minimum 6 AWG copper wire, which will provide a lower impedance and a more efficient pathway to earth than available through the equipment grounding conductor. The equipment grounding conductor size is based on the branch circuit size and is usually a 12 AWG or 14 AWG copper wire. The use of a 6 AWG size is a common practice (for residential applications) within the *NEC* for the bonding of many other metallic systems.

By increasing the size of the bonding conductor, the following benefits are obtained:

1. The voltage impressed on the gas pipe will be reduced.
2. The potential difference between parallel metallic pathways to ground, such as electric wire and copper water piping (which are also similarly bonded), can be minimized.

These two factors are significant contributors toward minimizing the occurrence of arcing and are expected to reduce the number of CSST fires.

In the 2015 edition, the location of the bonding connection is less design restrictive and allows the bonding connection to be located anywhere on the CSST system inside the building. The 2015 revision also recognizes that it is permitted to connect the bonding jumper to a lightning protection grounding electrode system, where one is provided. The result of the research project (discussed further in Supplement 7) indicates that a bonding jumper of approximately 160 ft (48 m) will dissipate the electrical energy sufficiently. The revised requirement limits the length of the bonding jumper to 75 ft (22 m) for an additional margin of safety.

7.13.3* Prohibited Use. Gas piping shall not be used as a grounding conductor or electrode.

A.7.13.3 This requirement does not preclude the bonding of metallic piping to a grounding system.

7.13.4* Lightning Protection Systems. Where a lightning protection system is installed, the bonding of the gas piping shall be in accordance with NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*.

A.7.13.4 NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*, Section 4.14, requires that all grounding media, including underground metallic piping systems, be interconnected to provide a common ground potential. These underground piping systems are not permitted to be substituted for grounding electrodes but must be bonded to the lightning protection grounding system. Where galvanic corrosion is of concern, the bond may be can via a spark gap or gas discharge tube.

Specific recognition of lightning protection systems was added because some code enforcers considered the bonding connection to a lightning protection system to be prohibited by the requirements of 7.13.3 or were unaware that all grounding systems in a building need to be bonded together. The intent of 7.13.3 is that underground gas piping not be intentionally used as a grounding electrode to protect any appliances or other electrical devices connected to the piping system. However, bonding of the gas piping system is permitted, but it must be attached downstream of the gas meter. Refer to NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems,* for information on the design and installation of lightning protection systems. The specific reference to NFPA 780 was added to recognize that, in buildings with lightning protection systems, all grounding systems must be bonded to the lightning protection system.

7.14 Electrical Circuits

Electrical circuits shall not utilize gas piping or components as conductors.

Exception: Low-voltage (50 V or less) control circuits, ignition circuits, and electronic flame detection device circuits shall be permitted to make use of piping or components as a part of an electric circuit.

Section 7.14 continues the prohibition on electrical circuits that could develop a significant spark as well as a severe shock hazard. This section recognizes that if a gas pipe conducts high-voltage electricity and that gas pipe is disconnected, the person disconnecting the pipe can receive a severe shock. Electrical systems operating at 50 volts or less are exempt because they do not present a shock hazard.

7.15 Electrical Connections

7.15.1 All electrical connections between wiring and electrically operated control devices in a piping system shall conform to the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

7.15.2 Any essential safety control depending on electric current as the operating medium shall be of a type that shuts off (fail safe) the flow of gas in the event of current failure.

Electrical requirements for gas piping systems are presented in Section 7.15 as they apply to piping systems and in Section 9.7 as they apply to appliances. The reference to the *NEC* is made to guide those who are not familiar with electrical requirements.

The requirement for essential safety controls covers items such as control valves installed in a gas line that are operated in an emergency. Such valves are sometimes installed in commercial and industrial buildings to stop the flow of gas when a fire alarm system activates. These valves are not prohibited, but they must stop the flow of gas in the event of failure of electric current. If such valves are installed in gas piping systems serving manually operated appliances such as ranges, provisions should be made so that the flow of gas cannot be restarted with gas valves in the open position.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publications are available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, (800) 344-3555, www.nfpa.org.

NFPA 68, *Standard on Explosion Protection by Deflagration Venting*, 2013 edition.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2014 edition.

NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*, 2014 edition.

The following publication is available from ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, www.astm.org.

ASTM F1182, *Standard Specification for Anodes, Sacrificial Zinc Alloy*, 2007 (Reaffirmed 2013).

The following publication is available from CSA America, Inc., 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, (216) 524-4990, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*, 2005 (Reaffirmed 2011).

The following publication is available from the U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20401, www.access.gpo.gov.

Title 49, *Code of Federal Regulations,* Part 192, "Transportation of Natural and Other Gas by Pipeline: Minimum Federal Safety Standards."

Inspection, Testing, and Purging

8

The final steps in the process after installation of the gas piping system are testing, inspecting, and purging prior to placing the pipe in service. Chapter 8 contains requirements for the following:

- Pressure testing and inspecting of new or modified gas piping systems. This test and inspection covers the piping system only and does not include appliances or gas connectors.
- Piping system leakage test. Included are requirements for the leak test that is conducted before turning on the gas in a new or modified piping system, when leakage is suspected, and when the gas meter is replaced. The test is also conducted when an out-of-gas condition occurs.
- Purging or removing air from gas piping systems.

8.1 Pressure Testing and Inspection

Before being put into operation, piping installations must be inspected and tested to determine that the total project complies with the code. The piping installation includes all fixed piping from the point of delivery to and including the equipment shutoff valves. Appliances and appliance connectors are not part of the fixed piping system and are not included in this test. The pressure test normally is conducted once, prior to initial operation of the piping system, and again only when the piping system is modified.

Section 8.1 is not intended to be used when a piping system is checked for leaks after initial testing. Section 8.2 covers these leak tests.

8.1.1* General.

A.8.1.1 Because it is sometimes necessary to divide a piping system into test sections and install test heads, connecting piping, and other necessary appurtenances for testing, it is not required that the tie-in sections of pipe be pressure-tested. Tie-in connections, however, should be tested with a noncorrosive leak detection fluid after gas has been introduced and the pressure has been increased sufficiently to give some indications whether leaks exist.

The test procedure used should be capable of disclosing all leaks in the section being tested and should be selected after giving due consideration to the volumetric content of the section and to its location.

Under no circumstances should a valve in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the piping system and test medium in an adjacent section, unless two valves are installed in series with a valved "telltale" located between these valves. A valve should not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the test pressure.

8.1.1.1 Prior to acceptance and initial operation, all piping installations shall be visually inspected and pressure tested to determine that the materials, design, fabrication, and installation practices comply with the requirements of this code.

Prior to covering or concealing the gas piping system, the authority having jurisdiction performs a visual inspection to check that the materials, sizing, design, and installation conform to the code. In addition to the visual inspection, the authority having jurisdiction will generally witness the pressure test to confirm that no leaks exist at the time of approval.

8.1.1.2 Inspection shall consist of visual examination, during or after manufacture, fabrication, assembly, or pressure tests.

8.1.1.3 Where repairs or additions are made following the pressure test, the affected piping shall be tested. Minor repairs and additions are not required to be pressure tested, provided that the work is inspected and connections are tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or other leak-detecting methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Any joints or fittings added or changed after the initial pressure test must be tested. The authority having jurisdiction may waive the pressure test to allow minor or small alterations to be checked with an appropriate leak-detecting fluid or electronic leak detector when the fuel gas is introduced into the system. Soap solution should not be used, as it may be corrosive.

8.1.1.4 Where new branches are installed to new appliance(s), only the newly installed branch(es) shall be required to be pressure tested. Connections between the new piping and the existing piping shall be tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting fluid or approved leak-detecting methods.

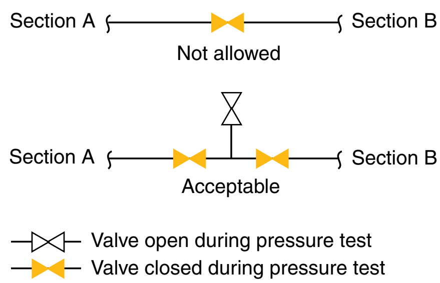
The code's intent is that all new piping should be pressure tested. However, the code also recognizes that testing minor areas or testing the minimum amount of material between two substantial areas that have been tested already is not needed, provided that the materials, sizing, design, and installation conform to the code. The joints and connections are tested with a noncorrosive leak-detecting solution or other leak-detecting methods.

8.1.1.5 A piping system shall be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a valve in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the piping system and test medium in an adjacent section, unless a double block and bleed valve system is installed. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the pressure.

FAQ Can a gas piping system be separated into sections? If yes, how should the sections be separated?

A piping system might have to be tested in sections for any of several reasons. This code section allows piping systems to be tested in sections, but the use of a valve by itself to separate the gas in one part of the system from the test medium in another part is not permitted. The first reason for this requirement is that the valve might not close completely, so testing could indicate a leak when there is none. Second, the valve could be opened inadvertently, allowing the test medium to contaminate the gas, which could lead to operational difficulties with the appliance or could result in a flammable gas–air mixture in the piping system. Overpressurization could also result. A double block and bleed valve system is an acceptable method of separating the gas from the test medium. Caution should be taken to ensure that gas leaked from the bleed, if any, does not become a hazard. See Exhibit 8.1, which shows an example of how two sections of piping could be connected. The arrangement with one valve is not permitted.

EXHIBIT 8.1



Example of Valving of a Piping System with More than One Section.

8.1.1.6 Regulator and valve assemblies fabricated independently of the piping system in which they are to be installed shall be permitted to be tested with inert gas or air at the time of fabrication.

By implication, any tested subassembly should be acceptable without field testing. While not common in residential construction, chemical plants often use prefabricated pipe assemblies due to the large amount of piping to be installed. A leak check must be performed after the gas is turned on in accordance with 8.2.3.

8.1.1.7* Prior to testing, the interior of the pipe shall be cleared of all foreign material.

All foreign materials, such as debris or weld slag, must be removed before testing. Compressed air, nitrogen, or other nonflammable gas may be used to remove foreign materials from the inside of gas piping systems. The release of pressure following the test could result in the movement of dirt and debris at high velocities, which could damage the piping system.

A.8.1.1.7 Fuel gas piping operating above 125 psi should be cleaned in accordance with NFPA 56, *Standard for Fire and Explosion Prevention During Cleaning and Purging of Flammable Gas Piping Systems*.

8.1.2 Test Medium. The test medium shall be air, nitrogen, carbon dioxide, or an inert gas.

OXYGEN SHALL NEVER BE USED.

The prohibition on the use of oxygen as a test medium is based on the fact that a mixture of fuel gas and pure oxygen, if ignited, can cause the pipe to explode. That oxygen-enriched fuel gas can ignite is not a theoretical possibility but a real danger. For example, in a building housing jewelry manufacturers, a gas pipe exploded when oxygen was allowed to enter fuel gas piping.

The term *inert gas* is intended to include gases that will not burn when mixed with air. Common inert gases include argon, nitrogen, carbon dioxide, and helium.

8.1.3 Test Preparation.

8.1.3.1 Pipe joints, including welds, shall be left exposed for examination during the test.

Exception: Covered or concealed pipe end joints that have been previously tested in accordance with this code.

8.1.3.2 Expansion joints shall be provided with temporary restraints, if required, for the additional thrust load under test.

Expansion joints may fail during testing if not properly restrained for a pressure beyond their normal operating range. Manufacturers' information can be helpful in planning a system to secure expansion joints for a pressure test.

8.1.3.3 Appliances and equipment that are not to be included in the test shall be either disconnected from the piping or isolated by blanks, blind flanges, or caps. Flanged joints at which blinds are inserted to blank off other equipment during the test shall not be required to be tested.

8.1.3.4 Where the piping system is connected to appliances or equipment designed for operating pressures of less than the test pressure, such appliances or equipment shall be isolated from the piping system by disconnecting them and capping the outlet(s).

See Annex C for more information.

The required 3 psi (20 kPa) minimum test pressure (see 8.1.4.2) can damage appliances that operate at about 1/2 psi [14 in. w.c. (3 kPa)]. In cases where the piping to the appliance has been isolated according to 8.1.3.3, the piping must be reconnected after the test. The piping between the shutoff or cap and the appliance must be checked to be sure that there are no leaks. The leak detection methods described in Annex C are widely used. Leak solution or electronic leak detectors can also be used. See Section 8.2 for additional details.

8.1.3.5 Where the piping system is connected to appliances or equipment designed for operating pressures equal to or greater than the test pressure, such appliances or equipment shall be isolated from the piping system by closing the individual appliance or equipment shutoff valve(s).

8.1.3.6 All testing of piping systems shall be performed in a manner that protects the safety of employees and the public during the test.

Safety must be a primary consideration when a gas test is conducted. Residential systems tested at 3 psi (20 kPa) require cleaning and do not normally require any additional safety precautions. In systems that are significantly larger or are operated at higher pressures, additional safety provisions may be prudent, especially if the building is occupied during the test. Such provisions may include the installation of bulkheads, anchorage, or bracing designed to resist test pressures and restrict movement of gas piping during testing.

8.1.4 Test Pressure.

To conduct a pressure test as required by 8.1.4, a manometer or pressure gauge is installed temporarily in the piping system being tested. Exhibit 8.2 shows the location of a gauge on a system to be served by natural gas. The pressure gauge has been installed where the gas meter will be located. In this exhibit, the natural gas utilities service line to the building is at the left, with the service regulator. The horizontal bar at the top is a "meter bar" and does not carry gas. The pressure gauge can be seen below the right side of the meter bar.

- The test is being conducted at 3 psi (20 kPa), because the piping system will operate at 7 in. w.c. (1.4 kPa). Paragraph 8.1.4.2 requires the test pressure to be 1.5 times the operating pressure, with a minimum of 3 psi (20 kPa).
- The gauge has a maximum reading of 5 psi (34 kPa), and each gauge mark is 0.1 psi (0.02 kPa). Paragraph 8.1.4.1 limits the maximum gauge reading to 5 times the test pressure, or 15 psi (100 kPa) in this case where the test pressure is 3 psi (20 kPa).
- When the system passes the test, the pressure gauge is removed, and a meter is installed.

8.1.4.1 Test pressure shall be measured with a manometer or with a pressure measuring device designed and calibrated to read, record, or indicate a pressure loss due to leakage during the

EXHIBIT 8.2

Pressure Gauge Installation. (Courtesy of NSTAR)

pressure test period. The source of pressure shall be isolated before the pressure tests are made. Mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures shall have a range such that the highest end of the scale is not greater than 5 times the test pressure.

FAQ How do I determine what pressure range the scale on my test gauge should have?

The mechanical gauges used to measure test pressures must include a scale not to exceed 5 times the test pressure. This limit provides accuracy approximately equal to a water manometer, the traditional pressure-measuring instrument used for low-pressure gas piping systems.

For example, when testing a 2 psi (14 kPa) system, the test pressure will be 3 psi (20 kPa) [1.5 times 2 psi (14 kPa)] and a pressure test on a 7 in. w.c. or an 11 in. w.c. (1.4 kPa or 2.7 kPa) system will also be 3 psi (20 kPa) (minimum test pressure). The gauge can have a maximum reading of 15 psi (100 kPa) [3 psi (34 kPa) times 5]. Thus, a gauge with a maximum reading of 10 psi (69 kPa) can be used, but one with a 20 psi (140 kPa) maximum cannot.

8.1.4.2 The test pressure to be used shall be no less than 1½ times the proposed maximum working pressure, but not less than 3 psi (20 kPa), irrespective of design pressure. Where the test pressure exceeds 125 psi (862 kPa), the test pressure shall not exceed a value that produces a hoop stress in the piping greater than 50 percent of the specified minimum yield strength of the pipe.

8.1.4.3* Test duration shall be not less than ½ hour for each 500 ft^3 (14 m^3) of pipe volume or fraction thereof. When testing a system having a volume less than 10 ft^3 (0.28 m^3) or a system in a single-family dwelling, the test duration shall be a minimum of 10 minutes. The duration of the test shall not be required to exceed 24 hours.

The duration of the pressure test of a piping system installed in a residential occupancy is at least 10 minutes. Few residential gas piping systems require a test of longer than 10 minutes, because most residential gas piping systems have a volume substantially less than 500 ft^3 (14 m^3), which is equivalent to approximately 45 mi (72 km) of nominal ½ in. Schedule 40 steel pipe or about 4 mi (6 km) of nominal 2 in. Schedule 40 steel pipe. The 10-minute test limit for residential gas piping systems clarifies the test duration requirement for those who test piping systems and for enforcement officials. While a longer test time may be required on large or higher-pressure systems, it was never intended for the smaller, residential gas piping systems.

A.8.1.4.3 During pressure tests conducted over long periods of time, such as overnight, the effects of temperature on pressure should be considered. Temperature drops can cause a drop in pressure great enough to be indicated by the test gauge. These temperature drops can cause test evaluators to think that a leak exists in the piping system when in fact the pressure drop was caused by a decrease in the ambient temperature. See Example 5 in B.7.5.

8.1.5 Detection of Leaks and Defects.

8.1.5.1 The piping system shall withstand the test pressure specified without showing any evidence of leakage or other defects. Any reduction of test pressures as indicated by pressure gauges shall be deemed to indicate the presence of a leak unless such reduction can be readily attributed to some other cause.

Other possible causes of a drop in the pressure after a test include sharp drops in temperature. The likelihood of this phenomenon causing a pressure change is small, except on very large systems or systems with long test times. A pressure drop almost always means a leak. When trying to locate leaks, it must be remembered that the test apparatus itself can be the culprit.

FAQ Will a pressure test cause a piping system to fail if there is a rise in the test pressure?

A temperature rise can result in an increase in the pressure. If a pressure test is started and the reading is delayed, a change in pressure may be observed if the temperature changes significantly. Normally, an inspector would view an increase in pressure as an indication that the system is gastight. Care should be taken that the pressure does not "peg" the upper limit of the gauge. The excess pressure could damage the gauge, and an inspector may view the test as faulty because the pressure is out of the measurable range of the gauge during the required test duration. Refer to B.7.5 for a sample calculation of the pressure change due to a change in temperature. It shows that a piping system tested at 20 psi (140 kPa) and 70°F (21°C) will drop to 18 psi (124 kPa) at 40°F (4°C).

8.1.5.2 The leakage shall be located by means of an approved gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid, or other approved leak detection methods.

8.1.5.3 Where leakage or other defects are located, the affected portion of the piping system shall be repaired or replaced and retested.

8.2 Piping System Leak Check

The pressure test and leak check are often confused. A pressure test is required for new piping installations and additions to piping installations, while a leak check is required whenever the gas system is initially placed into service or when the gas is turned back on after being turned off.

The test for leakage differs from the pressure test in Section 8.1 in that it requires no special preparations. The medium used for a leak check is fuel gas at its normal supply pressure. The gas is applied to the total system (i.e., piping, equipment, and equipment connections and valves). A manometer or pressure gauge that measures inches of water column (in. w.c.) can be used for the test. Exhibit 8.3 illustrates a manometer at atmospheric pressure and a manometer at 7 in. w.c.

While the leak check can be done with appliances connected, appliances can be isolated and the test redone if the leak check fails. Some appliances are allowed to have very small "leaks" by the standards to which they are manufactured and tested. Such small leaks will not accumulate flammable amounts of fuel gas.

Section 8.2 describes a method for checking for leakage throughout the system of piping and appliances. It is equally applicable to new and existing gas systems. Normally, the test for leakage is conducted when one of the following occurs:

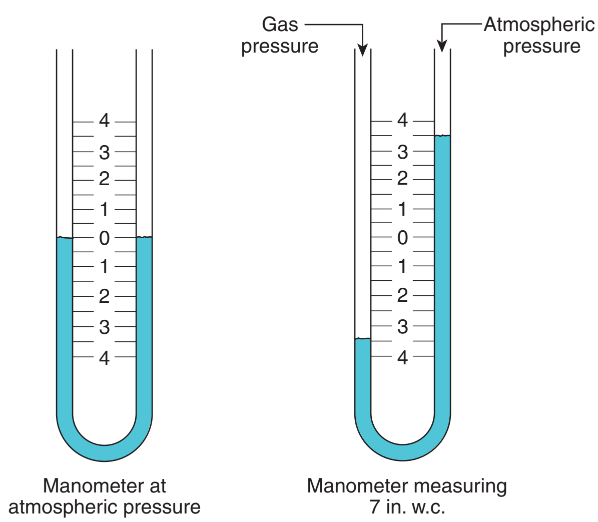
- A system of new or modified gas piping is placed into service for the first time.
- A gas leakage is suspected.
- A gas meter is replaced.
- An appliance or appliance connector is replaced.
- An out-of-gas condition occurs.

See Annex C, Suggested Method of Checking for Leakage, for a recommended leak check procedure. The procedure in Annex C is only one possible method. Other test methods can be used. It is recommended that a written procedure for the method be developed and that steps are taken to ensure that all employees follow the method so that companies test every system identically.

Note that the methodology of Annex C does not include the use of leak detection solution or electronic leak detectors. The reason for this exclusion is that leaks in an existing or newly installed gas system may not be detectable using either leak detection solution or electronic leak detectors. One example of where this could occur would be in the case of buried or hidden piping.

See Annex C for more information.

EXHIBIT 8.3



Manometers.

8.2.1 Test Gases. Leak checks using fuel gas shall be permitted in piping systems that have been pressure tested in accordance with Section 8.1.

Fuel gas may be used to test for leaks in piping systems after the system has been pressure tested in accordance with Section 8.1.

8.2.2 Turning Gas On. During the process of turning gas on into a system of new gas piping, the entire system shall be inspected to determine that there are no open fittings or ends and that all valves at unused outlets are closed and plugged or capped.

Prior to turning on the gas to new systems, a visual inspection of all pipe ends shall be performed. Open fittings or ends can occur both in new construction and in existing systems. In new systems, it is possible that the pipe installer did not have the proper size plug or cap available and might leave a system outlet open, assuming the appliance will be installed before the system is first pressurized. In existing systems, occupants may remove appliances after the gas has been shut off, and the valve may also be removed. There have been incidents in which a gas range, a dryer, or other appliance has been removed, along with the gas connector and the shutoff valve, after the gas service has been discontinued. If the new occupant is not aware that a gas appliance previously existed at the location, which is more probable if remodeling has been done, an uncapped end would remain open after gas is turned on for the new occupant.

8.2.3* Leak Check. Immediately after the gas is turned on into a new system or into a system that has been initially restored after an interruption of service, the piping system shall be checked for leakage. Where leakage is indicated, the gas supply shall be shut off until the necessary repairs have been made.

Both new and existing systems are required to have a successful leak check immediately following introduction of fuel gas as part of new service or an interruption of service. The leak check is not intended to determine that the system is free of all leaks, but rather to detect leaks that will not be dissipated before reaching a flammable level by normal air exchange in a building.

If leakage is indicated by the test, repairs must be made. The leak check is not a test that is intended to find extremely small leaks. Thus, the leak check should not detect the very small amount of gas leakage, such as the amount allowed by the standard for gas valves incorporated in gas appliances, which is in the range of a few bubbles per hour and is not a safety issue.

A.8.2.3 See Annex C for a suggested method.

8.2.4 Placing Appliances and Equipment in Operation. Appliances and equipment shall not be placed in operation until after the piping system has been checked for leakage in accordance with 8.2.3, the piping system is purged in accordance with 8.3, and connections to the appliance are checked for leakage.

Although gas piping systems are purged before being placed into operation, caution should always be used when lighting equipment. A chance exists that there is some remaining air in the system and delayed ignition may result. Reasonable precautions include wearing safety glasses and keeping face, hands, and arms away from combustion chambers.

8.3* Purging Requirements

The purging of piping shall be in accordance with 8.3.1 through 8.3.3.

A.8.3 The process of purging gas piping that contains fuel gas or charging gas piping that contains air must be performed in a manner that will minimize the potential for a flammable mixture to be developed within the piping.

Natural gas and propane suppliers add a distinctive odor to their gas. Persons conducting purging operations should not rely upon their sense of smell. When a gas piping system is brought into service and unodorized gas is detected, the company supplying the gas should be contacted to inform it of the situation and to determine what action should be taken. (More information on odorization of fuel gas is available in the *National Fuel Gas Code Handbook*, “Fuel Gas Odorization” supplement.)

Purged gas must be vented outdoors when the piping meets the size and length criteria of Table 8.3.1. Generally, a piping system is filled with inert gas before filling with fuel gas or air, depending on whether the piping system is being put into or taken out of service. If the pipe volume is small, inert gas does not need to be used, which simplifies the process. The inert gas step can be eliminated for small systems because of the small volume of potentially flammable mix that could be produced.

Placing the system back in service presents the same possibility of a flammable mix being formed within the pipe system. First, larger systems must be filled with inert gas, then with fuel gas. Regardless of the method, the purge outlet must be attended and monitored with a combustible gas indicator during the procedure (see Exhibit 8.4). The discharge of fuel gas in large systems must be done outdoors.

While the discharge of purged gases in small systems is allowed indoors with appropriate precautions, outdoor discharge eliminates any associated hazard and is the preferred method when practical. Smaller systems can be purged directly with fuel gas, which simplifies the procedure.

EXHIBIT 8.4

Combustible Gas Indicator. (Courtesy of SENSIT Technologies — www.gasleaksensors.com)

8.3.1* Piping Systems Required to Be Purged Outdoors. The purging of piping systems shall be in accordance with 8.3.1.1 through 8.3.1.4 where the piping system meets either of the following:

(1) The design operating gas pressure is greater than 2 psig (14 kPag).
(2) The piping being purged contains one or more sections of pipe or tubing meeting the size and length criteria of Table 8.3.1.

TABLE 8.3.1 *Size and Length of Piping**

Nominal Piping Size (in.)	*Length of Piping (ft)*
≥2½ <3	> 50
≥3 <4	> 30
≥4 <6	> 15
≥6 <8	> 10
≥8	Any length

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm; 1 ft = 0.305 m.
*CSST EHD size of 62 is equivalent to 2 in. nominal size pipe or tubing.

A.8.3.1 Subsection 8.3.1 describes the characteristics of gas piping systems that are required to be purged only to the outdoors. The criteria were selected to distinguish between piping systems located in industrial, large commercial, and large multifamily buildings from those located in light commercial and smaller residential buildings. The gas piping systems installed in industrial, large commercial and large multifamily buildings are considered to be larger, more complex systems for the purposes of defining their purging requirements. Because of their larger pipe volumes or potential for higher flow rates, these systems require procedures to ensure that a large volume of fuel gas is not released to the indoors and that flammable mixtures do not occur within the piping itself. Installers of these complex systems deal with considerably more variables that can result in a higher potential for discharge of large gas volumes during purging operations.

Specific occupancy categories such as industrial, manufacturing, commercial and large multifamily were not included in the fuel gas code. United States building codes define these occupancies for the purpose of construction and safety requirements. There is no general relation between the occupancy types, as defined by the building codes, and the size of gas piping system to be installed in that occupancy. The gas piping size and operating pressure are based on the nature of the piping system and gas appliances to be installed and are not dependent upon a building's occupancy type or classification.

8.3.1.1 Removal from Service. Where existing gas piping is opened, the section that is opened shall be isolated from the gas supply and the line pressure vented in accordance with 8.3.1.3. Where gas piping meeting the criteria of Table 8.3.1 is removed from service, the residual fuel gas in the piping shall be displaced with an inert gas.

8.3.1.2* Placing in Operation. Where gas piping containing air and meeting the criteria of Table 8.3.1 is placed in operation, the air in the piping shall first be displaced with an inert gas. The inert gas shall then be displaced with fuel gas in accordance with 8.3.1.3.

A.8.3.1.2 It is recommended that the oxygen levels in the piping be monitored during the purging process to determine when sufficient inert gas has been introduced. The manufacturer's instructions for monitoring instruments must be followed when performing purge operations.

8.3.1.3 Outdoor Discharge of Purged Gases. The open end of a piping system being pressure vented or purged shall discharge directly to an outdoor location. Purging operations shall comply with all of the following requirements:

(1) The point of discharge shall be controlled with a shutoff valve.
(2) The point of discharge shall be located at least 10 ft (3.0 m) from sources of ignition, at least 10 ft (3.0 m) from building openings and at least 25 ft (7.6 m) from mechanical air intake openings.
(3) During discharge, the open point of discharge shall be continuously attended and monitored with a combustible gas indicator that complies with 8.3.1.4.

A combustible gas indicator is required for purging outdoors, as opposed to the use of a combustible gas detector required for systems permitted to be purged indoors. The term *listed* is defined in Chapter 3 and basically requires a testing and quality control program by a recognized third party.

(4) Purging operations introducing fuel gas shall be stopped when 90 percent fuel gas by volume is detected within the pipe.
(5) Persons not involved in the purging operations shall be evacuated from all areas within 10 ft (3.0 m) of the point of discharge.

8.3.1.4* Combustible Gas Indicator. Combustible gas indicators shall be listed and calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas indicators shall numerically display a volume scale from 0 percent to 100 percent in 1 percent or smaller increments.

A.8.3.1.4 Combustible gas indicators are available with different scales. For purging, it is necessary to use the percent gas in air scale and to follow the manufacturer's operating instructions. The percent lower explosible limit (% LEL) scale should not be used because it is not relevant to purging.

Users should verify that the indicator will detect fuel gas in the absence of oxygen. Many combustible gas indicators will not indicate fuel gas concentration accurately if no oxygen is present.

When selecting a combustible gas indicator for purging, the instrument must be capable of performing in an inert environment. It may be necessary to use some instruments in conjunction with oxygen monitoring to determine if an inert environment exists. Some technologies will not accurately measure combustible gases without the presence of oxygen. Commentary Table 8.1 provides guidance for product selection. Consult the instrument manufacturer with any questions.

COMMENTARY TABLE 8.1 *Sensing Technology Applications*

	APPLICATION		
	Small Piping		***Large System***
Sensing Technology	***PPM***	***LEL***	***%VOL***
Semiconductor	Y	Y	N
Hot wire	N	Y	N
Pellistor	Y	Y	N
Electrochemical	Y	N	N
MEMS	Y	Y	N
Infrared	N	Y	Y
Thermal conductive	N	Y	Y

8.3.2* Piping Systems Allowed to Be Purged Indoors or Outdoors. The purging of piping systems shall be in accordance with the provisions of 8.3.2.1 where the piping system meets both of the following:

(1) The design operating pressure is 2 psig (14 kPag) or less.
(2) The piping being purged is constructed entirely from pipe or tubing not meeting the size and length criteria of Table 8.3.1.

A.8.3.2 The criteria were selected to describe typical gas piping systems located in light commercial and the smaller residential family buildings. Gas piping systems installed in these buildings are considered to be smaller and less complex systems for the purposes of defining their purging requirements. Installers have familiarity with purging these systems and the potential for discharge of large gas volumes during purging operations is low. Also see A.8.3.1.

8.3.2.1* Purging Procedure. The piping system shall be purged in accordance with one or more of the following:

(1) The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the outdoors.
(2) The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through an appliance burner not located in a combustion chamber. Such burner shall be provided with a continuous source of ignition.
(3) The piping shall be purged with fuel gas and shall discharge to the indoors or outdoors through a burner that has a continuous source of ignition and that is designed for such purpose.
(4) The piping shall be purged with fuel gas that is discharged to the indoors or outdoors, and the point of discharge shall be monitored with a listed combustible gas detector in accordance with 8.3.2.2. Purging shall be stopped when fuel gas is detected.

A combustible gas detector is required for purging systems that are permitted to be purged indoors. The combustible gas detector simply indicates the presence of fuel gas, as opposed to the combustible gas indicator required for outdoor purging, which indicates fuel gas levels as a percentage by volume in air or inert gas. A combustible gas indicator could also be used for systems being purged indoors, but the combustible gas detector is adequate for small-volume systems. The term *listed* is defined in Chapter 3 and basically requires a testing and quality control program by a recognized third party.

(5) The piping shall be purged by the gas supplier in accordance with written procedures.

A.8.3.2.1 Where small piping systems contain air and are purged to either the indoors or outdoors with fuel gas, a rapid and uninterrupted flow of fuel gas must be introduced into one end of the piping system and vented out of the other end so as to prevent the development of a combustible fuel–air mixture. Purging these systems can be done either using a source of ignition to ignite the fuel gas or by using a listed combustible gas detector that can detect the presence of fuel gas.

8.3.2.2 Combustible Gas Detector. Combustible gas detectors shall be listed and calibrated or tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Combustible gas detectors shall be capable of indicating the presence of fuel gas.

Many combustible gas detectors are capable of detecting gas concentrations well below the LEL of the gas sensed. Use caution if the piping system was purged with inert gases prior to being filled with gas, because this may render some technologies inoperative.

8.3.3 Purging Appliances and Equipment. After the piping system has been placed in operation, appliances and equipment shall be purged before being placed into operation.

Appliance, Equipment, and Accessory Installation

9

Chapter 9 of the code, along with Chapter 10, covers requirements for appliance installation and applies to all gas appliances. Chapter 10, Installation of Specific Appliances, provides additional requirements for specific types of appliances that are used primarily in residential and commercial installations. Chapter 9 includes references to Chapter 12, Venting of Appliances, that remind the installer that appliances must be properly vented.

Section 9.1 provides general requirements covering many appliances and installations, including the following:

- Approval of appliances and accessories
- Adding or converting of appliances to existing systems
- Type of gas being used
- Safety shutoff devices for LP-Gas appliances used indoors
- Use of air or oxygen under pressure
- Protection of appliances from fumes or gases other than products of combustion
- Process air requirements
- Building structural members
- Flammable vapors
- Installation in residential garages, commercial garages, and aircraft hangars
- Physical protection of appliances
- Venting of flue gases
- Extra devices or attachments
- Adequacy of pipe sizing and prevention of strain on piping
- Installation and venting of appliance pressure regulators and bleed lines for diaphragm valves
- Combination of appliances and equipment
- Installation instructions
- Protection of outdoor appliances

Section 9.2, Accessibility and Clearance, provides requirements for installers to allow for access to appliances for maintenance and for clearance to combustible construction.

Section 9.3, Air for Combustion and Ventilation, provides requirements for determining and providing sufficient air for gas to burn properly, dilution of products of combustion, and ventilation of appliance rooms and spaces.

Section 9.4, Appliances on Roofs, provides requirements for roof installations, and Section 9.5, Appliances in Attics, provides requirements for appliances in attics.

Section 9.6, Appliance and Equipment Connections to Building Piping, provides requirements for connection of appliances to the piping system.

Section 9.7, Electrical, includes requirements for electrical connections, ignition and control devices, control circuits, and continuous power for electrically controlled appliances.

Section 9.8, Room Temperature Thermostats, provides requirements for the location of thermostats for thermostatically controlled space conditioning appliances.

9.1 General

9.1.1* Appliances, Equipment, and Accessories to Be Approved. Appliances, equipment, and accessories shall be approved.

A.9.1.1 The American Gas Association, American National Standards Institute, Inc., and the National Fire Protection Association do not approve, inspect, or certify any installations, procedures, appliances, equipment, or materials; nor do they approve or evaluate testing laboratories. In determining acceptability of installations, procedures, appliances, equipment, or materials, the authority having jurisdiction can base acceptance on compliance with AGA, ANSI, CSA, or NFPA, or other appropriate standards. In the absence of such standards, said authority can require evidence of proper installation, procedure, or use. The authority having jurisdiction can also refer to the listings or labeling practices of an organization concerned with product evaluations and is thus in a position to determine compliance with appropriate standards for the current production of listed items.

9.1.1.1 *Approved* shall mean "acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction."

The authority having jurisdiction (AHJ), which may be the local building or fire official, insurer, property owner, or commanding officer (in the military), approves the materials, equipment, appliances, and method of construction as the result of investigations and tests or by reason of accepted principles or tests by national authorities, technical organizations, and scientific organizations.

FAQ How can the authority having jurisdiction determine whether a specific appliance or piece of equipment is approved?

The authority having jurisdiction often has lists of acceptable organizations that provide listing services. These services provide details on the terms of the listing and labeling, identifying the equipment and appliances that meet the standards appropriate to its use. A label carrying the identifying mark of the listing agency affixed to the appliance, or inclusion of the identifying mark in the installation manual, provides the AHJ with a fast way of approving equipment and appliances. See Exhibit 10.4 for an example of an appliance label with an agency logo. See also the definitions of the terms *labeled* (3.2.4) and *listed* (3.2.5).

Subsection 9.1.1 provides criteria for approving unlisted equipment and appliances and provides three criteria for acceptance.

9.1.1.2 Listed appliances, equipment, and accessories shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 9 and the manufacturers' installation instructions.

9.1.1.3 Acceptance of unlisted appliances, equipment, and accessories shall be on the basis of a sound engineering evaluation.

9.1.1.4 The unlisted appliance, equipment, or accessory shall be safe and suitable for the proposed service and shall be recommended for the service by the manufacturer.

9.1.2 Added or Converted Appliances. When additional or replacement appliances or equipment is installed or an appliance is converted to gas from another fuel, the location in which the appliances or equipment is to be operated shall be checked to verify the following:

(1) Air for combustion and ventilation is provided where required, in accordance with the provisions of Section 9.3. Where existing facilities are not adequate, they shall be upgraded to meet Section 9.3 specifications.
(2) The installation components and appliances meet the clearances to combustible material provisions of 9.2.2. It shall be determined that the installation and operation of the additional or replacement appliances do not render the remaining appliances unsafe for continued operation.
(3) The venting system is constructed and sized in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 12. Where the existing venting system is not adequate, it shall be upgraded to comply with Chapter 12.

Installation procedures must be thoroughly reviewed when an appliance is installed, replaced, or converted to gas from another fuel. The references specify the need to verify that air for combustion and ventilation is adequate, that the clearance to combustible material is sufficient, and that the venting system meets the most recent requirements. If any of the requirements are not met, the portion not meeting code requirements must be upgraded to present code standards.

Paragraph 9.1.2(3) emphasizes that venting is not "grandfathered" when the appliance is replaced or converted. In many instances, the location has undergone renovation since the original installation. In the case of new appliances, the design and operation of the new appliance may be different from the existing appliance. New, more energy-efficient appliances have installation requirements that can vary substantially from those for the replaced appliance.

The requirement of 9.1.2(3) is especially important because the venting requirements have changed significantly since the 1988 edition of the code. These changes resulted from the introduction of higher-efficiency appliances. In most cases, the venting of appliances that replace appliances installed under the 1988 or previous editions of the code must meet the new vent sizing tables because many of the newer appliances are more efficient and produce lower vent gas temperatures. In some cases, this may require the lining of chimneys or replacing chimneys with other venting systems.

9.1.3 Type of Gas(es). The appliance shall be connected to the fuel gas for which it was designed. No attempt shall be made to convert the appliance from the gas specified on the rating plate for use with a different gas without consulting the installation instructions, the serving gas supplier, or the appliance manufacturer for complete instructions.

FAQ The existing furnace uses propane; natural gas is now available. Can the appliance be converted to natural gas?

Subsection 9.1.3 highlights an important safety concern: that the proper gas is supplied to appliances. Appliance rating plates specify the gas for which a particular appliance is specifically designed. Some appliances are not designed to be converted, whereas others include parts and installation instructions for conversion from one gas to another that specify a specific conversion kit part number. If there are no such instructions, the manufacturer or serving gas supplier should be contacted to determine whether the unit can be converted safely and how to make the conversion. If the burners are satisfactory for use with both gases, it should only be necessary to change the gas orifice(s) and regulator. In appliances that have a pilot burner, the pilot burner orifice must also be changed. [Natural gas appliances usually operate at 3.5 in. w.c. to 5 in. w.c. (0.9 kPa to 1.2 kPa) manifold pressure. Most LP-Gas appliances operate at 10 in. w.c. to 11 in. w.c. (2.5 kPa to 2.7 kPa) manifold pressure.] Refer to Annex E, Flow of Gas Through Fixed Orifices, for additional information on orifice sizing.

See Annex E for more information.

9.1.4 Safety Shutoff Devices for Unlisted LP-Gas Appliances Used Indoors. Unlisted appliances for use with undiluted LP-Gases and installed indoors, except attended laboratory equipment, shall be equipped with safety shutoff devices of the complete shutoff type.

All appliances must have controls to protect against flame failure. Unlisted LP-Gas appliances with pilot burners must have a complete (100 percent) shutoff-type safety device. A safety shutoff device of the complete shutoff type is one that will stop the flow of gas to both the main burner(s) and the pilot burner in the event of pilot failure.

9.1.5 Use of Air or Oxygen Under Pressure. Where air or oxygen under pressure is used in connection with the gas supply, effective means such as a back pressure regulator and relief valve shall be provided to prevent air or oxygen from passing back into the gas piping. Where oxygen is used, installation shall be in accordance with NFPA 51, *Standard for the Design and Installation of Oxygen–Fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting, and Allied Processes*.

In many applications, air or oxygen is used at a greater pressure than the fuel gas. If the air or oxygen enters the gas supply, the air or oxygen could travel all the way back to the gas supply source. A backup of air or oxygen into a gas pipe can result in a flammable mixture in the pipe. This mixture can be extremely dangerous and must be avoided to prevent an explosion within the gas pipe.

Installations where the use of air or oxygen combined with natural gas or propane is likely to be found include jewelry stores that do repairs, muffler shops, and other metalworking facilities.

9.1.6* Protection of Appliances from Fumes or Gases Other than Products of Combustion.

A.9.1.6 Halogenated hydrocarbons are particularly injurious and corrosive after contact with flames or hot surfaces.

9.1.6.1 Where corrosive or flammable process fumes or gases, such as carbon monoxide, hydrogen sulfide, ammonia, chlorine, and halogenated hydrocarbons, as are present, means for their safe disposal shall be provided.

9.1.6.2 Non-direct-vent appliances installed in beauty shops, barber shops, or other facilities where chemicals that generate corrosive or flammable products such as aerosol sprays are routinely used shall be located in a mechanical room separate or partitioned off from other areas with provisions for combustion and dilution air from outdoors. Direct vent appliances in such facilities shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

Corrosive or flammable process fumes or gases can be disposed of safely only by a separate exhaust system and an adequate supply of fresh make-up air. Providing a system of isolation for the gas-fired appliance may be necessary to ensure that uncontaminated air is available for its combustion process.

FAQ Why might a gas water heater and gas dryer installed in a beauty salon need special consideration?

Chlorine and fluorine compounds are present in many products (e.g., water softener salt, laundry bleaches, swimming pool chemicals, detergents, adhesives, paints, varnishes, paint strippers, waxes, plastics, and many refrigerants). When burned, these compounds form acids that corrode the heat exchanger and vent system. The only way to avoid the subsequent problem of excessive corrosion of the heat exchanger surface and vent system is to isolate the heating or water-heating appliance so that it uses only outside air for combustion, ventilation, and draft hood dilution.

Direct-vent appliances are not required to meet these requirements because these appliances are designed to obtain their air for combustion from the outside atmosphere and discharge flue gases outside as well. Even with direct-vent systems, it is important that the combustion air source is not located in an area where these chemicals are used (e.g., swimming pools).

9.1.7 Process Air. In addition to air needed for combustion in commercial or industrial processes, process air shall be provided as required for cooling of appliances, equipment, or material; for controlling dew point, heating, drying, oxidation, dilution, safety exhaust, odor control, and air for compressors; and for comfort and proper working conditions for personnel.

9.1.8 Appliance Support.

9.1.8.1 Appliances and equipment shall be furnished either with load distributing bases or with a sufficient number of supports to prevent damage to either the building structure or the appliance and the equipment.

9.1.8.2 At the locations selected for installation of appliances and equipment, the dynamic and static load carrying capacities of the building structure shall be checked to determine whether they are adequate to carry the additional loads. The appliances and equipment shall be supported and shall be connected to the piping so as not to exert undue stress on the connections.

Local building codes should be reviewed for the installation requirements of certain appliances, especially in multifamily residential occupancies. Some codes specify appliance location, provide fire protection requirements for mechanical rooms, and may include specific requirements for rooftop installations.

When adding a large appliance to an existing building, such as a new rooftop heating and cooling unit, the installer should check building plans and obtain verification that the building can support both the weight and forces developed during operation or that structural support has been added.

9.1.9 Flammable Vapors. Appliances shall not be installed in areas where the open use, handling, or dispensing of flammable liquids occurs, unless the design, operation, or installation reduces the potential of ignition of the flammable vapors. Appliances installed in compliance with 9.1.10 through 9.1.12 shall be considered to comply with the intent of this provision.

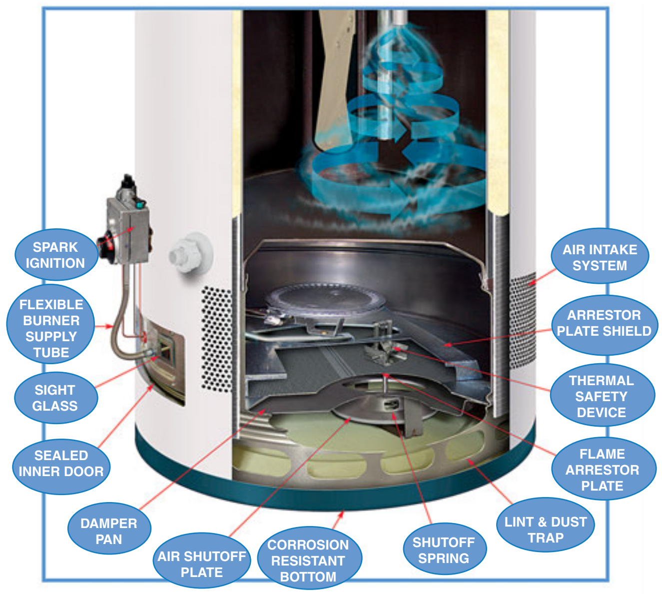
Areas of buildings in which flammable liquids are openly used, handled, or dispensed include any area where non-water-based paints and varnish are used. Appliance options include the use of direct-vent appliances or an indirect steam or hot water coil in a make-up air unit with a remote boiler to ensure that the boiler is not in the proximity of the flammable vapors that are generated by the painting process. Installers must verify that the room in which an appliance is being installed is not an area where flammable vapors will be present routinely. Although the future uses (or misuses) of a room cannot be predicted, it must be verified that gasoline, paint thinners, and flammable household solvents are not being stored and used in the room. A small spill of gasoline or other flammable liquid will create an invisible vapor cloud near the floor, because the vapors generated usually are heavier than air. This cloud can be drawn into an appliance through its combustion air intake, ignite, and flash back to the liquid pool.

Liquids that readily generate flammable vapors include gasoline, mineral spirits, acetone, denatured alcohol, oil-based paint and lacquer thinners, and camp stove fuel. For information on safe, recommended storage enclosures for these materials, see NFPA 30, *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*.

Residential gas water heaters designed as flammable vapor ignition–resistant (FVIR) are available in all types and sizes in the United States. These water heaters, listed to ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1, *Gas Water Heaters — Volume I — Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu* *per Hour or Less*, are required to meet a flammable vapor ignition test as part of their listing. Although appliances are exempted when "the design, operation, or installation reduces the potential of ignition of the flammable vapors," FVIR water heaters should not be installed in the areas of concern. The FVIR requirements in ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1 are meant to provide protection from *accidental* spills in residential locations. The FVIR water heater design renders the water heater unusable after activation and may require replacement of the controller or replacement of the entire water heater. Commercial locations where routine handling of flammable liquids occurs due to business activities are an entirely different hazard class not addressed by ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1.

The design used to enable the water heaters to pass the FVIR test is based on the principle first used in the mine safety lamp. In a mine safety lamp, a fine mesh screen encloses an oil lamp flame. If flammable gas enters the screened area, the gas ignites, but the flame does not propagate. See Exhibit 9.1 for an example of the construction of an FVIR water heater.

EXHIBIT 9.1



Cutaway of an FVIR Water Heater. (Courtesy of Rheem Manufacturing Company)

9.1.10 Installation in Residential Garages.

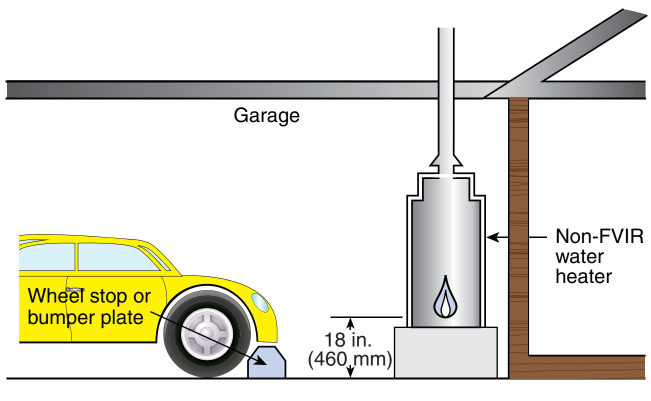
9.1.10.1 Appliances in residential garages and in adjacent spaces that open to the garage and are not part of the living space of a dwelling unit shall be installed so that all burners and burner ignition devices are located not less than 18 in. (460 mm) above the floor unless listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant.

Household solvents, oil-based paint and thinners, and gasoline for use as fuel for automobiles, lawn mowers, and so forth, are often stored in residential garages. Spills can occur when these products are dispensed from their storage containers or during automobile maintenance. These flammable liquids vaporize readily, and their vapors remain near the floor. Available evidence indicates that elevating burners and ignition devices 18 in. (460 mm) or more above the floor locates them high enough so the vapors will not be ignited. Exhibit 9.2 illustrates the safe installation of a nonflammable vapor ignition–resistant appliance in a residential garage.

FAQ It is permissible to install a water heater that is listed as an FVIR heater on a garage floor?

Much concern has been voiced regarding the ignition of flammable vapors by gas appliances — specifically, residential water heaters that are installed on a floor. Floor installation is allowed for FVIR water heaters based on their conformance with the requirements in ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1, which is cited in the commentary following 9.1.9. All new, listed storage-type water heaters of 75,000 Btu/hr (22 kW) or less produced for the U.S. market, with the exception of those for recreational vehicles, are resistant to the ignition of flammable vapors. The manufacture of instantaneous-type water heaters is covered under a different standard. Corresponding changes have not been made to require resistance to the ignition of flammable vapors in these instantaneous-type heaters, because they have not been associated with the ignition of flammable vapors.

EXHIBIT 9.2



Water Heater Installation in a Residential Garage. (Courtesy of American Gas Association)

9.1.10.2 Such appliances shall be located or protected so they are not subject to physical damage by a moving vehicle.

Appliances in the path of an automobile or other vehicle must be protected from accidental contact. Wheel stops, such as those shown in Exhibit 9.2, bollards, or walls must be used to prevent accidental displacement of fuel-fired appliances.

9.1.10.3 Where appliances are installed in a separate, enclosed space having access only from outside of the garage, such appliances shall be permitted to be installed at floor level, providing the required combustion air is taken from the exterior of the garage.

The absence of a door between an appliance room or enclosure and the garage prevents any flammable vapors that may be present in the garage from interacting with the combustion air for the appliance. If the room has an opening into the garage, appliances cannot be installed on the garage floor.

9.1.11 Installation in Commercial Garages.

9.1.11.1 Parking Structures. Appliances installed in enclosed, basement, and underground parking structures shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 88A, *Standard for Parking Structures*.

NFPA 88A, *Standard for Parking Structures*, requires that all gas-fueled heating appliances in enclosed parking garages be in accordance with NFPA 54. A gas-fired appliance must be located such that the flame associated with the appliance is at least 18 in. (500 mm) above the floor or at least 18 in. (500 mm) below the floor–ceiling assembly. (See Section 6.2 of NFPA 88A.)

NFPA 88A does not require the installation of heaters at least 8 ft (2.4 m) above the floor to provide clearance for passenger vehicles in parking garages. NFPA 30A, *Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages*, requires the 8 ft (2.4 m) installation height for repair garages. The appliance manufacturer's instructions should be consulted for the specific requirements for the installation of overhead radiant heaters to avoid overheating vehicles that could be parked underneath them.

Code Update

9.1.11.2 Repair Garages. Appliances installed in repair garages shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 30A, *Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages*.

Paragraph 9.1.11.2 has been revised in the 2015 edition to refer only to compliance with NFPA 30A for installation of gas appliances in repair garages. NFPA 30A permits the installation of fuel gas appliances and provides code requirements that depend upon whether the repair garage is intended for major or minor repairs as well as the type of vehicle fuel systems (e.g., CNG, LNG, hydrogen) that may be present.

9.1.12 Installation in Aircraft Hangars. Heaters in aircraft hangars shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 409, *Standard on Aircraft Hangars*.

9.1.13 Appliance Physical Protection. Where locating appliances close to a passageway traveled by vehicles or machinery is necessary, guardrails or bumper plates shall be installed to protect the equipment from damage.

See Exhibit 9.2 for an illustration of a bumper plate.

9.1.14 Venting of Flue Gases. Appliances shall be vented in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 12.

9.1.15 Extra Device or Attachment. No device or attachment shall be installed on any appliance that could in any way impair the combustion of gas.

A combustion process must not be interfered with by the addition of unapproved accessories. The appliance manufacturer's instructions provide the information needed to determine whether there are any accessories approved for use on a particular appliance.

9.1.16 Adequate Capacity of Piping. When additional appliances are being connected to a gas piping system, the existing piping shall be checked to determine whether it has adequate capacity. Where the capacity is inadequate, the existing system shall be enlarged as necessary, or separate gas piping of adequate capacity shall be run from the point of delivery to the appliance.

9.1.17 Avoiding Strain on Gas Piping. Appliances shall be supported and connected to the piping so as not to exert undue strain on the connections.

The weight of an appliance should not be supported by the gas piping.

9.1.18 Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. Where the gas supply pressure is higher than that at which the appliance is designed to operate or varies beyond the design pressure limits of the appliance, a gas appliance pressure regulator shall be installed.

Most gas appliances are designed for a nominal inlet pressure of 7 in. w.c. (1.7 kPa) or 11 in. w.c. (2.7 kPa), the normal building pressure for natural gas and propane, respectively. Appliance rating plates typically specify maximum supply pressure only slightly higher than these values. Where a building piping system operates at a pressure higher than the specified maximum, a pressure regulator called an *appliance pressure regulator* is needed. Many residential, commercial, and industrial gas piping systems deliver gas at a pressure of 2 psi (13.8 kPa) or higher to the proximity of the appliance, requiring the appliance installer to connect a "pounds to inches" or line pressure regulator ahead of the gas appliance.

9.1.19 Venting of Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators. Venting of gas appliance pressure regulators shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Appliance pressure regulators requiring access to the atmosphere for successful operation shall be equipped with vent piping leading outdoors or, if the regulator vent is an integral part of the appliance, into the combustion chamber adjacent to a continuous pilot, unless constructed or equipped with a vent limiting means to limit the escape of gas from the vent opening in the event of diaphragm failure.

Pressure regulators incorporate a diaphragm that moves up and down and compresses a spring as pressure increases. As the diaphragm moves, it adjusts the position of the valve that controls the flow of gas into the regulator. The space above the diaphragm must be sufficient to allow it to move up and down freely, and the space above the diaphragm is vented to the atmosphere to allow such free movement. Normally, only air is vented from the space above the regulator, but if the diaphragm fails, natural gas or propane will be discharged.

Any gas that is relieved by a gas appliance pressure regulator must be vented safely to the outdoors to prevent the accumulation of a potentially dangerous concentration of gas indoors. At a minimum, the size of the vent line should not be smaller than the vent connection on the regulator.

Regulator vent lines must be made using piping materials permitted by Section 5.6. Specific plastic materials can be used outdoors only in accordance with the restriction in 5.6.4.2:

> **5.6.4.2* Regulator Vent Piping.** Plastic pipe and fittings used to connect regulator vents to remote vent terminations shall be PVC conforming to ANSI/UL 651, *Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings*. PVC vent piping shall not be installed indoors.

Therefore, a specific PVC conduit may be used but only outdoors.

Some gas appliance pressure regulators are equipped with a vent-limiting device that restricts the flow of gas to less than 2.5 ft^3/hr (0.07 m^3/hr) for natural gas and 1 ft^3/hr (0.028 m^3/hr) for LP-Gas (generally propane gas). This leakage rate is considered not likely to create a dangerous concentration of gas. Note that the vent limiter must be supplied with the regulator and cannot be changed by the installer.

The code provides neither restrictions nor guidance to those who manifold the vents of multiple regulators together. Information on sizing of discharge piping from pressure regulators can be found in API RP 520, *Sizing, Selection, and Installation of Pressure-Relieving Devices in Refineries, Part II, Installation*.

(2) Vent limiting means shall be employed on listed appliance pressure regulators only.

FAQ Can a vent limiter be removed from a regulator and installed on another regulator?

Field installation of vent limiters must comply with the manufacturers' instructions, which address this subject in greater depth. A vent limiter usually cannot be removed and reinstalled on a different regulator. If questions arise, the regulator manufacturer's installation instructions should be consulted.

Many vent limiters are designed to operate in a specific position. If this is the case, a marking will be placed on the regulator or vent limiter to indicate the position.

(3) In the case of vents leading outdoors, means shall be employed to prevent water from entering this piping and also to prevent blockage of vents by insects and foreign matter.

Insects, insect nests, ice, or freezing rain can block outdoor vents from regulators. If a regulator vent becomes blocked, the downstream pressure (pressure in the building piping) will be increased, which may result in gas leaking into the building. Pointing the end of the vent line down, flaring it approximately 40 degrees, and screening the opening usually prevents this blockage.

(4) Under no circumstances shall a regulator be vented to the appliance flue or exhaust system.

(5) In the case of vents entering the combustion chamber, the vent shall be located so the escaping gas is readily ignited by the pilot and the heat liberated thereby does not adversely affect the normal operation of the safety shutoff system. The terminus of the vent shall be securely held in a fixed position relative to the pilot. For manufactured gas, the need for a flame arrester in the vent piping shall be determined.

(6) A vent line(s) from an appliance pressure regulator and a bleed line(s) from a diaphragm-type valve shall not be connected to a common manifold terminating in a combustion chamber. Vent lines shall not terminate in positive-pressure-type combustion chambers.

EXHIBIT 9.3

Diaphragm-Type Valve. (Courtesy of Honeywell International Inc.)

The danger of manifolding a bleed line from a diaphragm-type valve, as shown in Exhibit 9.3, and a vent line from a gas appliance regulator is that the gas vented by the diaphragm valve could be drawn into the regulator through the regulator vent line until a flammable air–gas mixture is reached. The continuous pilot could ignite this mixture and produce a small explosion that could extinguish the pilot and rupture the pressure regulator diaphragm. This rupture would then allow unburned gas to flow continuously through the vent line into the combustion chamber, causing an overrate condition for the main burner and pilot and subjecting the gas controls to excessive gas pressures. Exhibit 9.4 illustrates the operation of a diaphragm valve.

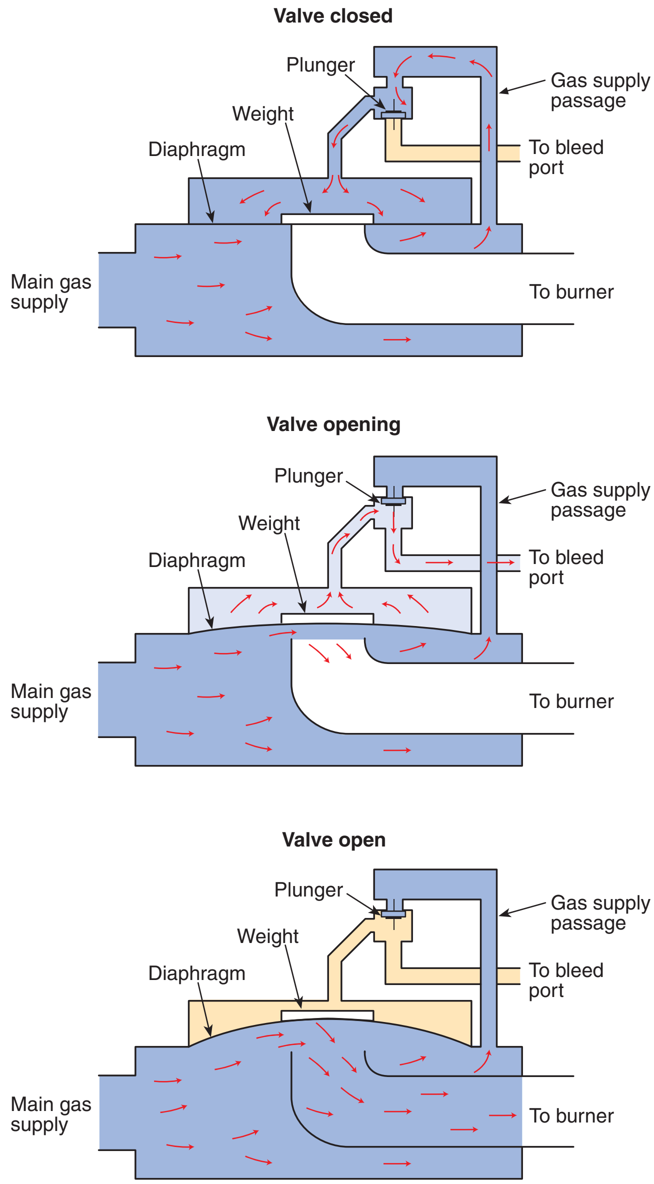
The prohibition of vent lines terminating in positive-pressure–type combustion chambers recognizes that this type of design can result in back pressure on the diaphragm of regulators and diaphragm-type valves and can cause the pressure regulator to deliver a higher pressure, which can lead to appliance failure.

9.1.20 Bleed Lines for Diaphragm-Type Valves. Bleed lines shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Diaphragm-type valves shall be equipped to convey bleed gas to the outdoors or into the combustion chamber adjacent to a continuous pilot.

(2) In the case of bleed lines leading outdoors, means shall be employed to prevent water from entering this piping and also to prevent blockage of vents by insects and foreign matter.

EXHIBIT 9.4



Operation of a Diaphragm-Type Valve. (Courtesy of Honeywell International Inc.)

(3) Bleed lines shall not terminate in the appliance flue or exhaust system.

(4) In the case of bleed lines entering the combustion chamber, the bleed line shall be located so the bleed gas is readily ignited by the pilot and the heat liberated thereby does not adversely affect the normal operation of the safety shutoff system. The terminus of the bleed line shall be securely held in a fixed position relative to the pilot. For manufactured gas, the need for a flame arrester in the bleed line piping shall be determined.

(5) A bleed line(s) from a diaphragm-type valve and a vent line(s) from an appliance pressure regulator shall not be connected to a common manifold terminating in a combustion chamber. Bleed lines shall not terminate in positive-pressure-type combustion chambers.

For the same reasons given in the commentary following 9.1.19(6), the bleed line from the diaphragm-type valve must not be interconnected by the manifold to the vent line from a gas pressure regulator. (See Exhibit 9.3 and Exhibit 9.4.)

9.1.21 Combination of Appliances and Equipment. Any combination of appliances, equipment, attachments, or devices used together in any manner shall comply with the standards that apply to the individual appliance and equipment.

9.1.22 Installation Instructions. The installing agency shall conform to the appliance and equipment manufacturers' recommendations in completing an installation. The installing agency shall leave the manufacturers' installation, operating, and maintenance instructions in a location on the premises where they are readily available for reference and guidance of the authority having jurisdiction, service personnel, and the owner or operator.

Leaving the manufacturer's installation, operating, and maintenance instructions and the owner's/user's manual on the job site is important so that the authority having jurisdiction, service personnel, and the owner or user can use these materials.

FAQ Why are the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions required to be on the job site?

The installation instructions contain specific installation and service requirements for the appliance that may be needed by service and repair personnel and that may not be readily available. This information cannot be found in this code or in local codes. While many appliance manufacturers post appliance instructions on their web pages, most service technicians do not have access to the Internet during service calls.

9.1.23 Protection of Outdoor Appliances. Appliances not listed for outdoor installation but installed outdoors shall be provided with protection to the degree that the environment requires. Appliances listed for outdoor installation shall be permitted to be installed without protection in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Appliances not listed for outdoor installation can be enclosed satisfactorily if the appliance installation meets the requirements of this code for combustion and ventilation air, for venting, and for clearance to combustible surfaces or if the installation meets the requirements included in the manufacturer's instructions. The clearance requirements for outdoor appliance installations in relation to walls, ceilings, and combustibles should also be considered.

9.2 Accessibility and Clearance

9.2.1 Accessibility for Service. All appliances shall be located with respect to building construction and other equipment so as to permit access to the appliance. Sufficient clearance shall be maintained to permit cleaning of heating surfaces; the replacement of filters, blowers, motors, burners, controls, and vent connections; the lubrication of moving parts where necessary; the adjustment and cleaning of burners and pilots; and the proper functioning of explosion vents, if provided. For attic installation, the passageway and servicing area adjacent to the appliance shall be floored.

The manufacturer's instructions and/or local building codes should be consulted for width and length of passageways to appliances installed in attics, on roofs, and in crawl spaces. Note that Section 9.5 covers appliances in attics.

Generally, passageways must be floored and limited to not less than 24 in. (0.6 m) in width, or to the width of the appliance for the purpose of removal, and not less than 20 ft

(6 m) in length. In addition, there should be at least 30 in. (0.76 m) of clearance in front of an appliance to provide adequate service space and access to the electrical controls and other operating components.

Appliances approved for closet installation can have reduced clearance if service is accomplished through a door or removable panel and the reduced clearance is not less than that specified on the rating plate or in Chapter 10, Installation of Specific Appliances.

9.2.2 Clearance to Combustible Materials. Appliances and their vent connectors shall be installed with clearances from combustible material so their operation does not create a hazard to persons or property. Minimum clearances between combustible walls and the back and sides of various conventional types of appliances and their vent connectors are specified in Chapters 10 and 12. *(Reference can also be made to NFPA 211, Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances.)*

FAQ Where can information on required clearances for a specific appliance be found?

Listed appliances have a label attached to the appliance that describes required clearances. The manufacturer's instructions will also have this information. Chapter 10 provides clearances for many types of unlisted appliances.

9.2.3 Installation on Carpeting. Appliances shall not be installed on carpeting, unless the appliances are listed for such installation.

If it is necessary to install an appliance on a carpet, refer to the commentary following 10.3.3, which provides details for a method of protecting combustible flooring.

9.3* Air for Combustion and Ventilation

The importance of combustion, dilution, and ventilation air, as shown in Exhibit 9.5, cannot be overemphasized. Typical gas-fired natural draft (draft hood) furnaces require approximately 21 ft^3 (0.6 m^3) of air (i.e., combustion, vent dilution, and ventilation) for every cubic foot of gas burned. Although modern fan-assisted combustion system furnaces do not need dilution air, they still require approximately 15 ft^3 (0.4 m^3) of air for each cubic foot of gas burned. This amount of air can range between 1500 ft^3/hr and 2100 ft^3/hr (43 m^3/hr and 60 m^3/hr) for each 100,000 Btu/hr (29.3 kW) of gas input for natural gas, which contains approximately 1000 Btu/ft^3 [37,300 kJ/m^3]. This air is needed to support the combustion and venting process of the appliance and to provide ventilation cooling for the casing and internal controls. This section of the code covers methods to provide adequate air for complete combustion of fuel gas, ventilation of spaces where appliances are installed, and dilution of vent gases. See Exhibit 9.6.

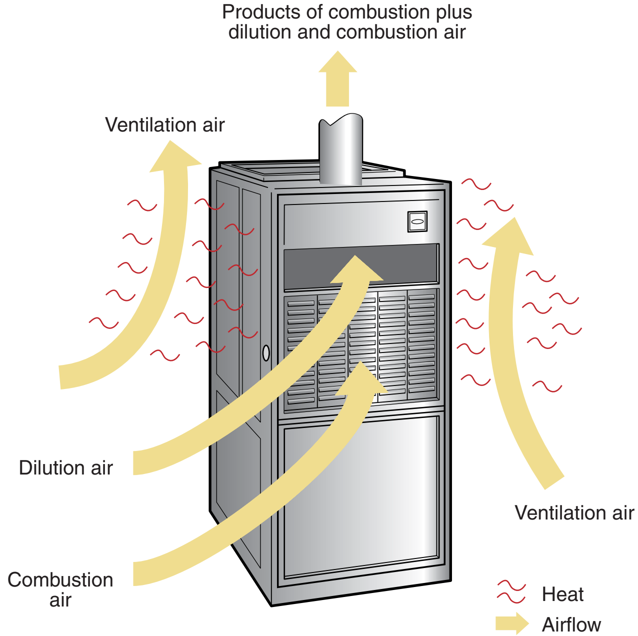
Note: The air volumes specified above apply only to typical natural gas. To generalize to other gases, use 21 ft^3 or 15 ft^3 per 1000 Btu of fuel energy input. Metric units can be direct conversions of these values or can be based on per unit of energy (i.e., 2.03 m^3 or 1.45 m^3 per kWh or 0.6 m^3 or 0.4 m^3 per MJ).

A.9.3 Operation of exhaust fans, ventilation systems, clothes dryers, or fireplaces can create conditions requiring special attention to avoid unsatisfactory operation of installed appliances.

There are five methods of providing sufficient combustion air for complete combustion of fuel gas. Refer to Exhibit 9.7 for an illustration of the use of these methods to supply combustion air:

1. 100 percent indoor air
2. 100 percent outdoor air

EXHIBIT 9.5



Combustion, Dilution, and Ventilation Air. (Courtesy of Carrier Corporation)

3. Combination of indoor and outdoor air
4. Engineered systems
5. Mechanical air supply

The code contains two ways to calculate the required indoor air volume to meet the combustion air needs of appliances: the standard method and the known air infiltration rate (KAIR) method.

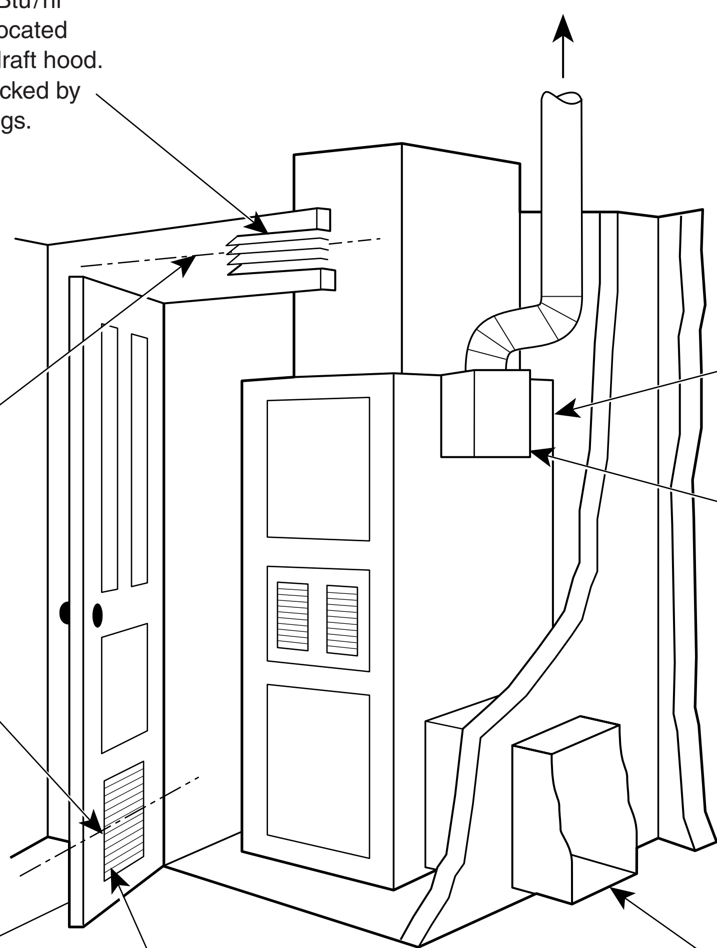
Standard Method. The standard method, which has been in the code since the 1950s, can be used for buildings that have a 0.40 air change per hour (ACH) or higher air infiltration rate.

KAIR Method. The KAIR method, which addresses buildings with low air infiltration (to conserve energy), can be used when the structure's air infiltration rate is known or estimated or when the structure has less than 0.40 ACH.

An important feature of KAIR is that it recognizes the difference in combustion air volume requirements between the two appliance types — fan-assisted appliances and other than fan-assisted appliances, which is "all other appliances." The amount of required indoor air for each appliance type is different due to the different amounts of dilution air that each uses. If an installation includes both types of appliances, the required air volume is calculated separately for the fan-assisted appliance and for the other than fan-assisted appliance.

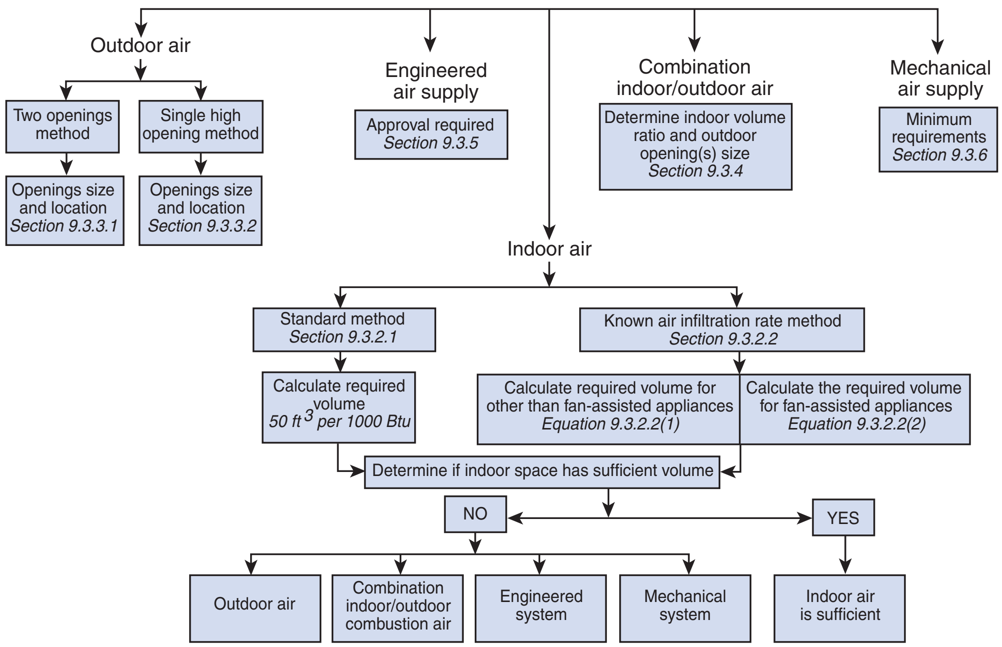
Purpose of the KAIR Method. The KAIR method solves a problem that has been addressed in steps since the 1984 edition of the code. Prior to the 1984 edition, the code requirements for indoor combustion air did not provide guidance for "unusually tight construction." In the 1984 edition, a requirement was added stating that, if indoor combustion air was used and if the construction was unusually tight, outside combustion air had to be provided. This requirement addressed valid concerns that buildings were being built to minimize air infiltration

EXHIBIT 9.6



Openings Necessary to Supply Air for Combustion When an Appliance Is Installed in a Confined Space. [From NFPA 54 and ANSI Z21.30, Installation of Gas Piping and Gas Appliances in Buildings (1950 edition)]

EXHIBIT 9.7



Combustion Air Options. (Courtesy of American Gas Association)

due to the energy crisis of the 1970s. Although this addition provided no guidance on the criteria for unusually tight construction, it provided a positive step toward addressing the meaning of the term.

FAQ Why was the term *unusually tight construction* removed from the code in the 2002 edition?

In the 1988 edition, a definition of the term *unusually tight construction* was added, which included the following three items:

1. Walls and ceilings exposed to the outside atmosphere have a continuous water vapor retarder with a rating of 1 perm (a unit of permeability) or less with openings gasketed or sealed.
2. Weather stripping has been added on openable windows and doors.
3. Caulking or sealants are applied to areas such as joints around window and door frames; between sole plates and floors; between wall–ceiling joints; between wall panels; at penetrations for plumbing, electrical, and gas lines; and at other openings.

The definition of the term *unusually tight construction* provided the needed guidance for a time. By the mid-1990s, however, the type of construction described as unusually tight was, in fact, normal construction required by building and energy codes. A further revision to the definition was added in the 1999 edition. This revision added a fourth item to the definition of *unusually tight construction* — that is, that the building have an average air infiltration rate of less than 0.35 air changes per hour.

The fourth item provided additional guidance and changed the definition so that it did not automatically include all new construction but instead based the need for outdoor combustion air on the actual air infiltration rate.

The 2002 edition of the code went further by eliminating the definitions of the terms *unusually tight construction, confined space,* and *unconfined space* and providing two methods to determine the amount of indoor volume needed for buildings with varying air infiltration rates. The code was now clearer in specifying those conditions that were needed to mandate the use of additional outside combustion air, which many jurisdictions had not applied uniformly. Some jurisdictions considered all new structures built to a model or state energy code to be inherently unusually tight. No research has been found that can conclusively link the construction details associated with the unusually tight construction definition to a level of reduced air infiltration that would be too low to support combustion appliances.

The terms *confined space* and *unconfined space* were eliminated because they did not denote a single value [50 ft^3/1000 Btu (4.8 m^3/kW)] but rather varying volumes, depending on the method used and the amount of air infiltration. A new term, *required volume*, was used to better describe the code's intent.

The combustion air tables in Annex A — Table A.9.3.2.1, Table A.9.3.2.2(a), and Table A.9.3.2.2(b) — provide users with the calculated values without the need to perform calculations for the required air volumes under the standard and KAIR methods. Annex H provides three installation examples to help the code user apply the combustion air coverage. Annex I contains an example of combination of indoor and outdoor combustion and ventilation opening design.

See Annex H and Annex I for more information.

History of Combustion Air Requirements. The first gas safety standard covering appliances, ASA K-2, was published in 1927. The requirements for air for combustion were very brief: "No appliance designed to burn gas at a rate greater than an ordinary lighting burner shall be installed in a room which is not adequately ventilated."

The increased use of gas for heating and the popularity of "closet furnaces" following World War II resulted in AGA Research Bulletin 53, "The Effects of Confined Space Installation on Central Gas Space Heating Equipment Performance," which was published in 1947.

The study resulted in a requirement, which was included in the 1950 edition of ANSI Z21.30 and NFPA 54, for two air openings into the confined space, each sized at 1 in.^{2}/1000 Btu/hr (650 mm^2/kW) and communicating with an area having "adequate infiltration." (See Exhibit 9.6.)

If the confined space was within a building of unusually tight construction, then air for combustion and ventilation was to be obtained from outdoors (e.g., crawl or attic space), and the size of the openings could be reduced by 50 percent. [At that time, the code defined the term *confined space* as a building area containing less than 50 ft^3 of room volume for each 1000 ft^3 of heat input (4.8 m^3/kW).]

In subsequent years, additional work by AGA Laboratories reaffirmed the need for two openings in a confined space. In 1969, the most significant change in this section of the code was to require that the openings be located within 12 in. (300 mm) of the top and 12 in. (300 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure. Consequently, five detailed drawings were added in 1959 for clarification. (One drawing was dropped in the 1980 edition of the code.)

An additional drawing was added in the 1999 edition, and all five drawings were relocated to Appendix A in the 1999 edition. The present requirement is that the minimum dimension of the air openings be not less than 3 in. (80 mm).

Significant changes in the design of gas appliances have occurred since the initial development of combustion air requirements. Increases in efficiency and the use of fan-assisted combustion systems prompted the Gas Research Institute to initiate a study of combustion air requirements. Report Number GRI 93/0316, "Analysis of Combustion Air Openings to the Outdoors: Preliminary Results," was issued in 1994. This report found that a single opening to the outdoors also could be used if certain qualifications were met [i.e., that the opening be within 12 in. (300 mm) of the ceiling and minimum specified clearances be provided around the appliance]. (See 9.3.3.2.)

The use of two openings, high and low, to the outdoors still presented practical problems, especially in an era when building envelopes were being tightened. In the 1996 edition, an alternative allowing one opening [located within 12 in. (300 mm) of the ceiling] was added based on Report Number GRI 93/0316.

9.3.1 General.

The requirements of 9.3.1 are outlined in Exhibit 9.7. The exhibit contains an overview of the methods that can be used to provide air for combustion for appliances.

9.3.1.1 Air for combustion, ventilation, and dilution of flue gases for appliances installed in buildings shall be obtained by application of one of the methods covered in 9.3.2 through 9.3.6. Where the requirements of 9.3.2 are not met, outdoor air shall be introduced in accordance with methods covered in 9.3.3 through 9.3.6.

Exception No. 1: This provision shall not apply to direct vent appliances.

Exception No. 2: Type 1 clothes dryers that are provided with make-up air in accordance with 10.4.3.

Type 1 clothes dryer exhaust fans typically remove 180 cfm to 200 cfm (5.1 m^3/min to 5.6 m^3/min) of air from the space around them. Larger-capacity models may exhaust up to 250 cfm (7.1 m^3/min). The air exhaust rates include air for removal of moisture, as well as the air needed for combustion of the fuel gas. For example, models with an exhaust rate of 180 cfm (5.1 m^3/min) require 10,800 ft^3/hr (306 m^3/hr) of make-up air. A gas clothes dryer's energy input, regardless of exhaust rate, ranges up to 35,000 Btu/hr (3.2 kW), which, at a rate of 10 to 1 for complete combustion, is 350 ft^3/hr (9.9 m^3/hr). Therefore, a dryer's combustion air is only 3 percent of the total air required for proper dryer operation.

FAQ If there is sufficient make-up air for the clothes dryer per the manufacturer's installation instructions, is additional combustion air required?

Paragraph 10.4.3.1 requires that make-up air be provided in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Because this amount of air would include sufficient combustion air, the combustion air requirements of 9.3.1.1 do not apply.

9.3.1.2 Appliances of other than natural draft design, appliances not designated as Category I vented appliances, and appliances equipped with power burners shall be provided with combustion, ventilation, and dilution air in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.

"Appliances of other than natural draft design" refers to appliances with power vents, either integral with the appliance or added; clothes dryers; high-efficiency furnaces; direct-vent appliances; and so on. The manufacturer's installation instructions include air openings or other means to provide adequate air for safe appliance operation. Direct-vent appliances do not draw air for combustion and dilution from the building when they are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

9.3.1.3 Appliances shall be located so as not to interfere with proper circulation of combustion, ventilation, and dilution air.

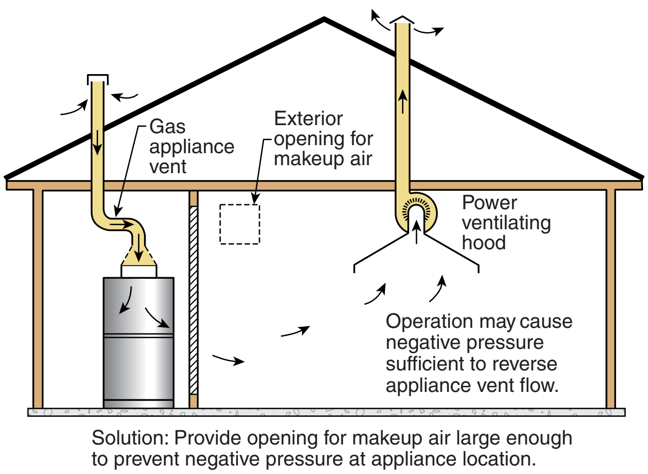
9.3.1.4 Where used, a draft hood or a barometric draft regulator shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the appliance served so as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply.

Draft hoods and barometric draft regulators allow air to enter the vent close to an appliance. Where they are used, these devices allow air (called dilution air) to enter the flue and mix with the products of combustion. These devices must be in the same room or enclosure with the appliance to operate properly. If a device is located in a different room or floor or outside an appliance enclosure, the device could be affected by a pressure different from the pressure in the room or space, due to a furnace fan or exhaust fan, and the draft hood or barometric draft regulator could provide a path for the products of combustion to spill into the room in which the appliance is installed.

9.3.1.5 Where exhaust fans, clothes dryers, and kitchen ventilation systems interfere with the operation of appliances, make-up air shall be provided.

The operation of exhaust fans, kitchen ventilators, clothes dryers, fireplaces, and other systems that exhaust air from a building as shown in Exhibit 9.8 can deprive a gas appliance of combustion air. In extreme cases — for example, when there is an especially strong exhaust fan and/or a building with low infiltration rate — air can be pulled in through the vent of natural draft appliances. This situation results in the combustion products spilling from the draft hood or flue collar into the room in which the appliance is located. Coupled with a lack of combustion and ventilation air, incomplete combustion can result in flame rollout, and high levels of carbon monoxide can be formed.

EXHIBIT 9.8



Mechanical Exhausting.

9.3.2 Indoor Combustion Air.

The required volume of indoor air shall be determined in accordance with the method in 9.3.2.1 or 9.3.2.2 except that where the air infiltration rate is known to be less than 0.40 *ACH* (air change per hour), the method in 9.3.2.2 shall be used. The total required volume shall be the sum of the required volume calculated for all appliances located within the space. Rooms communicating directly with the space in which the appliances are installed through openings not furnished with doors, and through combustion air openings sized and located in accordance with 9.3.2.3, are considered a part of the required volume.

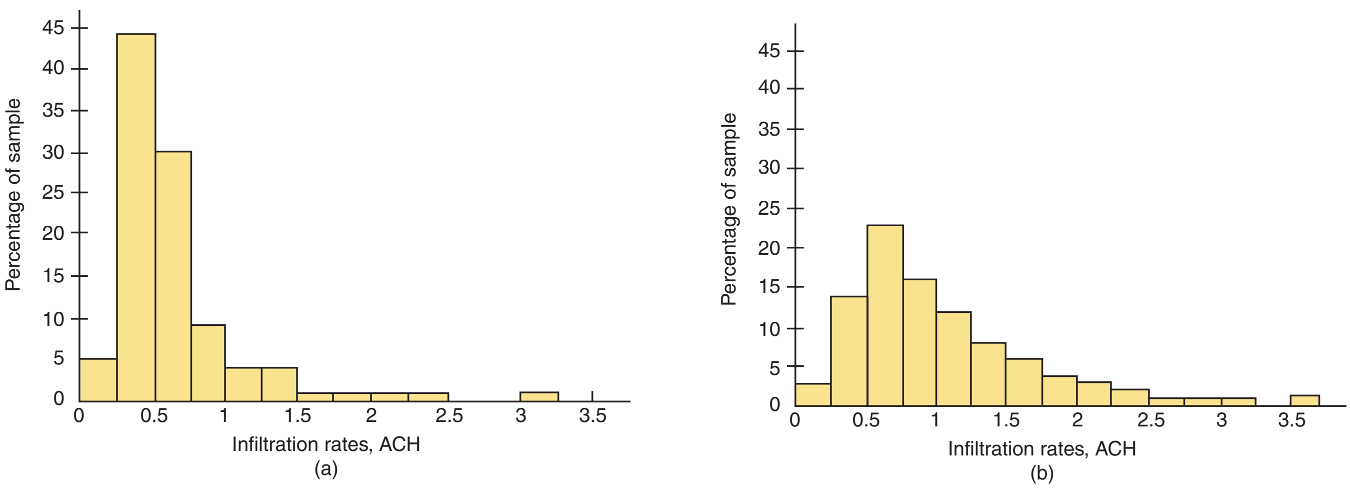
Indoor combustion air is determined using one of two methods. The standard method, which is covered in 9.3.2.1, is limited to buildings with an air infiltration rate of 0.40 ACH or more. The KAIR method, which is covered in 9.3.2.2, can be used to calculate the required indoor volume for all structures, including those built with very low air infiltration rates.

The code does not require the determination of a structure's air infiltration. The standard method can be used for many installations. However, if the structure's ACH is known to be less than 0.40 ACH, then the standard method for obtaining combustion air cannot be used, and the KAIR method must be used.

Supplement 3 of this handbook contains a procedure and an example on how to calculate air infiltration based on an American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) method. This method is provided to assist those who need to know the air exchange of a building but do not wish to measure it or those who cannot because the building has not yet been built. This calculation can be performed based on a building's blueprints or on an existing building. The ACH for an existing residential building may also be measured with a pressurization test, commonly called a blower-door test. A value for ACH may also be available that is based either on a nationally recognized ventilation standard or on a value established by an adopting jurisdiction based on local experience and applied to structures located in that jurisdiction. ASHRAE 62.1, *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality,* recommends that structures have a minimum of 0.35 ACH with at least 15 cfm per occupant. Exhibits 9.9 (a) and (b) show that most building spaces meet the recommended ACH.

See Supplement 3 for more information.

EXHIBIT 9.9



Histograms of Infiltration Values: (a) New Construction. (b) Low-Income Housing. [Source: Copyright 2013, © American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (www.ashrae.org). Reprinted by permission from 2013 ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, Chapter 16, Fig. 11 and Fig. 12. This text may not be copied or distributed in either paper or digital form without ASHRAE's permission.]

9.3.2.1* Standard Method. The minimum required volume shall be 50 ft^3/1000 Btu/hr (4.8 m^3/kW).

FAQ No measures were taken to make my building unusually tight. Would the standard method be the appropriate method to determine combustion air?

The standard method can be used for a vast majority of residential and light commercial buildings with an ACH rate lower than 0.40. If the air exchange rate is not known, and the building does not have special provisions to make it airtight beyond those in the applicable building code, then the standard method can most probably be used. To verify the acceptability of the standard method, check the appliances for proper operation after installation.

ASHRAE provides data on air infiltration in buildings in the *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals*. Exhibits 9.9(a) and (b), reprinted from the *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals*, show average seasonal infiltration rates in two national studies. In Exhibit 9.9(a), samples are biased toward new, energy-efficient houses and have a median value of 0.5 ACH. Exhibit 9.9(b) represents older, low-income housing, and samples have a median value of 0.9 ACH.

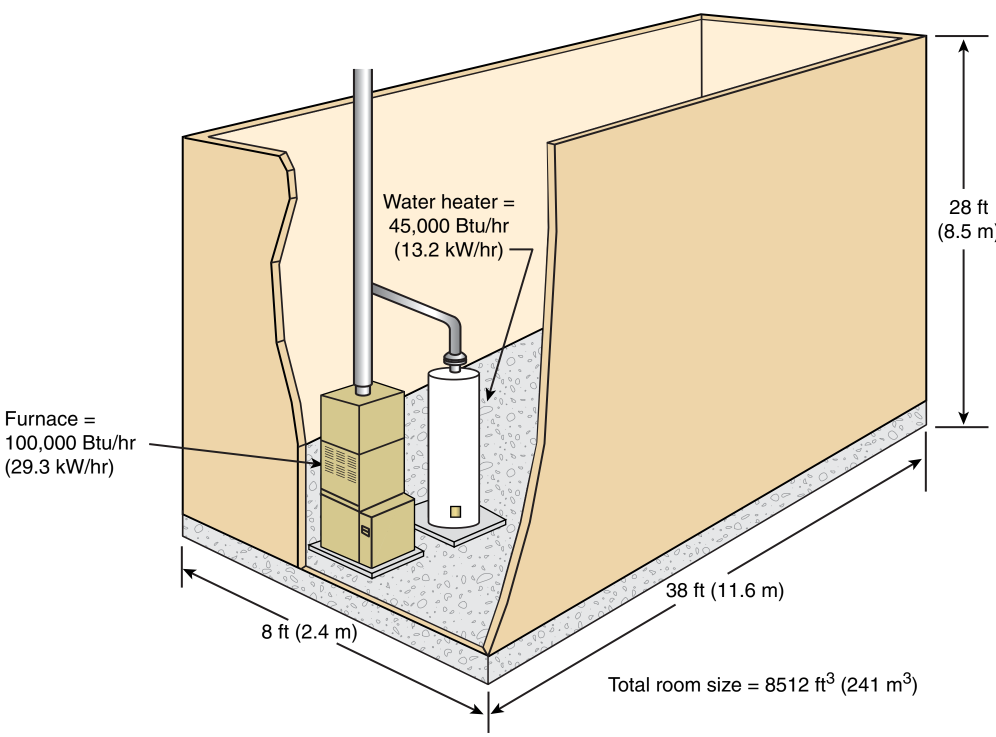
The standard method is sometimes referred to as the 1/20 rule, because 1000 Btu/hr $\times$ 50 ft^3 = 20 Btu/hr/ft^3 (207 W/m^3) or, for each cubic foot (cubic meter) of room volume, 20 Btu/hr (207 W) can be installed.

Exhibit 9.10 shows a room in which a furnace and water heater are installed. Worksheet 9.1 shows how to determine whether the installation shown in Exhibit 9.10 falls under the standard method or the KAIR method.

FAQ The gas appliances are in a storage area that connects to two other rooms. One room connects by an archway, the other room connects by a door that stands open all the time. Can the volume of these rooms be included in the calculation for combustion air?

The volume of the room connected by an archway could be used in the calculation. The room connected by a solid door could not. Only permanent openings that cannot be blocked, such as by a solid door, qualify an adjoining space to be included in the calculation for combustion air. See the commentary following 9.3.2.3 for more information on the required openings for combining room volumes.

EXHIBIT 9.10



Room with Furnace and Water Heater.

WORKSHEET 9.1

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: COMBUSTION AIR, STANDARD METHOD

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume:
Room length: 38 ft
Room width: 28 ft
Room height: 8 ft

Room volume: = Length × width × height
= 8512 ft^3

Step 2:

- Calculate the total input of all appliances in the room.
- Enter the input rating of all appliances in Table 1. (Per 9.3.1.1, Exception 2, dryers are not included.)
- Total the column.
- Divide the total by 1000 (of Btu/hr).

Table 1 Appliances Table

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	100,000
Water heater	45,000
Space heater	
Range	
Other	
Total	145,000
Total/1000	145

Step 3:

- Calculate the required volume. Divide room volume (Step 1) by total/1000 (Step 2).
- If less than 50, additional air is needed.
- If greater than or equal to 50, no additional air is needed.

Required volume: $= \frac{8512 \text{ ft}^3}{145}$

= 58.7

Additional air needed? (Check one) Yes ❑ No ☑

ALTERNATE CALCULATION METHOD

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume = 8512 ft^3 (from Step 1 above)

Step 2:

- Calculate the maximum appliance input.

Maximum appliance input: = Room volume × 20
= 8512 × 20
= 170,240 Btu/hr

Step 3:

- Determine if additional air is needed.
- If less than max., no additional air is needed.
- If greater than or equal to max., additional air is needed.

Total appliance input: = 145,000 Btu/hr

Additional air needed? (Check one) Yes ❑ No ☑

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Combustion Air Using the Standard Method.

A.9.3.2.1 See Table A.9.3.2.1.

TABLE A.9.3.2.1 *Standard Method: Required Volume, All Appliances*

Appliance Input (Btu/hr)	*Required Volume (ft^3)*	*Appliance Input (Btu/hr)*	*Required Volume (ft^3)*
5,000	250	130,000	6,500
10,000	500	135,000	6,750
15,000	750	140,000	7,000
20,000	1,000	145,000	7,250
25,000	1,250	150,000	7,500
30,000	1,500	160,000	8,000
35,000	1,750	170,000	8,500
40,000	2,000	180,000	9,000
45,000	2,250	190,000	9,500
50,000	2,500	200,000	10,000
55,000	2,750	210,000	10,500
60,000	3,000	220,000	11,000
65,000	3,250	230,000	11,500
70,000	3,500	240,000	12,000
75,000	3,750	250,000	12,500
80,000	4,000	260,000	13,000
85,000	4,250	270,000	13,500
90,000	4,500	280,000	14,000
95,000	4,750	290,000	14,500
100,000	5,000	300,000	15,000
105,000	5,250		
110,000	5,500		
115,000	5,750		
120,000	6,000		
125,000	6,250		

For SI units, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

9.3.2.2* Known Air Infiltration Rate Method. Where the air infiltration rate of a structure is known, the minimum required volume shall be determined as follows:

(1) For appliances other than fan assisted, calculate using the following equation:

$$\text{Required Volume}_{other} \geq \frac{21\ \text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{1000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right)$$

(2) For fan-assisted appliances, calculate using the following equation:

$$\text{Required Volume}_{fan} \geq \frac{15\ \text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{1000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right)$$

where:

I_{other} = all appliances other than fan-assisted input (Btu/hr)

I_{fan} = fan-assisted appliance input (Btu/hr)

ACH = air change per hour (percent of volume of space exchanged per hour, expressed as a decimal)

The KAIR method requires a calculation of the required air volume based on two appliance types, other than fan assisted [see 9.3.2.2(1)] and fan assisted [see 9.3.2.2(2)]. The formula for each appliance type is based on the total combustion air needs of each type of appliance, which differ due to the amount of dilution air required. If installations include both types of appliance, then a separate calculation is done for each type of appliance. These calculations are combined to determine the total required air volume. These calculations determine the amount of air for combustion and ventilation required by the appliance for complete combustion. Combustion air includes three components:

1. The amount of air for complete combustion, 10 ft^3/ft^3 (10 m^3/m^3) of gas burned (see note below)
2. Excess air to help ensure complete combustion, typically 5 ft^3/ft^3 (5 m^3/m^3) of gas burned (see note below)
3. Dilution air for proper venting of draft hood–equipped appliances, typically 6 ft^3/ft^3 (6 m^3/m^3) of gas burned (see note below)

Note: These air volumes apply only to typical natural gas. To generalize to other gases, use 10 ft^3, 5 ft^3, and 6 ft^3 per 1000 Btu of energy input. Metric units can be direct conversions of these values or can be based on per unit of energy (i.e., 0.97 m^3, 0.48 m^3, and 0.58 m^3 per kWh or 0.27 m^3, 0.13 m^3, and 0.16 m^3 per MJ).

The historical assumptions for excess and dilution air are not for fan-assisted appliances. Fan-assisted appliances have neither a draft hood nor a flue collar, and, therefore, dilution air is limited to leakage from vent fittings.

Worksheet 9.2 shows an example of using the KAIR method to calculate the required air volume of a room "for appliances other than fan assisted" [9.3.2.2(1)] and for fan-assisted appliances [9.3.2.2(2)]. The appliances are installed in a 4800 ft^3 room in a structure having 0.5 ACH.

(3) For purposes of these calculations, an infiltration rate greater than 0.60 *ACH* shall not be used in the equations in 9.3.2.2(1) and 9.3.2.2(2).

Since the KAIR method can be applied to structures with an air infiltration rate greater than 0.40 ACH, a limitation was added as a safety precaution to prevent appliances from being installed in rooms that are too small. Paragraph 9.3.2.2(3) avoids that result by disallowing calculation with an infiltration rate greater than 0.60 ACH.

The KAIR equations result in a required volume (room size) that is inversely proportional to the structure's air infiltration rate. Therefore, as the amount of air infiltration increases, the required volume decreases. If the KAIR method were allowed to be applied to structures with high air exchange rates without a limit, the calculated required volume could result in a room size approaching that of a closet. This scenario could be in conflict with 10.3.2.2, which requires central heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers to be listed for closet installation when installed in rooms such as alcoves and closets.

A.9.3.2.2 See Table A.9.3.2.2(a) and Table A.9.3.2.2(b).

9.3.2.3 Indoor Opening Size and Location. Openings used to connect indoor spaces shall be sized and located in accordance with the following:

(1)* *Combining spaces on the same story.* Each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 $in.^2$/1000 Btu/hr (2200 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all appliances in the space but not less than 100 $in.^2$ (0.06 m^2). One opening shall commence within 12 in. (300 mm) of the top of the enclosure and one opening shall commence within 12 in. (300 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure. The minimum dimension of air openings shall not be less than 3 in. (80 mm).

(2) *Combining spaces in different stories.* The volumes of spaces in different stories shall be considered as communicating spaces where such spaces are connected by one or

WORKSHEET 9.2

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: COMBUSTION AIR, KAIR METHOD

Step 1:

- Enter the input ratings of all other than fan-assisted appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.

Table 1 Ratings for Non-Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Water heater	45,000
Space heater	
Refrigerator	
Other	
Other	
Total (I_{other})	45,000

Step 2:

- Enter the air infiltration rate of the space. This can be determined by measurement or estimation. See Supplement 5 for an estimation method.
- If the air infiltration rate exceeds 0.6, use 0.6.

Air infiltration rate: 0.5 ACH (max. 0.6)

Step 3:

- Calculate the required volume for non-fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and in Step 6.

Required volume:

$$\frac{21\text{ ft}^3}{\text{ACH}}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{100{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}\right) = \frac{21\text{ ft}^3}{0.5}\left(\frac{45{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}{1{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}\right)$$

$$42\ (45) = 1890\text{ ft}^3$$

Step 4:

- Enter the input ratings of all fan-assisted appliances in Table 2.
- Total the column.

Table 2 Ratings for Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	100,000
Furnace	
Space heater	
Other	
Other	
Other	
Total (I_{fan})	100,000

Step 5:

- Calculate the required volume for fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and below.

Required volume:

$$\frac{15\text{ ft}^3}{\text{ACH}}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{100{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}\right) = \frac{15\text{ ft}^3}{0.5}\left(\frac{100{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}{1{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}\right)$$

$$30\ (100) = 3000\text{ ft}^3$$

Step 6:

- Add the two required volumes calculated to find the total required volume for all appliances.

Required volume:
(Non-fan assisted) = 1890 ft³
Required volume
(Fan assisted) = 3000 ft³
Total required volume = 4890 ft³

Step 7:

- Enter the available room volume.

Available volume = 30 x 20 x 8
Room volume = 4800 ft³

Step 8:

- If the total required volume is greater than the available room volume, air openings are required. Check Yes and determine the opening size and location. If the total required volume is less than the available room volume, no air openings are required. Check No.

Air openings required? (Check one)

Yes ☑ No ❑

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Combustion Air Using the KAIR Method.

TABLE A.9.3.2.2(a) *Known Air Infiltration Rate Method: Minimum Space Volume for Appliances Other than Fan-Assisted for Specified Infiltration Rates (ACH)*

Appliance Input (Btu/hr)	Space Volume (ft^3)			Appliance Input (Btu/hr)	Space Volume (ft^3)		
	0.25 ACH	0.30 ACH	0.35 ACH		0.25 ACH	0.30 ACH	0.35 ACH
5,000	420	350	300	130,000	10,920	9,100	7,800
10,000	840	700	600	135,000	11,340	9,450	8,100
15,000	1,260	1,050	900	140,000	11,760	9,800	8,400
20,000	1,680	1,400	1,200	145,000	12,180	10,150	8,700
25,000	2,100	1,750	1,500	150,000	12,600	10,500	9,000
30,000	2,520	2,100	1,800	160,000	13,440	11,200	9,600
35,000	2,940	2,450	2,100	170,000	14,280	11,900	10,200
40,000	3,360	2,800	2,400	180,000	15,120	12,600	10,800
45,000	3,780	3,150	2,700	190,000	15,960	13,300	11,400
50,000	4,200	3,500	3,000	200,000	16,800	14,000	12,000
55,000	4,620	3,850	3,300	210,000	17,640	14,700	12,600
60,000	5,040	4,200	3,600	220,000	18,480	15,400	13,200
65,000	5,460	4,550	3,900	230,000	19,320	16,100	13,800
70,000	5,880	4,900	4,200	240,000	20,160	16,800	14,400
75,000	6,300	5,250	4,500	250,000	21,000	17,500	15,000
80,000	6,720	5,600	4,800	260,000	21,840	18,200	15,600
85,000	7,140	5,950	5,100	270,000	22,680	18,900	16,200
90,000	7,560	6,300	5,400	280,000	23,520	19,600	16,800
95,000	7,980	6,650	5,700	290,000	24,360	20,300	17,400
100,000	8,400	7,000	6,000	300,000	25,200	21,000	18,000
105,000	8,820	7,350	6,300				
110,000	9,240	7,700	6,600				
115,000	9,660	8,050	6,900				
120,000	10,080	8,400	7,200				
125,000	10,500	8,750	7,500				

For SI units, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.
ACH: Air change per hour.

more openings in doors or floors having a total minimum free area of 2 $in.^2$/1000 Btu/hr (4400 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all appliances.

When appliances are installed in a room that has less than the required volume, the required volume can be obtained by "combining" the room with an adjacent room. This method is usually preferred to using outdoor air, which can bring large amounts of unheated air into a room and cool it. To combine rooms, openings are cut to the sizes specified in 9.3.2.3(1).

Paragraph 9.3.2.3(2) specifically addresses connecting rooms located one above the other. Compliance with 9.3.2.3(2) requires one or more openings, with an area equal to the two openings required in 9.3.2.3(1). For example, combining spaces on different stories might involve an appliance in a basement. The basement may not be of the required volume, and the installer may elect to use space on the first floor.

Separation of the high and the low opening, as used when combining spaces on the same story, does not apply to the vertical connection of spaces. The vertical opening provision combines the total area, as required for both the high and low opening on the same story, into one opening for vertical connections.

TABLE A.9.3.2.2(b) Known Air Infiltration Rate Method: Minimum Space Volume for Fan-Assisted Appliance, for Specified Infiltration Rates (ACH)

Appliance Input (Btu/hr)	Required Volume (ft³) 0.25 ACH	0.30 ACH	0.35 ACH	Appliance Input (Btu/hr)	Required Volume (ft³) 0.25 ACH	0.30 ACH	0.35 ACH
5,000	300	250	214	130,000	7,800	6,500	5,571
10,000	600	500	429	135,000	8,100	6,750	5,786
15,000	900	750	643	140,000	8,400	7,000	6,000
20,000	1,200	1,000	857	145,000	8,700	7,250	6,214
25,000	1,500	1,250	1,071	150,000	9,000	7,500	6,429
30,000	1,800	1,500	1,286	160,000	9,600	8,000	6,857
35,000	2,100	1,750	1,500	170,000	10,200	8,500	7,286
40,000	2,400	2,000	1,714	180,000	10,800	9,000	7,714
45,000	2,700	2,250	1,929	190,000	11,400	9,500	8,143
50,000	3,000	2,500	2,143	200,000	12,000	10,000	8,571
55,000	3,300	2,750	2,357	210,000	12,600	10,500	9,000
60,000	3,600	3,000	2,571	220,000	13,200	11,000	9,429
65,000	3,900	3,250	2,786	230,000	13,800	11,500	9,857
70,000	4,200	3,500	3,000	240,000	14,400	12,000	10,286
75,000	4,500	3,750	3,214	250,000	15,000	12,500	10,714
80,000	4,800	4,000	3,429	260,000	15,600	13,000	11,143
85,000	5,100	4,250	3,643	270,000	16,200	13,500	11,571
90,000	5,400	4,500	3,857	280,000	16,800	14,000	12,000
95,000	5,700	4,750	4,071	290,000	17,400	14,500	12,429
100,000	6,000	5,000	4,286	300,000	18,000	15,000	12,857
105,000	6,300	5,250	4,500				
110,000	6,600	5,500	4,714				
115,000	6,900	5,750	4,929				
120,000	7,200	6,000	5,143				
125,000	7,500	6,250	5,357				

For SI units, 1 ft³ = 0.028 m³, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.
ACH: Air change per hour.

FAQ What is meant by "minimum free area" when referring to openings in doors, floors, or ceilings?

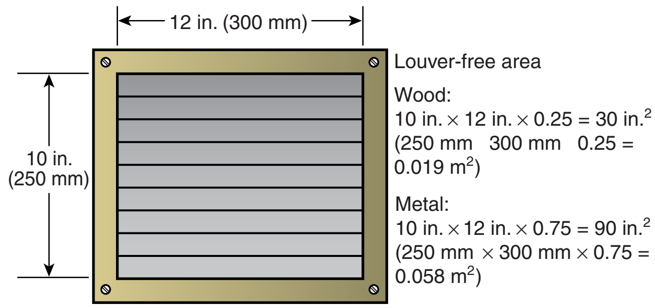
The openings in buildings are often finished with grilles or louvers, as shown in Exhibit 9.11. Consideration must be given to the blocking effect of the vanes incorporated in the louver or grille. This blocking effect could be as much as 80 percent on grilles designed for privacy and low sound transmission. The openings covered by such a louver would have to be correspondingly bigger (5 times the area) to provide the minimum free area required by these code sections. See the commentary on 9.3.7 for more information on grilles and louvers.

A.9.3.2.3(1) See Figure A.9.3.2.3(1).

9.3.3 Outdoor Combustion Air. Outdoor combustion air shall be provided through opening(s) to the outdoors in accordance with the methods in 9.3.3.1 or 9.3.3.2. The minimum dimension of air openings shall not be less than 3 in. (80 mm).

The minimum dimension of 3 in. (80 mm) is intended to prevent the use of a long, narrow opening. Leaves and lint can more easily block narrow openings than wider openings.

EXHIBIT 9.11



Louver-Free Area. (Courtesy of Carrier Corporation)

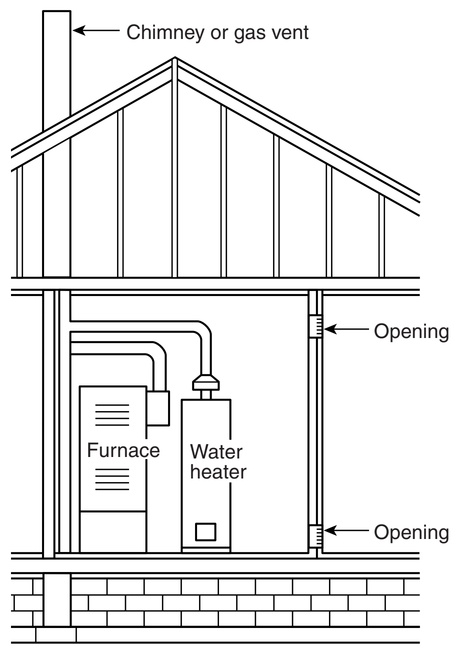


FIGURE A.9.3.2.3(1) *All Combustion Air from Adjacent Indoor Spaces Through Indoor Combustion Air Openings.*

9.3.3.1 Two Permanent Openings Method. Two permanent openings, one commencing within 12 in. (300 mm) of the top of the enclosure and one commencing within 12 in. (300 mm) of the bottom of the enclosure, shall be provided. The openings shall communicate directly, or by ducts, with the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors, as follows:

(1)* Where directly communicating with the outdoors or where communicating to the outdoors through vertical ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 in.^{2}/4000 Btu/hr (550 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all appliances in the enclosure.

(2)* Where communicating with the outdoors through horizontal ducts, each opening shall have a minimum free area of 1 in.^{2}/2000 Btu/hr (1100 mm^2/kW) of total input rating of all appliances in the enclosure.

Where all combustion and ventilation air is taken from outdoors, either directly or by ducts, one of two methods is permitted. The first method requires two openings or two ducts, either vertical or horizontal, commencing within 12 in. (300 mm) of the ceiling and floor. The second method allows one opening and is covered in 9.3.3.2.

Ducts must be of the same area as the openings to which they connect. Note that horizontal ducts must be twice as large as vertical ducts in accordance with the size requirements in 9.3.3.1(1) and (2). Vertical ducts allow a convection effect to occur, where warmer air gravitates out the upper duct opening while the lower duct introduces cooler air. This convection effect provides a higher ACH in vertical ducts than in horizontal ducts, where this effect is less pronounced.

Worksheet 9.3 shows how to determine the size of air openings.

A.9.3.3.1(1) See Figure A.9.3.3.1(1)(a) and Figure A.9.3.3.1(1)(b).

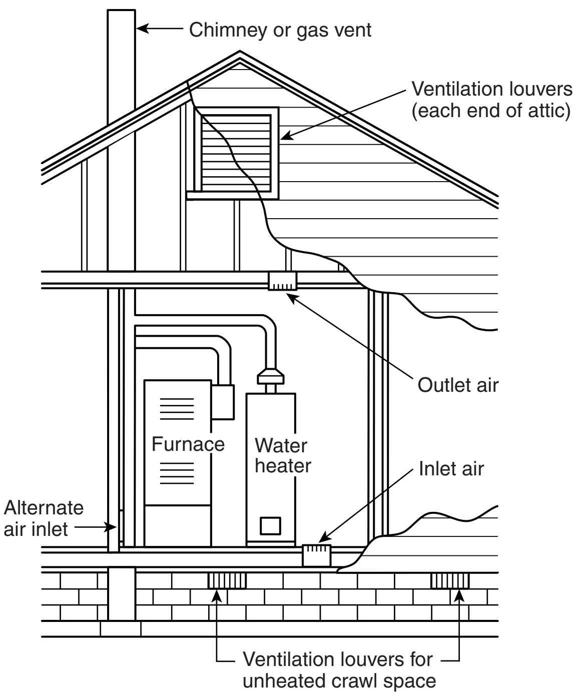


***FIGURE A.9.3.3.1(1)(a)** All Combustion Air from Outdoors — Inlet Air from Ventilated Crawl Space and Outlet Air to Ventilated Attic.*

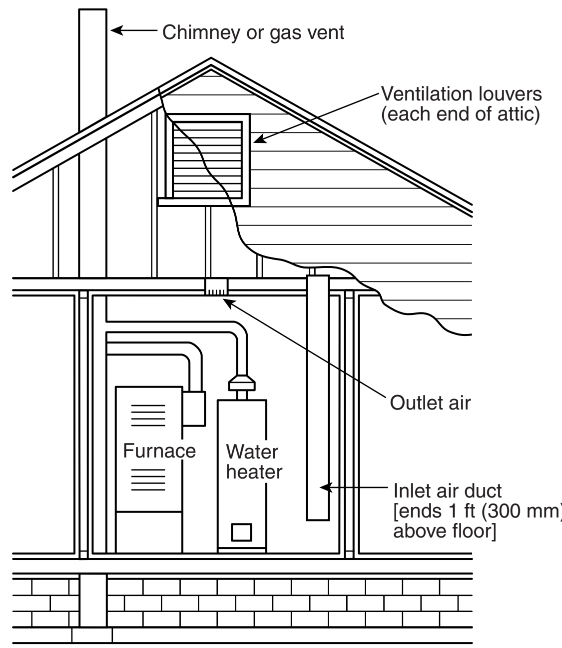


***FIGURE A.9.3.3.1(1)(b)** All Combustion Air from Outdoors Through Ventilated Attic.*

A.9.3.3.1(2) See Figure A.9.3.3.1(2).

9.3.3.2* One Permanent Opening Method. One permanent opening, commencing within 12 in. (300 mm) of the top of the enclosure, shall be provided. The appliance shall have clearances of at least 1 in. (25 mm) from the sides and back and 6 in. (150 mm) from the front of the appliance. The opening shall directly communicate with the outdoors or shall communicate through a vertical or horizontal duct to the outdoors or spaces that freely communicate with the outdoors and shall have a minimum free area of the following:

(1) 1 in.^{2}/3000 Btu/hr (700 mm^2/kW) of the total input rating of all appliances located in the enclosure
(2) Not less than the sum of the areas of all vent connectors in the space

WORKSHEET 9.3

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: SIZING COMBUSTION AIR OPENINGS

Step 1:
- Enter the input ratings of all appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.
- Proceed to either Part A, Part B, or Part C.

Table 1 Ratings for Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	100,000
Water heater	45,000
Space heater	
Total	145,000

A. All air from outdoors via two permanent openings (or vertical ducts).

Step 2:
- Where all air is to be taken from the outdoors, divide the total input of all gas appliances in the space by 4000.

Total input: 145,000 /4000 = 36.25 in.²/opening

Step 3:
- Select a duct with the area needed.
- Use Table 2 to calculate for square or round ducts. For other sizes or rectangular shapes, the duct size can be calculated.

Square duct: 6 in. 6 in. = 36 in.²
Round duct: 7 in. round = 38.5 in.²

Table 2 Sizes for Square and Round Ducts

Area of square ducts		Area of round ducts	
Side (in.)	Area (in.)	Diameter (in.)	Area (in.²)
3	9	3	7.1
4	16	4	12.6
5	25	5	19.6
6	36	6	28.3
7	49	7	38.5
8	64	8	50.2
10	100	10	78.5
12	144	12	113.0

B. All air from the outdoors via two horizontal ducts.

Step 2:
- Where all air is to be taken from the outdoors, divide the total input of all gas appliances in the space by 2000.

Total input: 145,000 /2000 = 73 in.²/opening

Step 3:
- Select a duct with the area needed.
- Use Table 2 to calculate for square or round ducts. For other sizes or rectangular shapes, the duct size can be calculated.

Square duct: 10 in. 10 in. = 100 in.²
Round duct: 10 in. round = 78.5 in.²

C. All air from the outdoors via one opening.

Step 2:
- Where all air is to be taken from the outdoors using one opening, divide the total input of all appliances in the space by 3000.

Total input: 145,000 /3000 = 48 in.²

Provide one 7 in. square duct or one 8 in. round duct.

Step 3:
- Check minimum clearances: side and back, 1 in.; front, 6 in.

Side and back: 1 in.
Front: 6 in.
Clearances OK? (Check one) Yes ☑ No ❑

Step 4:
- Check that total vent connector area is less than or equal to the opening area (Step 2).

Furnace connector diameter = 5 in.
Divide by 2 = 2.5 in.
Squared = 6.25 3.14 = 19.63 in.²
Water heater connector diameter = 4 in.
Divide by 2 = 2 in.
Squared = 4.00 3.14 = 12.56 in.²
Total vent connector area = 32.19 in.²

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Size of Combustion Air Openings.

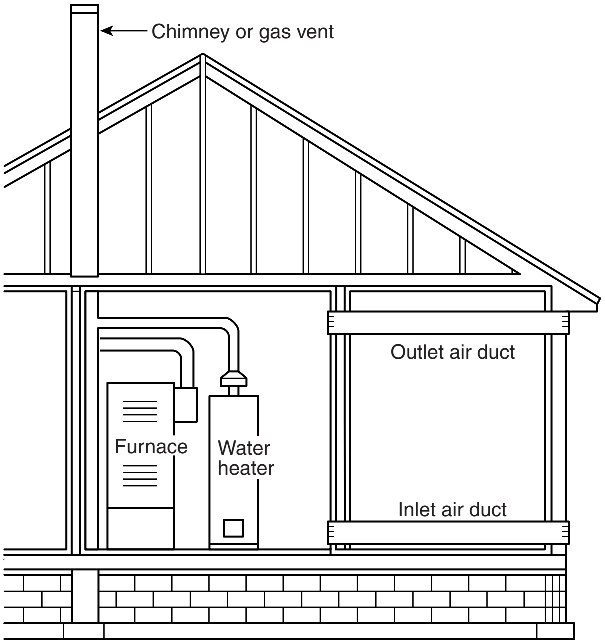


FIGURE A.9.3.3.1(2) All Combustion Air from Outdoors Through Horizontal Ducts.

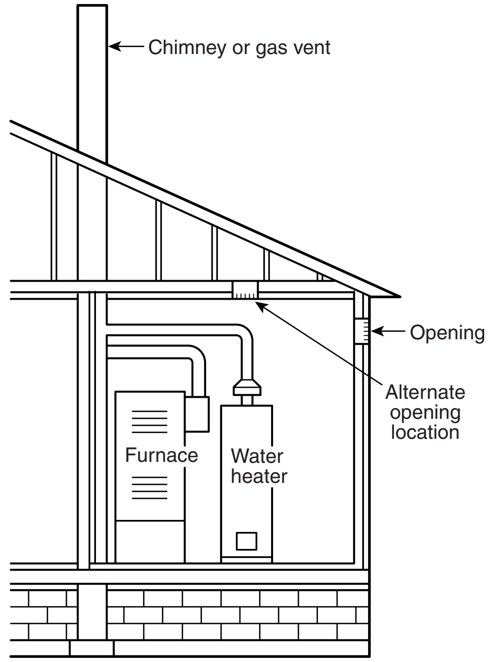


FIGURE A.9.3.3.2 All Combustion Air from Outdoors Through Single Combustion Air Opening.

Gas Research Institute Report Number GRI 93/0316, "Analysis of Combustion Air Openings to the Outdoors: Preliminary Results," identifies the second method for sizing outdoor air openings, which allows one high opening to be used rather than one high and one low opening. This method enables the combustion and ventilation air openings to be smaller, thereby reducing freezing water in pipes and limiting low temperatures in appliance rooms.

Section C of Worksheet 9.4 shows how to size a single air opening.

A.9.3.3.2 See Figure A.9.3.3.2.

9.3.4 Combination Indoor and Outdoor Combustion Air. The use of a combination of indoor and outdoor combustion air shall be in accordance with the following:

(1) *Indoor openings.* Where used, openings connecting the interior spaces shall comply with 9.3.2.3.
(2) *Outdoor opening(s) location.* Outdoor opening(s) shall be located in accordance with 9.3.3.
(3) *Outdoor opening(s) size.* The outdoor opening(s) size shall be calculated in accordance with the following:
   (a) The ratio of the interior spaces shall be the available volume of all communicating spaces divided by the required volume.
   (b) The outdoor size reduction factor shall be 1 minus the ratio of interior spaces.
   (c) The minimum size of outdoor opening(s) shall be the full size of outdoor opening(s) calculated in accordance with 9.3.3, multiplied by the reduction factor. The minimum dimension of air openings shall not be less than 3 in. (80 mm).

Using a combination of indoor and outdoor air to meet the air requirement for combustion has advantages in many installations. If the required volume cannot be obtained inside the building, it can be used to minimize the size of openings to the outdoors. Smaller openings mean less unheated air in the winter and less non-air-conditioned air leakage in the summer.

WORKSHEET 9.4

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: REDUCED BUILDING AREA OPENINGS

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume: Room length: 15 ft
Room width: 10 ft
Room height: 8 ft

Room volume: = Length × width × height
= 1200 ft^3

Step 2:

- Calculate the total input of all appliances in the room.
- Enter the input rating of all appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.
- Divide the total (room volume) by 1000 (of Btu/hr).

Table 1 Appliances Table

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	100,000
Water heater	45,000
Space heater	
Range	
Other	
Total	145,000
Total/1000	145

Step 3:

- Calculate the required volume.
- Enter the available room volume (Step 1).

Required volume:
= 50 ft^3 per 1000 Btu/hr (total/1000)
= 50 × 145
= 7250

Available room volume:
= 1200 ft^3

Step 4:

- Calculate the percentage of required volume that is available in the room.

Percentage of volume available: $= \frac{\text{Available volume}}{\text{Required volume}} \times 100$
$= \frac{1{,}200}{7{,}250} \times 100$
= 17 %

Step 5:

- Calculate the percentage of volume required.

Percentage of volume available: = 100% – 17 %
= 83 %

Step 6:

- Calculate the reduced opening area.

Reduced opening = Required area × percentage reduction
= 36.25 in.^{2} × 83 %
= 30.09 in.^{2} or
or two 5 1/2 in.^{2} by 5 1/2 in.^{2} openings.

CAUTION: Do not apply to one opening.

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Size of Reduced Building Area Openings.

The requirements in 9.3.4 for sizing the outdoor air openings are similar to the requirements in 9.3.3 for outside combustion air only, but they allow proportionally smaller openings. The two high/low openings or the single high opening to the outdoors can be reduced in proportion to the fraction with which the communicating volume complies, with the volume determined using the standard method or KAIR method. Note that the size calculation method in 9.3.4(3) to size outdoor openings cannot be used to reduce the size of openings to other rooms or spaces within the building.

For example, if the communicating volume amounted to 25 ft^3/1000 Btu/hr (2.4 m^3/kW), which is 50 percent of what is needed, then the openings to the outdoors could be reduced 50 percent. The provision is easy to apply if the following principles are understood:

1. The applicable indoor volume includes the volume of the room that directly holds the appliances and the volumes of all adjoining rooms that comply with 9.3.2.3. It may be necessary to provide two high/low openings between rooms.
2. If part of the volume is that of adjoining rooms, the size of the high/low openings between the rooms must be per the requirements of 9.3.2.3(1).
3. The calculation should begin by determining the required volume, the actual communicating volume, and the normal free area of the openings to the outdoors as required by 9.3.3.

An example of how to calculate the size of the opening to the exterior is found in Worksheet 9.3. An example of the use of a combination of indoor and outdoor air for combustion is shown in Annex I.

See Annex I for more information.

9.3.5 Engineered Installations. Engineered combustion air installations shall provide an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation, and dilution air and shall be approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Some commercial and industrial gas appliances use fans to power the vent, making engineering calculations necessary for installations where the requirements of 9.3.3 are not relevant. It is imperative that only engineers thoroughly familiar with all aspects of the subject perform the calculations. Appliance manufacturers often provide assistance.

The free area required for make-up air called for in 9.3.3.1 assumes that the driving force moving air into the room where appliances are installed is the room pressure reduction caused by the operation of the vent. In other words, the removal of the heated products of combustion by the vent reduces the amount of air in the room in which the appliance is installed. The result is a small reduction in room pressure, forcing air into the room through all available openings. Large commercial and industrial appliances frequently incorporate forced air fans, which provide greater driving force than "natural" vents. This greater force moves more air through a given size opening, permitting a smaller opening than 9.3.3 allows.

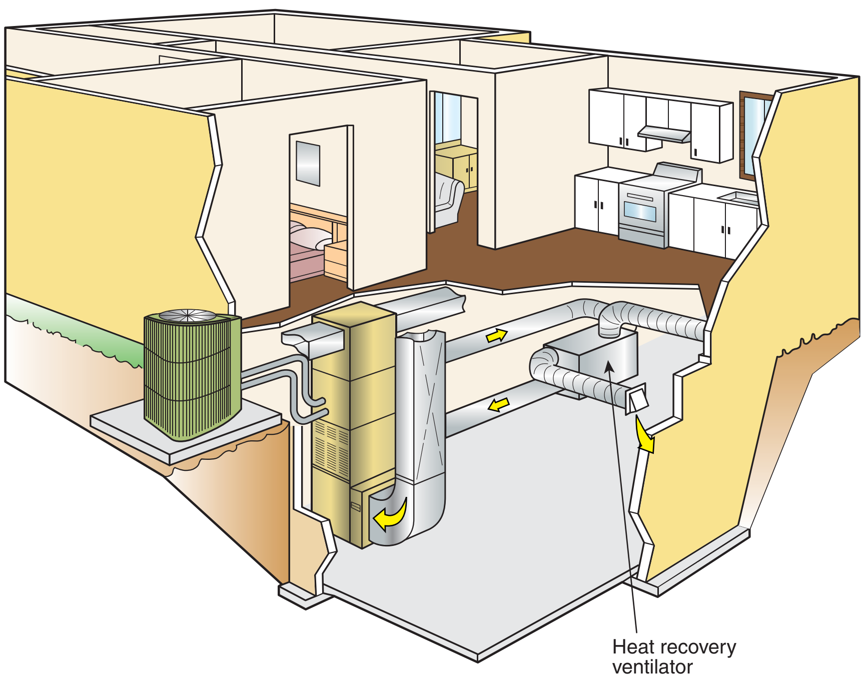
With an emphasis on energy conservation, many builders and homeowners are sealing their homes to minimize air infiltration. This tight construction can lead to many problems, such as reduced combustion air and increased indoor air pollution. The use of heat recovery ventilators (HRVs) is one method to minimize heat loss due to infiltration and to maintain sufficient air for combustion and ventilation. See Exhibit 9.12 for an illustration of an HRV. The HRV draws fresh, outside air into the dwelling and exhausts stale, indoor air to the outdoors. These two airstreams pass through a heat exchanger, warming or cooling the incoming outdoor air using the energy from the outgoing, conditioned indoor air, thereby minimizing energy loss.

HRVs can make up for a lack of combustion and ventilation air. For each cubic foot (cubic meter) of gas burned, a natural draft (draft hood) furnace requires about 21 ft^3/hr or 0.35 ft^3/min (0.6 m^3/hr or 0.17 L/sec), and a fan-assisted combustion system furnace needs about 15 ft^3/hr or 0.25 ft^3/min (0.4 m^3/hr or 0.11 L/sec) of air. Therefore, a 100,000 Btu/hr (29.3 kW) natural draft (draft hood) furnace would require 35 ft^3/min (1 m^3/min) to meet its combustion and ventilation air requirements.

FAQ When an HRV is used to provide the combustion air (in lieu of openings) for appliances, is anything additional required for its installation?

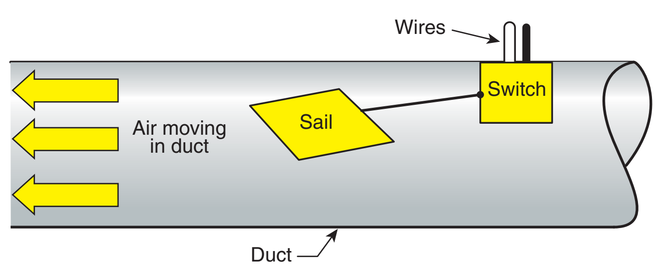
If an HRV is used to supply combustion and ventilation air, the HRV must be interlocked with the gas appliance(s) to ensure that it is operating prior to the main burner operation. If the HRV fails to operate, or if its airflow becomes restricted during gas appliance operation, the main burners must not be allowed to operate. Exhibit 9.13 shows a sail switch (in a duct with moving air) in a closed position, confirming combustion airflow and allowing the control valve of the interlocked appliance to operate. Should the air movement stop, the sail would drop and open the electrical circuit, causing the control valve to stop gas from flowing to the appliance.

EXHIBIT 9.12



Heat Recovery Ventilator with Forced Air System. (Courtesy of Carrier Corporation)

EXHIBIT 9.13



Sail Switch Operating in Closed Position.

9.3.6 Mechanical Combustion Air Supply. Where all combustion air is provided by a mechanical air supply system, the combustion air shall be supplied from outdoors at the minimum rate of 0.35 ft^3/min/1000 Btu/hr (0.034 m^3/min/kW) for all appliances located within the space.

Fans are an acceptable method of providing combustion air. When used, the mechanical system referred to in 9.3.6 must be interlocked with the main burner to prevent its operation in the event of air supply failure. (See Exhibit 9.13 for one method to interlock.) Additional air must be provided to equal air withdrawal by exhaust fans in the building. If additional air is not provided, the room in which the gas appliance is located may have insufficient air available from the supply fan. As the gas appliance operates, it will cause negative pressure in the space, and air will enter through any opening available, which could be the vent itself. Air entering through any available opening must be prevented by supplying sufficient air for the gas appliance and all building exhaust fans that can operate when the gas appliance is operating.

The minimum amount of air required, 0.35 cfm/1000 Btu/hr (0.034 m^3/min per kW), equals 21 cfh (0.6 m^3/hr) (0.35 cfm ÷ 60 min/hr = 21 cfh), which is the constant in the KAIR equation shown in 9.3.2.2(1).

9.3.6.1 Where exhaust fans are installed, additional air shall be provided to replace the exhausted air.

9.3.6.2 Each of the appliances served shall be interlocked to the mechanical air supply system to prevent main burner operation where the mechanical air supply system is not in operation.

9.3.6.3 Where combustion air is provided by the building's mechanical ventilation system, the system shall provide the specified combustion air rate in addition to the required ventilation air.

9.3.7 Louvers, Grilles, and Screens.

9.3.7.1 Louvers and Grilles. The required size of openings for combustion, ventilation, and dilution air shall be based on the net free area of each opening. Where the free area through a design of louver, grille, or screen is known, it shall be used in calculating the size opening required to provide the free area specified. Where the louver and grille design and free area are not known, it shall be assumed that wood louvers have 25 percent free area, and metal louvers and grilles have 75 percent free area. Nonmotorized louvers and grilles shall be fixed in the open position.

9.3.7.2 Minimum Screen Mesh Size. Screens shall not be smaller than ¼ in. (7 mm) mesh.

The minimum screen size requirement prevents fine mesh screens from being installed. Fine mesh screens could catch insects and debris and become blocked.

9.3.7.3 Motorized Louvers. Motorized louvers shall be interlocked with the appliance so they are proven in the full open position prior to main burner ignition and during main burner operation. Means shall be provided to prevent the main burner from igniting should the louver fail to open during burner startup and to shut down the main burner if the louvers close during burner operation.

Motorized louvers prevent the entrance of rain, snow, and unconditioned air. Motorized louvers are used where outside air is not wanted in a building when the appliance is not operating. Reasons for not wanting outside air include cold outside temperatures, which can freeze pipes, or retention of heat when the appliance is not operating in the winter in cold climates. All outside openings should be screened to be no smaller than ¼ in. (7 mm) mesh. Smaller screen size could collect airborne material that could block the screen.

Louvers can be fixed in the open position, or they must be interlocked with the appliance to ensure that they are open during main burner operation. Louvers must be in the open position to ensure adequate combustion and ventilation air. Without adequate air, there is a strong possibility of incomplete combustion, which can produce toxic gases such as carbon monoxide. Carbon monoxide is an odorless, tasteless, invisible gas that can be poisonous in high concentrations or over an extended period of time.

9.3.8 Combustion Air Ducts. Combustion air ducts shall comply with 9.3.8.1 through 9.3.8.8.

9.3.8.1 Ducts shall be constructed of galvanized steel or a material having equivalent corrosion resistance, strength, and rigidity.

Exception: Within dwellings units, unobstructed stud and joist spaces shall not be prohibited from conveying combustion air, provided that not more than one fireblock is removed.

9.3.8.2 Ducts shall terminate in an unobstructed space, allowing free movement of combustion air to the appliances.

9.3.8.3 Ducts shall serve a single space.

9.3.8.4 Ducts shall not serve both upper and lower combustion air openings where both such openings are used. The separation between ducts serving upper and lower combustion air openings shall be maintained to the source of combustion air.

9.3.8.5 Ducts shall not be screened where terminating in an attic space.

9.3.8.6 Horizontal upper combustion air ducts shall not slope downward toward the source of combustion air.

The requirements for combustion air ducts provide minimum specifications for combustion air duct materials and installation. The requirement that the combustion air duct must not slope down and away from the appliance is intended to prevent a "trap" from being formed by the duct, which could impede the duct's flow.

9.3.8.7 The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent, or plastic piping installed within a masonry, metal, or factory built chimney shall not be used to supply combustion air.

Exception: Direct vent appliances designed for installation in a solid fuel–burning fireplace where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

FAQ Why is using the air space in a chimney, around a gas vent, prohibited as a source of combustion air?

Using the space surrounding a chimney liner or gas vent is prohibited, unless for a direct-vent appliance specifically listed for such use, because of the possibility of leakage from the liner or vent being drawn into the building. The use of this space is of special concern because the chimney liner or gas vent cannot be inspected. Direct-vent appliances are listed under standards that require that combustion air passages be connected directly to the combustion chamber, with no openings to the space around the appliance. Also, venting and combustion air passages of direct-vent appliances must be "tight" and are subjected to leakage tests as part of their approval.

9.3.8.8 Combustion air intake openings located on the exterior of the building shall have the lowest side of the combustion air intake openings located at least 12 in. (300 mm) vertically from the adjoining finished ground level.

The elevation height of 12 in. (300 mm) must be measured from the finished ground level. The requirement recognizes that, in new construction projects, landscaping usually takes place after all construction is done. The installer must anticipate the specifications of the finished ground level, which requires some judgment or research on the part of the installer.

There is a possibility of snow covering the inlet. In areas of high snowfall, the installer should consider a higher minimum elevation above finished ground level, based on experience with local snowfalls.

9.4 Appliances on Roofs

Roof installations are common in commercial and industrial installations as a way to make more interior building space available.

9.4.1 General.

9.4.1.1 Appliances on roofs shall be designed or enclosed so as to withstand climatic conditions in the area in which they are installed. Where enclosures are provided, each enclosure shall permit easy entry and movement, shall be of reasonable height, and shall have at least a 30 in. (760 mm) clearance between the entire service access panel(s) of the appliance and the wall of the enclosure.

9.4.1.2 Roofs on which appliances are to be installed shall be capable of supporting the additional load or shall be reinforced to support the additional load.

9.4.1.3 All access locks, screws, and bolts shall be of corrosion-resistant material.

Many gas-fired appliances for rooftop installations are listed for outdoor installation with their own integral vent system. An enclosure, if provided for a conventional furnace, must follow the guidelines given in 9.4.1. Any permanent structure on the roof must be designed in accordance with local building codes.

9.4.2 Installation of Appliances on Roofs.

9.4.2.1 Appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.

9.4.2.2 Appliances shall be installed on a well-drained surface of the roof. At least 6 ft (1.8 m) of clearance shall be available between any part of the appliance and the edge of a roof or similar hazard, or rigidly fixed rails, guards, parapets, or other building structures at least 42 in. (1.1 m) in height shall be provided on the exposed side.

9.4.2.3 All appliances requiring an external source of electrical power for its operation shall be provided with the following:

(1) A readily accessible electrical disconnecting means within sight of the appliance that completely de-energizes the appliance
(2) A 120 V ac grounding-type receptacle outlet on the roof adjacent to the appliance on the supply side of the disconnect switch

9.4.2.4 Where water stands on the roof at the appliance or in the passageways to the appliance, or where the roof is of a design having a water seal, a suitable platform, walkway, or both shall be provided above the water line. Such platform(s) or walkway(s) shall be located adjacent to the appliance and control panels so that the appliance can be safely serviced where water stands on the roof.

A service platform, such as the one shown in Exhibit 9.14, of at least 30 in. (760 mm) in depth should be provided on the side(s) of a unit that has access panels for service and maintenance. The installer must provide a means of access to the appliance in all anticipated weather conditions for the area. Local building codes may have more restrictive requirements for clearances to the edge of the roof and for the location and placement of guardrails.

EXHIBIT 9.14

Example of an Appliance Roof Installation. (Courtesy of Carrier Corporation)

9.4.3 Access to Appliances on Roofs.

Some types of buildings have specific requirements for access to roofs. For example, in most cases, single-story dwellings may use a portable ladder to provide access to the roof. *NFPA 5000*®, *Building Construction and Safety Code*®, requires the following:

> **4.6 Roof Access.**
>
> **4.6.1** Means of access to the roof shall be provided in accordance with Section 4.6 in cases where the roof is flat, or the roof has a pitch less than 3 in 12, and the structure either is four or more stories in height or the roof is 40 ft (12 m) or more above grade plane.
>
> **4.6.2** Where required by 4.6.1, at least one means of access to the roof shall be provided. Additional access shall be provided at the rate of one access for each 100,000 ft^2 (9300 m^2) of roof area.
>
> **4.6.3** Where roof access is required, at least one means of access shall be provided by stairs complying with 11.2.2.3. Additional roof access using ladders in accordance with 11.2.9 or alternating tread devices in accordance with 11.2.1 shall be permitted.
>
> **4.6.4*** Where roof access is required, such access shall be provided with a door that is readily operable from both sides by fire department personnel.

9.4.3.1 Appliances located on roofs or other elevated locations shall be accessible.

9.4.3.2 Buildings of more than 15 ft (4.6 m) in height shall have an inside means of access to the roof, unless other means acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction are used.

The building height of 15 ft (4.6 m) is a somewhat arbitrary figure, but this requirement means that all two-story buildings must have a "ready" means of access to the roof. Some jurisdictions permit an exterior ladder but, in the interest of security, require either that the lower portion be removable and be kept on the premises or that a locking door be placed over the lower 8 ft (2.4 m) of the ladder. Because building codes vary on roof access requirements, a building official should be consulted if questions arise to ensure that the installation meets both the *National Fuel Gas Code* requirements and local building code requirements.

9.4.3.3 The inside means of access shall be a permanent or foldaway inside stairway or ladder, terminating in an enclosure, scuttle, or trapdoor. Such scuttles or trapdoors shall be at least 22 in. × 24 in. (560 mm × 610 mm) in size, shall open easily and safely under all conditions, especially snow, and shall be constructed so as to permit access from the roof side unless deliberately locked on the inside. At least 6 ft (1.8 m) of clearance shall be available between the access opening and the edge of the roof or similar hazard, or rigidly fixed rails or guards a minimum of 42 in. (1.1 m) in height shall be provided on the exposed side. Where parapets or other building structures are utilized in lieu of guards or rails, they shall be a minimum of 42 in. (1.1 m) in height.

If access from the roof scuttle is to a sloping roof or to a roof that is designed to hold water, then a walkway with a level 30 in. (760 mm) working space may be required to provide ready access to the appliance. If the unit is closer than 6 ft (1.8 m) to the edge of the roof, guards, such as railings or parapets, must be provided to ensure the safety of service personnel.

The user should note that the 22 in. × 24 in. (560 mm × 610 mm) opening is a minimum requirement and may not be large enough for replacing an appliance or appliance parts. The installer should keep this in mind when sizing any roof access opening, and the local building and mechanical codes should be checked because either may require a larger opening.

9.4.3.4 Permanent lighting shall be provided at the roof access. The switch for such lighting shall be located inside the building near the access means leading to the roof.

9.5 Appliances in Attics

9.5.1 Attic Access. An attic in which an appliance is installed shall be accessible through an opening and passageway at least as large as the largest component of the appliance and not less than 22 in. × 30 in. (560 mm × 760 mm).

9.5.1.1 Where the height of the passageway is less than 6 ft (1.8 m), the distance from the passageway access to the appliance shall not exceed 20 ft (6.1 m) measured along the centerline of the passageway.

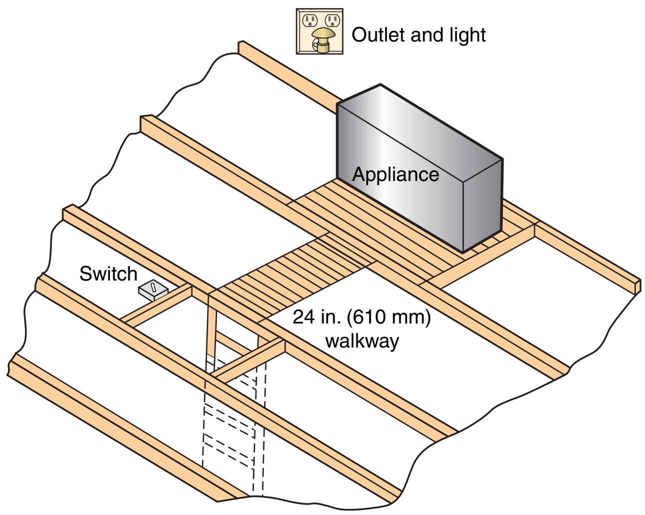
9.5.1.2 The passageway shall be unobstructed and shall have solid flooring not less than 24 in. (610 mm) wide from the entrance opening to the appliance.

See Exhibit 9.15 for an illustration of an attic installation with adequate access to the appliance.

9.5.2 Work Platform. A level working platform not less than 30 in. × 30 in. (760 mm × 760 mm) shall be provided in front of the service side of the appliance.

While the installation of a work platform may seem to be a matter of common sense, such a platform is not always provided. Service and repairs can be difficult and costly without a work platform.

EXHIBIT 9.15



Attic Access and Installation.

9.5.3 Lighting and Convenience Outlet. A permanent 120 V receptacle outlet and a lighting fixture shall be installed near the appliance. The switch controlling the lighting fixture shall be located at the entrance to the passageway.

A convenience electrical outlet and a light switch at the access opening are required at an appliance. This requirement allows service personnel to use power tools if they are needed and to have the ability to see the appliance clearly.

9.6 Appliance and Equipment Connections to Building Piping

9.6.1 Connecting Appliances and Equipment. Appliances and equipment shall be connected to the building piping in compliance with 9.6.5 through 9.6.7 by one of the following:

(1) Rigid metallic pipe and fittings.

There are several ways to connect appliances to a gas piping system in a building. Some appliances are connected directly to the piping system (i.e., boilers and furnaces), but the majority of appliances use a connector, which provides the ability to move the appliance without disconnecting it from the piping system.

(2) Semirigid metallic tubing and metallic fittings. Aluminum alloy tubing shall not be used in exterior locations.

Semirigid metallic tubing can be used to connect appliances to building piping systems. Traditionally, copper tubing was the only material available. With the introduction of corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST), a second material is now available. [See 9.6.1(5).] However, note that 9.6.1.2 requires connectors installed through an opening in an appliance housing to be protected against damage. The protective coating or sheath provided on tubing does not provide protection against abrasion damage caused by expansion/contraction or vibration during operation of the appliance.

(3) A listed connector in compliance with ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10, *Connectors for Gas Appliances*. The connector shall be used in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and shall be in the same room as the appliance. Only one connector shall be used per appliance.

Listed gas connectors are the most common means of connecting residential appliances such as ranges and gas dryers. Other codes require listed connectors for water heaters in many seismically active areas.

(4) A listed connector in compliance with ANSI Z21.75/CSA 6.27, *Connectors for Outdoor Gas Appliances and Manufactured Homes*. Only one connector shall be used per appliance.
(5) CSST where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

FAQ Can CSST be used as a connector?

NFPA 54 does not prohibit the use of CSST as a connector. Because CSST is a listed product, its use must follow the terms of the listing, which are part of the manufacturer's installation instructions. In addition, protection against physical damage must be provided if the CSST is installed through an opening in the appliance housing, cabinet, or casing, as required in 9.6.1.2.

(6) Listed nonmetallic gas hose connectors in accordance with 9.6.2.
(7) Unlisted gas hose connectors for use in laboratories and educational facilities in accordance with 9.6.3.

9.6.1.1 Protection of Connectors. Connectors and tubing addressed in 9.6.1(2), 9.6.1(3), 9.6.1(4), 9.6.1(5), and 9.6.1(6) shall be installed to be protected against physical and thermal damage. Aluminum alloy tubing and connectors shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where they are in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or are subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as detergents, sewage, or water other than rainwater.

9.6.1.2 Materials addressed in 9.6.1(2), 9.6.1(3), 9.6.1(4), 9.6.1(5), and 9.6.1(6) shall not be installed through an opening in an appliance housing, cabinet, or casing, unless the tubing or connector is protected against damage.

The requirement in 9.6.1.2, which was relocated from 9.6.1(8), addresses a number of fires where thin wall piping materials and connectors passing through appliance housings were reported to have failed, resulting in gas leakage. While there is no clear evidence of the cause of the failures, the code requires connection of these materials to be outside the "envelope" of the appliance if not protected. Installing a grommet to prevent chafing of the connector is a method of protecting thin wall tubing and connectors against damage. Installers of furnaces and boilers should take note of this requirement.

9.6.1.3 Commercial Cooking Appliance Connectors. Connectors used with commercial cooking appliances that are moved for cleaning and sanitation purposes shall be installed in accordance with the connector manufacturer's installation instructions. Such connectors shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16, *Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances*.

Connectors for commercial cooking appliances differ from those for residential appliances and can be identified as being listed to ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16. These connectors are intended for appliances that are moved frequently for cleaning, such as fryers in fast food restaurants. These connectors typically come with a cable that restrains the rolling appliance and prevents overextension and possible damage to the connector. Residential connectors are not designed for such service and can present a hazard if improperly used for commercial cooking appliances.

9.6.1.4 Restraint. Movement of appliances with casters shall be limited by a restraining device installed in accordance with the connector and appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.

This requirement was added in the 2009 edition to recognize that appliances with casters are moved and that this movement must be limited to prevent stretching the connector, which could possibly shorten its life.

9.6.1.5* Suspended Low-Intensity Infrared Tube Heaters. Suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters shall be connected to the building piping system with a connector listed for the application in accordance with ANSI Z21.24/CGA 6.10, *Connectors for Gas Appliances*.

(A) The connector shall be installed in accordance with the tube heater installation instructions and shall be in the same room as the appliance.

(B) Only one connector shall be used per appliance.

This requirement recognizes several reported failures in piping systems and piping connections for suspended low-intensity infrared tube heaters. In these incidents, the appliances were connected using rigid pipe or semirigid metallic tubing. These failures occurred due to vibrations created by the heaters, causing fatigue in the piping. Therefore, a listed gas connector is now required.

A.9.6.1.5 The expansion and contraction of the heater and the vibration from the blower motor can lead to work hardening of the rigid pipe or semirigid metallic tubing, which can ultimately lead to fractures and leakage. Connectors for this type of heater should have adequate flexibility, temperature rating, and vibration resistance to accommodate the characteristics of the heater. Such flexible connectors for suspended heaters should meet the following criteria:

(1) Be determined to be appropriate for the application
(2) Be specified by the heater manufacturer
(3) Be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions

9.6.2 Use of Nonmetallic Gas Hose Connectors. Listed gas hose connectors shall be used in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and as follows:

(1) *Indoor.* Indoor gas hose connectors shall be used only to connect laboratory, shop, and ironing appliances requiring mobility during operation and installed in accordance with the following:
  (a) An appliance shutoff valve shall be installed where the connector is attached to the building piping.
  (b) The connector shall be of minimum length and shall not exceed 6 ft (1.8 m).
  (c) The connector shall not be concealed and shall not extend from one room to another or pass through wall partitions, ceilings, or floors.
(2) *Outdoor.* Where outdoor gas hose connectors are used to connect portable outdoor appliances, the connector shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.54, *Gas Hose Connectors for Portable Outdoor Gas-Fired Appliances* and installed in accordance with the following:
  (a) An appliance shutoff valve, a listed quick-disconnect device, or a listed gas convenience outlet shall be installed where the connector is attached to the supply piping and in such a manner so as to prevent the accumulation of water or foreign matter.
  (b) This connection shall be made only in the outdoor area where the appliance is to be used.

Indoor gas hose connectors may be used only to connect appliances requiring mobility, such as laboratory, shop, and ironing appliances. The connector must be listed and connected to a listed manual shutoff valve immediately before the gas hose. In some applications, it is customary to disconnect the hose connector from either the appliance or the manual shutoff valve when the appliance is not in use. It is not necessary to plug or cap the outlet of the shutoff valve when the hose connector is disconnected, but the connection should be plugged to prevent accidental gas leakage.

9.6.3* Injection (Bunsen) burners used in laboratories and educational facilities shall be permitted to be connected to the gas supply by an unlisted hose.

Code Update

This new subsection was added to the 2015 edition to recognize that Bunsen burners in laboratories and classrooms are often temporarily connected to the fuel gas system by an unlisted hose. These installations are generally supervised and have not resulted in incidents reported to NFPA.

A.9.6.3 Laboratory burners, commonly called Bunsen burners, are a type of burner used in laboratories. The original Bunsen burner was invented by Robert Bunsen in 1852. The use of the term in NFPA 54 is intended to include all types of portable laboratory burners used in laboratories and educational facilities.

9.6.4 Connection of Portable and Mobile Industrial Appliances.

9.6.4.1 Where portable industrial appliances or appliances requiring mobility or subject to vibration are connected to the building gas piping system by the use of a flexible hose, the hose shall be suitable and safe for the conditions under which it can be used.

9.6.4.2 Where industrial appliances requiring mobility are connected to the rigid piping by the use of swivel joints or couplings, the swivel joints or couplings shall be suitable for the service required and only the minimum number required shall be installed.

9.6.4.3 Where industrial appliances subject to vibration are connected to the building piping system by the use of all metal flexible connectors, the connectors shall be suitable for the service required.

9.6.4.4 Where flexible connections are used, they shall be of the minimum practical length and shall not extend from one room to another or pass through any walls, partitions, ceilings, or floors. Flexible connections shall not be used in any concealed location. They shall be protected against physical or thermal damage and shall be provided with gas shutoff valves in readily accessible locations in rigid piping upstream from the flexible connections.

9.6.5 Appliance Shutoff Valves and Connections. Each appliance connected to a piping system shall have an accessible, approved manual shutoff valve with a nondisplaceable valve member, or a listed gas convenience outlet. Appliance shutoff valves and convenience outlets shall serve a single appliance only and shall be installed in accordance with 9.6.5.1.

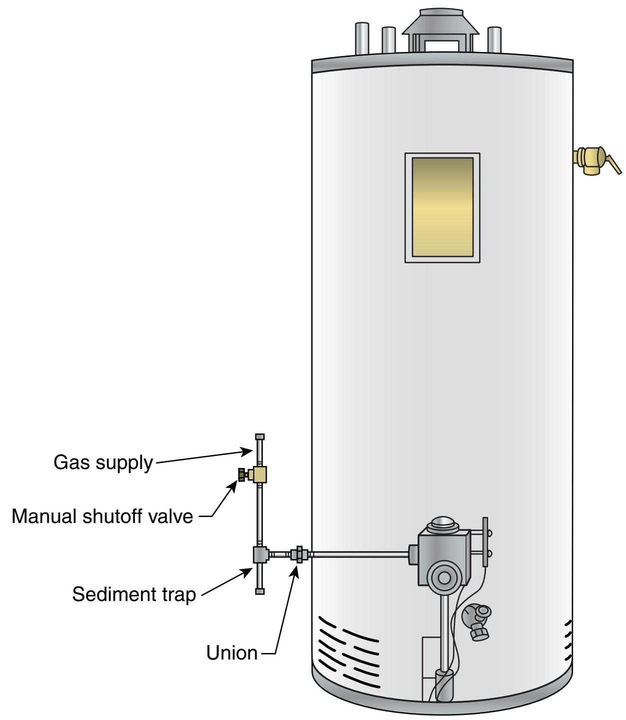
A manual shutoff valve is intended to isolate an appliance for servicing, removal, or replacement without shutting off the gas supply to other appliances. This valve is not an emergency shutoff valve. The shutoff valve located outside the building provides for that need. (See 7.9.2.3.) The manual shutoff may be used to isolate certain appliances from the building piping system during pressure testing that is required in Section 8.1. Because the appliance shutoff valve is not an emergency shutoff valve, it does not have to be readily accessible. Exhibit 9.16 illustrates a common shutoff valve location.

The appliance shutoff valve must be an approved manual shutoff valve and, if a connector is used, it must be installed before the connector and within 6 ft (1.8 m) of the appliance. Shutoff valves that are 1 in. National Pipe Thread (NPT) and smaller must be listed. (See Section 5.12.)

FAQ A listed decorative gas appliance has a door beneath the hearth that has the control valve and related piping. Can the appliance shutoff valve be located in this space?

The code permits shutoff valves that serve decorative gas appliances to be installed in fireplaces if listed for such use.

EXHIBIT 9.16



Shutoff Valve Location.

9.6.5.1 The shutoff valve shall be located within 6 ft (1.8 m) of the appliance it serves except as permitted in 9.6.5.2 or 9.6.5.3.

(A) Where a connector is used, the valve shall be installed upstream of the connector. A union or flanged connection shall be provided downstream from the valve to permit removal of appliance controls.

(B) Shutoff valves serving decorative appliances shall be permitted to be installed in fireplaces if listed for such use.

The requirements in 9.6.5.1(A) and 9.6.5.1(B) recognize the difficulty in locating appliance shutoff valves (typically serving gas logs or space heaters) within 6 ft (1.8 m) of appliances installed in vented fireplaces. Note that the location of the valve is limited to the run of piping, and service personnel can trace the pipe to locate the valve. Also note that piping beyond 6 ft (1.8 m) from the appliance must meet the requirements for piping materials in the code, and multiple connectors cannot be used.

9.6.5.2 Shutoff valves serving appliances installed in vented fireplaces and ventless firebox enclosures shall not be required to be located within 6 ft (1.8 m) of the appliance where such valves are readily accessible and permanently identified. The piping from the shutoff valve to within 6 ft (1.8 m) of the appliance shall be designed, sized, installed, and tested in accordance with Chapters 5, 6, 7, and 8.

9.6.5.3 Where installed at a manifold, the appliance shutoff valve shall be located within 50 ft (15 m) of the appliance served and shall be readily accessible and permanently identified. The piping from the manifold to within 6 ft (1.8 m) of the appliance shall be designed, sized, installed, and tested in accordance with Chapters 5, 6, 7, and 8.

Appliance shutoff valves in a building can be located at a manifold no more than 50 ft (15 m) from the most remote appliance. This system has been successfully used in Canada for many years. As the appliance shutoff valve is not an emergency valve, safety is not compromised.

9.6.6 Quick-Disconnect Devices.

A listed quick-disconnect device often is used as one of the end fittings of a listed gas appliance connector or listed gas hose. The device functions as a manual gas shutoff in that, when it is manually disconnected, the device is designed to shut off the flow of gas before the disconnection is made. The more common designs use a spring-loaded poppet valve, which is internal to the device.

9.6.6.1 Quick-disconnect devices used to connect appliances to the building piping shall be listed to ANSI Z21.41/CSA 6.9, *Quick-Disconnect Devices for Use with Gas Fuel Appliances*.

Quick-disconnect devices are used to connect portable gas cooking appliances, such as gas grills, and are used for some industrial appliances.

9.6.6.2 Where installed indoors, an approved manual shutoff valve with a nondisplaceable valve member shall be installed upstream of the quick-disconnect device.

9.6.7 Gas Convenience Outlets. Gas convenience outlets shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.90, *Gas Convenience Outlets and Optional Enclosures*, and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Gas convenience outlets were added to the code in anticipation of portable, "plug-in" gas appliances, which have yet to be made commercially available. A gas convenience outlet is shown in Exhibit 9.17.

EXHIBIT 9.17

Gas Convenience Outlet and Fitting. (Courtesy of NAHB Research Center)

9.6.8 Sediment Trap. Where a sediment trap is not incorporated as a part of the appliance, a sediment trap shall be installed downstream of the appliance shutoff valve as close to the inlet of the appliance as practical at the time of appliance installation. The sediment trap shall be either a tee fitting with a capped nipple in the bottom outlet, as illustrated in Figure 9.6.8, or another device recognized as an effective sediment trap. Illuminating appliances, gas ranges, clothes dryers, decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces, gas fireplaces, and outdoor cooking appliances shall not be required to be so equipped.

Sediment traps are required where automatically operated appliances are installed, if they are not incorporated in the appliance. Refer to commentary following 7.6.3.

9.6.9 Installation of Piping. Piping shall be installed in a manner not to interfere with inspection, maintenance, or servicing of the appliances.

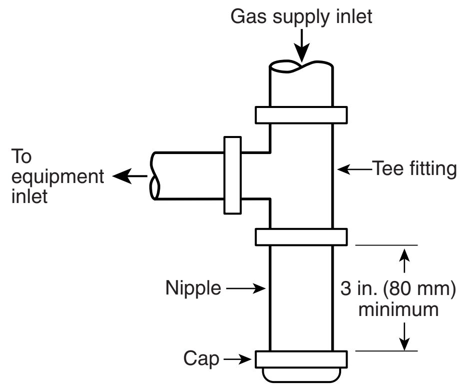


FIGURE 9.6.8 *Method of Installing a Tee Fitting Sediment Trap.*

9.7 Electrical

9.7.1 Electrical Connections. Electrical connections between appliances and the building wiring, including the grounding of the appliances, shall conform to *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

Article 422 in *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®* (*NEC®*), covers the requirement for appliances, and *NEC,* Article 440, covers the installation of appliances that also contain hermetic refrigeration motor compressors, which are found in many combination "gas–electric" rooftop units that provide heating and cooling. *NEC,* Article 250, Part V and Part VI, covers bonding and grounding requirements for appliances.

9.7.2 Electrical Ignition and Control Devices. Electrical ignition, burner control, and electrical vent damper devices shall not permit unsafe operation of the appliance in the event of electrical power interruption or when the power is restored.

FAQ What is meant by the term *unsafe operation* in 9.7.2?

While the term *unsafe operation* is not defined in this code, the flow of unignited gas when power is restored after a power outage is an unsafe situation and is not acceptable. Any appliance equipped with a flame safety control, such as a furnace or water heater, will not allow the flow of gas to a main burner following a shutoff of the gas supply without ignition, which is a safe condition. Appliances without flame safety devices, such as gas range burners, can create an unsafe condition if the flow of gas is stopped where an electrically operated valve is installed and electrical power is curtailed. This situation can occur if remotely operated gas valves are installed as part of a fire protection system. If a building has an alarm system that shuts off the flow of gas when fire is detected, and the flow of gas is restored, a gas range that had been left with the burners on will flow gas into the building when the fire alarm system is reset unless steps are taken to turn the burners off.

9.7.3 Electrical Circuit. The electrical circuit employed for operating the automatic main gas control valve, automatic pilot, room temperature thermostat, limit control, or other electrical devices used with the appliances shall be in accordance with the wiring diagrams certified or approved by the original appliance manufacturer.

Appliance wiring diagrams are included with appliances, usually inside one of the access panels, and also are typically shown in the installation instructions. Most manufacturers also will show the necessary wiring connections for the installation of optional accessories, such as external vent dampers, humidifiers, air cleaners, and other auxiliary controls. Accessory installation instructions should be left with the appliance for future reference.

9.8 Room Temperature Thermostats

9.8.1 Locations. Room temperature thermostats shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Room thermostats generally are located on inside walls to avoid drafts from the heating or cooling system supply registers and because exterior wall temperature can be unrepresentative due to lack of insulation, solar radiation effects, or other conditions. Locating the thermostats over pipes in walls, lights, TVs, or other heat sources that can affect their operation should also be avoided. Usually, thermostats are installed 4 ft to 5 ft (1.2 m to 1.5 m) above the floor and can include supplemental switches to control the functions of the system. The appliance manufacturer's instructions should be consulted for additional details.

Each appliance should have its own thermostat, unless the appliance design specifically states that one thermostat can serve more than one appliance. If a thermostat serves more than one appliance, this dual use can cause the appliances it serves to operate erratically. Each heating appliance should have its own thermostat so that it can properly heat the area it is designed to heat. If the thermostat were connected to additional units, it would cause the different areas to become underheated or overheated, because the thermostat could not accurately record the temperature for both areas. A typical digital clock thermostat is shown in Exhibit 9.18.

EXHIBIT 9.18

Digital Thermostat. (Courtesy of Honeywell International Inc.)

9.8.2 Drafts. Any hole in the plaster or panel through which the wires pass from the thermostat to the appliance being controlled shall be sealed so as to prevent drafts from affecting the thermostat.

Preventing drafts can increase the system's overall efficiency by reducing unnecessary appliance operating time.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publications are available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, www.nfpa.org.

NFPA 30, *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 30A, *Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 88A, *Standard for Parking Structures*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code®*, 2015 edition.

The following publication is available from the American Gas Association, 400 North Capitol Street, NW, Washington DC 20001, www.aga.org.

AGA Research Bulletin 53, "The Effects of Confined Space Installation on Central Gas Space Heating Equipment Performance," 1947.

The following publication is available from the American Petroleum Institute, 1220 L Street NW, Washington, DC 20005-4070, www.api.org.

API RP 520, *Sizing, Selection, and Installation of Pressure-Relieving Devices in Refineries, Part II, Installation*, 2008.

The following publications are available from the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc., 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329-2305, www.ashrae.org

ASHRAE 62.1, *Ventilation for Acceptable Indoor Air Quality*, 2013.
ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, 2013 edition.

The following publications are available from CSA-America, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1, *Gas Water Heaters — Volume I — Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less*, 2013.
ANSI Z21.30, *Installation of Gas Piping and Gas Appliances in Buildings*, 1950.
ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16, *Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances*, 2009.

The following GRI publication is now available from the Gas Technology Institute, 1700 South Mount Prospect Park Road, Des Plaines, IL 60018-1804, www.gastechnology.org.

Report Number GRI 93/0316, "Analysis of Combustion Air Openings to the Outdoors: Preliminary Results," 1994.

The following publication is available from Underwriters Laboratories Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096, www.ul.com.

ANSI/UL 651, *Schedule 40 and 80 Rigid PVC Conduit and Fittings*, 2011.

Installation of Specific Appliances

10

Chapter 10 covers requirements for installing specific gas-fired appliances and applies mainly to appliances used in nonindustrial applications. See Chapter 9, Appliance, Equipment, and Accessory Installation, for general requirements applying to the installation of residential, commercial, and industrial gas appliances.

For the most part, Chapter 10 is descended directly from the pre-1974 ASA Z21.30/NFPA 54, *Standard for the Installation of Gas Appliances and Piping,* which covered residential and some commercial installations. These appliances, such as ranges, furnaces, and dryers, are normally mass produced, and their installations are very similar. Industrial equipment and larger commercial equipment vary widely and can be unique, so generalized installation requirements are not practical. The references to Chapter 2 and Annex K can assist in determining the requirements for installation of industrial-type gas equipment and accessories.

Section 10.1, General, provides the overall requirement that listed appliances be installed in accordance with the terms of their listing. This requirement recognizes that the installation instructions for listed equipment provide clearances based on testing of the specific appliance. In many cases, these clearances are less restrictive than those required for unlisted equipment of the same type. Section 10.1 also covers restrictions on the installation of gas-fired appliances in bedrooms and bathrooms.

Sections 10.2 and 10.3 provide requirements for the following specific appliances:

- Gas-fired air-conditioning equipment
- Central heating furnaces and boilers
- Clothes dryers
- Conversion burners
- Decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces and vented gas fireplaces
- Industrial air heaters
- Duct and floor furnaces
- Commercial food service equipment and household cooking appliances
- Illuminating appliances
- Commercial-industrial incinerators
- Infrared heaters
- Pool heaters
- Refrigerators
- Room (space) heaters
- Stationary gas engines
- Gas-fired toilets
- Unit heaters

- Wall furnaces
- Water heaters
- Compressed natural gas (CNG) vehicular fuel systems
- Appliances for installation in manufactured housing
- Fuel cell power plants
- Outdoor open-flame decorative appliances

10.1 General

10.1.1* Application. Listed appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions or, as elsewhere specified in this chapter, as applicable to the appliance. Unlisted appliances shall be installed as specified in this chapter as applicable to the appliances.

FAQ Could the manufacturer's installation instructions supersede the code requirements in Chapter 10?

Listing of the appliance allows instructions specific to the appliance tested to be included in the manufacturer's installation instructions and may supersede the specific requirements in Chapter 10. This is allowed because listed appliances are tested by an independent listing agency, and each installation requirement is verified for safety.

A.10.1.1 This chapter is applicable primarily to nonindustrial-type appliances and installations and, unless specifically indicated, does not apply to industrial appliances and installations.

For additional information concerning particular gas appliances and accessories, including industrial types, reference can be made to the standards listed in Chapter 2 and Annex K.

10.1.2* Installation in a Bedroom or Bathroom. Appliances shall not be installed so their combustion, ventilation, and dilution air are obtained only from a bedroom or bathroom unless the bedroom or bathroom has the required volume in accordance with 9.3.2.

A.10.1.2 Also see prohibited installations in 10.6.1, 10.7.1, 10.8.2, 10.9.2, and 10.22.1.

Bedrooms and bathrooms almost always have doors. Therefore, appliances that take air for combustion and ventilation from the room in which they are installed must not be installed in these rooms, unless they are large enough to meet the required combustion air volume required in Section 9.3. There are also exceptions for certain low-input heating appliances covered in 10.22.1. Paragraph A.10.1.2 draws attention to other paragraphs having specific prohibitions on the installation of appliances in bedrooms and bathrooms under certain conditions. Prohibited installations for the appliances indicated are covered in the following subsections:

- Decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces (See 10.6.1.)
- Vented gas fireplaces (See 10.7.1.)
- Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters (See 10.8.2.)
- Recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters (See 10.9.2.)
- Room heaters (See 10.22.1.)

Most of these prohibitions exempt rooms or spaces in which air for combustion and ventilation meets the volume requirements of 9.3.2.

In 1994, the code was revised to permit the installation of listed, wall-mounted room heaters with limited input ratings and oxygen depletion safety shutoff systems in bedrooms and bathrooms that meet the requirements of Section 10.22, and where these heaters are acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. Small space heaters are the normal means of heating homes in warmer parts of the United States, especially in the Southeast. The 1994 revision permitted older, open-flame heaters to be replaced with newer, safer appliances by allowing them to be installed where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction. Since then, many states have reversed their position of prohibiting such appliances.

10.2 Air-Conditioning Appliances (Gas-Fired Air Conditioners and Heat Pumps)

FAQ The heating and cooling appliance uses gas for both functions with different Btu/hr inputs. Should the Btu/hr input ratings of both functions be combined to size the gas supply?

In accordance with Section 5.4, the gas piping serving either the heating or cooling equipment must be sized on the basis of the larger gas demand of the two appliances. The diversity provision in 5.4.2.3 permits the pipe size to be based on the larger, rather than the combined, gas demand once it has been determined that the heating and cooling appliances cannot be operated simultaneously.

10.2.1 Independent Gas Piping. Gas piping serving heating appliances shall be permitted to also serve cooling appliances where heating and cooling appliances cannot be operated simultaneously.

10.2.2 Connection of Gas Engine–Powered Air Conditioners. To protect against the effects of normal vibration in service, gas engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply piping.

Because an engine is prone to vibration, a flexible piping connection to the gas supply is required. It is important that the engine be secured to a firm foundation so that it cannot move. An appliance shutoff valve must be located on the fixed pipe upstream of the connector. During installation, it is important that the connector be oriented so that there is no stress on the connector and so that any vibration does not adversely affect the connector.

10.2.3 Clearances for Indoor Installation. The installation of air-conditioning appliances shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Listed air-conditioning appliances shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
(2) Unlisted air-conditioning appliances shall be installed with clearances from combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm) above the appliance and at the sides, front, and rear and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
(3) Listed and unlisted air-conditioning appliances shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided that the combustible material or appliance is protected as described in Table 10.2.3 and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

The clearance reduction systems described in Table 10.2.3 can be used with all (listed and unlisted) gas-fired air-conditioning appliances, therefore the clearance reduction table (see Table 10.2.3) can also be used for any appliance. Note that any such reduction must be allowed by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

TABLE 10.2.3 *Reduction of Clearances with Specified Forms of Protection*

Type of protection applied to and covering all surfaces of combustible material within the distance specified as the required clearance with no protection	Where the required clearance with no protection from appliance, vent connector, or single-wall metal pipe is: 36 in. — Above (Col. 1)	36 in. — Sides and Rear (Col. 2)	18 in. — Above (Col. 1)	18 in. — Sides and Rear (Col. 2)	12 in. — Above (Col. 1)	12 in. — Sides and Rear (Col. 2)	9 in. — Above (Col. 1)	9 in. — Sides and Rear (Col. 2)	6 in. — Above (Col. 1)	6 in. — Sides and Rear (Col. 2)
	Allowable Clearances with Specified Protection (in.) — Use Col. 1 for clearances above appliance or horizontal connector. Use Col. 2 for clearances from appliance, vertical connector, and single-wall metal pipe.									
(1) 3½ in. thick masonry wall without ventilated air space	—	24	—	12	—	9	—	6	—	5
(2) ½ in. insulation board over 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts	24	18	12	9	9	6	6	5	4	3
(3) 0.024 in. (nominal 24 gauge) sheet metal over 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts reinforced with wire on rear face with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(4) 3½ in. thick masonry wall with ventilated air space	—	12	—	6	—	6	—	6	—	6
(5) 0.024 in. (nominal 24 gauge) sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	2
(6) ½ in. thick insulation board with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(7) 0.024 in. (nominal 24 gauge) sheet metal with ventilated air space over 0.024 in. (nominal 24 gauge) sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3
(8) 1 in. glass fiber or mineral wool batts sandwiched between two sheets 0.024 in. (nominal 24 gauge) sheet metal with ventilated air space	18	12	9	6	6	4	5	3	3	3

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm.
Notes:
(1) Reduction of clearances from combustible materials shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility of servicing.
(2) All clearances shall be measured from the outer surface of the combustible material to the nearest point on the surface of the appliance, disregarding any intervening protection applied to the combustible material.
(3) Spacers and ties shall be of noncombustible material. No spacer or tie shall be used directly opposite the appliance or connector.
(4) Where all clearance reduction systems use a ventilated air space, adequate provision for air circulation shall be provided as described.
(5) At least 1 in. (25 mm) shall be between clearance reduction systems and combustible walls and ceilings for reduction systems using a ventilated air space.
(6) Where a wall protector is mounted on a single flat wall away from corners, it shall have a minimum 1 in. (25 mm) air gap. To provide adequate air circulation, the bottom and top edges, or only the side and top edges, or all edges shall be left open.
(7) Mineral wool batts (blanket or board) shall have a minimum density of 8 lb/ft^3 (128 kg/m^3) and a minimum melting point of 1500°F (816°C).
(8) Insulation material used as part of a clearance reduction system shall have a thermal conductivity of 1.0 Btu in./ft^2/hr-°F (0.144 W/m-K) or less.
(9) At least 1 in. (25 mm) shall be between the appliance and the protector. In no case shall the clearance between the appliance and the combustible surface be reduced below that allowed in Table 10.2.3.
(10) All clearances and thicknesses are minimum; larger clearances and thicknesses are acceptable.
(11) Listed single-wall connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.

(4) Where the furnace plenum is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or noncombustible material attached to combustible material, the clearance shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the clearance specified is 2 in. (50 mm) or less.

The term *furnace plenum* is used to eliminate confusion related to the general term *plenum*. *Plenum* is used in other codes (e.g., in building codes to mean certain above-ceiling spaces and in other NFPA codes with different meanings). The term *furnace plenum* is more specific. This use of the term is consistent with its use in NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*; NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*; and NFPA 501, *Standard on Manufactured Housing.* The consistency minimizes confusion among designers, installers, and enforcement officials who use multiple codes.

FAQ The walls and ceiling of the appliance room are plaster, a noncombustible. Can I use the distance to the wood underneath the plaster to calculate the required clearance?

When used alone, plaster or other insulating material that is applied to combustible material, such as wooden studs, is not considered to be adequate protection for combustible construction. For this reason, the clearance must be measured to the surface of the plaster or other finish.

(5) Listed air-conditioning appliances shall have the clearance from supply ducts within 3 ft (0.9 m) of the furnace plenum be not less than that specified from the furnace plenum. No clearance is necessary beyond this distance.

10.2.4 Assembly and Installation. Air-conditioning appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Unless the appliance is listed for installation on a combustible surface such as a floor or roof, or unless the surface is protected in an approved manner, it shall be installed on a surface of noncombustible construction with noncombustible material and surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof.

Prior to the 1988 edition, the *National Fuel Gas Code* contained a footnote referring the reader to Appendix E of the 1976 edition of the *National Building Code* for additional information on methods of installation on combustible floors. The 1976 edition of the *National Building Code* was the last edition of that code written by the American Insurance Association. After 1976, the project was taken over by Building Officials and Code Administrators International and was discontinued. Appendix E did not appear in the *National Building Code* after 1976. Part of Appendix E from the 1976 edition is reprinted here to supply the user of this handbook with further information. By referring to the requirements for room heaters, the *National Building Code* covered the installation of residential air-conditioning equipment (addressed in 10.2.4), clothes dryers, and water heaters. The placement requirements were stated as follows:

(a) Room heaters, except as permitted by the provisions of Sections (b) through (e), shall be placed on the ground; or on approved limited-combustible assemblies having a fire resistance rating of not less than 2 hours, with floors constructed of noncombustible material; or on concrete slabs or masonry arches that do not have combustible materials attached to the underside. Any floor covering on floor-ceiling assemblies, slabs, or arches shall extend not less than 6 in. (15 cm) beyond the appliances on all sides, and, where solid fuel is used, they shall extend not less than 18 in. (46 cm) at the front or side where ashes are removed.

(b) Room heaters, that are tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for installation on floors constructed of combustible materials, are permitted to be placed on floors, other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided they are installed in accordance with the requirements of the listing and conditions of approval.

(c) Room heaters, which are set on legs or simulated legs that provide not less than 4 in. (10 cm) open space under the base of the appliance, are permitted to be placed on floors other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided the floor under the appliance is protected with sheet metal of not less than No. 24 gage, or by other noncombustible material that will reflect heat and is durable. Where solid fuel is used, the protection shall extend not less than 18 in. (46 cm) beyond the appliance at the front or side where ashes are removed. With radiating type gas burning room heaters which make use of metal, asbestos or ceramic material to direct radiation to the front of the device, the floor protection shall extend out at the front not less than 36 in. (91 cm) when the heater has not been tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for installation on a combustible floor.

(d) Room heaters which are set on legs that provide not less than 18 in. (46 cm) open space under the base of the appliance, or which have no burners within 18 in. (46 cm) of the floor, are permitted to be placed on floors other than as required by the provisions of Section (a) without special floor protection, provided there is at least one sheet metal baffle not less than No. 24 gage between the burners and the floor.

(e) Room heaters, other than those described in the provisions of Sections (b), (c), and (d), are permitted to be placed on floors other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided the floor under the appliance is protected with hollow masonry not less than 4 in. (10 cm) thick covered with sheet metal not less than No. 24 gage. The masonry shall be laid with ends unsealed and joints matched in such a way as to provide a free circulation of air from side to side through the masonry. Where solid fuel is used, the floor, for 18 in. (46 cm) beyond the front of the appliance or side where ashes are removed, shall be protected with sheet metal not less than No. 24 gage or with other noncombustible materials that will not allow hot ashes to ignite the floor or floor covering.

Note that Appendix E of the *National Building Code* specified a sheet metal thickness of 24 gauge. The *National Fuel Gas Code* specifies a thickness of 0.024 in. (0.6 mm) and notes in parenthesis that this is nominal 24 gauge. According to the 1973 fifth edition of the *Chemical Engineers' Handbook,* 24 U.S. Standard Gauge (for sheet or plate metal and wrought iron) measures 0.0250 in. (0.64 mm) thick. Different gauges exist (e.g., wire, sheet, hoop), and any sheet metal used should be specified to have a minimum thickness of 0.024 in. (0.6 mm). In addition, Appendix E of the 1973 edition of the *National Building Code* refers more than once to asbestos material. While asbestos was a recognized construction material in the 1970s, it is now prohibited by all building codes in the United States.

10.2.5 Furnace Plenums and Air Ducts. A furnace plenum supplied as a part of the air-conditioning appliance shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Where a furnace plenum is not supplied with the appliance, any fabrication and installation instructions provided by the manufacturer shall be followed. The method of connecting supply and return ducts shall facilitate proper circulation of air. Where the air conditioner is installed within an enclosure, the installation shall comply with 10.3.7.4.

In addition to the standards referenced in 10.3.7.1 — NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, and NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems* — installers and inspectors are referred to UL 181, *Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors*, and UL 263, *Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials*. These are the primary standards for factory-made air ducts and divide factory-made nonmetallic ducts into three classes, depending on their surface-burning characteristics and flame spread characteristics. The referenced standards specify where these ducts can be used.

An additional standard for the construction of metal ducts is the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association (SMACNA) publication, *HVAC Duct Construction Standards — Metal and Flexible,* for low-pressure and high-pressure duct construction. Low-pressure metal ducts generally are those types that handle air distribution systems with internal pressures of up to 2 in. w.c. (0.5 kPa), either positive or negative. This standard also shows the construction methods for high-pressure ducts of up to 10 in. w.c. (2.5 kPa) and includes methods for joining the sections and hanging the ducts to ensure compliance with most building codes. In addition, the standard contains methods for sealing duct sections to ensure that they are essentially airtight from the appliance to the discharge grille or diffuser.

10.2.6* Refrigeration Coils. The installation of refrigeration coils shall be in accordance with 10.3.8 and 10.3.9.

A.10.2.6 Reference can be made to NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, or to NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*.

10.2.7 Switches in Electrical Supply Line. Means for interrupting the electrical supply to the air-conditioning appliance and to its associated cooling tower (if supplied and installed in a location remote from the air conditioner) shall be provided within sight of and not over 50 ft (15 m) from the air conditioner and the cooling tower.

The purpose of this disconnecting means is to afford service personnel with the ability to open the supply circuit from a location that is in close proximity to the equipment being serviced or maintained. Quite often, the electrical equipment (such as a panel, switchboard, or motor control center) where the supply circuit originates is not located in the same area as the air-conditioning equipment, thus necessitating the additional disconnecting means within sight of the air-conditioning equipment. In those instances where the air-conditioning equipment is located within sight of the electrical equipment that supplies that unit, the circuit breaker or fusible switch provides the required disconnecting means. This disconnecting means requirement applies to all air-conditioning equipment, whether installed indoors or outdoors.

In some cases, manufacturers will specify an HACR circuit breaker as an acceptable form of branch-circuit overcurrent protection. "HACR" stands for heating, air-conditioning, and refrigeration, and this marking on a circuit breaker indicates that the circuit breaker meets the requirements of standards governing overcurrent protection of multimotors and combination loads inherent in air-conditioning equipment. If a local disconnect is required to meet the "within sight" rule, that disconnect can be used as the means to provide this specified type of overcurrent protection.

10.3 Central Heating Boilers and Furnaces

Section 10.3 contains installation requirements for listed gas furnaces, boilers, and air conditioners. Clearances for this equipment are specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions. They do not fall under the requirements of Table 10.3.2.2, which applies to unlisted equipment.

The user should note that this code specifically covers boilers operating at low pressures and at temperatures not exceeding 250°F (121°C). The user should also note that there are several different types of furnaces, including upflow furnaces, horizontal furnaces, downflow furnaces, forced-air furnaces with cooling units, gravity furnaces, direct-vent furnaces, and enclosed central furnaces. See Exhibit 10.1 through Exhibit 10.3 for some examples of the types of units that are covered by this code.

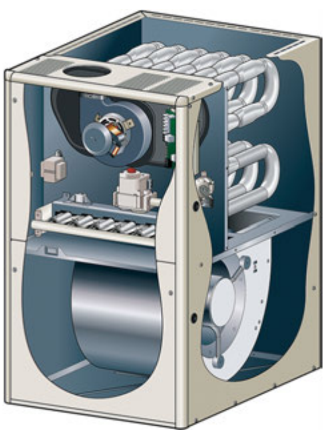
EXHIBIT 10.1

Hot Water Boiler. (Courtesy of Crown Boiler Company)

EXHIBIT 10.2

Outdoor Installation of Central Furnace with Cooling Unit. (Courtesy of Modine Manufacturing Company)

EXHIBIT 10.3



Upflow Furnace. (Courtesy of NORDYNE, Inc.)

10.3.1 Location. Central heating furnace and low-pressure boiler installations in bedrooms or bathrooms shall comply with one of the following:

(1) Central heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be installed in a closet equipped with a weather-stripped door with no openings, and with a self-closing device. All combustion air shall be obtained from the outdoors in accordance with 9.3.3.
(2) Central heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be of the direct vent type.

These requirements clarify the installation of boilers and furnaces in bedrooms and bathrooms and are consistent with an option for the installation of water heaters in closets opening to bedrooms and bathrooms. Another option is a direct vent boiler or furnace, which may safely be installed in or near a bedroom or a bathroom.

Note that 10.3.1(1) does not require a solid door; a standard interior closet door is acceptable. However, the door must not have any louvers or other openings.

10.3.2 Clearances.

Central heating boilers and furnaces and their vent connectors must be installed so that continued or intermittent operation will not cause a fire where installed. By its nature, heating equipment gets warm — even hot at times — during operation. If adequate clearances and ventilation around the appliance are not provided, a potential for fire exists. In addition, elevated temperatures that are not high enough to start a fire can exceed the recommended operating temperature of electrical and mechanical boiler and furnace components, leading to reduced service life.

10.3.2.1 Listed central heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be installed with clearances in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Earlier editions of the code included requirements based on rooms being "large in comparison" to equipment. Those requirements have been replaced by requirements for clearance to combustible material and air for combustion, dilution, and ventilation found elsewhere in the code. Listed equipment be must installed with the clearances specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.3.2.2 Unlisted central heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be installed with clearances from combustible material not less than those specified in Table 10.3.2.2.

TABLE 10.3.2.2 *Clearances to Combustible Material for Unlisted Furnaces and Boilers*

	Minimum Clearance (in.)					
Appliance	***Above and Sides of Furnace Plenum***	***Top of Boiler***	***Jacket Sides and Rear***	***Front***	***Draft Hood and Barometric Draft Regulator***	***Single-Wall Vent Connector***
I Automatically fired, forced air or gravity system, equipped with temperature limit control that cannot be set higher than 250°F (121°C)	6	—	6	18	6	18
II Automatically fired heating boilers — steam boilers operating at not over 15 psi (103 kPa) and hot water boilers operating at 250°F (121°C) or less	6	6	6	18	18	18
III Central heating boilers and furnaces, other than in I or II	18	18	18	18	18	18

Note: See 10.3.1 for additional requirements for central heating boilers and furnaces.

Central heating furnaces and boilers that are to be installed in alcoves and closets must be specifically listed for such installation. A typical rating nameplate for an appliance that is approved for closet installation at the specified clearances is shown in Exhibit 10.4.

10.3.2.3 Listed and unlisted central heating furnaces and low-pressure boilers shall be permitted to be installed with reduced clearances to combustible material, provided that the combustible material or appliance is protected as described in Table 10.2.3 and Figure 10.3.2.3(a) through Figure 10.3.2.3(c), and such reduction is allowed by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

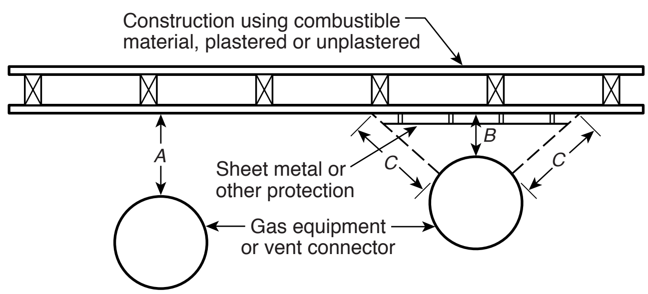
FAQ Can Table 10.2.3 be used to reduce the clearance for a listed alcove furnace?

Paragraph 10.3.2.3 recognizes that reduction of clearances may be acceptable if special measures as specified in 10.2.3 are applied and if such clearance reduction is acceptable to the manufacturer of the appliance.

10.3.2.4 Front clearance shall be sufficient for servicing the burner and the furnace or boiler.

EXHIBIT 10.4

Typical Nameplate. (Courtesy of Carrier Corporation)



Notes:

(1) *A* equals the clearance with no protection specified in Tables 10.3.2.2 and 12.8.4.4 and in the sections applying to various types of equipment.

(2) *B* equals the reduced clearance permitted in accordance with Table 10.2.3.

(3) The protection applied to the construction using combustible material shall extend far enough in each direction to make *C* equal to *A*.

FIGURE 10.3.2.3(a) *Extent of Protection Necessary to Reduce Clearances from Gas Appliance or Vent Connectors.*

Clearance space must be provided for both routine and major service work. Note that 9.5.1 covers access to appliances installed in attics and applies in addition to the requirements of 10.3.2.4 where appliances are installed in attics. The largest serviceable component must be able to be removed into the area provided for servicing the appliance.

10.3.2.5 Where the furnace plenum is adjacent to plaster on metal lath or noncombustible material attached to combustible material, the clearance shall be measured to the surface of the plaster or other noncombustible finish where the clearance specified is 2 in. (50 mm) or less.

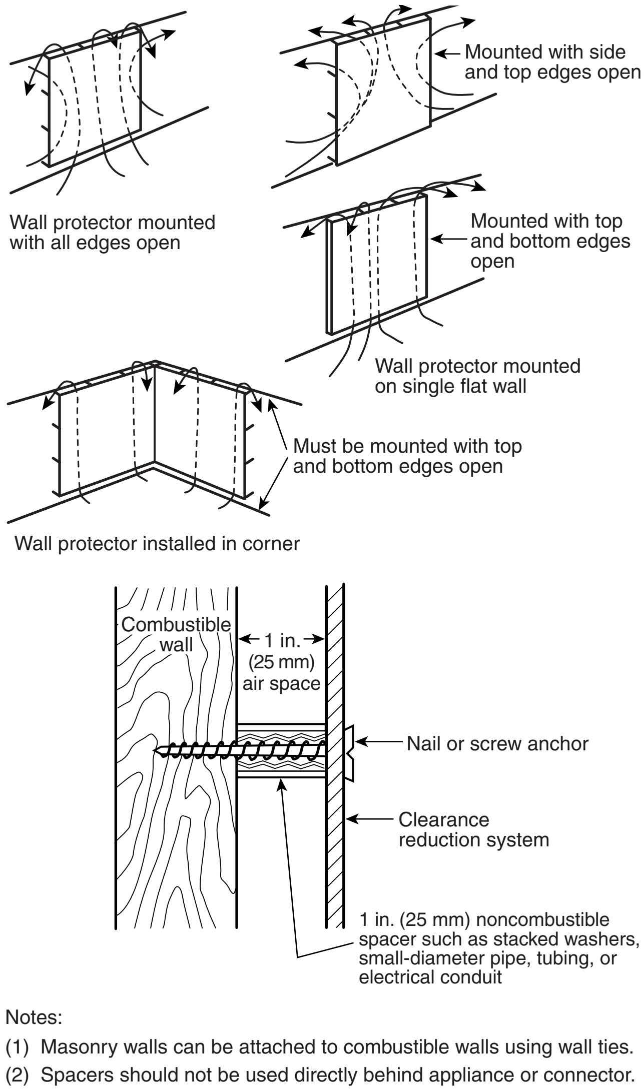


FIGURE 10.3.2.3(b) *Wall Protector Clearance Reduction System.*

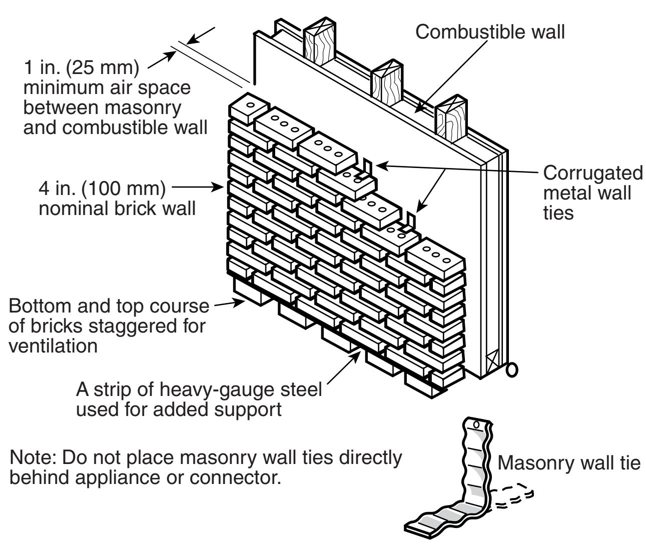


FIGURE 10.3.2.3(c) *Masonry Clearance Reduction System.*

Paragraph 10.3.2.5 covers clearance to the furnace plenum, not to other parts of the furnace. Sheetrock, lath, or plaster applied to combustible materials is not adequate protection for the prevention of ignition of the combustible construction. If clearance reduction is required, one of the systems in Table 10.2.3 should be used.

10.3.2.6 The clearances to these appliances shall not interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility for servicing.

10.3.2.7 Supply air ducts connecting to listed central heating furnaces shall have the same minimum clearance to combustibles as required for the furnace supply plenum for a distance of not less than 3 ft (0.9 m) from the supply plenum. Clearance shall not be required beyond the 3 ft (0.9 m) distance.

10.3.2.8 Supply air ducts connecting to unlisted central heating furnaces equipped with temperature limit controls with a maximum setting of 250°F (121°C) shall have a minimum clearance to combustibles of 6 in. (150 mm) for a distance of not less than 6 ft (1.8 m) from the furnace supply plenum. Clearance shall not be required beyond the 6 ft (1.8 m) distance.

10.3.2.9 Central heating furnaces other than those listed in 10.3.2.7 or 10.3.2.8 shall have clearances from the supply ducts of not less than 18 in. (460 mm) from the furnace plenum for the first 3 ft (0.9 m), then 6 in. (150 mm) for the next 3 ft (0.9 m), and 1 in. (25 mm) beyond 6 ft (1.8 m).

10.3.3 Assembly and Installation. A central heating boiler or furnace shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions in one of the following manners:

(1) On a floor of noncombustible construction with noncombustible flooring and surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof
(2) On fire-resistive slabs or arches having no combustible material against the underside thereof

Exception No. 1: Appliances listed for installation on a combustible floor.

Exception No. 2: Installation on a floor protected in an approved manner.

Many furnaces and boilers, particularly those intended for residential use, are listed for installation on combustible flooring. Subsection 10.3.3 allows furnaces and boilers listed for installation on noncombustible flooring to be listed for optional installation on combustible flooring if a listed accessory base is added. An example of such a device is shown for a boiler in Exhibit 10.5. The base must be used and installed as shown when the furnace is installed on combustible flooring. Additional measures are required for solid fuel appliances, boilers in which flames are in contact with the base, and similar appliances.

As stated earlier, prior to the 1988 edition, the *National Fuel Gas Code* contained a footnote referring the reader to Appendix E of the 1976 edition of the *National Building Code* for information on installation of central heating boilers and furnaces not listed for installation on combustible floors. The 1976 edition of the *National Building Code* was the last edition of that code written by the American Insurance Association. After 1976, the project was taken over by the Building Officials and Code Administrators International. Appendix E did not appear in the *National Building Code* after 1976. Part of Appendix E from the 1976 edition is reprinted here to supply the user of this handbook with further information. The *National Building Code* covered the installation of residential-type boilers and central furnaces as follows:

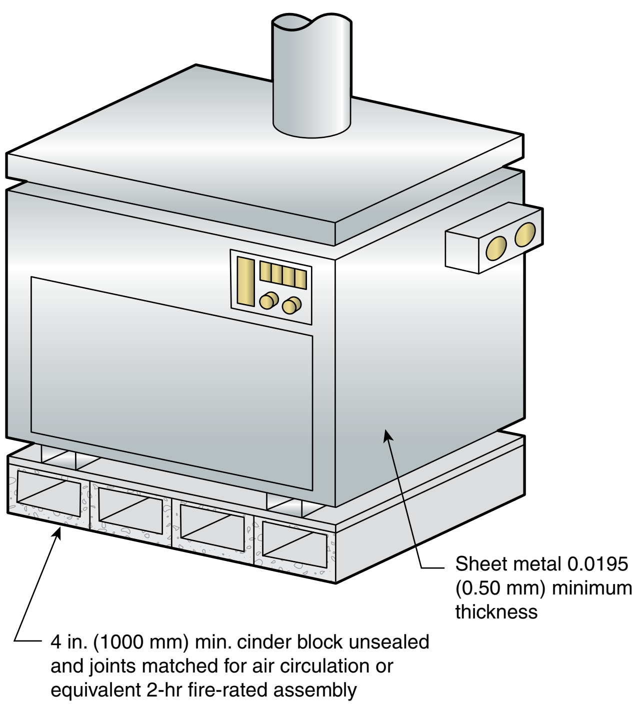
(a) Residential type boilers and central furnaces, except as permitted by the provisions of Section (b) through (g), shall be placed on concrete bases supported on compacted soil, crushed rock, or gravel; on approved limited-combustible floor-ceiling assemblies with noncombustible floors and having a fire resistance rating of not less than 2 hours; or on concrete slabs or masonry arches, that do not have any combustible materials attached to the underside. Any floor covering on floor-ceiling assemblies, slabs, or arches shall be of noncombustible materials. Concrete bases, concrete slabs, masonry arches, and floor-ceiling assemblies and their supports shall be designed and constructed to support the appliances and shall extend not less than 12 in. (30 cm) beyond the appliance on all sides, and, where solid fuel is used, the base or floor shall extend not less than 18 in. (46 cm) at the front or side where ashes are removed.

(b) Residential type boilers and central furnaces, that are tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for installation on floors constructed of combustible materials, are permitted to be placed on floors other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided they are installed in accordance with the requirements of the listing and conditions of approval.

(c) Central furnaces are permitted to be placed on floors other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided they are designed so that the fan chamber occupies the entire area beneath the firing chamber and forms a well ventilated air space, between the firing chamber and the floor, not less than 18 in. (46 cm) in height, with at least one sheet metal baffle not less than No. 24 gage between the firing chamber and the floor.

(d) Residential type boilers of the water-base type are permitted to be placed on floors, other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided the water chamber extends under the firing chamber or under the ash pit and the firebox. Where solid fuel is used, the floor shall be covered as required by the provisions of Section (h).

EXHIBIT 10.5



Installation of a Central Heating Boiler on a Combustible Floor. (Courtesy of Laars Heating Systems Co.)

(e) Residential type boilers and central furnaces, which are set on legs that provide an open space of not less than 4 in. (10 cm) under the base of the appliance, are permitted to be placed on the floors, other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided the appliance is designed so the flames or hot gases do not come in contact with its base, and further provided the floor under the appliance is protected with asbestos millboard not less than ¼ in. (6.4 mm) thick, covered with sheet metal not less than No. 24 gage. The floor protection shall extend not less than 6 in. (15 cm) beyond the appliance on all sides. Where solid fuel is used, the floor shall be covered as required by the provisions of Section (h).

(f) Residential type boilers and central furnaces are permitted to be placed on floors, other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided the appliance is designed so the flames or hot gases do not come in contact with its base, and further provided the floor under the appliance is protected with hollow masonry units not less than 4 in. (10 cm) thick, covered with sheet metal not less than No. 24 gage. The masonry shall be laid with ends unsealed and joints matched to provide a free circulation of air through the core spaces of the masonry. Where solid fuel is used, the floor shall be covered as required by the provisions of Section (h).

(g) Residential type boilers and central furnaces, which are designed so the flames or hot gases are in contact with the base, are permitted to be placed on floors, other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), provided the floor under the appliance is protected by two courses of 4 in. (10 cm) hollow masonry units, that are laid with ends unsealed and joints matched to provide a free circulation of air through the core spaces of the masonry. The masonry shall be covered with a steel plate not less than $^{3}/_{16}$ in. (4.8 mm) thick. Where solid fuel is used, the floor shall be covered as required by the provisions of Section (h).

(h) Where appliances which burn solid fuel are placed on floors other than as required by the provisions of Section (a), the floor, for not less than 18 in. (46 cm) beyond the front of the appliance or side where ashes are removed, shall be covered with asbestos millboard not less than $^{1}/_{4}$ in. (6.4 mm) thick, covered with sheet metal not less than No. 24 gage, or with materials providing equivalent protection to the floor and durability from hot ashes.

(i) Downflow type central furnaces shall not be placed on floors other than specified in Section (a) unless the appliance rests upon hollow masonry units not less than 4 in. (10 cm) thick. Masonry units shall be laid with the ends unsealed and joints matched to provide a free circulation of air through the core spaces of the masonry. Downflow type furnaces, which are tested and listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for installation on a floor constructed of combustible material, are permitted to be mounted in accordance with the requirements of the listing and conditions of approval. Downflow type furnaces shall be installed so that there are no open passages in the floor through which flame or hot gases from a fire originating in the space below the floor can travel to the room above.

Refer to the commentary following 10.2.4 for further discussion of sheet metal thickness. In addition, Appendix E of the 1976 edition of the *National Building Code* refers more than once to asbestos material. While asbestos was a recognized construction material in the 1970s, it is now prohibited by all building codes in the United States.

10.3.4 Temperature or Pressure Limiting Devices. Steam and hot water boilers, respectively, shall be provided with approved automatic limiting devices for shutting down the burner(s) to prevent boiler steam pressure or boiler water temperature from exceeding the maximum allowable working pressure or temperature. Safety limit controls shall not be used as operating controls.

Neither safety pressure controls nor temperature limiting controls can be used as "operating controls" for the appliance. These safety controls are intended to operate above the range of temperature and pressure control devices that normally operate the appliance to provide two completely separate devices. If the manufacturer provides these devices, they must be installed in accordance with the boiler manufacturer's instructions. If provided by the installer, they must be installed in accordance with the control manufacturer's instructions. A supplemental low-temperature control can be used if the appliance manufacturer permits one.

10.3.5 Low-Water Cutoff. All water boilers and steam boilers shall be provided with an automatic means to shut off the fuel supply to the burner(s) if the boiler water level drops below the lowest safe water line. In lieu of the low-water cutoff, water tube or coil-type boilers that require forced circulation to prevent overheating and failure shall have an approved flow sensing device arranged to shut down the boiler when the flow rate is inadequate to protect the boiler against overheating.

Depending on the design of the boiler, either a low-water cutoff switch or a waterflow sensor can be used to comply with this requirement. This safety feature has been required on oil-fired boilers covered by NFPA 31 for many years. Previous editions of NFPA 54 had required a low-water cutoff device only if the boiler was installed "below the level of radiation" or below any of the water or steam radiators fed by the boiler.

10.3.6* Steam Safety and Pressure Relief Valves. Steam and hot water boilers shall be equipped, respectively, with listed or approved steam safety or pressure relief valves of appropriate discharge capacity and conforming with ASME requirements. A shutoff valve shall not be placed between the relief valve and the boiler or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere.

The Btu/hr rating of the valve should be equal to or greater than the Btu/hr rating of the boiler. An undersized valve will compromise safety.

A.10.3.6 For details of requirements on low-pressure heating boiler safety devices, refer to ASME *Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code,* Section IV, "Rules for Construction of Heating Boilers."

10.3.6.1 Relief valves shall be piped to discharge near the floor.

10.3.6.2 The entire discharged piping shall be at least the same size as the relief valve discharge piping.

10.3.6.3 Discharge piping shall not contain threaded end connection at its termination point.

The steam or hot water boiler manufacturer generally provides or specifies pressure relief valves. These pressure relief valves must not be altered. The valves should be installed at the location specified in the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Exhibit 10.6 shows a temperature and pressure relief valve with a close-up of the maximum ratings of the valve. In this case, the maximum Btu/hr rating of the heating appliance should not be more than 100,000 Btu/hr (29 kW). The prohibition of valves in piping to or from these safety devices prevents the devices from being defeated by being capped. For example, if a pressure relief valve is observed to be leaking, maintenance workers who are not familiar with boilers might cap the leaking valve to stop the leak, with disastrous results. In addition, following the termination and size requirements for added safety is important.

EXHIBIT 10.6

Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve with Rating Plate.

The three specific requirements in 10.3.6.1, 10.3.6.2, and 10.3.6.3 have been added to the minimum requirements for pressure safety to ensure the following:

1. In the unlikely event of discharge from a pressure relief valve, the discharge does not create an additional hazard to people in the area.
2. The safe operation of pressure relief devices is not compromised by downstream flow restrictions.
3. A valve or cap is not installed unintentionally.

10.3.7 Furnace Plenums and Air Ducts.

Refer to the commentary following 10.2.5 for a list of standards covering duct construction.

10.3.7.1 Furnace plenums and air ducts shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, or NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*.

10.3.7.2 A furnace plenum supplied as a part of a furnace shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

10.3.7.3* Where a furnace plenum is not supplied with the furnace, any fabrication and installation instructions provided by the manufacturer shall be followed. The method of connecting supply and return ducts shall facilitate proper circulation of air.

A.10.3.7.3 Reference can be made to NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, or to NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*.

10.3.7.4 Where a furnace is installed so supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside the space containing the furnace.

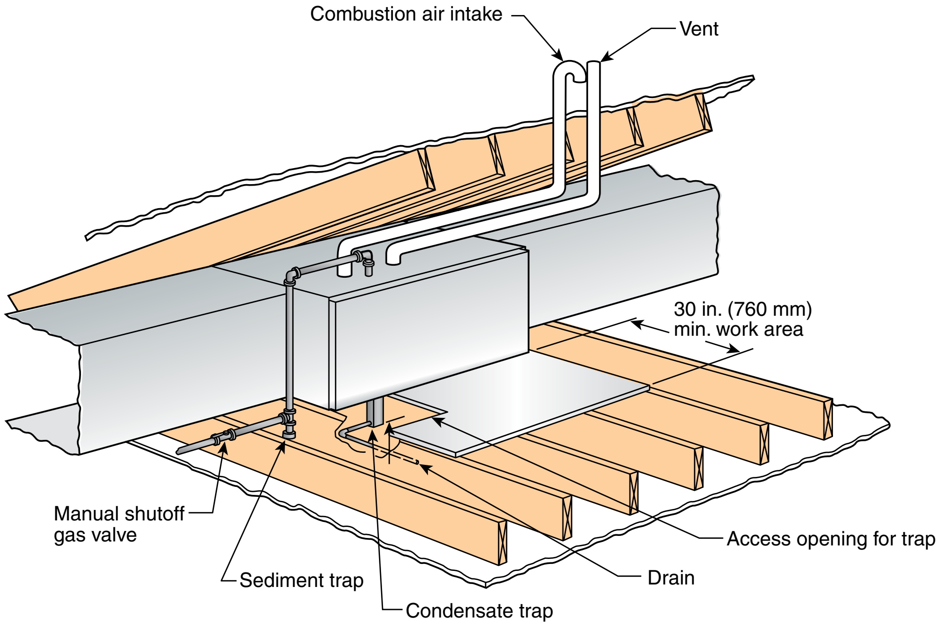
The furnace's circulating air system must be physically separated from its combustion system. The reason for this physical separation is that, if the circulating air is carried in ducts out of, but not back into, the space in which a forced air furnace is installed, the air will be pulled from that space. The most likely source of this air is a building opening, such as a window (which is likely to be closed if the furnace is operating) or the chimney or vent. The flow in the chimney or vent can be reversed, even if the space is large or the doors to the space are louvered. In a small utility room, this reversal of the vent flow is probable. When the flow is reversed, combustion products will enter the circulating air system through the open return-air duct connection on the furnace and will circulate throughout the dwelling.

Even if the ducting is correct, operation of a furnace with the blower (filter) access panel removed will result in air being pulled from the space around the furnace. For this reason, ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3, *Gas-Fired Central Furnaces,* requires an interlock to prevent furnace operation if the blower (filter) access panel is not in place. See Exhibit 10.7.

10.3.8 Refrigeration Coils. The installation of refrigeration coils shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) A refrigeration coil shall not be installed in conjunction with a forced air furnace where circulation of cooled air is provided by the furnace blower, unless the blower has sufficient capacity to overcome the external static pressure resistance imposed by the duct system and refrigeration coil at the air flow rate for heating or cooling, whichever is greater.

EXHIBIT 10.7



Typical Installation of a Horizontal Furnace Showing Plenum and Ducts. (Courtesy of Carrier Corporation)

FAQ Can a refrigeration coil be installed in a duct downstream of a forced air furnace?

A refrigeration coil can be installed with a forced air furnace only if the furnace blower can provide sufficient airflow.

Failure to provide sufficient airflow to overcome the external static pressure can lead to problems that include the following:

- Condensate freezing on the refrigeration coil during air-conditioning mode, which can block airflow through the system
- Overheating of the furnace heating element, which can cause premature failure of the furnace

Consult the furnace manufacturer's specifications to determine available airflow rates and external static pressures and recommendations for refrigeration coil applications. Consult the air conditioner manufacturer's specifications to determine the required airflow rate and external static pressure resistance of the coil.

(2) Furnaces shall not be located upstream from refrigeration coils, unless the refrigeration coil is designed or equipped so as not to develop excessive temperature or pressure.

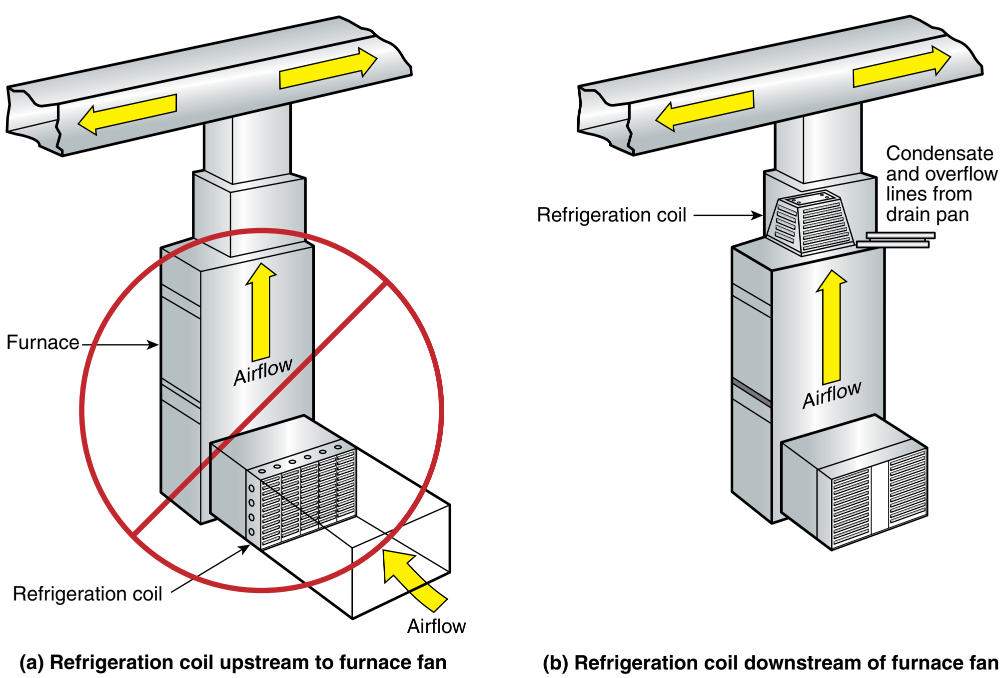
Direct-expansion cooling coils with a specified condensing unit are listed as part of the air-conditioning unit assembly. The requirements for listing generally include the protective devices on the system necessary to prevent the development of excessive temperatures and pressures in the cooling coil when the coil is installed downstream from the furnace. In direct-expansion systems, the vapor in the cooling coil expands into the interconnected piping and other portions of the air-conditioning unit. Provisions for expansion of the water in the piping system and remote chiller will protect the chilled water coil.

(3) Refrigeration coils shall be installed in parallel with or on the downstream side of central furnaces to avoid condensation in the heating element, unless the furnace has been specifically listed for downstream installation. With a parallel flow arrangement, the dampers or other means used to control flow of air shall be sufficiently tight to prevent any circulation of cooled air through the furnace.

If a furnace is listed for downstream installation, the tests conducted on the furnace will show that there is no danger of condensate dripping on the burners and pilots during the cooling cycle or that the heat exchanger will corrode. When a parallel flow system is designed, face and bypass dampers should be located in front of both the cooling coil and the heating unit to ensure that there is no recirculation of chilled air back over the heat exchanger.

Exhibit 10.8 illustrates the permissible location of refrigeration coils in forced air furnaces. Exhibit 10.8(a) shows the refrigeration coil upstream to the furnace fan, which is not permitted by the code. Exhibit 10.8(b) shows the refrigeration coil downstream from the furnace fan, which is permitted by the code. Note that the installation in Exhibit 10.8(b) would not require a listed furnace and would meet the code requirements if blower capacity is sufficient.

EXHIBIT 10.8



Refrigeration Coils in Forced Air Furnaces: (a) Location of Coils Not Permitted and (b) Location of Coils Permitted.

(4) Means shall be provided for disposal of condensate and to prevent dripping of condensate on the heating element.

A typical coil for installation in a plenum above an upflow furnace, complying with the condensate drain requirement is shown in Exhibit 10.8(b). The "A-type" coil is constructed so that the condensate forming on the coil will travel down the edge of the coil fins to the drain pan connection. Note also that this particular coil has a secondary drain connection to provide for disposal of condensate in the event that the primary drain connection becomes plugged. Condensate drains should follow local plumbing or mechanical codes.

10.3.9 Cooling Units Used with Heating Boilers.

10.3.9.1 Boilers, where used in conjunction with refrigeration systems, shall be installed so that the chilled medium is piped in parallel with the heating boiler with appropriate valves to prevent the chilled medium from entering the heating boiler.

10.3.9.2 Where hot water heating boilers are connected to heating coils located in air-handling units where they can be exposed to refrigerated air circulation, such boiler piping systems shall be equipped with flow control valves or other automatic means to prevent gravity circulation of the boiler water during the cooling cycle.

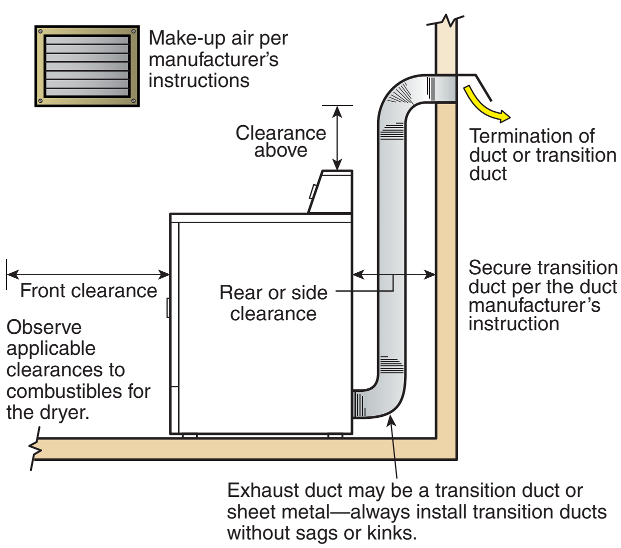
10.4 Clothes Dryers

Clothes dryers covered by this code are classified into the following two types:

1. Type 1: Primarily for residential use
2. Type 2: Designed for use by businesses frequented by the public

Both types may be coin-operated. Exhibit 10.9 illustrates Type 1 clothes dryer installation requirements.

EXHIBIT 10.9



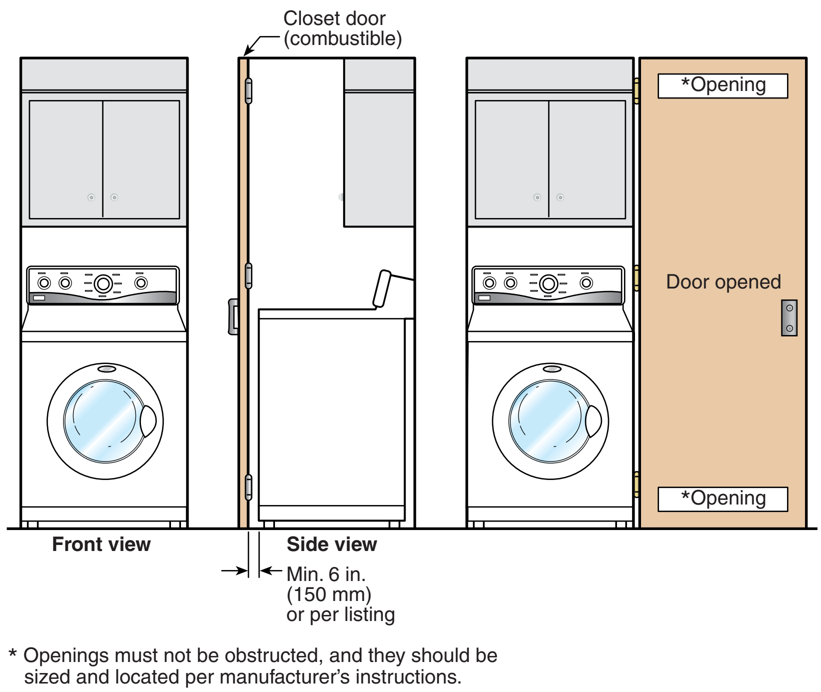
Type 1 Clothes Dryer Installation Requirements.

10.4.1 Clearance. The installation of clothes dryers shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Listed Type 1 clothes dryers shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 in. (150 mm) from adjacent combustible material. Clothes dryers listed for installation at reduced clearances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Type 1 clothes dryers installed in closets shall be specifically listed for such installation.

The manufacturer's instructions or rating nameplate on the unit specifies the required clearance from combustible materials. Exhibit 10.10 illustrates the typical installation of a Type 1 clothes dryer in an alcove or closet. Clearance must be provided for adequate air supply and ease of installation and service. All dryers must be exhausted to the outdoors. As already stated, for listed dryers, the minimum installation clearances defined by the appliance manufacturer must be followed. Unlisted dryer clearance must be at least 18 in. (460 mm) from any combustible material. The commentary following the title of Section 10.4 describes the difference between a Type 1 and a Type 2 dryer.

EXHIBIT 10.10



Installation of a Type 1 Clothes Dryer.

(2) Listed Type 2 clothes dryers shall be installed with clearances of not less than shown on the marking plate and in the manufacturer's instructions. Type 2 clothes dryers designed and marked "For use only in noncombustible locations" shall not be installed elsewhere.
(3) Unlisted clothes dryers shall be installed with clearances to combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm). Combustible floors under unlisted clothes dryers shall be protected in an approved manner.

The commentary following 10.2.4 provides additional information on gas appliance installation on combustible floors.

10.4.2 Exhausting to the Outdoors. Type 1 and Type 2 clothes dryers shall be exhausted to the outdoors.

FAQ Requirements are provided for the exhausting of clothes dryers. Is exhausting different from venting?

Exhausting of clothes dryers sometimes is confused with venting of appliances. Exhausting is the removal from a building of both the products of combustion and the water that has been removed from the clothing. Clothes dryer exhausts include both the products of combustion and moist air. Venting of an appliance, such as a furnace or water heater, is the removal of the products of combustion from a building. Because of the significant difference between the exhaust gas from a clothes dryer and the vent gas from a furnace, water heater, or other gas appliance, the removal methods are given different names and have different requirements.

The manufacturer's instructions must be followed for exhaust duct installation and location of the termination. The requirement for exhausting of all clothes dryers to the outdoors is a practical one. Indoor exhausting of clothes dryers in most climates adds humidity to the point of being uncomfortable in the building. In cold climates, the humidity that accumulates in a building with indoor exhaust of a clothes dryer would make for a very uncomfortable, and possibly moldy, building. Lint buildup would also occur.

FAQ The Type 1 clothes dryer exhaust duct is 30 ft (9 m) long with two elbows. Is this allowed?

Note that the *National Fuel Gas Code* does not limit the length of dryer ducts, other than a general requirement to install listed dryers in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions. The standard for gas dryer construction and testing, ANSI Z21.5.1/CSA 7.1, *Gas Clothes Dryers — Volume I — Type I Clothes Dryers*, requires that gas dryers be tested with a 15 ft (4.6 m) exhaust with two 90-degree elbows, unless the manufacturer specifies another exhaust configuration. If tested with a different configuration, this information will be indicated in the manufacturer's installation instructions. Some mechanical codes have limits on dryer duct lengths, usually 15 ft (4.6 m) with two 90-degree elbows.

In renovation and new construction, plan approval and construction can occur before the dryer is purchased, and the exhaust is usually installed before the dryer is available. Also, the clothes dryer is not usually considered a permanent part of the building, and owners or renters often take their clothes dryers with them when they move.

Fires associated with gas dryers do occur. Note from Commentary Table 10.1 that dryers rank quite low on the list of gas-fueled appliances in terms of reported home fires. Electric

COMMENTARY TABLE 10.1 *Reported Home Structure Fires (2001) Involving Gas-Fueled Appliances*

Appliance	*Number of Fires*
Range or stove	13,400
Oven or rotisserie	4,100
Water heater	3,700
Furnace	2,800
Dryer	2,200
Fixed space heater	1,900
Grill	600

Note: The data from Commentary Table 10.1 are presented to provide an overview of the number of fires involving gas-fueled appliances. These statistics do not indicate or imply levels of risk relative to usage.

Sources of Data: John R. Hall, Jr., Home Cooking Fire Patterns and Trends, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division, Quincy, MA, January 2005, and John R. Hall, Jr., Home Heating Fire Patterns and Trends, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division, Quincy, MA, November 2004.

clothes dryers also cause fires, about 11,000 fires each year, according to the NFPA report, *Home Heating Fire Patterns and Trends*. Contrast the estimated 2001 number of reported home structure fires involving gas dryers (2200) with the corresponding number for electric dryers (8500) and for dryers involving other or unclassified fuel or power (200). The ratio of number of fires (8500 versus 2200) for electric versus gas dryers is 4.0, slightly higher than the 3.6 ratio in household usage of the two types of dryers.

10.4.3 Provisions for Make-Up Air.

10.4.3.1 Make-up air shall be provided for Type 1 clothes dryers in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.

The quantity of make-up air required for a Type 1 clothes dryer exceeds that of other gas appliances. The manufacturer's installation instructions provide opening requirements to allow such make-up air. Note that clothes dryers are excluded from the requirements of Section 9.3, Air for Combustion and Ventilation. This exclusion recognizes that a large amount of make-up air essential for proper performance includes the small amount required for combustion.

Five to ten times the air required for an appliance of similar heat input should be provided. If several gas appliances are installed in a space with insufficient air for combustion and ventilation (see Section 9.3, Air for Combustion and Ventilation) or in a limited space (e.g., a utility room or service porch), adequate combustion and ventilation air must be provided. Type 1 dryers that can be installed in closets will be identified as such by the manufacturer's installation instructions. In replacing a dryer in a small space, a dryer listed for installation in a closet must be selected.

10.4.3.2 Provision for make-up air shall be provided for Type 2 clothes dryers, with a minimum free area of 1 in.^{2}/1000 Btu/hr (2200 mm^2/kW) total input rating of the dryer(s) installed.

Type 2 dryers are required to have at least 1 in.^{2} (650 mm^2) of make-up air opening per 1000 Btu/hr (2200 mm^2/kW) input rating. In large rooms, installing a separate ventilation inlet duct can fulfill this requirement. A ventilation system should be provided in a commercial public laundry and may be required by a mechanical code if such a code is adopted and used. The manufacturer's installation instructions should also be consulted. The manufacturer's instructions may specify larger openings for ventilation air, and in order to meet the requirements of both codes, the larger opening must be used.

10.4.4 Exhaust Ducts for Type 1 Clothes Dryers.

10.4.4.1 A clothes dryer exhaust duct shall not be connected into any vent connector, gas vent, chimney, crawl space, attic, or other similar concealed space.

10.4.4.2 Ducts for exhausting clothes dryers shall not be assembled with screws or other fastening means that extend into the duct and that would catch lint and reduce the efficiency of the exhaust system.

FAQ Can sheet metal screws be used to connect dryer exhaust ducts?

Sheet metal screws or other fastenings that can extend into the duct and catch lint are prohibited, and either external clamps or tape (such as duct tape) must be used to make all duct connections and fittings.

10.4.4.3 Exhaust ducts shall be constructed of rigid metallic material. Transition ducts used to connect the dryer to the exhaust duct shall be listed for that application or installed in accordance with the clothes dryer manufacturer's installation instructions.

Type 1 dryer ducts, as shown in Exhibit 10.11, must be constructed of rigid metal vent material. Prior to the 1992 edition of the code, Type 1 duct material was not specified and the subject was left to the dryer manufacturer's instructions. Plastic and foil-type materials, which are more susceptible to damage and reduced airflow, were commonly used. The requirement recognizes that flexibility is needed in the duct installation to allow moving the dryer to access the duct connection, and the requirement allows only listed transition duct or transition duct recommended by the dryer manufacturer.

EXHIBIT 10.11

Transition Duct. (Courtesy of Deflecto Corporation)

10.4.5 Exhaust Ducts for Type 2 Clothes Dryers.

10.4.5.1 Exhaust ducts for Type 2 clothes dryers shall comply with 10.4.4.

10.4.5.2 Exhaust ducts for Type 2 clothes dryers shall be constructed of sheet metal or other noncombustible material. Such ducts shall be equivalent in strength and corrosion resistance to ducts made of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0195 in. (0.5 mm) thick.

10.4.5.3 Type 2 clothes dryers shall be equipped or installed with lint-controlling means.

10.4.5.4 Exhaust ducts for unlisted Type 2 clothes dryers shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 6 in. (150 mm) from adjacent combustible material. Where exhaust ducts for Type 2 clothes dryers are installed with reduced clearances, the adjacent combustible material shall be protected in accordance with Table 10.2.3.

10.4.5.5 Where ducts pass through walls, floors, or partitions, the space around the duct shall be sealed with noncombustible material.

10.4.5.6 Multiple installations of Type 2 clothes dryers shall be made in a manner to prevent adverse operation due to back pressures that might be created in the exhaust systems.

The requirements for the installation of Type 2 dryer ducts include the requirements for Type 1 ducts with several provisions added. Corrosion-resistant sheet metal is required, and a minimum thickness is specified. Corrosion resistance recognizes the high moisture content of dryer exhaust gases, which can condense and corrode steel exhausts. Lint control means are required, recognizing the higher lint production of Type 2 clothes dryers compared to Type 1 dryers. Penetrations through building walls and floors must be sealed with noncombustible material, recognizing the higher temperature at which Type 2 dryer exhausts can operate compared with Type 1 dryer exhausts. Installations where multiple dryers exhaust into a single exhaust duct are required to have a means to prevent the operation of several dryers overcoming the exhaust of a single dryer and forcing the exhaust air back into the room. A backdraft damper installed on the individual dryer's exhaust is one way to comply with this requirement.

10.4.6 Multiple-Family or Public Use. All clothes dryers installed for multiple-family or public use shall be equipped with approved safety shutoff devices and shall be installed as specified for a Type 2 clothes dryer under 10.4.5.

EXHIBIT 10.12

Gas Conversion Burner. (Courtesy of Carlin Combustion Technology, Inc.)

10.5 Conversion Burners

Installation of conversion burners shall conform to ANSI Z21.8, *Installation of Domestic Gas Conversion Burners.*

A conversion burner is used to replace a burner assembly designed for another fuel, such as heating oil. This installation allows a boiler or furnace to be converted to gas without replacing the entire appliance. Exhibit 10.12 shows a typical gas conversion burner.

EXHIBIT 10.13

Decorative Gas Appliance Installed in a Wood-Burning Fireplace. (Courtesy of Empire Comfort Systems)

10.6 Decorative Appliances for Installation in Vented Fireplaces

Decorative appliances (sometimes called "gas logs") for installation in vented fireplaces, which are shown in Exhibit 10.13, are self-contained, freestanding, fuel gas–burning appliances designed for installation only in vented fireplaces. These decorative appliances rely on fireplace venting to vent their products of combustion.

The primary function of a decorative appliance lies in the aesthetic effect of its flames. The four types of decorative appliances are described as follows:

1. Coal basket: An open-flame appliance with a metal basket filled with simulated coals.
2. Fireplace insert: An open-flame, radiant-type appliance mounted in a decorative metal panel that covers the fireplace opening. This appliance has a provision for venting to the fireplace chimney.
3. Gas log: An open-flame appliance consisting of a metal frame or base supporting simulated logs.
4. Radiant appliance: An open-flame appliance designed primarily to convert the energy in fuel gas to radiant heat by means of refractory or similarly radiating materials. A radiant heater typically has no external jacket.

10.6.1* Prohibited Installations. Decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces shall not be installed in bathrooms or bedrooms unless the appliance is listed and the bedroom or bathroom has the required volume in accordance with 9.3.2.

Because many homes now have bedrooms and bathrooms large enough to meet the requirement of 9.3.2, the code now permits these installations if the decorative appliance is listed.

A.10.6.1 For information on decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces, see ANSI Z21.60/CGA 2.26, *Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid-Fuel Burning Fireplaces.*

Paragraphs A.10.6.1 and A.10.7.1 assist code users in identifying decorative appliances for installation in vented fireplaces. The appliance nameplate lists the standard to which the appliance is listed, so the identification can be made easily.

10.6.2 Installation. A decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace shall be installed only in a vented fireplace having a working chimney flue and constructed of noncombustible materials. These appliances shall not be thermostatically controlled.

Decorative appliances are not permitted to have thermostatic controls because they are not to be used as sources of heat. If a room needs a thermostatically controlled device, a room heater can be used. The installation of room heaters is covered in Section 10.22.

10.6.2.1 A listed decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.6.2.2 A decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace, where installed in a manufactured home, shall be listed for installation in manufactured homes.

10.6.2.3 An unlisted decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace shall be installed in a fireplace having a permanent free opening, based on appliance input rating and chimney height equal to or greater than that specified in Table 10.6.2.3.

***TABLE 10.6.2.3** Free Opening Area of Chimney Damper for Venting Flue Gases from Unlisted Decorative Appliances for Installation in Vented Fireplaces*

Chimney Height (ft)	*Minimum Permanent Free Opening (in.²)**						
	8	*13*	*20*	*29*	*39*	*51*	*64*
	Appliance Input Rating (Btu/hr)						
6	7,800	14,000	23,200	34,000	46,400	62,400	80,000
8	8,400	15,200	25,200	37,000	50,400	68,000	86,000
10	9,000	16,800	27,600	40,400	55,800	74,400	96,400
15	9,800	18,200	30,200	44,600	62,400	84,000	108,800
20	10,600	20,200	32,600	50,400	68,400	94,000	122,200
30	11,200	21,600	36,600	55,200	76,800	105,800	138,600

For SI units, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.
* The first six minimum permanent free openings (8 in.^{2} to 51 in.^{2}) correspond approximately to the cross-sectional areas of chimneys having diameters of 3 in. through 8 in., respectively. The 64 in.^{2} opening corresponds to the cross-sectional area of standard 8 in. × 8 in. chimney tile.

FAQ Can a gas log be installed in an existing wood fireplace?

A gas log can be installed in an existing wood fireplace, but the damper on the solid fuel fireplace must be altered or removed, because a gas log cannot be allowed to operate in a fireplace with a closed damper. There is no interlock between the existing damper and the new decorative appliance, so the damper must be either permanently blocked open, removed, or cut to allow sufficient venting area. Table 10.6.2.3 provides the necessary free opening for a chimney damper serving an unlisted decorative appliance installed in a vented wood-burning fireplace.

10.6.3 Fireplace Screens. A fireplace screen shall be installed with a decorative appliance for installation in a vented fireplace.

A fireplace screen is required to be installed to provide protection for people and pets from inadvertent contact with the appliance. Tempered glass enclosures designed for fireplaces may be used if they provide adequate combustion air for the appliance.

10.7 Gas Fireplaces, Vented

Vented gas fireplaces are vented appliances whose only function lies in the aesthetic effect of their flames. These appliances were formerly called vented decorative appliances. The name change follows an identical name change in the standard used for listing these appliances, ANSI Z21.50/CSA 2.22, *Vented Gas Fireplaces*.

Simple explanations of these terms follow:

- Decorative appliances are intended for installation in vented fireplaces. Gas logs that are installed in existing wood-burning fireplaces are an example.
- Vented gas fireplaces are complete, enclosed units that are vented to the outdoors via a vent or by insertion in a wood-burning fireplace.

The manufacturer's instructions must be followed for the installation of listed appliances, as well as the requirements in 10.7.2; in Chapter 12, Venting of Appliances; and in Table 10.6.2.3 for essential venting requirements.

10.7.1* Prohibited Installations. Vented gas fireplaces shall not be installed in bathrooms or bedrooms unless the appliance is listed and the bedroom or bathroom has the required volume in accordance with 9.3.2.

Exception: Direct vent gas fireplaces.

Vented gas fireplaces are allowed to be installed in bedrooms and bathrooms when the room volume requirements of 9.3.2 are met. Decorative appliances installed in vented gas fireplaces must also meet the requirements of 9.3.2. See the commentary following 10.6.1.

Direct-vent gas fireplaces can be installed whether or not the combustion air requirements of 9.3.2 are met, because direct-vent appliances do not use air from the room for combustion.

A.10.7.1 For information on vented gas fireplaces, see ANSI Z21.50/CGA 2.22, *Vented Gas Fireplaces.*

The commentary following A.10.6.1 discusses the identification of decorative appliances, which are listed in ANSI Z21.60/CSA 2.26, *Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid-Fuel Burning Fireplaces.*

10.7.2 Installation. The installation of vented gas fireplaces shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Listed vented gas fireplaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and where installed in or attached to combustible material shall be specifically listed for such installation.
(2) Unlisted vented gas fireplaces shall not be installed in or attached to combustible material and shall also comply with the following:
   (a) They shall have a clearance at the sides and rear of not less than 18 in. (460 mm).
   (b) Combustible floors under unlisted vented gas fireplaces shall be protected in an approved manner.
   (c) Unlisted appliances of other than the direct vent type shall be equipped with a draft hood and shall be properly vented in accordance with Chapter 12.
   (d) Appliances that use metal, asbestos, or ceramic material to direct radiation to the front of the appliance shall have a clearance of 36 in. (910 mm) in front and, if constructed with a double back of metal or ceramic, shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 18 in. (460 mm) at the sides and 12 in. (300 mm) at the rear.

Refer to the commentary following 10.2.4 and 10.3.2 for information on the installation of gas appliances on combustible floors.

(3) Panels, grilles, and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building.
(4) Direct vent gas fireplaces shall be installed with the vent air intake terminal in the outdoors and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

10.7.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 9.3.

Section 9.3, Air for Combustion and Ventilation, was revised in the 2002 edition to delete the terms *confined space* and *unconfined space*. These terms were replaced with the term *required volume*. Refer to Section 9.3 for a description of the requirements.

10.8 Non-Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters

Refer to Section 10.9, Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters, for installation requirements for gas-fired industrial air heaters, which recirculate building air. Note that these two sections provide the only installation instructions for appliances that are installed in industrial occupancies. These non-recirculating industrial heaters are included here because of their widespread use and confusion as to their installation.

10.8.1 Application. Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters of the non-recirculating type shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z83.4/CSA 3.7, *Non-Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters*.

Note that non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters must be listed to ANSI Z83.4/CSA 3.7, *Non-Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters.*

10.8.2 Prohibited Installations.

The installation of a direct-fired make-up air heater must be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and with the general requirements outlined in Section 10.8. These heaters are intended for commercial and industrial applications only and are not intended to heat rooms used for sleeping.

Note that 10.8.3.2 specifically limits the installation of non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters to commercial and industrial occupancies.

10.8.2.1 Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall not serve any area containing sleeping quarters.

10.8.2.2 Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall not recirculate room air.

10.8.3 Installation. Installation of direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall comply with 10.8.3.1 through 10.8.3.4.

10.8.3.1 Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

10.8.3.2 Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed only in industrial or commercial occupancies.

10.8.3.3 Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be permitted to provide fresh air ventilation.

Building ventilation requirements normally are specified in a mechanical code. The requirement in 10.8.3.3 is intended to specifically allow the non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heater to be the source of fresh ventilation air required by mechanical code ventilation requirements.

10.8.3.4 Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be provided with access for removal of burners; for replacement of motors, controls, filters, and other working parts; and for adjustment and lubrication of parts requiring maintenance.

10.8.4 Clearance from Combustible Materials. Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed with a clearance from combustible materials of not less than that shown on the rating plate and the manufacturer's instructions.

10.8.5 Air Supply. All air to the non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heater shall be ducted directly from outdoors. Where outdoor air dampers or closing louvers are used, they shall be verified to be in the open position prior to main burner operation.

10.8.6 Atmospheric Vents or Gas Reliefs or Bleeds. Non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters with valve train components equipped with atmospheric vents, gas reliefs, or bleeds shall have their vent lines, gas reliefs, or bleeds lead to a safe point outdoors. Means shall be employed on these lines to prevent water from entering and to prevent blockage from insects and foreign matter. An atmospheric vent line shall not be required to be provided on a valve train component equipped with a listed vent limiter.

10.8.7 Relief Openings. The design of the installation shall include adequate provisions to permit the non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heater to operate at its rated airflow without overpressurizing the space served by the heater by taking into account the structure's designed infiltration rate, properly designed relief openings, or an interlocked powered exhaust system, or a combination of these methods.

10.8.7.1 The structure's designed infiltration rate and the size of relief opening(s) shall be determined by approved engineering methods.

10.8.7.2 Louver or counterbalanced gravity damper relief openings shall be permitted. Where motorized dampers or closable louvers are used, they shall be proved to be in their open position prior to main burner operation.

FAQ Can a non-recirculating direct gas-fired heater be installed in a factory with existing relief vents?

With direct-fired heaters blowing heated air into a building, positive building pressure can be a problem for both the heater and the building. High building pressure can restrict airflow through the heater, resulting in reduced airflow and improper combustion. High building pressure can also cause other building air-handling systems to operate improperly. These concerns are addressed by requiring an opening to the outdoors when the heater is operating. Local authorities may require an air balance report to verify that the heater is operating at its rated airflow.

10.8.8 Purging. Inlet ducting, when used, shall be purged with at least four air changes prior to an ignition attempt.

10.9 Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters

Recirculating gas-fired industrial air heaters are intended for use in industrial and commercial occupancies, such as factories and warehouses. They must not be installed in areas containing sleeping quarters or assembly occupancies.

10.9.1 Application. Direct gas-fired industrial air heaters of the recirculating type shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z83.18, *Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters*.

10.9.2 Prohibited Installations.

10.9.2.1 Recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall not serve any area containing sleeping quarters.

10.9.2.2* Recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall not recirculate room air in buildings that contain flammable solids, liquids, or gases; explosive materials; or substances that can become toxic when exposed to flame or heat.

A.10.9.2.2 Recirculation of room air can be hazardous in the presence of flammable solids, liquids, gases, explosive materials (e.g., grain dust, coal dust, gun powder), and substances (e.g., refrigerants, aerosols) that can become toxic when exposed to flame or heat.

Paragraph 10.9.2.2 is a practical requirement that prohibits the recirculation of room air in buildings that contain flammable liquids, solids, and gases, as well as substances that can become toxic when exposed to flame. The term *flammable,* as applied to liquids in 10.9.2.2, is a broad application and is not limited to the term *flammable liquid* as defined by NFPA 30, *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*. NFPA 30 defines *flammable liquid* as a liquid with a flash point below 100°F (37.8°C). The term *flammable liquid* in 10.9.2.2 also includes *Class II combustible liquids,* as defined by NFPA 30, which have a flash point of 100°F to below 140°F (37.8°C to below 60°C). Class II combustible liquids can be heated to above 100°F (37.8°C) by localized room heating processes. Heating above 100°F (37.8°C) results in the generation of flammable vapors. Also, the temperature points selected by NFPA 30 are valid at sea level. If the building is above sea level, flammable vapors will develop at lower temperatures.

10.9.3 Installation. Installation of direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
(2) Recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed only in industrial or commercial occupancies.

Note that the installation prohibitions for recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters are similar to those for non-recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters — that is, they must be installed only in industrial and commercial occupancies. Where recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters are installed, all requirements in building and mechanical codes for minimum fresh air and ventilation must be met.

10.9.4 Clearance from Combustible Materials. Recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters shall be installed with a clearance from combustible materials of not less than that shown on the rating plate and the manufacturer's instructions.

10.9.5 Air Supply. Ventilation air to the recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heater shall be ducted directly from outdoors. Air to the recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heater in excess of the minimum ventilation air specified on the heater's rating plate shall be taken from the building, ducted directly from outdoors, or a combination of both. Where outdoor air dampers or closing louvers are used, they shall be verified to be in the open position prior to main burner operation.

10.9.6 Atmospheric Vents, Gas Reliefs, or Bleeds. Recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heaters with valve train components equipped with atmospheric vents, gas reliefs, or bleeds shall have their vent lines, gas reliefs, or bleeds lead to a safe point outdoors. Means shall be employed on these lines to prevent water from entering and to prevent blockage from insects and foreign matter. An atmospheric vent line shall not be required to be provided on a valve train component equipped with a listed vent limiter.

10.9.7 Relief Openings. The design of the installation shall include adequate provisions to permit the recirculating direct gas-fired industrial air heater to operate at its rated airflow without overpressurizing the space served by the heater, by taking into account the structure's designed infiltration rate, properly designed relief openings, an interlocked powered exhaust system, or a combination of these methods.

10.9.7.1 The structure's designed infiltration rate and the size of relief opening(s) shall be determined by approved engineering methods.

10.9.7.2 Louver or counterbalanced gravity damper relief openings shall be permitted. Where motorized dampers or closable louvers are used, they shall be proved to be in their open position prior to main burner operation.

An exhaust system or properly designed relief openings must be provided to exhaust the air that is brought into an area. A buildup of static pressure within the building (area) could reduce the amount of airflow through the heater and affect its combustion process.

10.9.8 Purging. Inlet ducting, when used, shall be purged with at least four air changes prior to an ignition attempt.

10.10 Duct Furnaces

Duct furnaces are designed to fit into ducts and look like a section of duct. Listed duct furnaces are available for indoor installation only, for outdoor installation only, or for both indoor and outdoor installation. The installation of outdoor furnaces must follow the manufacturer's installation instructions for weather protection, which are not provided in the code.

Certain duct furnaces also can be constructed of corrosion-resistant material and are listed for installation downstream from a refrigeration coil.

10.10.1 Clearances. The installation of duct furnaces shall comply with the following clearance requirements:

(1) Listed duct furnaces shall be installed with clearances of at least 6 in. (150 mm) between adjacent walls, ceilings, and floors of combustible material and the furnace draft hood and shall comply with the following:
   (a) Furnaces listed for installation at lesser clearances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
   (b) In no case shall the clearance be such as to interfere with combustion air and accessibility.
(2) Unlisted duct furnaces shall be installed with clearances to combustible material in accordance with the clearances specified for unlisted furnaces and boilers in Table 10.3.2.2. Combustible floors under unlisted duct furnaces shall be protected in an approved manner.

Refer to the commentary following 10.2.4 and 10.3.2 for information on the installation of gas appliances on combustible floors.

10.10.2 Installation of Duct Furnaces. Duct furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.

10.10.3 Access Panels. The ducts connected to duct furnaces shall have removable access panels on both the upstream and downstream sides of the furnace.

10.10.4 Location of Draft Hood and Controls. The controls, combustion air inlet, and draft hoods for duct furnaces shall be located outside the ducts. The draft hood shall be located in the same enclosure from which combustion air is taken.

10.10.5 Circulating Air. Where a duct furnace is installed so that supply ducts carry air circulated by the furnace to areas outside the space containing the furnace, the return air shall also be handled by a duct(s) sealed to the furnace casing and terminating outside the space containing the furnace. The duct furnace shall be installed on the positive-pressure side of the circulating air blower.

All duct furnaces must be installed on the positive pressure side of the circulation air blower. This is important to ensure separation of the products of combustion and the circulating air. If the duct furnace were installed upstream of the circulating fan and leaks developed in the heat exchanger, negative pressure created by the fan could draw products of combustion into the circulating airstream.

10.10.6 Duct Furnaces Used with Refrigeration Systems.

10.10.6.1 A duct furnace shall not be installed in conjunction with a refrigeration coil where circulation of cooled air is provided by the blower.

Exception: Where the blower has sufficient capacity to overcome the external static resistance imposed by the duct system, furnace, and the cooling coil and the air throughput necessary for heating or cooling, whichever is greater.

10.10.6.2 Duct furnaces used in conjunction with cooling appliances shall be installed in parallel with or on the upstream side of cooling coils to avoid condensation within heating elements. With a parallel flow arrangement, the dampers or other means used to control the flow of air shall be sufficiently tight to prevent any circulation of cooled air through the unit.

Exception: Where the duct furnace has been specifically listed for downstream installation.

A duct furnace installed in a parallel arrangement with a cooling coil must be installed with tight-fitting face dampers in front of both the duct furnace and the cooling coil to divert the airflow as necessary. Recirculated cold air over the heat exchanger may cause corrosion and premature failure.

10.10.6.3 Where duct furnaces are to be located upstream from cooling units, the cooling unit shall be so designed or equipped as to not develop excessive temperatures or pressures.

10.10.6.4 Where a duct furnace is installed downstream of an evaporative cooler or air washer, the heat exchanger shall be constructed of corrosion-resistant materials. Stainless steel, ceramic-coated steel, and an aluminum-coated steel in which the bond between the steel and the aluminum is an iron–aluminum alloy are considered to be corrosion resistant. Air washers operating with chilled water that deliver air below the dew point of the ambient air at the duct furnace shall be considered as refrigeration systems.

10.10.7 Installation in Commercial Garages and Aircraft Hangars. Duct furnaces installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be of a listed type and shall be installed in accordance with 9.1.11 and 9.1.12.

10.11 Floor Furnaces

Floor furnaces are space heaters that are usually used in residential occupancies, that are installed below a floor, and that provide heated air through a grate in the floor. The use of floor furnaces has declined because central heat has become the most common form of heat in residential buildings. These furnaces are still manufactured but are not used as widely as they were in the past.

A floor furnace is a completely self-contained unit that is suspended from the floor of the space being heated. The unit takes its air for combustion from areas other than the heated space.

A floor furnace can be equipped with a fan to provide the primary means for circulation of air, or it can be a gravity-type furnace that depends on the circulation of air by convection.

A gravity furnace that is equipped with a booster-type fan is considered also to be a gravity flow furnace when the fan does not restrict free circulation of air and when the fan is not in operation.

10.11.1 Installation. The installation of floor furnaces shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Listed floor furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.
(2) Unlisted floor furnaces shall not be installed in combustible floors.
(3) Thermostats controlling floor furnaces shall not be located in a room or space that can be separated from the room or space in which the register of the floor furnace is located.

10.11.2 Temperature Limit Controls.

10.11.2.1 Listed automatically operated floor furnaces shall be equipped with temperature limit controls.

10.11.2.2 Unlisted automatically operated floor furnaces shall be equipped with a temperature limit control arranged to shut off the flow of gas to the burner in the event the temperature at the warm air outlet register exceeds 350°F (177°C) above room temperature.

Historically, floor furnaces did not have controls to limit the temperature at the warm air register. The standard for floor furnaces, ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32, *Vented Gas-Fired Space Heating Appliances,* requires additional controls to limit register temperatures, minimizing the burn hazard potential for occupants. Therefore, the requirement is included in the code to ensure that it is not overlooked where unlisted floor furnaces are installed.

10.11.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 9.3.

Since the burners and draft hood are generally below the floor, adequate ventilation of the under-floor space to provide air for combustion, draft hood dilution, and ventilation is critical for proper operation. Normal construction methods in buildings with crawl spaces usually will provide more than adequate ventilation and combustion air, but it is not uncommon to find such spaces blocked in an effort to maintain warmer floors.

10.11.4 Placement. The following provisions apply to furnaces that serve one story:

(1) *Floors.* Floor furnaces shall not be installed in the floor of any doorway, stairway landing, aisle, or passageway of any enclosure, public or private, or in an exitway from any such room or space.
(2) *Walls and Corners.* The register of a floor furnace with a horizontal warm air outlet shall not be placed closer than 6 in. (150 mm) from the nearest wall. A distance of at least 18 in. (460 mm) from two adjoining sides of the floor furnace register to walls shall be provided to eliminate the necessity of occupants walking over the warm air discharge. The remaining sides shall be a minimum of 6 in. (150 mm) from a wall. Wall register models shall not be placed closer than 6 in. (150 mm) to a corner.
(3) *Draperies.* The furnace shall be placed so that a door, drapery, or similar object cannot be nearer than 12 in. (300 mm) to any portion of the register of the furnace.

10.11.5 Bracing. The space provided for the furnace shall be framed with doubled joists and with headers not lighter than the joists.

FAQ It is proposed to add a floor furnace to an existing room as part of remodeling. Are there any special structural requirements?

Structural beams and floor joists must not be cut. The commentary following 7.2.2.2 provides additional information.

10.11.6 Support. Means shall be provided to support the furnace when the floor register is removed.

10.11.7 Clearance. The lowest portion of the floor furnace shall have at least a 6 in. (150 mm) clearance from the general ground level. A reduced clearance to a minimum of 2 in. (50 mm) shall be permitted, provided the lower 6 in. (150 mm) portion of the floor furnace is sealed by the manufacturer to prevent entrance of water. Where these clearances are not present, the ground below and to the sides shall be excavated to form a "basin-like" pit under the furnace so that the required clearance is provided beneath the lowest portion of the furnace. A 12 in. (300 mm) clearance shall be provided on all sides except the control side, which shall have an 18 in. (460 mm) clearance.

10.11.8 Access. The space in which any floor furnace is installed shall be accessible by an opening in the foundation not less than 24 in. × 18 in. (610 mm × 460 mm) or by a trapdoor not less than 24 in. × 24 in. (610 mm × 610 mm) in any cross-section thereof, and a passageway not less than 24 in. × 18 in. (610 mm × 460 mm) in any cross-section thereof.

10.11.9 Seepage Pan. Where the excavation exceeds 12 in. (300 mm) in depth or water seepage is likely to collect, a watertight copper pan, concrete pit, or other suitable material shall be used, unless adequate drainage is provided or the appliance is sealed by the manufacturer to meet this condition. A copper pan shall be made of not less than 16 oz/ft^2 (4.9 kg/m^2) sheet copper. The pan shall be anchored in place so as to prevent floating, and the walls shall extend at least 4 in. (100 mm) above the ground level with at least a 6 in. (150 mm) clearance on all sides, except on the control side, which shall have at least an 18 in. (460 mm) clearance.

10.11.10 Wind Protection. Floor furnaces shall be protected, where necessary, against severe wind conditions.

10.11.11 Upper Floor Installations. Listed floor furnaces shall be permitted to be installed in an upper floor, provided the furnace assembly projects below into a utility room, closet, garage, or similar nonhabitable space. In such installations, the floor furnace shall be enclosed completely (entirely separated from the nonhabitable space) with means for air intake to meet the provisions of Section 9.3, with access for servicing, minimum furnace clearances of 6 in. (150 mm) to all sides and bottom, and with the enclosure constructed of Portland cement plaster or metal lath or other noncombustible material.

10.11.12 First Floor Installation. Listed floor furnaces installed in the first or ground floors of buildings shall not be required to be enclosed unless the basements of these buildings have been converted to apartments or sleeping quarters, in which case the floor furnace shall be enclosed as specified for upper floor installations and shall project into a nonhabitable space.

10.12 Food Service Appliance, Floor-Mounted

For examples of floor-mounted food service equipment, see Exhibit 10.14 and Exhibit 10.15.

EXHIBIT 10.14

Gas Convection Oven. (Courtesy of Vulcan & Wolf)

EXHIBIT 10.15

Commercial Gas Range. (Courtesy of Vulcan & Wolf)

10.12.1 Clearance for Listed Appliances. Listed floor-mounted food service appliances, such as ranges for hotels and restaurants, deep fat fryers, unit broilers, kettles, steam cookers, steam generators, and baking and roasting ovens, shall be installed at least 6 in. (150 mm) from combustible material except that at least a 2 in. (50 mm) clearance shall be maintained between a draft hood and combustible material. Floor-mounted food service appliances listed for installation at lesser clearances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Appliances designed and marked "For use only in noncombustible locations" shall not be installed elsewhere.

10.12.2 Clearance for Unlisted Appliances. Unlisted floor-mounted food service appliances shall be installed to provide a clearance to combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm) from the sides and rear of the appliance and from the vent connector and not less than 48 in. (1.2 m) above cooking tops and at the front of the appliance. Clearances for unlisted appliances installed in partially enclosed areas such as alcoves shall not be reduced. Reduced clearances for unlisted appliances installed in rooms that are not partially enclosed shall be in accordance with Table 10.2.3.

10.12.3 Mounting on Combustible Floor.

10.12.3.1 Listed floor-mounted food service appliances that are listed specifically for installation on floors constructed of combustible material shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.12.3.2 Floor-mounted food service appliances that are not listed for mounting on a combustible floor shall be mounted in accordance with 10.12.4 or be mounted in accordance with one of the following:

(1) Where the appliance is set on legs that provide not less than 18 in. (460 mm) open space under the base of the appliance or where it has no burners and no portion of any oven or broiler within 18 in. (460 mm) of the floor, it shall be permitted to be mounted on a combustible floor without special floor protection, provided at least one sheet metal baffle is between the burner and the floor.

(2) Where the appliance is set on legs that provide not less than 8 in. (200 mm) open space under the base of the appliance, it shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors, provided the floor under the appliance is protected with not less than ⅜ in. (9.5 mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0195 in. (0.5 mm) thick. The preceding specified floor protection shall extend not less than 6 in. (150 mm) beyond the appliance on all sides.
(3) Where the appliance is set on legs that provide not less than 4 in. (100 mm) under the base of the appliance, it shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors, provided the floor under the appliance is protected with hollow masonry not less than 4 in. (100 mm) in thickness covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0195 in. (0.5 mm) thick. Such masonry courses shall be laid with ends unsealed and joints matched in such a way as to provide for free circulation of air through the masonry.
(4) Where the appliance does not have legs at least 4 in. (100 mm) high, it shall be permitted to be mounted on combustible floors, provided the floor under the appliance is protected by two courses of 4 in. (100 mm) hollow clay tile, or equivalent, with courses laid at right angles and with ends unsealed and joints matched in such a way as to provide for free circulation of air through such masonry courses, and covered with steel plate not less than 3⁄16 in. (4.8 mm) in thickness.

10.12.4 Installation on Noncombustible Floor.

10.12.4.1 Listed floor-installed food service appliances that are designed and marked "For use only in noncombustible locations" shall be installed on floors of noncombustible construction with noncombustible flooring and surface finish and with no combustible material against the underside thereof, or on noncombustible slabs or arches having no combustible material against the underside thereof.

10.12.4.2 Such construction shall in all cases extend not less than 12 in. (300 mm) beyond the appliance on all sides.

10.12.5 Combustible Material Adjacent to Cooking Top. Listed and unlisted food service ranges shall be installed to provide clearance to combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm) horizontally for a distance up to 2 ft (0.6 m) above the surface of the cooking top where the combustible material is not completely shielded by high shelving, warming closet, or other system. Reduced combustible material clearances are permitted where protected in accordance with Table 10.2.3.

10.12.6 Use with Casters. Floor-mounted appliances with casters shall be listed for such construction and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for limiting the movement of the appliance to prevent strain on the connection.

Appliance manufacturers generally include specific instructions on connecting appliances with attached casters to the building piping system and may require a cable or other restraint to protect the connector from overextension.

10.12.7 Level Installation. Floor-mounted food service appliances shall be installed level on a firm foundation.

10.12.8* Ventilation. Means shall be provided to properly ventilate the space in which a food service appliance is installed to permit proper combustion of the gas.

A.10.12.8 Where exhaust fans are used for ventilation, precautions might be necessary to avoid interference with the operation of the appliance.

In commercial kitchens, "proper ventilation" is normally achieved with vent fans connected to hoods. Vent fans remove the products of combustion, water vapor, grease, and odors generated during cooking. Provision for make-up air, such as wall louvers, must be provided to replace the air removed by these exhaust fans. Kitchen hoods are normally checked for proper air balance to provide optimal removal of the by-products of cooking. A properly balanced hood provides more than sufficient combustion air to an appliance operating in its vicinity.

10.13 Food Service Appliances, Counter Appliances

10.13.1 Vertical Clearance. A vertical distance of not less than 48 in. (1.2 m) shall be provided between the top of all food service hot plates and griddles and combustible material.

10.13.2 Clearance for Listed Appliances. Listed food service counter appliances such as hot plates and griddles, food and dish warmers, and coffee brewers and urns, where installed on combustible surfaces, shall be set on their own bases or legs and shall be installed with a minimum horizontal clearance of 6 in. (150 mm) from combustible material, except that at least a 2 in. (50 mm) clearance shall be maintained between a draft hood and combustible material. Food service counter appliances listed for installation at lesser clearances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.13.3 Clearance for Unlisted Appliances. Unlisted food service hot plates and griddles shall be installed with a horizontal clearance from combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm). Unlisted gas food service counter appliances, including coffee brewers and urns, waffle bakers, and hot water immersion sterilizers, shall be installed with a horizontal clearance from combustible material of not less than 12 in. (300 mm). Reduced clearances for gas food service counter appliances shall be in accordance with Table 10.2.3. Unlisted food and dish warmers shall be installed with a horizontal clearance from combustible material of not less than 6 in. (150 mm).

10.13.4 Installation of Unlisted Appliances. Unlisted food service counter appliances shall not be set on combustible material unless they have legs that provide not less than 4 in. (100 mm) of open space below the burners and the combustible surface is protected with insulating millboard at least ¼ in. (6 mm) thick covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 in. (0.3 mm) thick, or with equivalent protection.

10.14 Household Cooking Appliances

Code Update

Section 10.14 has been revised in the 2015 edition to eliminate old terminology and redundant language. Specifically, the paragraphs for built-in and floor units were combined, and the requirements streamlined. In addition, the coverage for hot plates and laundry stoves was deleted from the code because no manufacturers or installers of such equipment could be identified.

Household cooking appliances are used for domestic food preparation and provide surface cooking, oven cooking, broiling, or a combination of these functions. Broilers can be either enclosed or open, with the radiant heat source above the cooking surface in an enclosed broiler or below the cooking surface in an open broiler. Domestic cooking appliances, such as the range shown in Exhibit 10.16, can be either built-in or floor-mounted.

10.14.1* Installation. Listed floor-mounted and built-in household cooking appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

A.10.14.1 See Figure A.10.14.1.

EXHIBIT 10.16

Household Cooking Range. (Courtesy of Danielle Domenici)

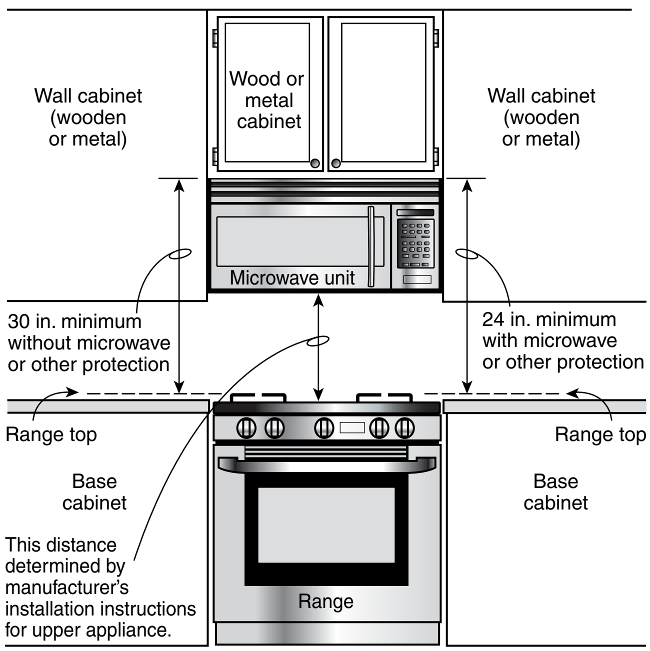


FIGURE A.10.14.1 *Separation Requirements for Cooktops.*

10.14.2 Clearances. The clearances specified as follows shall not interfere with combustion air, accessibility for operation, and servicing:

(1) Listed floor-mounted household cooking appliances, where installed on combustible floors, shall be set on their own bases or legs.

Refer to the commentary following 10.2.4 and 10.3.2 for information on the installation of gas appliances, including household cooking appliances, on combustible floors.

(2) Listed household cooking appliances with listed gas room heater sections shall be installed so that the warm air discharge side shall have a minimum clearance of 18 in. (460 mm) from adjacent combustible material. A minimum clearance of 36 in. (910 mm) shall be provided between the top of the heater section and the bottom of cabinets.
(3) Unlisted floor-mounted household cooking appliances shall be installed with at least a 6 in. (150 mm) clearance at the back and sides to combustible material. Combustible floors under unlisted appliances shall be protected in an approved manner.

Modern kitchens may use appliances, such as ranges, that were once limited to commercial kitchens. Commercial-type appliances are designed to requirements appropriate for a commercial staffed environment and therefore do not have the design features that provide protection in a residential setting. For example, surface temperatures may be higher than for residential appliances, which can be a factor if children are expected to be in the home. Many local jurisdictions will prohibit their installation in residential occupancies. Where they are allowed, special care should be exercised in their installation and the installation requirements for a commercial environment must be followed. The required clearances of commercial cooking appliances are normally greater than for residential appliances, some of which may require considerably more room to the back and sides, and commercial kitchen exhaust systems are often required.

(4) Unlisted built-in household cooking appliances shall not be installed in, or adjacent to, unprotected combustible material.

10.14.2.1 Vertical Clearance Above Cooking Top. Household cooking appliances shall have a vertical clearance above the cooking top of not less than 30 in. (760 mm) to combustible material or metal cabinets. A minimum clearance of 24 in. (610 mm) is permitted when one of the following is installed:

(1) The underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet above the cooking top is protected with not less than ¼ in. (6 mm) insulating millboard covered with sheet metal not less than 0.0122 in. (0.3 mm) thick.
(2) A metal ventilating hood of sheet metal not less than 0.0122 in. (0.3 mm) thick is installed above the cooking top with a clearance of not less than ¼ in. (6 mm) between the hood and the underside of the combustible material or metal cabinet, and the hood is at least as wide as the appliance and is centered over the appliance.
(3) A listed cooking appliance or microwave oven is installed over a listed cooking appliance and conforms to the terms of the upper appliance's manufacturer's installation instructions.

Listed cooking appliances and microwave ovens located above listed cooking appliances are permitted, but they must be installed according to the terms of the upper appliance listing and the manufacturer's instructions. The instructions must be followed, because heat from the lower cooking appliance can adversely affect the operation of the upper appliance.

10.14.3 Level Installation. Cooking appliances shall be installed so that the cooking top, broiler pan, or oven racks are level.

10.15 Illuminating Appliances

Gas lights are rare in buildings today, but they are used for lighting effect and in remote buildings with no electric supply. Gas lights use a very small amount of gas compared to other appliances; therefore, obtaining the required room volume is rarely difficult. Table A.5.4.2.1, Approximate Gas Input for Typical Appliances, includes gas lights with an entry of 2500 Btu/hr, the lowest input rate in the table.

The major safety concern around gas lights is clearance to combustibles, which is reflected in the code requirements. Exhibit 10.17 provides an example of a gas light.

EXHIBIT 10.17

Outdoor Gas Light. (Courtesy of Galaxy Gas)

10.15.1 Clearances for Listed Appliances. Listed illuminating appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.15.2 Clearances for Unlisted Appliances.

10.15.2.1 Enclosed Type. Clearance shall comply with the following:

(1) Unlisted enclosed illuminating appliances installed outdoors shall be installed with clearances in any direction from combustible material of not less than 12 in. (300 mm).
(2) Unlisted enclosed illuminating appliances installed indoors shall be installed with clearances in any direction from combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm).

10.15.2.2 Open-Flame Type. Clearance shall comply with the following:

(1) Unlisted open-flame illuminating appliances installed outdoors shall have clearances from combustible material not less than that specified in Table 10.15.2.2. The distance from ground level to the base of the burner shall be a minimum of 7 ft (2.1 m) where installed within 2 ft (0.6 m) of walkways. Lesser clearances shall be permitted to be used where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
(2) Unlisted open-flame illuminating appliances installed outdoors shall be equipped with a limiting orifice or other limiting devices that maintain a flame height consistent with the clearance from combustible material, as given in Table 10.15.2.2.
(3) Appliances designed for flame heights in excess of 30 in. (760 mm) shall be permitted to be installed if acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. Such appliances shall be equipped with a safety shutoff device or automatic ignition.
(4) Unlisted open-flame illuminating appliances installed indoors shall have clearances from combustible material acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

TABLE 10.15.2.2 *Clearances for Unlisted Outdoor Open-Flame Illuminating Appliances*

Flame Height Above Burner Head (in.)	*Minimum Clearance from Combustible Material (ft)**	
	Horizontal	**Vertical**
12	2	6
18	3	8
24	3	10
30	4	12

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 ft = 0.305 m.
*Measured from the nearest portion of the burner head.

10.15.3 Mounting on Buildings. Illuminating appliances designed for wall or ceiling mounting shall be securely attached to substantial structures in such a manner that they are not dependent on the gas piping for support.

10.15.4 Mounting on Posts. Illuminating appliances designed for post mounting shall be securely and rigidly attached to a post. Posts shall be rigidly mounted. The strength and rigidity of posts greater than 3 ft (0.9 m) in height shall be at least equivalent to that of a 2½ in. (64 mm) diameter post constructed of 0.064 in. (1.6 mm) thick steel or a 1 in. Schedule 40 steel pipe. Posts 3 ft (0.9 m) or less in height shall not be smaller than a ¾ in. Schedule 40 steel pipe. Drain openings shall be provided near the base of posts where water collecting inside the posts is possible.

10.15.5 Appliance Pressure Regulators. Where an appliance pressure regulator is not supplied with an illuminating appliance and the service line is not equipped with a service pressure regulator, an appliance pressure regulator shall be installed in the line serving one or more illuminating appliances.

10.16 Incinerators, Commercial-Industrial

Commercial-industrial-type incinerators shall be constructed and installed in accordance with NFPA 82, *Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment*.

10.17 Infrared Heaters

Infrared heaters are heaters that direct infrared energy into a specific area. Such heaters can be either vented or unvented. Model building and mechanical codes often have minimum mounting height requirements for these heaters. Exhibit 10.18 shows an infrared heater designed for residential use, and Exhibit 10.19 shows an infrared heater designed for commercial or industrial use.

EXHIBIT 10.18

Infrared Space Heater. (Courtesy of Detroit Radiant Products Company)

EXHIBIT 10.19

Low Intensity, Tubular Infrared Heater. (Courtesy of AmbiRad Limited)

10.17.1 Support. Suspended-type infrared heaters shall be fixed in position independent of gas and electric supply lines. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material. Heaters subject to vibration shall be provided with vibration-isolating hangers.

Heater manufacturers' installation instructions provide specific recommendations for noncombustible hangers and brackets. Additional bracing to protect against seismic forces is also recommended in geographic areas that are seismically active.

10.17.2 Clearance. The installation of infrared heaters shall meet the following clearance requirements:

(1) Listed heaters shall be installed with clearances from combustible material in accordance the manufacturer's installation instructions.
(2) Unlisted heaters shall be installed in accordance with clearances from combustible material acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.
(3) In locations used for the storage of combustible materials, signs shall be posted to specify the maximum permissible stacking height to maintain required clearances from the heater to the combustibles.

10.17.3 Combustion and Ventilation Air.

10.17.3.1 Where unvented infrared heaters are used, natural or mechanical means shall be provided to supply and exhaust at least 4 ft^3/min/1000 Btu/hr (0.38 m^3/min/kW) input of installed heaters.

10.17.3.2 Exhaust openings for removing flue products shall be above the level of the heaters.

Note that air for combustion and removal of the products of combustion from the room in which an infrared heater is installed can be supplied by natural or mechanical means of ventilation. Where mechanical ventilation is used, the capacity of mechanical ventilation can easily be determined. Where natural ventilation is used, the paragraph is silent on how to provide 4 cfm/1000 Btu/hr (0.38 m^3/min/kW) of combustion and ventilation air. The intent of the code is that compliance with Section 9.3, Air for Combustion and Ventilation, will provide the required air.

10.17.4 Installation in Commercial Garages and Aircraft Hangars. Overhead heaters installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be of a listed type and shall be installed in accordance with 9.1.11 and 9.1.12.

10.18 Open-Top Broiler Units

Open-top broiler units are similar to outdoor gas grills, except that they are designed for countertop installation indoors in conjunction with a ventilating hood.

10.18.1 Listed Units. Listed open-top broiler units shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.18.2 Unlisted Units. Unlisted open-top broiler units shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions but shall not be installed in combustible material.

10.18.3 Protection Above Domestic Units. Domestic open-top broiler units shall be provided with a metal ventilating hood not less than 0.0122 in. (0.3 mm) thick with a clearance of not less than ¼ in. (6 mm) between the hood and the underside of combustible material or metal cabinets. A clearance of at least 24 in. (610 mm) shall be maintained between the cooking top and the combustible material or metal cabinet, and the hood shall be at least as wide as the open-top broiler unit and centered over the unit. Listed domestic open-top broiler units incorporating an integral exhaust system and listed for use without a ventilating hood shall not be required to be provided with a ventilating hood if installed in accordance with 10.14.2.1(1).

FAQ The open-top broiler being installed has vent openings alongside the grill/griddle that pull the cooking odors downward. Is a hood still required?

Open-top broiler units that incorporate an integral exhaust system, which usually includes a fan and filter located below the broiler level, are designed to pull the flue gases and cooking vapors downward and discharge them to the outside. These units do not require a hood, but they must maintain the required clearance of at least 24 in. (610 mm) above the cooking top.

10.18.4 Commercial Units. Commercial open-top broiler units shall be provided with ventilation in accordance with NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*.

NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations,* contains detailed requirements for the design and installation of hoods, duct systems, grease-removal devices, auxiliary equipment, and fire-extinguishing equipment, for commercial open-top broiler units.

10.19 Outdoor Cooking Appliances

Outdoor cooking appliances, such as large grills or outdoor kitchens, are very popular. Note that the appliances covered by NFPA 54 are limited to appliances connected to a fixed gas piping system, which can supply any fuel gas appropriate for the appliance. A typical outdoor gas grill is shown in Exhibit 10.20. Outdoor cooking appliances fueled by propane cylinders are covered under NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*.

EXHIBIT 10.20

Outdoor Gas Grill. [Courtesy of Modern Home Products (MHP)]

10.19.1 Listed Units. Listed outdoor cooking appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.19.2 Unlisted Units. Unlisted outdoor cooking appliances shall be installed outdoors with clearances to combustible material of not less than 36 in. (910 mm) at the sides and back and not less than 48 in. (1220 mm) at the front. In no case shall the appliance be located under overhead combustible construction.

10.20 Pool Heaters

A pool heater, such as the one shown in Exhibit 10.21, is an appliance designed for heating nonpotable water stored at atmospheric pressure, such as water in swimming pools, therapeutic pools, and similar applications. The unit can be either a coil-type heater, where the heat exchanger consists primarily of water tubes with inside diameters of less than 1¹⁄₄ in. (3.2 cm), or an indirect-type heater, which uses water in a primary heat exchanger to transmit heat from the gas combustion process to the pool water by means of a secondary heat exchanger.

Pool heaters are listed for indoor installation only, for outdoor installation only, or for either indoor or outdoor installation. Pool heaters installed indoors must be vented and have air for combustion and ventilation that is provided in accordance with Chapter 9, Appliance, Equipment, and Accessory Installation. Pool heaters installed outdoors must have the vent termination and any protective cover installed as required by the manufacturer's instructions.

EXHIBIT 10.21

Pool Heater. (Courtesy of Pentair Aquatic Systems)

10.20.1 Location. A pool heater shall be located or protected so as to minimize accidental contact of hot surfaces by persons.

10.20.2 Clearance. The installation of pool heaters shall meet the following requirements:

(1) In no case shall the clearances be such as to interfere with combustion air, draft hood or vent terminal clearance and relief, and accessibility for servicing.

Outdoor installations of pool heaters must meet model code restrictions on vent termination. This can be especially critical in the case of pool heaters near property lines, where minimum distances are often required by these codes.

(2) A listed pool heater shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
(3) An unlisted pool heater shall be installed with a minimum clearance of 12 in. (300 mm) on all sides and the rear. A combustible floor under an unlisted pool heater shall be protected in an approved manner.

The commentary following 10.2.4 and 10.3.2 discusses the installation of pool heaters and similar appliances on a combustible floor.

10.20.3 Temperature or Pressure Limiting Devices.

10.20.3.1 An unlisted pool heater shall be provided with overtemperature protection or overtemperature and overpressure protection by means of an approved device(s).

10.20.3.2 Where a pool heater is provided with overtemperature protection only and is installed with any device in the discharge line of the heater that can restrict the flow of water from the heater to the pool (such as a check valve, shutoff valve, therapeutic pool valving, or flow nozzles), a pressure relief valve shall be installed either in the heater or between the heater and the restrictive device.

FAQ The pool heater has an integral overtemperature protection shutoff but only a plug where the pressure relief valve should be located. Is a separate pressure relief valve required?

A separate pressure relief valve is required on a pool heater only if there are valves that could isolate the heater from the pool, limiting the ability of the heated water inside the heater to expand. Open systems with no valves do not require relief valves on the heater.

10.20.4 Bypass Valves. Where an integral bypass system is not provided as a part of the pool heater, a bypass line and valve shall be installed between the inlet and outlet piping for use in adjusting the flow of water through the heater.

10.20.5 Venting. A pool heater listed for outdoor installation shall be installed with the venting means supplied by the manufacturer and in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

10.21 Refrigerators

Gas refrigerators were used widely in rural areas prior to the expansion of electricity to these locations. They are still used in remote areas that are not served by electricity, in areas where the supply of electricity is interrupted frequently, by people whose religious beliefs do not permit the use of electricity (e.g., the Amish), and in recreational vehicles. The use of these appliances in recreational vehicles is not covered in this code but is covered in ANSI A119.2/NFPA 1192, *Standard on Recreational Vehicles.*

10.21.1 Clearance. Refrigerators shall be provided with clearances for ventilation at the top and back in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions. Where such instructions are not available, at least 2 in. (50 mm) shall be provided between the back of the refrigerator and the wall and at least 12 in. (300 mm) above the top.

10.21.2 Venting or Ventilating Kits Approved for Use with a Refrigerator. Where an accessory kit is used for conveying air for burner combustion or unit cooling to the refrigerator from areas outside the room in which it is located, or for conveying combustion products diluted with air containing waste heat from the refrigerator to areas outside the room in which it is located, the kit shall be installed in accordance with the refrigerator manufacturer's instructions.

A gas refrigerator generally has a low enough Btu input that it can be installed conveniently in any desired space. Table A.5.4.2.1, Approximate Gas Input for Typical Appliances, lists gas refrigerators at 3000 Btu/hr, the second lowest input. Because of this low input, no special provisions are required for air for combustion and ventilation. The clearances required are similar to those required for electric refrigerators.

10.22 Room Heaters

By design, room heaters are either unvented, as shown in Exhibit 10.22, or vented, as shown in Exhibit 10.23. These room heaters can be either the circulating type or the radiant type. Some circulating-type room heaters are equipped with fans to distribute the heat more uniformly in the rooms being heated.

EXHIBIT 10.22

Unvented Room Heater. (Courtesy of Empire Comfort Systems)

EXHIBIT 10.23

Vented Room Heater. (Courtesy of Empire Comfort Systems)

10.22.1* Prohibited Installations. Unvented room heaters shall not be installed in bathrooms or bedrooms.

The installation of unvented room heaters in bedrooms and bathrooms is specifically prohibited (with two specific exceptions) for the following reasons:

1. Bedrooms and bathrooms are often small spaces that provide inadequate air for combustion and ventilation and thus present a carbon monoxide or an asphyxiation hazard.
2. No matter where an unvented room heater is located, in these small rooms, the potential for accidental ignition of flammable materials (e.g., towels, curtains, and clothing) always exists.

See also the commentary following A.10.1.2.

Exception No. 1: Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, one listed wall-mounted, unvented room heater equipped with an oxygen depletion safety shutoff system shall be permitted to be installed in a bathroom, provided that the input rating does not exceed 6000 Btu/hr (1760 W/hr) and combustion and ventilation air is provided as specified in 10.1.2.

Exception No. 2: Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, one listed wall-mounted unvented room heater equipped with an oxygen depletion safety shutoff system shall be permitted to be installed in a bedroom, provided that the input rating does not exceed 10,000 Btu/hr (2930 W/hr) and combustion and ventilation air is provided as specified in 10.1.2.

The two exceptions permit, with approval of the authority having jurisdiction, the installation of listed, wall-mounted, unvented room heaters — of limited capacity and with an oxygen depletion safety shutoff system — in bedrooms and bathrooms, provided that they comply with 10.1.2.

If a heater of greater capacity than permitted in the exceptions is required, or if the approval of the authority having jurisdiction is not received, heaters of the direct-vent type can be used. Direct-vent heaters take all of the air for combustion from outside the building and discharge the products of combustion back outside the building.

Also note that 10.1.2 specifies that appliances must be installed so that combustion and ventilation air is not obtained entirely from a bedroom or a bathroom unless the bedroom or bathroom volume complies with 9.3.2.

ANSI Z21.11.2, *Gas-Fired Room Heaters — Volume II, Unvented Room Heaters,* requires an oxygen depletion sensor. The sensor is a very simple device that is highly effective. It consists of a temperature sensor located near the base of a pilot flame. If the level of oxygen in the room is depleted (or reduced), the flame will "lift" — or move up from the gas mixture leaving the pilot — to the point where the temperature sensor is not in the flame. This lifting will cool the sensor and stop the flow of gas to the burner, which will shut down the appliance. This sensor is an integral part of the appliance and is usually not field adjustable.

A.10.22.1 It is recommended that space heating appliances installed in all bedrooms or rooms generally kept closed be of the direct vent type.

10.22.2 Listing and Installation. Unvented room heaters shall be listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.11.2, *Gas-Fired Room Heaters-Volume II, Unvented Room Heaters*, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.22.3 Prohibited Installations. Room heaters shall not be installed in the following occupancies:

(1) Residential board and care
(2) Health care

10.22.4 Clearance. A room heater shall be placed so as not to cause a hazard to walls, floors, curtains, furniture, doors when open, and so on, and to the free movements of persons within the room. Heaters designed and marked "For use in noncombustible fireplace only" shall not be installed elsewhere. Listed room heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. In no case shall the clearances be such as to interfere with combustion air and accessibility. Unlisted room heaters shall be installed with clearances from combustible material not less than the following:

(1) *Circulating Type.* Room heaters having an outer jacket surrounding the combustion chamber, arranged with openings at top and bottom so that air circulates between the inner and outer jacket, and without openings in the outer jacket to permit direct radiation, shall have clearance at sides and rear of not less than 12 in. (300 mm).
(2) *Radiating Type.* Room heaters other than those of the circulating type described in 10.22.4(1) shall have clearance at sides and rear of not less than 18 in. (460 mm), except that heaters that make use of metal, asbestos, or ceramic material to direct radiation to the front of the heater shall have a clearance of 36 in. (910 mm) in front and, if constructed with a double back of metal or ceramic, shall be permitted to be installed with a clearance of 18 in. (460 mm) at sides and 12 in. (300 mm) at rear. Combustible floors under unlisted room heaters shall be protected in an approved manner.

10.22.5 Wall-Type Room Heaters. Wall-type room heaters shall not be installed in or attached to walls of combustible material unless listed for such installation.

10.23 Stationary Gas Engines

The installation of gas engines shall conform to NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*.

NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines,* applies to the installation and operation of stationary combustion engines and gas turbines. Engines that are used to drive fire pumps and those that are used in essential electrical systems in health care facilities are included in NFPA 37, but additional requirements are found in the standards covering specific installations, including NFPA 20, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection,* and NFPA 99, *Health Care Facilities Code*.

The installation of fuel gas piping supplying engines is included in NFPA 37, but specific requirements are not included. NFPA 37 references the *National Fuel Gas Code* for piping of up to 125 psi (862 kPa) and ASME B31.3, *Process Piping,* for piping above 125 psi (862 kPa). Additional requirements for installation, engine protective devices, valves, and exhaust piping and chimneys (including clearance to combustibles) are included in NFPA 37.

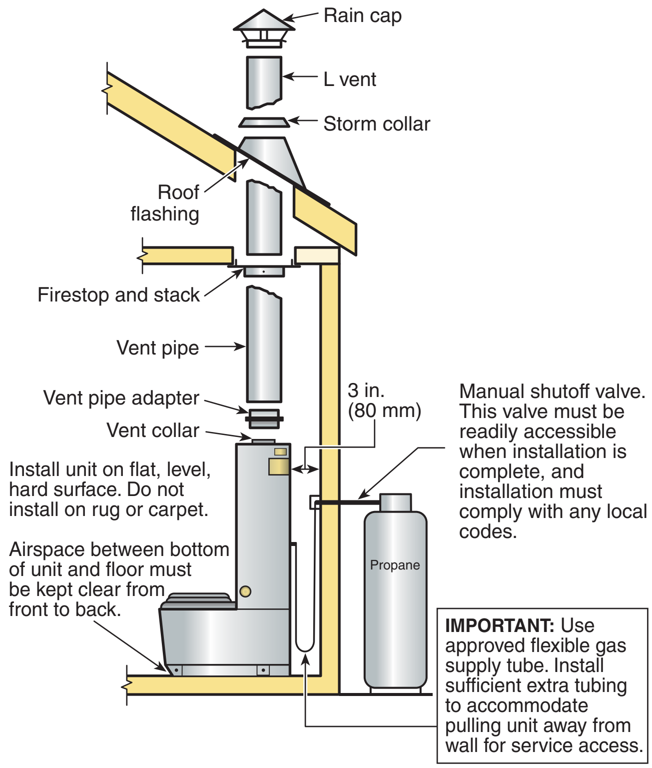
10.23.1 Stationary gas engines shall not be rigidly connected to the gas supply piping.

A flexible connector is required for stationary gas engines to accommodate vibration of the engine being transmitted to the connector. Such vibration could lead to failures of rigid piping.

10.24 Gas-Fired Toilets

Gas-fired toilets are often used at construction sites and in areas that are remote from water supplies (e.g., hunting and skiing cabins and office trailers). Gas-fired toilets also are used

EXHIBIT 10.24



Installation of a Gas-Fired Toilet. (Courtesy of Storburn International Inc.)

in areas without sewer service, in areas where soils will not accept septic systems, and in environmentally sensitive areas. Exhibit 10.24 illustrates a typical gas-fired toilet installation.

10.24.1 Clearance. A listed gas-fired toilet shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, provided that the clearance is in any case sufficient to afford ready accessibility for use, cleanout, and necessary servicing.

10.24.2 Installation on Combustible Floors. Listed gas-fired toilets installed on combustible floors shall be listed for such installation.

10.24.3 Installation. Vents or vent connectors that are capable of being contacted during casual use of the room in which the toilet is installed shall be protected or shielded to prevent such contact.

FAQ A gas-fired toilet has a vent collar that connects it to the Type L vent that continues through a roof. The vent starts at approximately 48 in. (1.2 m) off the floor. Is anything more required for the venting system?

Subsection 10.24.3 requires protection for any part of the venting system that may be contacted during use. Because 48 in. (1.2 m) is well within the zone where people may experience such contact, protection must be installed for the Type L vent to prevent contact with the vent.

10.25 Unit Heaters

Exhibit 10.25 illustrates a self-contained, automatically controlled, vented fuel gas–burning appliance that has an integral means for the circulation of air.

A high-static-pressure unit heater can deliver heated air at a pressure of 0.2 in. w.c. (50 Pa) or greater static pressure. The unit heater may be equipped with provisions for attaching an outlet air duct, and, if designed for indoor installation in a place remote from the space to be heated, it also will be equipped with provisions for attaching an inlet air duct. A low-static-pressure unit heater usually circulates air by means of an integral propeller fan, and it can be equipped with louvers or face extensions on the discharge side in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications. A low-static-pressure unit heater is intended for installation in the space to be heated and must not be used with circulating air ducts.

EXHIBIT 10.25

Unit Heater. (Courtesy of Reznor/Thomas & Betts)

10.25.1 Support. Suspended-type unit heaters shall be safely and adequately supported, with due consideration given to their weight and vibration characteristics. Hangers and brackets shall be of noncombustible material.

Manufacturers generally specify suspension methods for unit heaters, depending on the weight of the heater. Normally, steel pipe and the use of pipe couplings or bushings will provide satisfactory support and will enable the unit to be removed for service. Additional bracing to protect against seismic forces is also recommended in geographic areas that are seismically active.

10.25.2 Clearance.

Model mechanical codes often establish minimum installation height and vent termination requirements for suspended unit heaters. Unit heaters often vent out the back, so a unit near an outside wall facing into the space may not have sufficient space to correctly vent the heater if there are parapet walls above the roof line. (See 12.7.2, Gas Vent Termination.)

10.25.2.1 Suspended-Type Unit Heaters. Suspended-type unit heaters shall meet the following requirements:

(1) A listed unit heater shall be installed with clearances from combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm) at the sides, 12 in. (300 mm) at the bottom, and 6 in. (150 mm) above the top where the unit heater has an internal draft hood, or 1 in. (25 mm) above the top of the sloping side of a vertical draft hood. A unit heater listed for reduced clearances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.
(2) Unlisted unit heaters shall be installed with clearances to combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm).
(3) Clearances for servicing shall be in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations contained in the installation instructions.

10.25.2.2 Floor-Mounted-Type Unit Heaters. Floor-mounted-type unit heaters shall meet the following requirements:

(1) A listed unit heater shall be installed with clearances from combustible material at the back and one side only of not less than 6 in. (150 mm). Where the flue gases are vented horizontally, the 6 in. (150 mm) clearance shall be measured from the draft hood or vent instead of the rear wall of the unit heater. A unit heater listed for reduced clearances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

(2) Floor-mounted-type unit heaters installed on combustible floors shall be listed for such installation.
(3) Combustible floors under unlisted floor-mounted unit heaters shall be protected in an approved manner.
(4) Clearances for servicing shall be in accordance with the manufacturers' recommendations contained in the installation instructions.

10.25.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 9.3.

Normally, unit heaters are installed in large commercial or industrial areas for spot heating. Thus, adequate air for combustion and ventilation is usually available. Unit heaters, and all other vented gas appliances, require sufficient air for complete combustion of gas. Refer to Section 9.3 for the requirements for the required volume to provide the needed air for combustion and ventilation.

10.25.4 Ductwork. A unit heater shall not be attached to a warm air duct system unless listed and marked for such installation.

10.25.5 Installation in Commercial Garages and Aircraft Hangars. Unit heaters installed in garages for more than three motor vehicles or in aircraft hangars shall be of a listed type and shall be installed in accordance with 9.1.11 and 9.1.12.

10.26 Wall Furnaces

Wall furnaces are self-contained vented appliances, complete with grilles or their equivalent and designed for incorporation in, or permanent attachment to, the structure of a building. Wall furnaces furnish radiant heat or heated air, circulated by gravity or by a fan, directly into the space to be heated through openings in the casing. Exhibit 10.26 shows an example of a typical direct-vent wall furnace. Exhibit 10.27 illustrates air circulation in a direct-vent wall furnace.

Some wall furnaces are listed with accessory duct extensions, or boots, which do not extend more than 10 in. (250 mm) beyond the appliance casing, for extension through walls of nominal thickness. The manufacturer must supply these boots as an integral part of the appliance.

A direct-vent wall furnace is a system composed of an appliance, combustion air and flue gas connections between the appliance and outdoor atmosphere, and a vent cap supplied by the manufacturer. It is constructed so that all air for combustion is obtained from outdoors, and all flue gases are discharged to the outdoors. Wall furnaces do not include floor furnaces, unit heaters, or central furnaces. A vented wall furnace installation is illustrated in Exhibit 10.28.

10.26.1 Installation.

10.26.1.1 Listed wall furnaces shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Wall furnaces installed in or attached to combustible material shall be listed for such installation.

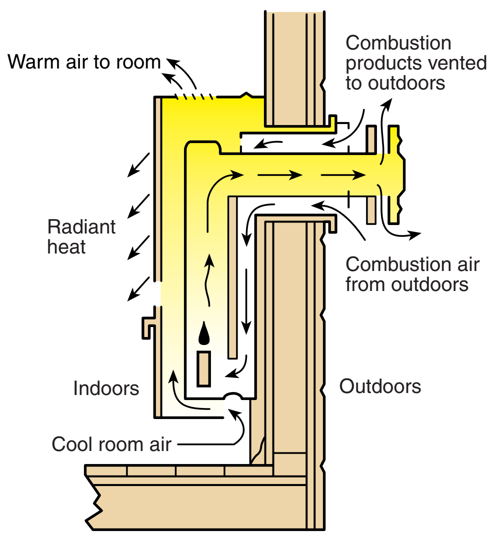
10.26.1.2 Unlisted wall furnaces shall not be installed in or attached to combustible material.

10.26.1.3 Vented wall furnaces connected to a Type B-W gas vent system listed only for a single story shall be installed only in single-story buildings or the top story of multistory buildings. Vented wall furnaces connected to a Type B-W gas vent system listed for installation in multistory buildings shall be permitted to be installed in single-story or multistory buildings.

EXHIBIT 10.26

Direct-Vent Wall Furnace. (Courtesy of Empire Comfort Systems)

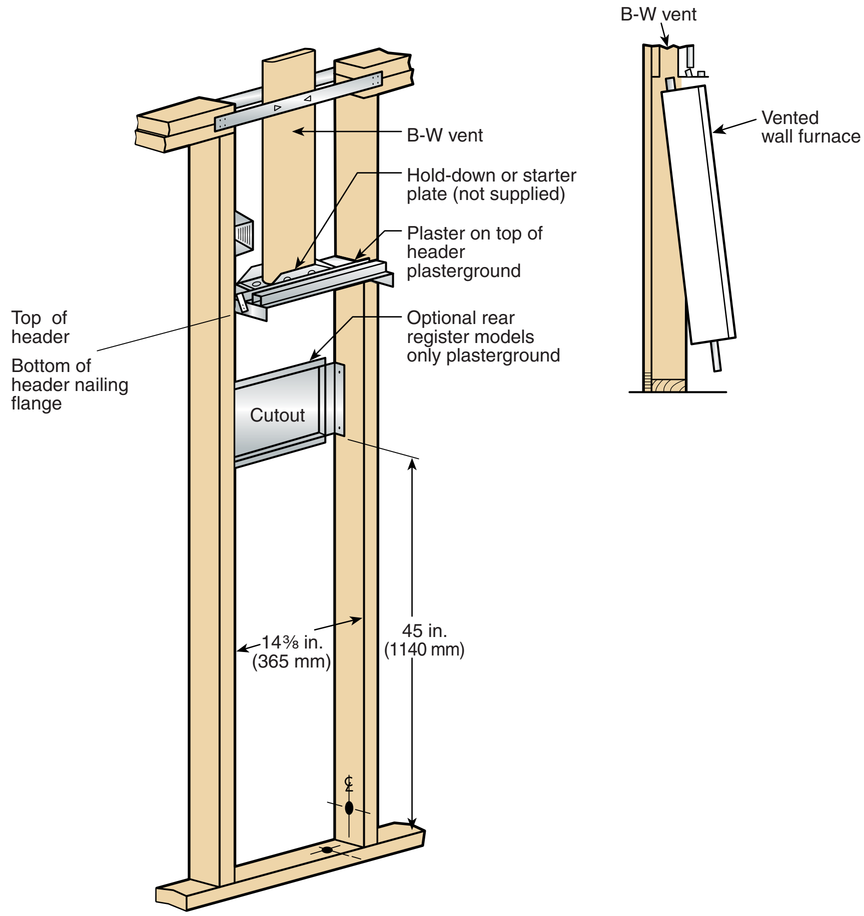
EXHIBIT 10.27



Air Circulation in a Direct-Vent Wall Furnace.

Type B-W gas vents shall be attached directly to a solid header plate that serves as a firestop at that point and that shall be permitted to be an integral part of the vented wall furnace, as illustrated in Figure 10.26.1.3. The stud space in which the vented wall furnace is installed shall be ventilated at the first ceiling level by installation of the ceiling plate spacers furnished with the gas vent. Firestop spacers shall be installed at each subsequent ceiling or floor level penetrated by the vent.

EXHIBIT 10.28



Typical Installation of a Vented Wall Furnace.

FAQ The wall furnace is designed for an in-the-wall installation. A Type B gas vent does not fit the wall's inner dimensions. What type of gas vent should be installed?

Type B-W gas vent systems are designed for use with wall furnaces and are installed in the wall cavity. Special header plates and spacers are provided as an integral part of the venting system. A Type B-W gas vent is oval-shaped and needs the fittings sold as part of the system for correct installation. All Type B and Type B-W gas vent systems are listed products and must be installed per the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.26.1.4 Direct vent wall furnaces shall be installed with the vent air intake terminal in the outdoors. The thickness of the walls on which the furnace is mounted shall be within the range of wall thickness marked on the furnace and covered in the manufacturers' installation instructions.

10.26.1.5 Panels, grilles, and access doors that are required to be removed for normal servicing operations shall not be attached to the building. *(For additional information on the venting of wall furnaces, see Chapter 12.)*

10.26.2 Location. Wall furnaces shall be located so as not to cause a hazard to walls, floors, curtains, furniture, or doors. Wall furnaces installed between bathrooms and adjoining rooms shall not circulate air from bathrooms to other parts of the building.

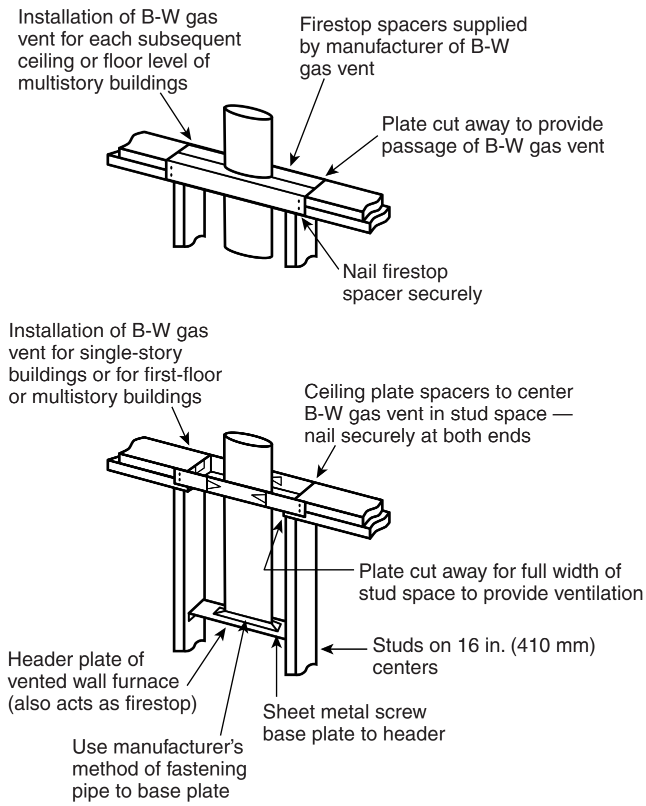


FIGURE 10.26.1.3 *Installation of Type B-W Gas Vents for Vented Wall Furnaces.*

10.26.3 Combustion and Circulating Air. Combustion and circulating air shall be provided in accordance with Section 9.3.

10.27 Water Heaters

Water heaters are appliances that supply hot water for domestic or commercial purposes. Exhibit 10.29 shows an example of a typical water heater. A direct-vent water heater is constructed and installed so that all air for combustion is obtained directly from the outside atmosphere, and all flue gases are discharged to the outside atmosphere.

10.27.1 Location. Water heater installations in bedrooms and bathrooms shall comply with one of the following:

In addition to the water heater installation requirements in Section 10.27, the installer should be aware that requirements that prevent the installation of water heaters in certain locations where flammable vapors are or can be present are found in Section 9.1. (See 9.1.10 through 9.1.12.) The edition of ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1, *Gas Water Heaters — Volume 1 — Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less,* in effect at the time of publication of this code, requires that all storage-type water heaters listed under the standard pass a flammable vapor ignition resistance test. (Refer to the commentary following 9.1.9 and 9.1.10.1 for more information.)

EXHIBIT 10.29

Water Heater. (Courtesy of Bradford White Water Heaters)

FAQ Can a replacement water heater in manufactured housing be installed using the requirements of NFPA 54?

Section 10.29 addresses the installation and replacement of gas-fired appliances in manufactured housing after the initial sale. Federal law, using regulations written by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD), covers the construction of new manufactured housing in the United States. NFPA 501, *Standard on Manufactured Housing,* is also available.

(1) Water heater shall be installed in a closet equipped with a weather-stripped door with no openings and with a self-closing device. All combustion air shall be obtained from the outdoors in accordance with 9.3.3.

FAQ Can an ordinary gas water heater be installed in a bedroom closet?

Paragraph 10.27.1(1) permits, with specific requirements, the installation of water heaters in special equipment rooms or closets opening into bedrooms and bathrooms.

(2) Water heater shall be of the direct vent type.

Direct-vent water heaters are vented the same way as other direct-vent gas appliances. For specific information, see Chapter 12, Venting of Appliances. Direct-vent water heaters installed in confined spaces are not required to have air for combustion as specified in Section 9.3, but they do need ventilation air to keep the confined space from overheating.

10.27.2 Clearance.

10.27.2.1 The clearances shall not be such as to interfere with combustion air, draft hood clearance and relief, and accessibility for servicing. Listed water heaters shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.27.2.2 Unlisted water heaters shall be installed with a clearance of 12 in. (300 mm) on all sides and rear. Combustible floors under unlisted water heaters shall be protected in an approved manner.

Refer to commentary following 10.2.4 and 10.3.2 for information on the installation of water heaters and similar appliances on combustible floors.

10.27.3 Pressure Limiting Devices. A water heater installation shall be provided with overpressure protection by means of an approved, listed device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. The pressure setting of the device shall exceed the water service pressure and shall not exceed the maximum pressure rating of the water heater.

EXHIBIT 10.30

Temperature and Pressure Relief Valve. (Courtesy of Watts Regulator Company)

Water heaters are required to have overpressure protection in order to prevent internal overpressurization and failure of the heater. This protection is accomplished by installing a pressure relief valve on the water heater with a nonadjustable setting of 75 psi to 150 psi (520 kPa to 1030 kPa), with 125 psi (862 kPa) being a commonly used pressure. Water heaters usually are designed and constructed with a 150 psi (1030 kPa) maximum operating pressure. The pressure relief valve setting must be greater than the water service pressure to prevent unnecessary operation of the valve and to prevent water leakage. Most municipal water supplies have pressures of 80 psi (560 kPa) or less. In most cases, the overpressure protection device is provided and installed in accordance with the water heater manufacturer's installation instructions.

The pressure relief valve frequently is combined with a temperature relief valve that has a nonadjustable setting of 200°F to 210°F (93°C to 99°C). A temperature and pressure relief valve is shown in Exhibit 10.30, which shows the extended temperature probe passing through the inlet of the relief valve. The valve must be installed so that the temperature probe is immersed in water in the top 6 in. (150 mm) of a storage-type water heater.

10.27.4 Temperature Limiting Devices. A water heater installation or a hot water storage vessel installation shall be provided with overtemperature protection by means of an approved, listed device installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

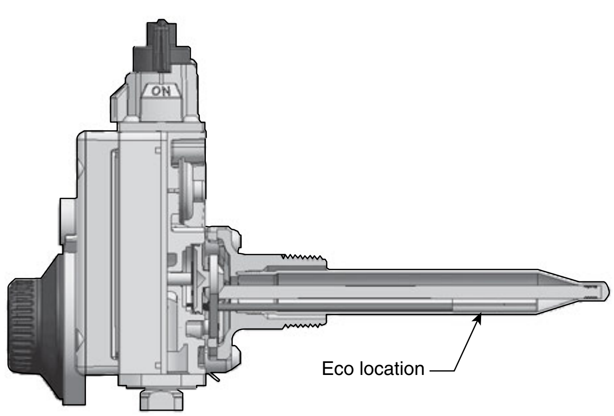
Water heaters are required to have overtemperature protection, which usually is accomplished by an energy cutoff (ECO) device — an independent, high-temperature switch that shuts off the gas valve. Modern units incorporate a switch, built into the thermostat, which can be a replaceable "fusible link" that cannot be reset. This fusible link is replaceable by a service technician. In the case of ECO operation, this fusible link could require the replacement of the thermostat. Many water heater manufacturers require that a combination temperature and pressure relief valve also be installed. (See the commentary following 10.27.3.)

The ECO device, such as the one shown in Exhibit 10.31, is a circular disc made of two different metals that are bonded, similar to two coins bonded together. The two metals have different thermal expansion rates. The disc is shaped like a shallow cup. When the predetermined high temperature is exceeded, the ECO expands. The expansion is sufficient to change the shape of the disc, reversing the cup to the other side and shutting off the gas flow. The ECO may not revert to its original shape when cooled, in which case it must be replaced for the water heater to operate.

FAQ Does the temperature and pressure relief valve (T&P valve) serve as an overtemperature protection device?

The temperature limit of the T&P valve is set well below the boiling point of water. When this temperature is reached, the valve releases some water from the heater, allowing cool water to enter the heater. This cool water prevents superheated water from being delivered to the fixture, where it could flash to steam, injuring the user. This process does not control the heater control valve, so water may be released continually until the control valve is adjusted or repaired. The devices described in the preceding commentary paragraphs directly control a malfunctioning water heater gas valve, preventing a "runaway heater."

EXHIBIT 10.31



Note: The active trigger mechanism of the thermal cutoff is an electrically non-conductive pellet. Under normal operating temperatures, the solid pellet holds spring-loaded contacts closed. When a predetermined temperature is reached, the pellet melts, allowing the compression spring to relax. The trip spring then slides the contact away from the lead, and the circuit is opened.

Typical ECO Device. (Courtesy of White-Rodgers/Emerson Climate Technologies)

10.27.5 Temperature, Pressure, and Vacuum Relief Devices. Temperature, pressure, and vacuum relief devices or combinations thereof, and automatic gas shutoff devices, shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. A shutoff valve shall not be placed between the relief valve and the water heater or on discharge pipes between such valves and the atmosphere. The hourly Btu discharge capacity or the rated steam relief capacity of the device shall not be less than the input rating of the water heater.

Shutoff valves are prohibited in piping to or from relief valves to prevent their being compromised accidentally or intentionally. The discharge line (pipe) from such devices must be full-sized and not be reduced for its full length. Also, the end of the pipe should not be threaded. The lack of threads prevents the installation of a cap on the pipe.

10.27.6 Automatic Instantaneous Type: Cold Water Supply. The water supply to an automatic instantaneous water heater that is equipped with a water flow–actuated control shall be such as to provide sufficient pressure to properly operate the control when water is drawn from the highest faucet served by the heater.

10.27.7* Antisiphon Devices. Means acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction shall be provided to prevent siphoning in any water heater or any tank to which a circulating water heater that incorporates a cold water inlet tube is attached.

A.10.27.7 A hole near the top of a cold water inlet tube that enters the top of the water heater or tank is commonly accepted for this purpose.

10.28 Compressed Natural Gas (CNG) Vehicular Fuel Systems

The installation of compressed natural gas (CNG) fueling (dispensing) systems shall conform to NFPA 52, *Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code*.

NFPA 52, *Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code,* includes design and construction of compressed natural gas vehicle fuel systems and refueling stations that dispense only CNG. NFPA 30A, *Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages,* covers dispensing and storage of compressed natural gas at service stations that dispense multiple fuels and should also be reviewed.

10.29 Appliances for Installation in Manufactured Housing

Appliances installed in manufactured housing after the initial sale shall be listed for installation in manufactured housing, or approved, and shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this code and the manufacturers' installation instructions. Appliances installed in the living space of manufactured housing shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 9.3.

New manufactured housing is covered by standards of the federal government in the United States. However, replacement of appliances is covered by the codes in effect at the site. The requirements of the *National Fuel Gas Code* now specifically apply to the installation of water heaters in manufactured housing (after consumer sale) and must be followed. Appliances used as replacements in manufactured housing generally must be listed specifically for use in manufactured housing.

Small water heaters [e.g., 75,000 Btu/hr (22 kW) and less] are listed in accordance with ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1, *Gas Water Heaters — Volume I — Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less,* which contains the requirements and tests for all storage water heaters of this size. Additional requirements are included in ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1 for water heaters used in manufactured housing. These requirements include provisions for securing the water heater to the vehicle structure, a requirement that the water heater be convertible for use with natural gas and propane, special marking and installation requirements, and other construction requirements.

Certification that the water heater is suitable for installation in manufactured housing means that the specific requirements for water heater construction in ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1 have been met. Both atmospheric-vent and direct-vent water heaters can be listed for installation in manufactured housing. The decision to replace a direct-vent water heater in manufactured housing with a non-direct-vent type should be made carefully. Compliance with the provisions of Sections 9.3 and 10.29 is necessary.

10.30 Fuel Cell Power Plants

Fuel cell power plants with a power output of less than 50 kW shall be listed and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Fuel cell power plants with a power output of greater than 50 kW shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 853, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems*.

Fuel cells produce electricity directly from fuel gas. Fuel cells are not new, having been used in satellites for many years. The cost of fuel cells has come down to the point where they are closer to becoming economically viable, especially in areas with high electricity costs.

Fuel cell units must meet the requirements of NFPA 853, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems.*

10.31 Outdoor Open Flame Decorative Appliances

Permanently fixed in place outdoor open flame decorative appliances shall be installed in accordance with 10.31.1 through 10.31.3.

10.31.1 Listed Units. Listed outdoor open flame decorative appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

10.31.2 Unlisted Units. Unlisted outdoor open flame decorative appliances shall be installed outdoors in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and with clearances to combustible material of not less than 36 in. (910 mm) from the sides. In no case shall the appliance be located under overhead combustible construction.

10.31.3 Connection to Piping System. The connection to the gas piping system shall be in accordance with 9.6.1(1), (2), (4), or (5).

Permanently fixed outdoor open-flame decorative appliances are increasing in popularity, particularly in restaurants and outdoor gathering spaces. These appliances may be used for decorative lighting and for heat. The major concern is clearance to combustibles to prevent these appliances from causing building fires.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publications are available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, www.nfpa.org.

NFPA 20, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 30, *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 30A, *Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 31, *Standard for the Installation of Oil-Burning Equipment*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 52, *Vehicular Gaseous Fuel Systems Code*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 99, *Health Care Facilities Code*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 501, *Standard on Manufactured Housing*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 853, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems*, 2010 edition.
ANSI A119.2/NFPA 1192, *Standard on Recreational Vehicles*, 2015 edition.
John R. Hall, Jr., *Home Cooking Fire Patterns and Trends*, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division, Quincy, MA, January 2005.
John R. Hall, Jr., *Home Heating Fire Patterns and Trends*, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division, Quincy, MA, November 2004.

The following publication is available from the American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Two Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990, www.asme.org.

ASME B31.3, *Process Piping,* 2012.

The following publications are available from the CSA-America, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI Z21.5.1/CSA 7.1, *Gas Clothes Dryers — Volume I — Type 1 Clothes Dryers*, 2006 (Reaffirmed 2012).
ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1, *Gas Water Heaters — Volume I — Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less*, 2009.
ANSI Z21.11.2, *Gas-Fired Room Heaters — Volume II — Unvented Room Heaters*, 2007.
ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3, *Gas-Fired Central Furnaces*, 2006 (Reaffirmed 2012).
ANSI Z21.50/CSA 2.22, *Vented Gas Fireplaces*, 2012.
ANSI Z21.60/CSA 2.26, *Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid-Fuel Burning Fireplaces*, 2003 (Reaffirmed 2009).
ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32, *Vented Gas-Fired Space Heating Appliances*, 2008.
ANSI Z83.4/CSA 3.7, *Non-Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters*, 2013.

The following publication is available from Engineering and Safety Service (ISO), 545 Washington Boulevard, Jersey City, NJ 07310, www.iso.com.

National Building Code, 1976 edition.

The following publication is available from McGraw-Hill, Inc., 1221 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10020, www.mcgraw-hill.com.

Perry, Robert H., and Cecil H. Chilton. *Chemical Engineers' Handbook,* fifth edition, 1973.

The following publication is available from the Sheet Metal and Air Conditioning Contractors' National Association, 4201 Lafayette Center Drive, Chantilly, VA 20151-1209, www.smacna.org.

HVAC Duct Construction Standards — Metal and Flexible, 2005.

The following publications are available from Underwriters Laboratories Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096, 847-272-8800, www.ul.com.

UL 181, *Standard for Factory-Made Air Ducts and Air Connectors*, 2013.
UL 263, *Standard for Fire Tests of Building Construction and Materials*, 2011.

Procedures to Be Followed to Place Appliance in Operation

11

Chapter 11 provides requirements for the final part of appliance installation. This chapter describes the procedures that must be followed after an appliance is installed in place, piped, and connected to its venting system. The chapter covers the following specific areas:

- Adjusting the burner input, by pressure adjustment or orifice change, and making adjustments needed due to high altitude [over 2000 ft (600 m)]
- Making air adjustments
- Verifying operation of safety shutoffs, automatic ignition, and protective devices
- Checking draft for vent-connected appliances
- Providing operating instructions for the consumer

Annex G has been updated in the 2015 edition to include information for checking the proper operation of gas appliances and venting systems.

See Annex G for more information.

11.1 Adjusting the Burner Input

Burner input for each gas appliance is shown on the appliance rating nameplate. For units with multiple burners, the total input is divided by the number of burners to determine the input rating per burner.

11.1.1* Adjusting Input. The input rate of the burner shall be adjusted to the proper value in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. Firing at a rate in excess of the nameplate rating shall be prohibited.

Gas appliances are furnished with low-pressure gas regulators that are specific to the type of gas (i.e., LP-Gas or natural gas) to be used. Each burner has an orifice that is rated for the proper input. Overfiring of appliances is prohibited because it may change the flame shape and burning characteristics, which can result in a number of undesirable consequences, including loss of efficiency, overtemperature of the appliance flue, or change in the products of combustion.

FAQ I would like to increase the input to an appliance by adjusting the appliance regulator to increase the manifold pressure. Is there an upper limit to the pressure?

Any adjustment of manifold pressure must be done per the manufacturer's instructions. This is especially important for appliances that have "nonstandard" gas control systems. In modern appliances, it is not unusual for the pressure regulator or the gas orifice to be in a sealed compartment that is at other than atmospheric pressure (either negative or positive). Tracking systems — specifically, those that utilize "zero" or "negative pressure" regulators in conjunction with combustion air venturis that pull gas into the airstream — are also common.

Measurements for such systems must be done in a manner that yields the true pressure differential across the gas orifice.

In accordance with instructions furnished by the manufacturer, minor adjustments to the appliance input rating can be made with the appliance regulator. The manufacturer should specify how pressure is to be checked and provide upper and lower limits. The appliance instructions contain the location of the tap or taps to be used for measuring manifold pressure. There is usually a tap on the appliance control or on the gas manifold itself. Depending on the design of the appliance, there may be other taps to be used in conjunction with such taps. In any case, the flame must be inspected for quality (color) and length.

Additionally, good current practice warrants the use of a combustion analyzer anytime the input to an appliance is adjusted. A properly calibrated combustion analyzer will provide an accurate representation of the appliance operation.

A.11.1.1 For most burners, the input rate can be changed only slightly by changing the input pressure. Burner input should be checked in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions. If no appliance instructions are provided, burner input rate can be checked as follows:

(1) *Checking Burner Input Using a Meter (Clocking).* To check the Btu/hr input rate, the test hand on the gas meter should be timed for at least one revolution and the input determined from this timing. Test dials are generally marked ½, 1, 2, or 5 ft^3/revolution depending on the size of the meter. Instructions for converting the test hand readings to cubic feet per hour are given in Table A.11.1.1. This table is provided for specific gas pressures within the meters and gives gas flow rate (corrected to standard conditions) in cubic feet of gas per hour. Standard temperature is 60°F (16°C), and standard pressure is 30.00 in. of mercury. Measure the time for at least one revolution of a dial. Look up the gas flow rate in Table A.11.1.1. Gas flow rates can be calculated for meter pressures other than in these tables in the following manner. A pressure correction factor **F** should be determined for use in the gas input calculation for the gas pressure difference ΔP between the meter inlet and the atmosphere. The gas supplier can provide the pressure at the meter inlet. The pressure correction factor **F** is calculated with the following formula. Table A.11.1.1 was calculated using this formula.

$$\mathbf{F} = \frac{\Delta P + (B \times 13.596)}{30.00 \times 13.596} \quad \textbf{[A.11.1.1(1)(a)]}$$

where:

F = pressure correction factor

ΔP = meter inlet pressure (in. w.c.)

B = barometric pressure, unadjusted to sea level (in. of mercury)

NOAA weather reports barometric pressure in inches of mercury, adjusted to sea level. The sea level adjustment must be subtracted from the barometric pressure reported by NOAA weather. The local sea level adjustment can be obtained from NOAA.

For example, NOAA reported barometric pressure to be 30.12 in. of mercury for a city at 250 ft elevation. The barometric pressure adjustment for 250 ft is 0.27 in. of mercury. Subtract the local sea level adjustment from the NOAA barometric pressure to get the unadjusted barometric pressure.

$$30.12 - 0.27 = 29.85 \quad \textbf{[A.11.1.1(1)(b)]}$$

The gas flow rate Q is calculated using the following formula:

$$Q = \mathbf{F} \times C \quad \textbf{[A.11.1.1(1)(c)]}$$

where:
Q = gas flow rate at standard conditions (ft^3/hr)
F = pressure correction factor
C = timed gas flow rate (ft^3/hr)

The gas input rate I is calculated with the following formula:

$$I = Q \times HHV \qquad \textbf{[A.11.1.1(1)(d)]}$$

where:
I = gas input rate (Btu/hr)
Q = gas flow rate at standard conditions (ft^3/hr)
HHV = average higher heat value of the gas at standard temperature and pressure conditions (Btu/ft^3), which can be obtained from the gas supplier

Appliances can be seriously overfired if the timed meter gas flow rate used to set input rate is not adjusted for meter pressure. At 2 psi (14 kPa) meter pressure, an appliance would be 13 percent overfired if the gas flow rate is not adjusted for meter pressure.

(2) *Checking Burner Input by Using Orifice Pressure Drop and Orifice Size.* The fixed orifice size for each burner can be determined in accordance with Table E.1.1(a) for utility gases and Table E.1.1(b) for undiluted LP-Gases.

In the 2009 edition, Table A.11.1.1 was revised by correcting a factor in the formula used to calculate the values in the table. The changes are small and should not require resizing of orifices selected from the table in previous editions.

The data in Table A.11.1.1 can be used to check the burner input after timing the meter for at least one full revolution. Table A.11.1.1 shows values for natural gas (7.0 in. w.c.), propane (11.0 in. w.c.), and for both gases at 2 psi. The table shows the input in cubic feet per hour. To convert to Btu/hr for natural gas, multiply by 1000 (or the exact heating value of the natural gas, if known). To convert to Btu/hr for propane, multiply by 2500.

TABLE A.11.1.1 *Gas Flow Rate to Burner in Cubic Feet per Hour at Standard Temperature and Pressure*

Meter Pressure:	*7.0 in. w.c. or 0.25 psi*				*11.0 in. w.c. or 0.40 psi*				*55.4 in. w.c. or 2 psi*			
Seconds for One Revolution	*Size of Test Meter Dial*											
	½ ft³	*1 ft³*	*2 ft³*	*5 ft³*	*½ ft³*	*1 ft³*	*2 ft³*	*5 ft³*	*½ ft³*	*1 ft³*	*2 ft³*	*5 ft³*
10	183	366	732	1831	185	370	739	1849	204	409	818	2044
11	166	333	666	1664	168	336	672	1680	186	372	743	1859
12	153	305	610	1526	154	308	616	1540	170	341	681	1704
13	141	282	563	1408	142	284	569	1422	157	315	629	1573
14	131	262	523	1308	132	264	528	1320	146	292	584	1460
15	122	244	488	1221	123	246	493	1232	136	273	545	1363
16	114	229	458	1144	116	231	462	1155	128	256	511	1278
17	108	215	431	1077	109	217	435	1087	120	241	481	1203
18	102	203	407	1017	103	205	411	1027	114	227	454	1136
19	96	193	385	964	97	195	389	973	108	215	430	1076
20	92	183	366	915	92	185	370	924	102	204	409	1022

(continues)

TABLE A.11.1.1 *Continued*

Meter Pressure:	*7.0 in. w.c. or 0.25 psi*				*11.0 in. w.c. or 0.40 psi*				*55.4 in. w.c. or 2 psi*			
Seconds for One Revolution	*Size of Test Meter Dial*											
	½ ft³	*1 ft³*	*2 ft³*	*5 ft³*	*½ ft³*	*1 ft³*	*2 ft³*	*5 ft³*	*½ ft³*	*1 ft³*	*2 ft³*	*5 ft³*
21	87	174	349	872	88	176	352	880	97	195	389	974
22	83	166	333	832	84	168	336	840	93	186	372	929
23	80	159	318	796	80	161	321	804	89	178	356	889
24	76	153	305	763	77	154	308	770	85	170	341	852
25	73	146	293	732	74	148	296	739	82	164	327	818
26	70	141	282	704	71	142	284	711	79	157	315	786
27	68	136	271	678	68	137	274	685	76	151	303	757
28	65	131	262	654	66	132	264	660	73	146	292	730
29	63	126	253	631	64	127	255	637	70	141	282	705
30	61	122	244	610	62	123	246	616	68	136	273	681
31	59	118	236	591	60	119	239	596	66	132	264	660
32	57	114	229	572	58	116	231	578	64	128	256	639
33	55	111	222	555	56	112	224	560	62	124	248	620
34	54	108	215	538	54	109	217	544	60	120	241	601
35	52	105	209	523	53	106	211	528	58	117	234	584
36	51	102	203	509	51	103	205	513	57	114	227	568
37	49	99	198	495	50	100	200	500	55	111	221	553
38	48	96	193	482	49	97	195	486	54	108	215	538
39	47	94	188	469	47	95	190	474	52	105	210	524
40	46	92	183	458	46	92	185	462	51	102	204	511
41	45	89	179	447	45	90	180	451	50	100	199	499
42	44	87	174	436	44	88	176	440	49	97	195	487
43	43	85	170	426	43	86	172	430	48	95	190	475
44	42	83	166	416	42	84	168	420	46	93	186	465
45	41	81	163	407	41	82	164	411	45	91	182	454
46	40	80	159	398	40	80	161	402	44	89	178	444
47	39	78	156	390	39	79	157	393	43	87	174	435
48	38	76	153	381	39	77	154	385	43	85	170	426
49	37	75	149	374	38	75	151	377	42	83	167	417
50	37	73	146	366	37	74	148	370	41	82	164	409
51	36	72	144	359	36	72	145	362	40	80	160	401
52	35	70	141	352	36	71	142	355	39	79	157	393
53	35	69	138	345	35	70	140	349	39	77	154	386
54	34	68	136	339	34	68	137	342	38	76	151	379
55	33	67	133	333	34	67	134	336	37	74	149	372
56	33	65	131	327	33	66	132	330	37	73	146	365
57	32	64	128	321	32	65	130	324	36	72	143	359
58	32	63	126	316	32	64	127	319	35	70	141	352
59	31	62	124	310	31	63	125	313	35	69	139	347
60	31	61	122	305	31	62	123	308	34	68	136	341
62	30	59	118	295	30	60	119	298	33	66	132	330
64	29	57	114	286	29	58	116	289	32	64	128	319
66	28	55	111	277	28	56	112	280	31	62	124	310
68	27	54	108	269	27	54	109	272	30	60	120	301
70	26	52	105	262	26	53	106	264	29	58	117	292
72	25	51	102	254	26	51	103	257	28	57	114	284
74	25	49	99	247	25	50	100	250	28	55	111	276
76	24	48	96	241	24	49	97	243	27	54	108	269

TABLE A.11.1.1 Continued

Meter Pressure:	***7.0 in. w.c. or 0.25 psi***				***11.0 in. w.c. or 0.40 psi***				***55.4 in. w.c. or 2 psi***			
Seconds for One Revolution	***Size of Test Meter Dial***											
	½ ft^3	***1 ft^3***	***2 ft^3***	***5 ft^3***	***½ ft^3***	***1 ft^3***	***2 ft^3***	***5 ft^3***	***½ ft^3***	***1 ft^3***	***2 ft^3***	***5 ft^3***
78	23	47	94	235	24	47	95	237	26	52	105	262
80	23	46	92	229	23	46	92	231	26	51	102	256
82	22	45	89	223	23	45	90	225	25	50	100	249
84	22	44	87	218	22	44	88	220	24	49	97	243
86	21	43	85	213	21	43	86	215	24	48	95	238
88	21	42	83	208	21	42	84	210	23	46	93	232
90	20	41	81	203	21	41	82	205	23	45	91	227
94	19	39	78	195	20	39	79	197	22	43	87	217
98	19	37	75	187	19	38	75	189	21	42	83	209
100	18	37	73	183	18	37	74	185	20	41	82	204
104	18	35	70	176	18	36	71	178	20	39	79	197
108	17	34	68	170	17	34	68	171	19	38	76	189
112	16	33	65	163	17	33	66	165	18	37	73	183
116	16	32	63	158	16	32	64	159	18	35	70	176
120	15	31	61	153	15	31	62	154	17	34	68	170
130	14	28	56	141	14	28	57	142	16	31	63	157
140	13	26	52	131	13	26	53	132	15	29	58	146
150	12	24	49	122	12	25	49	123	14	27	55	136
160	11	23	46	114	12	23	46	116	13	26	51	128
170	11	22	43	108	11	22	43	109	12	24	48	120
180	10	20	41	102	10	21	41	103	11	23	45	114
190	10	19	39	96	10	19	39	97	11	22	43	108
200	9	18	37	92	9	18	37	92	10	20	41	102

Note: To convert to Btu per hour, multiply the cubic feet per hour of gas by the Btu per cubic foot heating value of the gas used.

11.1.1.1 The input rate can be adjusted by either changing the size of a fixed orifice, changing the adjustment of an adjustable orifice, or readjusting the appliance's gas pressure regulator outlet pressure (where a regulator is provided in the appliance).

11.1.1.2 The input rate shall be determined by either one of the following:

(1) Checking burner input by using a gas meter
(2) Checking burner input by using orifice pressure drop and orifice size

11.1.1.3 Overfiring shall be prohibited.

11.1.2 High Altitude. Gas input ratings of appliances shall be used for elevations up to 2000 ft (600 m). The input ratings of appliances operating at elevations above 2000 ft (600 m) shall be reduced in accordance with one of the following methods:

(1) At the rate of 4 percent for each 1000 ft (300 m) above sea level before selecting appropriately sized appliance
(2) As permitted by the authority having jurisdiction

To determine the proper orifice size at the prescribed manifold pressure for the appliance, refer to Annex E. See Table E.1.1(a) for utility gases and Table E.1.1(b) for undiluted LP-Gases. For additional information on orifice sizing, refer to the Annex E commentary.

See Annex E for more information.

(3) In accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions

If the manufacturer's instructions do not specify otherwise, the "4 percent per 1000 feet" rule should be applied. To apply this rule [for any installation above 2000 ft (600 m)], multiply the altitude (in thousands of feet) by 4 percent and then deduct that rating from the sea level rating. For example, a 100,000 Btu (29 kW) furnace installed at an elevation of 5000 ft (1500 m) would have to be reduced by 20 percent to a rating of 80,000 Btu (23 kW) (5×4 percent $=$ 20 percent reduction). For additional information on altitude derating, refer to the Annex E commentary.

Derating according to the manufacturer's listing is more accurate, because it involves testing that is specific to the appliance. Tracking systems — specifically, those having zero or negative pressure regulators and combustion air venturis — are self-derating. In tracking systems, gas input and airflow change together in proportion to the barometric pressure and, unless the manufacturer instructs otherwise, do not need adjustment for elevation above sea level.

11.2* Primary Air Adjustment

The primary air for injection (Bunsen)-type burners shall be adjusted for proper flame characteristics in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. After setting the primary air, the adjustment means shall be secured in position.

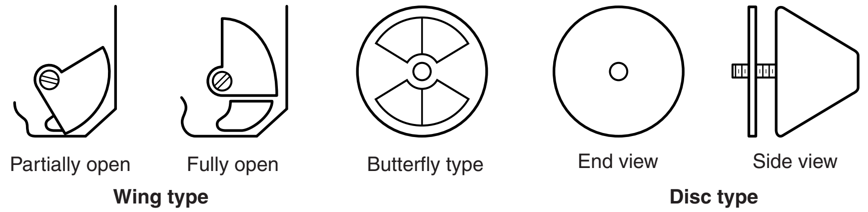
A.11.2 Normally, the primary air adjustment should first be set to give a soft blue flame having luminous tips and then increased to a point where the yellow tips just disappear. If the burner cannot be so adjusted, the manufacturer or serving gas supplier should be contacted.

A typical primary air adjustment for burners is an air shutter at the inlet of the burner, which can be rotated to open or close the openings, thus varying the amount of primary air. Exhibit 11.1 shows examples of burner primary air shutter adjustments.

Other burners may have an interrupter device (or spoiler) in the venturi of the burner. This device can be turned in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions to change the flame characteristics. The burner should always be adjusted for a proper blue flame with no yellow tips. With LP-Gas, a slight yellow tip may be normal.

As with the adjustment of burner impact, the proper use of a modern combustion analyzer will enhance the air adjustment, because there are many situations where the full burner flame may not be visible or easily discernible to the servicer.

EXHIBIT 11.1



Examples of Burner Primary Air Shutter Adjustments. (Courtesy of American Gas Association)

11.3 Safety Shutoff Devices

Where a safety shutoff device is provided, it shall be checked for proper operation and adjustment in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. Where the device does not function properly to turn off the gas supply in the event of pilot outage or other improper operation, it shall be properly serviced or replaced with a new device.

11.4 Automatic Ignition

Appliances supplied with means for automatic ignition shall be checked for operation within the parameters provided by the manufacturer. Any adjustments made shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Most gas appliances are equipped with an automatic ignition system that incorporates either a constant-burning pilot and safety shutoff device or one of several types of spark or hot surface ignition devices. The manufacturer's instructions should be followed when checking these devices for proper operation.

11.5 Protective Devices

Where required by the manufacturer's installation instructions, all protective devices furnished with the appliance, such as a limit control, fan control to blower, temperature and pressure relief valve, low-water cutoff device, or manual operating features, shall be checked for operation within the parameters provided by the manufacturer. Any adjustments made shall be in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

11.6* Checking the Draft

Draft hood–equipped appliances shall be checked to verify that there is no draft hood spillage after 5 minutes of main burner operation.

In addition to the match or taper method of checking the draft, the draft of a vent-connected appliance can also be verified with a draft gauge placed at the draft hood. This method will allow evaluation of the quality of the appliance draft under difficult operating conditions, such as the operation of other combustion appliances and the operation of an exhaust fan.

A.11.6 A procedure for checking draft can be found in G.5.2.

If the appliance is installed in a closet with insufficient room for service personnel when the closet door is closed, using a manometer or gauge with a probe inserted into the vent connector may be necessary to ensure that the burner, draft diverter, and vent are performing satisfactorily.

11.7 Operating Instructions

Operating instructions shall be furnished and shall be left in a prominent position near the appliance for use by the consumer.

Operating instructions are required for each gas appliance and usually are included in the packet containing the installation instructions. The installer should ensure that the owner/user is aware of the proper operating procedures and, if necessary, should explain the function of the appliance. If the unit is equipped with a remote thermostat, the owner should be shown how to operate the appliance from the thermostat location.

Venting of Appliances

12

Chapter 12 covers venting equipment, including the construction and installation of venting equipment, but not the sizing of the vents. The venting portion of the *National Fuel Gas Code* comprises this chapter and Chapter 13, Sizing of Category I Venting Systems. Note that Chapter 12 covers installation requirements. However, safe installation of venting systems requires proper components and engineering calculations to ensure that sufficient draft is present. The tables in Chapter 13 provide the values with which to perform calculations to properly size and identify the vent system components for installation. These tables do not cover all vent sizes and configurations. In addition, alternative methods can be used in lieu of using the tables.

The sections in Chapter 12 generally follow the procedures an installer would use to design or evaluate a venting system for use with a Category I mid-efficiency furnace or boiler. The venting system is roughly divided into two parts. The main vertical section of the venting system is generally a chimney or Type B vent. The main section is attached to the appliance(s) by a vent connector, which often has a horizontal component.

The purpose of the vent connector is to connect the appliance to the chimney or vent. Each portion of the venting system has different requirements, which are detailed in each portion's corresponding section in Chapter 12. The first five sections of Chapter 12 cover the following:

- Minimum safe performance, which establishes a performance requirement for all venting systems
- General requirements
- Specification for venting, which identifies appliances that must be vented and those that do not need to be vented
- Design and construction of venting systems, including some general design and construction requirements and some more detailed design and construction requirements for mechanical draft systems, ventilating hoods, and exhaust systems
- Type of venting system to be used for different types of appliances, as provided in Table 12.5.1

The next three sections of the code cover materials and installation requirements for the three types of venting systems used for conventional venting systems. Conventional venting systems (for Category I) rely on the buoyancy of the heated flue gases for proper venting. Hot gases are lighter than cooler surrounding gases and will "float" to the top. These sections cover the following:

- Masonry, metal, and factory-built chimneys, including requirements for construction, termination, sizing (by reference to Chapter 13), inspection, and cleaning of chimneys. Also included are detailed figures that specify proper chimney termination requirements, making these requirements easily understood. Chimneys can be listed or unlisted.

- Gas vents, including requirements for sizing, termination, multistory venting, and gas vent support and marking. Gas vents are always listed.
- Single-wall metal pipe, including requirements for construction, termination, installation, sizing, support, and marking of single-wall metal pipe. Single-wall metal pipe is not listed.

The appliance category for most listed appliances can be found on the appliance nameplate. Since few visual differences exist between Category I, Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances, installers should always check the appliance nameplate to determine the appliance venting category. Some appliances equipped with draft hoods might not have a category on the nameplate. These appliances should be installed as Category I appliances.

The next two sections of the code cover the termination of venting systems used for nonconventional venting systems. These systems use a fan to exhaust the products of combustion through the venting system. These sections cover the following:

- Venting system location, which provides requirements for locating the termination of vent systems exiting through the sides of buildings, relative to other building openings
- Condensation drain

The next six sections of the code cover material and installation requirements for the two types of connectors used in venting systems serving Category I appliances. Vent connectors connect gas appliances to vents. Vents are usually vertical, and connectors are usually horizontal. These sections cover the following:

- Vent connectors for Category I appliances, including requirements for installation, materials, sizing, and clearance to combustibles for vent connectors used with conventionally vented appliances
- Vent connectors for Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances (Venting systems for these types of appliances are specified in Section 12.4.)
- Draft hoods and draft controls (This section defines which gas appliances require draft hoods, provides requirements for their installation, and covers other draft control devices and their installation.)
- Manually operated dampers, which are prohibited (Fixed baffles are not prohibited.)
- Automatically operated vent dampers, which must be listed
- Obstructions, which are not permitted except for (1) approved installations of listed draft regulators and safety controls, and (2) heat recovery systems, which are generally used with larger equipment, such as industrial boilers

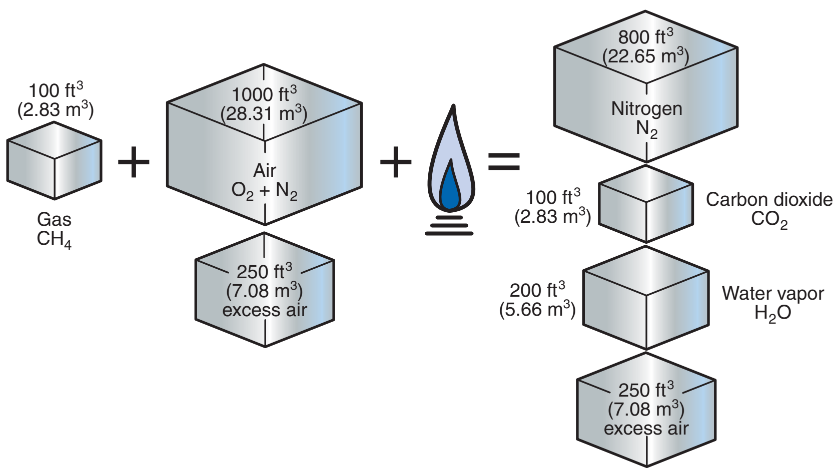
When installing venting systems serving Category I appliances, the requirements of Chapter 12 apply for most installations, as does the sizing information in Chapter 13. Both sets of requirements must be used, except where the alternate sizing method provided in 12.6.3.1 and 12.7.3.1 is used for up to two appliances.

Although gas is a clean-burning fuel, the products of combustion must not be allowed to accumulate inside of a building. (See Exhibit 12.1 for the products of combustion formed under ideal conditions.) Therefore, venting of most gas appliances is required. (See 12.3.2 for a list of appliances that do not require venting.) To provide for proper appliance function and the safety of building occupants, a properly installed and maintained venting system will perform the following functions:

1. Convey all of the combustion products to the outside atmosphere
2. Prevent damage to the gas equipment, vent, building, and furnishings from water vapor condensation in the flue gases

3. Prevent overheating of walls, building structure, and other combustible materials that are installed with required clearance to the appliance and venting system
4. Provide fast priming of natural draft venting systems to minimize spillage of combustion products into the building

EXHIBIT 12.1



Combustion of Natural Gas.

The operation of a venting system may appear complicated, but natural draft venting works because hot air rises. When gas is burned, the products of combustion are hotter than the ambient air. This hot flue gas is lighter and rises to the top. A natural draft venting system's job is to channel these combustion products out of the building. To do so, the venting system must keep the combustion products as warm as possible in the vent. Heat retention maximizes the draft produced.

Prior to the 1990s, when the Department of Energy's minimum appliance efficiency regulation mandated higher-efficiency appliances, gas furnaces had a seasonal efficiency of about 60 percent. This lower efficiency resulted in vent gases that were hotter than they are today, providing ample heat for venting and for controlling condensation. With higher-efficiency space-heating appliances, the old safety margin no longer applies. Extra care must be taken so that the vents operate properly. Higher-efficiency appliances have the benefit of consuming less gas to produce a given amount of heat, which is a significant offsetting factor.

The Category I (mid-efficiency) appliances available today have a seasonal efficiency of about 80 percent. Some use a fan to assist the flow of combustion products through the appliance and are not equipped with a draft hood. Other appliances are equipped with a draft hood but reduce their total flue losses by using an automatic damper to cut off the flow in the vent during the off-cycle. Problems with early models and vent system failures were traced to condensation. As a result, new venting tables were developed. These tables, shown in Chapter 13, were added in the 1992 edition of the code to provide proper sizing of vents for these appliances. For more details on these considerations, see Supplement 1 of this handbook.

See Supplement 1 for more information.

Water heaters must also meet minimum efficiency requirements, but they are still typically draft hood–equipped. Vent sizing for draft hood–equipped water heaters (and other appliances) connected to a dedicated venting system did not require an extensive re-evaluation when other appliance efficiencies were increased. However, the size of common vents serving water heaters and Category I fan-assisted appliances has changed. Sizing must now be done in accordance with the venting tables in Chapter 13.

High-efficiency condensing appliances have a seasonal efficiency of 90 percent or higher, which reduces vent gas temperatures to a point where the water vapor produced as a product of combustion condenses to liquid water in the appliance or in the vent. These condensing appliances are designated as Category IV appliances (see definition in 3.3.5.11.4). This type of appliance produces much cooler vent gases, resulting in water condensing in the vent. Venting must be accomplished with a fan, because the vent gases are not hot enough to create a natural draft vent. Water will condense in the vent and will dissolve some of the gases produced during combustion, which are slightly acidic. The vent materials used with these appliances must be able to resist the acidic condensate. For many of these Category IV appliances, plastic vent material is acceptable and preferred for corrosion reasons. The appliance manufacturer specifies the vent material required for use with their Category IV appliance.

The advantage of high-efficiency appliances is that they significantly reduce the amount of gas consumed with no loss in output. A mid-efficiency appliance uses one-third less gas than a conventional appliance, and a condensing appliance uses only one-half of the gas of a conventional appliance. The savings in fuel may be offset by higher appliance and venting costs, maintenance requirements, and electricity usage.

12.1* Minimum Safe Performance

Venting systems shall be designed and constructed to convey all flue and vent gases to the outdoors.

This requirement is the essence of safe venting — that is, the products of combustion must be removed from the building. While the rest of Chapter 12 and all of Chapter 13 provide requirements for venting, the result must be achieved, or the venting system is not in compliance with the code.

A.12.1 This chapter recognizes that the choice of venting materials and the methods of installation of venting systems are dependent on the operating characteristics of any connected appliances. The operating characteristics of vented appliances can be categorized with respect to whether greater-than-atmospheric or sub-atmospheric pressure exists within the operating vent system and to whether an appliance generates flue or vent gases that can condense in the venting system.

Draft hood–equipped appliances require a vent design that provides a draft to draw vent products into and through the vent system. Vent design tables and the requirements within this code, both for vents and for provision of combustion air, should be used to ensure that vents will provide this draft.

Higher efficiency appliances that generate low-temperature vent gases that can condense require a venting system that can accommodate the condensate produced. Design of these venting systems is accomplished by the appliance manufacturer. Vent system installation requirements for these appliances are contained in the manufacturer's appliance installation instructions.

12.2 General

12.2.1 Installation. Listed vents shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 12 and the manufacturers' installation instructions.

Subsection 12.2.1 points out that the installation of listed venting systems must be in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions *and* the requirements of Chapter 12 of the *National*

Fuel Gas Code. There should be no conflicts between the code and the manufacturer's instructions. If conflicts occur, it is recommended that the manufacturer or the listing agency be contacted, because installation instructions for listed products are checked as part of the listing process to prevent conflicts with the code.

12.3 Specification for Venting

12.3.1 Connection to Venting Systems. Except as permitted in 12.3.2 through 12.3.6, all appliances shall be connected to venting systems.

12.3.2 Appliances Not Required to Be Vented. The following appliances shall not be required to be vented:

(1) Listed ranges
(2) Built-in domestic cooking units listed and marked for optional venting
(3) Listed hot plates and listed laundry stoves
(4) Listed Type 1 clothes dryers exhausted in accordance with Section 10.4
(5) A single listed booster-type (automatic instantaneous) water heater, when designed and used solely for the sanitizing rinse requirements of a dishwashing machine, provided that the appliance is installed with the draft hood in place and unaltered, if a draft hood is required, in a commercial kitchen having a mechanical exhaust system [Where installed in this manner, the draft hood outlet shall not be less than 36 in. (910 mm) vertically and 6 in. (150 mm) horizontally from any surface other than the appliance.]
(6) Listed refrigerators
(7) Counter appliances
(8) Room heaters listed for unvented use
(9) Direct gas-fired make-up air heaters
(10) Other appliances listed for unvented use and not provided with flue collars
(11) Specialized appliances of limited input such as laboratory burners or gas lights

The appliances listed in 12.3.2 do not require venting. Note that some of the appliances [listed in 12.3.2(5) through 12.3.2(11)] must be vented if the total input of all the appliances in this class exceeds 20 Btu/hr/ft^3 (207 W/m^3) of room volume. This ratio is the same as the ratio provided by the standard method of calculation of the room volume needed to provide adequate air for combustion and ventilation. (See 9.3.2.1.) Further information can be found in the commentary following 9.3.2.1.

Paragraph 12.3.2(4) references Section 10.4, Clothes Dryers, highlighting that clothes dryers are exhausted rather than vented. Exhausting means that the products of combustion and the moisture removed from the clothing are combined and removed together. This exhaust is powered with a fan to ensure proper operation. Clothes dryer exhausts and appliance vents must never be combined. Clothes dryer exhausts are under positive pressure, and Category I vents are under negative pressure. The two are incompatible.

Listed ranges, domestic cooking appliances with provision for optional venting, listed hot plates and laundry stoves, and listed clothes dryers can be installed in rooms with a smaller volume than is required by 9.3.2.1. These appliances have one of the following characteristics:

- Limited input (e.g., hot plates and laundry stoves)
- Short operating period (e.g., cooking appliances and dryers)
- Exhaust of products of combustion (e.g., dryers)
- Locations that have additional air supply (e.g., kitchens)

Listed, unvented appliances have been tested by the listing agency to determine that the burners, when properly adjusted, burn cleanly without producing unacceptable levels of dangerous combustion products. However, unvented appliances should be operated in rooms with ample air for combustion, and the burners should be maintained in proper adjustment. Except in decorative appliances, a yellow flame is indicative of improper combustion. Condensation or mildew in a room is an indication of insufficient air supply. Soot or carbon buildup is another indication. Usually, this fault can be corrected by one of the following:

- Properly adjusting the burner
- Cleaning the burner
- Providing adequate combustion air into the room
- Proper setup and positioning of unvented gas logs

Hot plates, laundry stoves, ranges, other cooking units, and so forth must never be used for room heating. Direct gas-fired make-up heaters are intended for industrial or commercial applications and are designed so that the products of combustion are diluted with large quantities of fresh air.

Unvented room heaters and fireplaces should be listed, installed, and operated strictly in accordance with the code and the manufacturer's instructions, which are required to be furnished with each heater. Listed, unvented room heaters and fireplaces are equipped with an oxygen depletion safety shutoff (ODS) system designed to shut off the gas supply to the heater before the oxygen in the surrounding air is reduced below a safe level. If a specially designed ODS pilot assembly is used, a reduced oxygen level will cause the pilot flame to lift above the thermocouple, which will cool, thereby shutting down the burner. However, in all cases, and as specified in the manufacturer's instructions, the room in which the heater is located must be provided with means for supplying fresh air for combustion and ventilation if the space is smaller than the required volume. (See combustion air requirements in Section 9.3.)

Listed ranges and ovens are not required to be vented when used as designed. They must not be used for space heating. With the oven door closed, oven burners normally cycle on and off to maintain oven temperature. Using ranges and ovens for space heating results in the burners being on constantly, which could affect the oxygen supply to the burners and lead to incomplete combustion.

12.3.2.1 Where any or all of the appliances in 12.3.2(5) through 12.3.2(11) are installed so the aggregate input rating exceeds 20 Btu/hr/ft^3 (207 W/m^3) of room or space in which it is installed, one or more shall be provided with venting systems or other approved means for conveying the vent gases to the outdoors so that the aggregate input rating of the remaining unvented appliances does not exceed 20 Btu/hr/ft^3 (207 W/m^3).

12.3.2.2 Where the calculation includes the volume of an adjacent room or space, the room or space in which the appliances are installed shall be directly connected to the adjacent room or space by a doorway, archway, or other opening of comparable size that cannot be closed.

12.3.3* Ventilating Hoods. Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent appliances installed in commercial applications and to vent industrial appliances, particularly where the process itself requires fume disposal.

The provision in 12.3.3 is commonly applied in restaurant kitchens, where, for sanitation reasons, very hot water is required for dishwashing. The gas supply to the booster is interlocked with the hood, usually with a normally closed solenoid valve in the gas line that is opened only when the hood is running. This interlock is needed to meet the requirements of 12.4.4 and 12.4.4.2. The commentary following 12.4.4.2 provides more information on this application.

A.12.3.3 Information on the construction and installation of ventilating hoods can be obtained from NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*.

12.3.4 Well-Ventilated Spaces. The operation of industrial appliances such that its flue gases are discharged directly into a large and well-ventilated space shall be permitted.

The unusual provision in 12.3.4 is another exception to the rule stated in 12.3.1 that all gas appliances be connected to a venting system. Paragraph 12.3.4 applies only to appliances installed in industrial buildings and recognizes common, safe practice in metal-treating and other industries. Some of the equipment normally installed under the requirements of this paragraph are heat-treating furnaces, radiant tube burners, and pot heaters in foundries.

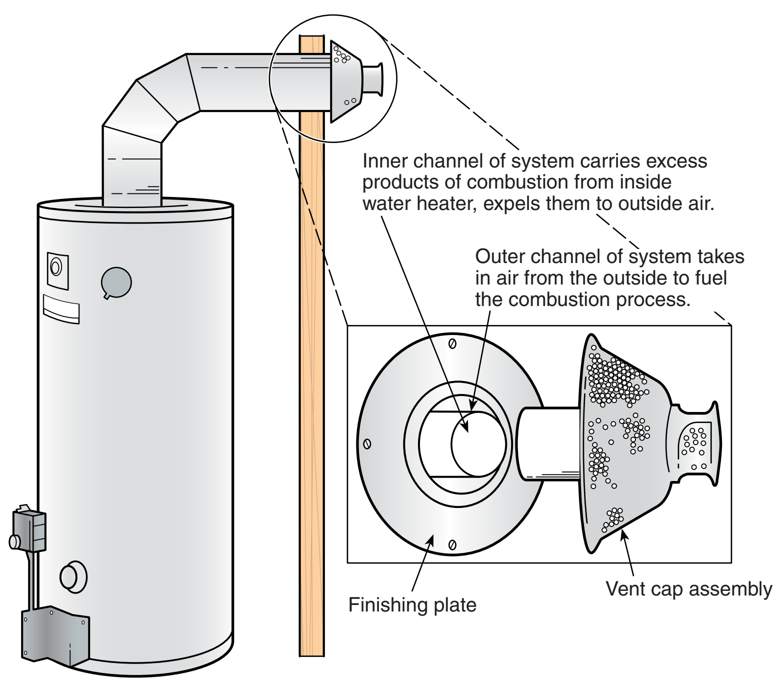
Building ventilation must be designed to dilute flue gases to a safe level by means of natural draft or mechanical ventilation. In many of these installations, ventilation for fume removal or process reasons exceeds the ventilation level needed for safe removal of the products of combustion.

12.3.5 Direct Vent Appliances. Listed direct vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and 12.9.3.

The venting system is part of a direct-vent appliance and is considered to be part of its listing. Listed appliances are tested with inlet and outlet configurations taken from their installation directions. Therefore, the installation instructions must be followed carefully. Exhibit 12.2 shows one type of direct-vent appliance that uses a concentric vent and air supply. Some direct-vent appliances use independent ducts for the inlet and outlet.

Note that 12.3.5 applies to listed direct-vent appliances, which are the most likely appliances to be encountered. Section 12.9 provides requirements for the location of the vent terminations of direct-vent appliances.

EXHIBIT 12.2



Direct-Vent Water Heater Using a Concentric Vent and Supply.

Direct-vent appliances do not use room air for combustion and, therefore, can be installed in locations where other types of appliances cannot be installed, such as bedrooms and bathrooms. Direct-vent appliances are sometimes called "sealed combustion" appliances, which can be a misleading term. Direct-vent appliances do draw combustion air from the outdoors and deliver the products of combustion to the outdoors. However, direct-vent appliances are not airtight, and a small amount of air and combustion products can enter the room. That air and flammable vapors (if present) can be drawn into the direct-vent appliances. This means that direct-vent appliances can ignite flammable vapors nearby. Listed direct-vent water heaters, furnaces, and boilers cannot be installed on the floor of a residential garage unless they are also listed as flammable vapor ignition resistant (FVIR).

12.3.6 Appliances with Integral Vents. Appliances incorporating integral venting means shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and 12.9.1 and 12.9.2.

An integral vent, which is addressed in 12.3.6, is a vent that is supplied with a gas appliance by the manufacturer and is part of the appliance.

12.3.7 Incinerators, Commercial-Industrial. Commercial-industrial-type incinerators shall be vented in accordance with NFPA 82, *Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment*.

Paragraph 12.3.7 was added to the 2012 edition to recognize that NFPA 82, *Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment,* contains venting requirements for incinerators.

12.4 Design and Construction

12.4.1 Appliance Draft Requirements. A venting system shall satisfy the draft requirements of the appliance in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Subsection 12.4.1 provides an overall performance requirement for a natural draft vent system. The vent system must completely remove the products of combustion from the gas appliance it serves to the exterior atmosphere.

The principle on which natural draft vents operate is simple. Heat is the power that operates a natural draft vent or chimney. Combustion gases rise in the chimney or vent only because they are hotter, and therefore lighter, than the surrounding air. The hotter the gases and the higher the vent, the more swiftly and powerfully the gases will rise. Conversely, the cooler the gases and the shorter the vent, the more sluggish the movement of the gases will be. The flue gases in the vent must remain hot enough over the length of the vent to provide a strong draft. If cooled enough, the upward motion of the gases stalls, and combustion gases can spill into the building through the relief opening of the appliance draft hood.

When the combustion products and dilution air rise in the vent, this volume must be replaced by air from outside the building envelope. This replacement air can be supplied through normal air infiltration (through small openings in the building walls), through outdoor openings purposely installed in outside walls, or by a mechanical air system (usually a fan). Thus, to ensure proper vent operation, the building's make-up air load should be evaluated.

Fan-assisted combustion appliances cause some confusion because they are listed as Category I appliances, meaning that their vents operate by natural draft due to the heat of the vent gas. However, these appliances have a fan to assist the flow of the combustion product through the appliance. The fan is necessary because higher-efficiency appliances have more resistance to air movement (or higher pressure drop) through their heat exchangers. The pressure provided by the induced draft blower is matched carefully to the resistance of the heat exchanger. Once the combustion products exit the appliance, the natural buoyancy takes over in the vent. If the vent is designed using the tables of Chapter 13, the pressure in the vent system will be negative.

Some furnaces are listed as Category I or Category III appliances, depending on the method used to vent the appliance. The fan in these furnaces is sized to result in negative vent pressure when connected to a properly sized vertical vent (Category I) or in positive vent pressure when vented horizontally (Category III). Category III installation requires using venting materials recommended by the manufacturer's installation instructions.

FAQ How do I conduct a simple spillage test on a natural draft appliance?

Blockage of a natural draft vent may cause flue gases to spill into the building through the relief opening of the draft hood. Spillage can also be caused if the pressure in the vicinity of the appliance is much lower than the pressure outside the building. Building depressurization can be caused by numerous competing appliances removing air from the structure. Mechanical exhausts, fireplaces, and wind can cause depressurization. Building depressurization can be simply described as air being removed quicker than can be replaced. Consequently, periodically verifying the performance of appliance venting systems is wise. Verification can be done readily with a natural draft system as follows (Annex G, Recommended Procedure for Safety Inspection of an Existing Appliance Installation, also provides information on this subject):

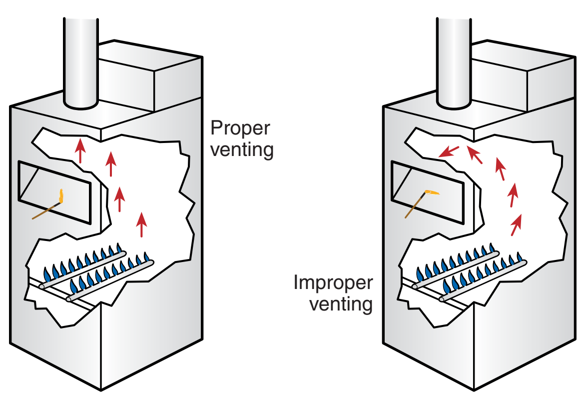
1. Operate the appliance for at least 5 minutes to allow the flue gases to heat the vent.
2. Move a lighted match across the entire width of the draft hood relief opening. (See Exhibit 12.3.)
3. If the match flame is blown downward or extinguished, the venting system or chimney should be checked by a qualified agency.

If the appliance is not equipped with a draft hood, performing the match test may be impossible, in which case the appliance instruction manual should be consulted.

Good air circulation in adequate amounts is also vital for good venting and efficient appliance operation. Signs of improper operation include a yellow or wavering flame; discoloration around access doors; a pungent odor in the building; excessive humidity, condensation, or mold; corrosion of the vent material; and soot near the burner or vent area. If any of

See Annex G for more information.

EXHIBIT 12.3



Match Test to Determine Proper and Improper Venting.

these conditions is observed, a qualified agency should be contacted to have the installation inspected. Where these conditions exist, building occupants — especially occupants who spend most of the day in the building affected — have been reported to have headaches and flu-like symptoms.

Carbon monoxide can be produced as a result of either improper venting of combustion products, insufficient fresh air to support the proper burning of gas, or improperly adjusted appliances. If symptoms of carbon monoxide poisoning are experienced, fresh air is needed promptly. Occupants should open windows or go outdoors. Initial symptoms of carbon monoxide poisoning are headaches, weariness, dizziness, and nausea. Higher concentration of carbon monoxide in the blood causes more severe symptoms. These symptoms are confusion and drowsiness, elevated heartbeat and breathing, chest pains, vision problems, and even seizures. Any gas appliance suspected of operating improperly should be shut off and immediately checked by a qualified agency.

12.4.2 Design and Construction. Appliances required to be vented shall be connected to a venting system designed and installed in accordance with the provisions of Sections 12.5 through 12.16.

12.4.3 Mechanical Draft Systems.

Mechanical draft systems, which are addressed in 12.4.3, use mechanical force, usually from a fan or blower, to vent the combustion products. Natural buoyancy is not needed or significant.

EXHIBIT 12.4

Mechanically Vented Water Heater. (Courtesy of Bradford White Water Heaters)

FAQ What is the difference between forced draft and induced draft?

There are two types of mechanical draft systems: forced draft and induced draft. The difference between these types is as follows:

1. Forced draft exists where the fan is located at the entrance to the vent or chimney, resulting in pressure in the vent or chimney that is greater than atmospheric pressure.
2. Induced draft exists where the fan is located at the exit of the vent or chimney, resulting in pressure that is less than atmospheric pressure.

Typically, any section of vent downstream of the blower will be under positive pressure, as a result of forced draft. Therefore, care must be taken to ensure that the vent pipe used is appropriate for positive pressure combustion gases. Otherwise, leaks of the combustion products may occur. A mechanical draft water heater is shown in Exhibit 12.4.

12.4.3.1 Mechanical draft systems shall be listed and installed in accordance with both the appliance and the mechanical draft system manufacturer's installation instructions.

12.4.3.2 Appliances requiring venting shall be permitted to be vented by means of mechanical draft systems of either forced or induced draft design.

12.4.3.3 Forced draft systems and all portions of induced draft systems under positive pressure during operation shall be designed and installed so as to prevent leakage of flue or vent gases into a building.

12.4.3.4 Vent connectors serving appliances vented by natural draft shall not be connected into any portion of mechanical draft systems operating under positive pressure.

The key term in 12.4.3.3 and 12.4.3.4 is *positive pressure*. Vents serving fan-assisted appliances operate under negative pressure when vented into a chimney, even though the appliance uses a mechanical fan. Fan-assisted appliances can be common-vented with other fan-assisted appliances, draft hood–equipped appliances, and all other Category I vented appliances.

12.4.3.5 Where a mechanical draft system is employed, provision shall be made to prevent the flow of gas to the main burners when the draft system is not performing so as to satisfy the operating requirements of the appliance for safe performance.

FAQ How do you prevent main burner operation when the mechanical draft system is not operating?

An interlock between the mechanical draft system and the appliance gas valve will fulfill the requirement in 12.4.3.5 that gas be prevented from flowing to the main burners when the draft system is not performing (creating sufficient air movement to remove the products of combustion). Controls must be configured so that power to open the gas valve is only supplied if the mechanical draft system is operating and producing the required level of draft.

12.4.3.6 The exit terminals of mechanical draft systems shall be not less than 7 ft (2.1 m) above finished ground level where located adjacent to public walkways and shall be located as specified in 12.9.1 and 12.9.2.

Paragraph 12.4.3.6 provides the installer with guidance on the location of exit terminals for mechanical draft systems. This information is needed because of the increased use of power vent kits to vent appliances. The manufacturer of a listed power vent kit provides sizing information in the instructions provided with the kit.

A minimum elevation of 7 ft (2.1 m) above finished ground level is required in 12.4.3.6 so that combustion gases do not create a nuisance for pedestrians. Potential nuisances include the high temperature of the vent and the possibility of condensation of water in the vent gases forming a pool of water, ice, or snow on the pavement. The definition of a "public walkway" is not specified in the code. The dictionary definition and common sense should be used.

Subsections 12.9.1 and 12.9.2 specify the location of vent terminals in relation to air inlets, doors, and windows.

12.4.4* Ventilating Hoods and Exhaust Systems.

A.12.4.4 See A.12.3.3.

Subsection 12.4.4 recognizes a safe, alternate method for venting of gas appliances in commercial applications. For example, in restaurant kitchens, a "booster" water heater is used to provide very hot water for sanitation. In this application, the booster water heater is operated only while the restaurant kitchen is in operation, and the range hood is used to vent both the range and the water heater.

Range hoods are covered under NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*, which requires an interlock that operates when the airflow falls below a predetermined value. This circuit can be interlocked with the main gas valve of the water heater (or other gas appliance vented via the range hood) so that gas will not flow to the main burners unless a minimum airflow is achieved in the vent system.

12.4.4.1 Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems shall be permitted to be used to vent appliances installed in commercial applications.

12.4.4.2 Where automatically operated appliances, other than commercial cooking appliances, are vented through a ventilating hood or exhaust system equipped with a damper or with a power means of exhaust, provisions shall be made to allow the flow of gas to the main burners only when the damper is open to a position to properly vent the appliance and when the power means of exhaust is in operation.

Paragraph 12.4.4.2 allows automatically controlled appliances, such as water heaters, to be vented via a vent hood or exhaust system. This provision has been in NFPA 54 for about 50 years, and it allows appliances in rooms with ventilating hood exhaust systems, usually kitchens, to use the ventilating hood exhaust systems to vent the appliance.

Additional information on the use of ventilating hoods can be found in the commentary following 12.3.3. Information on the design and installation of ventilating hoods in industrial plants can be obtained from NFPA 91, *Standard for Exhaust Systems for Air Conveying of Vapors, Gases, Mists, and Noncombustible Particulate Solids*.

12.4.5 Circulating Air Ducts, Above-Ceiling Air-Handling Spaces, and Furnace Plenums.

12.4.5.1 Venting systems shall not extend into or pass through any fabricated air duct or furnace plenum.

12.4.5.2 Where a venting system passes through an above-ceiling air space or other nonducted portion of an air-handling system, it shall conform to one of the following requirements:

(1) The venting system shall be a listed special gas vent, other system serving a Category III or Category IV appliance, or other positive pressure vent, with joints sealed in accordance with the appliance or vent manufacturer's instructions.
(2) The vent system shall be installed such that no fittings or joints between sections are installed in the above-ceiling space.
(3) The venting system shall be installed in a conduit or enclosure with joints between the interior of the enclosure and the ceiling space sealed.

FAQ Is it acceptable to install a venting system for a natural draft appliance in an above-ceiling space used as a return air plenum?

The code includes requirements in 12.4.5.2 that provide guidance for the installation of venting systems in above-ceiling spaces or other nonducted spaces used for transfer of conditioned building air. In commercial buildings, the space above the ceiling is often used as the return-air plenum for the heating and air-conditioning system. Special consideration for the installation of vents that pass through these spaces is necessary to prevent flue gases from leaking into the space. The issue of airtightness of that portion of the venting system that passes through the air-handling space is covered in 12.4.5.2(1), (2), and (3).

Paragraph 12.4.5.2(1) allows the installation of a special gas vent or other approved venting system for a Category III or Category IV appliance. Category III and Category IV appliances have positive pressure in their venting systems, so the venting system is already designed to be airtight to prevent the outward leakage of flue gases.

Paragraph 12.4.5.2(2) allows the installation of a standard venting system, such as a Type B vent, to pass through the air-handling space when it is installed with no joints or fittings within the air-handling space. Consider as an example the installation of a Type B vent in a 3 ft (0.9 m) high ceiling space where a 5 ft (1.5 m) section of pipe could be used as long as it is installed such that the joints are below and above the ceiling space.

Paragraph 12.4.5.2(3) allows the installation of a standard venting system when it is installed within a chase or conduit that is sealed from the air-handling space. This option essentially removes the venting system from the air-handling space.

12.5 Type of Venting System to Be Used

12.5.1 The type of venting system to be used shall be in accordance with Table 12.5.1.

***TABLE 12.5.1** Type of Venting System to Be Used*

Appliances	***Type of Venting System***	***Location of Requirements***
Listed Category I appliances	Type B gas vent	12.7
Listed appliances equipped with draft hood	Chimney	12.6
Appliances listed for use with Type B gas vent	Single-wall metal pipe	12.8
	Listed chimney lining system for gas venting	12.6.1.3
	Special gas vent listed for these appliances	12.5.4
Listed vented wall furnaces	Type B-W gas vent	12.7, 10.27
Category II appliances Category III appliances Category IV appliances	As specified or furnished by manufacturers of listed appliances	12.5.2, 12.5.4
Incinerators	-	In accordance with NFPA 82
Appliances that can be converted to use solid fuel	Chimney	12.6
Unlisted combination gas- and oil-burning appliances		-
Combination gas- and solid fuel–burning appliances		-
Appliances listed for use with chimneys only		-
Unlisted appliances		-
Listed combination gas- and oil-burning appliances	Type L vent	12.7
	Chimney	12.6
Decorative appliance in vented fireplace	Chimney	10.6.2
Gas-fired toilets	Single-wall metal pipe	12.8, 10.25.3
Direct vent appliances	-	12.3.5
Appliances with integral vents	-	12.3.6

To use Table 12.5.1, locate the type of gas appliance to be vented in the left-hand column and read across the row to find the type(s) of venting system(s) that is permitted. For example, a listed Category I appliance can be vented using a Type B gas vent, chimney, single-wall metal pipe, chimney lining system that is listed for gas venting, or a special gas vent listed for the appliance.

Table 12.5.1 refers to appliance Category I through Category IV. The categories are based on vent temperature and pressure. (See Commentary Table 12.1, Appliance Vent Categories, and the definitions under *vented appliance,* Category I through Category IV, in 3.3.5.11.) Note that the definitions reference "a vent gas temperature that can cause (or that avoids) excessive condensate production in the vent." A specific temperature is not provided, because it is not the same for all appliances. The ANSI Z21 standards for appliance categorization can be referenced for this information. Annex K contains a complete list of the ANSI Z21 standards. Note that the installer should not need this information, because the appliance vent category is included in the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions and on the appliance nameplate.

See Annex K for more information.

In Commentary Table 12.1, the term *nonpositive,* as applied to vent pressure, means that the pressure in the vent will be lower than the surrounding atmosphere if the vent system meets the requirements of Chapter 12 and Chapter 13. The incorporation of a fan into the appliance does not always mean that the vent pressure is positive. If unsure, check the appliance nameplate or manufacturer's instructions for the venting category, or check the vent pressure with a manometer or other pressure gauge when the appliance is operating.

COMMENTARY TABLE 12.1 *Appliance Vent Categories*

Appliance Category[1]	***Vent Pressure***	***Temperature Above/Below Defined in Relevant ANSI Z21 Standard***	***Comment***
I	Nonpositive[2]	Above	Natural draft venting
			Materials must be corrosion resistant
II	Nonpositive[2]	Below	Condensate must be drained
III	Positive[3]	Above	Vent must be gastight
			Vent must be liquidtight and gastight
IV	Positive[3]	Below	Condensate must be drained

[1]*Appliances are identified as Category I, Category II, Category III, or Category IV on the appliance nameplate and are stated as such in manufacturers' installation instructions.*

[2]*The term* nonpositive, *as applied to vent pressure, means that, even if fans or blowers are used in the appliance or vent systems, venting is accomplished by natural draft. (The vent pressure is lower than the atmospheric pressure.)*

[3]*The term* positive, *as applied to vent pressure, means that fans, blowers, or other means are used to propel vent gases through the vent at above atmospheric pressure.*

12.5.2 Plastic Piping. Where plastic piping is used to vent an appliance, the appliance shall be listed for use with such venting materials and the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions shall identify the specific plastic piping material.

Before the introduction of high-efficiency (90+ percent efficiency) gas utilization equipment, plastic piping was prohibited as a vent material. High-efficiency (Category IV) appliances reduce vent temperatures, resulting in condensate formation. As accumulation of condensate became a source of corrosion of metal vents, plastic piping became the preferred material. Paragraph 12.5.2 requires that materials to be used in a venting system be specified as part of the appliance listing in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and be approved.

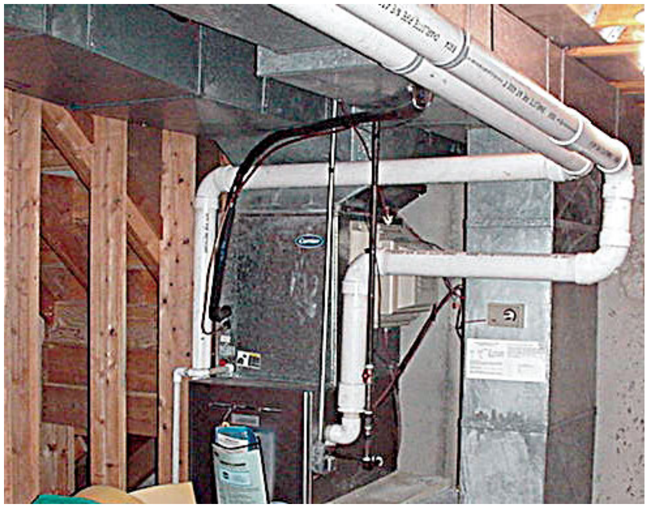
Exhibit 12.5 shows an example of a direct-vent furnace using plastic vent and plastic combustion air supply.

12.5.3 Plastic Vent Joints. Plastic pipe and fittings used to vent appliances shall be installed in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions. Where primer is required, it shall be of a contrasting color.

Paragraph 12.5.3 recognizes the concerns of enforcement officials regarding proper plastic vent joint installation. PVC pipe used as a vent requires a primer that is colored so that inspectors can easily verify that the primer has been used by the residual color on the pipe near a joint. The choice of color is left to the primer manufacturer. To the editor's knowledge, all primers as of the date of publication of this handbook are purple, but the code allows other colors if desired or needed to distinguish between different primers in the future.

12.5.4 Special Gas Vents. Special gas vents shall be listed and installed in accordance with the special gas vent manufacturer's installation instructions.

EXHIBIT 12.5



Direct-Vent Furnace with Plastic Pipe. (Courtesy of Magic Sweep Corporation)

All special gas vents are required to be listed vent materials. Special gas vents are listed in accordance with ANSI/UL 1738, *Venting Systems for Gas Burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV*. Installation instructions for special gas vents include limitations on operating temperature, categories of appliance to be used with each vent, clearance to combustible materials, types of fittings and joint sealant to be used, and vent termination requirements.

Special attention should be given to the following areas:

1. Proper support for the special gas vent to prevent sagging and to allow for expansion, contraction, and condensate drainage
2. Proper cutting and cleaning of joints and fittings and the use of recommended joint sealants (substitutes not usually permitted)
3. Construction of a condensate trap (See the appliance manufacturer's instructions for special requirements.)
4. Wall penetrations (The pipe should not be secured at a thimble, because the pipe must be allowed to move to accommodate expansion and contraction.)
5. Insulation [The vent pipe or the fittings of the inside of a wall thimble must not be insulated when polymeric (nonmetallic) vent materials are used.]

More than 15 years ago, a class of special gas vent known as high temperature plastic vent (HTPV) was introduced to the market for use with mid-efficiency appliances. Field experience has shown that these vent systems are prone to failure. The failure may occur because of improper installation practice and/or corrosion from acidic condensate. The location of such vent pipes can also affect their performance and should be checked.

12.6 Masonry, Metal, and Factory-Built Chimneys

Section 12.6 applies to chimneys of all types but not to gas vents (including Type B vents), which are covered in Section 12.7, or to single-wall metal pipe, which is covered in Section 12.8.

12.6.1 Listing or Construction.

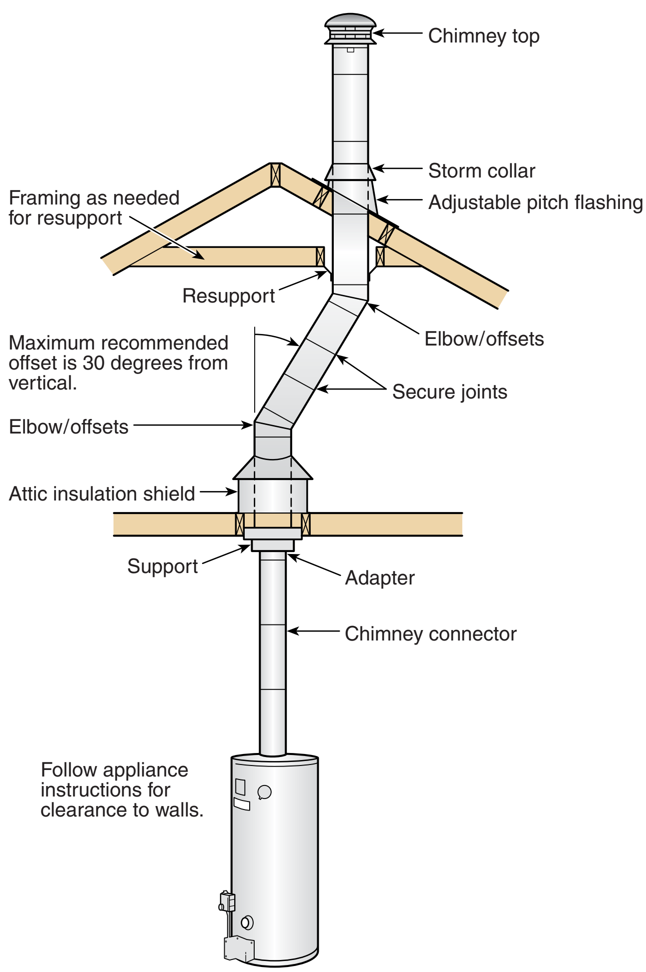
12.6.1.1 Factory-built chimneys shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Factory-built chimneys used to vent appliances that operate at positive vent pressure shall be listed for such application.

Sketches of factory-built chimneys, as shown in Exhibit 12.6 through Exhibit 12.8, consist entirely of factory-built parts, such as chimney sections, supports, thimbles, flashings, caps, and other parts required to complete a particular installation. The parts are designed to be assembled with other parts of the same model without requiring field alteration or construction. All the parts for a particular model, as described in the chimney manufacturer's instructions, are to be used. Exhibit 12.9 shows the hardware for a positive pressure factory-built chimney.

The following three types of factory-built chimneys are available:

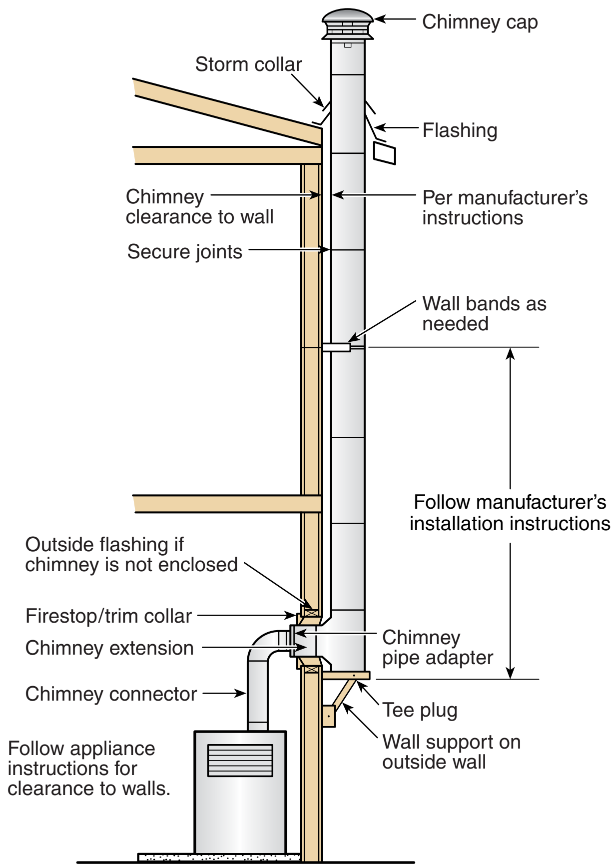
1. Residential-type and building heating appliance chimneys that are intended for venting flue gases at a temperature not exceeding 1000°F (538°C) under continuous operating conditions
2. 1400°F (760°C) chimneys for venting flue gases at a temperature not exceeding 1400°F (760°C) under continuous operating conditions

EXHIBIT 12.6



Typical Installation of Residential Factory-Built Chimney.

EXHIBIT 12.7



Alternate Installation of Residential Factory-Built Chimney Outside a Building.

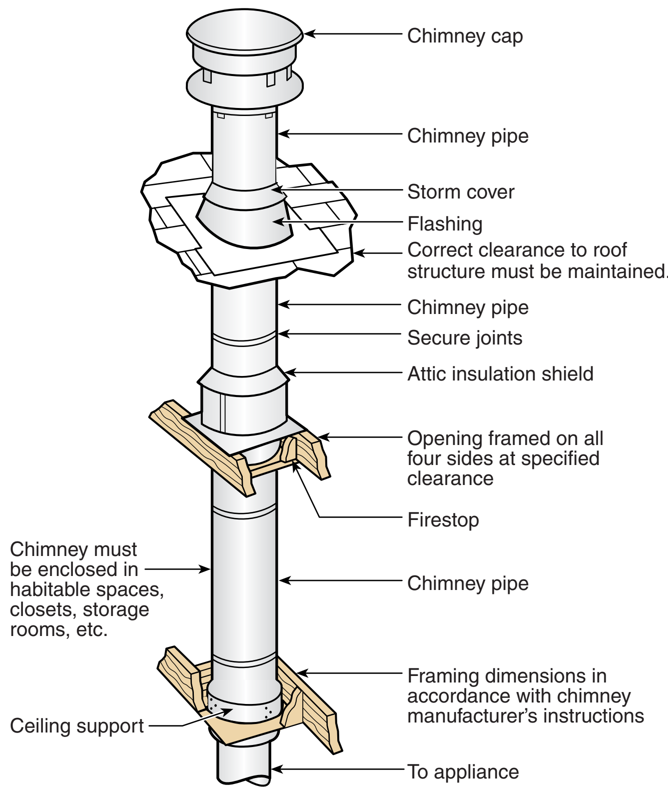
3. Medium-heat appliance chimneys for venting flue gases at a temperature not exceeding 1800°F (982°C)

The installation of chimneys serving appliances with vent temperatures over 1000°F (538°C) is not covered in this code. See NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances,* which also describes the various types of heating appliances mentioned in this commentary.

Factory-built chimneys must be installed in accordance with the terms of their listings and manufacturers' instructions, which are furnished with each chimney assembly and have been verified by the listing agency. Factory-built chimneys suitable for positive pressure are now available. The product standard for chimneys, ANSI/UL 103, *Factory-Built Chimneys for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances,* includes separate tests to verify the proper operation of factory-built chimneys that are designed for positive combustion-product pressure.

Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances are not suitable for venting by the conventional method of natural draft venting. These appliances must not be connected to chimneys. These appliances should be vented in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions, which cover the type, size, and length of material to be used; how the venting system is to be installed; and the minimum clearance to combustible material. These instructions have been verified by the listing agency.

EXHIBIT 12.8



Alternate Installation of Residential Factory-Built Chimney Inside a Building Highlighting Roof Penetration.

EXHIBIT 12.9

Hardware for a Positive Pressure Factory-Built Chimney. (Courtesy of Selkirk Corp.)

12.6.1.2 Metal chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*.

The term *metal chimneys* refers to field-constructed chimneys made of sheet steel and intended for industrial applications. Other codes refer to this type of chimney as "metal stacks." The term *metal chimneys* is sometimes misapplied to describe factory-built chimneys. The construction and installation of metal chimneys is covered in NFPA 211, which prohibits the installation of metal chimneys in residential structures.

12.6.1.3* Masonry chimneys shall be built and installed in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*, and lined with approved clay flue lining, a listed chimney lining system, or other approved material that resists corrosion, erosion, softening, or cracking from vent gases at temperatures up to 1800°F (982°C).

Masonry chimneys can be used for all appliances permitted in 12.5.1 that can be vented using chimneys. The code user must be aware of both 13.1.11 and 13.2.22, which place restrictions on the use of the sizing tables for chimneys that vent fan-assisted combustion appliances.

Masonry chimneys are rarely suitable to vent fan-assisted appliances without the addition of a properly sized chimney liner, especially when they are not common-vented with draft hood–equipped appliances. Exterior masonry chimneys pose additional challenges and restrictions, and the addition of the exterior masonry chimney venting tables in Chapter 13 makes it clear that exterior masonry chimneys could not be used to vent a fan-assisted appliance unless common-vented with draft hood–equipped appliances. Additionally, the exterior masonry chimney venting tables severely limit installation options in cold climates, due to the high heat loss from exterior chimneys.

Exception: Masonry chimney flues lined with a chimney lining system specifically listed for use with listed appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances, and other appliances listed for use with Type B vents shall be permitted. The liner shall be installed in accordance with the liner manufacturer's installation instructions. A permanent identifying label shall be attached at the point where the connection is to be made to the liner. The label shall read "This chimney liner is for appliances that burn gas only. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel–burning appliances or incinerators."

The exception to 12.6.1.3 permits installation of liners that may not be covered in NFPA 211 in a masonry chimney. The labeling requirement notifies future installers of the vent liner's limitations. Notification is important if a change in appliance fuels is considered.

The intent of this requirement is to warn installers that a chimney liner is not suitable to vent appliances with higher vent temperatures than gas appliances. If the liner is constructed of a material that can tolerate higher vent temperatures, then its listing should reflect such information. The labeling should state that the chimney liner can be used for listed appliances with draft hoods and other types of appliances. If the liner is suitable for high temperatures, the label is not required.

A.12.6.1.3 For information on the installation of gas vents in existing masonry chimneys, see Section 12.7.

12.6.2 Termination.

12.6.2.1* A chimney for residential-type or low-heat appliances shall extend at least 3 ft (0.9 m) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 ft (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 ft (3 m).

A.12.6.2.1 Chimney clearance requirements are illustrated in Figure A.12.6.2.1.

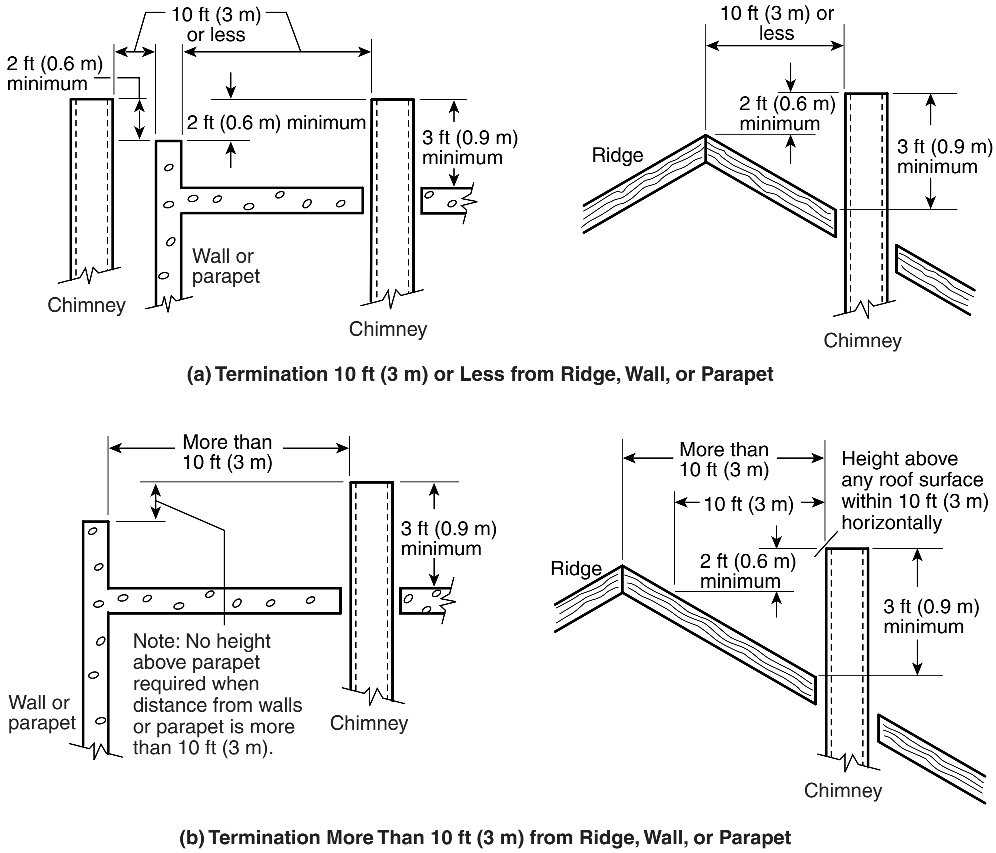


FIGURE A.12.6.2.1 *Typical Termination Locations for Chimneys and Single-Wall Metal Pipes Serving Residential-Type and Low-Heat Appliances.*

12.6.2.2 A chimney for medium-heat appliances shall extend at least 10 ft (3 m) higher than any portion of any building within 25 ft (7.6 m).

12.6.2.3 A chimney shall extend at least 5 ft (1.5 m) above the highest connected appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar.

12.6.2.4 Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of factory-built chimneys except where such shrouds are listed and labeled for use with the specific factory-built chimney system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions.

FAQ What are the hazards associated with installing decorative shrouds around chimneys?

The installation of unlisted shrouds around factory-built chimneys is prohibited because it would affect the flow of flue gases and trap hot flue gases in close proximity to the combustible chase structure. Shrouds, as shown in Exhibit 12.10, are used to hide chimneys. Shrouds can interfere with vent operation. Hazards include overheating due to reduced airflow around the chimney top and obstruction of chimneys by animal nesting that is not easily seen from the ground. Nesting material can also lead to fires inside the shroud.

12.6.3 Size of Chimneys.

Information on the sizing of chimneys, which is addressed in 12.6.3, is provided in Chapter 13 in the form of tables and additional requirements.

EXHIBIT 12.10

Decorative Vent Shroud. (Courtesy of Magic Sweep Corporation)

The Chapter 13 tables and additional requirements recognize that there is a significant difference between the operation of interior and exterior chimneys. An exterior chimney is one in which one or more sides are exposed to the outdoors below the roofline. An interior chimney is not exposed to the outdoors below the building's roofline. (Chimneys that pass through unheated attics or garages are not considered to be outdoors.) An interior chimney is largely isolated from weather changes. Outside ambient temperatures affect an exterior chimney. Therefore, the requirements for exterior chimneys are keyed to the lowest temperature expected in the installation location.

The requirements for sizing chimneys were developed using a flue loss of 17 percent for the heating appliance. Most real furnaces and boilers operate at a higher flue loss. Therefore, the code requirements are conservative. Several manufacturers offer customized vent kits, which are keyed to the exact performance of their appliances. In this case, their recommendations should be used.

12.6.3.1 The effective area of a chimney venting system serving listed appliances with draft hoods, Category I appliances, and other appliances listed for use with Type B vents shall be in accordance with one of the following methods:

(1) Those listed in Chapter 13.
(2) For sizing an individual chimney venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood, the effective areas of the vent connector and chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet or greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area.
(3) For sizing a chimney venting system connected to two appliances with draft hoods, the effective area of the chimney flue shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet or greater than seven times the smaller draft hood outlet area.

(4) Chimney venting systems using mechanical draft shall be sized in accordance with approved engineering methods.
(5) Other approved engineering methods.

FAQ Are there simple alternative sizing methods that can be used in place of the vent system sizing tables in Chapter 13?

The sizing methods in 12.6.3.1(2) and 12.6.3.1(3) permit simple alternate chimney sizing methods that limit the vent to a maximum size of seven times the smallest draft hood outlet area or a minimum size based on the draft hood outlet areas. These methods limit the maximum size of the vent connector and gas vent to minimize condensation in the gas vent caused by insufficient flow of hot vent gases to heat an excessively large gas vent. Note that the alternate sizing methods are applicable only to appliances equipped with draft hoods. Excessive condensation can cause premature failure of a chimney.

Note that 12.6.3.1(3) limits the use of these alternatives to chimney venting systems serving only two appliances. Sample calculations using the venting tables in Chapter 13 and the alternate method showed that the alternate method results in vent sizes too small when four or more appliances are involved and in the case of some tall vents. The alternate method always provides acceptable vent sizes for two appliances. Venting systems serving more than two appliances must use the vent sizing tables in Chapter 13 or other engineering methods.

12.6.4 Inspection of Chimneys.

12.6.4.1 Before replacing an existing appliance or connecting a vent connector to a chimney, the chimney passageway shall be examined to ascertain that it is clear and free of obstructions and shall be cleaned if previously used for venting solid or liquid fuel–burning appliances or fireplaces.

Paragraph 12.6.4.1 covers inspection prior to the connection of a new appliance to an existing chimney. It is important to inspect a chimney to ensure that it is appropriate for the appliance it is to serve. Removing soot, debris, or blockages is essential for proper operation and future diagnostics. The products of gas combustion can soften a buildup of soot or creosote that may have been caused by oil-burning or solid fuel–burning appliances. These deposits, if softened, can break away and block the chimney.

12.6.4.2 Chimneys shall be lined in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*.

Exception: Existing chimneys shall be permitted to have their use continued when an appliance is replaced by an appliance of similar type, input rating, and efficiency, where the chimney complies with 12.6.4 and the sizing of the chimney is in accordance with 12.6.3.

It is not the intention of this code to circumvent the instructions of the appliance manufacturer. Some appliance manufacturers may require that the vent system be replaced. Venting manufacturers may require that a used venting system not be used with a new appliance. The exception in this section allows for the use of an existing chimney if it is in serviceable condition. Always check the appliance and venting installation instructions to verify the requirements. Modern lined chimneys perform better, which leads to higher efficiencies, longer appliance life, and safer appliances. In addition, the exception of 12.6.4.2 does not override 12.6.4.4, requiring a chimney to be deemed safe for continued use.

Note that the exception was revised in the 2009 edition with the addition of "where the chimney complies with 12.6.4 and the sizing of the chimney is in accordance with 12.6.3," to clarify that the exception has limits.

For additional information on the venting of fan-assisted combustion appliances, see Supplement 1, Development of Revised Venting Guidelines, which describes the work that went into the development of the tables and the code requirements.

See Supplement 1 for more information.

12.6.4.3 Cleanouts shall be examined to determine that they remain tightly closed when not in use.

It is important that cleanout openings remain closed during operation of the venting system. When air enters the chimney through the cleanout, available draft for the connected appliance(s) is reduced. An open cleanout can cause flue gases to enter the building.

12.6.4.4 When inspection reveals that an existing chimney is not safe for the intended application, it shall be repaired, rebuilt, lined, relined, or replaced with a vent or chimney to conform to NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*, and shall be suitable for the appliances to be attached.

Some common chimney troubles and ways to detect them are shown in Exhibit 12.11, which shows a chimney with two flues, one serving a wood-burning fireplace and the other serving two gas appliances. Included is a list of common chimney problems. This information provides a relatively simple guide for installers to identify potential problems. Where repairs are needed, a qualified individual or agency should be used. NFPA 211 (Chapter 15) requires the venting system to be inspected when an appliance is replaced. This inspection is required to be performed by a qualified individual or agency. A qualified hearth inspector able to perform the job performance requirements should be consulted.

12.6.5 Chimney Serving Appliances Burning Other Fuels.

12.6.5.1 An appliance shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a separate appliance designed to burn solid fuel.

The common venting of gas and solid fuel–burning appliances is prohibited in 12.6.5.1 for several reasons. Solid fuel–burning appliances increase the amount of deposits in the venting system and can lead to blockages of the venting system. Blocked venting systems serving gas appliances can be dangerous, and the danger may not be apparent immediately.

The possibility of chimney fires is greater in chimneys serving solid fuel–burning appliances. A chimney fire could burn uncontrolled due to air entering the chimney through the draft hoods of gas appliances.

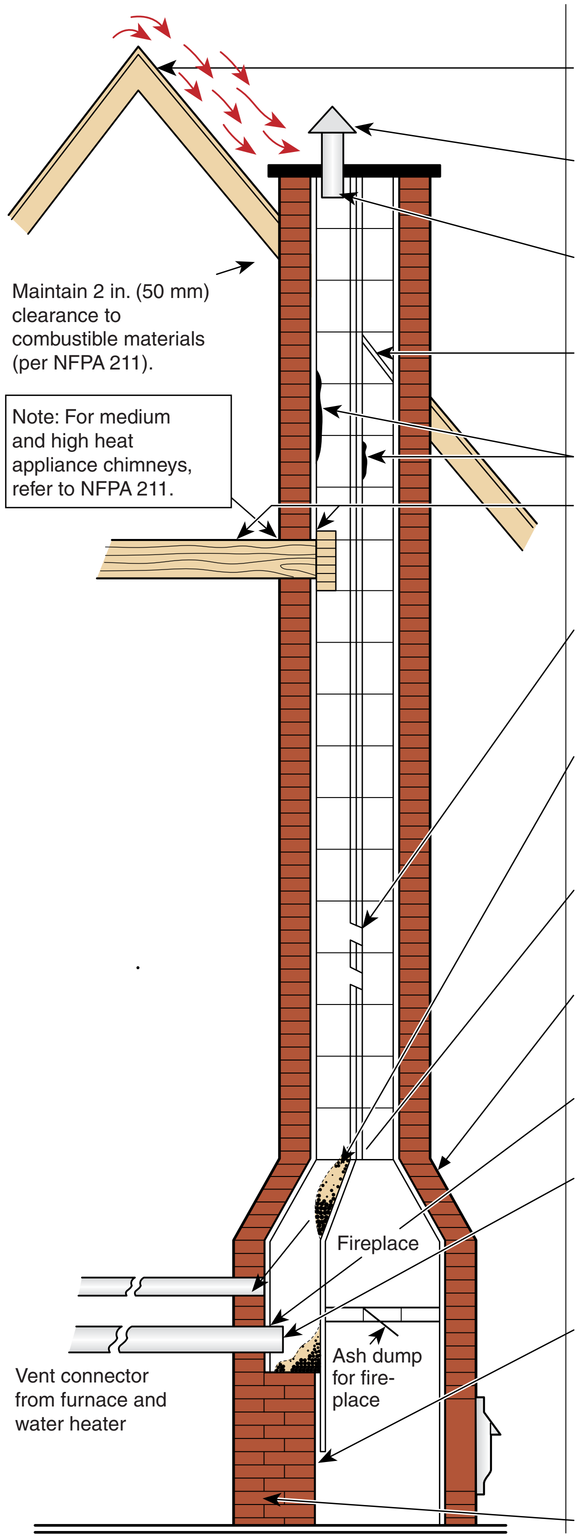
12.6.5.2 Where one chimney serves gas appliances and liquid fuel–burning appliances, the appliances connected through separate openings or connected through a single opening where joined by a suitable fitting located as close as practical to the chimney. Where two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue, they shall be at different levels. Where the gas appliance is automatically controlled, it shall be equipped with a safety shutoff device.

Connector inlets into the chimney at different levels, as required in 12.6.5.2, help prevent pressurization of one vent or chimney connector by the flue gases of the opposite appliance.

12.6.5.3* A listed combination gas- and solid fuel–burning appliance connected to a single chimney flue shall be equipped with a manual reset device to shut off gas to the main burner in the event of sustained backdraft or flue gas spillage. The chimney flue shall be sized to properly vent the appliance.

A.12.6.5.3 Reference can also be made to the chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook — HVAC Systems and Equipment.*

EXHIBIT 12.11



Trouble	Disclosed by
Top of chimney lower than surrounding objects	Observation
Undersized chimney cap or ventilator	Observation
Restricted opening	Measurement
Piece of broken tile wedged in chimney	Lowering a light or weight down chimney
Creosote buildup	Observation
Joist protruding into chimney	Lowering a light or weight down chimney
Leakage between loosely joined tiles	Start smoke fire with top of chimney closed; look for leakage from chimney
Debris accumulated in offset	Lowering a light or weight down chimney
Solid fuel-burning appliance connection	Observation
Offset	Lowering a light or weight down chimney
Loosely fitted smoke pipe	Smoke test
Smoke pipe extends into chimney	Lowering a light or weight down chimney
Chimney too short	Measurement
Opening between flues	Smoke test
Chimney too small	Measurement
Chimney too large	Measurement
No cleanout	Observation

Common Chimney Troubles.

12.6.5.4 A single chimney flue serving a listed combination gas- and oil-burning appliance shall be sized to properly vent the appliance.

12.6.6 Support of Chimneys. All portions of chimneys shall be supported for the design and weight of the materials employed. Listed factory-built chimneys shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

12.6.7 Cleanouts. Where a chimney that formerly carried flue products from liquid or solid fuel–burning appliances is used with an appliance using fuel gas, an accessible cleanout shall be provided. The cleanout shall have a tight-fitting cover and be installed so its upper edge is at least 6 in. (150 mm) below the lower edge of the lowest chimney inlet opening.

The accumulation of debris from an old chimney system can result in blockage of the venting system. A 6 in. (150 mm) drop leg and inspection/maintenance cleanout is required. The cleanout provides an area to collect a considerable amount of debris before a blockage occurs. The cleanout also enables homeowners and service personnel to clean debris easily and to inspect conditions.

12.6.8 Space Surrounding Lining or Vent.

FAQ Can a gas vent be installed in an unused, unlined masonry chimney?

The use of an abandoned masonry chimney as a chase for vents is a practical solution to an existing unlined, oversized, or failed chimney. When installing vents in a chimney space, the vent material manufacturer's installation requirements must be followed thoroughly. If required by the vent manufacturer, penetrating the masonry chimney to install supports might be necessary.

When using an abandoned chimney as a chase for multiple vents, care should be taken to ensure that the vent materials are compatible and that vent failure does not result inadvertently. Category I or Category III gas appliance vent gas temperatures can exceed 300°F (150°C). Contact between the high-temperature Category I or Category III vent material and the PVC vent pipe can cause the PVC pipe to degrade or soften to the extent of failure. With the chimney opening sealed around the vent pipes, the following two potential hazards are created:

1. The products of combustion, which can escape from the failed PVC pipe, will be trapped in the chimney. These gases could eventually leak back into the living space or corrode the other nearby vents.
2. Heat leakage from a vent will not be dissipated as quickly in a chase as in the open. This leakage results in increased temperature in the chase, which can cause failure of some plastic vent materials.

12.6.8.1 The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent, or plastic piping installed within a masonry chimney shall not be used to vent another appliance.

Exception: The insertion of another liner or vent within the chimney as provided in this code and the liner or vent manufacturer's instructions.

The intent of 12.6.8.1 is to prohibit the venting of an appliance into the original chimney flue (or cavity) around a chimney liner or gas vent serving another appliance. Problems may include an inadequate venting area in the masonry chimney cavity, the effects of flue gases and condensate on the exterior surface of the chimney liner or gas vent, and the likelihood of a top support plate for the chimney liner or gas vent blocking the top of the chimney.

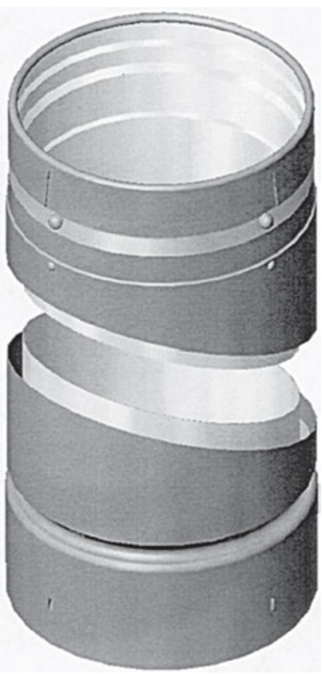
12.6.8.2 The remaining space surrounding a chimney liner, gas vent, special gas vent, or plastic piping installed within a masonry, metal, or factory-built chimney flue shall not be used to supply combustion air.

Exception: Direct vent appliances designed for installation in a solid fuel–burning fireplace where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Direct vent systems can be designed to obtain combustion air from inside the chimney. The code recognizes this engineered system and allows for this type of installation. In this limited situation, a chimney liner is installed within the original chimney to vent the flue gases from the direct-vent appliance, while the combustion air is drawn through the original cavity around the exhaust pipe. The exception only applies when this installation method is specifically described in the manufacturer's instructions.

12.7 Gas Vents

EXHIBIT 12.12



Construction of Double-Wall Type B Gas Vent. (Courtesy of Selkirk Corp.)

Section 12.7 applies to gas vents of all types. Not included are chimneys, which are covered in Section 12.6, and single-wall metal pipe, which is covered in Section 12.8. Note that the term *gas vent* is defined as follows:

> **3.3.106.2 Gas Vent.** A passageway composed of *listed* factory-built components assembled in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions for conveying vent gases from appliances or their vent connectors to the outdoors.

The term *listed* is italicized to emphasize that unlisted products are not gas vents and cannot be installed using Section 12.7.

A listed Type B or Type B-W gas vent is double-wall construction — basically a pipe within a pipe, with airspace between the two walls. This construction reduces the heat loss from the vent gases in much the same way that an insulated coffee mug works.

Usually, the inner wall is made of aluminum to resist flue gas corrosion, and the outer wall is made of galvanized steel for strength and environmental corrosion resistance. The parts of the vent system — pipe sections, supports, spacers, caps, and flashings — are furnished for field erection to form a continuous passageway from the gas appliance to the vent termination above the roof, including the cap or roof assembly. Several companies manufacture the vent pipe and other related parts needed to erect a complete vent. The piping and parts produced by the different manufacturers are not interchangeable without the use of special listed adapters.

Type B gas vents can be round or oval (see Exhibit 12.12 and 12.13). Type B-W gas vents are always oval because they are designed to be installed within a wall between two studs. Type L vents are similar in construction to Type B gas vents, except that the inner pipe of a Type L vent is stainless steel. Type L vents are intended for venting flue gases at higher temperatures than are normally produced by gas appliances. Some oil furnaces, for instance, are listed for use with Type L vents.

Typical Type B and Type B-W gas vent installations are shown in Exhibit 12.14 and Exhibit 12.15, respectively.

12.7.1 Installation. The installation of gas vents shall meet the following requirements:

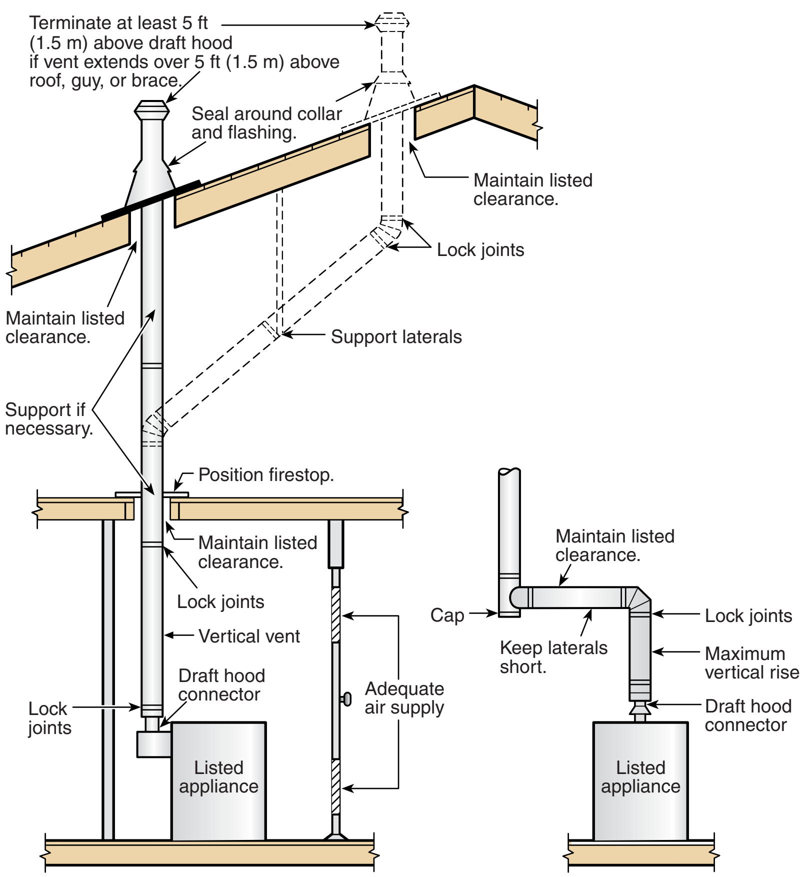
(1) Gas vents shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Paragraph 12.7.1(1) is a reminder that gas vents are a listed product and, as such, must be installed in compliance with the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer and in accordance with this code.

EXHIBIT 12.13

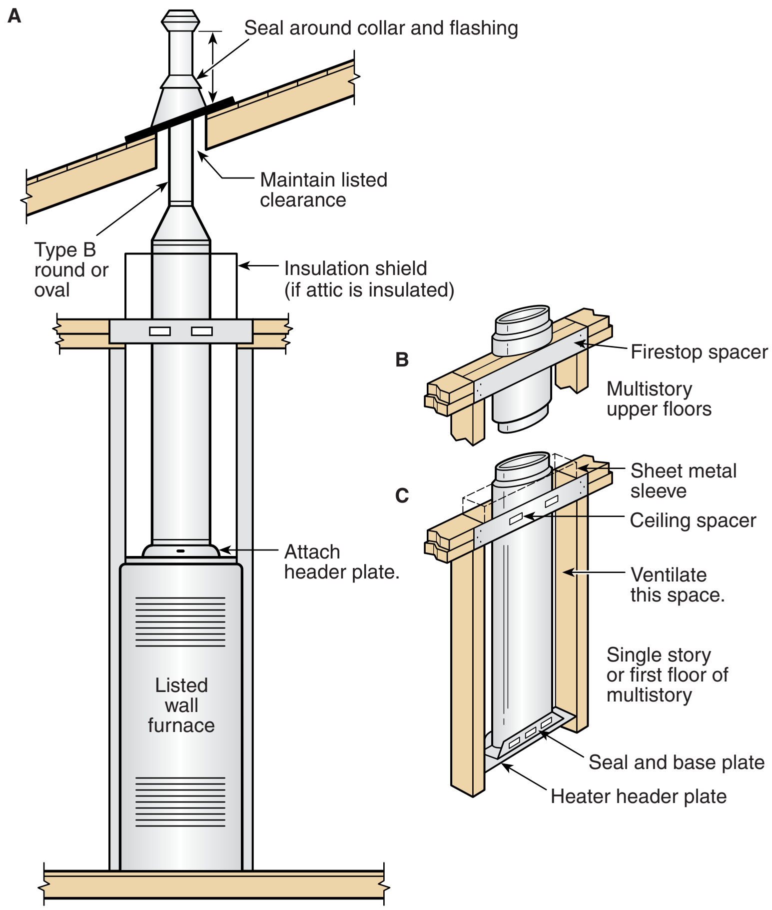
Type B and Type B-W Double-Wall Gas Vent Fittings. (Courtesy of Selkirk Corp.)

EXHIBIT 12.14



Typical Type B Gas Vent — Single Appliance Installation.

EXHIBIT 12.15



Typical Type B-W Gas Vent Installation.

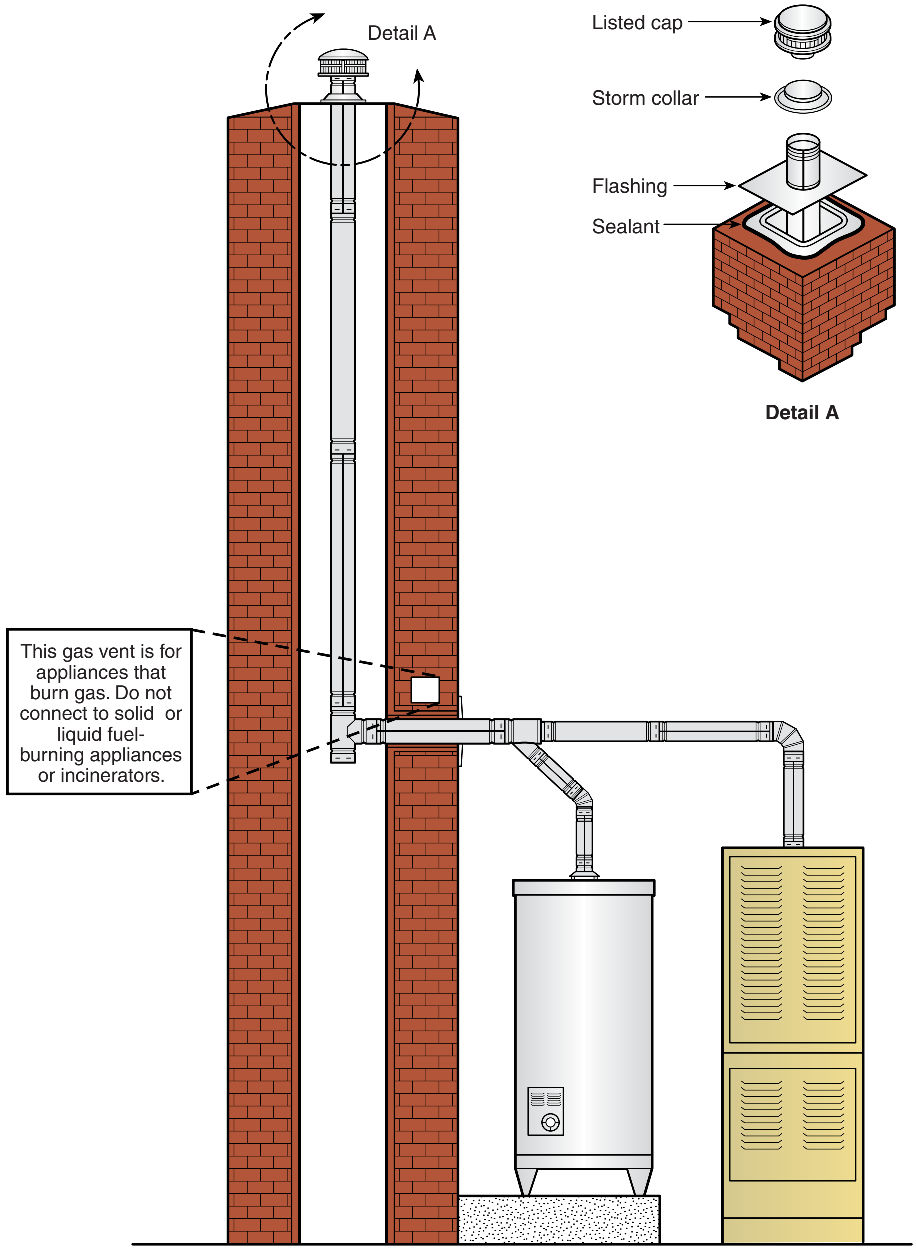
(2) A Type B-W gas vent shall have a listed capacity not less than that of the listed vented wall furnace to which it is connected.

The installation instructions for the Type B-W vent should provide the maximum capacity of the vent and will usually refer to the code.

(3) Gas vents installed within masonry chimneys shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Gas vents installed within masonry chimneys shall be identified with a permanent label installed at the point where the vent enters the chimney. The label shall contain the following language: "This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel–burning appliances or incinerators."

Masonry chimneys in which gas vents are installed must be identified with a permanent label, and the requirement provides the specific text to be used. Additional text can be added. Because a vent installed in a masonry chimney will probably not be visible, the label is intended to warn future installers not to connect wood-fired or oil-fired equipment to the gas vent. Exhibit 12.16 shows a Type B vent installed in a masonry chimney.

EXHIBIT 12.16



Typical Installation Using Type B Vent to Line a Chimney.

(4) Screws, rivets, and other fasteners shall not penetrate the inner wall of double-wall gas vents, except at the transition from the appliance draft hood outlet, flue collar, or single-wall metal connector to a double-wall vent.

Screws and other fasteners that penetrate the inner wall of double-wall gas vents can result in the following problems:

1. The screw or fastener can become corroded, which can leave a hole in the vent wall, allowing air to enter the vent. Air entering a vent can negatively affect vent performance.

2. The screw or fastener can cause turbulence in the vent, with reduced vent flow.
3. The screw or fastener can conduct heat out of the vent, resulting in a "hot spot" of elevated temperature that should be separated from combustible construction than that generally required for gas vents.

12.7.2 Gas Vent Termination. The termination of gas vents shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) A gas vent shall terminate in accordance with one of the following:
 (a) Gas vents that are 12 in. (300 mm) or less in size and located not less than 8 ft (2.4 m) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate above the roof in accordance with Figure 12.7.2 and Table 12.7.2.
 (b) Gas vents that are over 12 in. (300 mm) in size or are located less than 8 ft (2.4 m) from a vertical wall or similar obstruction shall terminate not less than 2 ft (0.6 m) above the highest point where they pass through the roof and not less than 2 ft (0.6 m) above any portion of a building within 10 ft (3.0 m) horizontally.
 (c) Industrial appliances as provided in 12.3.4.
 (d) Direct vent systems as provided in 12.3.5.
 (e) Appliances with integral vents as provided in 12.3.6.
 (f) Mechanical draft systems as provided in 12.4.3.
 (g) Ventilating hoods and exhaust systems as provided in 12.4.4.

Paragraphs 12.7.2(1)(c) through 12.7.2(1)(g) are alternatives to the normal vent termination described in 12.7.2(1)(a) and 12.7.2(1)(b). Paragraph 12.7.2(1)(c), which references 12.3.4, Well-Ventilated Spaces, is included here to clarify that vent termination may not apply to spaces in which industrial gas equipment is installed if the spaces are well-ventilated.

(2) A Type B or a Type L gas vent shall terminate at least 5 ft (1.5 m) in vertical height above the highest connected appliance draft hood or flue collar.
(3) A Type B-W gas vent shall terminate at least 12 ft (3.7 m) in vertical height above the bottom of the wall furnace.

Paragraphs 12.7.2(2) and 12.7.2(3) are intended to require minimum vent heights to achieve a level of draft that is adequate to remove flue gases safely to the outdoors. It is important to recognize that the addition of sheds and renovation involving roofs, such as the addition of a dormer, may result in an existing installation that is no longer in compliance with this requirement and that has the potential for improper venting and backdrafting.

(4) A gas vent extending through an exterior wall shall not terminate adjacent to the wall or below eaves or parapets, except as provided in 12.3.5 and 12.4.3.
(5) Decorative shrouds shall not be installed at the termination of gas vents except where such shrouds are listed for use with the specific gas venting system and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

For more information on decorative shrouds, see the commentary following 12.6.2.4.

(6) All gas vents shall extend through the roof flashing, roof jack, or roof thimble and terminate with a listed cap or listed roof assembly.

The use of a listed cap, as required in 12.7.2(6), helps ensure that animal nesting and debris will not obstruct the vent. Vent caps for Type B and Type B-W gas vents are designed and tested to serve the following four purposes:

1. Reduce the chance of downdraft caused by wind effect
2. Provide proper venting under wind conditions
3. Permit vent termination at a minimum height above the roof
4. Prevent rain and debris from entering the vent

Notice that a listed vent cap allows the vent termination to be closer to the nearby roofline, because the terminations are tested to operate properly using the clearances shown in Figure 12.7.2.

(7) A gas vent shall terminate at least 3 ft (0.9 m) above a forced air inlet located within 10 ft (3.0 m).

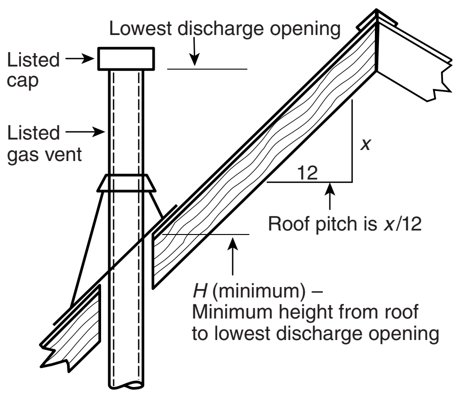


***FIGURE 12.7.2** Termination Locations for Gas Vents with Listed Caps 12 in. (300 mm) or Less in Size at Least 8 ft (2.4 m) from a Vertical Wall.*

***TABLE 12.7.2** Roof Slope Heights*

	H (minimum)	
Roof Slope	***ft***	***m***
Flat to 6/12	1.0	0.30
Over 6/12 to 7/12	1.25	0.38
Over 7/12 to 8/12	1.5	0.46
Over 8/12 to 9/12	2.0	0.61
Over 9/12 to 10/12	2.5	0.76
Over 10/12 to 11/12	3.25	0.99
Over 11/12 to 12/12	4.0	1.22
Over 12/12 to 14/12	5.0	1.52
Over 14/12 to 16/12	6.0	1.83
Over 16/12 to 18/12	7.0	2.13
Over 18/12 to 20/12	7.5	2.27
Over 20/12 to 21/12	8.0	2.44

12.7.3 Size of Gas Vents. Venting systems shall be sized and constructed in accordance with Chapter 13 or other approved engineering methods and the gas vent and the appliance manufacturers' instructions.

12.7.3.1* Category I Appliances. The sizing of natural draft venting systems serving one or more listed appliances equipped with a draft hood or appliances listed for use with a Type B gas vent, installed in a single story of a building, shall be in accordance with one of the following:

(1) The provisions of Chapter 13.
(2) Vents serving fan-assisted combustion system appliances, or combinations of fan-assisted combustion system and draft hood–equipped appliances, shall be sized in accordance with Chapter 13 or other approved engineering methods.
(3) For sizing an individual gas vent for a single, draft hood–equipped appliance, the effective area of the vent connector and the gas vent shall be not less than the area of the appliance draft hood outlet or greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area.
(4) For sizing a gas vent connected to two appliances with draft hoods, the effective area of the vent shall be not less than the area of the larger draft hood outlet plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller draft hood outlet or greater than seven times the smaller draft hood outlet area.
(5) Other approved engineering practices.

The tables in Chapter 13 provide a safe method for sizing vents for all Category I and draft hood–equipped appliances. The alternate methods permitted in 12.7.3.1 offer simple techniques for installers to follow for commonly encountered vent arrangements. These methods provide a maximum size of seven times the smallest draft hood outlet area and a minimum size based on the draft hood outlet area. This provision limits the maximum size of the vent connector and gas vent to minimize gas vent condensation caused by insufficient flow of hot vent gases to heat an excessively large gas vent. Excessive condensation can cause premature failure of a gas vent.

Note that these alternate methods cannot be used for fan-assisted combustion appliances. The tables in Chapter 13 (or other engineering methods) must be used for all installations of fan-assisted combustion appliances. Vents for Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances must be in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's instructions. These appliances are listed and the manufacturer's instructions reflect the test results determined by the listing laboratory.

FAQ Can the "rule of thumb" alternate sizing method be used to size systems for fan-assisted appliances?

Paragraphs 12.7.3.1(3) and 12.7.3.1(4) allow the use of an alternate method for sizing a venting system, rather than the tables in Chapter 13. This alternate method applies only to draft hood–equipped appliances. Paragraph 12.7.3.1(3) provides guidance for installations with one appliance, while 12.7.3.1(4) provides guidance for sizing installations with two appliances. Venting systems serving three or more appliances must use the vent sizing tables in Chapter 13 or other engineering methods. Refer to the commentary following 12.6.3.1, which allows a similar alternate method for chimneys.

A.12.7.3.1 Additional information on sizing venting systems can be found in the following:

(1) Tables in Chapter 13
(2) The appliance manufacturer's instructions
(3) The vent system manufacturer's sizing instructions
(4) Drawings, calculations, and specifications provided by the vent system manufacturer
(5) Drawings, calculations, and specifications provided by a competent person
(6) The chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook — HVAC Systems and Equipment*

Category I appliances can be either draft hood–equipped or a fan-assisted combustion system in design. Different vent design methods are required for draft hood–equipped and fan-assisted combustion system appliances.

12.7.3.2 Vent Offsets. Type B and Type L vents sized in accordance with 12.7.3.1(3) or 12.7.3.1(4) shall extend in a generally vertical direction with offsets not exceeding 45 degrees, except that a vent system having not more than one 60 degree offset shall be permitted. Any angle greater than 45 degrees from the vertical is considered horizontal. The total horizontal distance of a vent plus the horizontal vent connector serving draft hood–equipped appliances shall not be greater than 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent.

Paragraph 12.7.3.2 provides limitations on offsets for venting systems that are sized using the alternative sizing method (commonly referred to as the "rule of thumb" method) of 12.7.3.1.

In addition, any angle greater than 45 degrees (from vertical) is considered horizontal and the total horizontal distance is limited to 75 percent of the total vent height. Horizontal vent offsets reduce venting performance and should be avoided if possible. Where required, horizontal offsets should be kept as short as practical.

Note that the limitations in 12.7.3.2 apply only where the alternate method is used to size a gas vent. Where the tables in Chapter 13 or engineering methods are used to size the vent, 12.7.3.2 does not apply.

12.7.3.3 Category II, Category III, and Category IV Appliances. The sizing of gas vents for Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. The sizing of plastic pipe specified by the appliance manufacturer as a venting material for Category II, III, and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturers' instructions.

12.7.3.4 Sizing. Chimney venting systems using mechanical draft shall be sized in accordance with approved engineering methods.

12.7.4 Gas Vents Serving Appliances on More than One Floor.

12.7.4.1 A common vent shall be permitted in multistory installations to vent Category I appliances located on more than one floor level, provided the venting system is designed and installed in accordance with approved engineering methods. For the purpose of this section, crawl spaces, basements, and attics shall be considered floor levels.

Where appliances are installed on different levels utilizing the same vent, a vent blockage will cause combustion products to spill out of the draft hood of appliances installed below the blockage and possibly into the living space. The risk of this spillage applies to single-family multistory vents, which are subject to the same requirement as vents in larger multistory buildings.

12.7.4.2* All appliances connected to the common vent shall be located in rooms separated from occupiable space. Each of these rooms shall have provisions for an adequate supply of combustion, ventilation, and dilution air that is not supplied from occupiable space.

A.12.7.4.2 An example of practical separation of multistory gas venting is provided in Figure A.12.7.4.2.

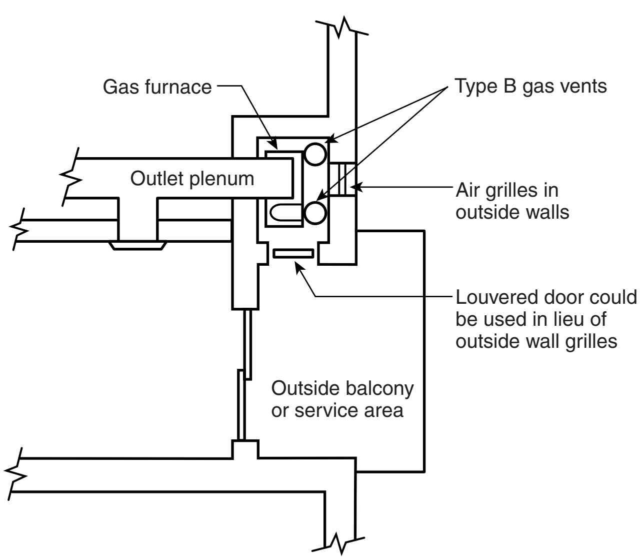


FIGURE A.12.7.4.2 *Plan View of Practical Separation Method for Multistory Gas Venting.*

FAQ Under what conditions is it safe to vent gas appliances on different levels of a building into the same venting system?

Safe venting can be achieved in multistory appliance installations by separating the appliance from any habitable or occupied space. The separation resolves the question of safety that arises when intercommunication of vents exists between various floors of a building. Separation ensures that, in the event of spillage, no vent gases will enter the occupied space from the appliance room if the common vent becomes obstructed at any level or if the outlet is blocked. When such stoppage occurs, all vent gases from appliances operating below the obstruction will exit through the upper draft hood relief opening rather than through the vent outlet. Large quantities of vent gases will be dumped into the space containing those appliances immediately below the obstruction. At the same time, the appliances located at lower levels will appear to be operating normally. Further information on sizing vents that serve appliances on more than one floor of a building can be found in 13.2.14 through 13.2.17 and Figure F.1(m) and Figure F.1(n).

One practical plan to separate or isolate appliances, if installation can be made adjacent to an outside wall, is shown in Figure A.12.7.4.2 and in Exhibit 12.17. Access to the appliance room is through a door that opens onto an outdoor balcony. A panel separates the appliance room from the inside of the building. If the appliance is a central furnace, the cold air return and outlet ducts are attached to the furnace.

No requirements are provided in the code for the installation of Category II, Category III, or Category IV appliances using a common vent in multistory buildings. A Category II, Category III, or Category IV appliance must be installed in accordance with the terms of its listing and the manufacturer's instructions. Category I appliance common vents are not usually suitable for venting Category II, Category III, or Category IV appliances.

See Chapter 13 and Annex F for more information.

12.7.4.3 The size of the connectors and common segments of multistory venting systems for appliances listed for use with a Type B double-wall gas vent shall be in accordance with Table 13.2(a), provided all of the following apply:

(1) The available total height *(H)* for each segment of a multistory venting system is the vertical distance between the level of the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar on that floor and the centerline of the next highest interconnection tee.
(2) The size of the connector for a segment is determined from the appliance's gas input rate and available connector rise and shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet or flue collar size.
(3) The size of the common vertical vent segment, and of the interconnection tee at the base of that segment, is based on the total appliance's gas input rate entering that segment and its available total height.

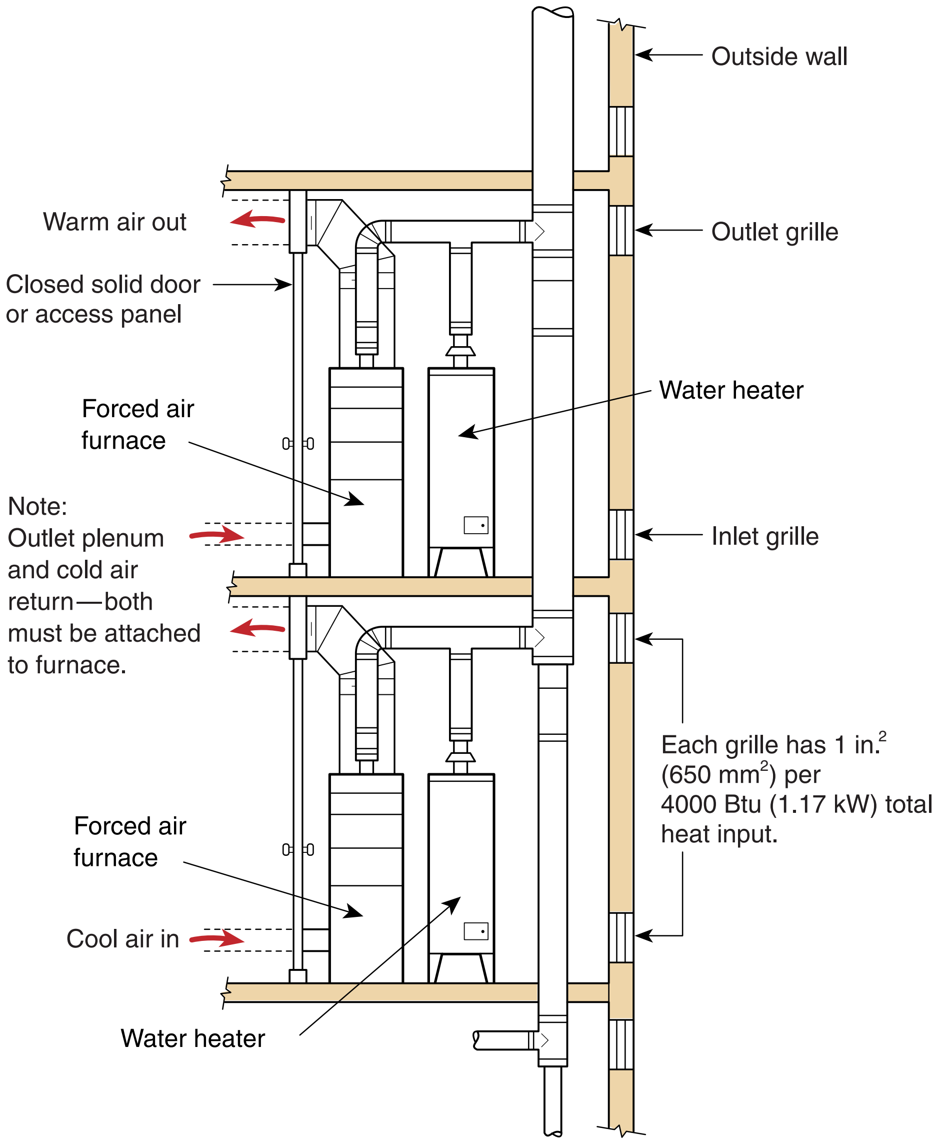
12.7.5 Support of Gas Vents. Gas vents shall be supported and spaced in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

12.7.6 Marking. In those localities where solid and liquid fuels are used extensively, gas vents shall be permanently identified by a label attached to the wall or ceiling at a point where the vent connector enters the gas vent. The label shall read: "This gas vent is for appliances that burn gas. Do not connect to solid or liquid fuel–burning appliances or incinerators." The authority having jurisdiction shall determine whether its area constitutes such a locality.

12.8 Single-Wall Metal Pipe

The use of single-wall metal pipe (e.g., stove pipe) as a vent for gas appliances is limited, and prohibited in dwellings, for the following reasons:

EXHIBIT 12.17



Outside Wall Air Supply in a Multistory Building.

1. The surface of the pipe is usually hot enough to burn a person who accidentally contacts the pipe.
2. The high surface temperature can cause overheating of adjacent combustible material.
3. The heat loss from a long length of pipe in a cool area can result in reduced draft and the condensation of water vapor in the flue gases, which can corrode the single-wall metal pipe.

The use of single-wall metal pipe to vent products of combustion is also limited to Category I appliances. Note that 12.8.4.1, NFPA 211, and some building codes do not permit single-wall metal chimneys and unlisted metal chimneys inside dwellings and residential occupancies.

Single-wall metal pipe is a venting material that has limitations, because it has an inherently higher heat loss than chimneys and gas vents.

12.8.1 Construction. Single-wall metal pipe shall be constructed of galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.0304 in. (0.7 mm) thick or of other approved, noncombustible, corrosion-resistant material.

12.8.2* Cold Climate. Uninsulated single-wall metal pipe shall not be used outdoors for venting appliances in regions where the 99 percent winter design temperature is below 32°F (0°C).

The outdoor use of single-wall metal pipe in cold climates is restricted to prevent premature corrosion of the vent. In cold climates, the low ambient temperature can cool vent gases to the point at which water vapor condenses in the vent and causes corrosion. In the United States, this prohibits single-wall metal pipe outdoors in most areas of the country. Only very warm climates, like the southern portions of California, Texas, and Florida, have winter design temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Where deterioration of single-wall metal pipe has proven to be a problem in those areas, its use should still be discouraged.

The 99 percent winter design temperature is the temperature that can be expected to be met or exceeded for 99 percent of the time during the winter heating season, which includes the months of December, January, and February. From another perspective, the actual temperature should not be below the design temperature more than 1 percent of the time during the heating season. Annex F contains a map indicating design temperatures for the United States, but a more accurate assessment can be found in the *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals.*

See Annex F for more information.

A.12.8.2 Data on winter design temperature can be found in Figure F.2.4 and the *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals*.

12.8.3 Termination. The termination of single-wall metal pipe shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Single-wall metal pipe shall terminate at least 5 ft (1.5 m) in vertical height above the highest connected appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar.
(2) Single-wall metal pipe shall extend at least 2 ft (0.6 m) above the highest point where it passes through a roof of a building and at least 2 ft (0.6 m) higher than any portion of a building within a horizontal distance of 10 ft (3 m).
(3) An approved cap or roof assembly shall be attached to the terminus of a single-wall metal pipe.

Paragraphs 12.8.3(1) through 12.8.3(3) provide the limitations under which single-wall metal pipe can be installed. The limitations are based on the fact that single-wall metal pipe can achieve a high temperature during appliance operation that easily can ignite combustible material with which it comes in contact. When this type of pipe passes through a combustible roof, protection of the roof is required, and a thimble is specified.

12.8.4 Installation with Appliances Permitted by 12.5.1.

12.8.4.1* Prohibited Use. Single-wall metal pipe shall not be used as a vent in dwellings and residential occupancies.

A.12.8.4.1 The prohibition only applies to a vent entirely constructed of single-wall metal pipe located in a residential occupancy. The prohibition does not apply to single-wall vent connectors used to connect an appliance to the vent as permitted in Section 12.11 and Chapter 13.

Single-wall metal pipe is prohibited in residential occupancies. The prohibition is due to the following issues:

- **High Surface Temperature.** Single-wall metal pipe is not insulated, and it becomes hot enough during appliance operation to cause burns to human skin.
- **Heat Loss.** Single-wall metal pipe has significantly greater heat loss than Type B vent and chimneys. Heat loss reduces vent capacity — larger vents are required, which results in condensation with subsequent corrosion of the pipe.
- **Installation Restrictions.** Single-wall metal pipe is restricted to one floor. If installed in taller buildings it would have to run up alongside the building, increasing heat loss.

12.8.4.2 Single-wall metal pipe shall be used only for runs directly from the space in which the appliance is located through the roof or exterior wall to the outer air. A pipe passing through a roof shall extend without interruption through the roof flashing, roof jacket, or roof thimble.

12.8.4.3 Single-wall metal pipe shall not originate in any unoccupied attic or concealed space and shall not pass through any attic, inside wall, concealed space, or floor.

12.8.4.4 Minimum clearances from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table 12.8.4.4. Reduced clearances from single-wall metal pipe to combustible material shall be as specified for vent connectors in Table 10.2.3.

***TABLE 12.8.4.4** Clearances for Connectors*

	Minimum Distance from Combustible Material			
Appliance	*Listed Type B Gas Vent Material*	*Listed Type L Vent Material*	*Single-Wall Metal Pipe*	*Factory-Built Chimney Sections*
Listed appliance with draft hoods and appliance listed for use with Type B gas vents	As listed	As listed	6 in.	As listed
Residential boilers and furnaces with listed gas conversion burner and with draft hood	6 in.	6 in.	9 in.	As listed
Residential appliances listed for use with Type L vents	Not permitted	As listed	9 in.	As listed
Listed gas-fired toilets	Not permitted	As listed	As listed	As listed
Unlisted residential appliances with draft hood	Not permitted	6 in.	9 in.	As listed
Residential and low-heat appliances other than those above	Not permitted	9 in.	18 in.	As listed
Medium-heat appliance	Not permitted	Not permitted	36 in.	As listed

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm.
Note: These clearances shall apply unless the installation instructions of a listed appliance or connector specify different clearances, in which case the listed clearances shall apply.

Note that paragraph 12.8.4.4 permits use of Table 10.2.3 to reduce the required clearance between the vent and combustible materials. Depending on the clearance reduction method selected, it may be possible to reduce the required clearance by up to 66 percent.

12.8.4.5 Where a single-wall metal pipe passes through a roof constructed of combustible material, a noncombustible, nonventilating thimble shall be used at the point of passage. The thimble shall extend at least 18 in. (460 mm) above and 6 in. (150 mm) below the roof with the annular space open at the bottom and closed only at the top. The thimble shall be sized in accordance with 12.8.4.6.

12.8.4.6 Single-wall metal pipe shall not pass through a combustible exterior wall unless guarded at the point of passage by a ventilated metal thimble not smaller than the following:

(1) For listed appliances with draft hoods and appliances listed for use with Type B gas vents, the thimble shall be a minimum of 4 in. (100 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe. Where there is a run of not less than 6 ft (1.8 m) of metal pipe in the opening between the draft hood outlet and the thimble, the thimble shall be a minimum of 2 in. (50 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
(2) For unlisted appliances having draft hoods, the thimble shall be a minimum of 6 in. (150 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.
(3) For residential and low-heat appliances, the thimble shall be a minimum of 12 in. (300 mm) larger in diameter than the metal pipe.

Exception: In lieu of thimble protection, all combustible material in the wall shall be removed a sufficient distance from the metal pipe to provide the specified clearance from such metal pipe to combustible material. Any material used to close up such opening shall be noncombustible.

12.8.5 Size of Single-Wall Metal Pipe. Single-wall metal piping shall comply with the following requirements:

(1)* A venting system of a single-wall metal pipe shall be sized in accordance with one of the following methods and the appliance manufacturer's instructions:
(a) For a draft hood–equipped appliance, in accordance with Chapter 13
(b) For a venting system for a single appliance with a draft hood, the areas of the connector and the pipe each shall not be less than the area of the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet, whichever is smaller. The vent area shall not be greater than seven times the draft hood outlet area.

FAQ Can the vent sizing tables in Chapter 13 be used to size a single-wall metal pipe venting system for a fan-assisted appliance?

The sizing tables in Chapter 13 for single-wall metal pipe, which are Table 13.1(e) and Table 13.2(e), may only be used to size single-wall pipe venting draft hood–equipped appliances. The single-wall venting tables do not include information on fan-assisted appliances. The use of single-wall metal pipe to vent fan-assisted appliances is not practical, due to the heat loss in the single-wall metal pipe, which will quickly lead to condensation and corrosion.

(c) Other approved engineering methods

Approved engineering methods can be used to size single-wall metal pipe used to vent gas appliances. If it is desired to vent fan-assisted appliances using single-wall metal pipe, an engineering method must be used because the tables in Chapter 13 cannot be used. The editor is not aware of commercially available software that can do these complex calculations. The VENT-II computer program, discussed in Supplement 1 to this handbook, can be used, but it may not be commercially available, and it requires training to provide useful results.

(2) Where a single-wall metal pipe is used and has a shape other than round, it shall have an equivalent effective area equal to the effective area of the round pipe for which it is substituted and the minimum internal dimension of the pipe shall be 2 in. (50 mm).

FAQ Does the area of a round pipe decrease when the pipe is formed into an oval shape?

When a round pipe is formed into an oval shape, the internal area of the pipe decreases. For a simple visual demonstration of this principle, fill a paper cup to the top with water, then squeeze the sides of the cup to form an oval shape. You will see the water spill out of the cup as soon as you begin to squeeze, because the area of the cup is reduced.

(3) The vent cap or a roof assembly shall have a venting capacity not less than that of the pipe to which it is attached.

A.12.8.5(1) Reference can also be made to the chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook — HVAC Systems and Equipment.*

12.8.6 Support of Single-Wall Metal Pipe. All portions of single-wall metal pipe shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed.

12.8.7 Marking. Single-wall metal pipe shall comply with the marking provisions of 12.7.6.

12.9* Through-the-Wall Vent Termination

Section 12.9 provides requirements for separation of the termination point of venting systems from the building openings for venting systems that terminate through the side of a building.

A.12.9 See Figure A.12.9.

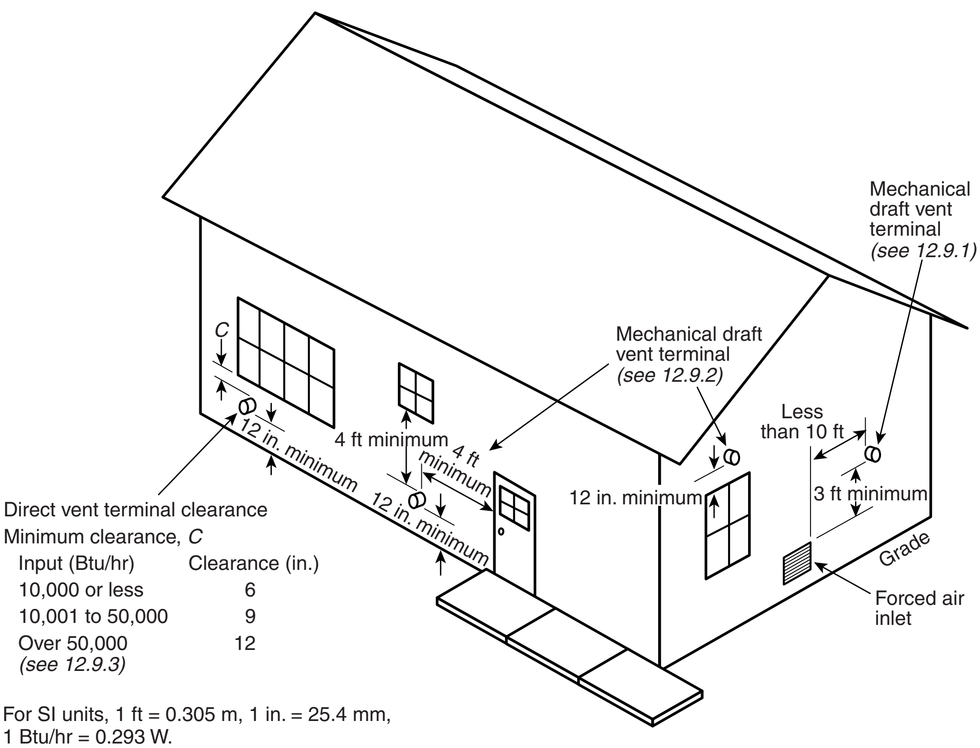


***FIGURE A.12.9** Exit Terminals of Mechanical Draft and Direct Vent Venting Systems.*

12.9.1 A mechanical draft venting system shall terminate at least 3 ft (0.9 m) above any forced air inlet located within 10 ft (3 m).

Exception No. 1: This provision shall not apply to the combustion air intake of a direct vent appliance.

Exception No. 2: This provision shall not apply to the separation of the integral outdoor air inlet and flue gas discharge of listed outdoor appliances.

Exception No. 2 to 12.9.1 prevents confusion in the installation of outdoor gas appliances. Some authorities have misinterpreted the code to prohibit such appliances or to require them to be modified in the field, which is not the intent of 12.9.1. An example of this type of appliance is a packaged rooftop air conditioner, which incorporates a gas vent and a circulation air inlet used for the building air supply.

12.9.2 A mechanical draft venting system of other than direct vent type shall terminate at least 4 ft (1.2 m) below, 4 ft (1.2 m) horizontally from, or 1 ft (300 mm) above any door, operable window, or gravity air inlet into any building. The bottom of the vent terminal shall be located at least 12 in. (300 mm) above finished ground level.

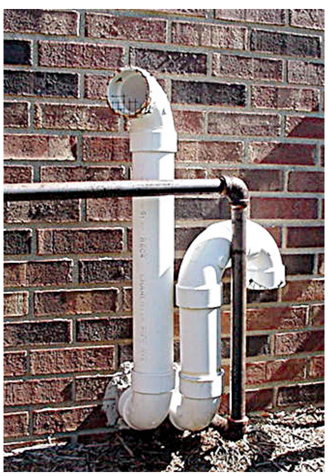
FAQ Do the separation requirements of 12.9.2 for exit terminals apply to windows that do not open?

Note that the requirement refers to operable windows so that it is clear that the distances in the requirement are not applicable to windows that cannot be opened.

Subsections 12.9.1 and 12.9.2 are concerned with preventing appliance combustion products from being drawn into a building through fresh air inlets, including operable windows.

12.9.3 The vent terminal of a direct vent appliance with an input of 10,000 Btu/hr (3 kW) or less shall be located at least 6 in. (150 mm) from any air opening into a building, an appliance with an input over 10,000 Btu/hr (3 kW) but not over 50,000 Btu/hr (14.7 kW) shall be installed with a 9 in. (230 mm) vent termination clearance, and an appliance with an input over 50,000 Btu/hr (14.7 kW) shall have at least a 12 in. (300 mm) vent termination clearance. The bottom of the vent terminal and the air intake shall be located at least 12 in. (300 mm) above finished ground level.

EXHIBIT 12.18



Outside Termination of Direct-Vent Pipe. (Courtesy of Magic Sweep Corporation)

FAQ Why are vent terminals for direct-vent appliances allowed to be closer to building openings than exit terminals for other types of appliances?

See Exhibit 12.18 for an example of correct vent termination placement. Vent gases from direct-vent appliances disperse rapidly upon leaving the vent terminal, even when the terminal is located under an open window. However, a window is unlikely to be open when heat is needed.

Subsection 12.9.3 also specifies the location of the exit terminal of direct-vent appliances. All these locations are shown in Figure A.12.9.

12.9.4 Through-the-wall vents for Category II and Category IV appliances and noncategorized condensing appliances shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard or could be detrimental to the operation of regulators, relief valves, or other equipment. Where local experience indicates that condensate is a problem with Category I and Category III appliances, this provision shall also apply. Drains for condensate shall be installed in accordance with the appliance and vent manufacturers' installation instructions.

Subsection 12.9.4 provides requirements for limiting vent termination installations to protect pedestrians and equipment, including gas meters or regulators. It places responsibility on the installer to locate vent terminations for Category II and Category IV appliances away from walkways and gas equipment. Category IV appliances are high efficiency, with low vent temperatures. (See the commentary following 12.5.1.) There are no Category II appliances.

12.9.5 Where vents, including those for direct-vent appliances or combustion air intake pipes, penetrate outside walls of buildings, the annular spaces around such penetrations shall be permanently sealed using approved materials to prevent entry of combustion products into the building.

It is very important that the space around sidewall vent pipes be sealed. Insects must be kept out, and paths for air to travel from the outside near the vent termination to the appliance must be prevented.

12.9.6 Vent systems for Category IV appliances that terminate through an outside wall of a building and discharge flue gases perpendicular to the adjacent wall shall be located not less than 10 ft (3 m) horizontally from an operable opening in an adjacent building.

Exception: This shall not apply to vent terminals that are 2 ft (0.6 m) or more above or 25 ft (7.6 m) or more below operable openings.

Category IV appliances are fan-assisted, and the flue gases can be discharged from the venting system with some velocity. To reduce the possibility that these flue gases could enter an adjacent building, a new requirement was added to the 2012 edition that specifies a minimum horizontal separation between the venting system and adjacent buildings.

12.10 Condensation Drain

12.10.1 Provision shall be made to collect and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category II and Category IV appliances and noncategorized condensing appliances in accordance with 12.9.4.

12.10.2 Where local experience indicates that condensation is a problem, provision shall be made to drain off and dispose of condensate from venting systems serving Category I and Category III appliances in accordance with 12.9.4.

The requirement in 12.10.2 is based on the fact that Category I and III appliances operate at relatively higher flue gas temperatures, and condensation is not generally expected.

12.11 Vent Connectors for Category I Appliances

Vent connectors for Category I appliances are relatively short runs of single-wall metal pipe, Type B vent, or other vent materials that are used to connect an appliance to a chimney or vent. When two or more appliances are connected to a chimney or vent, at least one connector is used. When one appliance is connected directly to a vent with no change in size or venting material, there is no vent connector.

The vent connector has an important effect on the overall operation of the venting system. Research sponsored by the Gas Research Institute (GRI) has proven that a vent primes better and has a stronger draft if there is a connector rise directly over the appliance. Retaining as much heat as possible in the flue gases as they pass through the connector is also very important.

12.11.1 Where Required. A vent connector shall be used to connect an appliance to a gas vent, chimney, or single-wall metal pipe, except where the gas vent, chimney, or single-wall metal pipe is directly connected to the appliance.

12.11.2 Materials.

12.11.2.1 A vent connector shall be made of noncombustible, corrosion-resistant material capable of withstanding the vent gas temperature produced by the appliance and of sufficient thickness to withstand physical damage.

12.11.2.2 Where the vent connector used for an appliance having a draft hood or a Category I appliance is located in or passes through an unconditioned area, attic, or crawl space, that portion of the vent connector shall be listed Type B, Type L, or listed vent material having equivalent insulation qualities.

Exception: Single-wall metal pipe located within the exterior walls of the building and located in an unconditioned area other than an attic or a crawl space having a local 99 percent winter design temperature of 5°F (–15°C) or higher.

Attics and other unconditioned areas of buildings, such as garages and some basements, may experience temperatures approaching those found outdoors. Type B, Type L, or other materials with equivalent insulation are needed to make sure excessive condensation does not occur inside the vent connector. Additionally, areas such as attics, basements, and garages are commonly used for storage. The requirements for connectors of this type provide protection against accidental ignition of combustible material carelessly placed near or on single-wall connectors.

12.11.2.3 Vent connectors for residential-type appliances shall comply with the following:

(1) Vent connectors for listed appliances having draft hoods, appliances having draft hoods and equipped with listed conversion burners, and Category I appliances that are not installed in attics, crawl spaces, or other unconditioned areas shall be one of the following:
   (a) Type B or Type L vent material
   (b) Galvanized sheet steel not less than 0.018 in. (0.46 mm) thick
   (c) Aluminum (1100 or 3003 alloy or equivalent) sheet not less than 0.027 in. (0.69 mm) thick
   (d) Stainless steel sheet not less than 0.012 in. (0.31 mm) thick
   (e) Smooth interior wall metal pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equal to or greater than that of 12.11.2.3(1)(b), (c), or (d)
   (f) A listed vent connector
(2) Vent connectors shall not be covered with insulation.

Exception: Listed insulated vent connectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

FAQ Why is it not acceptable to wrap connector pipes with insulation material?

Vent connectors must not be wrapped with insulating material to retain heat or reduce clearances. Connectors made of single-wall material must be fully visible for inspection and maintenance, and wrapping the connector with insulating material will prevent frequent inspection. Connectors may deteriorate without detection to the point that they collapse, allowing flue gases and heat to enter the building. Further, the application of the insulating material may accelerate the deterioration.

12.11.2.4 A vent connector for a nonresidential low-heat appliance shall be a factory-built chimney section or steel pipe having resistance to heat and corrosion equivalent to that for the appropriate galvanized pipe as specified in Table 12.11.2.4. Factory-built chimney sections shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturer's instructions.

TABLE 12.11.2.4 Minimum Thickness for Galvanized Steel Vent Connectors for Low-Heat Appliances

Diameter of Connector (in.)	Minimum Thickness (in.)
Less than 6	0.019
6 to less than 10	0.023
10 to 12 inclusive	0.029
14 to 16 inclusive	0.034
Over 16	0.056

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

TABLE 12.11.2.5 Minimum Thickness for Steel Vent Connectors for Medium-Heat Appliances

Vent Connector Size		Minimum Thickness (in.)
Diameter (in.)	Area (in.^{2})	
Up to 14	Up to 154	0.053
Over 14 to 16	154 to 201	0.067
Over 16 to 18	201 to 254	0.093
Over 18	Larger than 254	0.123

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

Refer to the commentary following 12.6.1.1 for more information on factory-built chimneys.

12.11.2.5 Vent connectors for medium-heat appliances shall be constructed of factory-built, medium-heat chimney sections or steel of a thickness not less than that specified in Table 12.11.2.5 and shall comply with the following:

(1) A steel vent connector for an appliance with a vent gas temperature in excess of 1000°F (538°C) measured at the entrance to the connector shall be lined with medium-duty fire brick or the equivalent.
(2) The lining shall be at least 2½ in. (64 mm) thick for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension of 18 in. (460 mm) or less.
(3) The lining shall be at least 4½ in. (110 mm) thick laid on the 4½ in. (110 mm) bed for a vent connector having a diameter or greatest cross-sectional dimension greater than 18 in. (460 mm).
(4) Factory-built chimney sections, if employed, shall be joined together in accordance with the chimney manufacturer's instructions.

A medium-heat appliance is intended for nonresidential use and operates with a flue gas temperature of up to 1800°F (982°C). These conditions are more severe than vents from low-temperature appliances, and the more stringent requirements for single-wall metal pipe are needed for a reasonable life for the single-wall metal pipe.

12.11.3* Size of Vent Connector.

A.12.11.3 Reference can also be made to the chapter on chimney, gas vent, and fireplace systems of the *ASHRAE Handbook — HVAC Systems and Equipment.*

Subsection 12.11.3 provides sizing requirements for vent connectors in Category I venting systems. When sizing connectors serving fan-assisted Category I appliances, the user will note that the selection of single-wall metal pipe connectors is limited. This limitation is not addressed in Chapter 12 but becomes evident when the tables in Chapter 13 are used to size the vent and connector. The limited selection is due to the lower vent-operating temperature of these appliances, which reduces the allowable heat loss in the connector compared to non-fan-assisted combustion appliances. Single-wall connectors are not permitted when sizing connectors attached to exterior masonry chimneys.

12.11.3.1 A vent connector for an appliance with a single draft hood or for a Category I fan-assisted combustion system appliance shall be sized and installed in accordance with Chapter 13 or other approved engineering methods.

12.11.3.2 For a single appliance having more than one draft hood outlet or flue collar, the manifold shall be constructed according to the instructions of the appliance manufacturer. Where there are no instructions, the manifold shall be designed and constructed in accordance with approved engineering practices. As an alternative method, the effective area of the manifold shall equal the combined area of the flue collars or draft hood outlets, and the vent connectors shall have a minimum 1 ft (0.3 m) rise.

In the absence of specific instructions, it is important to provide an adequate rise above the draft hoods. This rise is needed to ensure proper flue priming on start-up. The minimum 1 ft (0.3 m) connector rise required by 12.11.3.2 minimizes spillage. Connector rise is an important factor in venting system performance, and additional connector rise will almost always improve venting system performance.

12.11.3.3 Where two or more appliances are connected to a common vent or chimney, each vent connector shall be sized in accordance with Chapter 13 or other approved engineering methods.

12.11.3.4 As an alternative method applicable only where all of the appliances are draft hood–equipped, each vent connector shall have an effective area not less than the area of the draft hood outlet of the appliance to which it is connected.

As stated in 12.11.3.3, connectors serving multiple appliance installations must be sized using the venting tables of Chapter 13 or other approved engineering methods. However, 12.11.3.4 provides an alternate method for sizing connectors in multiple appliance installations serving only draft hood–equipped appliances by allowing each connector to be sized at least as large as the draft hood outlet.

12.11.3.5 Where two or more appliances are vented through a common vent connector or vent manifold, the common vent connector or vent manifold shall be located at the highest level consistent with available headroom and clearance to combustible material and sized in accordance with Chapter 13 or other approved engineering methods.

12.11.3.6 As an alternative method applicable only where there are two draft hood–equipped appliances, the effective area of the common vent connector or vent manifold and all junction fittings shall be not less than the area of the larger vent connector plus 50 percent of the area of the smaller flue collar outlet.

12.11.3.7 Where the size of a vent connector is increased to overcome installation limitations and obtain connector capacity equal to the appliance input, the size increase shall be made at the appliance draft hood outlet.

The need to increase the vent connector size is common when draft hood appliances with small outlets are common-vented with other appliances. For example, the sizing tables of Chapter 13 often require a 4 in. (100 mm) connector for residential water heaters equipped with 3 in. (80 mm) draft hoods.

12.11.4 Two or More Appliances Connected to a Single Vent.

12.11.4.1 Where two or more openings are provided into one chimney flue or vent, either of the following shall apply:

(1) The openings shall be at different levels.
(2) The connectors shall be attached to the vertical portion of the chimney or vent at an angle of 45 degrees or less relative to the vertical.

The concern is that, if two connectors are installed at the same level, the momentum of the vent gas from one could force some of the vent gases to enter the other appliance and spill out through a draft hood or flue collar.

12.11.4.2 Where two or more vent connectors enter a common vent, chimney flue, or single-wall metal pipe, the smaller connector shall enter at the highest level consistent with the available headroom or clearance to combustible material.

FAQ Is it acceptable to connect a Category I appliance to a venting system used for a Category III or a Category IV appliance?

Category I appliances operate with negative pressure in the connectors and vents, while Category III and Category IV appliances operate with positive pressure. Connecting Category I appliances to a vent system under positive pressure will likely cause flue gases to be forced out of the venting system and into the building.

12.11.4.3 Vent connectors serving Category I appliances shall not be connected to any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive static pressure, such as those serving Category III or Category IV appliances.

12.11.5 Clearance. Minimum clearances from vent connectors to combustible material shall be in accordance with Table 12.8.4.4.

Exception: The clearance between a vent connector and combustible material shall be permitted to be reduced where the combustible material is protected as specified for vent connectors in Table 10.2.3.

12.11.6 Joints. Joints between sections of connector piping and connections to flue collars or draft hood outlets shall be fastened in accordance with one of the following methods:

(1) Sheet metal screws
(2) Vent connectors of listed vent material assembled and connected to flue collars or draft hood outlets in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions
(3) Other approved means

12.11.7 Slope. A vent connector shall be installed without any dips or sags and shall slope upward toward the vent or chimney at least ¼ in./ft (20 mm/m).

Exception: Vent connectors attached to a mechanical draft system installed in accordance with appliance and the draft system manufacturers' instructions.

12.11.8* Length of Vent Connector.

A.12.11.8 A vent connector should be installed so as to avoid turns or other construction features that create excessive resistance to flow of vent gases. A vent connector should be as short as practical, and the appliance located as close as practical, to the chimney or vent.

12.11.8.1 The maximum horizontal length of a single-wall connector shall be 75 percent of the height of the chimney or vent, except for engineered systems.

Note that 13.2.2 limits the horizontal length of vent connectors for multiple-appliance installations.

12.11.8.2 The maximum horizontal length of a Type B double-wall connector shall be 100 percent of the height of the chimney or vent, except for engineered systems. The maximum length of an individual connector for a chimney or vent system serving multiple appliances, from the appliance outlet to the junction with the common vent or another connector, shall be 100 percent of the height of the chimney or vent.

12.11.9 Support. A vent connector shall be supported for the design and weight of the material employed to maintain clearances and prevent physical damage and separation of joints.

12.11.10 Chimney Connection. Where entering a flue in a masonry or metal chimney, the vent connector shall be installed above the extreme bottom to avoid stoppage. Where a thimble or slip joint is used to facilitate removal of the connector, the connector shall be firmly attached to or inserted into the thimble or slip joint to prevent the connector from falling out. Means shall be employed to prevent the connector from entering so far as to restrict the space between its end and the opposite wall of the chimney flue.

12.11.11 Inspection. The entire length of a vent connector shall be readily accessible for inspection, cleaning, and replacement.

The term *readily accessible,* which is defined in 3.3.1.1, means that there is direct access to the vent connector without the need to remove or move any panel, door, or similar covering. Frequent inspection of connectors is important, because connectors, especially single-wall connectors, can deteriorate.

12.11.12 Fireplaces. A vent connector shall not be connected to a chimney flue serving a fireplace unless the fireplace flue opening is permanently sealed.

12.11.13 Passage Through Ceilings, Floors, or Walls.

12.11.13.1 Single-wall metal pipe connectors shall not pass through any wall, floor, or ceiling except as permitted by 12.8.4.2 and 12.8.4.6.

12.11.13.2 Vent connectors for medium-heat appliances shall not pass through walls or partitions constructed of combustible material.

Note that the term *combustible material* is defined in the code as follows:

> **3.3.64.1 Combustible Material.** A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will ignite and burn; a material that does not meet the definition of noncombustible.

Note that wood and other fibrous materials are generally considered to be combustible materials, even if they are treated to be flameproof or are covered with plaster.

12.12 Vent Connectors for Category II, Category III, and Category IV Appliances

The vent connectors for Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances shall be in accordance with Section 12.5.

Table 12.5.1 requires that venting materials be furnished or specified by the equipment manufacturer for Category II, Category III, and Category IV gas appliances.

12.13 Draft Hoods and Draft Controls

FAQ What is the purpose of a draft hood on a gas appliance?

Draft hoods on vent systems perform the following three functions:

1. The negative pressure in the vent system created by the hot exhaust gases draws in dilution air at the draft hood opening. This dilution air is taken from the room in which the draft hood is located. This room air is much cooler than the exhaust gases, thereby lowering the net stack temperature and reducing fire hazards. Dilution air is also much drier than the exhaust gases, thereby lowering the dew point in the venting system and reducing any condensation.
2. The draft hood acts as a break between the vent system and the appliance and eliminates stack action. Appliance manufacturers design their equipment to operate with a specific range of airflow through the appliance. If there were no separation between the appliance and the vent system, excessive drafts created by tall chimneys would affect the combustion process and flame stability, possibly even resulting in pilot outage. Excessive drafts would also lower efficiency by moving the products of combustion through the heat exchanger before optimal heat transfer. Wind effects can also create temporary downdrafts.
3. A draft hood provides a relief opening in the event of a downdraft. Vent systems may temporarily experience poor venting at start-up (before the vent heats up) or during windy conditions. Under these conditions, some of the products of combustion may "spill out" at the draft hood. The principal products of combustion from a properly burning appliance, carbon dioxide and water vapor, should cause no immediate harm. Once draft is established (or re-established when the wind dies down), all the combustion products are vented safely up the vent. During a sustained downdraft, such as in a blockage, all the combustion products may spill into the living space and may eventually displace the oxygen in the room, potentially leading to incomplete combustion and the formation of carbon monoxide. New central heating appliances equipped with draft hoods must have safety switches, such as spill switches, which will shut off the burner in the event of a sustained downdraft.

Draft hoods are an integral part of the equipment design and should never be altered. The height of the draft hood above the flue collar will affect combustion and airflow through the appliance. If a draft hood were removed entirely, even a temporary downdraft would immediately affect the combustion process, potentially creating carbon monoxide.

Barometric draft regulators perform the same functions as a draft hood but are generally used in connection with power burners and conversion burners. Where power burners are used, the gas input, combustion air, flame pattern, and draft must be carefully set to match the equipment they serve.

Barometric draft regulators are usually adjustable so that the amount of draft can be set for maximum efficiency and safe burner operation. Barometric draft regulators, when used with gas appliances, are double-acting so that they will act as a relief opening in the event of a downdraft. Safety shutoff devices are required on all conversion burners installed after 1990.

12.13.1 Appliances Requiring Draft Hoods. Vented appliances shall be installed with draft hoods.

Exception: Dual oven-type combination ranges; direct vent appliances; fan-assisted combustion system appliances; appliances requiring chimney draft for operation; single-firebox boilers equipped with conversion burners with inputs greater than 400,000 Btu/hr (117 kW); appliances equipped with blast, power, or pressure burners that are not listed for use with draft hoods; and appliances designed for forced venting.

12.13.2 Installation. A draft hood supplied with or forming a part of a listed vented appliance shall be installed without alteration, exactly as furnished and specified by the appliance manufacturer.

12.13.2.1 If a draft hood is not supplied by the appliance manufacturer where one is required, a draft hood shall be installed, be of a listed or approved type, and, in the absence of other instructions, be of the same size as the appliance flue collar. Where a draft hood is required with a conversion burner, it shall be of a listed or approved type.

12.13.2.2 Where a draft hood of special design is needed or preferable, the installation shall be approved and in accordance with the recommendations of the appliance manufacturer.

12.13.3 Draft Control Devices. Where a draft control device is part of the appliance or is supplied by the appliance manufacturer, it shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In the absence of manufacturer's instructions, the device shall be attached to the flue collar of the appliance or as near to the appliance as practical.

12.13.4* Additional Devices. Appliances requiring controlled chimney draft shall be permitted to be equipped with listed double-acting barometric draft regulators installed and adjusted in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

EXHIBIT 12.19

Standard Single-Acting Barometric Draft Regulator. (Courtesy of Magic Sweep Corporation)

FAQ What is the difference between a single-acting barometric damper and a double-acting barometric damper?

A standard single-acting barometric draft regulator, such as the one shown in Exhibit 12.19, swings inward toward the chimney or vent to allow room air to enter the vent system. This regulator action reduces and stabilizes the draft through the appliance. Single-acting barometric draft regulators are used with oil-burning or solid fuel–burning appliances. When a gas appliance is equipped with a barometric draft regulator, it must be of the double-acting type. A double-acting barometric draft regulator, such as the one shown in Exhibit 12.20, swings inward like a single-acting type to allow dilution air to enter the vent, providing the beneficial effects of dilution air in reducing condensation and also reducing the effects of draft or "stack action" on the appliance. Unlike the single-acting type, a double-acting barometric draft regulator can also swing outward to relieve vent overpressurization in the event of a flue blockage or downdraft.

When installing a double-acting barometric draft regulator for a gas appliance, the installer needs to consider the location of the draft regulator in the connector. The draft regulator should be positioned in the connector so that overpressurization "downdrafts" are relieved through the regulator and do not enter the appliance. To accomplish this, the draft regulator should be placed in a bullhead tee, as shown in Figure A.12.13.4. In the three examples marked "correct" in part (a) of Figure A.12.13.4, chimney downdrafts would be relieved through the barometric damper instead of flowing into the appliance, because a turn is required from the connector pipe section containing the barometric damper before downdrafts can flow into the appliance.

EXHIBIT 12.20

Standard Double-Acting Barometric Draft Regulator. (Courtesy of Magic Sweep Corporation)

A.12.13.4 A device that automatically shuts off gas to the burner in the event of sustained backdraft is recommended if such backdraft might adversely affect burner operation or if flue gas spillage might introduce a hazard. Figure A.12.13.4 shows examples of correct and incorrect locations for barometric draft regulators.

12.13.5 Location. Draft hoods and barometric draft regulators shall be installed in the same room or enclosure as the appliance in such a manner as to prevent any difference in pressure between the hood or regulator and the combustion air supply.

12.13.6 Positioning. Draft hoods and draft regulators shall be installed in the position for which they were designed with reference to the horizontal and vertical planes and shall be located so that the relief opening is not obstructed by any part of the appliance or adjacent construction. The appliance and its draft hood shall be located so that the relief opening is accessible for checking vent operation.

12.13.7 Clearance. A draft hood shall be located so that its relief opening is not less than 6 in. (150 mm) from any surface except that of the appliance it serves and the venting system

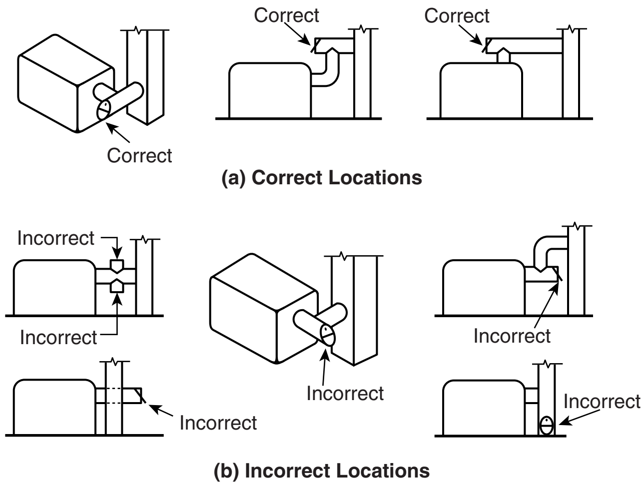


FIGURE A.12.13.4 Locations for Barometric Draft Regulators.

to which the draft hood is connected. Where a greater or lesser clearance is indicated on the appliance label, the clearance shall not be less than that specified on the label. Such clearances shall not be reduced.

12.14 Manually Operated Dampers

A manually operated damper shall not be placed in any appliance vent connector. Fixed baffles shall not be classified as manually operated dampers.

Manually operated dampers are those requiring user intervention and are not operated automatically by the appliance. They are prohibited because they could be inadvertently placed in the closed position, causing flue gas spillage into the building.

12.15 Automatically Operated Vent Dampers

An automatically operated vent damper shall be of a listed type.

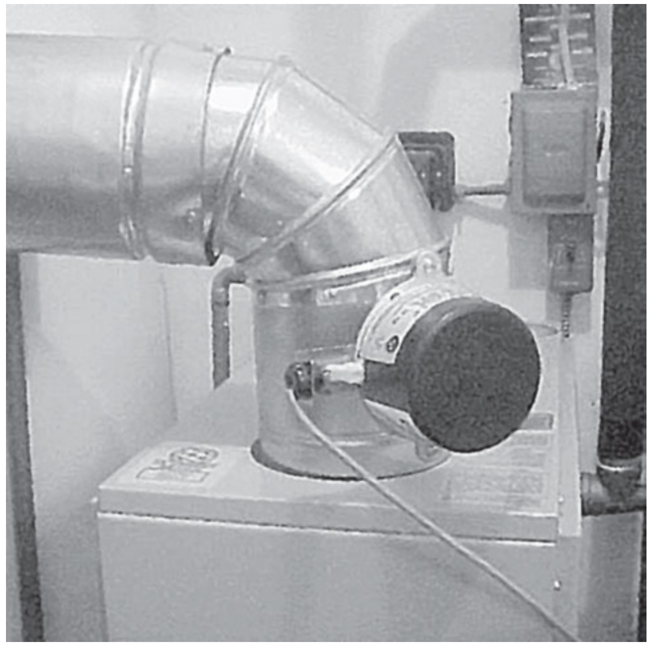
Preferably, automatically operated vent dampers, such as the one shown in Exhibit 12.21, should be included as part of the listed gas appliance. Manually operated dampers are not permitted in vent connectors, and the requirement clarifies that fixed baffles, which are sometimes used to balance system draft on start-up, are allowed.

12.16 Obstructions

Devices that retard the flow of vent gases shall not be installed in a vent connector, chimney, or vent. The following shall not be considered as obstructions:

(1) Draft regulators and safety controls specifically listed for installation in venting systems and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions
(2) Approved draft regulators and safety controls designed and installed in accordance with approved engineering methods

EXHIBIT 12.21



Automatically Operated Vent Damper. (Courtesy of Magic Sweep Corporation)

(3) Listed heat reclaimers and automatically operated vent dampers installed in accordance with the manufacturers' installation instructions
(4) Vent dampers serving listed appliances installed in accordance with 13.1.1 or 13.2.1 or other approved engineering methods

Paragraphs 13.1.1 and 13.2.1 provide sizing information for vent systems that serve appliances equipped with vent dampers. Special sizing requirements are needed because vent dampers reduce the amount of heat delivered to the venting system during the appliance off-cycle and increase the likelihood of condensation in the vent.

(5) Approved economizers, heat reclaimers, and recuperators installed in venting systems of appliances not required to be equipped with draft hoods, provided the appliance manufacturer's instructions cover the installation of such a device in the venting system and performance in accordance with Section 12.1 and 12.4.1 is obtained

Obstructions are not desired in a venting system, because they reduce gas flow and the removal of products of combustion from the building. Five specific types of obstructions are allowed: listed heat reclaimers in 12.16(3); vent dampers in 12.16(4); and economizers, heat reclaimers, and recuperators in 12.16(5) in recognition of the fact that they can be used safely when properly designed and installed. Of the five types, only vent dampers are normally used in residential and commercial venting systems. Note that the use of vent dampers is limited to installations with listed appliances that comply with 13.1.1, Obstructions and Vent Dampers, and 13.1.2, Vent Downsizing, so that these important components are accommodated where needed. The other four obstructions are normally used with industrial appliances for energy conservation.

References Cited in Commentary

The following publications are available from the National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471, (800) 344-3555, www.nfpa.org.

NFPA 82, *Standard on Incinerators and Waste and Linen Handling Systems and Equipment,* 2014 edition.

NFPA 91, *Standard for Exhaust Systems for Air Conveying of Vapors, Gases, Mists, and Noncombustible Particulate Solids*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*, 2014 edition.

NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*, 2013 edition.

The following publication is available from the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc., 1791 Tullie Circle, NE, Atlanta, GA 30329-2305, (404) 636-8400, www.ashrae.org.

ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, 2013.

The following publications are available from Underwriters Laboratories Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096, (847) 272-8800, www.ul.com.

ANSI/UL 103, *Factory-Built Chimneys for Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances*, 2010.

ANSI/UL 1738, *Venting Systems for Gas Burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV*, 2010.

Sizing of Category I Venting Systems

13

Chapter 13 contains tables and explanatory text for calculating the required vent size for a variety of Category I venting systems. Category I appliances can be natural draft appliances, denoted by NAT, or fan-assisted appliances, denoted by FAN. The tables incorporate the FAN Min and FAN Max columns to provide minimum and maximum capacities for each vent connector serving fan-assisted combustion appliances.

Venting systems serving Category I appliances are conventional venting systems in which the heat of the flue gases is the force that operates the vent. Chapter 13 includes the following:

- Vent tables for single-appliance installations
- Additional requirements for a single-appliance vent
- Vent tables for multiple-appliance venting installations
- Tables covering exterior masonry chimneys
- Additional requirements for a multiple-appliance vent

The tables are divided into two main categories:

1. Venting for a single appliance (Table 13.1)
2. Venting for two or more appliances (Table 13.2)

The following Commentary Tables 13.1 and 13.2 further specify which tables are to be used, depending on which vent system and connectors are specified for the installation.

The multiple-appliance tables are further divided into two sections:

1. Vent connector capacity (upper portion of the table)
2. Common vent capacity (bottom portion of the table)

The common vent tables on the bottom portion of the table are used to size the common vent section. There are three options available: FAN + FAN, FAN + NAT, and NAT + NAT. These terms are used in the tables as follows:

- *FAN + FAN* columns provide maximum capacities for each connector and vent serving multiple fan-assisted appliances.
- *FAN + NAT* columns provide maximum capacities for each connector and vent serving combinations of natural draft and fan-assisted appliances.
- *NAT + NAT* columns provide maximum capacities for each connector and vent serving multiple natural draft appliances.

COMMENTARY TABLE 13.1 *Vent Tables for Single-Appliance Installations*

Code Table No. 2002 Edition	*Code Table No. 2015 Edition*	*Vent*	*Connector*
13.1	13.1(a)	Type B	None
13.2	13.1(b)	Type B	Single wall
13.3	13.1(c)	Masonry chimney	Type B
13.4	13.1(d)	Masonry chimney	Single wall
13.5	13.1(e)	Single-wall metal pipe	None
13.11	13.1(f)	Exterior masonry chimney	Type B

COMMENTARY TABLE 13.2 *Vent Tables for Multiple-Appliance Vent Installations*

Code Table No. 2002 Edition	Code Table No. 2012 Edition	Vent	Connector
13.6	13.2(a)	Type B	Type B
13.7	13.2(b)	Type B	Single wall
13.8	13.2(c)	Masonry chimney	Type B
13.9	13.2(d)	Masonry chimney	Single wall
13.10	13.2(e)	Single wall	Single wall
13.12(a)	13.2(f)	Exterior masonry chimney Maximum allowed input	Type B
13.12(b)	13.2(g)	Exterior masonry chimney Minimum allowed input	Type B
13.13(a)	13.2(h)	Exterior masonry chimney Maximum allowed input	Type B
13.13(b)	13.2(i)	Exterior masonry chimney Minimum allowed input	Type B

See Supplement 1 for more information.

Further information on the development of these tables is included in Supplement 1 of this handbook. This supplement covers the development of the revised vent tables and the new exterior chimney tables in extensive technical detail and is recommended for those who desire a greater understanding of this important subject.

FAQ Why is no "minimum" capacity listed for a draft hood appliance?

There are no minimum capacities shown for draft hood appliances because the dilution air drawn in by these appliances provides a margin of safety for minimizing condensation.

To use the tables follow these steps:

1. Determine the number of appliances using the vent system.
2. Determine the appropriate venting type for the installation.
3. Determine the connector to be used.
4. Determine the height of the vent system.
5. Determine the height (R) or lateral (L) of the connector.
6. Determine the input rating of the appliance.
7. Find the appropriate connector or vent size by input rating.

13.1 Additional Requirements to Single Appliance Vent

Table 13.1(a) through Table 13.1(f) of the code were based on the assumption that there are no restrictions in the path of the vent gas flow. An additional assumption is that there is no deliberate attempt to remove heat. Therefore, devices such as heat economizers may not be used in conjunction with the tables. (If an economizer or other heat recovery device is installed, the vent size must be determined using another method.) Vent dampers installed as part of a listed appliance are to be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions or the general provisions in 13.1.1.

Subsection 13.1.1 treats listed appliances with vent dampers as natural draft (NAT) appliances for determining the maximum capacity of the vent system. Because of the reduction of dilution air caused by the damper, the appliance is treated as a fan-assisted (FAN) appliance to determine the minimum capacity of the vent system.

Many of the simplified visual renditions of code requirements shown in the exhibits in this chapter have been provided courtesy of the Gas Research Institute (GRI).

13.1.1 Obstructions and Vent Dampers. Venting Table 13.1(a) through Table 13.1(f) shall not be used where obstructions are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions or in accordance with the following:

(1) The maximum capacity of the vent system shall be determined using the "NAT Max" column.
(2) The minimum capacity shall be determined as though the appliance were a fan-assisted appliance, using the "FAN Min" column to determine the minimum capacity of the vent system. Where the corresponding "Fan Min" is "NA," the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

FAQ Does the installation of a vent damper affect the sizing of the venting system?

Paragraphs 13.1.1(1) and 13.1.1(2) provide guidance for using the venting tables with draft hood appliances that are equipped with a vent damper. An example of such an appliance is a boiler that uses a vent damper to obtain higher efficiencies. The maximum capacity of the vent is found using the NAT Max column in these tables, as stated in 13.1.1(1). This column treats the vent as one serving a natural draft appliance when the appliance is operating. The minimum capacity of the vent is found using the FAN Min column, as stated in 13.1.1(2). This column treats the vent as one serving a fan-assisted (increased efficiency) appliance when the appliance is not operating. The reason for this unusual combination is that the appliance operates as a natural draft appliance, but when the appliance is not operating and the vent damper is closed, it is similar to a fan-assisted (energy-saving) appliance in its propensity to condense water.

Draft hood–equipped appliances allow residual heat retained in the appliance along with air from the room to enter the venting system during the appliance "off cycle." This warm air rising into the venting system helps keep the vent warm and helps reduce condensation. When the appliance is equipped with a vent damper, the residual heat in the appliance is not allowed to rise into the venting system during the off cycle. If the vent damper is located between the draft hood and venting system (which is usually the case), room air is also prevented from entering the venting system while the appliance is off.

13.1.2 Vent Downsizing. Where the vent size determined from the tables is smaller than the appliance draft hood outlet or flue collar, the use of the smaller size shall be permitted, provided that the installation complies with all of the following requirements:

(1) The total vent height *(H)* is at least 10 ft (3 m).
(2) Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars 12 in. (300 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced more than one table size.
(3) Vents for appliance draft hood outlets or flue collars larger than 12 in. (300 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes.
(4) The maximum capacity listed in the tables for a fan-assisted appliance is reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum table capacity).
(5) The draft hood outlet is greater than 4 in. (100 mm) in diameter. A 3 in. (80 mm) diameter vent shall not be connected to a 4 in. (100 mm) diameter draft hood outlet. This provision shall not apply to fan-assisted appliances.

FAQ Is it permissible to use a vent smaller than the flue collar or draft hood outlet of the appliance?

There is an economic incentive to using smaller vents wherever possible. If the vent is smaller than the draft hood or flue collar, venting problems can occur. The restrictions in 13.1.2 recognize and avoid these venting problems. Limits are placed on downsizing. In particular, note that a 4 in. (100 mm) draft hood outlet may not be reduced to 3 in. (80 mm).

13.1.3 Elbows. Single-appliance venting configurations with zero (0) lateral lengths in Table 13.1(a), Table 13.1(b), and Table 13.1(e) shall not have elbows in the venting system. Single-appliance venting with lateral lengths include two 90 degree elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees, the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each additional elbow greater than 45 degrees up to and including 90 degrees, the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent. Where multiple offsets occur in a vent, the total lateral length of all offsets combined shall not exceed that specified in Table 13.1(a) through Table 13.1(e).

The sizing tables were designed based on the assumption that up to two 90-degree turns were part of the venting system, except in the zero lateral length case, which is addressed in 13.1.3. In the zero lateral length case, the vent is assumed to extend straight up from the appliance outlet to the vent termination. Adding additional elbows to the system is possible.

Derating factors for additional elbows are shown in Commentary Table 13.3. The derating factors, which are based on input from the Gas Technology Institute's contractor, Battelle, provides flexibility to installers who are forced to use vent offsets, and encourages the use of elbows of less than 90 degrees.

COMMENTARY TABLE 13.3 *Table Capacity Derating for Elbows of Less Than 90 Degrees*

Elbow (degrees)	***Vent Table Capacity Reduction per Elbow (%)***
0–45	5
>45–90	10

When sizing a vent system with elbows, please note the following important factors:

- The tables include two 90-degree elbows. The table values should not be derated for venting systems with one or two elbows.
- For each additional elbow over two, derate the table values by 5 percent or 10 percent, depending on the angle of the elbows.

13.1.4 Zero Lateral. Zero (0) lateral (*L*) shall apply only to a straight vertical vent attached to a top outlet draft hood or flue collar.

Subsection 13.1.4 does not permit the use of elbows in a venting system where the zero lateral is used. If elbows are needed, the table rows for 2 ft (0.6 m) lateral length must be used. Elbows in a vent system with zero offset are not common but may be needed to route the vent to avoid a building obstruction, such as a beam.

13.1.5 High-Altitude Installations. Sea level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation.

Using the sea level input rating for the maximum capacity is a conservative measure, because less draft is produced at high altitudes. The derating process will also make condensation more likely. The reduced input rate should be used for the minimum capacity.

13.1.6 Two-Stage/Modulating Appliances. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent capacity (FAN Min) determined from the Chapter 13 tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent capacity (FAN Max/NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance rating input.

If the appliance has multiple input rates, the minimum capacity is determined with the minimum input rate, and the maximum capacity is determined with the maximum input rate.

13.1.7* Corrugated Chimney Liners. Listed corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Table 13.1(a) or Table 13.1(b) for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table 13.1(a) or Table 13.1(b). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with 13.1.3. The 20 percent reduction for corrugated metallic chimney liner systems includes an allowance for one long radius 90 degree turn at the bottom of the liner.

A.13.1.7 A long radius turn is a turn where the centerline radius is equal to or greater than 1.5 times the vent diameter.

FAQ Does a corrugated chimney liner have the same capacity as a similar sized smooth wall liner or vent?

Because properly installed corrugated chimney liners have heat loss similar to that of a Type B vent, they are sized using Table 13.1(a) or Table 13.1(b). However, corrugations of such liners and their tendency to spiral in the chimney require a 20 percent reduction in the maximum capacity.

FAQ Does the turn or bend at the bottom of a flexible chimney liner count as an elbow?

Many liners begin at the opening in the chimney wall, then bend up vertically. This 90-degree elbow at the beginning of the liner is included in the table capacity. The code clearly states that the 20 percent reduction includes one 90-degree elbow, which is formed when the liner is bent to exit the chimney at the bottom. This capacity reduction was developed with the assistance of the researchers who developed the tables. Additional information about the development of the tables can be found in Supplement 1.

See Supplement 1 for more information.

13.1.8 Connection to Chimney Liners. Connections between chimney liners and listed double-wall connectors shall be made with listed adapters designed for such purpose.

13.1.9 Vertical Vent Upsizing/7 × Rule. Where the vertical vent has a larger diameter than the vent connector, the vertical vent diameter shall be used to determine the minimum vent capacity, and the connector diameter shall be used to determine the maximum vent capacity. The flow area of the vertical vent shall not exceed seven times the flow area of the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

FAQ Can the venting system be larger than the appliance flue collar or draft hood outlet?

In a vent system with a larger vent than the vent connector, the draft produced is limited by the small diameter of the vent connector. Condensation will begin in the larger diameter vent or connector. The maximum and minimum capacities must be determined accordingly. Practical limits exist as to how large the vertical vent may be relative to its source of vent gas flow. Therefore, the flow area of the vent may not be more than seven times the flow area of the outlet of the appliance or draft hood.

13.1.10 Draft Hood Conversion Accessories. Draft hood conversion accessories for use with masonry chimneys venting listed Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the listed accessory manufacturers' installation instructions.

Draft hood conversion accessories are add-on kits that convert a fan-assisted appliance to a draft hood appliance by providing an opening for dilution air from the room to enter the venting system. A draft hood conversion accessory is a listed component that is usually provided by the appliance manufacturer. The accessory must be installed according to the instructions included with the kit. The addition of the draft hood kit allows the appliance to be sized as a draft hood appliance, which may be beneficial when venting into masonry chimneys, especially exterior masonry chimneys.

13.1.11 Chimneys and Vent Locations. Table 13.1(a) through Table 13.1(e) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 ft (1.5 m) higher than required by Table 12.7.2, and where vents terminate in accordance with 12.7.2(1)(b), the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this paragraph for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors, or such venting system shall be engineered. A Type B vent passing through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8 shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Table 13.1(c) in combination with Table 13.1(f) shall be used for clay tile–lined exterior masonry chimneys, provided all of the following requirements are met:

(1) The vent connector is Type B double wall.
(2) The vent connector length is limited to 18 in./in. (18 mm/mm) of vent connector diameter.
(3) The appliance is draft hood equipped.
(4) The input rating is less than the maximum capacity given in Table 13.1(c).
(5) For a water heater, the outdoor design temperature shall not be less than 5°F (–15°C).
(6) For a space-heating appliance, the input rating is greater than the minimum capacity given by Table 13.1(f).

Subsection 13.1.11 provides guidance for using exterior masonry chimneys for heating appliances. Restrictions are needed because of the high heat loss in chimneys exposed to the outdoors below the roofline in cold climates. Note that these restrictions do not apply to chimneys and vents that are not exposed to the outdoors below the roofline, because these chimneys and vents are considered to be interior chimneys.

The following items are required when sizing exterior masonry chimneys:

- To size chimneys and vents serving only water heaters, the outdoor design temperature must be greater than 5°F (–15°C). See Figure F.2.4 in Annex F for a map of the United States showing the temperature zones. In colder areas, either the chimney must be lined with a metal liner or another vent must be used.

- To size chimneys and vents serving space-heating appliances or all appliances providing heat to the building, Table 13.1(f) (for the minimum vent capacity) and Table 13.2(h) (for the maximum vent capacity) should be used.

Note that only Type B double-wall vent connectors are allowed to be used with exterior masonry chimneys. This is to minimize heat loss in the vent connector.

Water heaters are treated differently from heating appliances because their total operating hours are not sufficient to keep a chimney warm in cold periods, resulting in condensation of water in the chimney or vent.

13.1.12 Corrugated Vent Connector Size. Corrugated vent connectors shall not be smaller than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter.

The requirement in 13.1.12 assists in sizing corrugated vent connectors. Note that the term *appliance categorized vent diameter/area* is defined in 3.3.6 as follows:

> **3.3.6 Appliance Categorized Vent Diameter/Area.** The minimum vent diameter/area permissible for Category I appliances to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

There is no capacity reduction required when using corrugated connectors as there is when using corrugated chimney liners.

13.1.13 Upsizing. Vent connectors shall not be upsized more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter.

Upsizing, which is a sudden large expansion of the vent connector diameter, creates a pressure drop that may limit the draft and encourage condensation. Therefore, a limit is placed on upsizing.

13.1.14 Multiple Vertical Vent Sizes. In a single run of vent or vent connector, more than one diameter and type shall be permitted to be used, provided that all the sizes and types are permitted by the tables.

The installer must check the minimum and maximum capacities for the vent section for each vent type as if the entire vent section were made of that type. For example, if a vent connector is half single wall and half Type B, the installer must demonstrate that a vent connector of that particular connector's given length would be allowed if it were all single wall and also if it were all Type B.

13.1.15 Interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries.

If the installation dimensions fall between two table entries for which there are numerical values, the designer may calculate the "in between" value. This calculation is called an interpolation and is illustrated in Example 13.1.

EXAMPLE 13.1

Table 13.1(a) provides the capacity of a 3 in. diameter, 15 ft high vent with zero lateral serving a natural draft appliance of 58,000 Btu/hr, and of a 3 in. diameter, 20 ft high vent with zero lateral of 61,000 Btu/hr. See Commentary Table 13.4, which is excerpted from Table 13.1(a).

COMMENTARY TABLE 13.4 *Excerpt from Table 13.1(a)*

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	Vent Diameter — D (in.)		
		3		
		FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max
15	0	0	94	58
20	0	0	97	61

In general, interpolation involves taking the ratio of the difference between the desired length and the smaller length in the table and the difference of the two table entries and applying it to the capacity entries. The capacity of a 3 in. diameter, 18 ft high vent with zero lateral can be interpolated by first determining the ratio: (18 − 15)/(20 − 5) = $^3/_5$; then taking $^3/_5$ of the difference between 58,000 and 61,000 and adding it to the capacity of the 15 ft high vent. In this case the difference is 3000 Btu/hr: $^3/_5$ of 3000 is 1800, and the capacity of the 18 ft vent is 58,000 + 1800 = 59,800 Btu/hr.

13.1.16 Extrapolation. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

Extrapolation is estimating a value outside of the parameters of a table. For example, Table 13.1(a) of the code provides vent capacities for vents up to 100 ft. The code does not permit the use of the values in Table 13.1(a) to estimate the capacity of a vent that is 110 ft high.

13.1.17 Sizing Vents Not Covered by Tables. For vent heights lower than 6 ft (1.8 m) and higher than shown in the Chapter 13 tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

Subsection 13.1.17 reinforces the requirement that vent heights outside the parameters of the tables in Chapter 13 must be calculated and that the tables cannot be used.

TABLE 13.1(a) *Type B Double-Wall Gas Vent*

										Number of Appliances:					***Single***							
										Appliance Type:					***Category I***							
										Appliance Vent Connection:					***Connected Directly to Vent***							
		Vent Diameter — D (in.)																				
		3			***4***			***5***			***6***			***7***			***8***			***9***		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
Height H (ft)	***Lateral L (ft)***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***
		Min	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***
6	0	0	78	46	0	152	86	0	251	141	0	375	205	0	524	285	0	698	370	0	897	470
	2	13	51	36	18	97	67	27	157	105	32	232	157	44	321	217	53	425	285	63	543	370
	4	21	49	34	30	94	64	39	153	103	50	227	153	66	316	211	79	419	279	93	536	362
	6	25	46	32	36	91	61	47	149	100	59	223	149	78	310	205	93	413	273	110	530	354
8	0	0	84	50	0	165	94	0	276	155	0	415	235	0	583	320	0	780	415	0	1006	537
	2	12	57	40	16	109	75	25	178	120	28	263	180	42	365	247	50	483	322	60	619	418
	5	23	53	38	32	103	71	42	171	115	53	255	173	70	356	237	83	473	313	99	607	407
	8	28	49	35	39	98	66	51	164	109	64	247	165	84	347	227	99	463	303	117	596	396
10	0	0	88	53	0	175	100	0	295	166	0	447	255	0	631	345	0	847	450	0	1096	585
	2	12	61	42	17	118	81	23	194	129	26	289	195	40	402	273	48	533	355	57	684	457
	5	23	57	40	32	113	77	41	187	124	52	280	188	68	392	263	81	522	346	95	671	446
	10	30	51	36	41	104	70	54	176	115	67	267	175	88	376	245	104	504	330	122	651	427
15	0	0	94	58	0	191	112	0	327	187	0	502	285	0	716	390	0	970	525	0	1263	682
	2	11	69	48	15	136	93	20	226	150	22	339	225	38	475	316	45	633	414	53	815	544
	5	22	65	45	30	130	87	39	219	142	49	330	217	64	463	300	76	620	403	90	800	529
	10	29	59	41	40	121	82	51	206	135	64	315	208	84	445	288	99	600	386	116	777	507
	15	35	53	37	48	112	76	61	195	128	76	301	198	98	429	275	115	580	373	134	755	491
20	0	0	97	61	0	202	119	0	349	202	0	540	307	0	776	430	0	1057	575	0	1384	752
	2	10	75	51	14	149	100	18	250	166	20	377	249	33	531	346	41	711	470	50	917	612
	5	21	71	48	29	143	96	38	242	160	47	367	241	62	519	337	73	697	460	86	902	599
	10	28	64	44	38	133	89	50	229	150	62	351	228	81	499	321	95	675	443	112	877	576
	15	34	58	40	46	124	84	59	217	142	73	337	217	94	481	308	111	654	427	129	853	557
	20	48	52	35	55	116	78	69	206	134	84	322	206	107	464	295	125	634	410	145	830	537
30	0	0	100	64	0	213	128	0	374	220	0	587	336	0	853	475	0	1173	650	0	1548	855
	2	9	81	56	13	166	112	14	283	185	18	432	280	27	613	394	33	826	535	42	1072	700
	5	21	77	54	28	160	108	36	275	176	45	421	273	58	600	385	69	811	524	82	1055	688
	10	27	70	50	37	150	102	48	262	171	59	405	261	77	580	371	91	788	507	107	1028	668
	15	33	64	NA	44	141	96	57	249	163	70	389	249	90	560	357	105	765	490	124	1002	648
	20	56	58	NA	53	132	90	66	237	154	80	374	237	102	542	343	119	743	473	139	977	628
	30	NA	NA	NA	73	113	NA	88	214	NA	104	346	219	131	507	321	149	702	444	171	929	594
50	0	0	101	67	0	216	134	0	397	232	0	633	363	0	932	518	0	1297	708	0	1730	952
	2	8	86	61	11	183	122	14	320	206	15	497	314	22	715	445	26	975	615	33	1276	813
	5	20	82	NA	27	177	119	35	312	200	43	487	308	55	702	438	65	960	605	77	1259	798
	10	26	76	NA	35	168	114	45	299	190	56	471	298	73	681	426	86	935	589	101	1230	773
	15	59	70	NA	42	158	NA	54	287	180	66	455	288	85	662	413	100	911	572	117	1203	747
	20	NA	NA	NA	50	149	NA	63	275	169	76	440	278	97	642	401	113	888	556	131	1176	722
	30	NA	NA	NA	69	131	NA	84	250	NA	99	410	259	123	605	376	141	844	522	161	1125	670
100	0	NA	NA	NA	0	218	NA	0	407	NA	0	665	400	0	997	560	0	1411	770	0	1908	1040
	2	NA	NA	NA	10	194	NA	12	354	NA	13	566	375	18	831	510	21	1155	700	25	1536	935
	5	NA	NA	NA	26	189	NA	33	347	NA	40	557	369	52	820	504	60	1141	692	71	1519	926
	10	NA	NA	NA	33	182	NA	43	335	NA	53	542	361	68	801	493	80	1118	679	94	1492	910
	15	NA	NA	NA	40	174	NA	50	321	NA	62	528	353	80	782	482	93	1095	666	109	1465	895
	20	NA	NA	NA	47	166	NA	59	311	NA	71	513	344	90	763	471	105	1073	653	122	1438	880
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	78	290	NA	92	483	NA	115	726	449	131	1029	627	149	1387	849
	50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	147	428	NA	180	651	405	197	944	575	217	1288	787

(continues)

TABLE 13.1(a) *Continued*

		Number of Appliances: Single																							
		Appliance Type: Category I																							
		Appliance Vent Connection: Connected Directly to Vent																							
		Vent Diameter — D (in.)																							
		10			12			14			16			18			20			22			24		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
Height H	Lateral L	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
(ft)	(ft)	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	0	0	1121	570	0	1645	850	0	2267	1170	0	2983	1530	0	3802	1960	0	4721	2430	0	5737	2950	0	6853	3520
	2	75	675	455	103	982	650	138	1346	890	178	1769	1170	225	2250	1480	296	2782	1850	360	3377	2220	426	4030	2670
	4	110	668	445	147	975	640	191	1338	880	242	1761	1160	300	2242	1475	390	2774	1835	469	3370	2215	555	4023	2660
	6	128	661	435	171	967	630	219	1330	870	276	1753	1150	341	2235	1470	437	2767	1820	523	3363	2210	618	4017	2650
8	0	0	1261	660	0	1858	970	0	2571	1320	0	3399	1740	0	4333	2220	0	5387	2750	0	6555	3360	0	7838	4010
	2	71	770	515	98	1124	745	130	1543	1020	168	2030	1340	212	2584	1700	278	3196	2110	336	3882	2560	401	4634	3050
	5	115	758	503	154	1110	733	199	1528	1010	251	2013	1330	311	2563	1685	398	3180	2090	476	3863	2545	562	4612	3040
	8	137	746	490	180	1097	720	231	1514	1000	289	2000	1320	354	2552	1670	450	3163	2070	537	3850	2530	630	4602	3030
10	0	0	1377	720	0	2036	1060	0	2825	1450	0	3742	1925	0	4782	2450	0	5955	3050	0	7254	3710	0	8682	4450
	2	68	852	560	93	1244	850	124	1713	1130	161	2256	1480	202	2868	1890	264	3556	2340	319	4322	2840	378	5153	3390
	5	112	839	547	149	1229	829	192	1696	1105	243	2238	1461	300	2849	1871	382	3536	2318	458	4301	2818	540	5132	3371
	10	142	817	525	187	1204	795	238	1669	1080	298	2209	1430	364	2818	1840	459	3504	2280	546	4268	2780	641	5099	3340
15	0	0	1596	840	0	2380	1240	0	3323	1720	0	4423	2270	0	5678	2900	0	7099	3620	0	8665	4410	0	10,393	5300
	2	63	1019	675	86	1495	985	114	2062	1350	147	2719	1770	186	3467	2260	239	4304	2800	290	5232	3410	346	6251	4080
	5	105	1003	660	140	1476	967	182	2041	1327	229	2696	1748	283	3442	2235	355	4278	2777	426	5204	3385	501	6222	4057
	10	135	977	635	177	1446	936	227	2009	1289	283	2659	1712	346	3402	2193	432	4234	2739	510	5159	3343	599	6175	4019
	15	155	953	610	202	1418	905	257	1976	1250	318	2623	1675	385	3363	2150	479	4192	2700	564	5115	3300	665	6129	3980
20	0	0	1756	930	0	2637	1350	0	3701	1900	0	4948	2520	0	6376	3250	0	7988	4060	0	9785	4980	0	11,753	6000
	2	59	1150	755	81	1694	1100	107	2343	1520	139	3097	2000	175	3955	2570	220	4916	3200	269	5983	3910	321	7154	4700
	5	101	1133	738	135	1674	1079	174	2320	1498	219	3071	1978	270	3926	2544	337	4885	3174	403	5950	3880	475	7119	4662
	10	130	1105	710	172	1641	1045	220	2282	1460	273	3029	1940	334	3880	2500	413	4835	3130	489	5896	3830	573	7063	4600
	15	150	1078	688	195	1609	1018	248	2245	1425	306	2988	1910	372	3835	2465	459	4786	3090	541	5844	3795	631	7007	4575
	20	167	1052	665	217	1578	990	273	2210	1390	335	2948	1880	404	3791	2430	495	4737	3050	585	5792	3760	689	6953	4550
30	0	0	1977	1060	0	3004	1550	0	4252	2170	0	5725	2920	0	7420	3770	0	9341	4750	0	11,483	5850	0	13,848	7060
	2	54	1351	865	74	2004	1310	98	2786	1800	127	3696	2380	159	4734	3050	199	5900	3810	241	7194	4650	285	8617	5600
	5	96	1332	851	127	1981	1289	164	2759	1775	206	3666	2350	252	4701	3020	312	5863	3783	373	7155	4622	439	8574	5552
	10	125	1301	829	164	1944	1254	209	2716	1733	259	3617	2300	316	4647	2970	386	5803	3739	456	7090	4574	535	8505	5471
	15	143	1272	807	187	1908	1220	237	2674	1692	292	3570	2250	354	4594	2920	431	5744	3695	507	7026	4527	590	8437	5391
	20	160	1243	784	207	1873	1185	260	2633	1650	319	3523	2200	384	4542	2870	467	5686	3650	548	6964	4480	639	8370	5310
	30	195	1189	745	246	1807	1130	305	2555	1585	369	3433	2130	440	4442	2785	540	5574	3565	635	6842	4375	739	8239	5225
50	0	0	2231	1195	0	3441	1825	0	4934	2550	0	6711	3440	0	8774	4460	0	11,129	5635	0	13,767	6940	0	16,694	8430
	2	41	1620	1010	66	2431	1513	86	3409	2125	113	4554	2840	141	5864	3670	171	7339	4630	209	8980	5695	251	10,788	6860
	5	90	1600	996	118	2406	1495	151	3380	2102	191	4520	2813	234	5826	3639	283	7295	4597	336	8933	5654	394	10,737	6818
	10	118	1567	972	154	2366	1466	196	3332	2064	243	4464	2767	295	5763	3585	355	7224	4542	419	8855	5585	491	10,652	6749
	15	136	1536	948	177	2327	1437	222	3285	2026	274	4409	2721	330	5701	3534	396	7155	4511	465	8779	5546	542	10,570	6710
	20	151	1505	924	195	2288	1408	244	3239	1987	300	4356	2675	361	5641	3481	433	7086	4479	506	8704	5506	586	10,488	6670
	30	183	1446	876	232	2214	1349	287	3150	1910	347	4253	2631	412	5523	3431	494	6953	4421	577	8557	5444	672	10,328	6603
100	0	0	2491	1310	0	3925	2050	0	5729	2950	0	7914	4050	0	10,485	5300	0	13,454	6700	0	16,817	8600	0	20,578	10,300
	2	30	1975	1170	44	3027	1820	72	4313	2550	95	5834	3500	120	7591	4600	138	9577	5800	169	11,803	7200	204	14,264	8800
	5	82	1955	1159	107	3002	1803	136	4282	2531	172	5797	3475	208	7548	4566	245	9528	5769	293	11,748	7162	341	14,204	8756
	10	108	1923	1142	142	2961	1775	180	4231	2500	223	5737	3434	268	7478	4509	318	9447	5717	374	11,658	7100	436	14,105	8683
	15	126	1892	1124	163	2920	1747	206	4182	2469	252	5678	3392	304	7409	4451	358	9367	5665	418	11,569	7037	487	14,007	8610
	20	141	1861	1107	181	2880	1719	226	4133	2438	277	5619	3351	330	7341	4394	387	9289	5613	452	11,482	6975	523	13,910	8537
	30	170	1802	1071	215	2803	1663	265	4037	2375	319	5505	3267	378	7209	4279	446	9136	5509	514	11,310	6850	592	13,720	8391
	50	241	1688	1000	292	2657	1550	350	3856	2250	415	5289	3100	486	6956	4050	572	8841	5300	659	10,979	6600	752	13,354	8100

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, l ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

NA: Not applicable.

TABLE 13.1(b) *Type B Double-Wall Vent*

Number of Appliances: *Single*
Appliance Type: *Category I*
Appliance Vent Connection: *Single-Wall Metal Connector*

Vent Diameter — D (in.); *Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour*

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	3 FAN Min	3 FAN Max	3 NAT Max	4 FAN Min	4 FAN Max	4 NAT Max	5 FAN Min	5 FAN Max	5 NAT Max	6 FAN Min	6 FAN Max	6 NAT Max	7 FAN Min	7 FAN Max	7 NAT Max	8 FAN Min	8 FAN Max	8 NAT Max	9 FAN Min	9 FAN Max	9 NAT Max	10 FAN Min	10 FAN Max	10 NAT Max	12 FAN Min	12 FAN Max	12 NAT Max
6	0	38	77	45	59	151	85	85	249	140	126	373	204	165	522	284	211	695	369	267	894	469	371	1118	569	537	1639	849
	2	39	51	36	60	96	66	85	156	104	123	231	156	159	320	213	201	423	284	251	541	368	347	673	453	498	979	648
	4	NA	NA	33	74	92	63	102	152	102	146	225	152	187	313	208	237	416	277	295	533	360	409	664	443	584	971	638
	6	NA	NA	31	83	89	60	114	147	99	163	220	148	207	307	203	263	409	271	327	526	352	449	656	433	638	962	627
8	0	37	83	50	58	164	93	83	273	154	123	412	234	161	580	319	206	777	414	258	1002	536	360	1257	658	521	1852	967
	2	39	56	39	59	108	75	83	176	119	121	261	179	155	363	246	197	482	321	246	617	417	339	768	513	486	1120	743
	5	NA	NA	37	77	102	69	107	168	114	151	252	171	193	352	235	245	470	311	305	604	404	418	754	500	598	1104	730
	8	NA	NA	33	90	95	64	122	161	107	175	243	163	223	342	225	280	458	300	344	591	392	470	740	486	665	1089	715
10	0	37	87	53	57	174	99	82	293	165	120	444	254	158	628	344	202	844	449	253	1093	584	351	1373	718	507	2031	1057
	2	39	61	41	59	117	80	82	193	128	119	287	194	153	400	272	193	531	354	242	681	456	332	849	559	475	1242	848
	5	52	56	39	76	111	76	105	185	122	148	277	186	190	388	261	241	518	344	299	667	443	409	834	544	584	1224	825
	10	NA	NA	34	97	100	68	132	171	112	188	261	171	237	369	241	296	497	325	363	643	423	492	808	520	688	1194	788
15	0	36	93	57	56	190	111	80	325	186	116	499	283	153	713	388	195	966	523	244	1259	681	336	1591	838	488	2374	1237
	2	38	69	47	57	136	93	80	225	149	115	337	224	148	473	314	187	631	413	232	812	543	319	1015	673	457	1491	983
	5	51	63	44	75	128	86	102	216	140	144	326	217	182	459	298	231	616	400	287	795	526	392	997	657	562	1469	963
	10	NA	NA	39	95	116	79	128	201	131	182	308	203	228	438	284	284	592	381	349	768	501	470	966	628	664	1433	928
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	72	158	186	124	220	290	192	272	418	269	334	568	367	404	742	484	540	937	601	750	1399	894
20	0	35	96	60	54	200	118	78	346	201	114	537	306	149	772	428	190	1053	573	238	1379	750	326	1751	927	473	2631	1346
	2	37	74	50	56	148	99	78	248	165	113	375	248	144	528	344	182	708	468	227	914	611	309	1146	754	443	1689	1098
	5	50	68	47	73	140	94	100	239	158	141	363	239	178	514	334	224	692	457	279	896	596	381	1126	734	547	1665	1074
	10	NA	NA	41	93	129	86	125	223	146	177	344	224	222	491	316	277	666	437	339	866	570	457	1092	702	646	1626	1037
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	155	208	136	216	325	210	264	469	301	325	640	419	393	838	549	526	1060	677	730	1587	1005
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	186	192	126	254	306	196	309	448	285	374	616	400	448	810	526	592	1028	651	808	1550	973
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127	76	372	219	110	584	334	144	849	472	184	1168	647	229	1542	852	312	1971	1056	454	2996	1545
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111	76	281	183	109	429	279	139	610	392	175	823	533	219	1069	698	296	1346	863	424	1999	1308
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106	98	271	173	136	417	271	171	595	382	215	806	521	269	1049	684	366	1324	846	524	1971	1283
	10	NA	NA	NA	91	144	98	122	255	168	171	397	257	213	570	367	265	777	501	327	1017	662	440	1287	821	620	1927	1243
	15	NA	NA	NA	115	131	NA	151	239	157	208	377	242	255	547	349	312	750	481	379	985	638	507	1251	794	702	1884	1205
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	181	223	NA	246	357	228	298	524	333	360	723	461	433	955	615	570	1216	768	780	1841	1166
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	389	477	305	461	670	426	541	895	574	704	1147	720	937	1759	1101
50	0	33	99	66	51	213	133	73	394	230	105	629	361	138	928	515	176	1292	704	220	1724	948	295	2223	1189	428	3432	1818
	2	36	84	61	53	181	121	73	318	205	104	495	312	133	712	443	168	971	613	209	1273	811	280	1615	1007	401	2426	1509
	5	48	80	NA	70	174	117	94	308	198	131	482	305	164	696	435	204	953	602	257	1252	795	347	1591	991	496	2396	1490
	10	NA	NA	NA	89	160	NA	118	292	186	162	461	292	203	671	420	253	923	583	313	1217	765	418	1551	963	589	2347	1455
	15	NA	NA	NA	112	148	NA	145	275	174	199	441	280	244	646	405	299	894	562	363	1183	736	481	1512	934	668	2299	1421
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	176	257	NA	236	420	267	285	622	389	345	866	543	415	1150	708	544	1473	906	741	2251	1387
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	315	376	NA	373	573	NA	442	809	502	521	1086	649	674	1399	848	892	2159	1318
100	0	NA	NA	NA	49	214	NA	69	403	NA	100	659	395	131	991	555	166	1404	765	207	1900	1033	273	2479	1300	395	3912	2042
	2	NA	NA	NA	51	192	NA	70	351	NA	98	563	373	125	828	508	158	1152	698	196	1532	933	259	1970	1168	371	3021	1817
	5	NA	NA	NA	67	186	NA	90	342	NA	125	551	366	156	813	501	194	1134	688	240	1511	921	322	1945	1153	460	2990	1796
	10	NA	NA	NA	85	175	NA	113	324	NA	153	532	354	191	789	486	238	1104	672	293	1477	902	389	1905	1133	547	2938	1763
	15	NA	NA	NA	132	162	NA	138	310	NA	188	511	343	230	764	473	281	1075	656	342	1443	884	447	1865	1110	618	2888	1730
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	168	295	NA	224	487	NA	270	739	458	325	1046	639	391	1410	864	507	1825	1087	690	2838	1696
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	231	264	NA	301	448	NA	355	685	NA	418	988	NA	491	1343	824	631	1747	1041	834	2739	1627
	50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	540	584	NA	617	866	NA	711	1205	NA	895	1591	NA	1138	2547	1489

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, l ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

NA: Not applicable.

TABLE 13.1(c) Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	*Single*
Appliance Type:	*Category I*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*

		Type B Double-Wall Connector Diameter — D (in.) To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																										
		3			*4*			*5*			*6*			*7*			*8*			*9*			*10*			*12*		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																										
Height H (ft)	*Lateral L (ft)*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*
6	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	130	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	320	NA	NA	401	NA	NA	581
	5	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	49	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	117	NA	NA	165	NA	NA	231	NA	NA	298	NA	NA	376	NA	NA	561
8	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	93	NA	NA	145	NA	NA	198	NA	NA	266	84	590	350	100	728	446	139	1024	651
	5	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	88	NA	NA	134	NA	NA	183	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	328	149	711	423	201	1007	640
	8	NA	NA	24	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	83	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	175	NA	NA	239	NA	NA	318	173	695	410	231	990	623
10	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	103	NA	NA	162	NA	NA	221	68	519	298	82	655	388	98	810	491	136	1144	724
	5	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	57	NA	NA	96	NA	NA	148	NA	NA	204	NA	NA	277	124	638	365	146	791	466	196	1124	712
	10	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	50	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	139	NA	NA	191	NA	NA	263	155	610	347	182	762	444	240	1093	668
15	2	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	114	NA	NA	179	53	475	250	64	613	336	77	779	441	92	968	562	127	1376	841
	5	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	62	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	164	NA	NA	231	99	594	313	118	759	416	139	946	533	186	1352	828
	10	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	97	NA	NA	153	NA	NA	216	126	565	296	148	727	394	173	912	567	229	1315	777
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	89	NA	NA	141	NA	NA	201	NA	NA	281	171	698	375	198	880	485	259	1280	742
20	2	NA	NA	38	NA	NA	74	NA	NA	124	NA	NA	201	51	522	274	61	678	375	73	867	491	87	1083	627	121	1548	953
	5	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	68	NA	NA	116	NA	NA	184	80	503	254	95	658	350	113	845	463	133	1059	597	179	1523	933
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	60	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	172	NA	NA	237	122	627	332	143	811	440	167	1022	566	221	1482	879
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	97	NA	NA	159	NA	NA	220	NA	NA	314	165	780	418	191	987	541	251	1443	840
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	83	NA	NA	148	NA	NA	206	NA	NA	296	186	750	397	214	955	513	277	1406	807
30	2	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	137	NA	NA	216	47	581	303	57	762	421	68	985	558	81	1240	717	111	1793	1112
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	76	NA	NA	128	NA	NA	198	75	561	281	90	741	393	106	962	526	125	1216	683	169	1766	1094
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	115	NA	NA	184	NA	NA	263	115	709	373	135	927	500	158	1176	648	210	1721	1025
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	107	NA	NA	171	NA	NA	243	NA	NA	353	156	893	476	181	1139	621	239	1679	981
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	91	NA	NA	159	NA	NA	227	NA	NA	332	176	860	450	203	1103	592	264	1638	940
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	188	NA	NA	288	NA	NA	416	249	1035	555	318	1560	877
50	2	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	92	NA	NA	161	NA	NA	251	NA	NA	351	51	840	477	61	1106	633	72	1413	812	99	2080	1243
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	151	NA	NA	230	NA	NA	323	83	819	445	98	1083	596	116	1387	774	155	2052	1225
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	138	NA	NA	215	NA	NA	304	NA	NA	424	126	1047	567	147	1347	733	195	2006	1147
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	199	NA	NA	282	NA	NA	400	146	1010	539	170	1307	702	222	1961	1099
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	185	NA	NA	264	NA	NA	376	165	977	511	190	1269	669	246	1916	1050
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	468	233	1196	623	295	1832	984
Minimum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})		12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132		
Maximum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})		Seven times the listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet areas.																										

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

NA: Not applicable.

TABLE 13.1(d) Masonry Chimney

																		Number of Appliances:			***Single***							
																		Appliance Type:			***Category I***							
																		Appliance Vent Connection:			***Single-Wall Metal Connector***							
		Single-Wall Metal Connector Diameter — D (in.) To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom																										
		3			***4***			***5***			***6***			***7***			***8***			***9***			***10***			***12***		
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																										
Height H (ft)	***Lateral L (ft)***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***	***FAN***		***NAT***
		Min	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***	***Min***	***Max***	***Max***
6	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	130	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	247	NA	NA	319	NA	NA	400	NA	NA	580
	5	NA	NA	25	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	81	NA	NA	116	NA	NA	164	NA	NA	230	NA	NA	297	NA	NA	375	NA	NA	560
8	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	93	NA	NA	145	NA	NA	197	NA	NA	265	NA	NA	349	382	725	445	549	1021	650
	5	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	51	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	133	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	246	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	422	673	1003	638
	8	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	47	NA	NA	82	NA	NA	126	NA	NA	174	NA	NA	237	NA	NA	317	NA	NA	408	747	985	621
10	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	102	NA	NA	161	NA	NA	220	216	518	297	271	654	387	373	808	490	536	1142	722
	5	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	56	NA	NA	95	NA	NA	147	NA	NA	203	NA	NA	276	334	635	364	459	789	465	657	1121	710
	10	NA	NA	24	NA	NA	49	NA	NA	86	NA	NA	137	NA	NA	189	NA	NA	261	NA	NA	345	547	758	441	771	1088	665
15	2	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	113	NA	NA	178	166	473	249	211	611	335	264	776	440	362	965	560	520	1373	840
	5	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	61	NA	NA	106	NA	NA	163	NA	NA	230	261	591	312	325	755	414	444	942	531	637	1348	825
	10	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	54	NA	NA	96	NA	NA	151	NA	NA	214	NA	NA	294	392	722	392	531	907	504	749	1309	774
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	87	NA	NA	138	NA	NA	198	NA	NA	278	452	692	372	606	873	481	841	1272	738
20	2	NA	NA	38	NA	NA	73	NA	NA	123	NA	NA	200	163	520	273	206	675	374	258	864	490	252	1079	625	508	1544	950
	5	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	67	NA	NA	115	NA	NA	183	NA	NA	252	255	655	348	317	842	461	433	1055	594	623	1518	930
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	59	NA	NA	105	NA	NA	170	NA	NA	235	312	622	330	382	806	437	517	1016	562	733	1475	875
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	95	NA	NA	156	NA	NA	217	NA	NA	311	442	773	414	591	979	539	823	1434	835
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	80	NA	NA	144	NA	NA	202	NA	NA	292	NA	NA	392	663	944	510	911	1394	800
30	2	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	81	NA	NA	136	NA	NA	215	158	578	302	200	759	420	249	982	556	340	1237	715	489	1789	1110
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	127	NA	NA	196	NA	NA	279	245	737	391	306	958	524	417	1210	680	600	1760	1090
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	66	NA	NA	113	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	260	300	703	370	370	920	496	500	1168	644	708	1713	1020
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	105	NA	NA	168	NA	NA	240	NA	NA	349	428	884	471	572	1128	615	798	1668	975
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	88	NA	NA	155	NA	NA	223	NA	NA	327	NA	NA	445	643	1089	585	883	1624	932
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	182	NA	NA	281	NA	NA	408	NA	NA	544	1055	1539	865
50	2	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	91	NA	NA	160	NA	NA	250	NA	NA	350	191	837	475	238	1103	631	323	1408	810	463	2076	1240
	5	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	149	NA	NA	228	NA	NA	321	NA	NA	442	293	1078	593	398	1381	770	571	2044	1220
	10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	136	NA	NA	212	NA	NA	301	NA	NA	420	355	1038	562	447	1337	728	674	1994	1140
	15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	124	NA	NA	195	NA	NA	278	NA	NA	395	NA	NA	533	546	1294	695	761	1945	1090
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	180	NA	NA	258	NA	NA	370	NA	NA	504	616	1251	660	844	1898	1040
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	318	NA	NA	458	NA	NA	610	1009	1805	970
Minimum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})		12			19			28			38			50			63			78			95			132		
Maximum internal area of chimney (in.^{2})		Seven times the listed appliance categorized ventarea, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet areas.																										

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, l ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

NA: Not applicable.

TABLE 13.1(e) *Single-Wall Metal Pipe or Type B Asbestos Cement Vent*

				Number of Appliances:		*Single*			
				Appliance Type:		*Draft Hood–Equipped*			
				Appliance Vent Connection:		*Connected Directly to Pipe or Vent*			
		Diameter — D (in.) To be used with chimney areas within the size limits at bottom							
		3	4	5	6	7	8	10	12
		Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour							
Height H (ft)	*Lateral L (ft)*	*Maximum Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour*							
6	0	39	70	116	170	232	312	500	750
	2	31	55	94	141	194	260	415	620
	5	28	51	88	128	177	242	390	600
8	0	42	76	126	185	252	340	542	815
	2	32	61	102	154	210	284	451	680
	5	29	56	95	141	194	264	430	648
	10	24	49	86	131	180	250	406	625
10	0	45	84	138	202	279	372	606	912
	2	35	67	111	168	233	311	505	760
	5	32	61	104	153	215	289	480	724
	10	27	54	94	143	200	274	455	700
	15	NA	46	84	130	186	258	432	666
15	0	49	91	151	223	312	420	684	1040
	2	39	72	122	186	260	350	570	865
	5	35	67	110	170	240	325	540	825
	10	30	58	103	158	223	308	514	795
	15	NA	50	93	144	207	291	488	760
	20	NA	NA	82	132	195	273	466	726
20	0	53	101	163	252	342	470	770	1190
	2	42	80	136	210	286	392	641	990
	5	38	74	123	192	264	364	610	945
	10	32	65	115	178	246	345	571	910
	15	NA	55	104	163	228	326	550	870
	20	NA	NA	91	149	214	306	525	832
30	0	56	108	183	276	384	529	878	1370
	2	44	84	148	230	320	441	730	1140
	5	NA	78	137	210	296	410	694	1080
	10	NA	68	125	196	274	388	656	1050
	15	NA	NA	113	177	258	366	625	1000
	20	NA	NA	99	163	240	344	596	960
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	192	295	540	890
50	0	NA	120	210	310	443	590	980	1550
	2	NA	95	171	260	370	492	820	1290
	5	NA	NA	159	234	342	474	780	1230
	10	NA	NA	146	221	318	456	730	1190
	15	NA	NA	NA	200	292	407	705	1130
	20	NA	NA	NA	185	276	384	670	1080
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	222	330	605	1010

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.

NA: Not applicable.

TABLE 13.1(f) Exterior Masonry Chimney

					Number of Appliances:	**Single**		
					Appliance Type:	**NAT**		
					Appliance Vent Connection:	**Type B Double-Wall Connector**		
Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-Heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
Vent Height H (ft)	**Internal Area of Chimney (in.²)**							
	12	**19**	**28**	**38**	**50**	**63**	**78**	**113**
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 37°F or greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	123	190	249	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	579
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 27°F to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	116	156	180	212	266
8	0	0	82	127	167	187	214	263
10	0	51	97	141	183	201	225	265
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	233	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	419	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	763
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 17°F to 26°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	215	259	349
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	197	226	264	352
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	214	245	278	358
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	296	331	398
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	352	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	507	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 5°F to 16°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	416
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	312	423
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	289	331	430
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	393	485
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	450	547
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	972
	Local 99% winter design temperature: –10°F to 4°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	484
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	494
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	513
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	586
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	650
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	805
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1003
	Local 99% winter design temperature: –11°F or lower Not recommended for any vent configurations							

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.² = 645 mm², 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, °C = (°F − 32)/1.8.

Note: See Figure F.2.4 for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.

NA: Not applicable.

13.1.18 Height Entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Table 13.1(a) through Table 13.1(f) either of the following shall be used:

(1) Interpolation
(2) The lower appliance input rating shown in the table entries for FAN MAX and NAT MAX column values; and the higher appliance input rating for the FAN MIN column values

13.2 Additional Requirements to Multiple-Appliance Vent

Table 13.2(a) through Table 13.2(i) were developed based on the assumption that there are no restrictions in the path of the vent gas flow. An additional assumption is that there is no deliberate attempt to remove heat. Therefore, devices such as heat economizers may not be used in conjunction with the tables. Vent dampers installed as part of a listed appliance are allowed and must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions or the general provisions in 13.2.1.

13.2.1 Obstructions and Vent Dampers. Venting Table 13.2(a) through Table 13.2(i) shall not be used where obstructions are installed in the venting system. The installation of vents serving listed appliances with vent dampers shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions, or in accordance with the following:

(1) The maximum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the NAT Max column.
(2) The maximum capacity of the vertical vent or chimney shall be determined using the FAN+NAT column when the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, or the NAT+NAT column when the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood.
(3) The minimum capacity shall be determined as if the appliance were a fan-assisted appliance, as follows:
   (a) The minimum capacity of the vent connector shall be determined using the FAN Min column.
   (b) The FAN+FAN column shall be used when the second appliance is a fan-assisted appliance, and the FAN+NAT column shall be used when the second appliance is equipped with a draft hood, to determine whether the vertical vent or chimney configuration is not permitted (NA). Where the vent configuration is NA, the vent configuration shall not be permitted and an alternative venting configuration shall be utilized.

Paragraphs 13.2.1(1), 13.2.1(2), and 13.2.1(3) provide guidance for using the venting tables with draft hood appliances that are equipped with a vent damper. Vent dampers are commonly installed on boilers to increase efficiency. A vent damper can increase efficiency by eliminating off-cycle loss of heat through the vent from the boiler and the room in which it is installed. In other words, the vent is an opening in a building that can leak warm air when the boiler is not operating. The vent damper prevents this leakage by closing the opening. However, the vent damper prevents heated air from entering the venting system while the boiler is not firing, and the vent can cool, increasing the likelihood of condensation in the vent. For this reason, the special rules in 13.2.1(1) through 13.2.1(3) apply when sizing venting systems for appliances equipped with vent dampers:

Both 13.2.1(1) and 13.2.1(2) and the previous explanatory paragraphs recognize that when the appliance is operating and the damper is open, the damper has no effect on venting performance, and the appliance behaves like a normal draft hood–equipped appliance. Stated differently, determining the *maximum* capacity for a draft hood appliance is the same, whether or not it is equipped with a vent damper.

Paragraph 13.2.1(3) and its subparagraphs direct the user to determine the *minimum* capacity of the venting system when the draft hood appliance has a vent damper installed by essentially treating the appliance as a fan-assisted appliance.

Where "NA" appears in the table for a given installation, that configuration is not allowed and an alternative venting arrangement must be used. The requirements in 13.2.1 recognize that when the appliance is off and the damper is closed, the appliance behaves like a fan-assisted appliance by stopping the flow of heated air (off-cycle loss) into the venting system. This unusual combination of rules (using the unshaded FAN Min and shaded NAT Max columns) is explained as follows:

- When the appliance is firing (on), the vent damper is open. It operates as a natural draft appliance.
- When the appliance is not firing (off), the vent damper is closed, conserving energy. It is similar to a fan-assisted appliance in energy savings, and condensation in the vent must be minimized.

13.2.2 Vent Connector Maximum Length. The maximum vent connector horizontal length shall be 18 in./in. (18 mm/mm) of connector diameter as shown in Table 13.2.2, or as permitted by 13.2.3.

TABLE 13.2.2 *Vent Connector Maximum Length*

Connector Diameter (in.)	*Maximum Connector Horizontal Length (ft)*
3	4½
4	6
5	7½
6	9
7	10½
8	12
9	13½
10	15
12	18
14	21
16	24
18	27
20	30
22	33
24	36

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 ft = 0.305 m.

FAQ Since the multiple-appliance tables do not contain rows showing lateral or horizontal length, is there any limit on the connector pipe length?

The multiple-appliance venting tables do not contain lateral length rows like those found in the single-appliance tables. Subsection 13.2.2 limits vent connector length to 18 in./in. of connector diameter as shown in Table 13.2.2. If these lengths are exceeded, 13.2.3 provides guidance on derating the tables accordingly.

13.2.3 Vent Connector Exceeding Maximum Length. The vent connector shall be routed to the vent utilizing the shortest possible route. Connectors with longer horizontal lengths than those listed in Table 13.2.2 are permitted under the following conditions:

(1) The maximum capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) of the vent connector shall be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length listed in Table 13.2.2. For example, the maximum length listed for a 4 in. (100 mm) connector is 6 ft (1.8 m). With a connector length greater than 6 ft (1.8 m) but not exceeding 12 ft (3.7 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum vent connector capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 ft (3.7 m) but not exceeding 18 ft (5.5 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum vent capacity).
(2) For a connector serving a fan-assisted appliance, the minimum capacity (FAN Min) of the connector shall be determined by referring to the corresponding single appliance table. For Type B double-wall connectors, Table 13.1(a) shall be used. For single-wall connectors, Table 13.1(b) shall be used. The height (*H*) and lateral (*L*) shall be measured according to the procedures for a single appliance vent, as if the other appliances were not present.

The common venting tables [the lower sections of Table 13.2(a) through Table 13.2(e) of the code] are designed based on the assumption that the vent connector is no more than 18 in. long for each inch of diameter. Subsections 13.2.2 and 13.2.3, summarized as follows, provide guidance on how to handle connectors that are longer than 18 in.:

- The maximum capacity for vent connectors that exceed 18 in./in. of diameter is reduced by 10 percent for each extra length of 18 in./in. of vent diameter.
- The minimum capacity for connectors serving fan-assisted appliances is determined differently for single-wall and Type B double-wall connectors, as described in 13.2.3(2).

The minimum connector capacities in the multiple-appliance vent tables do not consider connector length as do the single-appliance tables. Therefore, to determine the minimum capacity of long connectors serving fan-assisted appliances in multiple-appliance installations, the user is directed to the single-appliance tables. To determine the minimum capacity of the connector, consult the proper row for a given combination of height and lateral, as if the fan-assisted appliance were operating alone. Use Table 13.1(a) if the fan-assisted appliance has a Type B vent connector and Table 13.1(b) if using a single-wall connector.

13.2.4 Vent Connector Manifolds. Where the vent connectors are combined prior to entering the vertical portion of the common vent to form a common vent manifold, the size of the common vent manifold and the common vent shall be determined by applying a 10 percent reduction (0.90 × maximum common vent capacity) to the common vent capacity part of the common vent tables. The length of the common vent manifold (*LM*) shall not exceed 18 in./in. (18 mm/mm) of common vent diameter (*D*).

A combination of vent connections located prior to entry into a vertical chimney or vent is a "vent manifold," and guidance for sizing vent manifolds is located in this subsection. Note that a chimney liner system that comes out through the breaching, as many do, should be considered a manifold.

13.2.5 Vent Offsets. Where the common vertical vent is offset, the maximum capacity of the common vent shall be reduced in accordance with 13.2.6 and the horizontal length of the common vent offset shall not exceed 18 in./in. (18 mm/mm) of common vent diameter (*D*). Where multiple offsets occur in a common vent, the total horizontal length of all offsets combined shall not exceed 18 in./in. (18 mm/mm) of the common vent diameter.

FAQ Are offsets in the vertical common vent permitted?

Vent offsets typically occur high in the venting system and reduce the draft produced because they slow the flow of vent gases. This reduction in draft is offset by the requirement to derate the capacity of the vent in accordance with 13.2.6. Additionally, the horizontal length of the offset is limited to 18 in./in. of vent diameter, just as the connectors are limited in 13.2.2. Although permitted, the use of offsets in the common vent should be avoided wherever possible.

13.2.6 Elbows in Vents. For each elbow up to and including 45 degrees in the common vent, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees up to and including 90 degrees, the maximum common vent capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

The requirements in 13.2.6 for derating the table capacities for elbows recognize that the flow restriction of all elbows is not the same. The derating factors are shown in Commentary Table 13.5. The derating factors were based on input from the Gas Technology Institute's contractor, Battelle. Additional information on the research conducted by Battelle is contained in Supplement 1. The derating factors provide flexibility to installers forced to use vent offsets and encourage the use of elbows of less than 90 degrees.

See Supplement 1 for more information.

COMMENTARY TABLE 13.5 *Table Capacity Derating for Elbows of Less Than 90 Degrees*

Elbow (degrees)	***Vent Table Capacity Reduction per Elbow (%)***
0–45	5
>45–90	10

13.2.7 Elbows in Connectors. The vent connector capacities listed in the common vent sizing tables include allowance for two 90 degree elbows. For each additional elbow up to and including 45 degrees, the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 5 percent. For each elbow greater than 45 degrees up to and including 90 degrees, the maximum vent connector capacity listed in the venting tables shall be reduced by 10 percent.

13.2.8 Common Vent Minimum Size. The cross-sectional area of the common vent shall be equal to or greater than the cross-sectional area of the largest connector.

Subsection 13.2.8 highlights that in multiple-appliance installations, no part of the common vent is allowed to be smaller than the largest connector, even if the common vent capacity tables would permit a smaller common vent.

13.2.9 Tee and Wye Fittings. Tee and wye fittings connected to a common gas vent shall be considered as part of the common gas vent and constructed of materials consistent with that of the common gas vent.

Subsection 13.2.9 clarifies that tee and wye fittings are considered a part of the common vent. The last portion of the requirement was added in the 2009 edition to recognize that these fittings cannot be constructed of masonry.

13.2.10 Tee and Wye Sizing. At the point where tee or wye fittings connect to a common gas vent, the opening size of the fitting shall be equal to the size of the common vent. Such fittings shall not be prohibited from having reduced size openings at the point of connection of appliance gas vent connectors.

The tee and wye size must be the same as the common vent size. For example, if 3 in. × 4 in. connectors are joined to a 5 in. common vent, a 3 in. × 4 in. × 5 in. tee should be used.

13.2.11 High-Altitude Installations. Sea level input ratings shall be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installation. Actual input (derated for altitude) shall be used for determining minimum capacity for high-altitude installation.

Using the sea level input rating for the maximum capacity is a conservative measure because less draft is produced at high altitudes. The derating process will also make condensation more likely. The reduced input rate should be used for the minimum capacity.

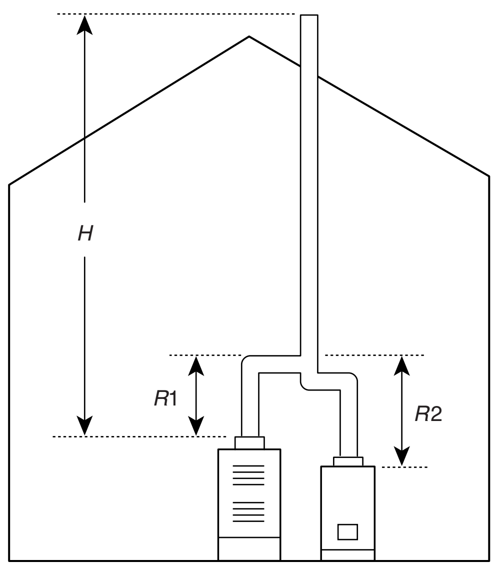
13.2.12 Connector Rise. The connector rise *(R)* for each appliance connector shall be measured from the draft hood outlet or flue collar to the centerline where the vent gas streams come together.

Providing as much rise as the installation will permit, while still maintaining required clearance, is beneficial to overall vent performance. Additional rise helps establish and maintain flow through the venting system. Total rise is measured from the outlet of the draft hood or flue collar up to the (centerline) point where the highest connector joins the common vent. [See Figure F.1(f) through Figure F.1(l) in Annex F for specific examples.] For a given appliance, this distance may include a portion of the common vent. In addition to providing rise, it is also beneficial to provide as much vertical height between the outlet of the appliance and the first elbow in the connector.

13.2.13 Vent Height. For multiple appliances all located on one floor, available total height (*H*) shall be measured from the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar up to the level of the outlet of the common vent.

See Exhibit 13.1 for measurement of connector rise, *R,* and total vent height, *H*. Connector rise is described in 13.2.12.

EXHIBIT 13.1



Connector Rise and Vent Height.

13.2.14 Multistory Vent Height. For multistory installations, available total height (*H*) for each segment of the system shall be the vertical distance between the highest draft hood outlet or flue collar entering that segment and the centerline of the next higher interconnection tee.

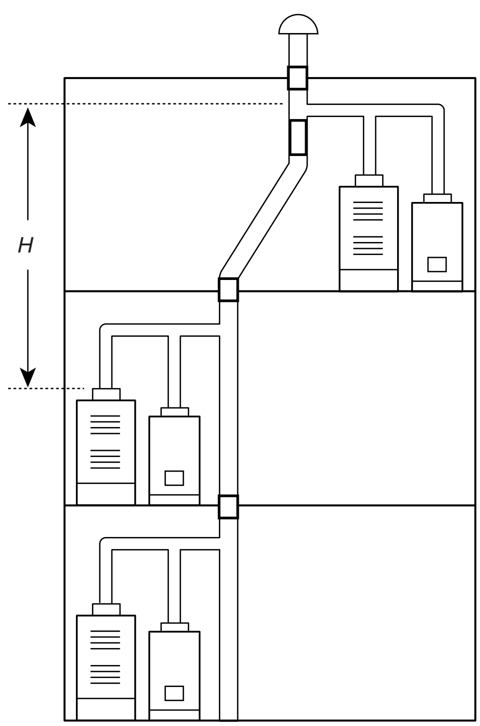
FAQ How is vent height in a multistory venting system determined?

As venting system height increases, so does draft and vent capacity. However, the effect of increased height is negated when additional appliances are connected to the venting system. As dilution air enters the vent through the upper appliances, draft to lower appliances is decreased. Therefore, the vent height for a given segment is based on the distance between the appliances of that segment and the next higher connection tee (usually on the next level of the building).

13.2.15 Multistory Lowest Vent and Vent Connector Sizing. The size of the lowest connector and of the vertical vent leading to the lowest interconnection of a multistory system shall be in accordance with Table 13.1(a) or Table 13.1(b) for available total height (*H*) up to the lowest interconnection.

See Exhibit 13.2 and the examples in Annex F for more information on the multistory vents described in 13.2.14, 13.2.15, and 13.2.16. The vent on the first floor is treated like a normal venting system whose height ends at the next floor. The higher floors are treated as common vents whose height ends at the floor above. This tends to result in large-diameter vertical vents. It may be more cost-effective to use separate venting systems for groups of floors.

EXHIBIT 13.2



Multistory Vents.

13.2.16 Multistory B Vents Required. Where used in multistory systems, vertical common vents shall be Type B double wall and shall be installed with a listed vent cap.

13.2.17 Multistory Vent Offsets and Capacity. Offsets in multistory common vent systems shall be limited to a single offset in each system, and systems with an offset shall comply with all of the following:

(1) The offset angle shall not exceed 45 degrees from vertical.
(2) The horizontal length of the offset shall not exceed 18 in./in. (18 mm/mm) of common vent diameter of the segment in which the offset is located.
(3) For the segment of the common vertical vent containing the offset, the common vent capacity listed in the common venting tables shall be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum common vent capacity).
(4) A multistory common vent shall not be reduced in size above the offset.

13.2.18 Vertical Vent Size Limitation. Where two or more appliances are connected to a vertical vent or chimney, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or chimney shall not exceed seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized vent areas, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

The "seven times" rule covered in 13.2.18 limits the common vent diameter to seven times the diameter of the smallest connector in the vent system. For example, if a water heater with a 4 in. vent connector was the only appliance connected to a venting system, the maximum vent area would be 7 × the 4 in. vent connector area. A 4 in. diameter vent connector has an area of about 12.5 in.^{2} [The area of a circle is Πr^2. Therefore, multiply Π, or 3.14, by the radius (1/2 the diameter) squared, or 3.14 × 2 × 2 = approximately 12.5 in.^{2}] The seven times rule results in 7 × 12.5, or about 88 in.^{2} maximum allowable area. A 10 in. diameter circle has an area of about 79 in.^{2} and is the largest diameter round vent that could be used with a water heater with a 4 in. vent connector.

13.2.19 Two-Stage/Modulating Appliances. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent connector capacity (FAN Min) determined from the tables shall be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent connector capacity (FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the tables shall be greater than the highest appliance input rating.

If an appliance has multiple input rates, the minimum capacity is determined with the minimum input rate and the maximum capacity is determined with the maximum input rate.

13.2.20* Corrugated Chimney Liners. Listed corrugated metallic chimney liner systems in masonry chimneys shall be sized by using Table 13.2(a) or Table 13.2(b) for Type B vents, with the maximum capacity reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum capacity) and the minimum capacity as shown in Table 13.2(a) or Table 13.2(b). Corrugated metallic liner systems installed with bends or offsets shall have their maximum capacity further reduced in accordance with 13.2.6 and 13.2.7. The 20 percent reduction for corrugated metallic chimney liner systems includes an allowance for one long radius 90-degree turn at the bottom of the liner.

FAQ Does a corrugated chimney liner have the same capacity as a similar size smooth wall liner or vent?

Properly installed corrugated chimney liners have heat loss similar to that of a Type B vent, so they are sized using Table 13.2(a) or Table 13.2(b). However, corrugations of such liners and their tendency to spiral in the chimney require a 20 percent maximum capacity reduction.

FAQ Does the turn or bend at the bottom of a flexible chimney liner count as an elbow?

Many liners begin at the opening in the chimney wall and then bend up vertically. This 90-degree elbow at the beginning of the liner is included in the 20 percent reduction. The inclusion of one 90-degree elbow was clarified in the 2002 edition with the assistance of the researchers who developed the tables. Additional information about the research used as the basis for the venting guidelines can be found in Supplement 1.

See Supplement 1 for more information.

A.13.2.20 A long radius turn is a turn where the centerline radius is equal to or greater than 1.5 times the vent diameter.

13.2.21 Connections to Chimney Liners. Where double-wall connectors are required, tee and wye fittings used to connect to the common vent chimney liner shall be listed double-wall fittings. Connections between chimney liners and listed double-wall fittings shall be made with listed adapter fittings designed for such purpose.

13.2.22 Chimneys and Vent Locations. Table 13.2(a) through Table 13.2(e) shall be used only for chimneys and vents not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. A Type B vent or listed chimney lining system passing through an unused masonry chimney flue shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. A Type B vent passing through an unventilated enclosure or chase insulated to a value of not less than R8 shall not be considered to be exposed to the outdoors. Where vents extend outdoors above the roof more than 5 ft (1.5 m) higher than required by Table 12.7.2, and where vents terminate in accordance with 12.7.2(1)(b), the outdoor portion of the vent shall be enclosed as required by this paragraph for vents not considered to be exposed to the outdoors, or such venting system shall be engineered. Table 13.2(f), Table 13.2(g), Table 13.2(h), and Table 13.2(i) shall be used for clay tile lined exterior masonry chimneys, provided all the following conditions are met:

(1) The vent connector is Type B double wall.
(2) At least one appliance is draft hood equipped.
(3) The combined appliance input rating is less than the maximum capacity given by Table 13.2(f) (for NAT+NAT) or Table 13.2(h) (for FAN+NAT).
(4) The input rating of each space-heating appliance is greater than the minimum input rating given by Table 13.2(g) (for NAT+NAT) or Table 13.2(i) (for FAN+NAT).
(5) The vent connector sizing is in accordance with Table 13.2(c).

Subsection 13.2.22 states that Table 13.2(a) through Table 13.2(e) are only to be used for venting systems that are not exposed to the outdoors below the roofline. This subsection aims to clarify that Type B vents installed in unventilated enclosures or chases insulated to a value of R8 could be sized as if they were installed indoors. This requirement permits these installations to be sized using Table 13.2(a) or Table 13.2(b).

Table 13.2(c) is used to determine the capacity of chimney connectors attached to chimneys exposed to the outdoors below the roofline, whereas Table 13.2(f) or Table 13.2(h) is used to determine the maximum capacity of the common vent. Table 13.2(g) and Table 13.2(i), in turn, have different minimum capacities for the common vent based on the ambient temperatures expected. The vent connectors are sized using Table 13.2(c), calculating both a minimum and maximum connector capacity for fan-assisted appliances and only the maximum connector capacity for draft hood appliances.

The alternative offered in 13.2.22 recognizes that manufacturers may produce products customized for exterior masonry chimneys and use their own instructions.

Requirements are provided in 13.2.22 for the use of exterior masonry chimneys for heating appliances. These restrictions are needed because of the high heat loss in chimneys exposed to the outdoors below the roofline in cold climates. Note that these restrictions do not apply to chimneys and vents that are not exposed to the outdoors below the roofline, because these chimneys and vents are considered to be interior chimneys.

Note that only Type B double-wall vent connectors are allowed, in order to minimize heat loss in the vent connector. At least one appliance, such as a water heater, must be draft hood–equipped.

13.2.23 Draft Hood Conversion Accessories. Draft hood conversion accessories for use with masonry chimney venting listed Category I fan-assisted appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the listed accessory manufacturer's installation instructions.

Draft hood conversion accessories are add-on kits that convert a fan-assisted appliance to a draft hood appliance by providing an opening for dilution air from the room to enter the venting system. As listed components, these accessories are provided by the appliance manufacturer and must be installed according to the instructions included with the accessory. The addition of the draft hood kit allows the appliance to be sized as a draft hood appliance, which may be beneficial when venting into masonry chimneys, especially exterior masonry chimneys.

13.2.24 Vent Connector Sizing. Vent connectors shall not be increased more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter. Vent connectors for draft hood–equipped appliances shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet diameter. Where a vent connector size(s) determined from the tables for a fan-assisted appliance(s) is smaller than the flue collar diameter, the use of the smaller size(s) shall be permitted, provided that the installation complies with all of the following conditions:

(1) Vent connectors for fan-assisted appliance flue collars 12 in. (300 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced by more than one table size [e.g., 12 in. to 10 in. (300 mm to 250 mm) is a one-size reduction], and those larger than 12 in. (300 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes [e.g., 24 in. to 20 in. (610 mm to 510 mm) is a two-size reduction].
(2) The fan-assisted appliance(s) is common vented with a draft hood–equipped appliance(s).
(3) The vent connector has a smooth interior wall.

A sudden large expansion of the vent connector diameter creates a pressure drop that may limit the draft and encourage condensation. Therefore, the vent connector diameter is limited in accordance with 13.2.24.

Note that an appliance includes either a draft hood or flue collar for connection to the vent or vent connector. The term *appliance categorized vent diameter/area* is defined in 3.3.6 as follows:

> **3.3.6 Appliance Categorized Vent Diameter/Area.** The minimum vent diameter/area permissible for Category I appliances to maintain a nonpositive vent static pressure when tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

Therefore, where connecting an appliance to a vent connector, the vent connector must be sized using Table 13.2(a) through Table13.2(e), as appropriate, to determine the minimum size connector permitted for the vent system configuration.

13.2.25 Multiple Vent and Connector Sizes. All combinations of pipe sizes, single-wall metal pipe, and double-wall metal pipe shall be allowed within any connector run(s) or within the common vent, provided ALL of the appropriate tables permit ALL of the desired sizes and types of pipe, as if they were used for the entire length of the subject connector or vent. Where single-wall and Type B double-wall metal pipes are used for vent connectors within the same venting system, the common vent shall be sized using Table 13.2(b) or Table 13.2(d) as appropriate.

Table 13.2(b) is the Type B vent single-wall metal connector table, and Table 13.2(d) is the masonry chimney single-wall metal connector table. Using these single-wall tables where combinations of single-wall and Type B vent connectors exist in the same installation provides a conservative factor for the entire installation.

13.2.26 Multiple Vent and Connector Sizes Permitted. Where a Chapter 13 table permits more than one diameter of pipe to be used for a connector or vent, all the permitted sizes shall be permitted to be used.

Subsections 13.2.25 and 13.2.26 require the installer to check the minimum and maximum capacities for the vent section for each vent type as if the entire vent section were of that size. For example, for a vent connector that is half single-wall and half Type B, the installer must demonstrate that a particular vent connector of that given length would be allowed if it were all single-wall and also if it were all Type B.

13.2.27 Interpolation. Interpolation shall be permitted in calculating capacities for vent dimensions that fall between table entries.

If the installation dimensions fall between two table entries for which there are defined values, the installer may calculate the "in between" value. This is called an interpolation and is addressed in the commentary following 13.1.15.

13.2.28 Extrapolation. Extrapolation beyond the table entries shall not be permitted.

Extrapolation is estimating a value outside the parameters of a table. For example, Table 13.2(a) provides common vent capacities for vents up to 100 ft (30 m). The user is not permitted to use the values in the table to estimate the capacity of a common vent that is 110 ft (34 m) high.

13.2.29 Sizing Vents Not Covered by Tables. For vent heights lower than 6 ft (1.8 m) and higher than shown in the tables, engineering methods shall be used to calculate vent capacities.

Subsection 13.2.29 requires that vent heights outside the parameters of the tables must be calculated and that the tables cannot be used for those vent heights.

13.2.30 Height Entries. Where the actual height of a vent falls between entries in the height column of the applicable table in Table 13.2(a) through Table 13.2(i), either of the following shall be used:

(1) Interpolation
(2) The lower appliance input rating shown in the table entries, for FAN MAX and NAT MAX column values; and the higher appliance input rating for the FAN MIN column values

TABLE 13.2(a) *Type B Double-Wall Vent*

Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*
Appliance Type:	*Category I*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*

Vent Connector Capacity

		Type B Double-Wall Vent and Connector Diameter — D (in.)																							
		3			*4*			*5*			*6*			*7*			*8*			*9*			*10*		
Vent Height H (ft)	*Connector Rise R (ft)*	*Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour*																							
		FAN		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*
		Min	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*
6	1	22	37	26	35	66	46	46	106	72	58	164	104	77	225	142	92	296	185	109	376	237	128	466	289
	2	23	41	31	37	75	55	48	121	86	60	183	124	79	253	168	95	333	220	112	424	282	131	526	345
	3	24	44	35	38	81	62	49	132	96	62	199	139	82	275	189	97	363	248	114	463	317	134	575	386
8	1	22	40	27	35	72	48	49	114	76	64	176	109	84	243	148	100	320	194	118	408	248	138	507	303
	2	23	44	32	36	80	57	51	128	90	66	195	129	86	269	175	103	356	230	121	454	294	141	564	358
	3	24	47	36	37	87	64	53	139	101	67	210	145	88	290	198	105	384	258	123	492	330	143	612	402
10	1	22	43	28	34	78	50	49	123	78	65	189	113	89	257	154	106	341	200	125	436	257	146	542	314
	2	23	47	33	36	86	59	51	136	93	67	206	134	91	282	182	109	374	238	128	479	305	149	596	372
	3	24	50	37	37	92	67	52	146	104	69	220	150	94	303	205	111	402	268	131	515	342	152	642	417
15	1	21	50	30	33	89	53	47	142	83	64	220	120	88	298	163	110	389	214	134	493	273	162	609	333
	2	22	53	35	35	96	63	49	153	99	66	235	142	91	320	193	112	419	253	137	532	323	165	658	394
	3	24	55	40	36	102	71	51	163	111	68	248	160	93	339	218	115	445	286	140	565	365	167	700	444
20	1	21	54	31	33	99	56	46	157	87	62	246	125	86	334	171	107	436	224	131	552	285	158	681	347
	2	22	57	37	34	105	66	48	167	104	64	259	149	89	354	202	110	463	265	134	587	339	161	725	414
	3	23	60	42	35	110	74	50	176	116	66	271	168	91	371	228	113	486	300	137	618	383	164	764	466
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59	45	181	93	60	288	134	83	391	182	103	512	238	125	649	305	151	802	372
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70	47	190	110	62	299	158	85	408	215	105	535	282	129	679	360	155	840	439
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79	48	198	124	64	309	178	88	423	242	108	555	317	132	706	405	158	874	494
50	1	19	71	36	30	133	64	43	216	101	57	349	145	78	477	197	97	627	257	120	797	330	144	984	403
	2	21	73	43	32	137	76	45	223	119	59	358	172	81	490	234	100	645	306	123	820	392	148	1014	478
	3	22	75	48	33	141	86	46	229	134	61	366	194	83	502	263	103	661	343	126	842	441	151	1043	538
100	1	18	82	37	28	158	66	40	262	104	53	442	150	73	611	204	91	810	266	112	1038	341	135	1285	417
	2	19	83	44	30	161	79	42	267	123	55	447	178	75	619	242	94	822	316	115	1054	405	139	1306	494
	3	20	84	50	31	163	89	44	272	138	57	452	200	78	627	272	97	834	355	118	1069	455	142	1327	555

Common Vent Capacity

	Type B Double-Wall Common Vent Diameter — D (in.)																				
	4			*5*			*6*			*7*			*8*			*9*			*10*		
Vent Height H (ft)	*Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour*																				
	FAN +FAN	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*
6	92	81	65	140	116	103	204	161	147	309	248	200	404	314	260	547	434	335	672	520	410
8	101	90	73	155	129	114	224	178	163	339	275	223	444	348	290	602	480	378	740	577	465
10	110	97	79	169	141	124	243	194	178	367	299	242	477	377	315	649	522	405	800	627	495
15	125	112	91	195	164	144	283	228	206	427	352	280	556	444	365	753	612	465	924	733	565
20	136	123	102	215	183	160	314	255	229	475	394	310	621	499	405	842	688	523	1035	826	640
30	152	138	118	244	210	185	361	297	266	547	459	360	720	585	470	979	808	605	1209	975	740
50	167	153	134	279	244	214	421	353	310	641	547	423	854	706	550	1164	977	705	1451	1188	860
100	175	163	NA	311	277	NA	489	421	NA	751	658	479	1025	873	625	1408	1215	800	1784	1502	975

TABLE 13.2(a) Continued

Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*
Appliance Type:	*Category I*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*

		Type B Double-Wall Vent and Connector Diameter — D (in.)																				
		12			*14*			*16*			*18*			*20*			*22*			*24*		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
Vent Height H (ft)	*Connector Rise R (ft)*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*	*FAN Min*	*FAN Max*	*NAT Max*
6	2	174	764	496	223	1046	653	281	1371	853	346	1772	1080	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	180	897	616	230	1231	827	287	1617	1081	352	2069	1370	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	2	186	822	516	238	1126	696	298	1478	910	365	1920	1150	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	192	952	644	244	1307	884	305	1719	1150	372	2211	1460	471	2737	1800	560	3319	2180	662	3957	2590
	6	198	1050	772	252	1445	1072	313	1902	1390	380	2434	1770	478	3018	2180	568	3665	2640	669	4373	3130
10	2	196	870	536	249	1195	730	311	1570	955	379	2049	1205	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	201	997	664	256	1371	924	318	1804	1205	387	2332	1535	486	2887	1890	581	3502	2280	686	4175	2710
	6	207	1095	792	263	1509	1118	325	1989	1455	395	2556	1865	494	3169	2290	589	3849	2760	694	4593	3270
15	2	214	967	568	272	1334	790	336	1760	1030	408	2317	1305	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	221	1085	712	279	1499	1006	344	1978	1320	416	2579	1665	523	3197	2060	624	3881	2490	734	4631	2960
	6	228	1181	856	286	1632	1222	351	2157	1610	424	2796	2025	533	3470	2510	634	4216	3030	743	5035	3600
20	2	223	1051	596	291	1443	840	357	1911	1095	430	2533	1385	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	230	1162	748	298	1597	1064	365	2116	1395	438	2778	1765	554	3447	2180	661	4190	2630	772	5005	3130
	6	237	1253	900	307	1726	1288	373	2287	1695	450	2984	2145	567	3708	2650	671	4511	3190	785	5392	3790
30	2	216	1217	632	286	1664	910	367	2183	1190	461	2891	1540	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	223	1316	792	294	1802	1160	376	2366	1510	474	3110	1920	619	3840	2365	728	4861	2860	847	5606	3410
	6	231	1400	952	303	1920	1410	384	2524	1830	485	3299	2340	632	4080	2875	741	4976	3480	860	5961	4150
50	2	206	1479	689	273	2023	1007	350	2659	1315	435	3548	1665	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	213	1561	860	281	2139	1291	359	2814	1685	447	3730	2135	580	4601	2633	709	5569	3185	851	6633	3790
	6	221	1631	1031	290	2242	1575	369	2951	2055	461	3893	2605	594	4808	3208	724	5826	3885	867	6943	4620
100	2	192	1923	712	254	2644	1050	326	3490	1370	402	4707	1740	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	4	200	1984	888	263	2731	1346	336	3606	1760	414	4842	2220	523	5982	2750	639	7254	3330	769	8650	3950
	6	208	2035	1064	272	2811	1642	346	3714	2150	426	4968	2700	539	6143	3350	654	7453	4070	786	8892	4810

Common Vent Capacity

	Type B Double-Wall Common Vent Diameter — D (in.)																				
	12			*14*			*16*			*18*			*20*			*22*			*24*		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
Vent Height H (ft)	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*
6	900	696	588	1284	990	815	1735	1336	1065	2253	1732	1345	2838	2180	1660	3488	2677	1970	4206	3226	2390
8	994	773	652	1423	1103	912	1927	1491	1190	2507	1936	1510	3162	2439	1860	3890	2998	2200	4695	3616	2680
10	1076	841	712	1542	1200	995	2093	1625	1300	2727	2113	1645	3444	2665	2030	4241	3278	2400	5123	3957	2920
15	1247	986	825	1794	1410	1158	2440	1910	1510	3184	2484	1910	4026	3133	2360	4971	3862	2790	6016	4670	3400
20	1405	1116	916	2006	1588	1290	2722	2147	1690	3561	2798	2140	4548	3552	2640	5573	4352	3120	6749	5261	3800
30	1658	1327	1025	2373	1892	1525	3220	2558	1990	4197	3326	2520	5303	4193	3110	6539	5157	3680	7940	6247	4480
50	2024	1640	1280	2911	2347	1863	3964	3183	2430	5184	4149	3075	6567	5240	3800	8116	6458	4500	9837	7813	5475
100	2569	2131	1670	3732	3076	2450	5125	4202	3200	6749	5509	4050	8597	6986	5000	10,681	8648	5920	13,004	10,499	7200

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

TABLE 13.2(b) *Type B Double-Wall Vent*

Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*
Appliance Type:	*Category I*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Single-Wall Metal Connector*

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	*Connector Rise R (ft)*	*Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter — D (in.)*																							
		3			*4*			*5*			*6*			*7*			*8*			*9*			*10*		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
		FAN		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*	*FAN*		*NAT*
		Min	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*	*Min*	*Max*	*Max*
6	1	NA	NA	26	NA	NA	46	NA	NA	71	NA	NA	102	207	223	140	262	293	183	325	373	234	447	463	286
	2	NA	NA	31	NA	NA	55	NA	NA	85	168	182	123	215	251	167	271	331	219	334	422	281	458	524	344
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	121	131	95	175	198	138	222	273	188	279	361	247	344	462	316	468	574	385
8	1	NA	NA	27	NA	NA	48	NA	NA	75	NA	NA	106	226	240	145	285	316	191	352	403	244	481	502	299
	2	NA	NA	32	NA	NA	57	125	126	89	184	193	127	234	266	173	293	353	228	360	450	292	492	560	355
	3	NA	NA	35	NA	NA	64	130	138	100	191	208	144	241	287	197	302	381	256	370	489	328	501	609	400
10	1	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	50	119	121	77	182	186	110	240	253	150	302	335	196	372	429	252	506	534	308
	2	NA	NA	33	84	85	59	124	134	91	189	203	132	248	278	183	311	369	235	381	473	302	517	589	368
	3	NA	NA	36	89	91	67	129	144	102	197	217	148	257	299	203	320	398	265	391	511	339	528	637	413
15	1	NA	NA	29	79	87	52	116	138	81	177	214	116	238	291	158	312	380	208	397	482	266	556	596	324
	2	NA	NA	34	83	94	62	121	150	97	185	230	138	246	314	189	321	411	248	407	522	317	568	646	387
	3	NA	NA	39	87	100	70	127	160	109	193	243	157	255	333	215	331	438	281	418	557	360	579	690	437
20	1	49	56	30	78	97	54	115	152	84	175	238	120	233	325	165	306	425	217	390	538	276	546	664	336
	2	52	59	36	82	103	64	120	163	101	182	252	144	243	346	197	317	453	259	400	574	331	558	709	403
	3	55	62	40	87	107	72	125	172	113	190	264	164	252	363	223	326	476	294	412	607	375	570	750	457
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89	169	278	129	226	380	175	296	497	230	378	630	294	528	779	358
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106	177	290	152	236	397	208	307	521	274	389	662	349	541	819	425
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120	185	300	172	244	412	235	316	542	309	400	690	394	555	855	482
50	1	46	69	34	75	128	60	109	207	96	162	336	137	217	460	188	284	604	245	364	768	314	507	951	384
	2	49	71	40	79	132	72	114	215	113	170	345	164	226	473	223	294	623	293	376	793	375	520	983	458
	3	52	72	45	83	136	82	119	221	123	178	353	186	235	486	252	304	640	331	387	816	423	535	1013	518
100	1	45	79	34	71	150	61	104	249	98	153	424	140	205	585	192	269	774	249	345	993	321	476	1236	393
	2	48	80	41	75	153	73	110	255	115	160	428	167	212	593	228	279	788	299	358	1011	383	490	1259	469
	3	51	81	46	79	157	85	114	260	129	168	433	190	222	603	256	289	801	339	368	1027	431	506	1280	527

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	*Type B Double-Wall Vent Diameter — D (in.)*																				
	4			*5*			*6*			*7*			*8*			*9*			*10*		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																				
	FAN +FAN	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*	*FAN +FAN*	*FAN +NAT*	*NAT +NAT*
6	NA	78	64	NA	113	99	200	158	144	304	244	196	398	310	257	541	429	332	665	515	407
8	NA	87	71	NA	126	111	218	173	159	331	269	218	436	342	285	592	473	373	730	569	460
10	NA	94	76	163	137	120	237	189	174	357	292	236	467	369	309	638	512	398	787	617	487
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200	416	343	274	544	434	357	738	599	456	905	718	553
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223	463	383	302	606	487	395	824	673	512	1013	808	626
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257	533	446	349	703	570	459	958	790	593	1183	952	723
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296	622	529	410	833	686	535	1139	954	689	1418	1157	838
100	166	153	NA	297	263	NA	469	398	NA	726	633	464	999	846	606	1378	1185	780	1741	1459	948

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

TABLE 13.2(c) Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*
Appliance Type:	*Category I*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*

Vent Connector Capacity

		Type B Double-Wall Vent Connector Diameter — D (in.)																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
Vent Height H	Connector Rise R	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
(ft)	(ft)	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	24	33	21	39	62	40	52	106	67	65	194	101	87	274	141	104	370	201	124	479	253	145	599	319
	2	26	43	28	41	79	52	53	133	85	67	230	124	89	324	173	107	436	232	127	562	300	148	694	378
	3	27	49	34	42	92	61	55	155	97	69	262	143	91	369	203	109	491	270	129	633	349	151	795	439
8	1	24	39	22	39	72	41	55	117	69	71	213	105	94	304	148	113	414	210	134	539	267	156	682	335
	2	26	47	29	40	87	53	57	140	86	73	246	127	97	350	179	116	473	240	137	615	311	160	776	394
	3	27	52	34	42	97	62	59	159	98	75	269	145	99	383	206	119	517	276	139	672	358	163	848	452
10	1	24	42	22	38	80	42	55	130	71	74	232	108	101	324	153	120	444	216	142	582	277	165	739	348
	2	26	50	29	40	93	54	57	153	87	76	261	129	103	366	184	123	498	247	145	652	321	168	825	407
	3	27	55	35	41	105	63	58	170	100	78	284	148	106	397	209	126	540	281	147	705	366	171	893	463
15	1	24	48	23	38	93	44	54	154	74	72	277	114	100	384	164	125	511	229	153	658	297	184	824	375
	2	25	55	31	39	105	55	56	174	89	74	299	134	103	419	192	128	558	260	156	718	339	187	900	432
	3	26	59	35	41	115	64	57	189	102	76	319	153	105	448	215	131	597	292	159	760	382	190	960	486
20	1	24	52	24	37	102	46	53	172	77	71	313	119	98	437	173	123	584	239	150	752	312	180	943	397
	2	25	58	31	39	114	56	55	190	91	73	335	138	101	467	199	126	625	270	153	805	354	184	1011	452
	3	26	63	35	40	123	65	57	204	104	75	353	157	104	493	222	129	661	301	156	851	396	187	1067	505
30	1	24	54	25	37	111	48	52	192	82	69	357	127	96	504	187	119	680	255	145	883	337	175	1115	432
	2	25	60	32	38	122	58	54	208	95	72	376	145	99	531	209	122	715	287	149	928	378	179	1171	484
	3	26	64	36	40	131	66	56	221	107	74	392	163	101	554	233	125	746	317	152	968	418	182	1220	535
50	1	23	51	25	36	116	51	51	209	89	67	405	143	92	582	213	115	798	294	140	1049	392	168	1334	506
	2	24	59	32	37	127	61	53	225	102	70	421	161	95	604	235	118	827	326	143	1085	433	172	1379	558
	3	26	64	36	39	135	69	55	237	115	72	435	180	98	624	260	121	854	357	147	1118	474	176	1421	611
100	1	23	46	24	35	108	50	49	208	92	65	428	155	88	640	237	109	907	334	134	1222	454	161	1589	596
	2	24	53	31	37	120	60	51	224	105	67	444	174	92	660	260	113	933	368	138	1253	497	165	1626	651
	3	25	59	35	38	130	68	53	237	118	69	458	193	94	679	285	116	956	399	141	1282	540	169	1661	705

Common Vent Capacity

	Minimum Internal Area of Masonry Chimney Flue (in.^{2})																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
Vent Height H (ft)	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +FAN	NAT +NAT
6	NA	74	25	NA	119	46	NA	178	71	NA	257	103	NA	351	143	NA	458	188	NA	582	246	1041	853	NA
8	NA	80	28	NA	130	53	NA	193	82	NA	279	119	NA	384	163	NA	501	218	724	636	278	1144	937	408
10	NA	84	31	NA	138	56	NA	207	90	NA	299	131	NA	409	177	606	538	236	776	686	302	1226	1010	454
15	NA	NA	36	NA	152	67	NA	233	106	NA	334	152	523	467	212	682	611	283	874	781	365	1374	1156	546
20	NA	NA	41	NA	NA	75	NA	250	122	NA	368	172	565	508	243	742	668	325	955	858	419	1513	1286	648
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	270	137	NA	404	198	615	564	278	816	747	381	1062	969	496	1702	1473	749
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	620	328	879	831	461	1165	1089	606	1905	1692	922
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	348	NA	NA	499	NA	NA	669	2053	1921	1058

TABLE 13.2(d) Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	***Two or More***
Appliance Type:	***Category I***
Appliance Vent Connection:	***Single-Wall Metal Connector***

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Connector Rise R (ft)	Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter — D (in.)																							
		3			4			5			6			7			8			9			10		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
6	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	39	NA	NA	66	179	191	100	231	271	140	292	366	200	362	474	252	499	594	316
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	NA	NA	84	186	227	123	239	321	172	301	432	231	373	557	299	509	696	376
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	61	134	153	97	193	258	142	247	365	202	309	491	269	381	634	348	519	793	437
8	1	NA	NA	21	NA	NA	40	NA	NA	68	195	208	103	250	298	146	313	407	207	387	530	263	529	672	331
	2	NA	NA	28	NA	NA	52	137	139	85	202	240	125	258	343	177	323	465	238	397	607	309	540	766	391
	3	NA	NA	34	NA	NA	62	143	156	98	210	264	145	266	376	205	332	509	274	407	663	356	551	838	450
10	1	NA	NA	22	NA	NA	41	130	151	70	202	225	106	267	316	151	333	434	213	410	571	273	558	727	343
	2	NA	NA	29	NA	NA	53	136	150	86	210	255	128	276	358	181	343	489	244	420	640	317	569	813	403
	3	NA	NA	34	97	102	62	143	166	99	217	277	147	284	389	207	352	530	279	430	694	363	580	880	459
15	1	NA	NA	23	NA	NA	43	129	151	73	199	271	112	268	376	161	349	502	225	445	646	291	623	808	366
	2	NA	NA	30	92	103	54	135	170	88	207	295	132	277	411	189	359	548	256	456	706	334	634	884	424
	3	NA	NA	34	96	112	63	141	185	101	215	315	151	286	439	213	368	586	289	466	755	378	646	945	479
20	1	NA	NA	23	87	99	45	128	167	76	197	303	117	265	425	169	345	569	235	439	734	306	614	921	387
	2	NA	NA	30	91	111	55	134	185	90	205	325	136	274	455	195	355	610	266	450	787	348	627	986	443
	3	NA	NA	35	96	119	64	140	199	103	213	343	154	282	481	219	365	644	298	461	831	391	639	1042	496
30	1	NA	NA	24	86	108	47	126	187	80	193	347	124	259	492	183	338	665	250	430	864	330	600	1089	421
	2	NA	NA	31	91	119	57	132	203	93	201	366	142	269	518	205	348	699	282	442	908	372	613	1145	473
	3	NA	NA	35	95	127	65	138	216	105	209	381	160	277	540	229	358	729	312	452	946	412	626	1193	524
50	1	NA	NA	24	85	113	50	124	204	87	188	392	139	252	567	208	328	778	287	417	1022	383	582	1302	492
	2	NA	NA	31	89	123	60	130	218	100	196	408	158	262	588	230	339	806	320	429	1058	425	596	1346	545
	3	NA	NA	35	94	131	68	136	231	112	205	422	176	271	607	255	349	831	351	440	1090	466	610	1386	597
100	1	NA	NA	23	84	104	49	122	200	89	182	410	151	243	617	232	315	875	328	402	1181	444	560	1537	580
	2	NA	NA	30	88	115	59	127	215	102	190	425	169	253	636	254	326	899	361	415	1210	488	575	1570	634
	3	NA	NA	34	93	124	67	133	228	115	199	438	188	262	654	279	337	921	392	427	1238	529	589	1604	687

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Minimum Internal Area of Masonry Chimney Flue (in.^{2})																							
	12			19			28			38			50			63			78			113		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour																							
	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +NAT	NAT +NAT	FAN +FAN	FAN +FAN	NAT +NAT
6	NA	NA	25	NA	118	45	NA	176	71	NA	255	102	NA	348	142	NA	455	187	NA	579	245	NA	846	NA
8	NA	NA	28	NA	128	52	NA	190	81	NA	276	118	NA	380	162	NA	497	217	NA	633	277	1136	928	405
10	NA	NA	31	NA	136	56	NA	205	89	NA	295	129	NA	405	175	NA	532	234	771	680	300	1216	1000	450
15	NA	NA	36	NA	NA	66	NA	230	105	NA	335	150	NA	400	210	677	602	280	866	772	360	1359	1139	540
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	74	NA	247	120	NA	362	170	NA	503	240	765	661	321	947	849	415	1495	1264	640
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	135	NA	398	195	NA	558	275	808	739	377	1052	957	490	1682	1447	740
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	612	325	NA	821	456	1152	1076	600	1879	1672	910
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	494	NA	NA	663	2006	1885	1046

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

TABLE 13.2(e) Single-Wall Metal Pipe or Type B Asbestos Cement Vent

Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*
Appliance Type:	*Draft Hood–Equipped*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Direct to Pipe or Vent*

Vent Connector Capacity

Total Vent Height H (ft)	*Connector Rise R (ft)*	*Vent Connector Diameter — D (in.)*					
		3	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*
		Maximum Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
6–8	1	21	40	68	102	146	205
	2	28	53	86	124	178	235
	3	34	61	98	147	204	275
15	1	23	44	77	117	179	240
	2	30	56	92	134	194	265
	3	35	64	102	155	216	298
30 and up	1	25	49	84	129	190	270
	2	31	58	97	145	211	295
	3	36	68	107	164	232	321

Common Vent Capacity

Total Vent Height H (ft)	*Common Vent Diameter — D (in.)*						
	4	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*10*	*12*
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour						
6	48	78	111	155	205	320	NA
8	55	89	128	175	234	365	505
10	59	95	136	190	250	395	560
15	71	115	168	228	305	480	690
20	80	129	186	260	340	550	790
30	NA	147	215	300	400	650	940
50	NA	NA	NA	360	490	810	1190

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

Note: See Figure F.1(f) and Section 13.2.

TABLE 13.2(f) Exterior Masonry Chimney

Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*
Appliance Type:	*NAT + NAT*
Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*

Combined Appliance Maximum Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
Vent Height H (ft)	*Internal Area of Chimney (in.^{2})*							
	12	*19*	*28*	*38*	*50*	*63*	*78*	*113*
6	25	46	71	103	143	188	246	NA
8	28	53	82	119	163	218	278	408
10	31	56	90	131	177	236	302	454
15	NA	67	106	152	212	283	365	546
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	325	419	648
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	496	749
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	922
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

TABLE 13.2(g) *Exterior Masonry Chimney*

					Number of Appliances:		*Two or More*	
					Appliance Type:		*NAT + NAT*	
					Appliance Vent Connection:		*Type B Double-Wall Connector*	
Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-Heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
Vent Height H (ft)	***Internal Area of Chimney (in.²)***							
	12	***19***	***28***	***38***	***50***	***63***	***78***	***113***
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 37°F or greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	NA
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	579
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 27°F to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	NA	NA	180	212	NA
8	0	0	82	NA	NA	187	214	263
10	0	51	NA	NA	NA	201	225	265
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	763
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 17°F to 26°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	264	352
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	278	358
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	331	398
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	862
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 5°F to 16°F							
6	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
8	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
10	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	430
15	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	485
20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	547
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 4°F or lower Not recommended for any vent configurations							

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.² = 645 mm², 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, °C = (°F − 32)/1.8.

Note: See Figure F.2.4 for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.

TABLE 13.2(h) *Exterior Masonry Chimney*

						Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*
						Appliance Type:	*FAN + NAT*
						Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*

Combined Appliance Maximum Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
Vent Height H (ft)	***Internal Area of Chimney (in.^{2})***							
	12	***19***	***28***	***38***	***50***	***63***	***78***	***113***
6	74	119	178	257	351	458	582	853
8	80	130	193	279	384	501	636	937
10	84	138	207	299	409	538	686	1010
15	NA	152	233	334	467	611	781	1156
20	NA	NA	250	368	508	668	858	1286
30	NA	NA	NA	404	564	747	969	1473
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	831	1089	1692
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1921

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

TABLE 13.2(i) *Exterior Masonry Chimney*

					Number of Appliances:	*Two or More*		
					Appliance Type:	*FAN + NAT*		
					Appliance Vent Connection:	*Type B Double-Wall Connector*		
Minimum Allowable Input Rating of Space-Heating Appliance in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
Vent Height H (ft)	*Internal Area of Chimney (in.²)*							
	12	*19*	*28*	*38*	*50*	*63*	*78*	*113*
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 37°F or greater							
6	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
8	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
10	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
15	NA	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
20	NA	NA	123	190	249	184	0	0
30	NA	NA	NA	334	398	393	334	0
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	714	707	579
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1600
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 27°F to 36°F							
6	0	0	68	116	156	180	212	266
8	0	0	82	127	167	187	214	263
10	0	51	97	141	183	201	225	265
15	NA	111	142	183	233	253	274	305
20	NA	NA	187	230	284	307	330	362
30	NA	NA	NA	330	319	419	445	485
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	672	705	763
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1554
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 17°F to 26°F							
6	0	55	99	141	182	215	259	349
8	52	74	111	154	197	226	264	352
10	NA	90	125	169	214	245	278	358
15	NA	NA	167	212	263	296	331	398
20	NA	NA	212	258	316	352	387	457
30	NA	NA	NA	362	429	470	507	581
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	723	766	862
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1669
	Local 99% winter design temperature: 5°F to 16°F							
6	NA	78	121	166	214	252	301	416
8	NA	94	135	182	230	269	312	423
10	NA	111	149	198	250	289	331	430
15	NA	NA	193	247	305	346	393	485
20	NA	NA	NA	293	360	408	450	547
30	NA	NA	NA	377	450	531	580	682
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	797	853	972
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	1833
	Local 99% winter design temperature: –10°F to 4°F							
6	NA	NA	145	196	249	296	349	484
8	NA	NA	159	213	269	320	371	494
10	NA	NA	175	231	292	339	397	513
15	NA	NA	NA	283	351	404	457	586
20	NA	NA	NA	333	408	468	528	650
30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	603	667	805
50	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	955	1003
100	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Local 99% winter design temperature: –11°F or lower Not recommended for any vent configurations							

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.² = 645 mm², 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW.

Note: See Figure F.2.4 for a map showing local 99 percent winter design temperatures in the United States.

Explanatory Material

A

The material contained in Annex A of NFPA 54 is not part of the requirements of this code but is included with the code for informational purposes only. For the convenience of users of this handbook, Annex A text is interspersed with the text of Chapter 1 through Chapter 13 and, therefore, is not repeated here.

Sizing and Capacities of Gas Piping

B

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex B provides additional information on the sizing of gas piping systems beyond that provided in Chapters 5 and 6. Instructions are provided for sizing using both the longest length method (B.4.1) and the branch length method (B.4.2).

In addition, the hybrid pressure method, used for systems with two or more pressures (and a pressure regulator), is discussed in B.4.3. Pipe sizing examples also are provided for these methods in B.7.1, B.7.2, and B.7.3. B.7.4 provides an example for sizing existing systems that have been modified through the addition of new corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) branches.

B.1 Sizing Factors

The first goal of determining the pipe sizing of a fuel gas piping system is to be assured that the gas pressure at the inlet to each appliance is sufficient. The majority of systems are residential, and the appliances all have the same, or nearly the same, requirement for minimum gas pressure at the appliance inlet. This pressure is about 5 in. (1.2 kPa) w.c., which is enough for proper operation of the appliance regulator to deliver about 3.5 in. (0.87 kPa) w.c. to the burner itself. The pressure drop in the piping is subtracted from the source delivery pressure to verify that the minimum is available at the appliance.

There are other systems, however, where the required inlet pressure to the different appliances could be quite varied. In such cases, the greatest inlet pressure required must be satisfied, as well as the farthest appliance, which is almost always the critical appliance in small systems.

There is an additional requirement to be observed besides the capacity of the system at 100 percent flow. That requirement is that at minimum flow, the pressure at the inlet to any appliance does not exceed the pressure rating of the appliance regulator. This factor would seldom be of concern in small systems if the source pressure is ½ psi (14 in. w.c.) (3.4 kPa) or less, but it should be verified for systems with greater gas pressure at the point of supply.

Section B.1 recognizes that each appliance must be supplied with the minimum gas pressure required by the appliance for proper operation at its inlet. The farthest appliance and the highest appliance inlet demands must be met.

B.2 General Pipe Sizing Considerations

To determine the size of piping used in a gas piping system, the following factors must be considered:

(1) Allowable loss in pressure from point of delivery to appliance
(2) Maximum gas demand

(3) Length of piping and number of fittings
(4) Specific gravity of the gas
(5) Diversity factor

For any gas piping system, or special appliance, or for conditions other than those covered by the tables provided in this code, such as longer runs, greater gas demands, or greater pressure drops, the size of each gas piping system should be determined by standard engineering practices acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

The "standard engineering practices" addressed in Section B.2 include calculations using flow equations recognized in engineering textbooks.

B.3 Description of Tables

The tables in Sections 6.2 and 6.3 of Chapter 6 provide the designer with information for piping flow capacity for gas of 0.60 specific gravity (i.e., natural gas) and for propane. The tables are organized in the following order:

1. Gas covered (natural gas, propane)
2. Piping material (steel, copper, CSST, polyethylene)
3. Pressure (lowest to highest)

Tables 6.2(a) through 6.2(x) are used for natural gas (0.60 specific gravity). Tables 6.3(a) through 6.3(m) are used for propane. For each gas, the tables for metallic tubing follow the tables for steel pipe, and tables for CSST and polyethylene pipe and tubing follow the tables for metallic tubing.

Table A.5.4.2.1 shows approximate gas input for various appliances. Table B.3.2 shows equivalent lengths for fittings. Note, however, that if the system contains "typical" fittings, no allowance for fittings needs to be made to use the pipe sizing tables.

The capacities of Tables 6.2(a) through 6.2(x) are given in standard cubic feet per hour, so the heating capacity can be obtained by multiplying the tabular value by the heating value of the gas. Because the heating value of natural gas is approximately 1000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3), the tabular values can be taken as the heating value in MBH (thousands of Btu per hour) for natural gas.

Tables 6.3(a) through 6.3(m) for propane capacities are in thousands of Btu per hour, which is commonly used for propane system calculations.

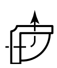
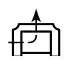
The pipe sizing tables include flow capacities for several initial pressures and for various pressure losses, so most smaller jobs will be covered by one of the tables. The explanation in Section B.4 and the examples in Section B.7 illustrate how to use the tables.

B.3.1 General. The quantity of gas to be provided at each outlet should be determined, whenever possible, directly from the manufacturer's gas input Btu/hr rating of the appliance to be installed, adjusted for altitude where appropriate. In case the ratings of the appliances to be installed are not known, Table A.5.4.2.1 shows the approximate consumption (in Btu per hour) of certain types of typical household appliances.

To obtain the cubic feet per hour of gas required, divide the total Btu/hr input of all appliances by the average Btu heating value per cubic foot of the gas. The average Btu per cubic foot of the gas in the area of the installation can be obtained from the serving gas supplier.

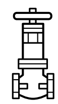
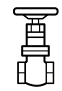
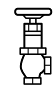
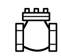
B.3.2 Low-Pressure Natural Gas Tables. Capacities for gas at low pressure [less than 2.0 psi (14 kPa gauge)] in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 specific gravity gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Table 6.2(a) through Table 6.2(d) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe, in Table 6.2(h) through Table 6.2(k) for smooth wall semirigid tubing, in Table 6.2(o) through Table 6.2(q) for corrugated stainless steel tubing, and in Table 6.2(t) and Table 6.2(u) for polyethylene plastic pipe. Table 6.2(a) and Table 6.2(h) are based on a pressure drop of 0.3 in. w.c. (75 Pa), whereas Table 6.2(b), Table 6.2(i), and Table 6.2(o) are based on a pressure drop of 0.5 in. w.c. (125 Pa). Table 6.2(j), Table 6.2(p), and Table 6.2(q) are special low-pressure applications based on pressure drops greater than 0.5 in. w.c. (125 Pa). In using Table 6.2(j), Table 6.2(p), or Table 6.2(q), an allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) should be considered for any piping run with four or more fittings *(see Table B.3.2)*.

TABLE B.3.2 *Equivalent Lengths of Pipe Fittings and Valves*

		Screwed Fittings[1]				***90° Welding Elbows and Smooth Bends***[2]					
		45°/Ell	***90°/Ell***	***180° Close Return Bends***	***Tee***	***R/d = 1***	***R/d = 1⅓***	***R/d = 2***	***R/d = 4***	***R/d = 6***	***R/d = 8***
	k factor =	***0.42***	***0.90***	***2.00***	***1.80***	***0.48***	***0.36***	***0.27***	***0.21***	***0.27***	***0.36***
	L/d'ratio[4]n =	***14***	***30***	***67***	***60***	***16***	***12***	***9***	***7***	***9***	***12***
Nominal Pipe Size (in.)	***Inside Diam. d (in.), Sched. 40***[6]										
L = Equivalent Length in Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard Weight) Straight Pipe[6]											
½	0.622	0.73	1.55	3.47	3.10	0.83	0.62	0.47	0.36	0.47	0.62
¾	0.824	0.96	2.06	4.60	4.12	1.10	0.82	0.62	0.48	0.62	0.82
1	1.049	1.22	2.62	5.82	5.24	1.40	1.05	0.79	0.61	0.79	1.05
1¼	1.380	1.61	3.45	7.66	6.90	1.84	1.38	1.03	0.81	1.03	1.38
1½	1.610	1.88	4.02	8.95	8.04	2.14	1.61	1.21	0.94	1.21	1.61
2	2.067	2.41	5.17	11.5	10.3	2.76	2.07	1.55	1.21	1.55	2.07
2½	2.469	2.88	6.16	13.7	12.3	3.29	2.47	1.85	1.44	1.85	2.47
3	3.068	3.58	7.67	17.1	15.3	4.09	3.07	2.30	1.79	2.30	3.07
4	4.026	4.70	10.1	22.4	20.2	5.37	4.03	3.02	2.35	3.02	4.03
5	5.047	5.88	12.6	28.0	25.2	6.72	5.05	3.78	2.94	3.78	5.05
6	6.065	7.07	15.2	33.8	30.4	8.09	6.07	4.55	3.54	4.55	6.07
8	7.981	9.31	20.0	44.6	40.0	10.6	7.98	5.98	4.65	5.98	7.98
10	10.02	11.7	25.0	55.7	50.0	13.3	10.0	7.51	5.85	7.51	10.0
12	11.94	13.9	29.8	66.3	59.6	15.9	11.9	8.95	6.96	8.95	11.9
14	13.13	15.3	32.8	73.0	65.6	17.5	13.1	9.85	7.65	9.85	13.1
16	15.00	17.5	37.5	83.5	75.0	20.0	15.0	11.2	8.75	11.2	15.0
18	16.88	19.7	42.1	93.8	84.2	22.5	16.9	12.7	9.85	12.7	16.9
20	18.81	22.0	47.0	105	94.0	25.1	18.8	14.1	11.0	14.1	18.8
24	22.63	26.4	56.6	126	113	30.2	22.6	17.0	13.2	17.0	22.6

(continues)

TABLE B.3.2 *Continued*

Miter Elbows[3] *(No. of Miters)*					*Welding Tees*		*Valves (Screwed, Flanged, or Welded)*			
1–45°	***1–60°***	***1–90°***	***2–90°***	***3–90°***	***Forged***	***Miter***[3]	***Gate***	***Globe***	***Angle***	***Swing Check***
0.45	***0.90***	***1.80***	***0.60***	***0.45***	***1.35***	***1.80***	***0.21***	***10***	***5.0***	***2.5***
15	***30***	***60***	***20***	***15***	***45***	***60***	***7***	***333***	***167***	***83***
			5 	5 						
L = Equivalent Length in Feet of Schedule 40 (Standard Weight) Straight Pipe[6]										
0.78	1.55	3.10	1.04	0.78	2.33	3.10	0.36	17.3	8.65	4.32
1.03	2.06	4.12	1.37	1.03	3.09	4.12	0.48	22.9	11.4	5.72
1.31	2.62	5.24	1.75	1.31	3.93	5.24	0.61	29.1	14.6	7.27
1.72	3.45	6.90	2.30	1.72	5.17	6.90	0.81	38.3	19.1	9.58
2.01	4.02	8.04	2.68	2.01	6.04	8.04	0.94	44.7	22.4	11.2
2.58	5.17	10.3	3.45	2.58	7.75	10.3	1.21	57.4	28.7	14.4
3.08	6.16	12.3	4.11	3.08	9.25	12.3	1.44	68.5	34.3	17.1
3.84	7.67	15.3	5.11	3.84	11.5	15.3	1.79	85.2	42.6	21.3
5.04	10.1	20.2	6.71	5.04	15.1	20.2	2.35	112	56.0	28.0
6.30	12.6	25.2	8.40	6.30	18.9	25.2	2.94	140	70.0	35.0
7.58	15.2	30.4	10.1	7.58	22.8	30.4	3.54	168	84.1	42.1
9.97	20.0	40.0	13.3	9.97	29.9	40.0	4.65	222	111	55.5
12.5	25.0	50.0	16.7	12.5	37.6	50.0	5.85	278	139	69.5
14.9	29.8	59.6	19.9	14.9	44.8	59.6	6.96	332	166	83.0
16.4	32.8	65.6	21.9	16.4	49.2	65.6	7.65	364	182	91.0
18.8	37.5	75.0	25.0	18.8	56.2	75.0	8.75	417	208	104
21.1	42.1	84.2	28.1	21.1	63.2	84.2	9.85	469	234	117
23.5	47.0	94.0	31.4	23.5	70.6	94.0	11.0	522	261	131
28.3	56.6	113	37.8	28.3	85.0	113	13.2	629	314	157

For SI units, 1 ft = 0.305 m.
Note: Values for welded fittings are for conditions where bore is not obstructed by weld spatter or backing rings. If appreciably obstructed, use values for "Screwed Fittings."
[1]Flanged fittings have three-fourths the resistance of screwed elbows and tees.
[2]Tabular figures give the extra resistance due to curvature alone to which should be added the full length of travel.
[3]Small size socket-welding fittings are equivalent to miter elbows and miter tees.
[4]Equivalent resistance in number of diameters of straight pipe computed for a value of $f = 0.0075$ from the relation $n = k/4f$.
[5]For condition of minimum resistance where the centerline length of each miter is between d and $2\frac{1}{2}d$.
[6]For pipe having other inside diameters, the equivalent resistance may be computed from the above n values.
Source: From *Piping Handbook*, Table XIV, pp. 100–101. Used by permission of McGraw-Hill Book Company.

B.3.3 Undiluted LP-Gas Tables. Capacities in thousands of Btu per hour of undiluted LP-Gases based on a pressure drop of 0.5 in. w.c. (125 Pa) for different sizes and lengths are shown in Table 6.3(d) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe, in Table 6.3(f) for smooth wall semirigid tubing, in Table 6.3(h) for corrugated stainless steel tubing, and in Table 6.3(k) and Table 6.3(m) for polyethylene plastic pipe and tubing. Table 6.3(i) and Table 6.3(j) for corrugated stainless steel tubing and Table 6.3(l) for polyethylene plastic pipe are based on operating pressures greater than 0.5 psi (3.5 kPa) and pressure drops greater than 0.5 in. w.c. (125 Pa).

In using these tables, an allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) should be considered for any piping run with four or more fittings *(see Table B.3.2)*.

B.3.4 Natural Gas Specific Gravity. Gas piping systems that are to be supplied with gas of a specific gravity of 0.70 or less can be sized directly from the tables provided in this code, unless the authority having jurisdiction specifies that a gravity factor be applied. Where the specific gravity of the gas is greater than 0.70, the gravity factor should be applied.

Application of the gravity factor converts the figures given in the tables provided in this code to capacities for another gas of different specific gravity. Such application is accomplished by multiplying the capacities given in the tables by the multipliers shown in Table B.3.4. In case the exact specific gravity does not appear in the table, choose the next higher value specific gravity shown.

TABLE B.3.4 *SPECIAL USE: Multipliers to Be Used with Tables 6.2(a) Through 6.2(v) When the Specific Gravity of the Gas Is Other than 0.60*

Specific Gravity	*Multiplier*	*Specific Gravity*	*Multiplier*
0.35	1.31	1.00	0.78
0.40	1.23	1.10	0.74
0.45	1.16	1.20	0.71
0.50	1.10	1.30	0.68
0.55	1.04	1.40	0.66
0.60	1.00	1.50	0.63
0.65	0.96	1.60	0.61
0.70	0.93	1.70	0.59
0.75	0.90	1.80	0.58
0.80	0.87	1.90	0.56
0.85	0.84	2.00	0.55
0.90	0.82	2.10	0.54

B.3.5 Higher Pressure Natural Gas Tables. Capacities for gas at pressures of 2 psi (14 kPa) and greater in cubic feet per hour of 0.60 specific gravity gas for different sizes and lengths are shown in Table 6.2(e) and Table 6.2(f) for iron pipe or equivalent rigid pipe, Table 6.2(l) through Table 6.2(n) for semirigid tubing, Table 6.2(r) and Table 6.2(s) for corrugated stainless steel tubing, and Table 6.2(u) and Table 6.2(v) for polyethylene plastic pipe.

B.4 Use of Capacity Tables

There are several methods that can be used to size pipes. These methods include the longest length method, the branch length method, the hybrid pressure method, and the pressure drop per 100 ft method. The pros and cons of using each method are shown in Commentary Table B.1, and the sizing methods are explained in B.4.1 through B.4.4.

COMMENTARY TABLE B.1 *Pros and Cons of Sizing Methods*

Sizing Method	Pros	Cons
Longest Length Method	▪ Simplest pipe sizing method to use ▪ Always works ▪ Provides some capacity for future system expansion	▪ May provide larger than necessary pipe sizing for closer outlets ▪ May result in a costlier installation
Branch Length Method	▪ May provide smaller yet adequate pipe sizes for branches ▪ Simpler than engineered methods (although not as simple as the longest length method)	▪ Not as easy to use as the longest length method ▪ Requires training
Hybrid Pressure Method	▪ May provide a smaller line from the meter to the regulator ▪ Simpler than engineered methods ▪ May allow a manifold system of smaller branches (CSST) and semi-rigid copper tubing	▪ May require a vent on the regulator if the regulator is not outdoors
(The pressure drop per 100 ft method is a method to optimize existing piping systems and cannot be compared with the other methods in this table.)		

B.4.1 The Longest Length Method. This sizing method is conservative in its approach by applying the maximum operating conditions in the system as the norm for the system and by setting the length of pipe used to size any given part of the piping system to the maximum value.

To determine the size of each section of gas piping in a system within the range of the capacity tables, proceed as follows (*also see sample calculations included in this annex*):

(1) Divide the piping system into appropriate segments consistent with the presence of tees, branch lines, and main runs. For each segment, determine the gas load (assuming all appliances operate simultaneously) and its overall length. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table B.3.2 should be considered for piping segments that include four or more fittings.

(2) Determine the gas demand of each appliance to be attached to the piping system. Where Table 6.2(a) through Table 6.2(x) are to be used to select the piping size, calculate the gas demand in terms of cubic feet per hour for each piping system outlet. Where Table 6.3(a) through Table 6.3(m) are to be used to select the piping size, calculate the gas demand in terms of thousands of Btu per hour for each piping system outlet.

(3) Where the piping system is for use with other than undiluted LP-Gases, determine the design system pressure, the allowable loss in pressure (pressure drop), and specific gravity of the gas to be used in the piping system.

(4) Determine the length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet in the building/piping system.

(5) In the appropriate capacity table, select the row showing the measured length or the next longer length if the table does not give the exact length. This length is the only length used in determining the size of any section of gas piping. If the gravity factor is to be applied, the values in the selected row of the table are multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table B.3.4.

(6) Use this horizontal row to locate ALL gas demand figures for this particular system of piping.

(7) Starting at the most remote outlet, find the gas demand for that outlet in the horizontal row just selected. If the exact figure of demand is not shown, choose the next larger figure left in the row.
(8) Opposite this demand figure, in the first row at the top, the correct size of gas piping will be found.
(9) Proceed in a similar manner for each outlet and each section of gas piping. For each section of piping, determine the total gas demand supplied by that section.

When a large number of piping components (such as elbows, tees, and valves) are installed in a pipe run, additional pressure loss can be accounted for by the use of equivalent lengths. Pressure loss across any piping component can be equated to the pressure drop through a length of pipe. The equivalent length of a combination of only four elbows/tees can result in a jump to the next larger length row, resulting in a significant reduction in capacity. The equivalent lengths in feet shown in Table B.3.2 have been computed on a basis that the inside diameter corresponds to that of Schedule 40 (standard weight) steel pipe, which is close enough for most purposes involving other schedules of pipe. Where a more specific solution for equivalent length is desired, this can be made by multiplying the actual inside diameter of the pipe in inches by $n/12$, or the actual inside diameter in feet by n. N can be read from the table heading. The equivalent length values can be used with reasonable accuracy for copper or copper alloy fittings and bends, although the resistance per foot of copper or copper alloy pipe is less than that of steel. For copper or copper alloy valves, however, the equivalent length of pipe should be taken as 45 percent longer than the values in the table, which are for steel pipe.

The longest length method is conservative and sizes all branches using the longest length of piping from the point of delivery in the system.

B.4.2 The Branch Length Method. This sizing method reduces the amount of conservatism built into the traditional Longest Length Method. The longest length as measured from the meter to the farthest remote appliance is used only to size the initial parts of the overall piping system. The Branch Length Method is applied in the following manner:

(1) Determine the gas load for each of the connected appliances.
(2) Starting from the meter, divide the piping system into a number of connected segments, and determine the length and amount of gas that each segment would carry, assuming that all appliances were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table B.3.2 should be considered for piping segments that include four or more fittings.
(3) Determine the distance from the outlet of the gas meter to the appliance farthest removed from the meter.
(4) Using the longest distance (found in Step 3), size each piping segment from the meter to the most remote appliance outlet.
(5) For each of these piping segments, use the longest length and the calculated gas load for all of the connected appliances for the segment and begin the sizing process in Steps 6 through 8.
(6) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating conditions and piping material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the next larger distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops requires the use of a different sizing table but does not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops requires the approval of both the authority having jurisdiction and the local gas serving utility.
(7) Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.

(8) Read up the table column and select the appropriate pipe size in the top row. Repeat Steps 6, 7, and 8 for each pipe segment in the longest run.
(9) Size each remaining section of branch piping not previously sized by measuring the distance from the gas meter location to the most remote outlet in that branch, using the gas load of attached appliances, and follow the procedures of Steps 2 through 8.

The branch length method, which is described in B.4.2, was added to the code in the 2002 edition and uses the tables in Chapter 6, as does the longest length method. Refer to Figure B.7.3 to see an example of how this method is used. The branch length method allows branches to be sized using the length of each branch from the point of delivery.

The longest pipe path from the point of delivery to the most remote appliance is sized at its length. The branches serving other, closer appliances are sized at the length of each outlet from the point of delivery. There will be no difference in the pipe size serving the most remote outlet, whether the longest length method or the branch length method is used. However, outlets located closer to the point of delivery may have smaller pipe sizes when the branch length method is used.

B.4.3 Hybrid Pressure Method. The sizing of a 2 psi (14 kPa) gas piping system is performed using the traditional Longest Length Method but with modifications. The 2 psi (14 kPa) system consists of two independent pressure zones, and each zone is sized separately. The Hybrid Pressure Method is applied using the following steps.

The 2 psi (14 kPa) section (from the meter to the line regulator) is sized as follows:

(1) Calculate the gas load (by adding up the nameplate ratings) from all connected appliances. (In certain circumstances the installed gas load can be increased up to 50 percent to accommodate future addition of appliances.) Ensure that the line regulator capacity is adequate for the calculated gas load and that the required pressure drop (across the regulator) for that capacity does not exceed ¾ psi (5.2 kPa) for a 2 psi (14 kPa) system. If the pressure drop across the regulator is too high (for the connected gas load), select a larger regulator.
(2) Measure the distance from the meter to the line regulator located inside the building.
(3) If multiple line regulators are used, measure the distance from the meter to the regulator farthest removed from the meter.
(4) The maximum allowable pressure drop for the 2 psi (14 kPa) section is 1 psi (7 kPa).
(5) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on piping material) for 2 psi (14 kPa) systems with a 1 psi (7 kPa) pressure drop, find this distance in the first column, or the closest larger distance if the exact distance is not listed.
(6) Trace across this row until the gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.
(7) Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate pipe size.
(8) If multiple regulators are used in this portion of the piping system, each line segment must be sized for its actual gas load, using the longest length previously determined.

The low-pressure section (all piping downstream of the line regulator) is sized as follows:

(1) Determine the gas load for each of the connected appliances.
(2) Starting from the line regulator, divide the piping system into a number of connected segments and/or independent parallel piping segments and determine the amount of gas that each segment would carry, assuming that all appliances were operated simultaneously. An allowance (in equivalent length of pipe) as determined from Table B.3.2 should be considered for piping segments that include four or more fittings.
(3) For each piping segment, use the actual length or longest length (if there are sub-branch lines) and the calculated gas load for that segment and begin the sizing process as follows:
   (a) Referring to the appropriate sizing table (based on operating pressure and piping material), find the longest length distance in the first column or the closest larger

distance if the exact distance is not listed. The use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops requires the use of a different sizing table but does not alter the sizing methodology. In many cases, the use of alternative operating pressures and/or pressure drops could require the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

(b) Trace across this row until the appliance gas load is found or the closest larger capacity if the exact capacity is not listed.
(c) Read up the table column to the top row and select the appropriate pipe size.
(d) Repeat this process for each segment of the piping system.

The hybrid pressure method is described in B.4.3. This method is used to size piping systems that use more than one pressure, such as piping systems containing a line pressure regulator to provide two pressures in the system. An example of such a system is a 2 psi (14 kPa) system in which the piping from the point of delivery to the line pressure regulator is 2 psi (14 kPa), and the pressure from the line pressure regulator to the appliances is 7 in. w.c. (2 kPa) for natural gas or 11 in. w.c. (3 kPa) for propane systems. First, the higher-pressure system is sized using the longest length method (as shown in B.4.1) or by another method. Second, the lower-pressure system is sized using the longest length method (as shown in B.4.1), by the branch length method (as shown in B.4.2), or by another method. If more than one low-pressure system exists, as might be the case in an apartment building, each low-pressure system should be sized separately.

B.4.4 Pressure Drop per 100 ft Method. This sizing method is less conservative than the others, but it allows the designer to immediately see where the largest pressure drop occurs in the system. With this information, modifications can be made to bring the total drop to the critical appliance within the limitations that are presented to the designer.

Follow the procedures described in the Longest Length Method for steps (1) through (4) and step (9).

For each piping segment, calculate the pressure drop based on pipe size, length as a percentage of 100 ft, and gas flow. Table B.4.4 shows pressure drop per 100 ft for pipe sizes from ½ in. through 2 in. The sum of pressure drops to the critical appliance is subtracted from the supply pressure to verify that sufficient pressure is available. If not, the layout can be examined to find the high drop section(s), and sizing selections modified.

TABLE B.4.4 *Thousands of Btu/hr of Natural Gas per 100 ft of Pipe at Various Pressure Drops and Pipe Diameters*

Press. Drop/100 ft (in. w.c.)	Pipe Sizes (in.)					
	½	¾	1	1¼	1½	2
0.2	31	64	121	248	372	716
0.3	38	79	148	304	455	877
0.5	50	104	195	400	600	1160
1.0	71	147	276	566	848	1640

Note: Other values can be obtained using the following equation:

$$\text{Desired Value} = \text{thousands of Btu/hr} \times \sqrt{\frac{\text{Desired Drop}}{\text{Table Drop}}} \quad \textbf{[B.4.4a]}$$

For example, if it is desired to get flow through ¾ in. pipe at 2 in. w.c./100 ft, multiply the capacity of ¾ in. pipe at 1 in./100 ft by the square root of the pressure ratio:

$$147{,}000 \text{ Btu/hr} \times \sqrt{\frac{2 \text{ in. w.c.}}{1 \text{ in. w.c.}}} = 147{,}000 \times 1{,}414 = 208{,}000 \text{ Btu/hr} \quad \textbf{[B.4.4b]}$$

The pressure drop per 100 ft method, which is discussed in B.4.4, requires the designer to know the lengths, fittings, and pipe sizes of every pipe in the run. This method allows the designer to accommodate specific appliance inlet pressures by accurately calculating the pressure loss of the piping to that appliance.

B.5 Use of Sizing Equations

Capacities of smooth wall pipe or tubing can also be determined by using the following formulas:

(1) *High Pressure* [1.5 psi (10.3 kPa) and above]:

$$Q = 181.6\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \cdot (P_1^2 - P_2^2) \cdot Y}{Cr \cdot fba \cdot L}} = 2237\, D^{2.623}\left[\frac{(P_1^2 - P_2^2) \cdot Y}{Cr \cdot L}\right]^{0.541} \quad \textbf{[B.5a]}$$

(2) *Low Pressure* [less than 1.5 psi (10.3 kPa)]:

$$Q = 187.3\sqrt{\frac{D^5 \cdot \Delta H}{Cr \cdot fba \cdot L}} = 2313\, D^{2.623}\left(\frac{\Delta H}{Cr \cdot L}\right)^{0.541} \quad \textbf{[B.5b]}$$

where:

Q = rate (cubic feet per hour at 60°F and 30 in. mercury column)
D = inside diameter of pipe (in.)
P_1 = upstream pressure (psia)
P_2 = downstream pressure (psia)
Y = superexpansibility factor = 1/supercompressibility factor
Cr = factor for viscosity, density, and temperature
fba = base friction factor for air at 60°F (CF = 1)
L = length of pipe (ft)
H = pressure drop [in. w.c. (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi) = 0.00354 $ST(Z/S)^{0.152}$]

See Table 6.4.2 for values of *Cr* and *Y* for natural gas and propane.

The two equations shown in B.5(1) and B.5(2) have been in Annex B for many editions. In the 2002 edition, these equations were reconfigured to solve for pipe diameter, *D*, and the reconfigured versions were moved to Chapter 6. System designers are interested in the pipe size, and the equations are useful in calculating pipe size. The equations in their original form are retained in Annex B because some users need to determine the actual flow of pipe of a given size. Table 6.4.2 for values of *Cr* and *Y* was also added to Chapter 6 in the 2002 edition.

B.6 Pipe and Tube Diameters

Where the internal diameter is determined by the formulas in Section 6.4, Table B.6(a) and Table B.6(b) can be used to select the nominal or standard pipe size based on the calculated internal diameter.

TABLE B.6(a) *Schedule 40 Steel Pipe Standard Sizes*

Nominal Size (in.)	Internal Diameter (in.)	Nominal Size (in.)	Internal Diameter (in.)
¼	0.364	1½	1.610
⅜	0.493	2	2.067
½	0.622	2½	2.469
¾	0.824	3	3.068
1	1.049	3½	3.548
1¼	1.380	4	4.026

TABLE B.6(b) *Copper Tube Standard Sizes*

Tube Type	Nominal or Standard Size (in.)	Internal Diameter (in.)	Tube Type	Nominal or Standard Size (in.)	Internal Diameter (in.)
K	¼	0.305	K	1	0.995
L	¼	0.315	L	1	1.025
ACR (D)	⅜	0.315	ACR (D,A)	1⅛	1.025
ACR (A)	⅜	0.311	K	1¼	1.245
K	⅜	0.402	L	1¼	1.265
L	⅜	0.430	ACR (D,A)	1⅜	1.265
ACR (D)	½	0.430	K	1½	1.481
ACR (A)	½	0.436	L	1½	1.505
K	½	0.527	ACR (D,A)	1⅝	1.505
L	½	0.545	K	2	1.959
ACR (D)	⅝	0.545	L	2	1.985
ACR (A)	⅝	0.555	ACR (D,A)	2⅛	1.985
K	⅝	0.652	K	2½	2.435
L	⅝	0.666	L	2½	2.465
ACR (D)	¾	0.666	ACR (D,A)	2⅝	2.465
ACR (A)	¾	0.680	K	3	2.907
K	¾	0.745	L	3	2.945
L	¾	0.785	ACR (D,A)	3⅛	2.945
ACR (D,A)	⅞	0.785			

Information on the size of steel and copper pipe and tubing in Section B.6 is especially helpful when considering changing piping materials, because it allows comparison of the actual inside diameter of different piping materials.

B.7 Examples of Piping System Design and Sizing

B.7.1 Example 1 — Longest Length Method. Determine the required pipe size of each section and outlet of the piping system shown in Figure B.7.1, with a designated pressure drop of 0.50 in. w.c. (125 Pa), using the Longest Length Method. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Solution

(1) Maximum gas demand for outlet A:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}\begin{pmatrix}\text{rating plate input, or}\\ \text{Table 5.4.2.1 if necessary}\end{pmatrix}}{\text{Btu of gas}} \quad \textbf{[B.7a]}$$

$$= \frac{35{,}000 \text{ Btu/hr rating}}{1000 \text{ Btu/ft}} = 35\text{ft}^3\text{/hr} = 35 \text{ cfh}$$

Maximum gas demand for outlet B:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{75{,}000}{1000} = 75 \text{ cfh} \quad \textbf{[B.7b]}$$

Maximum gas demand for outlet C:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{35{,}000}{1000} = 35 \text{ cfh} \quad \textbf{[B.7c]}$$

Maximum gas demand for outlet D:

$$\frac{\text{Consumption}}{\text{Btu of gas}} = \frac{100{,}000}{1000} = 100 \text{ cfh} \quad \textbf{[B.7d]}$$

(2) The length of pipe from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet (A) is 60 ft (18.3 m). This is the only distance used.

(3) Using the row marked 60 ft (18.3 m) in Table 6.2(b):
(a) Outlet A, supplying 35 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr), requires ½ in. pipe.
(b) Outlet B, supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m^3/hr), requires ¾ in. pipe.
(c) Section 1, supplying outlets A and B, or 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr), requires ¾ in. pipe.

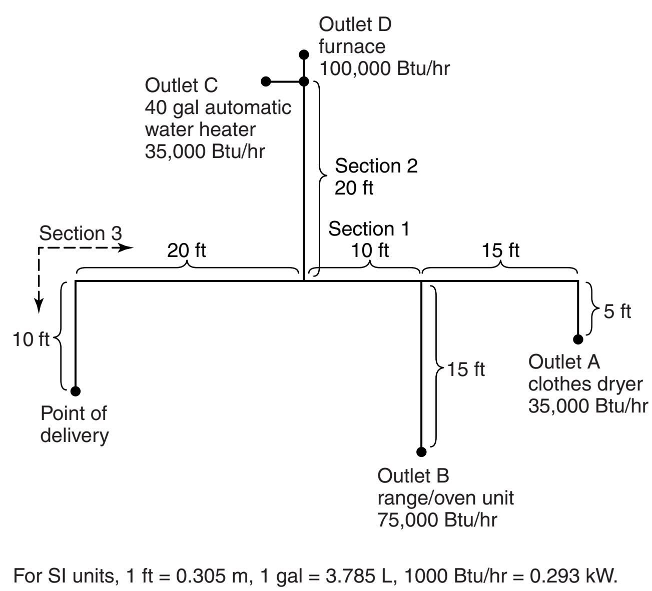


FIGURE B.7.1 *Piping Plan Showing a Steel Piping System.*

(d) Section 2, supplying outlets C and D, or 135 cfh (3.82 m^3/hr), requires ¾ in. pipe.
(e) Section 3, supplying outlets A, B, C, and D, or 245 cfh (6.94 m^3/hr), requires 1 in. pipe.

(4) If a different gravity factor is applied to this example, the values in the row marked 60 ft (18.3 m) of Table 6.2(b) would be multiplied by the appropriate multiplier from Table B.3.4, and the resulting cubic feet per hour values would be used to size the piping.

Commentary Table B.2 is an excerpt from Table 6.2(b). It shows the portion of the table that is relevant to B.7.1, Example 1 — Longest Length Method. Note that the 60 ft length row is highlighted because this is the only row used in this solution. Read across the row to find a capacity equal to or greater than that needed. For example, outlet A requires 35 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr), and the smallest pipe size, ½ in., delivers more than that, so ½ in. pipe is used. Larger sizes are also acceptable if desired for other reasons. Worksheet B.1 details the calculation for Example 1 — Longest Length Method, described in B.7.1. A full-size reproducible copy of this form is included in Supplement 4 and is available for free download from www.nfpa.org/54HB.

COMMENTARY TABLE B.2 *Extract from Table 6.2(b)*

	Capacity in Cubic Feet of Gas/Hour			
Length (ft)	***½ in.***	***¾ in.***	***1 in.***	***1¼ in.***
50	72	151	284	583
60	65	137	257	528
70	60	126	237	486

B.7.2 Example 2 — Hybrid or Dual Pressure Systems. Determine the required CSST size of each section of the piping system shown in Figure B.7.2, with a designated pressure drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) for the 2 psi (14 kPa) section and 3 in. w.c. (0.75 kPa) pressure drop for the 10 in. w.c. (2.49 kPa) section. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Note 1 and Note 2 to Table 6.2(r) state the following:

1. Table does not include effect of pressure drop across the line regulator. Where regulator loss exceeds ¾ psi, do not use this table. Consult with regulator manufacturer for pressure drops and capacity factors. Pressure drops across a regulator may vary with flow rate.
2. CAUTION: Capacities shown in table may exceed maximum capacity for a selected regulator. Consult with regulator or tubing manufacturer for guidance.

Example 2 — Hybrid or Dual Pressure Systems, shown in B.7.2, is based on a specific regulator, a Maxitrol model 325-3L. Refer to Exhibit B.1, the pressure drop chart for the 3253L model. To use the chart, read across along the bottom scale of the chart, flow rate. This example has a flow rate of 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr). Read up to the angled line for the 325-3L regulator. From there read to the left axis, pressure drop. The capacity of the regulator is 10 mbar, which equals 0.4 psi (3 kPa). Because this value is less than 3/4 psi (5 kPa), the regulator can be used.

Paragraph B.7.2(3)(d) provides information on the pressure drop of the regulator: 4 in. w.c. (0.99 kPa). This information is provided by the regulator manufacturer, usually as part of the product information supplied with the regulator.

WORKSHEET B.1

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: PIPE SIZING, LONGEST LENGTH METHOD

Step 1:

- Draw a sketch of a piping system in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Step 2:

- Enter the system information. Note that demand is the amount of gas flowing through a section of pipe.
- Use total Btu/hr rating/1000 (ft^3/hr) for natural gas.
- Use total Btu/hr for propane.

Step 3:

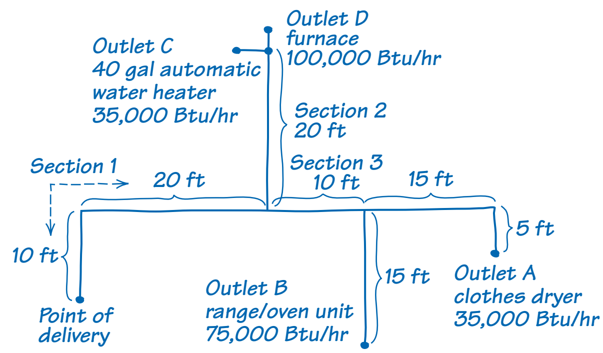
- Determine the gas used and system pressure, and enter it to the right.
- Determine the piping material and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate pipe sizing table from Chapter 6 and enter it to the right.

Step 4:

- On the sketch, label the section of pipe from the point of delivery (meter or regulator) to the first tee as Section 1.
- Label the section from the first tee to the second tee as Section 2, and label the section from the first tee to the third tee as Section 3. Use similar section numbers for additional sections.

Step 5:

- Determine the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote appliance. Enter this length for all pipe sections in Table 1.



Pipe system sketch

Gas: Natural

System pressure: <0.5 psi

Piping material: Sch 40 steel

Table used: 6.2(b)

Pressure drop: 0.50 in. w.c.

Table 1 Piping System Table

Section	Demand	Section length	Size
1	110	60 ft	3/4 in.
2	135	60 ft	3/4 in.
3	245	60 ft	1 in.
4			
5			

Step 6:

- Enter the input rating for each appliance in Table 2. For natural gas appliances, enter the input rating in Btu/hr/1000 (ft^3/hr). For propane appliances, enter the input rating in Btu/hr.

Step 7:

- From the table, determine the length of each pipe section using the appropriate table, using only the row with the longest length. Round up to the lengths in the table. Read across until a capacity equal to or greater than the required demand for the section is found. Read up to find the size. Repeat for each section of piping. Enter this size in Table 2.

Table 2 Appliances Table

Appliance	Demand	Section length	Size
Furnace	100	60 ft	3/4 in.
Furnace			
Water heater	35	60 ft	3/8 in.
Water heater			
Range	75	60 ft	3/4 in.
Oven			
Dryer	35	60 ft	3/8 in.
Other			
Other			
Other			
Other			
Total	245	—	—

Note that in this example, the 60 ft row in Table 6.2(b) was used. It is okay to interpolate between rows.

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Pipe Size Using the Longest Length Method.

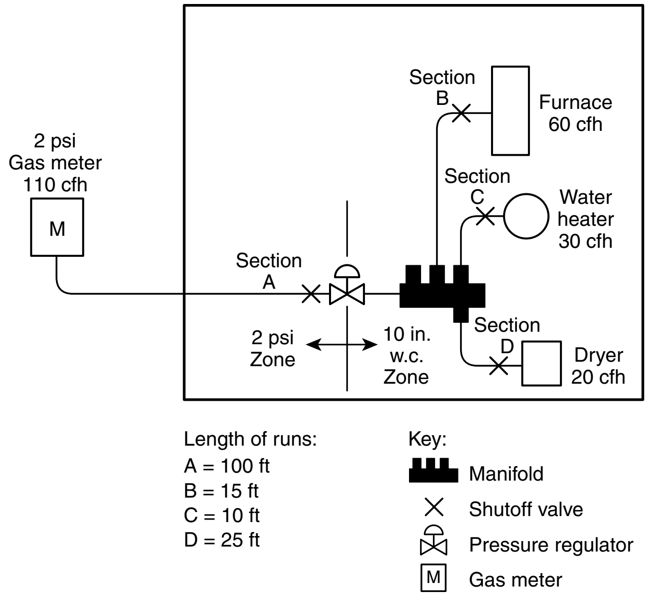
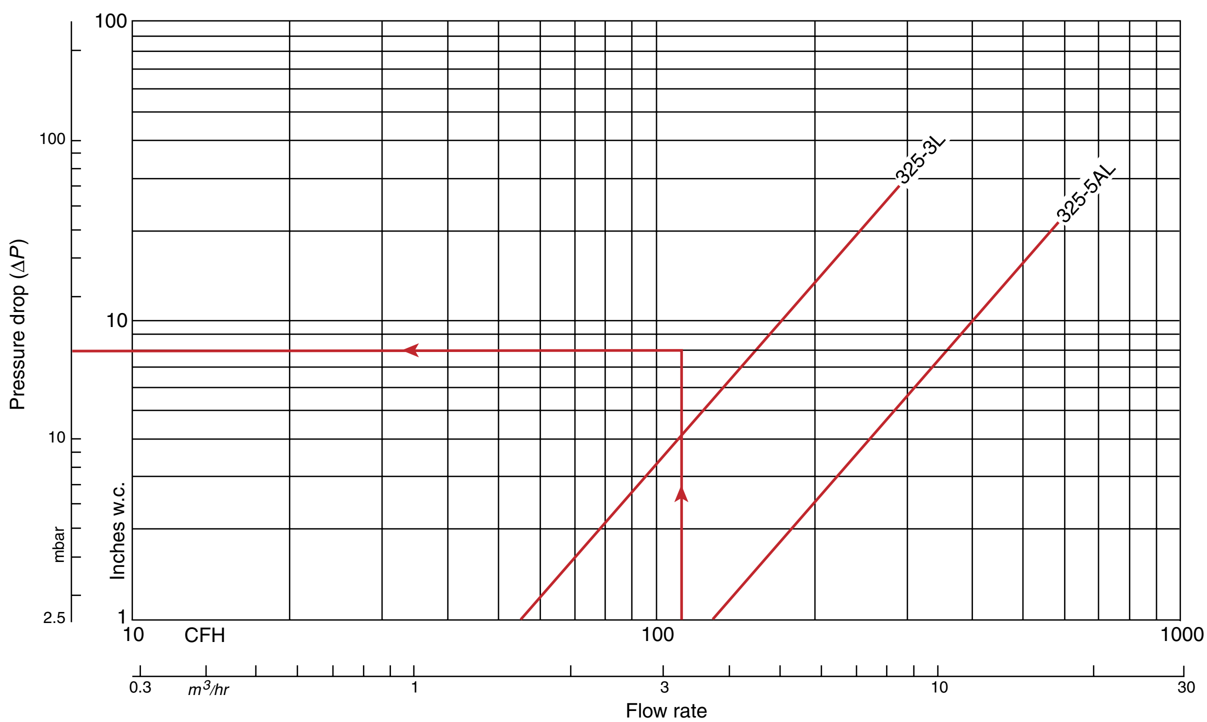


***FIGURE B.7.2** Piping Plan Showing a CSST System.*

EXHIBIT B.1



Maxitrol Regulator Capacity Chart. (Courtesy of Maxitrol)

Solution

(1) Size 2 psi (14 kPa) line using Table 6.2(r).
(2) Size 10 in. w.c. (2.5 kPa) lines using Table 6.2(p).
(3) Using the following steps, determine if sizing tables can be used:
  (a) Total gas load shown in Figure B.7.2 equals 110 chf (3.11 m^3/hr).
  (b) Determine pressure drop across regulator [see notes in Table 6.2(r)].
  (c) If pressure drop across regulator exceeds ¾ psi (5.2 kPa), Table 6.2(r) cannot be used. Note that if pressure drop exceeds ¾ psi (5.2 kPa), a larger regulator must be selected or an alternative sizing method must be used.
  (d) Pressure drop across the line regulator [for 110 cfh/(3.11 m^3/hr)] is 4 in. w.c. (0.99 kPa) based on manufacturer's performance data.
  (e) Assume the CSST manufacturer has tubing sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23, and 30.
(4) From Section A [2 psi (14 kPa) zone]:
  (a) Determine distance from meter to regulator = 100 ft (30.48 m).
  (b) Determine total load supplied by A = 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr) (furnace + water heater + dryer).

Commentary Table B.3 is an excerpt from Table 6.2(r). It shows the portion of Table 6.2(r) relevant to this example. Note that the 100 ft length row is highlighted because the length of CSST from the meter to the regulator is 100 ft. Read across the row to find a capacity equal to or greater than that needed. In this example, the load is 110 cfh (3.11 m^3/hr) and pipe with an EHD of 15 has a capacity of 107 cfh (3.01 m^3/hr), which is insufficient. EHD 18 has a capacity of 189 cfh (5.35 m^3/hr), which is acceptable, so EHD 18 is selected. Larger sizes are also acceptable if desired for other reasons.

COMMENTARY TABLE B.3 *Extract from Table 6.2(r)*

Flow Designation	**13**	**15**	**18**	**19**	**23**
Length (ft)			**Tube Size (EHD)***		
10	270	353	587	700	1100
25	166	220	374	444	709
30	151	200	342	405	650
40	129	172	297	351	567
50	115	154	266	314	510
75	93	124	218	257	420
80	89	120	211	249	407
100	79	107	189	222	366

**EHD = Equivalent hydraulic diameter. A measure of the relative hydraulic efficiency between different tubing sizes. The greater the value of EHD, the greater the gas capacity of the tubing.*

Note that CSST manufacturers do not offer products in all sizes. If the manufacturer does not offer EHD 18 tubing, the next larger size offered by the manufacturer should be used.

  (c) Table 6.2(r) shows that EHD size 18 should be used. Note that it is not unusual to oversize the supply line by 25 to 50 percent of the as-installed load. EHD size 18 has a capacity of 189 cfh (5.35 m^3/hr).
(5) From Section B (low-pressure zone):
  (a) Distance from regulator to furnace is 15 ft (4.57 m).
  (b) Load is 60 cfh (1.70 m^3/hr).
  (c) Table 6.2(p) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

(6) From Section C (low-pressure zone):
 (a) Distance from regulator to water heater is 10 ft (3 m).
 (b) Load is 30 cfh (0.85 m³/hr).
 (c) Table 6.2(p) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.
(7) From Section D (low-pressure zone):
 (a) Distance from regulator to dryer is 25 ft (7.62 m).
 (b) Load is 20 cfh (0.57 m³/hr).
 (c) Table 6.2(p) shows that EHD size 13 should be used.

Commentary Table B.4 is an excerpt from Table 6.2(p). It shows the portion of Table 6.2(p) relevant to this example. Note that the 100 ft length row is highlighted because the length of CSST from the meter to the regulator is 100 ft. Read across the row to find a capacity equal to or greater than that needed. In this example, the load is 110 cfh (3.11 m³/hr) and a pipe with an EHD of 19 has a capacity of 73 cfh (2.1 m³/hr), which is not acceptable. EHD 23 has a capacity of 126 cfh (3.6 m³/hr), which is acceptable, so EHD 23 is selected. Larger sizes are also acceptable if desired for other reasons.

COMMENTARY TABLE B.4 *Extract from Table 6.2 (p)*

Flow Designation	***13***	***15***	***18***	***19***	***23***
Length (ft)	***Tube Size (EHD)***				
10	83	112	197	231	380
15	67	90	161	189	313
20	57	78	140	164	273
25	51	69	125	147	245
30	46	63	115	134	225
40	39	54	100	116	196
50	35	48	89	104	176
60	32	44	82	95	161
70	29	41	76	88	150
80	27	38	71	82	141
90	26	36	67	77	133
100	24	34	63	73	126

Finally, the individual pipe sections are sized using Table 6.2(q).

Section B: 15 ft Length. Reading across the 15 ft row, we find the smallest CSST size will carry 96 cfh (2.7 m³/hr), which is more than the required 60 cfh (1.7 m³/hr). EHD 13 is used.

Section C: 10 ft Length. Reading across the 10 ft row, we find the smallest CSST size will carry 120 cfh (3.4 m³/hr), which is more than the required 30 cfh (0.85 m³/hr). EHD 13 is used.

Section D: 25 ft Length. Reading across the 25 ft row, we find the smallest CSST size will carry 74 cfh (2.1 m³/hr), which is more than the required 20 cfh (0.57 m³/hr). EHD 13 is used.

Remember that CSST manufacturers do not offer products in all sizes. If the manufacturer does not offer EHD 13 tubing, the next larger size offered by the manufacturer should be used.

B.7.3 Example 3 — Branch Length Method. Determine the required semirigid copper tubing size of each section of the piping system shown in Figure B.7.3, with a designated pressure drop of 1 in. w.c. (250 Pa) (using the Branch Length Method). The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1000 Btu/ft³ (37.5 MJ/m³).

Solution

(1) Section A:
  (a) The length of tubing from the point of delivery to the most remote appliance is 50 ft (15 m), A + C.
  (b) Use this longest length to size Sections A and C.
  (c) Using the row marked 50 ft (15 m) in Table 6.2(j), Section A supplying 220 cfh (6.23 m^3/hr) for four appliances requires 1 in. (25 mm) tubing.

(2) Section B:
  (a) The length of tubing from the point of delivery to the range/oven at the end of Section B is 30 ft (9.14 m), A + B.
  (b) Use this branch length to size Section B only.
  (c) Using the row marked 30 ft (9.14 m) in Table 6.2(j), Section B supplying 75 cfh (2.12 m^3/hr) for the range/oven requires ½ in. (15 mm) tubing.

(3) Section C:
  (a) The length of tubing from the point of delivery to the dryer at the end of Section C is 50 ft (15 m), A + C.
  (b) Use this branch length (which is also the longest length) to size Section C.
  (c) Using the row marked 50 ft (15 m) in Table 6.2(j), Section C supplying 30 cfh (0.85 m^3/hr) for the dryer requires ⅜ in. (10 mm) tubing.

(4) Section D:
  (a) The length of tubing from the point of delivery to the water heater at the end of Section D is 30 ft (9.14 m), A + D.
  (b) Use this branch length to size Section D only.
  (c) Using the row marked 30 ft (9.14 m) in Table 6.2(j), Section D supplying 35 cfh (34.69 m^3/hr) for the water heater requires ⅜ in. (10 mm) tubing.

(5) Section E:
  (a) The length of tubing from the point of delivery to the furnace at the end of Section E is 30 ft (9.14 m), A + E.
  (b) Use this branch length to size Section E only.
  (c) Using the row marked 30 ft (9.14 m) in Table 6.2(j), Section E supplying 80 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr) for the furnace requires ½ in. (15 mm) tubing.

B.7.3, Example 3 — Branch Length Method, is summarized in Commentary Table B.5, which is an excerpt from Table 6.2(j). Commentary Table B.5 shows the portions of Table 6.2(j) relevant to this example. Note that the 30 ft and 50 ft length rows are highlighted because these are the lengths from the meter to each appliance. Read across to find a capacity equal to or greater than the capacity needed.

When using the branch length method, first determine the longest run of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote outlet. In this example, Sections A and C, with a combined

COMMENTARY TABLE B.5 *Extract from Table 6.2(j)*

Length (ft)	Tube Size (in.)					
	1/4	3/8	1/2	5/8	3/4	1
10	39	80	162	283	402	859
20	27	55	111	195	276	590
30	21	44	89	156	222	474
40	18	38	77	134	190	406
50	16	33	68	119	168	359

length of 50 ft, comprise the longest length of piping. Size the pipe sections individually for the given lengths.

Section A: 20 ft Length. Section A is part of the longest length run. Therefore, size Section A using the longest length of 50 ft. Locate the 50 ft row, and read across to find a value equal to or exceeding the required gas flow of 220 cfh (6.23 m^3/hr). From the table, we find that ¾ in. tube has a capacity of 168 cfh (4.76 m^3/hr), which is insufficient, and that 1 in. tube has a capacity of 359 cfh (10.17 m^3/hr), which is acceptable. Thus, 1 in. tube is used for Section A.

Section B: 10 ft Length. To size the 10 ft run from the manifold to the range/oven, use the total length from the point of delivery (marked M in Figure B.7.3) to the range/oven. In this case, add the 10 ft from the manifold to the range/oven to the 20 ft from the meter (point of delivery) to the manifold, for a total length of 30 ft. Reading across the 30 ft row, we find that ½ in. tube will carry 89 cfh (2.5 m^3/hr), which is more than the required 75 cfh (2.1 m^3/hr). Thus, ½ in. tube is used for Section B.

Section C: 30 ft Length. To size the 30 ft run from the manifold to the dryer, use the total length from the point of delivery (marked M in Figure B.7.3) to the dryer. In this case, add the 30 ft from the manifold to the dryer to the 20 ft from the meter (point of delivery) to the manifold, for a total length of 50 ft. Reading across the 50 ft row, we find that ³⁄₈ in. tube will carry 33 cfh (0.93 m^3/hr), which is more than the required 30 cfh (0.85 m^3/hr). Thus, ³⁄₈ in. tube is used for Section C.

Section D: 10 ft Length. To size the 10 ft run from the manifold to the water heater, use the total length from the point of delivery (marked M in Figure B.7.3) to the water heater. In this case, add the 10 ft from the manifold to the water heater to the 20 ft from the point of delivery to the manifold, for a total length of 30 ft. Reading across the 30 ft row, we find that ³⁄₈ in. tube will carry 44 cfh (1.2 m^3/hr), which is more than the required 35 cfh (0.99 m^3/hr). Thus, ³⁄₈ in. tube is used for Section D.

Section E: 10 ft Length. To size the 10 ft run from the manifold to the furnace, use the total length from the point of delivery (marked M in Figure B.7.3) to the furnace. In this case, add

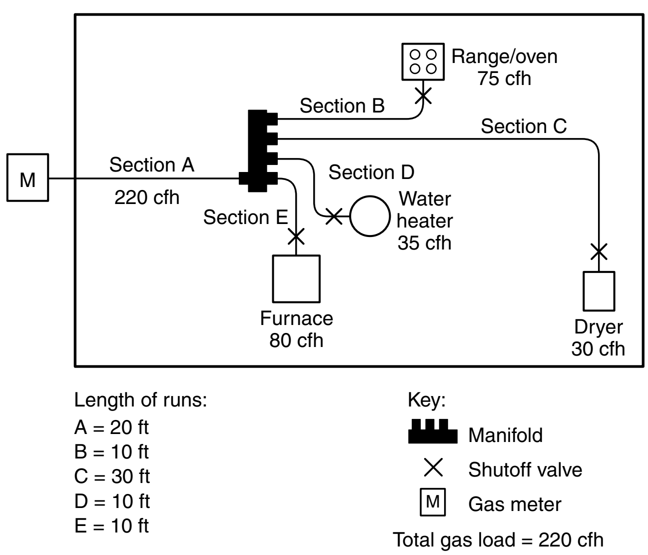


FIGURE B.7.3 Piping Plan Showing a Copper Tubing System.

the 10 ft from the manifold to the furnace to the 20 ft from the meter (point of delivery) to the manifold, for a total length of 30 ft. Reading across the 30 ft row, we find that 1/2 in. tube will carry 89 cfh (2.5 m^3/hr), which is more than the required 80 cfh (2.3 m^3/hr). Thus, 1/2 in. tube is used for Section E.

The results are shown in Commentary Table B.6.

COMMENTARY TABLE B.6 *Results for Example 3 — Branch Length Method*

Section	*Section Length (ft)*	*Length from Point of Delivery (ft)*	*Size (in.)*
A	20	50	1
B	10	30	1/2
C	30	50	3/8
D	10	30	3/8
E	10	30	1/2

Worksheet B.2 summarizes the calculation for Example 3 — Branch Length Method. A full-size reproducible copy of this form is included in Supplement 4 and is available for free download from www.nfpa.org/54HB.

B.7.4 Example 4 — Modification to Existing Piping System. Determine the required CSST size for Section G (retrofit application) of the piping system shown in Figure B.7.4, with a designated pressure drop of 0.50 in. w.c. (125 Pa) using the Branch Length Method. The gas to be used has 0.60 specific gravity and a heating value of 1000 Btu/ft^3 (37.5 MJ/m^3).

Solution

(1) The length of pipe and CSST from the point of delivery to the retrofit appliance (barbecue) at the end of Section G is 40 ft (12.19 m), A + B + G.
(2) Use this branch length to size Section G.
(3) Assume the CSST manufacturer has tubing sizes or EHDs of 13, 18, 23, and 30.
(4) Using the row marked 40 ft (12.19 m) in Table 6.2(o), Section G supplying 40 cfh (1.13 m^3/hr) for the barbecue requires EHD 18 CSST.
(5) The sizing of Sections A, B, F, and E must be checked to ensure adequate gas carrying capacity since an appliance has been added to the piping system. See B.7.1 for details.

Example 4 (see Figure B.7.4) shows how to size an additional branch using the branch length method and the CSST sizing chart found in Table 6.2(o). Two existing pipe runs — Sections A and B — will carry the additional load. These must be recalculated to determine whether they will handle the additional load of the barbecue. The longest length is needed to calculate Sections A and B, which is the sum of Sections A, B, C, and D, or 60 ft.

Section A: This 15 ft length of pipe serves all the appliances, with a total capacity of 225 cfh (6.37 m^3/hr). Using the sizing Table 6.2(o) on the 60 ft row, the pipe would need to have an EHD of 37.

Section B: This 10 ft length of pipe serves all the appliances less the 80 cfh (2.3 m^3/hr) of the furnace, which is a total of 145 cfh (4.1 m^3/hr). Using Table 6.2(o) on the 60 ft row, the pipe would need to have an EHD of 31.

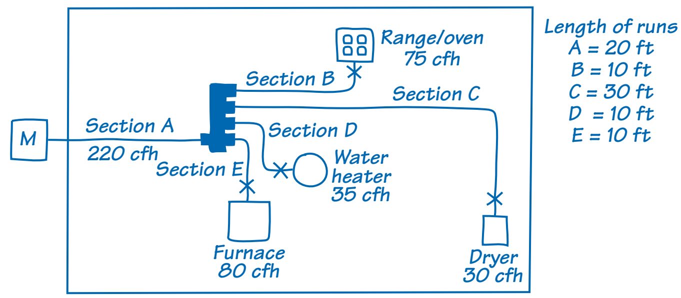
Section G: This 15 ft pipe is a branch and will be sized based on its distance from the meter (the sum of Sections A, B, and G), which is 40 ft. The load on this pipe is 40 cfh (1.1 m^3/hr). Using Table 6.2(o), the row for 40 ft, the pipe would need to have an EHD of 18.

WORKSHEET B.2

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: PIPE SIZING, BRANCH LENGTH METHOD

Step 1:

- Draw a sketch of a piping system in the space to the right.



Pipe system sketch

Step 2:

- Enter the system information. Note that demand is the amount of gas flowing through a section of pipe.
- Use total Btu/hr rating/1000 (ft^3/hr) for natural gas.
- Use total Btu/hr for propane.

Step 3:

- Determine the gas used and system pressure, and enter it to the right.
- Determine the piping material and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate pipe sizing table from Chapter 6 and enter it to the right.

Gas: Natural

Pressure: 7 in. w.c.

Piping material: Copper

Table used: 6.2 (h)

Pressure drop: 1.0 in. w.c.

Step 4:

- On the sketch above, label the section of pipe from the point of delivery (meter or regulator) to the manifold as Section A.

Step 5:

- Determine the length of the branch serving each appliance. Enter this length in Table 1.

Table 1 Piping System Table

Section	Demand (cfh)	Section length	Size
A	220	50 ft	1 in.

Step 6:

- Enter the input rating for each appliance in Table 2. For natural gas appliances, enter the input rating in ft^3/hr. For propane appliances, enter the input rating in thousands of Btu/hr.

Step 7:

- From the table, determine the length of each pipe section using the appropriate table, using only the row with the longest length. Round up to the lengths in the table. Read across until a capacity equal to or greater than the required demand for the section is found. Read up to find the size. Repeat for each section of piping. Enter this size in Table 2.

Table 2 Appliances Table

Appliance	Demand	Section length	Size
Furnace	80	30 ft	1/2 in.
Furnace			
Water heater	35	30 ft	3/8 in.
Water heater			
Range	75	30 ft	1/2 in.
Oven			
Dryer	30	50 ft	3/8 in.
Other			
Other			
Other			
Other			
Total	220	—	—

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Pipe Size Using the Branch Length Method.

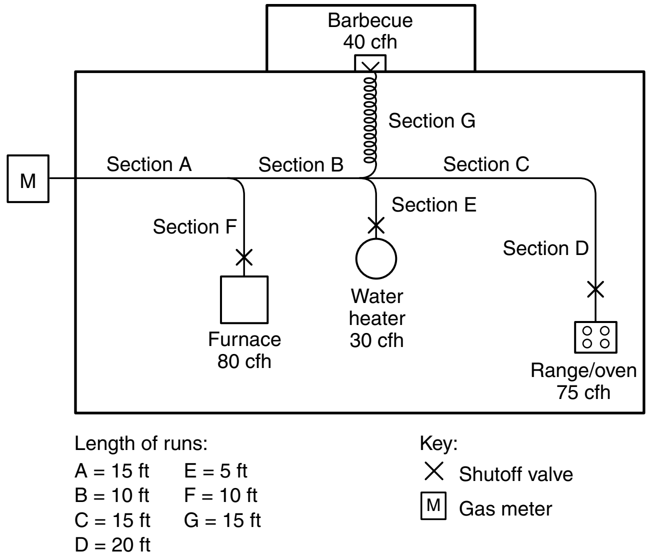


FIGURE B.7.4 Piping Plan Showing Modification to an Existing Piping System.

B.7.5 Example 5 — Calculating Pressure Drops Due to Temperature Changes. A test piping system is installed on a warm autumn afternoon when the temperature is 70°F (21°C). In accordance with local custom, the new piping system is subjected to an air pressure test at 20 psi (138 kPa). Overnight, the temperature drops, and when the inspector shows up first thing in the morning the temperature is 40°F (4°C).

If the volume of the piping system is unchanged, the formula based on Boyle's and Charles' law for determining the new pressure at a reduced temperature is as follows:

(1) $$\frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{P_1}{P_2}$$ **[B.7.5a]**

where:

T_1 = initial temperature [absolute (T_1 + 459)]

T_2 = final temperature [absolute (T_2 + 459)]

P_1 = initial pressure [psia (P_1 + 14.7)]

P_2 = final pressure [psia (P_2 + 14.7)]

(2) $$\frac{(70 + 459)}{(40 + 459)} = \frac{(20 + 14.7)}{(P_2 + 14.7)}$$ **[B.7.5b]**

(3) $$\frac{529}{499} = \frac{34.7}{(P_2 + 14.7)}$$ **[B.7.5c]**

(4) $$(P_2 + 14.7) = \frac{34.7}{1.06}$$ **[B.7.5d]**

$$P_2 = 32.7 - 14.7$$

$$P_2 = 18 \text{ psi}$$

Therefore, you could expect the gauge to register 18 psi (124 kPa) when the ambient temperature is 40°F (4°C).

B.7.6 Example 6 — Pressure Drop per 100 ft of Pipe Method. Using the layout shown in Figure B.7.1 and ΔH = pressure drop, in. w.c. (27.7 in. H_2O = 1 psi), proceed as follows:

(1) Length to A = 20 ft, with 35,000 Btu/hr:
For ½ in. pipe:

$$\Delta H = \frac{20\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times 0.3\text{ in. w.c.} = 0.06\text{ in. w.c.} \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6a]}$$

(2) Length to B = 15 ft, with 75,000 Btu/hr:
For ¾ in. pipe:

$$\Delta H = \frac{15\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times 0.3\text{ in. w.c.} = 0.045\text{ in. w.c.} \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6b]}$$

(3) Section 1 = 10 ft, with 110,000 Btu/hr. Here a choice is available:
For 1 in. pipe:

$$\Delta H = \frac{10\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times 0.2\text{ in. w.c.} = 0.02\text{ in. w.c.} \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6c]}$$

For ¾ in. pipe:

$$\Delta H = \frac{10\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times \left[0.5\text{ in. w.c.} + \left(\frac{110{,}000\text{ Btu/hr} - 104{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}{147{,}000\text{ Btu/hr} - 104{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}} \right) \times (1.0\text{ in. w.c.} - 0.5\text{ in. w.c.}) \right] \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6d]}$$

$$= 1.0 \times 0.57\text{ in. w.c.} = 0.06\text{ in. w.c.}$$

Notice that the pressure drop for 110,000 Btu/hr between 104,000 Btu/hr and 147,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated.

(4) Section 2 = 20 ft, with 135,000 Btu/hr. Here a choice is available:
For 1 in. pipe:

$$\Delta H = \frac{20\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times \left[0.2\text{ in. w.c.} + \frac{14{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}}{27{,}000\text{ Btu/hr}} \times \Delta 0.1\text{ in w.c.} \right] \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6e]}$$

$$= 0.05\text{ in. w.c.}$$

For ¾ in. pipe:

$$H = \frac{20\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times 1.0\text{ in. w.c.} = 0.2\text{ in w.c.} \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6f]}$$

Notice that the pressure drop for 135,000 Btu/hr between 121,000 Btu/hr and 148,000 Btu/hr has been interpolated, but interpolation was not used for the ¾ in. pipe (trivial for 104,000 Btu/hr to 147,000 Btu/hr).

(5) Section 3 = 30 ft, with 245,000 Btu/hr. Here a choice is available: For 1 in. pipe:

$$\Delta H = \frac{30\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times 1.0\text{ in. w.c.} = 0.3\text{ in w.c.} \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6g]}$$

For 1¼ in. pipe:

$$\Delta H = \frac{30\text{ ft}}{100\text{ ft}} \times 0.2\text{ in. w.c.} = 0.06\text{ in w.c.} \qquad \textbf{[B.7.6h]}$$

Notice that interpolation was not used for these options, since the table values are close to the 245,000 Btu/hr carried by that section.

(6) The total pressure drop is the sum of the section approaching A, Section 1, and Section 3, or either of the following, depending on whether an absolute minimum is required or the larger drop can be accommodated:

Minimum Pressure Drop to farthest appliance:

$$\Delta H = 0.06 \text{ in. w.c.} + 0.02 \text{ in. w.c.} + 0.06 \text{ in. w.c.} = 0.14 \text{ in. w.c.}$$

Larger Pressure Drop to the farthest appliance:

$$\Delta H = 0.06 \text{ in. w.c.} + 0.06 \text{ in. w.c.} + 0.3 \text{ in. w.c.} = 0.42 \text{ in. w.c.}$$

Notice that Section 2 and the run to B do not enter into this calculation, provided that the appliances have similar input pressure requirements.

For SI units, 1 Btu/hr = 0.293 W, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1 in. w.c. = 249 Pa.

Suggested Method of Checking for Leakage

C

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex C contains a method for checking for leakage from gas piping systems. This method is widely used, but it is not the only method that can be used to check for leakage. Subsection 8.2.3 requires checking for leakage after the pressure test has been passed or, for a piping system, after an interruption of service.

Regardless of which method is used, it is strongly recommended that all companies use the leakage check consistently and accurately.

C.1 Use of Lights

Artificial illumination used in connection with a search for gas leakage should be restricted to battery-operated flashlights (preferably of the safety type) or approved safety lamps. In searching for leaks, electric switches should not be operated. If electric lights are already turned on, they should not be turned off.

C.2 Leak Check Using the Gas Meter

Immediately prior to the leak check, it should be determined that the meter is in operating condition and has not been bypassed.

The leak check can be done by carefully watching the test dial of the meter to determine whether gas is passing through the meter. To assist in observing any movement of the test hand, wet a small piece of paper and paste its edge directly over the centerline of the hand as soon as the gas is turned on. This observation should be made with the test hand on the upstroke. Table C.2 can be used for determining the length of observation time.

TABLE C.2 *Observation Times for Various Meter Dials*

Dial Styles (ft^3)	*Test Time (min)*
¼	5
½	5
1	7
2	10
5	20
10	30

For SI units, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3.

In case careful observation of the test hand for a sufficient length of time reveals no movement, the piping should be purged and a small gas burner turned on and lighted and the hand of the test dial again observed. If the dial hand moves (as it should), it shows that the meter is operating properly. If the test hand does not move or register flow of gas through the meter to the small burner, the meter is defective and the gas should be shut off and the serving gas supplier notified.

C.3 Leak Check Not Using a Meter

This test can be done using one of the following methods:

(1) *For Any Gas System.* To an appropriate checkpoint, attach a manometer or pressure gauge between the inlet to the piping system and the first regulator in the piping system, momentarily turn on the gas supply, and observe the gauging device for pressure drop with the gas supply shut off. No discernible drop in pressure should occur during a period of 3 minutes.

(2) *For Gas Systems Using Undiluted LP-Gas System Preparation for Propane.* A leak check performed on an LP-Gas system being placed back in service can be performed by using one of the following methods:

   (a) Insert a pressure gauge between the container gas shutoff valve and the first-stage regulator or integral two-stage regulator in the system, admitting full container pressure to the system and then closing the container shutoff valve. Enough gas should then be released from the system to lower the pressure gauge reading by 10 psi (69 kPa). The system should then be allowed to stand for 3 minutes without showing an increase or a decrease in the pressure gauge reading.

   (b) Insert a gauge/regulator test assembly between the container gas shutoff valve and first-stage regulator or integral two-stage regulator in the system. If a gauge/regulator test assembly with an inches water column gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (c) below; if a gauge/regulator test assembly with a 30 psi gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (d).

   (c) For systems with an integral two-stage, one or more second-stage, or one or more line pressure regulators serving appliances that receive gas at pressures of ½ psi (3.5 kPa) or less, insert a water manometer or inches water column gauge into the system downstream of the final stage regulator, pressurizing the system with either fuel gas or air to a test pressure of 9 in. w.c. ± ½ in. w.c. (2.2 kPa ± 0.1 kPa), and observing the device for a pressure change. If fuel gas is used as a pressure source, it is necessary to pressurize the system to full operating pressure, close the container service valve, and then release enough gas from the system through a range burner valve or other suitable means to drop the system pressure to 9 in. w.c. Â± ½ in. w.c. (2.2 kPa Â± 0.1 kPa). This ensures that all regulators in the system upstream of the test point are unlocked and that a leak anywhere in the system is communicated to the gauging device. The gauging device should indicate no loss or gain of pressure for a period of 3 minutes.

   (d) When testing a system that has a first-stage regulator, or an integral two-stage regulator, insert a 30 psi (207 kPa) pressure gauge on the downstream side of the first-stage regulator or at the intermediate pressure tap of an integral two-stage regulator, admitting normal operating pressure to the system and then closing the container valve. Enough gas should be released from the system to lower the pressure gauge reading by a minimum of 2 psi (13.8 kPa) so that the first-stage regulator is unlocked. The system should be allowed to stand for 3 minutes without showing an increase or a decrease in pressure gauge reading.

   (e) Insert a gauge/regulator test assembly on the downstream side of the first stage regulator or at the intermediate pressure tap of an integral two stage regulator. If a gauge/regulator test assembly with an inches water column gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (c) above; if a gauge/regulator test assembly with a 30 psi gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (d) on the previous page.

Sections C.2 and C.3 describe methods of checking for leakage. The first method in Section C.2 can be used for both propane and natural gas systems and involves the use of a gas meter with a test hand. The tester must ensure that the gas meter is functioning and that all equipment valves are off. The system is then pressurized, and the test dial is observed carefully for the amount of time indicated in Table C.2. If there is a leak, the test dial will move.

Section C.3(1) can be used for propane and natural gas systems that do not have a meter. A manometer is connected to the piping or appliance orifice and is checked for a drop in pressure while the main supply valve is shut off for 3 minutes. Section C.3(2) contains several methods of testing propane systems without the use of a gas meter.

The first procedure requires the temporary installation of a pressure gauge between the propane container shutoff valve and the first pressure regulator. The section between the first and second regulator is then charged to normal pressure and the propane tank valve is closed, after which enough gas is drawn off to reduce the pressure to approximately 10 psi (69 kPa) below the initial pressure. The initial pressure will be the tank pressure, which will vary depending on the tank temperature. If the pressure falls, there is a leak in the piping system. If the pressure rises, the supply valve is leaking.

Two new paragraphs, C.3(2)(b) and C.3(2)(e), were added in the 2015 edition to recognize the use of a gauge/regulator test assembly. The gauge/regulator test assembly is inserted between the container shutoff valve and the first-stage or integral two-stage regulator, or into the pressure tap in an integral two-stage regulator, and either the test method in C.3(2)(c) or C.3(2)(d) is followed depending on the gauge scale.

C.3(2)(c) provides the second method, and is useful for most residential and commercial systems that serve appliances operating at less than $^1/_2$ psi (3.5 kPa). This method recognizes that some appliances incorporate regulators that can "lock up" and isolate the appliance from the piping system, which makes running a valid leak check impossible. A manometer or pressure gauge is connected downstream of the final stage pressure regulator (usually the second stage pressure regulator). The system is pressurized to its normal operating pressure, and then the pressure is lowered to 9 in. w.c. $\pm\ ^1/_2$ in. w.c. (2.2 kPa $\pm$ 0.1 kPa). If the manometer or gauge rises or falls during the 3-minute test period, the system fails the test. This test ensures that regulator lockup does not interfere with the leak check.

Note that C.3(2) was revised in the 2009 edition to delete a recommendation that the leak check using this method should include all regulators, including appliance regulators, and control valves in the system with all appliance shutoff valves open, so that the leak check would check for leakage in the piping system and the appliances. This change recognized that 8.2.3 requires that the piping system be leak checked and does not require a leak check for the appliances. While Annex C provides a suggested method of checking for leakage, it is not a code requirement, and any method can be used.

The third method, added in the 2006 edition, uses a pressure gauge with a full-scale reading of 30 psi (207 kPa), which is installed between the first and second stage pressure regulators. The system is pressurized, the propane container valve is closed, and the pressure at the meter is reduced by 5 psi (34.5 kPa) and should read at approximately 5 psi (34.5 kPa). After 3 minutes, a drop in pressure indicates a leak in the system downstream of the first stage pressure regulator, and an increase in pressure indicates a leaking propane container valve.

C.4 When Leakage Is Indicated

If the meter test hand moves or a pressure drop on the gauge is noted, all appliances and equipment or outlets supplied through the system should be examined to see whether they are shut off and do not leak. If they are found to be tight, the piping system has a leak.

Suggested Emergency Procedure for Gas Leaks

D

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex D is not mandated in the code but is included to provide information to workers and emergency responders to gas leakage situations. This annex provides a simple stepwise procedure to deal with gas leakage in a building and the surrounding buildings and to minimize the possibility of ignition of the leaked gas.

D.1

Where an investigation discloses a concentration of gas inside of a building, it is suggested the following immediate actions be taken:

(1) Clear the room, building, or area of all occupants. Do not re-enter the room, building, or area until the space has been determined to be safe.
(2) Use every practical means to eliminate sources of ignition. Take precautions to prevent smoking, striking matches, operating electrical switches or devices, opening furnace doors, and so on. If possible, cut off all electric circuits at a remote source to eliminate operation of automatic switches in the dangerous area. Safety flashlights designed for use in hazardous atmospheres are recommended for use in such emergencies.
(3) Notify all personnel in the area and the gas supplier from a telephone remote from the area of the leak.
(4) Ventilate the affected portion of the building by opening windows and doors.
(5) Shut off the supply of gas to the areas involved.
(6) Investigate other buildings in the immediate area to determine the presence of escaping gas therein.

Section D.1 offers a list of recommended actions to take after determining that there is a gas concentration inside a building. Following the procedures in this annex could minimize the risk of fire or explosion. The most important point is provided in D.1(1): Clear the building of all people. Occupants should be evacuated completely, and evacuation should be verified before continuing.

All possible ignition sources should be avoided, and the gas utility or supplier should be notified immediately to obtain as much assistance as possible in dealing with the possible leak. Notifying the local fire department might also be advisable. The space(s) should then be ventilated. Safety flashlights listed for Class I, Group D locations should be the only source of illumination.

A check should be made using a gas detector for possible sources of gas outside the space where the gas has accumulated. A leak could be located in an adjacent space or underground, in which case the gas could travel into and accumulate in the space where it was first noticed. Also, underground leaks can be deodorized by adsorption of the odorant by some soils. Therefore, the lack of gas odor does not ensure that no gas is present.

Flow of Gas Through Fixed Orifices

E

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex E provides orifice sizing tables and procedures for checking burner input. This knowledge enables field adjustment of input rate of appliances. Field adjustment can be applied on start-up of large equipment, such as boilers and furnaces, that requires high-altitude adjustment. It must not be used for residential appliances unless specifically allowed by the appliance manufacturer.

E.1 Use of Orifice Tables

E.1.1 To Check Burner Input Not Using a Meter. Gauge the size of the burner orifice and determine flow rate at sea level from Table E.1.1(a), Utility Gases (cubic feet per hour), or from Table E.1.1(b), LP-Gases (Btu per hour). When the specific gravity of the utility gas is other than 0.60, select the multiplier from Table E.1.1(c) for the specific gravity of the utility gas served and apply to the flow rate as determined from Table E.1.1(a). When the altitude is above 2000 ft (600 m), first select the equivalent orifice size at sea level using Table E.1.1(d), then determine the flow rate from Table E.1.1(a) or Table E.1.1(b) as directed. Having determined the flow rate (as adjusted for specific gravity and/or altitude where necessary), check the burner input at sea level with the manufacturer's rated input.

Table E.1.1(a) presents data for gas flow in standard cubic feet per hour at sea level through orifices, as a function of orifice size and pressure at the orifice inlet. The data apply to gas with 0.60 specific gravity and an orifice coefficient of 0.90. The size is given in terms of numbered drill sizes, from #80 (the smallest) to #1 (the largest). For larger orifice sizes, refer to AGA Report No. 3, "Orifice Metering of Natural Gas."

Table E.1.1(b) presents data for propane and butane in Btu per hour at sea level for orifices from 0.008 in. (0.2 mm) through #18 drill size [0.1695 in. (4.3 mm)]. Because the #18 drill size delivers 233 MBH (68 MW), the sizes in this table cover all but the largest installations. The table covers gases with 11 in. w.c. (2.7 kPa) pressure at the orifice inlet and an orifice coefficient of 0.90 for the Btu per cubic foot and specific gravities given in the table.

Table E.1.1(c) presents the corrections [for Table E.1.1(a)] for gases with specific gravities from 0.45 through 1.40. The volume taken from Table E.1.1(a) must be multiplied by the factor in Table E.1.1(c) to obtain the volume of gas of the new specific gravity that will flow through an orifice of a given size.

Table E.1.1(d) presents data for reducing the input rate of appliances installed at elevations of 2000 ft (600 m) and higher. As altitude increases, the atmosphere becomes less dense. Consequently, less oxygen is available (in the air) for the combustion of fuel. There is also a reduction in the Btu per hour passing through the orifice, but it is not as large as the reduction in oxygen. In fact, the so-called "natural de-rate" is quite significant — about 1.7 percent per 1000 ft (300 m). It can be shown that this natural derate is proportional to the reciprocal of the square root of the barometric pressure, assuming temperature is constant. The data in Table E.1.1(d) compensate for the combined effect.

TABLE E.1.1(a) *Utility Gases (cubic feet per hour at sea level)*

Orifice or Drill Size	Pressure at Orifice (in. w.c.)								
	3	3.5	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
80	0.48	0.52	0.55	0.63	0.69	0.73	0.79	0.83	0.88
79	0.55	0.59	0.64	0.72	0.80	0.84	0.90	0.97	1.01
78	0.70	0.76	0.78	0.88	0.97	1.04	1.10	1.17	1.24
77	0.88	0.95	0.99	1.11	1.23	1.31	1.38	1.47	1.55
76	1.05	1.13	1.21	1.37	1.52	1.61	1.72	1.83	1.92
75	1.16	1.25	1.34	1.52	1.64	1.79	1.91	2.04	2.14
74	1.33	1.44	1.55	1.74	1.91	2.05	2.18	2.32	2.44
73	1.51	1.63	1.76	1.99	2.17	2.32	2.48	2.64	2.78
72	1.64	1.77	1.90	2.15	2.40	2.52	2.69	2.86	3.00
71	1.82	1.97	2.06	2.33	2.54	2.73	2.91	3.11	3.26
70	2.06	2.22	2.39	2.70	2.97	3.16	3.38	3.59	3.78
69	2.25	2.43	2.61	2.96	3.23	3.47	3.68	3.94	4.14
68	2.52	2.72	2.93	3.26	3.58	3.88	4.14	4.41	4.64
67	2.69	2.91	3.12	3.52	3.87	4.13	4.41	4.69	4.94
66	2.86	3.09	3.32	3.75	4.11	4.39	4.68	4.98	5.24
65	3.14	3.39	3.72	4.28	4.62	4.84	5.16	5.50	5.78
64	3.41	3.68	4.14	4.48	4.91	5.23	5.59	5.95	6.26
63	3.63	3.92	4.19	4.75	5.19	5.55	5.92	6.30	6.63
62	3.78	4.08	4.39	4.96	5.42	5.81	6.20	6.59	6.94
61	4.02	4.34	4.66	5.27	5.77	6.15	6.57	7.00	7.37
60	4.21	4.55	4.89	5.52	5.95	6.47	6.91	7.35	7.74
59	4.41	4.76	5.11	5.78	6.35	6.78	7.25	7.71	8.11
58	4.66	5.03	5.39	6.10	6.68	7.13	7.62	8.11	8.53
57	4.84	5.23	5.63	6.36	6.96	7.44	7.94	8.46	8.90
56	5.68	6.13	6.58	7.35	8.03	8.73	9.32	9.92	10.44
55	7.11	7.68	8.22	9.30	10.18	10.85	11.59	12.34	12.98
54	7.95	8.59	9.23	10.45	11.39	12.25	13.08	13.93	14.65
53	9.30	10.04	10.80	12.20	13.32	14.29	15.27	16.25	17.09
52	10.61	11.46	12.31	13.86	15.26	16.34	17.44	18.57	19.53
51	11.82	12.77	13.69	15.47	16.97	18.16	19.40	20.64	21.71
50	12.89	13.92	14.94	16.86	18.48	19.77	21.12	22.48	23.65
49	14.07	15.20	16.28	18.37	20.20	21.60	23.06	24.56	25.83
48	15.15	16.36	17.62	19.88	21.81	23.31	24.90	26.51	27.89
47	16.22	17.52	18.80	21.27	23.21	24.93	26.62	28.34	29.81
46	17.19	18.57	19.98	22.57	24.72	26.43	28.23	30.05	31.61
45	17.73	19.15	20.52	23.10	25.36	27.18	29.03	30.90	32.51
44	19.45	21.01	22.57	25.57	27.93	29.87	31.89	33.96	35.72
43	20.73	22.39	24.18	27.29	29.87	32.02	34.19	36.41	38.30
42	23.10	24.95	26.50	29.50	32.50	35.24	37.63	40.07	42.14
41	24.06	25.98	28.15	31.69	34.81	37.17	39.70	42.27	44.46
40	25.03	27.03	29.23	33.09	36.20	38.79	41.42	44.10	46.38
39	26.11	28.20	30.20	34.05	37.38	39.97	42.68	45.44	47.80
38	27.08	29.25	31.38	35.46	38.89	41.58	44.40	47.27	49.73
37	28.36	30.63	32.99	37.07	40.83	43.62	46.59	49.60	52.17
36	29.76	32.14	34.59	39.11	42.76	45.77	48.88	52.04	54.74

TABLE E.1.1(a) *Continued*

Orifice or Drill Size	Pressure at Orifice (in. w.c.)								
	3	3.5	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
35	32.36	34.95	36.86	41.68	45.66	48.78	52.10	55.46	58.34
34	32.45	35.05	37.50	42.44	46.52	49.75	53.12	56.55	59.49
33	33.41	36.08	38.79	43.83	48.03	51.46	54.96	58.62	61.55
32	35.46	38.30	40.94	46.52	50.82	54.26	57.95	61.70	64.89
31	37.82	40.85	43.83	49.64	54.36	58.01	61.96	65.97	69.39
30	43.40	46.87	50.39	57.05	62.09	66.72	71.22	75.86	79.80
29	48.45	52.33	56.19	63.61	69.62	74.45	79.52	84.66	89.04
28	51.78	55.92	59.50	67.00	73.50	79.50	84.92	90.39	95.09
27	54.47	58.83	63.17	71.55	78.32	83.59	89.27	95.04	99.97
26	56.73	61.27	65.86	74.57	81.65	87.24	93.17	99.19	104.57
25	58.87	63.58	68.22	77.14	84.67	90.36	96.50	102.74	108.07
24	60.81	65.67	70.58	79.83	87.56	93.47	99.83	106.28	111.79
23	62.10	67.07	72.20	81.65	89.39	94.55	100.98	107.49	113.07
22	64.89	70.08	75.21	85.10	93.25	99.60	106.39	113.24	119.12
21	66.51	71.83	77.14	87.35	95.63	102.29	109.24	116.29	122.33
20	68.22	73.68	79.08	89.49	97.99	104.75	111.87	119.10	125.28
19	72.20	77.98	83.69	94.76	103.89	110.67	118.55	125.82	132.36
18	75.53	81.57	87.56	97.50	108.52	116.03	123.92	131.93	138.78
17	78.54	84.82	91.10	103.14	112.81	120.33	128.52	136.82	143.91
16	82.19	88.77	95.40	107.98	118.18	126.78	135.39	144.15	151.63
15	85.20	92.02	98.84	111.74	122.48	131.07	139.98	149.03	156.77
14	87.10	94.40	100.78	114.21	124.44	133.22	142.28	151.47	159.33
13	89.92	97.11	104.32	118.18	128.93	138.60	148.02	157.58	165.76
12	93.90	101.41	108.52	123.56	135.37	143.97	153.75	163.69	172.13
11	95.94	103.62	111.31	126.02	137.52	147.20	157.20	167.36	176.03
10	98.30	106.16	114.21	129.25	141.82	151.50	161.81	172.26	181.13
9	100.99	109.07	117.11	132.58	145.05	154.71	165.23	175.91	185.03
8	103.89	112.20	120.65	136.44	149.33	160.08	170.96	182.00	191.44
7	105.93	114.40	123.01	139.23	152.56	163.31	174.38	185.68	195.30
6	109.15	117.88	126.78	142.88	156.83	167.51	178.88	190.46	200.36
5	111.08	119.97	128.93	145.79	160.08	170.82	182.48	194.22	204.30
4	114.75	123.93	133.22	150.41	164.36	176.18	188.16	200.25	210.71
3	119.25	128.79	137.52	156.26	170.78	182.64	195.08	207.66	218.44
2	128.48	138.76	148.61	168.64	184.79	197.66	211.05	224.74	235.58
1	136.35	147.26	158.25	179.33	194.63	209.48	223.65	238.16	250.54

For SI units, 1 Btu/hr = 0.293 W, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1 in. w.c. = 249 Pa.
Notes:
(1) Specific gravity = 0.60; orifice coefficient = 0.90.
(2) For utility gases of another specific gravity, select multiplier from Table E.1.1(c). For altitudes above 2000 ft, first select the equivalent orifice size at sea level from Table E.1.1(d).

TABLE E.1.1(b) *LP-Gases (Btu per hour at sea level)*

Orifice or Drill Size	*Propane*	*Butane*	*Orifice or Drill Size*	*Propane*	*Butane*
0.008	519	589	50	39,842	45,168
0.009	656	744	49	43,361	49,157
0.010	812	921	48	46,983	53,263
0.011	981	1,112	47	50,088	56,783
0.012	1,169	1,326	46	53,296	60,420
80	1,480	1,678	45	54,641	61,944
79	1,708	1,936	44	60,229	68,280
78	2,080	2,358	43	64,369	72,973
77	2,629	2,980	42	71,095	80,599
76	3,249	3,684	41	74,924	84,940
75	3,581	4,059	40	78,029	88,459
74	4,119	4,669	39	80,513	91,215
73	4,678	5,303	38	83,721	94,912
72	5,081	5,760	37	87,860	99,605
71	5,495	6,230	36	92,207	104,532
70	6,375	7,227	35	98,312	111,454
69	6,934	7,860	34	100,175	113,566
68	7,813	8,858	33	103,797	117,672
67	8,320	9,433	32	109,385	124,007
66	8,848	10,031	31	117,043	132,689
65	9,955	11,286	30	134,119	152,046
64	10,535	11,943	29	150,366	170,466
63	11,125	12,612	28	160,301	181,728
62	11,735	13,304	27	168,580	191,114
61	12,367	14,020	26	175,617	199,092
60	13,008	14,747	25	181,619	205,896
59	13,660	15,486	24	187,828	212,935
58	14,333	16,249	23	192,796	218,567
57	15,026	17,035	22	200,350	227,131
56	17,572	19,921	21	205,525	232,997
55	21,939	24,872	20	210,699	238,863
54	24,630	27,922	19	223,945	253,880
53	28,769	32,615	18	233,466	264,673
52	32,805	37,190			
51	36,531	41,414			

Notes:

	Propane	Butane
(1) Btu per cubic foot	2516	3280
(2) Specific gravity	1.52	2.01
(3) Pressure at orifice (in. w.c.)	11	11
(4) Orifice coefficient	0.9	0.9

(5) For altitudes above 2000 ft (610 m), first select the equivalent orifice size at sea level from Table E.1.1(d).

TABLE E.1.1(c) *Multipliers for Utility Gases of Another Specific Gravity*

Specific Gravity	Multiplier	Specific Gravity	Multiplier
0.45	1.155	0.95	0.795
0.50	1.095	1.00	0.775
0.55	1.045	1.05	0.756
0.60	1.000	1.10	0.739
0.65	0.961	1.15	0.722
0.70	0.926	1.20	0.707
0.75	0.894	1.25	0.693
0.80	0.866	1.30	0.679
0.85	0.840	1.35	0.667
0.90	0.817	1.40	0.655

TABLE E.1.1(d) *Equivalent Orifice Sizes at High Altitudes (includes 4% input reduction for each 1000 ft above sea level)*

Orifice Size at Sea Level	Orifice Size Required at Other Elevations (ft)								
	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000	10,000
1	2	2	3	3	4	5	7	8	10
2	3	3	4	5	6	7	9	10	12
3	4	5	7	8	9	10	12	13	15
4	6	7	8	9	11	12	13	14	16
5	7	8	9	10	12	13	14	15	17
6	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	16	17
7	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	18
8	10	11	12	13	13	15	16	17	18
9	11	12	12	13	14	16	17	18	19
10	12	13	13	14	15	16	17	18	19
11	13	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20
12	13	14	15	16	17	17	18	19	20
13	15	15	16	17	18	18	19	20	22
14	16	16	17	18	18	19	20	21	23
15	16	17	17	18	19	20	20	22	24
16	17	18	18	19	19	20	22	23	25
17	18	19	19	20	21	22	23	24	26
18	19	19	20	21	22	23	24	26	27
19	20	20	21	22	23	25	26	27	28
20	22	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29
21	23	23	24	25	26	27	28	28	29
22	23	24	25	26	27	27	28	29	29
23	25	25	26	27	27	28	29	29	30
24	25	26	27	27	28	28	29	29	30
25	26	27	27	28	28	29	29	30	30

(continues)

TABLE E.1.1(d) *Continued*

Orifice Size at Sea Level	Orifice Size Required at Other Elevations (ft)								
	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000	10,000
26	27	28	28	28	29	29	30	30	30
27	28	28	29	29	29	30	30	30	31
28	29	29	29	30	30	30	30	31	31
29	29	30	30	30	30	31	31	31	32
30	30	31	31	31	31	32	32	33	35
31	32	32	32	33	34	35	36	37	38
32	33	34	35	35	36	36	37	38	40
33	35	35	36	36	37	38	38	40	41
34	35	36	36	37	37	38	39	40	42
35	36	36	37	37	38	39	40	41	42
36	37	38	38	39	40	41	41	42	43
37	38	39	39	40	41	42	42	43	43
38	39	40	41	41	42	42	43	43	44
39	40	41	41	42	42	43	43	44	44
40	41	42	42	42	43	43	44	44	45
41	42	42	42	43	43	44	44	45	46
42	42	43	43	43	44	44	45	46	47
43	44	44	44	45	45	46	47	47	48
44	45	45	45	46	47	47	48	48	49
45	46	47	47	47	48	48	49	49	50
46	47	47	47	48	48	49	49	50	50
47	48	48	49	49	49	50	50	51	51
48	49	49	49	50	50	50	51	51	52
49	50	50	50	51	51	51	52	52	52
50	51	51	51	51	52	52	52	53	53
51	51	52	52	52	52	53	53	53	54
52	52	53	53	53	53	53	54	54	54
53	54	54	54	54	54	54	55	55	55
54	54	55	55	55	55	55	56	56	56
55	55	55	55	56	56	56	56	56	57
56	56	56	57	57	57	58	59	59	60
57	58	59	59	60	60	61	62	63	63
58	59	60	60	61	62	62	63	63	64
59	60	61	61	62	62	63	64	64	65
60	61	61	62	63	63	64	64	65	65
61	62	62	63	63	64	65	65	66	66
62	63	63	64	64	65	65	66	66	67
63	64	64	65	65	65	66	66	67	68
64	65	65	65	66	66	66	67	67	68
65	65	66	66	66	67	67	68	68	69
66	67	67	68	68	68	69	69	69	70
67	68	68	68	69	69	69	70	70	70
68	68	69	69	69	70	70	70	71	71
69	70	70	70	70	71	71	71	72	72
70	70	71	71	71	71	72	72	73	73

TABLE E.1.1(d) Continued

Orifice Size at Sea Level	Orifice Size Required at Other Elevations (ft)								
	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000	10,000
72	73	73	73	73	74	74	74	74	75
73	73	74	74	74	74	75	75	75	76
74	74	75	75	75	75	76	76	76	76
75	75	76	76	76	76	77	77	77	77
76	76	76	77	77	77	77	77	77	77
77	77	77	77	78	78	78	78	78	78
78	78	78	78	79	79	79	79	80	80
79	79	80	80	80	80	0.013	0.012	0.012	0.01
80	80	0.013	0.013	0.013	0.012	0.012	0.012	0.012	0.011

For SI units, 1 ft = 0.305 m.

The input rate specified on an appliance nameplate applies to elevations up to 2000 ft (600 m) above sea level. For elevations above 2000 ft (600 m), unless the manufacturer's instructions require otherwise, the standard cubic feet per hour input rate must be reduced by 4 percent for each 1000 ft (300 m) above sea level to provide sufficient oxygen for proper combustion of the fuel gas. Table E.1.1(d) also shows the proper burner orifice size to use at elevations of 2000 ft (600 m) and above, based on the orifice size for sea level operation from either Table E.1.1(a) [as corrected by Table E.1.1(c)] or Table E.1.1(b).

Manufacturers' instructions often specify other than the 4 percent per 1000 ft (300 m) reduction because their appliances, typically of the fan-assisted type, have been tested and found to operate properly with a differing protocol. Appliances with tracking-type combustion systems — that is, those with "zero" or "negative pressure" regulators and venturis — usually require no modification at all because those systems inherently compensate for air and gas density changes.

The following two examples illustrate the use of the Annex E tables in sizing burner orifices at various altitudes.

EXAMPLE 1

Which burner orifices are needed for an appliance, given the following parameters?

- Burner elevation: 4000 ft (1200 m)
- Sea level firing rate: 100 MBH (29 MW) total in two burners at 4 in. w.c. (1.0 kPa) pressure
- Gas specific gravity: 0.80, 850 Btu/ft^3 (88 MW/m^3)

Answer: Each burner is rated at 50,000 Btu/hr (15 MW):

(50,000)/(850) = 58.82 ft^3/hour

(58.82)/(0.866) = 67.92 equiv. ft^3/hour

[0.866 is obtained from Table E.1.1(c)]

Table E.1.1(a) provides the orifice needed at sea level for natural gas. From Table E.1.1(a), 67.92 falls between a #26 and a #25 drill. (Select #25 to provide at least the required flow.)

Table E.1.1(d) corrects for altitude. From Table E.1.1(d) it is seen that a #27 drill is used at 4000 ft (1200 m). Thus, two orifices are required with a #27 drill opening.

EXAMPLE 2

Which burner orifices are needed for an appliance, given the following parameters?

- Burner elevation: 5000 ft (1500 m)
- Inshot burner: 75 MBH (22 MW) sea level input rating
- Propane fuel

Answer: Table E.1.1(b) shows that a #41 drill is needed (74,924 Btu/hr). Table E.1.1(d) shows that a #43 drill should be used at a 5000 ft (1500 m) elevation. Table E.1.1(b) provides the orifice needed at sea level for liquefied petroleum gases. From Table E.1.1(b), 75,000 falls between a #41 (74,924 Btu/hr) and a #40 (78,029 Btu/hr) drill size for propane. (Select a #41 drill, as it coincides with a pressure of 50,000 Btu/hr when rounded.) From Table E.1.1(d) it is seen that a #43 drill is used at an elevation of 5000 ft (1520 m).

If the orifice is drilled on the job, drilling an orifice opening at least two sizes smaller than called for is good practice. If the orifice blank is held with pliers and the drill is powered by a handheld power tool, then creating a straight round hole is impossible. More gas will pass through the resulting opening than would be expected according to the tables. If, after test firing, increasing the opening is necessary, drilling one or two sizes larger will produce a hole much closer to the true size than the first hole drilled in the blank. Do not plan to compensate for an oversized or undersized orifice by reducing or increasing the appliance manifold pressure at the orifice by more than 10 percent of the manifold pressure specified for the appliance.

Some burners will operate satisfactorily only over a narrow range of orifice inlet pressures. If the pressure is too low, the flame may become soft and lazy. In extreme cases, sooting will occur. If the pressure is too high, the flame can become hard, noisy, and unstable, and lifting off of the burner head could occur.

E.1.2 To Select Correct Orifice Size for Rated Burner Input. The selection of a fixed orifice size for any rated burner input is affected by many variables, including orifice coefficient, and it is recommended that the appliance manufacturer be consulted for that purpose. When the correct orifice size cannot be readily determined, the orifice flow rates, as stated in the tables in this annex, can be used to select a fixed orifice size with a flow rate to approximately equal the required rated burner input.

For gases of the specific gravity and pressure conditions stipulated at elevations under 2000 ft (600 m), Table E.1.1(a) (in cubic feet per hour) or Table E.1.1(b) (in Btu per hour) can be used directly.

Where the specific gravity of the gas is other than 0.60, select the multiplier from Table E.1.1(c) for the utility gas served and divide the rated burner input by the selected factor to determine equivalent input at a specific gravity of 0.60, then select orifice size.

Where the appliance is located at an altitude of 2000 ft (600 m) or above, first use the manufacturer's rated input at sea level to select the orifice size as directed, then use Table E.1.1(d) to select the equivalent orifice size for use at the higher altitude.

Reference Cited in Commentary

The following publication is available from the American Gas Association, 400 N. Capitol St. NW, Washington, DC 20001, www.aga.org.

AGA Report No. 3, "Orifice Metering of Natural Gas," Part 1: General Equations & Uncertainty Guidelines, 1990; Part 2: Specification and Installation Requirements, 2000; Part 3: Natural Gas Applications, 1992; and Part 4: Background, Development Implementation Procedure, 1992.

Sizing of Venting Systems Serving Appliances Equipped with Draft Hoods, Category I Appliances, and Appliances Listed for Use with Type B Vents

F

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex F provides additional information on the sizing of gas vents beyond that provided in Chapter 12, Venting of Appliances, and Chapter 13, Sizing of Category I Venting Systems. The annex is useful to the user of the code for the proper sizing of venting systems. The annex consists of two parts:

- Fourteen figures showing typical vent configurations and how to measure the variables needed when using the tables in Chapter 13
- Seven examples of vent system calculations using the tables in Chapter 13. An example of another vent configuration (multistory vent) is included in the handbook commentary.

The code figures in Annex F illustrate common venting systems and are used in conjunction with the tables in Chapter 13. These figures illustrate the types of systems and the measurement of dimensions so that the tables in Chapter 13 can be used properly. The figures illustrate typical installations. Since other configurations that meet the code are possible, the figures should not be interpreted as being the only permissible geometry.

A series of examples are given that show how to use the tables and that illustrate other requirements of Chapter 13. The examples also illustrate which dimensions on a real venting system correspond to the table entries. The examples include excerpts from the tables in Chapter 13 to clarify the calculations.

For SI units, 1 Btu/hr = 0.293 W, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1 in. w.c. = 249 Pa.

F.1 Examples Using Single Appliance Venting Tables

See Figure F.1(a) through Figure F.1(n).

Figure F.1(a) through Figure F.1(n), on pp. 408–411, illustrate how the dimensions called for in the venting tables in Sections 13.1 and 13.2 are measured.

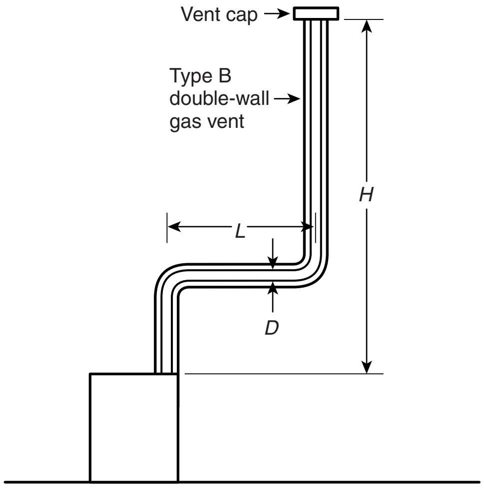


Table 13.1(a) is used when sizing Type B double-wall gas vent connected directly to the appliance.

Note: The appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE F.1(a) *Type B Double-Wall Vent System Serving a Single Appliance with a Type B Double-Wall Vent.*

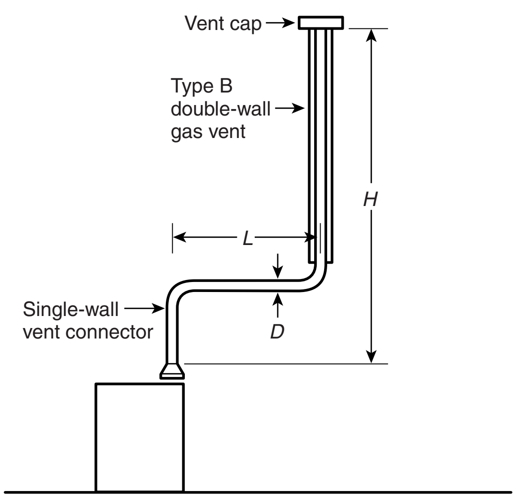


Table 13.1(b) is used when sizing a single-wall metal vent connector attached to a Type B double-wall gas vent.

Note: The appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE F.1(b) *Type B Double-Wall Vent System Serving a Single Appliance with a Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector.*

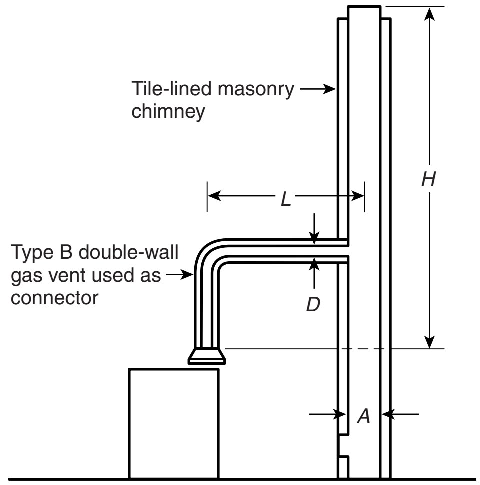


Table 13.1(c) is used when sizing a Type B double-w gas vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Notes:
(1) *A* is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile
(2) The appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE F.1(c) *Vent System Serving a Single Appliance with a Masonry Chimney and a Type B Double-Wall Vent Connector.*

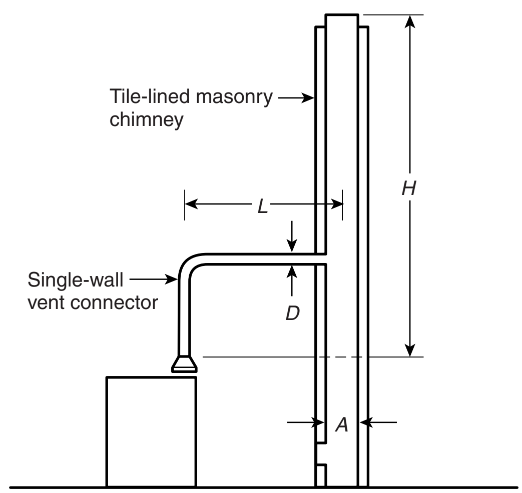
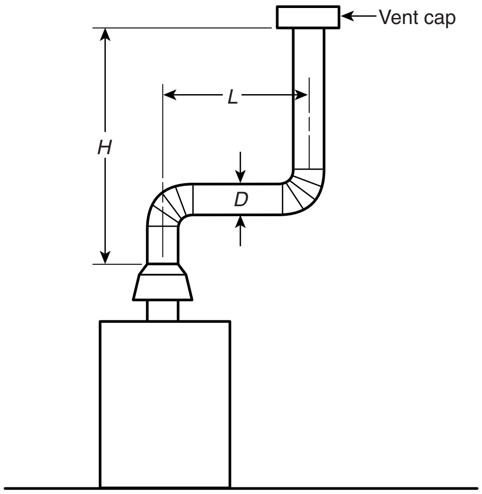


Table 13.1(d) is used when sizing a single-wall vent connector attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Notes:
(1) *A* is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.
(2) The appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE F.1(d) *Vent System Serving a Single Appliance Using a Masonry Chimney and a Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector.*



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal vent serving a single draft hood–equipped appliance. *[See Table 13.1(e).]*

FIGURE F.1(e) *Asbestos Cement Type B or Single-Wall Metal Vent System Serving a Single Draft Hood–Equipped Appliance.*

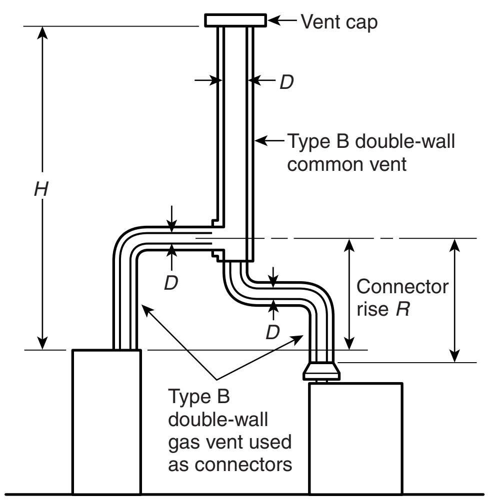


Table 13.2(a) is used when sizing Type B double-wall gas vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE F.1(f) *Vent System Serving Two or More Appliances with Type B Double-Wall Vent and Type B Double-Wall Vent Connectors.*

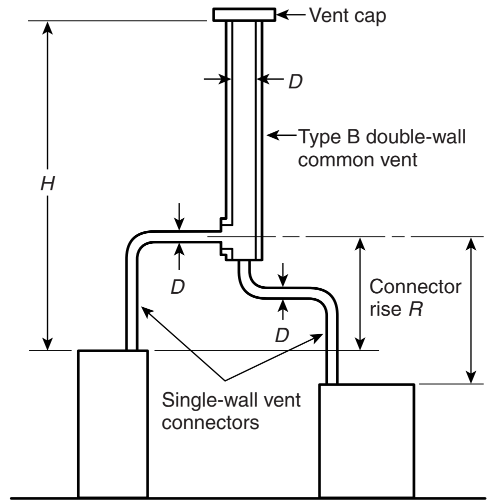


Table 13.2(b) is used when sizing single-wall vent connectors attached to a Type B double-wall common vent.

Note: Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE F.1(g) *Vent System Serving Two or More Appliances with Type B Double-Wall Vent and Single-Wall Metal Vent Connectors.*

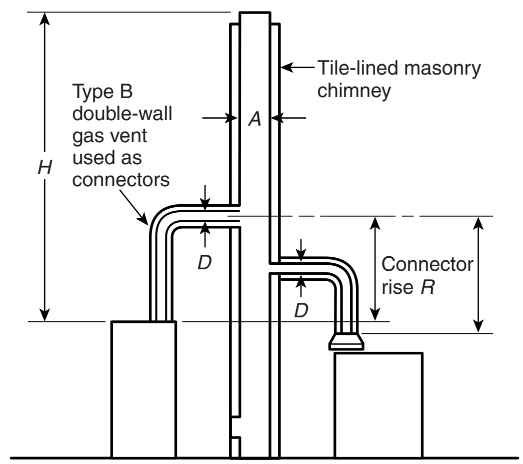


Table 13.2(c) is used when sizing Type B double-wall vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Notes:
(1) *A* is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.
(2) Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

FIGURE F.1(h) *Masonry Chimney Serving Two or More Appliances with Type B Double-Wall Vent Connectors.*

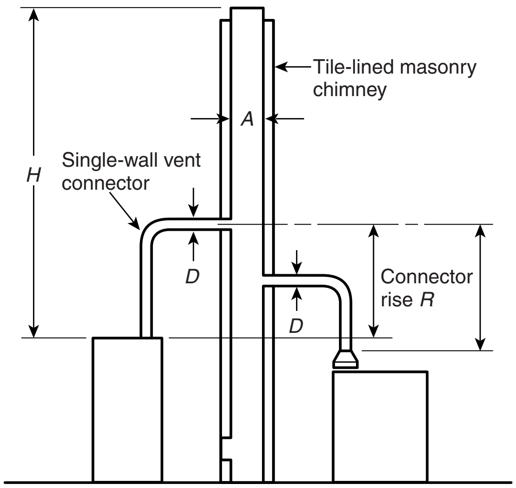
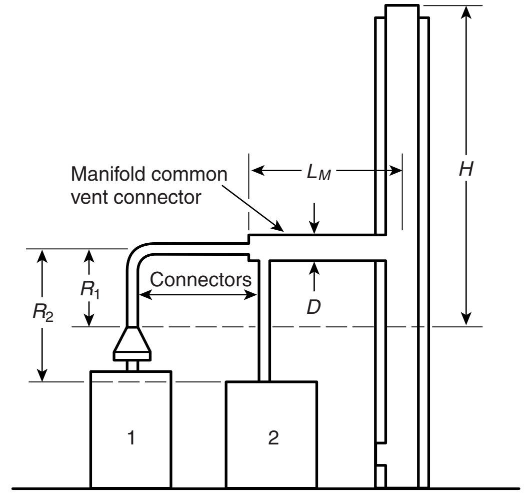


Table 13.2(d) is used when sizing single-wall metal vent connectors attached to a tile-lined masonry chimney.

Notes:
(1) *A* is the equivalent cross-sectional area of the tile liner.
(2) Each appliance can be either Category I draft hood–equipped or fan-assisted type.

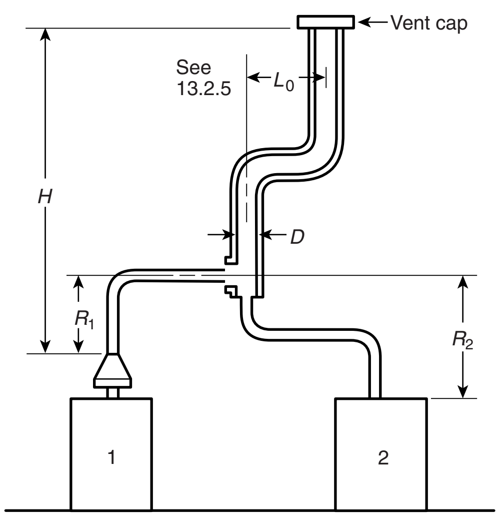
FIGURE F.1(i) *Masonry Chimney Serving Two or More Appliances with Single-Wall Metal Vent Connectors.*



Example: Manifolded common vent connector L_M can be no greater than 18 times the common vent connector manifold inside diameter; that is, a 4 in. (100 mm) inside diameter common vent connector manifold should not exceed 72 in. (1800 mm) in length. *(See 13.2.4.)*

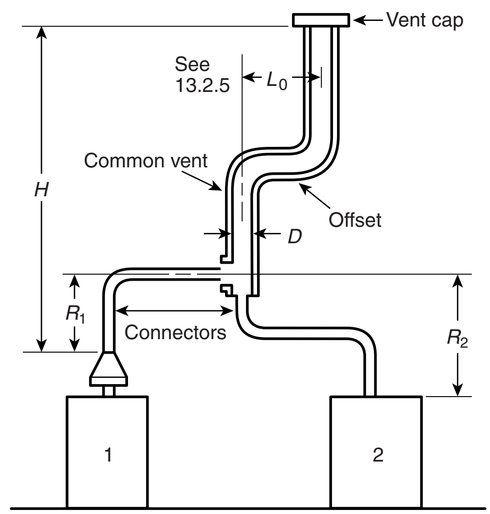
Note: This is an illustration of a typical manifolded vent connector. Different appliance, vent connector, or common vent types are possible. *(See Section 13.2.)*

FIGURE F.1(k) *Use of Manifolded Common Vent Connector.*



Asbestos cement Type B or single-wall metal pipe vent serving two or more draft hood–equipped appliances. *[See Table 13.2(e).]*

FIGURE F.1(j) *Asbestos Cement Type B or Single-Wall Metal Vent System Serving Two or More Draft Hood–Equipped Appliances.*



Example: Offset common vent.

Note: This is an illustration of a typical offset vent. Different appliance, vent connector, or vent types are possible. *(See Sections 13.1 and 13.2.)*

FIGURE F.1(l) *Use of Offset Common Vent.*

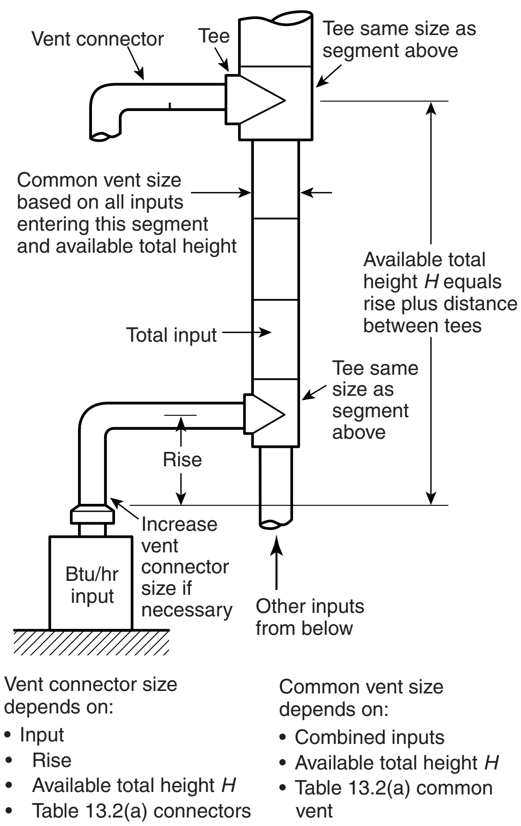


FIGURE F.1(m) Multistory Gas Vent Design Procedure for Each Segment of System.

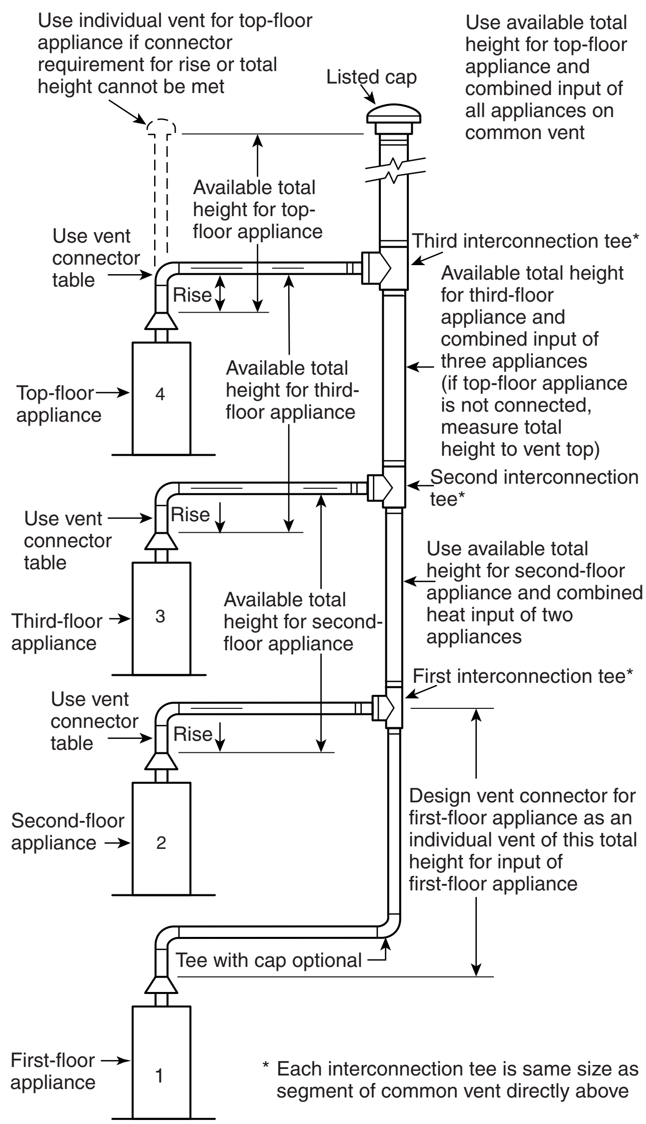


FIGURE F.1(n) Principles of Design of Multistory Vents Using Vent Connector and Common Vent Design Tables. (See 13.2.14 through 13.2.17.)

SIZING MULTISTORY VENTS

The following is an example of the use of the tables in Chapter 13 to size a multistory vent.

Assume that Figure F.1(n) represents a four-story apartment building that has a listed fan-assisted combustion furnace installed on each floor. Each furnace has a 4 in. (100 mm) flue collar and an input of 80,000 Btu/hr (23 MW). All the furnaces are installed outside the conditioned space (i.e., isolated combustion) and are to be vented into the common vent, which is located 5 ft (1.5 m) from the furnaces. For the purpose of calculation, the overall system is divided into smaller simple vent systems for each level, as shown in Figure F.1(m).

The structure is such that the vent connector rise is to be 2 ft (0.6 m) and the available total height for each level is 10 ft (3.0 m), except for the top floor, which is 6 ft (1.8 m) high. The vent connector from the first floor or lowest furnace to the common vent is considered to be an individual vent terminating at the first tee or interconnection, and this connector is sized in accordance with Table 13.1(a). Every other vent connector is sized in accordance with the Vent Connector Capacity section of Table 13.2(a). Each section of the common vent is sized in accordance with the Common Vent Capacity section of Table 13.2(a) to accommodate the accumulated total input of all appliances discharging into it, but sections are never smaller than the largest section located below them.

PROCEDURE FOR SIZING CONNECTORS

Sizing a multistory vent requires the following three steps: sizing the vent connectors, sizing the sections of the common vent, and checking for oversizing in the common vent.

Vent connectors are sized individually. The vent connector sizing the appliance on the lowest level uses a single-appliance vent table, as the vent (looking downward) is serving one appliance. The sizing of the other vent connectors uses a multiple-appliance table, as the section of the common vent above the connector is serving multiple appliances.

First-Floor Connector (Furnace 1). The input is 80,000 Btu/hr, and the total height is 10 ft. This section of the vent is treated as a single appliance vent with 5 ft of vent connector. Use Table 13.1(a), reading across the row for a 10-ft height (*H*) and a lateral (*L*) of 5 ft. Look under the FAN columns for a range that includes 80,000. The 4 in. column has a range of 32,000 Btu/hr to 113,000 Btu/hr, and the 5 in. column has a range of 41,000 Btu/hr to 187,000 Btu/hr. Both sizes are acceptable, and a 4 in. size is selected because it is smaller and less costly.

Subsection 13.2.2 limits a 4 in. vent connector to a maximum length of 6 ft (1.5 ft length for each inch of diameter), which is not exceeded in this example.

Second- and Third-Floor Connectors (Furnaces 2 and 3). The input is 80,000 Btu/hr, the connector rise is 2 ft, and the vent height is 10 ft. Use the Vent Connector Capacity section of Table 13.2(a). Reading across the 10 ft height, 2 ft rise row to the FAN columns shows that a 4 in. connector has a range of 36,000 Btu/hr to 86,000 Btu/hr, a 5 in. connector has a range of 51,000 Btu/hr to 136,000 Btu/hr, and a 6 in. connector has a range of 67,000 Btu/hr to 206,000 Btu/hr. A connector with a diameter of 4 in., 5 in., or 6 in. will work, and a 4 in. connector is selected because it is smaller and less costly.

Fourth-Floor Connector (Furnace 4). The input is 80,000 Btu/hr, the connector rise is 2 ft, and the vent height is 6 ft. Again, use the Vent Connector Capacity section of Table 13.2(a). Reading across the 6 ft height, 2 ft rise row shows that a 5 in. connector has a range of 48,000 Btu/hr to 121,000 Btu/hr and a 6 in. connector has a range of 60,000 Btu/hr to 183,000 Btu/hr. Either a 5 in. or 6 in. connector will work, and a 5 in. connector is selected because it is smaller and less costly.

Subsection 13.2.2, Table 13.2.2, limits a 5 in. vent connector to a maximum length of $7^1/_2$ ft (1.5 ft length for each inch of diameter), which is not exceeded by the connector size selected.

PROCEDURES FOR SIZING COMMON VENT

The common vent is sized in the sections between appliances and above the uppermost appliance. The lowest section of the common vent, between Appliances 1 and 2, is sized using a single-appliance table, because it serves only one appliance. The remaining sections of the common vent are sized using a multiple-appliance table.

Common Vent for Furnaces 1 and 2. The input is 160,000 Btu/hr, and the vent height is 10 ft. Use the Common Vent Capacity section of Table 13.2(a), FAN+FAN columns only. Reading across the 10 ft row shows that a 5 in. vent has a capacity of 169,000 Btu/hr, which exceeds the 160,000 Btu/hr input. The 5 in. size is selected.

Common Vent for Third-Floor Furnace (Furnace 3). The input is 240,000 Btu/hr, and the height is 10 ft. Use the Common Vent Capacity section of Table 13.2(a). Reading across the 10 ft line in the FAN+FAN columns shows that a 6 in. common vent has a capacity of 243,000 Btu/hr. The 6 in. size is selected.

Common Vent for Fourth-Floor Furnace (Furnace 4). The input is 320,000 Btu/hr, and the height is 6 ft. Again, use the FAN+FAN columns in the Common Vent Capacity section of Table 13.2(a). Reading across the 6 ft row shows that an 8 in. vent has a capacity of 404,000 Btu/hr, and this size is selected.

These sizing procedures are summarized in Commentary Tables F.1 and F.2.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.1 *Common Vent Serving Appliances on Four Floors*

Furnace	Total Input to Common Vent (Btu/hr)	Available Total Height (ft)	Vent Connector Size (in.)	Common Vent Size (in.)
1	80,000	10	4	4
2	160,000	10	4	5
3	240,000	10	4	6
4	320,000	6	5	8

COMMENTARY TABLE F.2 *Common Vent Serving Appliances on Three Floors; Independent Vent Serving Appliances on the Fourth Floor*

Furnace	Total Input to Common Vent (Btu/hr)	Available Total Height (ft)	Vent Connector Size (in.)	Common Vent Size (in.)
1	80,000	10	4	4
2	160,000	10	4	5
3	240,000	10	4	6
4	80,000	6	4	None

CHECK FOR EXCESSIVE VENT AREA

The vent connector and common vent have been sized using Table 13.2(a) and Section 13.2, Additional Requirements to Multiple-Appliance Vent. To check that the size is correct, refer to 13.2.18, which states:

> **13.2.18 Vertical Vent Size Limitation.** Where two or more appliances are connected to a vertical vent or chimney, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or chimney shall not exceed seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized vent areas, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area unless designed in accordance with approved engineering methods.

In the multistory vent example, the smallest vent connector diameter is 4 in., and the largest common vent diameter is 8 in.

For the 4 in. diameter connector, use the following equation:

$$\text{Area} = \pi r^2 = 3.14(2)^2 = 12.56 \text{ in.}^2$$

where:

π = 3.14

r = 2 (½ the 4 in. diameter)

For the 8 in. diameter common vent, use the following equation:

$$\text{Area} = \pi r^2 = 3.14(4)^2 = 50.25 \text{ in.}^2$$

where:

π = 3.14

r = 4 (½ the 8 in. diameter)

Subsection 13.2.18 limits the common vent to seven times the smallest connector area. The ratio of the area of the smallest connector to the common vent area in this example must be checked using an equation such as the following to be sure it is less than seven:

$$\text{Ratio} = \text{area (largest common vent section)/area (smallest connector)}$$

$$\text{Ratio} = \frac{50.25}{12.56} = 4$$

Since 4 is less than 7, the sizing of the common vent is acceptable.

F.1.1 Example 1: Single Draft Hood–Equipped Appliance. An installer has a 120,000 Btu/hr input appliance with a 5 in. diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 10 ft high Type B vent system. What size vent should be used assuming (1) a 5 ft lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with two 90 degree elbows or (2) a 5 ft lateral single-wall metal vent connector is used with three 90-degree elbows in the vent system? See Figure F.1.1.

This example illustrates the sizing of a single appliance using a single-wall connector and Type B vent, a common installation. The solution explains the need to be aware of the number of elbows in the vent system, because elbows reduce venting system performance.

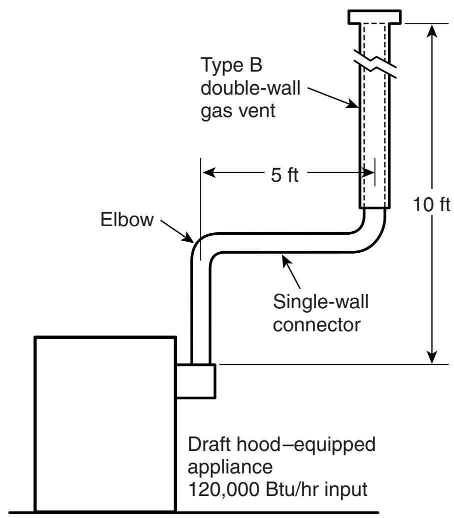


FIGURE F.1.1 *Single Draft Hood–Equipped Appliance— Example 1.*

Solution

Table 13.1(b) should be used to solve this problem, because single-wall metal vent connectors are being used with a Type B vent, as follows:

(1) Read down the first column in Table 13.1(b) until the row associated with a 10 ft height and 5 ft lateral is found. Read across this row until a vent capacity greater than 120,000 Btu/hr is located in the shaded columns labeled NAT Max for draft hood–equipped appliances. In this case, a 5 in. diameter vent has a capacity of 122,000 Btu/hr and can be used for this application.

(2) If three 90 degree elbows are used in the vent system, the maximum vent capacity listed in the tables must be reduced by 10 percent. This implies that the 5 in. diameter

vent has an adjusted capacity of only 110,000 Btu/hr. In this case, the vent system must be increased to 6 in. in diameter. See the following calculations:

$$122{,}000 \times 0.90 = 110{,}000 \text{ for 5 in. vent} \quad \textbf{[F.1.1a]}$$

From Table 13.1(b), select 6 in. vent.

$$186{,}000 \times 0.90 = 167{,}000 \quad \textbf{[F.1.1b]}$$

This figure is greater than the required 120,000. Therefore, use a 6 in. vent and connector where three elbows are used.

Refer to Commentary Table F.3, which is an extract from code Table 13.1(b). This extract illustrates the use of the vent tables as described in F.1.1.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.3 *Extract from Code Table 13.1(b) for Example 1*

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	4 in. FAN Min	4 in. FAN Max	4 in. NAT Max	5 in. FAN Min	5 in. FAN Max	5 in. NAT Max	6 in. FAN Min
		Vent Diameter D — Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour						
10	0	57	174	99	82	293	165	120
	2	59	117	80	82	193	128	119
	5	76	111	76	105	185	122	148
	10	97	100	68	132	171	112	188

The solution to Example 1 is summarized in Worksheet F.1.

F.1.2 Example 2: Single Fan-Assisted Appliance. An installer has an 80,000 Btu/hr input fan-assisted appliance that must be installed using 10 ft of lateral connector attached to a 30 ft high Type B vent. Two 90-degree elbows are needed for the installation. Can a single-wall metal vent connector be used for this application? See Figure F.1.2.

Example 2 in F.1.2 illustrates a very important point. The sizing tables for fan-assisted appliances are designed to reduce the allowable length of single-wall galvanized vent connector runs, as compared to those for Type B connectors. The reason for this limitation is that single-wall connectors lose more heat in the vent gases than double-wall Type B vent connectors, which adversely affects the performance of the entire venting system. Type B connectors are of double-wall construction with an air space. This design provides insulation and reduces heat loss. Remember that fan-assisted combustion appliances operate at a lower vent temperature than do draft hood–equipped appliances, so further heat loss in the venting system must be minimized to prevent condensation and corrosion of the vent.

There is no hard and fast rule for the maximum length of single-wall connectors. However, use of Table 13.1(b) in practical situations shows there are not many instances where a connector of more than 5 ft (1.5 m) in length is allowed.

Solution

Table 13.1(b) refers to the use of single-wall metal vent connectors with Type B vent. In the first column find the row associated with a 30 ft height and a 10 ft lateral. Read across this row, looking at the FAN Min and FAN Max columns, to find that a 3 in. diameter single-wall

WORKSHEET F.1

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: VENT SIZING, SINGLE APPLIANCE
(DRAFT HOOD–EQUIPPED APPLIANCE)

Step 1:

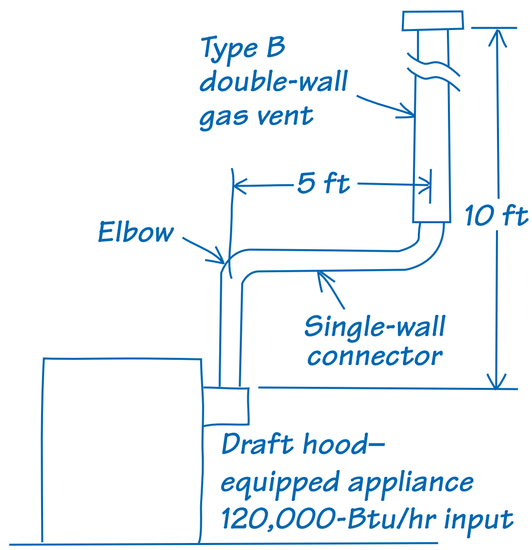
- Determine the type of chimney or vent used and enter it to the right.
- If used, determine the type of vent connector material and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate table and enter it to the right.

Type of vent: B vent
Type of connector: Single wall
Height: 10 ft
Lateral: 5 ft
Table used: 13.1(b)

Step 2:

- Draw a sketch of the proposed design in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Note: Factors such as combining connectors prior to entering the common vent will affect capacity.



Proposed design sketch

Step 3:

- Determine the common vent size using the single appliance vent table. Read across the row with the correct height and lateral offset. Use the NAT Min. column for draft hood appliances and the FAN Min and Max columns for draft hood appliances.

Vent size: 5 in.

Step 4:

- Check for vent downsizing.
- If the vent is smaller than the draft hood outlet or flue collar, see 13.1.2 for restrictions.

Draft hood outlet/
flue collar diameter: 5 in.

Step 5:

- Check for excessive elbows.
- If more than two elbows are used, derate the single appliance vent table values by 10% for each elbow above 2 (see 13.1.3).

Number of elbows: 2

- ☑ Derating not required.
- ☐ Derating required.
  Show calculation on a separate page.

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sizing Vents for Single Draft Hood–Equipped Appliances.

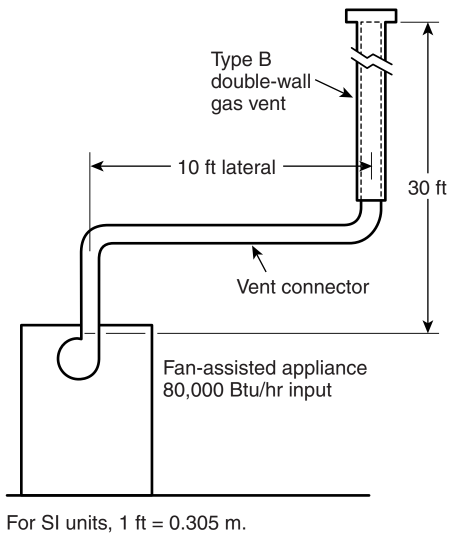


FIGURE F.1.2 *Single Fan-Assisted Appliance — Example 2.*

metal vent connector is not recommended. Moving to the next larger size single-wall connector (4 in.), we find that a 4 in. diameter single-wall metal connector has a recommended minimum vent capacity of 91,000 Btu/hr and a recommended maximum vent capacity of 144,000 Btu/hr. The 80,000 Btu/hr fan-assisted appliance is outside this range, so the conclusion is that a single-wall metal vent connector cannot be used to vent this appliance using 10 ft of lateral for the connector.

However, if the 80,000 Btu/hr input appliance could be moved to within 5 ft of the vertical vent, a 4 in. single-wall metal connector could be used to vent the appliance. Table 13.1(b) shows the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4 in. vent with 5 ft of lateral to be between 72,000 Btu/hr and 157,000 Btu/hr.

Refer to Commentary Table F.4, which is an extract from code Table 13.1(b). This commentary table illustrates the use of the vent tables as described in the solution given in F.1.2. The solution to this example is summarized in Worksheet F.2. Blank worksheets are located in Supplement 4 of this handbook and are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.

If the appliance cannot be moved closer to the vertical vent, a Type B vent could be used as the connector material. In this case, Table 13.1(a) shows that, for a 30 ft high vent with 10 ft of lateral, the acceptable range of vent capacities for a 4 in. diameter vent attached to a fan-assisted appliance is between 37,000 Btu/hr and 150,000 Btu/hr.

Commentary Table F.5 is an extract from code Table 13.1(b).
Commentary Table F.6 is an extract from code Table 13.1(a).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.4 *Extract from Code Table 13.1(b) for Example 2 with a 30 ft Height and a 10 ft Lateral Using Single-Wall Metal Connector*

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	Vent Diameter D: 3 in. FAN Min	3 in. FAN Max	3 in. NAT Max	4 in. FAN Min	4 in. FAN Max	4 in. NAT Max
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106
	10	NA	NA	NA	91	144	98
	15	NA	NA	NA	115	131	NA
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

COMMENTARY TABLE F.5 *Extract from Code Table 13.1(b) for Example 2 with a 30 ft Height and a 5 ft Lateral Using Single-Wall Metal Connector*

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	Vent Diameter D: 3 in. FAN Min	3 in. FAN Max	3 in. NAT Max	4 in. FAN Min	4 in. FAN Max	4 in. NAT Max
30	0	34	99	63	53	211	127
	2	37	80	56	55	164	111
	5	49	74	52	72	157	106
	10	NA	NA	NA	91	144	98
	15	NA	NA	NA	115	131	NA
	20	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	30	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA

Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

COMMENTARY TABLE F.6 *Extract from Code Table 13.1(a) for Example 2 with a 30 ft Height and a 10 ft Lateral Using Type B Double-Wall Connector*

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	Vent Diameter D: 3 in. FAN Min	3 in. FAN Max	3 in. NAT Max	4 in. FAN Min	4 in. FAN Max	4 in. NAT Max
30	0	0	100	64	0	213	128
	2	9	81	56	13	166	112
	5	21	77	54	28	160	108
	10	27	70	50	37	150	102
	15	33	64	NA	44	141	96
	20	56	58	NA	53	132	90
	30	NA	NA	NA	73	113	NA

Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour

WORKSHEET F.2

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: VENT SIZING, SINGLE APPLIANCE
(FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCE)

Step 1:

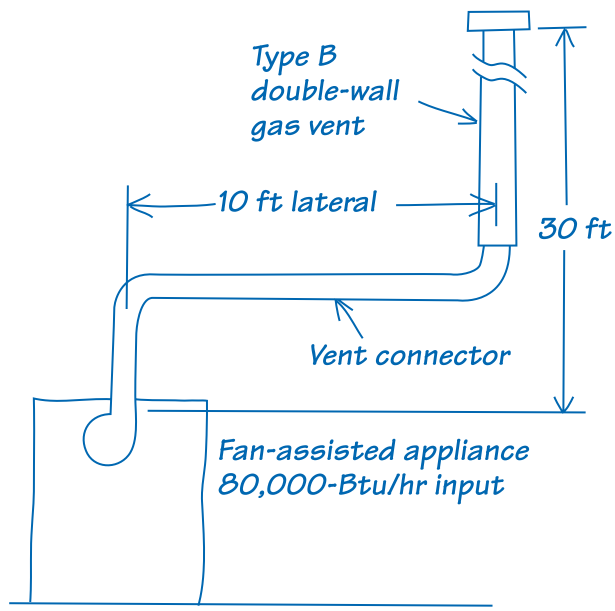
- Determine the type of chimney or vent used and enter it to the right.
- If used, determine the type of vent connector material and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate table and enter it to the right.

Type of vent: B vent/B vent
Type of connector: Single wall/Single wall
Height: 30 ft /30 ft
Lateral: 10 ft/5 ft
Table used: 13.1 (b)/13.1 (b)

Step 2:

- Draw a sketch of the proposed design in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Note: Factors such as combining connectors prior to entering the common vent will affect capacity.



Proposed design sketch

Step 3:

- Determine the common vent size using the single appliance vent table. Read across the row with the correct height and lateral offset. Use the NAT Min column for draft hood appliances and the FAN Min and Max columns for draft hood appliances.

Vent size: None/4 in.

Step 4:

- Check for vent downsizing.
- If the vent is smaller than the draft hood outlet or flue collar, see 13.1.2 for restrictions.

Draft hood outlet/
flue collar diameter: N/A

Step 5:

- Check for excessive elbows.
- If more than two elbows are used, derate the single appliance vent table values by 10% for each elbow above 2 (see 13.1.3).

Number of elbows: 2

☑ Derating not required.
❑ Derating required.
Show calculation on a separate page.

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Calculating Size of Vents for Single Fan-Assisted Appliance.

F.1.3 Example 3: Interpolating Between Table Values. An installer has an 80,000 Btu/hr input appliance with a 4 in. diameter draft hood outlet that needs to be vented into a 12 ft high Type B vent. The vent connector has a 5 ft lateral length and is also Type B. Can this appliance be vented using a 4 in. diameter vent?

Example 3 in F.1.3 shows how to interpolate between existing table values (to find an intermediate value between two table values). However, it is not permissible to extrapolate out to values beyond the outer bounds of the tables (to infer a value beyond the values in the table). In a case where values exceed those shown in the tables, some other approved engineering method must be used.

Solution

Table 13.1(a) is used in the case of an all Type B vent system. However, Table 13.1(a) does not have an entry for a height of 12 ft, and interpolation must be used. Read down the 4 in. diameter NAT Max column to the row associated with 10 ft height and 5 ft lateral to find the capacity value of 77,000 Btu/hr. Read further down to the 15 ft height, 5 ft lateral row to find the capacity value of 87,000 Btu/hr. The difference between the 15 ft height capacity value and the 10 ft height capacity value is 10,000 Btu/hr. The capacity for a vent system with a 12 ft height is equal to the capacity for a 10 ft height plus 2/5 of the difference between the 10 ft and 15 ft height values, or 77,000 + 2/5 × 10,000 = 81,000 Btu/hr. Therefore, a 4 in. diameter vent can be used in the installation.

Commentary Table F.7 is an extract from code Table 13.1(a).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.7 *Extract from Code Table 13.1(a) for Example 3*

Height H (ft)	Lateral L (ft)	Vent Diameter D 4 in. FAN Min	FAN Max	NAT Max
10	0	0	175	100
	2	17	118	81
	5	32	113	77
	10	41	104	70
15	0	0	191	112
	2	15	136	93
	5	30	130	87
	10	40	121	82
	15	48	112	76

F.2 Examples Using Common Venting Tables

F.2.1 Example 4: Common Venting Two Draft Hood–Equipped Appliances. A 35,000-Btu/hr water heater is to be common vented with a 150,000 Btu/hr furnace, using a common vent with a total height of 30 ft. The connector rise is 2 ft for the water heater with a horizontal length of 4 ft. The connector rise for the furnace is 3 ft with a horizontal length of 8 ft. Assume single-wall metal connectors will be used with Type B vent. What size connectors and combined vent should be used in this installation? See Figure F.2.1.

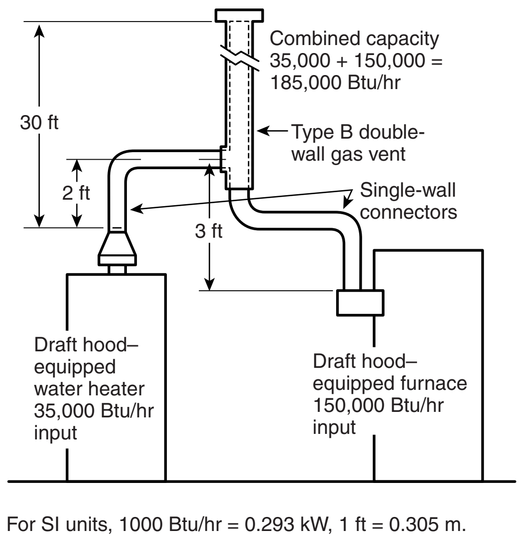


FIGURE F.2.1 *Common Venting Two Draft Hood–Equipped Appliances — Example 4.*

Solution

Table 13.2(b) should be used to size single-wall metal vent connectors attached to Type B vertical vents. In the vent connector capacity portion of Table 13.2(b), find the row associated with a 30 ft vent height. For a 2 ft rise on the vent connector for the water heater, read the shaded columns for draft hood–equipped appliances to find that a 3 in. diameter vent connector has a capacity of 37,000 Btu/hr. Therefore, a 3 in. single-wall metal vent connector can be used with the water heater. For a draft hood–equipped furnace with a 3 ft rise, read across the appropriate row to find that a 5 in. diameter vent connector has a maximum capacity of 120,000 Btu/hr (which is too small for the furnace) and a 6 in. diameter vent connector has a maximum vent capacity of 172,000 Btu/hr. Therefore, a 6 in. diameter vent connector should be used with the 150,000 Btu/hr furnace. Because both vent connector horizontal lengths are less than the maximum lengths listed in 13.2.2, the table values can be used without adjustments.

In the common vent capacity portion of Table 13.2(b), find the row associated with a 30 ft vent height and read over to the NAT + NAT portion of the 6 in. diameter column to find a maximum combined capacity of 257,000 Btu/hr. Since the two appliances total only 185,000 Btu/hr, a 6 in. common vent can be used.

Commentary Table F.8 is an extract from code Table 13.2(b). The vent connector capacity is shown in the upper portion of the table. The common vent capacity is shown in the lower portion of the table. The solution to Example 4 is summarized in Worksheet F.3. Blank worksheets are located in Supplement 4 of this handbook and are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.

F.2.2 Example 5(a): Common Venting a Draft Hood–Equipped Water Heater with a Fan-Assisted Furnace into a Type B Vent. In this case, a 35,000 Btu/hr input draft hood–equipped water heater with a 4 in. diameter draft hood outlet, 2 ft of connector rise, and 4 ft of horizontal length is to be common vented with a 100,000 Btu/hr fan-assisted furnace with a 4 in. diameter flue collar, 3 ft of connector rise, and 6 ft of horizontal length. The common vent consists of a 30 ft height of Type B vent. What are the recommended vent diameters for each connector and the common vent? The installer would like to use a single-wall metal vent connector. See Figure F.2.2.

WORKSHEET F.3

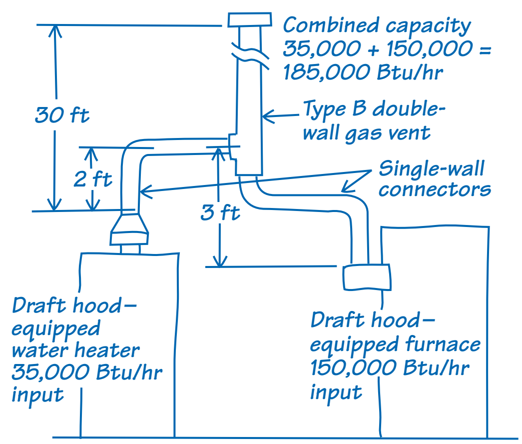
CALCULATION WORKSHEET: VENT SIZING, TWO APPLIANCES
(COMMON VENTING OF TWO DRAFT HOOD–EQUIPPED APPLIANCES)

Step 1:
- Determine the type of chimney or vent used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the type of vent connector material to be used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the number of appliances and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate table and enter it to the right.

Type of vent: *B vent*
Type of connector: *Single wall*
Number of appliances: *2*
Table used: *13.2 (b)*

Step 2:
- Draw a sketch of the proposed design in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Note: Factors such as combining connectors prior to entering the common vent will affect capacity.



Proposed design sketch

Step 3:
- Determine the vent connector size using the top portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 1.

Step 4:
- Check for vent connector size limits, 13.2.24.

Note that Table 13.2(b) allows a 3 in. connector for the water heater, but 13.2.24 does not allow the vent conector to be smaller than the draft hood.

Table 1 Top of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance	Connector rise	Vent height	Input rating	FAN or NAT	Connector size	Table used
Furnace	3 ft	30	150,000	NAT	6 in.	13.2(b)
Water heater	2 ft	30	35,000	NAT	6 in.	13.2(b)
Total			185,000			

Step 5:
- Check for excessive connector horizontal length using Table 2.
- If any connector horizontal length in feet exceeds 1.5 times the diameter in inches, derate the table by 10% for each length unit and recalculate connector length (see 13.2.2).

Table 2 Connector Horizontal Length

Connector	Diameter	Max length	Length	OK?
Furnace	4 in.	6 ft	6 ft	✓
Water heater	4 in.	6 ft	4 ft	✓

Step 6:
- Determine the common vent size using the bottom portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 3.

Table 3 Bottom of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance types	Vent height	Combined input	Common vent size	Table used
NAT + NAT	30 ft	185,000	6 in.	13.2(b)

Job: *25 Main Street* **Prepared by:** *TL* **Date:** *1/1/15*

Vent Sizing — Common Venting of Two Draft Hood–Equipped Appliances.

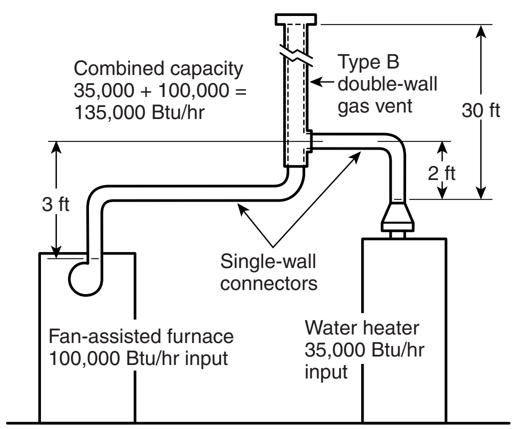
COMMENTARY TABLE F.8 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(b) for Example 4 — Common Vent Sizing*

Vent Connector Capacity

Height H (ft)	Rise R (ft)	3 in. FAN Min	3 in. FAN Max	3 in. NAT Max	4 in. FAN Min	4 in. FAN Max	4 in. NAT Max	5 in. FAN Min	5 in. FAN Max	5 in. NAT Max	6 in. FAN Min	6 in. FAN Max	6 in. NAT Max
		Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter D — Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour											
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89	169	278	129
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106	177	290	152
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120	185	300	172

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	4 in. FAN + FAN	4 in. FAN + NAT	4 in. NAT + NAT	5 in. FAN + FAN	5 in. FAN + NAT	5 in. NAT + NAT	6 in. FAN + FAN	6 in. FAN + NAT	6 in. NAT + NAT
	Type B Double-Wall Vent Diameter D — Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296



For SI units, 1000 Btu/hr = 0.293 kW, 1 ft = 0.305 m.

FIGURE F.2.2 *Common Venting a Draft Hood–Equipped Water Heater with a Fan-Assisted Furnace into a Type B Double-Wall Common Vent — Example 5(a).*

Solution

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Since the water heater vent connector horizontal length of 4 ft is less than the maximum value listed in Table 13.2(b), the venting table values can be used without adjustments. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 13.2(b), read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 ft and read across the 2 ft Connector

Rise (R) row to the first Btu/hr rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3 in. vent connector has a maximum input rating of 37,000 Btu/hr. Although this rating is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3 in. vent connector is prohibited by 13.2.19. A 4 in. vent connector has a maximum input rating of 67,000 Btu/hr and is equal to the draft hood outlet diameter. A 4 in. vent connector is selected. Since the water heater is equipped with a draft hood, there are no minimum input rating restrictions.

See Commentary Table F.9, which is an extract from code Table 13.2(b), for calculation of the water heater vent connector diameter for Example 5(a).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.9 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(b) for Example 5(a) — Water Heater Sizing*

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Connector Rise R (ft)	Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter D — 3 in. — Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour: FAN Min	3 in. FAN Max	3 in. NAT Max	4 in. FAN Min	4 in. FAN Max	4 in. NAT Max
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 13.2(b), read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 ft and across the 3 ft Connector Rise (R) row. Because the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu/hr rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4 in. vent connector has a maximum input rating of 119,000 Btu/hr and a minimum input rating of 85,000 Btu/hr.

The 100,000 Btu/hr furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4 in. connector is adequate. Because the furnace vent connector horizontal length of 6 ft is less than the maximum value listed in 13.2.2, the venting table values can be used without adjustment. If the furnace had an input rating of 80,000 Btu/hr, a Type B vent connector would be needed in order to meet the minimum capacity limit.

See Commentary Table F.10, which is an extract from code Table 13.2(b).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.10 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(b) for Example 5(a) — Furnace Sizing*

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Connector Rise R (ft)	Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter D — 3 in. — Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour: FAN Min	3 in. FAN Max	3 in. NAT Max	4 in. FAN Min	4 in. FAN Max	4 in. NAT Max	5 in. FAN Min	5 in. FAN Max	5 in. NAT Max
30	1	47	60	31	77	110	57	112	175	89
	2	51	62	37	81	115	67	117	185	106
	3	54	64	42	85	119	76	122	193	120

Common Vent Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu/hr. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 13.2(b), read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 ft and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN + NAT column that has a Btu/hr rating equal to or greater than 135,000 Btu/hr. The 4 in. common vent has a capacity of 132,000 Btu/hr, and the 5 in. common vent has a capacity of 202,000 Btu/hr. Therefore, the 5 in. common vent should be used in this example.

Summary. In this example, the installer can use a 4 in. diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the water heater and a 4 in. diameter, single-wall metal vent connector for the furnace. The common vent should be a 5 in. diameter Type B vent.

See Commentary Table F.11, which is an extract from code Table 13.2(b).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.11 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(b) for Example 5(a) — Common Vent Sizing*

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Type B Double-Wall Vent Diameter D								
	4 in.			5 in.			6 in.		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
	FAN + FAN	FAN + NAT	NAT + NAT	FAN + FAN	FAN + NAT	NAT + NAT	FAN + FAN	FAN + NAT	NAT + NAT
15	121	108	88	189	159	140	275	221	200
20	131	118	98	208	177	156	305	247	223
30	145	132	113	236	202	180	350	286	257
50	159	145	128	268	233	208	406	337	296

The solution to Example 5(a) is summarized in Worksheet F.4. Blank worksheets are located in Supplement 4 of this handbook and are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.

F.2.3 Example 5(b): Common Venting into an Interior Masonry Chimney. In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Example 5(a) are to be common-vented into a clay-tile-lined masonry chimney with a 30 ft height. The chimney is not exposed to the outdoors below the roof line. The internal dimensions of the clay tile liner are nominally 8 in. × 12 in. Assuming the same vent connector heights, laterals, and materials found in Example 5(a), what are the recommended vent connector diameters, and is this an acceptable installation?

Solution

Table 13.2(d) is used to size common venting installations involving single-wall connectors into masonry chimneys.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 13.2(d), Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 ft, and read across the 2 ft Connector Rise (R) row to the first Btu/hr rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3 in. vent connector has a maximum input of only 31,000 Btu/hr, while a 4 in. vent connector has a maximum input of 57,000 Btu/hr. A 4 in. vent connector must therefore be used.

See Commentary Table F.12, which is an extract from code Table 13.2(d).

WORKSHEET F.4

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: VENT SIZING, TWO APPLIANCES
(COMMON VENTING OF A DRAFT HOOD–EQUIPPED WATER HEATER WITH A FAN-ASSISTED FURNACE INTO A TYPE B DOUBLE-WALL COMMON VENT)

Step 1:

- Determine the type of chimney or vent used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the type of vent connector material to be used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the number of appliances and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate table and enter it to the right.

Type of vent: *B vent*

Type of connector: *Single wall*

Number of Appliances: *2*

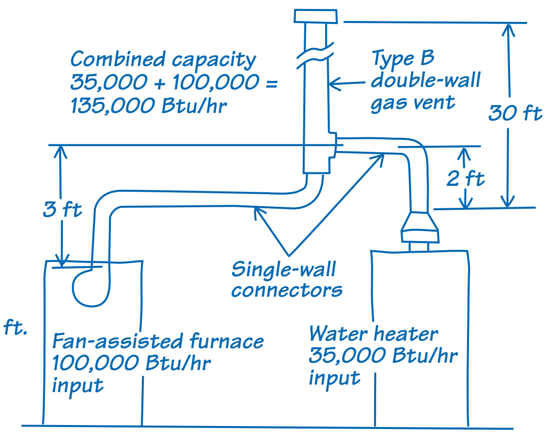
Table used: *13.2 (b)*

Step 2:

- Draw a sketch of the proposed design in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Note: Factors such as combining connectors prior to entering the common vent will affect capacity.

Note:
Water heater connector horizontal length is 4 ft.
Furnace connector horizontal length is 6 ft.



Proposed design sketch

Step 3:

- Determine the vent connector size using the top portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 1.

Step 4:

- Check for vent connector size limits, 13.2.21.

Note that Table 13.2(b) allows a 3 in. connector for the water heater, but 13.2.21 does not allow the vent connector to be smaller than the draft hood.

Table 1 Top of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance	Connector rise	Vent height	Input rating	FAN or NAT	Connector size	Table used
Furnace	*3 ft*	*30 ft*	*100,000*	*FAN*	*4 in.*	*13.2(b)*
Water heater	*2 ft*	*30 ft*	*35,000*	*NAT*	*4 in.*	*13.2(b)*
Total			*135,000*			

Step 5:

- Check for excessive connector horizontal length using Table 2.
- If any connector horizontal length in feet exceeds 1.5 times the diameter in inches, derate the table by 10% for each length unit and recalculate connector length (see 13.2.2).

Table 2 Connector Horizontal Length

Connector	Diameter	Max length	Length	OK?
Furnace	*4 in.*	*6 ft*	*6 ft*	✓
Water heater	*4 in.*	*6 ft*	*4 ft*	✓

Step 6:

- Determine the common vent size using the bottom portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 3.

Table 3 Bottom of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance types	Vent height	Combined input	Common vent size	Table used
FAN + NAT	*30 ft*	*135,000*	*5 in.*	*13.2(b)*

Job: *25 Main Street* **Prepared by:** *TL* **Date:** *1/1/15*

Vent Sizing — Common Venting a Draft Hood–Equipped Water Heater with a Fan-Assisted Furnace into a Type B Double-Wall Common Vent.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.12 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(d) for Example 5(b) — Water Heater Sizing*

Vent Connector Capacity

		Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter D					
		3 in.			4 in.		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
Vent Height H (ft)	Connector Rise R (ft)	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	1	NA	NA	24	86	108	47
	2	NA	NA	31	91	119	57
	3	NA	NA	35	95	127	65

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using the Vent Connector Capacity portion of Table 13.2(d), read down the Total Vent Height (*H*) column to 30 ft and across the 3 ft Connector Rise (R) row. Because the furnace has a fan-assisted combustion system, find the first FAN Max column with a Btu/hr rating greater than the furnace input rating. The 4 in. vent connector has a maximum input rating of 127,000 Btu/hr and a minimum input rating of 95,000 Btu/hr. The 100,000 Btu/hr furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4 in. connector is adequate.

Commentary Table F.13, which is extracted from code Table 13.2(d), is used to calculate the diameter of the furnace vent connector.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.13 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(d) for Example 5(b) — Furnace Vent Sizing*

Vent Connector Capacity

		Single-Wall Metal Vent Connector Diameter D					
		3 in.			4 in.		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
Vent Height H (ft)	Connector Rise R (ft)	Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	1	NA	NA	24	86	108	47
	2	NA	NA	31	91	119	57
	3	NA	NA	35	95	127	65

Masonry Chimney. From Table F.2.3, the Equivalent Area for a Nominal Liner size of 8 in. × 12 in. is 63.6 in.2. Using Table 13.2(d), Common Vent Capacity, read down the FAN + NAT column under the Minimum Internal Area of Chimney value of 63 to the row for 30 ft height to find a capacity value of 739,000 Btu/hr. The combined input rating of the furnace and water heater, 135,000 Btu/hr, is less than the table value, so this is an acceptable installation.

Commentary Tables F.14 and F.15 are used to answer the final portion of Example 5(b). They are extracted from code Table F.2.3 and code Table 13.2(d), respectively.

TABLE F.2.3 *Masonry Chimney Liner Dimensions with Circular Equivalents*

Nominal Liner Size (in.)	Inside Dimensions of Liner (in.)	Inside Diameter or Equivalent Diameter (in.)	Equivalent Area (in.^{2})
4 × 8	2½ × 6½	4.0	12.2
		5.0	19.6
		6.0	28.3
		7.0	38.3
8 × 8	6¾ × 6¾	7.4	42.7
		8.0	50.3
8 × 12	6½ × 10½	9.0	63.6
		10.0	78.5
12 × 12	9¾ × 9¾	10.4	83.3
		11.0	95.0
12 × 16	9½ × 13½	11.8	107.5
		12.0	113.0
		14.0	153.9
16 × 16	13¼ × 13¼	14.5	162.9
		15.0	176.7
16 × 20	13 × 17	16.2	206.1
		18.0	254.4
20 × 20	16½ × 16¾	18.2	260.2
		20.0	314.1
20 × 24	16½ × 20½	20.1	314.2
		22.0	380.1
24 × 24	20¼ × 20¼	22.1	380.1
		24.0	452.3
24 × 28	20¼ × 24¼	24.1	456.2
28 × 28	24¼ × 24¼	26.4	543.3
		27.0	572.5
30 × 30	25½ × 25½	27.9	607.0
		30.0	706.8
30 × 36	25½ × 31½	30.9	749.9
		33.0	855.3
36 × 36	31½ × 31½	34.4	929.4
		36.0	1017.9

For SI units, 1 in. = 25.4 mm, 1 in.^{2} = 645 mm^2.
Note: When liner sizes differ dimensionally from those shown in this table, equivalent diameters can be determined from published tables for square and rectangular ducts of equivalent carrying capacity or by other engineering methods.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.14 *Extract from Code Table F.2.3 for Example 5(b)*

Nominal Liner Size (in.)	Inside Dimensions of Liner (in.)	Inside Diameter or Equivalent Diameter (in.)	Equivalent Area (in.^{2})
8 × 12	6½ × 10½	9.0	63.6

COMMENTARY TABLE F.15 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(d) for Example 5(b) — Common Venting*

Common Vent Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Minimum Internal Area of Masonry Chimney Flue (in.²)								
	50 in.			63 in.			78 in.		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
	FAN + FAN	FAN + NAT	NAT + NAT	FAN + FAN	FAN + NAT	NAT + NAT	FAN + FAN	FAN + NAT	NAT + NAT
20	NA	503	240	765	661	321	947	849	415
30	NA	558	275	808	739	377	1052	957	490
50	NA	612	325	NA	821	456	1152	1076	600

Subsection 13.2.18 requires the common vent area to be no greater than seven times the smallest listed appliance categorized vent area, flue collar area, or draft hood outlet area. Both appliances in this installation have 4 in. diameter outlets. From Table F.2.3, the equivalent area for an inside diameter of 4 in. is 12.2 in.^{2}. Seven times 12.2 equals 85.4, which is greater than 63.6, so this configuration is acceptable.

The solution to Example 5(b) is summarized in Worksheet F.5. Blank worksheets are located in Supplement 4 of this handbook and are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.

Table F.2.3 is included in the code as a convenience. The Equivalent Diameter and Equivalent Area columns tabulate conversion between diameter and area of a circle for each whole inch diameter (8 in., 9 in., etc.). The table also offers suggestions for appropriate free areas to use for common clay tile sizes.

In practice, the dimensions of clay tile vary because of different manufacturing practices and tolerances. In addition, the internal corners of tile are not square. For this reason, the equivalent areas listed for the tiles are somewhat smaller than what would be calculated by the Inside Dimensions column.

Note that code Table F.2.3 contains informational material and is not mandated. In the field, it may be advantageous to carefully measure the actual free area of the tile.

F.2.4 Example 5(c): Common Venting into an Exterior Masonry Chimney. In this case, the water heater and fan-assisted furnace of Examples 5(a) and 5(b) are to be common-vented into an exterior masonry chimney. The chimney height, clay-tile-liner dimensions, and vent connector heights and laterals are the same as in Example 5(b). This system is being installed in Charlotte, North Carolina. Does this exterior masonry chimney need to be relined? If so, what corrugated metallic liner size is recommended? What vent connector diameters are recommended? See Table F.2.3 and Figure F.2.4.

Solution

According to 13.2.22, Type B vent connectors are required to be used with exterior masonry chimneys. Use Table 13.2(h) and Table 13.2(i) to size FAN+NAT common venting installations involving Type B double-wall connectors into exterior masonry chimneys.

The local 99 percent winter design temperature needed to use Table 13.2(h) and Table 13.2(i) can be found in *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals.* For Charlotte, North Carolina, this design temperature is 19°F.

Chimney Liner Requirement. As in Example 5(b), use the 63 in.2 Internal Area columns for this size clay tile liner. Read down the 63 in.2 column of Table 13.2(h) to the 30 ft height row to find that the Combined Appliance Maximum Input is 747,000 Btu/hr. The combined input rating of the appliances in this installation, 135,000 Btu/hr, is less than the maximum value, so this criterion is satisfied. Table 13.2(i), at a 19°F Design Temperature, and at the same Vent Height and Internal Area used earlier, shows that the minimum allowable input rating of

WORKSHEET F.5

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: VENT SIZING, TWO APPLIANCES
(TWO APPLIANCES WITH SINGLE-WALL CONNECTORS, MASONRY CHIMNEY)

Step 1:

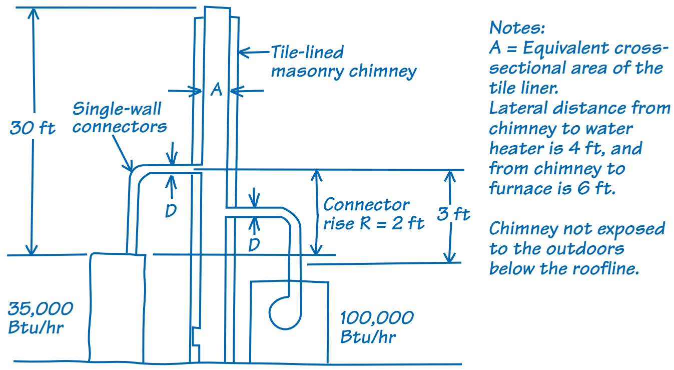
- Determine the type of chimney or vent used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the type of vent connector material to be used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the number of appliances and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate table and enter it to the right.

Type of vent: *Masonry, 8 in. x 12 in.*
Type of connector: *Single + B vent*
Number of appliances: *2*
Table used: *13.2 (c) and 13.2 (d)*

Step 2:

- Draw a sketch of the proposed design in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Note: Factors such as combining connectors prior to entering the common vent will affect capacity.



Proposed design sketch

Step 3:

- Determine the vent connector size using the top portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 1.

Step 4:

- Check for vent connector size limits, 13.2.21.

Table 1 Top of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance	Connector rise	Vent height	Input rating	FAN or NAT	Connector size	Table used
Furnace	3 ft	30 ft	100,000	FAN	4 in.	13.2(c)
Water heater	2 ft	30 ft	35,000	NAT	4 in.	13.2(d)
Total			135,000			

Step 5:

- Check for excessive connector horizontal length using Table 2.
- If any connector horizontal length in feet exceeds 1.5 times the diameter in inches, derate the table by 10% for each length unit and recalculate connector length (see 13.2.2).

Table 2 Connector Horizontal Length

Connector	Diameter	Max. length	Length	OK?
Furnace	4 in.	6 ft	6 ft	
Water heater	4 in.	6 ft	4 ft	

Step 6:

- Determine the common vent size using the bottom portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 3.

Table 3 Bottom of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance types	Vent height	Combined input	Common vent size	Table used
FAN + NAT	30 ft	135,000	8 x 12 is OK	13.2(d)

Note that Table F.2.3 shows that an 8 in. × 12 in. chimney with a 9 in. nominal liner has an equivalent area of 63.6 in.^{2}.

Check for "7 × rule": A 4 in. diameter connector has an area of 2 × 2 × 3.14 = 12.6 in.^{2}. Seven times 12.6 = 88.2 in.^{2}. The total of 88.2 is greater than 63.6. Sizing of common vent is okay.

Job: *25 Main Street* **Prepared by:** *TL* **Date:** *1/1/15*

Vent Sizing — Two Appliances with Single-Wall Connectors, Masonry Chimney.

a space-heating appliance is 470,000 Btu/hr. The furnace input rating of 100,000 Btu/hr is less than this minimum value. So this criterion is not satisfied, and an alternative venting design needs to be used, such as a Type B vent shown in Example 5(a) or a listed chimney liner system shown in the remainder of the example.

According to 13.2.20, Table 13.2(a) or Table 13.2(b) is used for sizing corrugated metallic liners in masonry chimneys, with the maximum common vent capacities reduced by 20 percent. This example will be continued assuming Type B vent connectors.

Water Heater Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 13.2(a), Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 ft, and read across the 2 ft Connector Rise (R) row to the first Btu/hour rating in the NAT Max column that is equal to or greater than the water heater input rating. The table shows that a 3 in. vent connector has a maximum capacity of 39,000 Btu/hr. Although this rating is greater than the water heater input rating, a 3 in. vent connector is prohibited by 13.2.22. A 4 in. vent connector has a maximum input rating of 70,000 Btu/hr and is equal to the draft hood outlet diameter. A 4 in. vent connector is selected.

See Commentary Table F.16, which is extracted from code Table 13.2(h).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.16 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(h) for Example 5(c) — Chimney Liner Sizing*

Vent Height H (ft)	Internal Area of Chimney (in.²)			
	38 in.	50 in.	63 in.	78 in.
15	334	467	611	781
20	368	508	668	858
30	404	564	747	969
50	NA	NA	831	1089

Furnace Vent Connector Diameter. Using Table 13.2(a), Vent Connector Capacity, read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 ft, and read across the 3 ft Connector Rise (R) row to the first Btu/hr rating in the FAN Max column that is equal to or greater than the furnace input rating. The 100,000 Btu/hr furnace in this example falls within this range, so a 4 in. connector is adequate.

Commentary Table F.17, which is extracted from code Table 13.2(a), is used to calculate the diameter of a Type B vent connector for Example 5(c).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.17 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(a) for Example 5(c) — Water Heater Sizing*

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Connector Rise R (ft)	Type B Double-Wall Vent Connector Diameter D — 3 in. — Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour			4 in.		
		FAN Min	FAN Max	NAT Max	FAN Min	FAN Max	NAT Max
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79

Assume that a corrugated chimney liner has been installed. Subsection 13.2.24 then applies, which states the following:

13.2.24 Vent Connector Sizing. Vent connectors shall not be increased more than two sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter. **Vent connectors for draft hood–equipped appliances shall not be smaller than the draft hood outlet diameter.** Where a vent connector size(s) determined from the tables for a fan-assisted appliance(s) is smaller than the flue collar diameter, the use of the smaller size(s) shall be permitted, provided that the installation complies with all of the following conditions:

(1) Vent connectors for fan-assisted appliance flue collars 12 in. (300 mm) in diameter or smaller are not reduced by more than one table size [e.g., 12 in. to 10 in. (300 mm to 250 mm) is a one-size reduction], and those larger than 12 in. (300 mm) in diameter are not reduced more than two table sizes [e.g., 24 in. to 20 in. (610 mm to 510 mm) is a two-size reduction].
(2) The fan-assisted appliance(s) is common vented with a draft hood–equipped appliance(s).
(3) The vent connector has a smooth interior wall.

Note that the bold text is the part of 13.2.24 relevant to this example. The vent connector must have a diameter at least equivalent to the draft hood outlet, which in this example is 4 in.

Chimney Liner Diameter. The total input to the common vent is 135,000 Btu/hr. Using the Common Vent Capacity portion of Table 13.2(a), read down the Total Vent Height (H) column to 30 ft and across this row to find the smallest vent diameter in the FAN+NAT column that has a Btu/hr rating greater than 135,000 Btu/hr. The 4 in. common vent has a capacity of 138,000 Btu/hr. Reducing the maximum capacity by 20 percent results in a maximum capacity for a 4 in. corrugated liner of 110,000 Btu/hr, less than the total input of 135,000 Btu/hr. So a larger liner is needed. The 5 in. common vent capacity listed in Table 13.2(a) is 210,000 Btu/hr, and after reducing by 20 percent is 168,000 Btu/hr. Therefore, a 5 in. corrugated metal liner should be used in this example.

Commentary Table F.18, which is extracted from code Table 13.2(a), is used to calculate the diameter of the Type B furnace vent connector for Example 5(c).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.18 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(a) for Example 5(c) — Furnace Sizing*

Vent Connector Capacity

Vent Height H (ft)	Connector Rise R (ft)	Type B Double-Wall Vent Connector Diameter D					
		3 in.			4 in.		
		Appliance Input Rating Limits in Thousands of Btu per Hour					
		FAN		NAT	FAN		NAT
		Min	Max	Max	Min	Max	Max
30	1	20	62	33	31	113	59
	2	21	64	39	33	118	70
	3	22	66	44	34	123	79

Single-Wall Connectors. Once it has been established that relining the chimney is necessary, Type B double-wall vent connectors are not specifically required. This example could be redone using Table 13.2(b) for single-wall vent connectors. For this case, the vent connector and liner diameters would be the same as found for Type B double-wall connectors.

Commentary Table F.19, which is extracted from code Table 13.2(a), is used to calculate the diameter of the chimney liner for Example 5(c).

COMMENTARY TABLE F.19 *Extract from Code Table 13.2(a) for Example 5(c) — Chimney Liner Diameter*

Common Vent Capacity

	Type B Double-Wall Common Vent Diameter D								
	4 in.			***5 in.***			***6 in.***		
	Combined Appliance Input Rating in Thousands of Btu per Hour								
Vent Height H (ft)	***FAN + FAN***	***FAN + NAT***	***NAT + NAT***	***FAN + FAN***	***FAN + NAT***	***NAT + NAT***	***FAN + FAN***	***FAN + NAT***	***NAT + NAT***
15	125	112	91	195	164	144	283	228	206
20	136	123	102	215	183	160	314	255	229
30	152	138	118	244	210*	185	361	297	266
50	167	153	134	279	244	214	421	353	310

*Derate by 20% Capacity = 168,000 Btu/hr

99% Winter Design Temperatures for the Contiguous United States

This map is a necessarily generalized guide to temperatures in the contiguous United States. Temperatures shown for areas such as mountainous regions and large urban centers are not necessarily accurate. The data used to develop this map are from the 1993 *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals* (Chapter 24, Table 1: Climate Conditions for the United States).

For 99% winter design temperatures in Alaska, consult the *ASHRAE Handbook—Fundamentals*.

99% winter design temperatures for Hawaii are greater than 37°F.

FIGURE F.2.4 *Range of Winter Design Temperatures Used in Analyzing Exterior Masonry Chimneys in the United States.*

Recommended Procedure for Safety Inspection of an Existing Appliance Installation

G

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex G is completely revised for the 2015 edition to provide comprehensive guidance on inspecting gas appliances for proper operation, particularly before and after weatherizing a home. In addition, Annex G has been rewritten to reflect modern appliances and installation practices and has been updated to include more inspection details (including actionable carbon monoxide and gas leak measurements/levels) and to cover appliances in addition to boilers and central furnaces.

Code Update

G.1 General

The following procedure is intended as a guide to aid in determining that an appliance is properly installed and is in a safe condition for continued use. Where a gas supplier performs an inspection, their written procedures should be followed.

G.1.1 Application. This procedure is intended for existing residential installations of a furnace, boiler, room heater, water heater, cooking appliance, fireplace appliance, and clothes dryer. This procedure should be performed prior to any attempt to modify the appliance installation or building envelope.

G.1.2 Weatherization Programs. Before a building envelope is to be modified as part of a weatherization program, the existing appliance installation should be inspected in accordance with these procedures. After all unsafe conditions are repaired, and immediately after the weatherization is complete, the appliance inspections in G.5.2 are to be repeated.

G.1.3 Inspection Procedure. The safety of the building occupant and inspector are to be determined as the first step as described in G.2. Only after the ambient environment is found to be safe should inspections of gas piping and appliances be undertaken. It is recommended that all inspections described in G.3, G.4, and G.6, where the appliance is in the off mode, be completed and any unsafe conditions repaired or corrected before continuing with inspections of an operating appliance described in G.5 and G.6.

G.1.4 Manufacturer Instructions. Where available, the manufacturer's installation and operating instructions for the installed appliance should be used as part of these inspection procedures to determine if the appliance is installed correctly and is operating properly.

G.1.5 Instruments. The inspection procedures include measuring for fuel gas and carbon monoxide (CO) and will require the use of a combustible gas detector (CGD) and a CO detector. It is recommended that both types of detectors be listed. Prior to any inspection, the detectors should be calibrated or tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. In addition, it is recommended that the detectors have the following minimum specifications:

(1) Gas Detector: The CGD should be capable of indicating the presence of the type of fuel gas for which it is to be used (e.g. natural gas or propane). The combustible gas detector should be capable of the following:
   (a) *PPM:* Numeric display with a parts per million (ppm) scale from 1 ppm to 900 ppm in 1 ppm increments
   (b) *LEL:* Numeric display with a percent lower explosive limit (% LEL) scale from 0 percent to 100 percent in 1 percent increments
   (c) *Audio:* An audio sound feature to locate leaks
(2) CO Detector: The CO detector should be capable of the following functions and have a numeric display scale as follows:
   (a) *PPM:* For measuring ambient room and appliance emissions a display scale in parts per million (ppm) from 0 to 1,000 ppm in 1 ppm increments
   (b) *Alarm:* A sound alarm function where hazardous levels of ambient CO is found (*see G.2 for alarm levels*)
   (c) *Air Free:* Capable of converting CO measurements to an air-free level in ppm. Where a CO detector is used without an air-free conversion function, the CO air free can be calculated in accordance with Footnote 3 in Table G.6.

G.2 Occupant and Inspector Safety

Prior to entering a building, the inspector should have both a combustible gas detector (CGD) and CO detector turned on, calibrated, and operating. Immediately upon entering the building, a sample of the ambient atmosphere should be taken. Based on CGD and CO detector readings, the inspector should take the following actions:

(1) Where the CO detector indicates a carbon monoxide level of 70 ppm or greater, the inspector should immediately notify the occupant of the need for themselves and any building occupant to evacuate; the inspector shall immediately evacuate and call 911.
(2) Where the CO detector indicates a reading between 30 ppm and 70 ppm, the inspector should advise the occupant that high CO levels have been found and recommend that all possible sources of CO be turned off immediately and windows and doors be opened. Where it appears that the source of CO is a permanently installed appliance, advise the occupant to shut the appliance off and have the appliance serviced by a qualified servicing agent.
(3) Where the CO detector indicates CO below 30 ppm, the inspection can continue. (See U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, *Responding to Residential Carbon Monoxide Incidents, Guidelines For Fire and Other Emergency Response Personnel.*)
(4) Where the CGD indicates a combustible gas level of 20 percent LEL or greater, the inspector should immediately notify the occupant of the need for themselves and any building occupant to evacuate; the inspector shall immediately evacuate and call 911.
(5) Where the CGD indicates a combustible gas level below 20 percent LEL, the inspection can continue.

If during the inspection process it is determined a condition exists that could result in unsafe appliance operation, shut off the appliance and advise the owner of the unsafe condition. Where a gas leak is found that may result in an unsafe condition, advise the owner of the unsafe condition and call the gas supplier to turn off the gas supply. The inspector should not continue a safety inspection on an operating appliance, venting system, and piping system until repairs have been made.

G.3 Gas Piping and Connection Inspections

G.3.1 Leak Checks. Conduct a test for gas leakage using either a noncorrosive leak detection solution or a CGD confirmed with a leak detection solution.

The preferred method for leak checking is by use of gas leak detection solution applied to all joints. This method provides a reliable visual indication of significant leaks.

The use of a CGD in its audio sensing mode can quickly locate suspect leaks but can be overly sensitive indicating insignificant and false leaks. All suspect leaks found through the use of a CGD should be confirmed using a leak detection solution.

Where gas leakage is confirmed, the owner should be notified that repairs must be made. The inspection should include the following components:

(1) All gas piping fittings located within the appliance space
(2) Appliance connector fittings
(3) Appliance gas valve/regulator housing and connections

G.3.2 Appliance Connector. Verify that the appliance connection type is compliant with Section 9.6 of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*. Inspect flexible appliance connections to determine if they are free of cracks, corrosion, and signs of damage. Verify that there are no uncoated copper alloy connectors. Where connectors are determined to be unsafe or where an uncoated copper alloy connector is found, the appliance shutoff valve should be placed in the off position and the owner notified that the connector must be replaced.

G.3.3 Piping Support. Inspect piping to determine that it is adequately supported, that there is no undue stress on the piping, and if there are any improperly capped pipe openings.

G.3.4 Bonding. Verify that the electrical bonding of gas piping is compliant with Section 7.13 of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*.

G.4 Inspections to Be Performed with the Appliance Not Operating

The following safety inspection procedures are performed on appliances that are not operating. These inspections are applicable to all appliance installations.

G.4.1 Preparing for Inspection. Shut off all gas and electrical power to the appliances located in the same room being inspected. For gas supply, use the shutoff valve in the supply line or at the manifold serving each appliance. For electrical power, place the circuit breaker in the off position or remove the fuse that serves each appliance. A lock type device or tag should be installed on each gas shutoff valve and at the electrical panel to indicate that the service has been shut off for inspection purposes.

G.4.2 Vent System Size and Installation. Verify that the existing venting system size and installation are compliant with Chapters 11 and 12 of the *National Fuel Gas Code*. The size and installation of venting systems for other than natural draft and Category I appliances should be in compliance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Inspect the venting system to determine that it is free of blockage, restriction, leakage, corrosion, and other deficiencies that could cause an unsafe condition. Inspect masonry chimneys to determine if they are lined. Inspect plastic venting system to determine that it is free of sagging and it is sloped in an upward direction to the outdoor vent termination.

When inspecting the venting system, it is important to check the top of horizontal single-wall vent connectors. The top of these connectors is the area where corrosive condensate tends to accumulate early in the operation of the appliance. A single-wall vent connector is especially prone to corrosion because it cools off much faster (and condenses water vapor more easily) than Type B vent connectors, and holes may not be visible when the observer is looking up. Vent systems require a vent cap designed as part of the system. Simple rain cap–type replacement vent caps may not be sufficient for proper operation of the vent system. It is also important to check the top of the vent above the roofline. Indication of venting problems can be observed by the condition of the vent. Rust, holes, and cracks can be observed at the top of the vent. If safe access to the top of the vent is not available or the condition of the vent is not apparent, contact a qualified venting inspector.

G.4.3 Combustion Air Supply. Inspect provisions for combustion air as follows:

(1) *Non-Direct Vent Appliances.* Determine that non-direct vent appliance installations are compliant with the combustion air requirements in Section 9.3 of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*. Inspect any interior and exterior combustion air openings and any connected combustion air ducts to determine that there is no blockage, restriction, corrosion, or damage. Inspect to determine if horizontal combustion air ducts are sloped upward toward the air supply source.
(2) *Direct Vent Appliances.* Verify that the combustion air supply ducts and pipes are securely fastened to direct vent appliance and determine that there are no separations, blockage, restriction, corrosion, or other damage. Determine that the combustion air source is located in the outdoors or to areas that freely communicate to the outdoors.
(3) *Unvented Appliances.* Verify that the total input of all unvented room heaters and gas-fired refrigerators installed in the same room or rooms that freely communicate with each other does not exceed 20 Btu/hr/ft^3.

G.4.4 Flooded Appliances. Inspect the appliance for signs that the appliance may have been damaged by flooding. Signs of flooding include a visible water submerge line on the appliance housing, excessive surface or component rust, deposited debris on internal components, and mildew-like odor. Inform the owner that any part of the appliance control system and any appliance gas control that has been under water must be replaced. All flood-damaged plumbing, heating, cooling, and electrical appliances should be replaced.

G.4.5 Flammable Vapors. Inspect the room/space where the appliance is installed to determine if the area is free of the storage of gasoline or any flammable products such as oil-based solvents, varnishes or adhesives. Where the appliance is installed where flammable products will be stored or used, such as a garage, verify that the appliances burner is a minimum of 18 in. above the floor unless the appliance is listed as flammable vapor ignition–resistant.

G.4.6 Clearances to Combustibles. Inspect the immediate location where the appliance is installed to determine if the area is free of rags, paper, or other combustibles. Verify that the appliance and venting system is compliant with clearances to combustible building components in 9.2.2 of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*.

G.4.7 Appliance Components. Inspect internal components by removing access panels or other components for the following:

(1) Inspect burners and crossovers for blockage and corrosion. The presence of soot, debris, and signs of excessive heating could indicate incomplete combustion due to blockage or improper burner adjustments.
(2) Metallic and non-metallic hoses for signs of cracks, splitting, corrosion, and loose connections
(3) Signs of improper or incomplete repairs
(4) Modifications that override controls and safety systems
(5) Electrical wiring for loose connections; cracked, missing, or worn electrical insulation; and indications of excessive heat or electrical shorting. Appliances requiring an

external electrical supply should be inspected for proper electrical connection in accordance with *NFPA 70, National Electrical Code*.

G.4.8 Placing Appliances Back in Operation. Return all inspected appliances and systems to their pre-existing state by reinstalling any removed access panels and components. Turn on the gas supply and electricity to each appliance found in safe condition. Proceed to the operating inspections in G.5 through G.6.

G.5 Inspections to Be Performed with the Appliance Operating

The following safety inspection procedures are to be performed on appliances that are operating where there are no unsafe conditions or where corrective repairs have been completed.

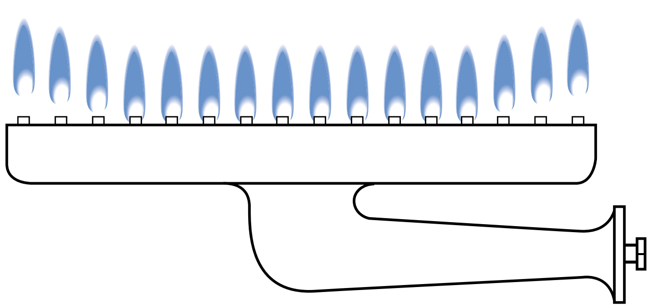
G.5.1 General Appliance Operation.

(1) *Initial Startup.* Adjust the thermostat or other control device to start the appliance. Verify that the appliance starts up normally and is operating properly.
Determine that the pilot(s), where provided, is burning properly and that the main burner ignition is satisfactory by interrupting and re-establishing the electrical supply to the appliance in any convenient manner. If the appliance is equipped with a continuous pilot(s), test all pilot safety devices to determine whether they are operating properly by extinguishing the pilot(s) when the main burner(s) is off and determining, after 3 minutes, that the main burner gas does not flow upon a call for heat. If the appliance is not provided with a pilot(s), test for proper operation of the ignition system in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's lighting and operating instructions.

(2) *Flame Appearance.* Visually inspect the flame appearance for proper color and appearance. Visually determine that the main burner gas is burning properly (i.e., no floating, lifting, or flashback). Adjust the primary air shutter as required. If the appliance is equipped with high and low flame controlling or flame modulation, check for proper main burner operation at low flame.

Exhibit G.1 shows an example of lifting burner flames, which can be seen at the left and right. Lifting may occur on cold burner assemblies and may stop once the burner is warmed up. "Flashback" is when the flame ignites the fuel–air mixture in the burner head. Flashback sometimes makes a popping sound. The common remedy for flashback is reduction of primary aeration to reduce the gas–air mixture ratio to a point below the flammability limit. However, reducing primary air has a countering effect in that the port velocity is reduced. Also, decreasing primary air can degrade combustion performance. If satisfactory results cannot be reached by adjustment, the manufacturer of the appliance should be contacted for advice.

EXHIBIT G.1



Lifting Burner Flames.

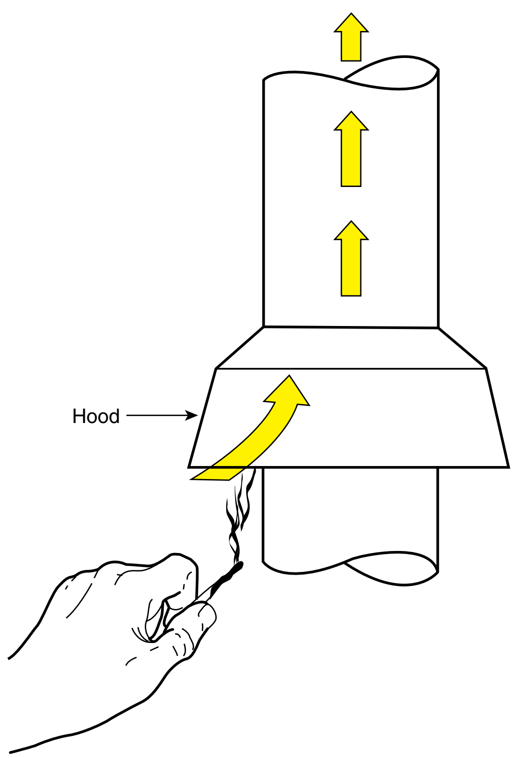
(3) *Appliance Shutdown.* Adjust the thermostat or other control device to shutdown the appliance. Verify that the appliance shuts off properly.

G.5.2 Test for Combustion Air and Vent Drafting for Natural Draft and Category I Appliances. Combustion air and vent draft procedures are for natural draft and category I appliances equipped with a draft hood and connected to a natural draft venting system.

(1) *Preparing for Inspection.* Close all exterior building doors and windows and all interior doors between the space in which the appliance is located and other spaces of the building that can be closed. Turn on any clothes dryer. Turn on any exhaust fans, such as range hoods and bathroom exhausts, so they will operate at maximum speed. Do not operate a summer exhaust fan. Close fireplace dampers and any fireplace doors.
(2) *Placing the Appliance in Operation.* Place the appliance being inspected in operation. Adjust the thermostat or control so the appliance will operate continuously.
(3) *Spillage Test.* Verify that all appliances located within the same room are in their standby mode and ready for operation. Follow lighting instructions for each appliance as necessary. Test for spillage at the draft hood relief opening as follows:
    (a) After 5 minutes of main burner operation, check for spillage using smoke.
    (b) Immediately after the first check, turn on all other fuel gas burning appliances within the same room so they will operate at their full inputs and repeat the spillage test.
    (c) Shut down all appliances to their standby mode and wait for 15 minutes.
    (d) Repeat the spillage test steps (a) through (c) on each appliance being inspected.

If a smoking match is held near the draft hood, the smoke should be sucked into the hood. This indicates a positive flow out of the building. Exhibit G.2 illustrates a typical spillage (draft hood) test.

EXHIBIT G.2



Draft Hood Test.

(4) *Additional Spillage Tests:* Determine if the appliance venting is impacted by other door and air handler settings by performing the following tests.
  (a) Set initial test condition in accordance with G.5.2.
  (b) Place the appliance(s) being inspected in operation. Adjust the thermostat or control so the appliance(s) will operate continuously.
  (c) Open the door between the space in which the appliance(s) is located and the rest of the building. After 5 minutes of main burner operation, check for spillage at each appliance using smoke.
  (d) Turn on any other central heating or cooling air handler fan that is located outside of the area where the appliances are being inspected. After 5 minutes of main burner operation, check for spillage at each appliance using smoke. The test should be conducted with the door between the space in which the appliance(s) is located and the rest of the building in the open and in the closed position.

(5) Return doors, windows, exhaust fans, fireplace dampers, and any other fuel gas burning appliance to their previous conditions of use.

(6) If, after completing the spillage test it is believed sufficient combustion air is not available, the owner should be notified that an alternative combustion air source is needed in accordance with Section 9.3 of the *National Fuel Gas Code*. Where it is believed that the venting system does not provide adequate natural draft, the owner should be notified that alternative vent sizing, design or configuration is needed in accordance with Chapter 11 and 12 of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*. If spillage occurs, the owner should be notified as to its cause, be instructed as to which position of the door (open or closed) would lessen its impact, and to arrange for corrective action by an HVAC professional.

G.6 Appliance-Specific Inspections

The following appliance-specific inspections are to be performed as part of a complete inspection. These inspections are performed either with the appliance in the off or standby mode (indicated by "*OFF*") or on an appliance that is operating (indicated by "*ON*"). The CO measurements are to be taken only after the appliance is determined to be venting properly. The CO detector should be capable of calculating CO emissions in ppm air free. Table G.6 provides CO thresholds for appliances covered in G.6.1 through G.6.8.

G.6.1 Forced Air Furnaces.

(1) *OFF.* Verify that an air filter is installed and that it is not excessively blocked with dust.

(2) *OFF.* Inspect visible portions of the furnace combustion chamber for cracks, ruptures, holes, and corrosion. A heat exchanger leakage test should be conducted.

(3) *ON.* Verify that both the limit and fan controls are operating properly. Limit control operation can be checked by blocking the circulating air inlet or temporarily disconnecting the electrical supply to the blower motor and determining that the limit control acts to shut off the main burner gas.

(4) *ON.* Verify that the blower compartment door is installed properly and can be resecured properly if opened. Verify that the blower compartment door safety switch operates properly.

(5) *ON.* Check for flame disturbance before and after blower comes on, which can indicate heat exchanger leaks.

(6) *ON.* Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

TABLE G.6 CO Thresholds

Appliance	*Threshold Limit*
Central furnace (all categories)	400 ppm[1] air free[2, 3]
Floor furnace	400 ppm air free
Gravity furnace	400 ppm air free
Wall furnace (BIV)	200 ppm air free
Wall furnace (direct vent)	400 ppm air free
Vented room heater	200 ppm air free
Vent-free room heater	200 ppm air free
Water heater	200 ppm air free
Oven/Boiler	225 ppm as measured
Top burner	25 ppm as measured (per burner)
Clothes dryer	400 ppm air free
Refrigerator	25 ppm as measured
Gas log (gas fireplace)	25 ppm as measured in vent
Gas log (installed in wood-burning fireplace)	400 ppm air free in firebox

[1]Parts per million.

[2]Air-free emission levels are based on a mathematical equation (involving carbon monoxide and oxygen or carbon dioxide readings) to convert an actual diluted flue gas carbon monoxide testing sample to an undiluted air-free flue gas carbon monoxide level utilized in the appliance certification standards. For natural gas or propane, using as-measured CO ppm and O_2 percentage:

$$CO_{AFppm} = \left(\frac{20.9}{20.9 - O_2}\right) \times CO_{ppm} \quad \textbf{[G.6a]}$$

where:

CO_{AFppm} = Carbon monoxide, air-free ppm
CO_{ppm} = As-measured combustion gas carbon monoxide
O_2 = Percentage of oxygen in combustion gas, as a percentage

[3]An alternate method of calculating the CO air-free when access to an oxygen meter is not available:

$$CO_{(air\text{-}free)} = \frac{UCO_2}{CO_2}(CO) \quad \textbf{[G.6b]}$$

where:

UCO_2 = Ultimate concentration of carbon dioxide for the fuel being burned in percent for natural gas (12.2 percent) and propane (14.0 percent)
CO_2 = Measured concentration of carbon dioxide in combustion products in percent
CO = Measured concentration of carbon monoxide in combustion products in percent

G.6.2 Boilers.

(1) *OFF and ON.* Inspect for evidence of water leaks around boiler and connected piping.
(2) *ON.* Verify that the water pumps are in operating condition. Test low water cutoffs, automatic feed controls, pressure and temperature limit controls, and relief valves in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations to determine that they are in operating condition.
(3) *ON.* Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

G.6.3 Water Heaters.

(1) *OFF.* Verify that the pressure-temperature relief valve is in operating condition. Water in the heater should be at operating temperature.

(2) *OFF.* Verify that inspection covers, glass, and gaskets are intact and in place on a flammable vapor ignition resistant (FVIR)–type water heater.
(3) *ON.* Verify that the thermostat is set in accordance with the manufacturer's operating instructions and measure the water temperature at the closest tub or sink to verify that it is no greater than 120ºF.
(4) *OFF.* Where required by the local building code in earthquake-prone locations, inspect that the water heater is secured to the wall studs in two locations (high and low) using appropriate metal strapping and bolts.
(5) *ON.* Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

G.6.4 Cooking Appliances.

(1) *OFF.* Inspect oven cavity and range-top exhaust vent for blockage with aluminum foil or other materials.
(2) *OFF.* Inspect cook top to verify that it is free from a build-up of grease.
(3) *ON.* Measure the CO above each burner and at the oven exhaust vents after 5 minutes of burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

G.6.5 Vented Room Heaters.

(1) *OFF.* For built-in room heaters and wall furnaces, inspect that the burner compartment is free of lint and debris.
(2) *OFF.* Inspect that furnishings and combustible building components are not blocking the heater.
(3) *ON.* Measure the CO in the vent after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

G.6.6 Vent-Free Heaters.

(1) *OFF.* Verify that the heater input is a maximum of 40,000 Btu/hr input, but not more than 10,000 Btu/hr where installed in a bedroom, and 6,000 Btu/hr where installed in a bathroom.
(2) *OFF.* Inspect the ceramic logs provided with gas log–type vent-free heaters to verify that they are located and aligned properly.
(3) *OFF.* Inspect the heater to verify that it is free of excess lint build-up and debris.
(4) *OFF.* Verify that the oxygen depletion safety shutoff system has not been altered or bypassed.
(5) *ON.* Verify that the main burner shuts down within 3 minutes by extinguishing the pilot light. The test is meant to simulate the operation of the oxygen depletion system (ODS).
(6) *ON.* Measure the CO after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

G.6.7 Gas Log Sets and Gas Fireplaces.

(1) *OFF.* For gas logs installed in wood-burning fireplaces equipped with a damper, verify that the fireplace damper is in a fixed open position.
(2) *ON.* Measure the CO in the firebox (log sets installed in wood burning fireplaces or in the vent [gas fireplace]) after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

G.6.8 Gas Clothes Dryer.

(1) *OFF.* Where installed in a closet, verify that a source of make-up air is provided and inspect that any make-up air openings, louvers, and ducts are free of blockage.
(2) *OFF.* Inspect for excess amounts of lint around the dryer and on dryer components. Verify that the lint trap is installed properly and that it does not have holes or tears. Verify that it is in a clean condition.

(3) *OFF.* Inspect visible portions of the exhaust duct and connections for loose fittings and connections, blockage, and signs of corrosion. Verify that the duct termination is not blocked and that it terminates in an outdoor location. Verify that only approved metal vent ducting material is installed (plastic and vinyl materials are not approved for gas dryers).
(4) *ON.* Verify mechanical components, including drum and blower, are operating properly.
(5) *ON.* Operate the clothes dryer and verify that exhaust system is intact and exhaust is exiting the termination.
(6) *ON.* Measure the CO at the exhaust duct or termination after 5 minutes of main burner operation. The CO should not exceed threshold in Table G.6.

Indoor Combustion Air Calculation Examples

H

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex H provides a calculation example for a method of supplying air for combustion and ventilation to confined spaces. The example is illustrated in Worksheet H.1 by calculating combustion air using the standard method. A full-size reproducible form is included in Supplement 4 and is available for free download from www.nfpa.org/54HB.

For SI units, 1 Btu/hr = 0.293 W, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1 in. w.c. = 249 Pa.

H.1 New Installation

Determine if the indoor volume is sufficient to supply combustion air for the following new installation example.

Example Installation 1: A 100,000 Btu/hr fan-assisted furnace and a 40,000 Btu/hr draft hood–equipped water heater are being installed in a basement of a new single-family home. The basement measures 25 ft × 40 ft with an 8 ft ceiling.

Solution

(1) *Determine the total required volume:* Because the air infiltration rate is unknown, the standard method to determine combustion air is used to calculate the required volume.
   (a) The combined input for the appliances located in the basement is calculated as follows: 100,000 Btu/hr + 40,000 Btu/hr = 140,000 Btu/hr
   (b) The Standard Method requires that the required volume be determined based on 50 cubic feet per 1000 Btu/hour.
   (c) Using Table A.9.3.2.1, the required volume for a 140,000 Btu/hr combined input is 7000 ft^3.

(2) *Determine available volume:* The available volume is the total basement volume:

Available Volume: 25 ft × 40 ft × 8 ft ceiling = 8000 ft^3

Conclusion: The installation can use indoor air because the available volume of 8000 ft^3 exceeds the total required volume of 7000 ft^3. No outdoor air openings are required.

H.2 New Installation, Known Air Infiltration Rate Method

Determine if the indoor volume is sufficient to supply combustion air for the following replacement installation example.

WORKSHEET H.1

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: COMBUSTION AIR, STANDARD METHOD, EXAMPLE INSTALLATION 1

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume: Room length: 40 ft
Room width: 25 ft
Room height: 8 ft

Room volume: = Length width height
= 8000 ft^3

Step 2:

- Calculate the total input of all appliances in the room.
- Enter the input rating of all appliances in Table 1. (Per 9.3.1.1, Exception 2, dryers are not included.)
- Total the column.
- Divide the total by 1000 (of Btu/hr).

Table 1 Appliances Table

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	100,000
Water heater	40,000
Space heater	
Range	
Other	
Total	140,000
Total/1000	140

Step 3:

- Calculate the required volume. Divide room volume (Step 1) by total/1000 (Step 2).
- If less than 50, additional air is needed.
- If greater than or equal to 50, no additional air is needed.

Required volume:
= 8000/140
= 57.1

Additional air needed? (Check one) Yes ❑ No ☑

ALTERNATE CALCULATION METHOD

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume = 8000 ft^3 (from Step 1 above)

Step 2:

- Calculate the maximum appliance input.

Maximum appliance input: = Room volume 20
= 8000 20
= 160,000 Btu/hr

Step 3:

- Determine if additional air is needed.
- If less than max., no additional air is needed.
- If greater than or equal to max., additional air is needed.

Total appliance input: = 140,000 Btu/hr

Additional air needed? (Check one) Yes ❑ No ☑

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Combustion Air Using the Standard Method (Example Installation 1).

Example Installation 2: A 100,000 Btu/hr fan-assisted furnace and a 40,000 Btu/hr draft hood–equipped water heater are being installed in a new single-family house. It was determined (either by use of the ASHRAE calculation method or blower door test) that the house has 0.65 air changes per hour (ACH). The furnace and water heater are being installed in a 20 ft × 35 ft basement with an 8 ft ceiling height.

Solution

(1) *Determine the required volume:* Because two types of appliances are located in the space — a fan-assisted furnace and a draft hood–equipped water heater — the required volume must be determined for each appliance and then combined to determine the total required volume:

(a) *Fan-assisted furnace:* For structures for which the air infiltration rate is known, the method shown in 9.3.2.2 permits the use of the equation in 9.3.2.2(2) to determine the required volume for a fan-assisted appliance. Paragraph 9.3.2.2(3) limits the use of the equation to air change rates equal to or less than 0.60 *ACH*. While the house was determined to have a 0.65 *ACH*, 0.60 is used to calculate the required volume. Using the equation in 9.3.2.2(2), the required volume for a 100,000 Btu/hr fan-assisted furnace is calculated as follows:

$$= \frac{15\ \text{ft}^3}{0.60}\left(\frac{100{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}{1000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right) \tag{H.2a}$$

$$= 2500\ \text{ft}^3$$

Paragraph 9.3.2.2 specifies a lower required volume limitation for fan-assisted appliances at no smaller than 25 ft^3 per 1000 Btu/hr. From Table A.9.3.2.2(b), the lower limit is 2500 ft^3.

Because the calculated required volume of 2308 ft^3 falls below the lower required volume limit, the lower limit of 2500 ft^3 must be used as the minimum required volume.

(b) *Draft hood–equipped water heater:* For structures for which the air infiltration rate is known, the method shown in 9.3.2.2 permits the use of the equation in 9.3.2.2(1) to determine the required volume for a draft hood–equipped appliance. Paragraph 9.3.2.2(3) limits the use of the equation to air change rates equal to or less than 0.60 *ACH*. While the house was determined to have a 0.65 *ACH*, 0.60 is used to calculate the required volume. Using the equation in 9.3.2.2(1), the required volume for the 40,000 Btu/hr water heater is calculated as follows:

$$= \frac{21\ \text{ft}^3}{0.60}\left(\frac{40{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}{1000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right) \tag{H.2b}$$

$$= 1400\ \text{ft}^3$$

Paragraph 9.3.2.2 specifies a lower required volume limitation for appliances other than fan-assisted at no smaller than 35 ft^3 per 1000 Btu/hr. From Table A.9.3.2.2(a), the lower limit is 1400 ft^3.

Because the calculated required volume of 1292 ft^3 falls below the lower required volume limit, the lower limit of 1400 ft^3 must be used as the minimum required volume.

(c) *Total required volume:* Subsection 9.3.2 states that the total required volume of indoor air is the sum of the required volumes for all appliances located in the space:

$$\text{Total Required} = 2500\ \text{ft}^3 + 1400\ \text{ft}^3 = 3900\ \text{ft}^3$$

(2) *Determine available volume:* The available volume is determined as follows:

$$(20\ \text{ft} \times 35\ \text{ft}) \times 8\ \text{ft} = 5600\ \text{ft}^3 \tag{H.2c}$$

WORKSHEET H.2

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: COMBUSTION AIR, KAIR METHOD, EXAMPLE INSTALLATION 2

Step 1:
- Enter the input ratings of all non-fan-assisted appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.

Table 1 Ratings for Non-Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Water heater	40,000
Space heater	
Refrigerator	
Total (I_{other})	40,000

Step 2:
- Enter the air infiltration rate of the space. This can be determined by measurement or estimation. See Supplement 3 for an estimation method.
- If the air infiltration rate exceeds 0.6, use 0.6.

Air infiltration rate: 0.65 ACH (max. 0.6)
Note: Use 0.6 in the calculation.

Step 3:
- Calculate the required volume for non-fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and in Step 6.

Required volume:

$$\frac{21\ ft^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{100{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right) = \frac{21\ ft^3}{0.6}\left(\frac{40{,}000\ Btu/hr}{1{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right)$$

$$35\ (40) = 1400\ ft^3$$

Step 4:
- Enter the input ratings of all fan-assisted appliances in Table 2.
- Total the column.

Table 2 Ratings for Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	100,000
Furnace	
Space heater	
Other	
Other	
Other	
Total	100,000

Step 5:
- Calculate the required volume for fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and below.

Required volume:

$$\frac{15\ ft^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{100{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right) = \frac{15\ ft^3}{0.6}\left(\frac{100{,}000\ Btu/hr}{1{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right)$$

$$25\ (100) = 2500\ ft^3$$

Step 6:
- Add the two required volumes calculated to find the total required volume for all appliances.

Required volume (Non-fan assisted) = 1400 ft^3
Required volume (Non-fan assisted) = 2500 ft^3
Total required volume = 3900 ft^3

Step 7:
- Enter the available room volume.

Available volume = Room volume = 20 x 35 x 8 = 5600 ft^3

Step 8:
- If the total required volume is greater than the available room volume, air openings are required. Check Yes and determine the opening size and location. If the total required volume is less than the available room volume, no air openings are required. Check No.

Air openings required? (Check one)

Yes ☐ No ☑

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Combustion Air Using the KAIR Method (Example Installation 2).

Conclusion: The installation can use indoor air because the available volume of 5600 ft^3 exceeds the total required volume of 3900 ft^3. No outdoor air openings are required.

The solution to Example Installation 2 is also illustrated in Worksheet H.2, a form for calculating combustion air using the KAIR Method. A full-sized reproducible form is provided in Supplement 4 and is available for free download from www.nfpa.org/54HB.

H.3 New Installation, Known Air Infiltration Rate Method

Determine if the indoor volume is sufficient to supply combustion air for the following replacement installation example.

Example Installation 3: A 100,000 Btu/hr fan-assisted furnace and a 40,000 Btu/hr draft hood–equipped water heater are being installed in a new single-family house. It was determined (either by use of the ASHRAE calculation method or blower door test) that the house has 0.30 air changes per hour (ACH). The furnace and water heater are being installed in a 20 ft × 35 ft basement with an 8 ft ceiling height.

Solution

(1) *Determine the required volume:* Because two types of appliances are located in the space — a fan-assisted furnace and a draft hood–equipped water heater — the required volume must be determined for each appliance and then combined to determine the total required volume:

(a) *Fan-assisted furnace:* For structures for which the air infiltration rate is known, the method shown in 9.3.2.2 permits the use of the equation in 9.3.2.2(2) to determine the required volume for a fan-assisted appliance. Paragraph 9.3.2.3 limits the use of the equation to air change rates equal to or less than 0.60 *ACH*. Because 0.30 *ACH* is less than 0.60 *ACH*, 0.30 can be used to calculate the required volume. Using the equation in 9.3.2.2(2), the required volume for a 100,000 Btu/hr fan-assisted furnace is calculated as follows:

$$= \frac{15\ \text{ft}^3}{0.30}\left(\frac{100{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}{1000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right) \qquad \textbf{[H.3a]}$$

$$= 5000\ \text{ft}^3$$

Paragraph 9.3.2.2 specifies a lower required volume limitation for fan-assisted appliances at no smaller than 25 ft^3 per 1000 Btu/hr. From Table A.9.3.2.2(b), the lower limit is 2500 ft^3.

Because the calculated required volume of 5000 ft^3 is above the lower required volume limit, use this amount as the minimum required volume.

(b) *Draft hood–equipped water heater:* For structures for which the air infiltration rate is known, the method shown in 9.3.2.2 permits the use of the equation in 9.3.2.2(1) to determine the required volume for a draft hood–equipped appliance. Paragraph 9.3.2.2(3) limits the use of the equation to air change rates equal to or less than 0.60 *ACH*. While the house was determined to have a 0.65 *ACH*, 0.30 *ACH* is used to calculate the required volume. Using the equation in 9.3.2.2(1), the required volume for the 40,000 Btu/hr water heater is calculated as follows:

$$= \frac{21\ \text{ft}^3}{0.30}\left(\frac{40{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}{1000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right) \qquad \textbf{[H.3b]}$$

$$= 2800\ \text{ft}^3$$

WORKSHEET H.3

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: COMBUSTION AIR, KAIR METHOD, EXAMPLE INSTALLATION 3

Step 1:

- Enter the input ratings of all non-fan-assisted appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.

Table 1 Ratings for Non-Fan Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Water heater	40,000
Space heater	
Refrigerator	
Total (I_{other})	40,000

Step 2:

- Enter the air infiltration rate of the space. This can be determined by measurement or estimation. See Supplement 3 for an estimation method.
- If the air infiltration rate exceeds 0.6, use 0.6.

Air infiltration rate: 0.3 ACH (max. 0.6)

Step 3:

- Calculate the required volume for non-fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and in Step 6.

Required volume:

$$\frac{21\ \text{ft}^3}{\text{ACH}}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{100{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right) = \frac{21\ \text{ft}^3}{0.3}\left(\frac{40{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}{100{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right)$$

$$70\ (40) = 2800\ \text{ft}^3$$

Step 4:

- Enter the input ratings of all fan-assisted appliances in Table 2.
- Total the column.

Table 2 Ratings for Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	100,000
Furnace	
Space heater	
Other	
Other	
Other	
Total	100,000

Step 5:

- Calculate the required volume for fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and below.

Required volume:

$$\frac{15\ \text{ft}^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{100{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right) = \frac{15\ \text{ft}^3}{0.3}\left(\frac{100{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}{100{,}000\ \text{Btu/hr}}\right)$$

$$50\ (100) = 5000\ \text{ft}^3$$

Step 6:

- Add the two required volumes calculated to find the total required volume for all appliances.

Required volume (Non-fan assisted) = 2800 ft^3

Required volume (Non-fan assisted) = 5000 ft^3

Total required volume = 7800 ft^3

Step 7:

- Enter the available room volume.

Available volume = Room volume = 20 x 35 x 8 = 5600 ft^3

Step 8:

- If the total required volume is greater than the available room volume, air openings are required. Check Yes and determine the opening size and location. If the total required volume is less than the available room volume, no air openings are required. Check No.

Air openings required? (Check one)

Yes ☑ No ❑

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Sample Calculation for Determining Combustion Air Using the KAIR Method (Example Installation 3).

Paragraph 9.3.2.2 specifies a lower required volume limitation for appliances other than fan-assisted at no smaller than 35 ft^3 per 1000 Btu/hr. From Table A.9.3.2.2(a), the lower limit is 1400 ft^3.

Because the calculated required volume of 2800 ft^3 is above the lower required volume limit, use this amount as the minimum required volume.

(c) *Total required volume:* Subsection 9.3.2 states that the total required volume to use indoor air is the sum of the required volumes for all appliances located in the space:

$$\text{Total Required} = 5000\ ft^3 + 2800\ ft^3 = 7800\ ft^3$$

(2) *Determine available volume:* The available volume is determined as follows:

$$(20\ ft \times 35\ ft) \times 8\ ft = 5600\ ft^3 \qquad \textbf{[H.3c]}$$

Conclusion: The installation cannot use indoor air alone, because the available volume of 5600 ft^3 is less than the total required volume of 7800 ft3. Outdoor air openings can be sized in accordance with all air from the outdoors or by use of the combination of indoor/outdoor air method.

The solution to Example Installation 3 is also illustrated in Worksheet H.3, a form for calculating combustion air using the KAIR Method. A full-sized reproducible copy is provided in Supplement 4 and is available for free download from www.nfpa.org/54HB.

Example of Combination of Indoor and Outdoor Combustion and Ventilation Opening Design

I

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex I provides an example of the use of 9.3.4, which lists the requirements for using a combination of indoor and outdoor air to provide the necessary air for combustion and ventilation for gas appliances.

For SI units, 1 Btu/hr = 0.293 W, 1 ft^3 = 0.028 m^3, 1 ft = 0.305 m, 1 in. w.c. = 249 Pa.

I.1 Example of Combination Indoor and Outdoor Combustion Air Opening Design

Determine the required combination of indoor and outdoor combustion air opening sizes for the following appliance installation example.

Example Installation: A fan-assisted furnace and a draft hood–equipped water heater with the following inputs are located in a 15 ft × 30 ft basement with an 8 ft ceiling. No additional indoor spaces can be used to help meet the appliance combustion air needs.

Fan-Assisted Furnace Input: 100,000 Btu/hr
Draft Hood–Equipped Water Heater Input: 40,000 Btu/hr

Solution

(1) Determine the total available room volume: Appliance room volume: 15 ft × 30 ft with an 8 ft ceiling = 3600 ft^3
(2) Determine the total required volume: The Standard Method to determine combustion air is used to calculate the required volume. The combined input for the appliances located in the basement is calculated as follows:

$$100{,}000 \text{ Btu/hr} + 40{,}000 \text{ Btu/hr} = 140{,}000 \text{ Btu/hr} \qquad \textbf{[I.1a]}$$

The Standard Method requires that the required volume be determined based on 50 ft^3 per 1000 Btu/hr. Using Table A.9.3.2.1, the required volume for a 140,000 Btu/hr water heater is 7000 ft^3.

Conclusion: The indoor volume is insufficient to supply combustion air since the total of 3600 ft^3 does not meet the required volume of 7000 ft^3. Therefore, additional combustion air must be provided from the outdoors.

(3) Determine the ratio of the available volume to the required volume:

$$\frac{3600 \text{ ft}^3}{7000 \text{ ft}^3} = 0.51 \qquad \textbf{[I.1b]}$$

(4) Determine the reduction factor to be used to reduce the full outdoor air opening size to the minimum required based on ratio of indoor spaces:

$$1.00 - 0.51 \text{ (from Step 3)} = 0.49$$

(5) Determine the single outdoor combustion air opening size as though all combustion air is to come from outdoors. In this example, the combustion air opening directly communicates with the outdoors:

$$\frac{140{,}000 \text{ Btu/hr}}{3000 \text{ Btu/in.}^2} = 47 \text{ in.}^2 \qquad \textbf{[I.1c]}$$

(6) Determine the minimum outdoor combustion air opening area:

$$\text{Outdoor opening area} = 0.49 \text{ (from Step 4)} \times 47 \text{ in.}^2 = 23 \text{ in.}^2$$

Paragraph 9.3.4(3)(c) requires the minimum dimension of the air opening should not be less than 3 in.

Enforcement

J

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

The model adoption text in J.1 is intended for government entities adopting the *National Fuel Gas Code*. Note that this is "model" legislation and may be modified or replaced with other legislation or official notice as required by local laws.

J.1

The following sample ordinance is provided to assist a jurisdiction in the adoption of this code and is not part of this code.

ORDINANCE NO.__________________

An ordinance of the *[jurisdiction]* adopting the 2015 edition of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1, *National Fuel Gas Code*, documents listed in Chapter 2 of that code; prescribing regulations governing conditions hazardous to life and property from fire or explosion; providing for the issuance of permits and collection of fees; repealing Ordinance No.______ of the *[jurisdiction]* and all other ordinances and parts of ordinances in conflict therewith; providing a penalty; providing a severability clause; and providing for publication; and providing an effective date.

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE *[governing body]* OF THE *[jurisdiction]*:

SECTION 1 That the *National Fuel Gas Code* and documents adopted by Chapter 2, three (3) copies of which are on file and are open to inspection by the public in the office of the *[jurisdiction's keeper of records]* of the *[jurisdiction]*, are hereby adopted and incorporated into this ordinance as fully as if set out at length herein, and from the date on which this ordinance shall take effect, the provisions thereof shall be controlling within the limits of the *[jurisdiction]*. The same are hereby adopted as the code of the *[jurisdiction]* for the purpose of prescribing regulations governing conditions hazardous to life and property from fire or explosion and providing for issuance of permits and collection of fees.

SECTION 2 Any person who shall violate any provision of this code or standard hereby adopted or fail to comply therewith; or who shall violate or fail to comply with any order made thereunder; or who shall build in violation of any detailed statement of specifications or plans submitted and approved thereunder; or failed to operate in accordance with any certificate or permit issued thereunder; and from which no appeal has been taken; or who shall fail to comply with such an order as affirmed or modified by or by a court of competent jurisdiction, within the time fixed herein, shall severally for each and every such violation and noncompliance, respectively, be guilty of a misdemeanor, punishable by a fine of not less than $ _________ nor more than $_________ or by imprisonment for not less than_________ days nor more than__________ days or by both such fine and imprisonment. The imposition of one penalty for any violation shall not excuse the violation or permit it to continue; and all such persons shall be required to correct or remedy such violations or defects within a reasonable time; and when not otherwise specified the application of the above penalty shall not be held to prevent the enforced removal of prohibited conditions. Each day that prohibited conditions are maintained shall constitute a separate offense.

SECTION 3 Additions, insertions, and changes — that the 2015 edition of NFPA 54/ANSI Z223.1, *National Fuel Gas Code*, is amended and changed in the following respects:

List Amendments

SECTION 4 That ordinance No.____________ of *[jurisdiction]* entitled *[fill in the title of the ordinance or ordinances in effect at the present time]* and all other ordinances or parts of ordinances in conflict herewith are hereby repealed.

SECTION 5 That if any section, subsection, sentence, clause, or phrase of this ordinance is, for any reason, held to be invalid or unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity or constitutionality of the remaining portions of this ordinance. The *[governing body]* hereby declares that it would have passed this ordinance, and each section, subsection, clause, or phrase hereof, irrespective of the fact that any one or more sections, subsections, sentences, clauses, and phrases be declared unconstitutional.

SECTION 6 That the *[jurisdiction's keeper of records]* is hereby ordered and directed to cause this ordinance to be published. [NOTE: An additional provision may be required to direct the number of times the ordinance is to be published and to specify that it is to be in a newspaper in general circulation. Posting may also be required.]

SECTION 7 That this ordinance and the rules, regulations, provisions, requirements, orders, and matters established and adopted hereby shall take effect and be in full force and effect *[time period]* from and after the date of its final passage and adoption.

Informational References

K

K.1 Referenced Publications

The documents or portions thereof listed in this annex are referenced within the informational sections of this code and are not part of the requirements of this document unless also listed in Chapter 2 for other reasons.

K.1.1 NFPA Publications. National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471.

NFPA 56, *Standard for Fire and Explosion Prevention During Cleaning and Purging of Flammable Gas Piping Systems*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 68, *Standard on Explosion Protection by Deflagration Venting*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations*, 2014 edition.
NFPA 780, *Standard for the Installation of Lightning Protection Systems*, 2014 edition.
National Fuel Gas Code Handbook, 2015 edition.

K.1.2 Other Publications.

K.1.2.1 API Publications. American Petroleum Institute, 1220 L Street, N.W., Washington, DC 20005-4070.

API STD 1104, *Welding Pipelines and Related Facilities,* 2008 (Reaffirmed 2010).

K.1.2.2 ASHRAE Publications. American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Inc., 1791 Tullie Circle, N.E., Atlanta, GA 30329-2305, (404) 636-8400, www.ashrae.org.

ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, 2009.
ASHRAE Handbook — HVAC Systems and Equipment, 2012.

K.1.2.3 ASME Publications. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990, (800) 843-2763, www.asme.org.

Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX and Section IV, 2010.
B36.10M, *Welded and Seamless Wrought Steel Pipe*, 2004.

K.1.2.4 ASTM Publications. ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, P.O. Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959, (610) 833-9585, www.astm.org.

ASTM A 53, *Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Black and Hot-Dipped, Zinc-Coated, Welded and Seamless*, 2012.

ASTM A 106, *Standard Specification for Seamless Carbon Steel Pipe for High-Temperature Service*, 2011.

ASTM A 254, *Standard Specification for Copper-Brazed Steel Tubing*, 1997 (Reaffirmed 2007).

ASTM B 88, *Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Water Tube*, 2009.

ASTM B 210, *Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Drawn Seamless Tubes*, 2004.

ASTM B 241, *Standard Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum-Alloy Seamless Pipe and Seamless Extruded Tube*, 2010.

ASTM B 280, *Standard Specification for Seamless Copper Tube for Air-Conditioning and Refrigeration Field Service*, 2008.

ASTM D 2385, *Test Method for Hydrogen Sulfide and Mercaptan Sulfur in Natural Gas (Cadmium Sulfate — Iodometric Titration Method)*, 1981 (Reaffirmed 1990).

ASTM D 2420, *Method of Test for Hydrogen Sulfide in Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gases (Lead Acetate Method)*, 2007.

ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Polyethylene (PE) Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*, 2012.

ASTM D 2513, *Standard Specification for Thermoplastic Gas Pressure Pipe, Tubing, and Fittings*, 2009.

ASTM F 1973, *Standard Specification for Factory Assembled Anodeless Risers and Transition Fittings in Polyethylene (PE) and Polyamide 11 (PA11) and Polyamide 12 (PA12) Fuel Gas Distribution Systems*, 2008.

ASTM F 2509, *Standard Specification for Field-Assembled Anodeless Riser Kits for Use on Outside Diameter Controlled Polyethylene Gas Distribution Pipe and Tubing*, 2006 (Reaffirmed 2012).

K.1.2.5 AWS Publications. American Welding Society, 550 N.W. LeJeune Road, Miami, FL 33126, (800) 443-9353, www.aws.org.

AWS B2.1, *Specification for Welding Procedure and Performance Qualification*, 2009 (Reaffirmed 2012).

AWS B2.2, *Brazing Procedure and Performance Qualification*, 2010.

K.1.2.6 CSA America Publications. Canadian Standards Association, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, (216) 524-4990, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI LC 1/CSA 6.26, *Fuel Gas Piping Systems Using Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)*, 2005.

ANSI LC 4, *Press-Connect Copper and Copper Alloy Fittings for Use in Fuel Gas Distribution Systems*, 2007.

ANSI Z21.50/CSA 2.22, *Vented Gas Fireplaces*, 2007.

ANSI Z21.60/CGA 2.26, *Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid-Fuel Burning Fireplaces*, 2003 (Reaffirmed 2009).

K.1.2.7 NACE Publications. NACE International, 1440 South Creek Drive, Houston, TX 77084-4906, www.nace.org.

NACE SP 0169, *Control of External Corrosion on Underground or Submerged Metallic Piping Systems*, 1996.

K.1.2.8 U. S. Government Publications. U. S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402.

Responding to Residential Carbon Monoxide Incidents, Guidelines for Fire and Other Emergency Response Personnel, U. S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, July 23, 2002.

K.1.2.9 Other Publications. *Piping Handbook*, 2000, New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company.

K.2 Informational References

K.2.1 NFPA Publications. National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471.

NFPA 30, *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 59, *Utility LP-Gas Plant Code*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 61, *Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Processing Facilities*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 86, *Standard for Ovens and Furnaces*, 2015 edition.
NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*, 2013 edition.
NFPA 501A, *Standard for Fire Safety Criteria for Manufactured Home Installations, Sites, and Communities*, 2013 edition.

K.2.2 CSA America Publications. Canadian Standards Association, 8501 East Pleasant Valley Road, Cleveland, OH 44131-5575, (216) 524-4990, www.csa-america.org.

ANSI/AGA NGV3.1/CGA 12.3, *Fuel System Components for Natural Gas Powered Vehicles*, 2012.
AGA/CSA NGV 1, *Compressed Natural Gas Vehicle (NGV) Fueling Connection Devices*, 2006.
ANSI/CSA America FC 1, *Stationary Fuel Cell Power Systems*, 2004.
ANSI/CSA NGV 2, *American National Standard for Natural Gas Vehicle Fuel Containers*, 2007.
ANSI/IAS LC 2A, *Agricultural Heaters*, 1998.
ANSI/IAS U.S. LC 2, *Direct Gas-Fired Circulating Heaters for Agricultural Animal Confinement Buildings*, 1996.
ANSI Z21.1, *Household Cooking Gas Appliances,* 2010.
ANSI Z21.5.1/CSA 7.1, *Gas Clothes Dryers — Volume I — Type 1 Clothes Dryers*, 2006 (Reaffirmed 2012).
ANSI Z21.5.2/CSA 7.2, *Gas Clothes Dryers — Volume II — Type 2 Clothes Dryers*, 2005 (Reaffirmed 2011).
ANSI Z21.10.1/CSA 4.1, *Gas Water Heaters — Volume I — Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings of 75,000 Btu per Hour or Less*, 2009.
ANSI Z21.10.3/CSA 4.3, *Gas Water Heaters — Volume III — Storage Water Heaters with Input Ratings above 75,000 Btu per Hour, Circulating and Instantaneous*, 2009.
ANSI Z21.11.2, *Gas-Fired Room Heaters — Volume II — Unvented Room Heaters*, 2007.
ANSI Z21.12, *Draft Hoods*, 1990 (Reaffirmed 2000).
ANSI Z21.13/CSA 4.9, *Gas-Fired Low-Pressure Steam and Hot Water Boilers*, 2010.
ANSI Z21.15/CGA 9.1, *Manually Operated Gas Valves for Appliances, Appliance Connector Valves, and Hose End Valves*, 2009.
ANSI Z21.17/CSA 2.7, *Domestic Gas Conversion Burners*, 1998 (Reaffirmed 2009).
ANSI Z21.18/CSA 6.3, *Gas Appliance Pressure Regulators*, 2007.
ANSI Z21.19/CSA 1.4, *Refrigerators Using Gas Fuel*, 2002 (Reaffirmed 2012).
ANSI Z21.20/C22.2 — No. 199, *Automatic Electrical Controls for Household and Similar Use — Part 2: Particular Requirements for Automatic Burner Ignition Systems and Components*, 2007 (Reaffirmed 2011).
ANSI Z21.21/CGA 6.5, *Automatic Valves for Gas Appliances*, 2005.
ANSI Z21.22/CSA 4.4, *Relief Valves for Hot Water Supply Systems*, 1999 (Reaffirmed 2008).
ANSI Z21.23, *Gas Appliance Thermostats*, 2010.
ANSI Z21.24/CSA 6.10, *Metal Connectors for Gas Appliances*, 2006.
ANSI Z21.35/CGA 6.8, *Pilot Gas Filters*, 2005.
ANSI Z21.40.1/CGA 2.91, *Gas-Fired, Heat Activated Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances*, 1996 (Reaffirmed 2002).

ANSI Z21.40.2/CGA 2.92, *Gas-Fired, Work Activated Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances (Internal Combustion)*, 1996 (Reaffirmed 2002).

ANSI Z21.40.4/CGA 2.94, *Performance Testing and Rating of Gas-Fired, Air-Conditioning and Heat Pump Appliances*, 1996 (Reaffirmed 2002).

ANSI Z21.42, *Gas-Fired Illuminating Appliances*, 1993 (Reaffirmed 2002).

ANSI Z21.47/CSA 2.3, *Gas-Fired Central Furnaces*, 2006 (Reaffirmed 2011).

ANSI Z21.54/CSA 8.4, *Gas Hose Connectors for Portable Outdoor Gas-Fired Appliances*, 2002 (Reaffirmed 2007).

ANSI Z21.56/CSA 4.7, *Gas-Fired Pool Heaters*, 2006.

ANSI Z21.57, *Recreational Vehicle Cooking Gas Appliances*, 2010.

ANSI Z21.58/CGA 1.6, *Outdoor Cooking Gas Appliances*, 2007.

ANSI Z21.60/CSA 2.26, *Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid-Fuel Burning Fireplaces*, 2003 (Reaffirmed 2009).

ANSI Z21.61, *Gas-Fired Toilets*, 1993 (Reaffirmed 2004).

ANSI Z21.66/CGA 6.14, *Automatic Vent Damper Devices for Use with Gas-Fired Appliances*, 1996 (Reaffirmed 2001).

ANSI Z21.69/CSA 6.16, *Connectors for Movable Gas Appliances*, 2007.

ANSI Z21.71, *Automatic Intermittent Pilot Ignition Systems for Field Installations*, 1993 (Reaffirmed 2007).

ANSI Z21.77/CGA 6.23, *Manually-Operated Piezo-Electric Spark Gas Ignition Systems and Components*, 2005.

ANSI Z21.78/CGA 6.20, *Combination Gas Controls for Gas Appliances*, 2010.

ANSI Z21.83, *Fuel Cell Power Plants*, 2007.

ANSI Z21.84, *Manually Lighted, Natural Gas Decorative Gas Appliances for Installation in Solid-Fuel Burning Appliances*, 2002.

ANSI Z21.86/CSA 2.32, *Vented Gas-Fired Space Heating Appliances*, 2008.

ANSI Z21.87/CSA 4.6, *Automatic Gas Shutoff Devices for Hot Water Supply Systems*, 2007.

ANSI Z21.88/CSA 2.33, *Vented Gas Fireplace Heaters*, 2005 (Reaffirmed 2009).

ANSI Z21.91, *Ventless Firebox Enclosures for Gas-Fired Unvented Decorative Room Heaters*, 2007.

ANSI Z83.3, *Gas Utilization Equipment in Large Boilers*, 1971 (Reaffirmed 1995).

ANSI Z83.4/CSA 3.7, *Non-Recirculating Direct Gas-Fired Industrial Air Heaters*, 2003.

ANSI Z83.6, *Gas-Fired Infrared Heaters*, 1990 (Reaffirmed 1998).

ANSI Z83.8/CGA 2.6, *Gas Unit Heaters, Gas Packaged Heaters, Gas Utility Heaters, and Gas-Fired Duct Furnaces*, 2009.

ANSI Z83.11/CGA 1.8, *Gas Food Service Equipment*, 2006 (Reaffirmed 2012).

ANSI Z83.19/CSA 2.35, *Gas-Fired High-Intensity Infrared Heaters*, 2009.

ANSI Z83.20/CSA 2.34, *Gas-Fired Low-Intensity Infrared Heaters*, 2008.

ANSI Z83.21/CSA C 22.2 No.168, *Commercial Dishwashers*, 2005.

IAS U.S. 7, *Requirements for Gas Convenience Outlets and Optional Enclosures*, 1990.

IAS U.S. 9, *Requirements for Gas-Fired, Desiccant Type Dehumidifiers and Central Air Conditioners*, 1990.

IAS U.S. 42, *Requirement for Gas Fired Commercial Dishwashers*, 1992.

NACE SP0169, *Control of External Corrosion on Underground or Submerged Metallic Piping Systems*, 2007.

K.2.3 MSS Publications. Manufacturers Standardization Society of the Valve and Fittings Industry, 127 Park Street, NE, Vienna, VA 22180-6671, www.mss-hq.com.

MSS SP-6, *Standard Finishes for Contact Faces of Pipe Flanges and Connecting-End Flanges of Valves and Fittings*, 2007.

ANSI/MSS SP-58, *Pipe Hangers and Supports — Materials, Design and Manufacture*, 2002.

K.2.4 SAE Publications. Society of Automotive Engineers, 400 Commonwealth Drive, Warrendale, PA 15096, www.sae.org.

SAE J533, *Flares for Tubing*, 2007.

K.2.5 UL Publications. Underwriters Laboratories Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096, www.ul.com.

ANSI/UL 103, *Chimneys, Factory-Built, Residential Type and Building Heating Appliances*, 2010.

ANSI/UL 441, *Gas Vents*, 2010.

ANSI/UL 641, *Type L Low-Temperature Venting Systems*, 2010.

ANSI/UL 1738, *Venting Systems for Gas Burning Appliances, Categories II, III and IV*, 1993, Revised 2006.

ANSI/UL 1777, *Chimney Liners*, 2007, Revised 2009.

K.2.6 U.S. Government Publications. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402, www.access.gpo.gov.

Manufactured Home Construction and Safety Standard, Title 24, *Code of Federal Regulations*, Part 3280.

K.3 References for Extracts in Informational Sections

(Reserved)

PART 2

Supplements

In addition to the 2015 edition of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*, and commentary presented in Part One, the *National Fuel Gas Code Handbook* includes supplements.

The eight supplements in Part Two explore the background of selected topics related to NFPA 54 in more detail than does the commentary. These supplements are not part of the code; they are included as additional information for handbook users. The calculation worksheets from Supplement 4 are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.

The eight supplements in Part Two are as follows:

1. Development of Revised Venting Guidelines
2. Fuel Gas Odorization
3. Procedure to Estimate Infiltration Rate for Residential Structures
4. Calculation Worksheets
5. Clearance Distance for Gas Appliance Sidewall Venting
6. Purging
7. Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)
8. Technical/Substantive Changes from the 2012 Edition to the 2015 Edition of NFPA 54

Supplement 1

Development of Revised Venting Guidelines

Editor's Note: *The 1992 edition of the National Fuel Gas Code incorporated extensive changes to the tables used to size vents serving Category I appliances. The 1996 edition added three new tables that provide a method of sizing masonry chimneys exposed to the outdoors below the roofline. These changes were significant and resulted from research conducted by Battelle Laboratories, with the American Gas Association (AGA) Laboratories, and funded by the Gas Research Institute (GRI), a nonprofit institute that sponsors projects promoting the use of natural gas. The need for this work was identified after problems arose in the field with these newer appliances. The exterior masonry chimney tables provide specific, scientifically based guidance for these chimneys that was not included in the research that led to the 1992 tables.*

Since the introduction of the revised tables, their use has become the norm as appliance efficiencies have changed. The 2002 edition made only minor changes to the code, to resolve issues that had arisen from the use of these tables. In the 2006 edition, minor changes were made to the code, and again no new tables were added, but the tables were renumbered. This supplement is as useful now as in 1992 to those who seek to understand the development of the tables.

This supplement, written by the researchers at Battelle and AGA, describes in detail the problem that led to the research and the technical aspects of the work. Many users of the code will find this explanation helpful in understanding the reasons for the new, more complex tables.

The editor thanks the GRI and its successor, the Gas Technology Institute, for its cooperation in making this supplement possible and thanks the researchers who worked with the National Fuel Gas Code Committee to make the tables possible. Specifically, special thanks are extended to Darrel D. Paul and Allen L. Rutz of Battelle Laboratories, Robert A. Borgeson of AGA Research, and Douglas W. DeWerth of the International Approval Services — U.S., Inc. This supplement was taken from a topical report of research conducted as part of GRI's venting program and was revised in 1996 by the principal investigator, Allen L. Rutz.

OVERVIEW

Conventional, atmospheric gas heating appliances, such as furnaces, boilers, and water heaters, have had an enviable field service record. These systems have provided the consumer with safe, economical space or water heating that requires minimal maintenance over a long service life. Single-wall galvanized vent connectors and either a masonry chimney or Type B double-wall metal vent pipe have been used to vent flue gases from these appliances. Here, too, the design principles, which were developed over the years, have resulted in trouble-free venting. The widespread use of higher-efficiency appliances, however, has made altering the design of vent systems necessary.

The requirements appear in Chapter 12 and Chapter 13, and guidance on their use appears in Annex F. These were specifically designed for Category I fan-assisted furnaces and boilers. A Category I appliance is one whose vent is expected to operate under negative static pressure with a limited amount of condensation occurring. Category I appliances include most traditional, draft hood–equipped units, as well as many mid-efficiency models designed for vertical venting. A more complete description of the categories is found on the following pages.

These requirements apply to both new construction and retrofitted applications. When a new appliance is retrofit into an existing installation or an existing appliance is removed from a common vent, the entire venting system, which may include an existing masonry chimney, should conform to current codes. The existing venting system may need to be modified to match the new or retrofitted appliance installation.

Background of the Vent Sizing Tables

The venting recommendations found in the code prior to 1992 were developed in the 1950s for atmospheric appliances that were equipped with a draft hood. The efficiency of these appliances was low compared to the level required by the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act (NAECA) of 1987. About 35 percent of the annual energy input to a conventional appliance could have been lost from the building through the vent. This loss resulted in appliances that operated with an annual fuel utilization efficiency (AFUE) of approximately 65 percent to 70 percent and with high flue gas temperatures, which made venting relatively simple. NAECA required these losses to be reduced to no more than approximately 20 percent.

Today's mid-efficiency, Category I appliance (with an AFUE of approximately 80 percent) has lower flue gas temperatures and reduced off-cycle losses. Elimination of the draft hood or diverter in some new furnace designs also alters the vent gas temperature, dew point, flow rate, and the amount of dilution air in the vent. Overall, the potential for condensation increases, and vent system design for the modern furnace requires more care.

Modern lifestyles and energy-efficient buildings that incorporate tighter construction practices also have increased the potential for indoor combustion air contamination. This fact, coupled with increased condensate, can increase the potential for vent system corrosion. Updated venting practice must take these factors into account for both ventilation and venting of appliances.

The primary factors affecting modern venting practice are as follows:

1. The reduced level of vent system dilution air increases the potential for more condensate to form in the vent.
2. Higher appliance efficiencies and lower vent gas temperatures mean that oversized vents will not heat up as quickly. The tendency for condensation also will increase.
3. Limiting condensate formation reduces the chance of vent corrosion.
4. The reduction of dilution air level increases the maximum capacity of the vent. In other words, a given vent can handle a larger input rate.

The results were reviewed and the researchers determined that revised vent sizing tables were needed. The following changes were made to the existing tables:

1. *Minimum* vent system capacities (i.e., appliance input rates) were added for fan-assisted appliances to limit condensation.
2. *Maximum* vent system capacities, which were designed to avoid positive vent pressures for fan-assisted appliances and are higher than those for draft hood–equipped models, also were added.

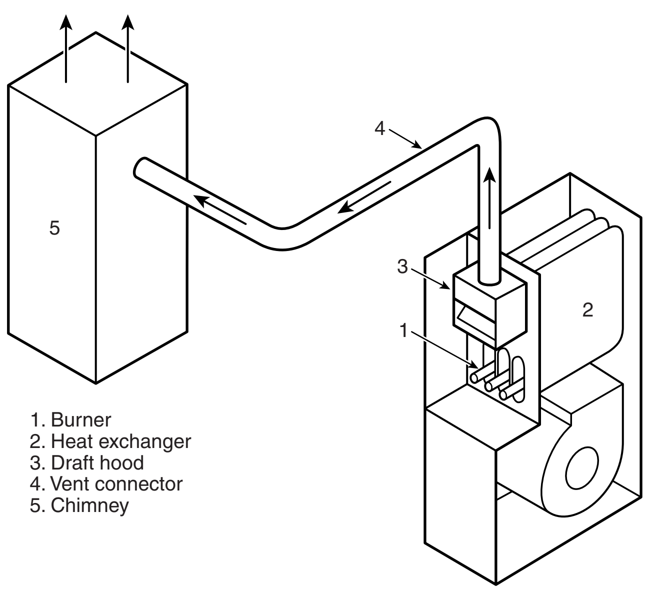
The maximum vent system capacities for draft hood–equipped appliances were left unchanged.

Conventional Venting

The traditional gas-heating appliance is equipped with a draft hood or draft diverter and an atmospheric burner (see Exhibit S1.1). The products of combustion are driven by the heat in the flue gases through the heat exchanger and the vent. The tendency of hot gases to rise is called buoyancy. In the vent, buoyancy creates what is usually called draft or stack action.

The purpose of the draft hood is to separate the appliance from the vent. The draft hood relief opening protects

EXHIBIT S1.1

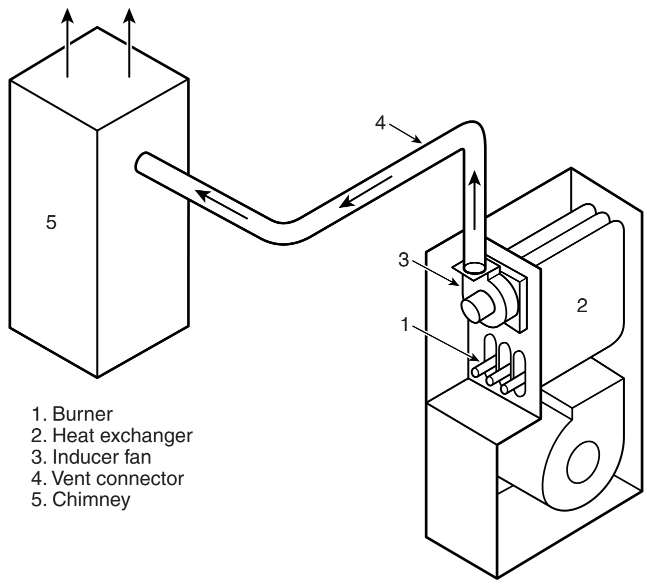


Draft Hood–Equipped Furnace. (Courtesy of Gas Technology Institute) the appliance from wind or too much draft. It also allows additional air, called dilution air, to enter the vent and mix with the combustion products. This dilution air reduces the humidity or dew point of the vent gases, which in turn helps to reduce condensation.

Many people do not realize that products of combustion contain water. In fact, a 100,000 Btu/hr (29 kW) appliance, operating continuously, will produce over 1 gallon (4 L) of water per hour in the flue gas. Of course, the water in the flue gas is vapor and cannot be seen unless it condenses into a liquid.

The amount of water vapor in the vent gases is usually measured as the dew point. The dew point of combustion products in a gas vent is generally about 90°F (32°C) to 130°F (54°C). If the vent gases contact a surface that has a temperature below the dew point, water will condense out of the vent gases onto the surface. As an analogy, this effect is seen on grass in the morning, when the grass temperature is below the dew point of the air. This type of condensation in the vent must be limited unless the vent has been designed for handling condensate.

EXHIBIT S1.2



Fan-Assisted Furnace. (Courtesy of Gas Technology Institute)

Fan-Assisted Combustion Systems

The energy crisis of the 1970s caused consumers to demand appliances with higher AFUEs. Since then, appliances have been designed to reduce their off-cycle losses. In a few cases, a power burner or a combustion air or built-in flue damper is used for this purpose.

However, most of these appliances use fan-assisted combustion systems with an induced-draft blower to assist the combustion products through the heat exchanger (see Exhibit S1.2). Both mid-efficiency (AFUE 5 78 percent to 83 percent) and high-efficiency (AFUE > 90 percent) condensing appliances can use fan-assisted systems.

A fan-assisted system does not use a draft hood, thus reducing the dilution air in the vent. The elimination of dilution air has the following important effects on vent performance:

1. The vent gas dew point (or humidity) increases.
2. The total amount of gases flowing in the vent decreases.
3. When the appliance is off, there is much less airflow through the vent.

The higher dew point means that the vent must warm up more to stop condensation. At the same time, the lower flow rate makes warming up the vent more difficult. All other things being equal, a mid-efficiency appliance will produce more condensate in the vent system than a conventional-efficiency draft hood–equipped model.

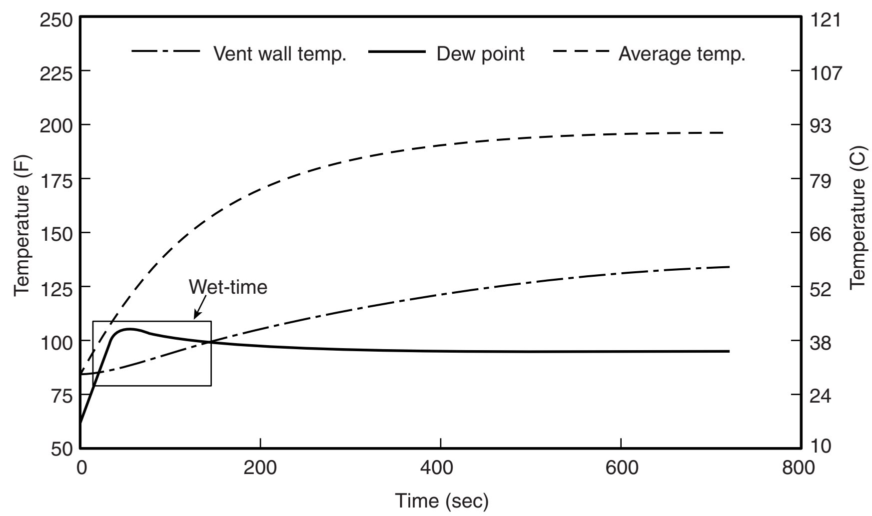
Exhibit S1.3 and Exhibit S1.4 show how condensation during startup lasts longer in a vent serving a fan-assisted appliance than in a traditional, draft hood–equipped appliance. In Exhibit S1.3, the average vent gas, vent wall, and dew points were measured at the same point in a Type B vent serving a conventional, draft hood–equipped appliance. The point when the wall temperature falls below the dew point is called the wet time. At this point, condensation will be present on the vent wall surface. The dew point decreases with time, because the amount of dilution air increases as the draft becomes stronger.

Exhibit S1.4 presents the same temperature measurements found in Exhibit S1.3, but for a mid-efficiency, fan-assisted appliance instead of a draft hood–equipped appliance. Notice that the dew point no longer declines because there is no source of dilution air. The higher dew point nearly doubles the wet time. However, many mid-efficiency, fan-assisted appliances can successfully use traditional vents that are designed properly.

Appliance Categorization

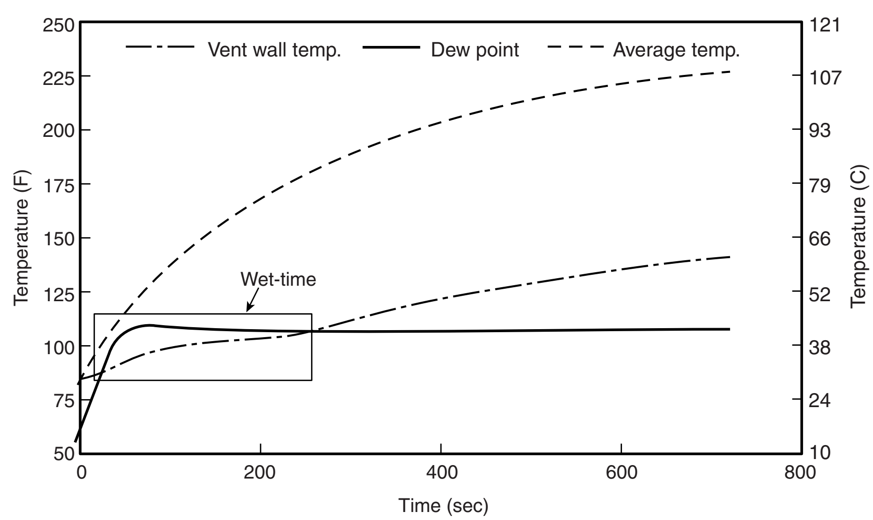
Overall, the development of more efficient appliances has resulted in many new product designs with different venting requirements. Space-heating appliances were organized into four categories, based on the pressure produced in a special test rig and the difference between the actual temperature and dew point of the flue gas. Exhibit S1.5 shows the criteria for each appliance category, as well as the requirements that a particular vent system needs to meet.

EXHIBIT S1.3



Typical Vent Temperatures for a Draft Hood–Equipped Appliance. (Courtesy of American Gas Association)

EXHIBIT S1.4

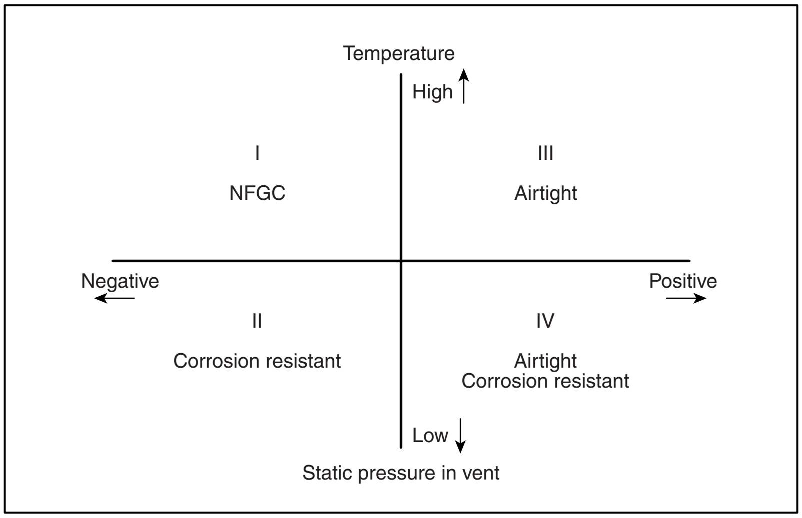


Typical Vent Temperatures for a Fan-Assisted Appliance. (Courtesy of American Gas Association)

Installers and code officials should understand the definitions of the different categories, because each space-heating appliance has a rating plate containing its category number. This rating plate tells field personnel, in a generic sense, the venting requirements of each appliance. The category of an appliance is determined exclusively by the equipment design. Third-party testing laboratories verify that the appliance operates satisfactorily according to the category marked on the rating plate. There is no further need to check the category in the field.

Exhibit S1.5 illustrates the organization of the four categories. Category I appliances operate with a negative static vent pressure and have vent gases that are relatively warm. They operate with only a limited amount of condensation. The traditional, draft hood–equipped appliance is considered Category I. However, many mid-efficiency, fan-assisted appliances are also Category I. How is this possible? First, the vent gas temperature of these appliances is in the same range as the traditional, draft hood appliances (after dilution). Second, the fan-assisted appliance is

EXHIBIT S1.5



ANSI Categorization Criteria. (Courtesy of American Gas Association)

designed so that the vent system will remain at a negative pressure. If the vent is designed correctly, the vent pressure in a fan-assisted appliance is negative because the draft action should be stronger than the fan pressure rise.

All Category I appliances should be vented using the manufacturer's installation instructions, which usually refer to the *National Fuel Gas Code*. Appliances in Categories II, III, or IV should also be vented according to the manufacturer's installation instructions. However, the *National Fuel Gas Code* does not contain any additional venting information for appliances in these categories.

If a special vent system is used, certain Category I appliances may also be vented in unconventional ways, including horizontal, through-the-wall arrangements. The manufacturer must supply the special vent system with the appliance. The installer should follow the manufacturer's installation instructions exactly.

For residential installations, Category I appliances should never be sidewall-vented through the wall using traditional venting products, such as Type B or single-wall galvanized vent pipe, because the pressure in the vent may be positive. These products should be used only for venting systems that are primarily vertical and sized according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Category II appliances also operate with negative vent pressure but with a vent gas temperature that could produce excessive condensation. These appliances require a corrosion-resistant vent. There are few, if any, Category II appliances on the market.

Category III appliances operate with a positive vent pressure and with a vent gas temperature that will produce limited condensation. These appliances require an airtight vent to avoid leakage. An example of a Category III appliance is a mid-efficiency furnace that is vented horizontally through the wall.

Category IV includes furnaces, boilers, and other appliances that operate with a positive vent pressure and with a low vent gas temperature. These appliances need an airtight, corrosion-resistant vent that includes a method of condensate disposal. Category IV appliances are usually high-efficiency, condensing models.

The category of an appliance determines the type, size, materials, and installation requirements of the venting system for that specific appliance. For example, a Category IV furnace requires a vent system built of corrosion-resistant materials because condensate is corrosive. Gastight vent systems are essential for Category III or IV appliances because the pressure within their vent systems exceeds the surrounding atmospheric pressure. On the other hand, Category I appliances can use traditional venting products, such as Type B vent pipe or masonry chimneys, within recommended limits.

Vent Sizing Tables

The pre-1992 vent sizing tables for Category I appliances in the *National Fuel Gas Code* were developed in the 1950s for draft hood–equipped models. Therefore, the tables assumed an appliance efficiency lower than that of our modern, mid-efficiency appliances. The tables also assumed that a large amount of dilution air would be in the vent. The research, sponsored by the Gas Research Institute, found that the tables indeed could be improved. A summary of the reasons for these changes follows:

1. Fan-assisted appliances are likely to produce more condensate in a vent than do draft hood–equipped models. Therefore, a way to limit wet time is needed.
2. The reduction of dilution air increases the maximum capacity of the vent.
3. The assumed efficiency for fan-assisted appliances used for determining the capacities in the tables should be raised to reflect modern appliances.

The potential to produce condensate must be controlled to limit corrosion. The corrosion can be accelerated by contamination of the combustion air by household chemicals. If contamination occurs, the condensate can become highly acidic.

Traditionally, the vent sizing tables have contained the maximum vent capacities that could be vented using a given vent diameter and length. These values were designed to prevent spillage.

The updated tables introduced the concept of minimum vent capacity. The minimum capacity is provided to prevent corrosion by limiting the wet time. Minimum vent capacity is the smallest appliance input rating recommended for a given vent. A vent that is operating below its minimum capacity can experience excessive condensation and, possibly, corrosion.

The tables also contain separate, maximum vent capacities for fan-assisted appliances. These values are meant to prevent positive vent pressure. Therefore, a given vent for a fan-assisted appliance has both a minimum and a maximum capacity. Together, these capacity limitations form a range of acceptable appliance inputs and a range of acceptable vent sizes. The maximum capacity prevents vents from being too small; the minimum capacity prevents vents from being too large.

VENT-II COMPUTER PROGRAM

The venting tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances were generated using the VENT-II computer program to calculate the minimum and maximum vent capacities for each configuration. The VENT-II program uses a transient mathematical model to solve the mass, momentum, and energy balance equations for a user-specified appliance(s) connected to a user-specified vent system. The user specifies the number of appliances connected to the vent system (one or two), the appliance cycling times, and the number of consecutive appliance on/off cycles in the transient analysis. VENT-II then calculates the temperatures, pressures, flow rates, and the amount of condensate formation for all of the user-specified sections of the venting system as a function of time.

Benefits of Using Computer Model

The primary benefit of using a computer model is the laboratory time saved by not having to determine experimentally the minimum and maximum vent capacities at the precisely controlled, ambient temperatures specified for each of the over 3600 unique vent systems listed in the venting tables in Chapter 13. These vent systems consist of either single-wall metal vent connectors or Type B double-wall metal vent connectors attached to either a Type B double-wall vertical vent or to a tile-lined masonry chimney, meeting the requirements of NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*. The analyzed vent systems range in vertical height from 6 ft to 100 ft (2 m to 30 m) and have horizontal, lateral lengths from 0 ft to 50 ft (0 m to 15 m).

Over the years, the original VENT-II computer program has been updated, as new venting capabilities were needed. For instance, VENT-II, Version 3.0, allowed the program to calculate wet times for each section of the vent system. VENT-II, Version 4.0, added the capability of simulating the vent system performance when two appliances were connected to the vent. VENT-II, Version 4.1, added additional features that allowed the program to accurately predict the performance of a masonry chimney when one or two appliances were vented. In all cases, the later versions of VENT-II retained the primary features of the earlier versions while improving the mathematical models.

The venting tables were calculated over a period of approximately five years, using the most up-to-date version of VENT-II available at the time that each table was generated. In chronological order, the single-appliance venting tables for Type B double-wall vent systems were generated first. Next, the multiple-appliance venting tables for Type B double-wall vent systems were generated. The single- and multiple-appliance venting tables for interior masonry chimneys followed. Finally, the single- and multiple-appliance venting tables for exterior chimneys were generated.

Validation of VENT-II

The origins of VENT-II date back to a 1983 GRI study in which Battelle developed a computer model that was validated experimentally by the AGA Laboratories. That study compared the computer program predictions of vent static pressures and temperatures to measurements on 20 unique combinations of appliance and vent configurations. In addition, the study compared computer program predictions to natural draft design data then contained in Table G.1 of the 1988 *National Fuel Gas Code*; in Chapter 26 of the 1979 American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) *Equipment Handbook*; and in an updated, hand-calculator, magnetic tape model developed by Richard Stone. Overall, the study found close agreement between the vent simulation model predictions, the experimental data, and the existing information in the handbooks and codes.

Since 1983, VENT-II has been converted for use on an IBM® personal computer (Version 1.0), the user-interface and condensation models were refined (Version 2.0), a transient analysis capability was added (Version 3.0), a common vent model was included (Version 4.0), and an experimentally validated masonry chimney model was developed and refined (Version 4.1). Each step in the development of VENT-II compared the new models against the previously developed sources of data and conducted additional validation experiments.

In addition to experimental validation in the laboratory, VENT-II has undergone field validation. Battelle has used VENT-II to predict the venting performance of field installations in Newark, New Jersey; Hartford, Connecticut; and Columbus, Ohio. Battelle has also received numerous phone calls and letters from users of VENT-II who have successfully used the program to either diagnose problems or design vent systems. Chapter 30 of the 2000 *ASHRAE HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook* also recognizes VENT-II as a design tool for gas appliance venting systems.

BASELINE CONDITIONS FOR CATEGORY I FAN-ASSISTED APPLIANCE VENTING TABLES

Before venting tables could be generated, baseline conditions needed to be established to define a set of typical, appliance-operating parameters and ambient conditions. Where appropriate, the same conditions used to generate the existing *National Fuel Gas Code* tables were assumed for this analysis.

The appliance-operating parameters were set after consultations with and review by the research project's Technical Advisory Group, which included appliance manufacturers. These operating parameters were chosen so that the resulting venting tables would be applicable to the majority of Category I fan-assisted appliances being manufactured. However, ensuring that the venting guidelines are applicable to a particular appliance model is the responsibility of the appliance manufacturer, especially if the operation of that model deviates significantly from the baseline conditions assumed here. Table S1.1 summarizes the baseline appliance conditions used to generate the venting tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances.

TABLE S1.1 Baseline Appliance Conditions Used to Generate Venting Tables for Category I Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance Attribute	*Baseline Values*
Thermal efficiency	83%
Excess combustion air for natural gas	65% (7% CO_2)
Off-cycle pressure loss coefficient	30

Appliance Thermal Efficiency

One important appliance parameter that affects venting is the steady-state thermal efficiency of the appliance. In this case, steady-state thermal efficiency is defined as follows:

$$\text{Thermal efficiency (at steady state)} = \frac{\begin{bmatrix}\text{Appliance heat}\\ \text{input rate}\end{bmatrix} - \begin{bmatrix}\text{Appliance flue}\\ \text{heat loss rate}\end{bmatrix}}{\text{Appliance heat input rate}} \times 100$$

The thermal efficiency is the percentage of heat generated by the gas burner (i.e., appliance input rate) that is used for space or water heating. For natural draft venting systems (i.e., Category I appliances), a high appliance thermal efficiency means proportionately lower vent gas temperatures, and therefore less buoyancy is available to exhaust the gases through the venting system. Lower vent gas temperatures can lead to an increased potential for condensate formation in the vent.

Category I fan-assisted appliances typically operate at thermal efficiencies between 80 percent and 83 percent, resulting in AFUEs greater than 78 percent. The venting tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances were generated assuming an appliance thermal efficiency of 83 percent. If all other parameters were held constant, the minimum and maximum vent capacity range, based on an efficiency of 83 percent, would be a subset of the range for lower appliance thermal efficiencies. Therefore, the venting tables generated at an 83 percent thermal efficiency are also applicable (and conservative) for Category I fan-assisted appliances with lower thermal efficiencies.

Appliance Excess Combustion Air

Appliance excess combustion air is another parameter that has a strong influence on venting. The excess combustion air level directly affects the quantity of vent gas to be vented; in turn, the maximum capacity of the vent is affected. At the same time, the amount of excess air also changes the dew point of the vent gas, influencing the amount of condensate formation in the vent and the minimum capacity of the vent.

Category I fan-assisted appliances typically operate with excess combustion air levels between 30 percent and 65 percent (9 percent to 7 percent CO_2). The venting tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances were generated assuming 65 percent excess combustion air (7 percent CO_2 level). If all other parameters are held constant, then a decrease in the excess combustion air generally will result in an increase in the minimum vent capacities and a decrease in the maximum vent capacities.

Appliance Cycle Times

For space-conditioning equipment, appliance cycle times depend on the thermostat characteristics and setting, the outdoor temperature, the building heat loss characteristics, and the oversizing factor used at design load to determine the appliance input rating. Fortunately, the U.S. Department of Energy has done extensive research on typical appliance cycle times as part of their methodology for determining AFUEs of furnaces. The selection of cycle times that resulted in the revised venting tables relies heavily on the results of the Department of Energy's analyses.

The generic, Category I fan-assisted appliance used to generate the venting tables was assumed to be installed in a typical Midwestern residence with an average outdoor temperature during the heating season of 42°F (5.6°C). Under these circumstances, the appliance cycles on for 3.87 minutes and off for 13.3 minutes in accordance with the Department of Energy AFUE test.

Table S1.2 lists, as a function of time, the flue gas temperatures exiting the Category I fan-assisted appliance that were used to generate the venting tables. These temperatures are based on typical heat-up and cool-down response times for a Category I fan-assisted appliance with a thermal efficiency of 83 percent and an excess combustion air level of 65 percent (7 percent CO_2).

During the off cycle, the flow rate of air entering the vent system was calculated by assuming that the appliance had an off-cycle pressure loss coefficient of 30. The off-cycle pressure loss coefficient is the number of velocity heads (½ prv^2) of pressure that is lost between the appliance air intake and the appliance flue gas exit. A value of 30 was found to be representative of appliances with fan-assisted combustion systems as measured in the laboratory.

TABLE S1.2 Category I Fan-Assisted Appliance Outlet Temperatures Used to Generate Venting Tables

	Fan-Assisted Appliances (83% Eff., 7% CO_2)	
Time (min:sec)	*(°F)*	*(°C)*
00:00	131.8	55.4
0:23	181.6	83.1
0:46	215.4	101.9
1:10	238.0	114.4
1:33	254.0	123.3
1:56	264.6	129.2
2:19	271.8	133.2
2:43	276.7	135.9
3:06	280.0	137.8
3:29	282.2	139.0
3:52	283.8	139.9
4:46	244.4	118.0
5:38	215.1	101.7
6:32	193.4	89.7
7:25	177.1	80.6
8:18	165.1	73.9
9:11	156.1	68.9
10:05	149.4	65.2
10:58	144.5	62.5
11:51	140.8	60.4
12:44	138.0	58.9
13:37	136.0	57.8
14:31	134.4	56.9
15:24	133.3	56.3
16:17	132.5	55.8
17:15	131.8	55.4

Gas Appliance Fuel Type

The four different fuel gases used in gas appliances in the United States were evaluated with respect to the products of combustion and the effect on venting performance. The four fuels and the reason for their inclusion in the comparison are as follows:

1. *Natural gas*. The fuel assumed by VENT-II, Version 4.1, and used to develop the masonry chimney venting tables. The specific composition of natural gas (see Table S1.3) is derived from the *ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook* and has an equivalent Btu content of 1032 Btu/ft^3 (38 kJ/m^3) of gas.
2. *Methane*. The fuel assumed by VENT-II prior to Version 4.1. (Natural gas is almost entirely methane.)
3. *Propane*. A fuel used as a substitute for natural gas.
4. *Butane*. A fuel used in the past in southern climates as a substitute for natural gas.

TABLE S1.3 Natural Gas Composition (Mole Percentages) Used in VENT-II, Version 4.1

Component	*Mole Percent*
N_2 nitrogen	0.362
CO_2 carbon dioxide	0.599
CH_4 methane	96.324
C_2H_6 ethane	2.061
C_3H_8 propane	0.367
C_4H_{10} isobutane	0.150
C_5H_{12} isopentane	0.056
C_6H_{14} n-hexane	0.081
Higher heating value, Btu/lb	23,207
Higher heating value, Btu/SCF	1,032
Specific gravity	0.5807

The important factors that affect venting performance with respect to the venting tables are the total amount of vent gas generated, the temperature of the vent gas, and the amount of moisture in the vent gas. The total volume and temperature of vent gas generated by an appliance per Btu/hr of energy are determining factors in calculating the maximum capacity of an appliance that is connected to a specified vent system. The amount of moisture in the vent gas affects the vent gas dew point and, in turn, the minimum capacity of a fan-assisted appliance.

Table S1.4 shows a comparison of the products of the stoichiometric combustion of the four gases, as derived from the *Gas Engineers Handbook* (Segeler, 1965). Note that the volume of combustion products per kBtu fuel values in Table S1.4 are all within 1 percent of the value for natural gas. Also, note that the water vapor concentration in the combustion products is significantly less for both propane and butane than for natural gas, resulting in lower dew points in these fuels.

Although specific appliance designs will vary, certain conditions must be taken into consideration when characterizing the field conversion of an appliance from natural gas to propane. These conditions are the 1 percent to 2 percent increase in carbon dioxide that is measured at the appliance outlet and a slight increase in the efficiency of the appliance. Therefore, an appliance that operates at 65 percent excess air (7 percent CO_2) with natural gas can be expected to operate at approximately 48 percent excess air (9 percent CO_2) when converted to propane.

Table S1.5 outlines the change in vent gas based on the conversion from natural gas to propane. Note that the total volume of vent gas for propane and butane is less than the volume for natural gas. From laboratory test data of an appliance converted from natural gas to propane, an increase

TABLE S1.4 Products of Stoichiometric Combustion of Four Different Gaseous Fuels

Property	*Units*	*Methane* CH_4	*Propane* C_3H_8	*Butane* C_4H_{10}	*Natural Gas* $C_{1.04}H_{3.88}$
Combustion products from stoichiometric combustion					
Volume of combustion product per kBtu	$\left[\frac{\text{ft}^3 \text{ comb. product}}{\text{kBtu fuel}}\right]$	10.4	10.2	10.2	10.3
Water vapor concentration	$\left[\frac{\text{ft}^3\ H_2O \text{ vapor}}{\text{ft}^3 \text{ comb. product}}\right]$	0.190	0.155	0.149	0.184
Flue gas dew point	°F (°C)	139 (59.4)	131 (55.0)	129 (53.9)	138 (58.9)
Stoichiometric combustion parameters					
Combustion air required	$\left[\frac{\text{ft}^3 \text{ air}}{\text{ft}^3 \text{ fuel}}\right]$	9.53	23.82	30.97	9.6
Ultimate CO_2	(%)	11.73	13.75	14.05	12.1
Nitrogen in combustion products	$\left[\frac{\text{ft}^3\ N_2}{\text{ft}^3 \text{ fuel}}\right]$	7.53	18.82	24.47	7.58
Carbon dioxide in combustion products	$\left[\frac{\text{ft}^3\ CO_2}{\text{ft}^3 \text{ fuel}}\right]$	1.0	3.0	4.0	1.04
Water vapor in combustion products	$\left[\frac{\text{ft}^3\ H_2O \text{ vapor}}{\text{ft}^3 \text{ gas}}\right]$	2.0	4.0	5.0	1.94
Total combustion gas volume	$\left[\frac{\text{ft}^3 \text{ comb. product}}{\text{ft}^3 \text{ fuel}}\right]$	10.53	25.82	33.47	10.56
Energy content	$\left[\frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{ft}^3 \text{ fuel}}\right]$	1012	2524	3266	1030

TABLE S1.5 Rule-of-Thumb Vent Gas Comparison

Parameter	*Units*	*Propane*	*Butane*	*Natural Gas*
Carbon dioxide in vent gas	%	9.0	9.0	7.0
Flue product per Btu	$\left[\frac{ft^3 \text{ vent gas}}{kBtu}\right]$	14.79	15.11	16.28
Water vapor concentration	$\left[\frac{ft^3 \; H_2O \text{ vapor}}{ft^3 \text{ vent gas}}\right]$	0.1071	0.1011	0.1202
Vent gas dew point	°F	117.4	115.4	121.5

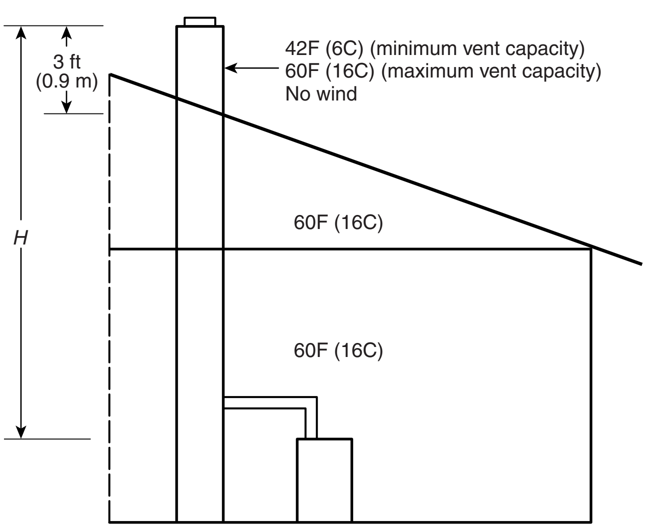
in the vent gas temperature was observed when burning propane. Also, note that the dew point of the vent gas is lower with both propane and butane than with natural gas. Therefore, based on the stoichiometric data presented in Table S1.4 and the example comparison in Table S1.5, the revised venting tables are considered appropriate, without modification, for propane-fired and butane-fired appliances.

Ambient Conditions — Type B Vents and Interior Masonry Chimneys

In generating the venting tables for Type B vents and interior masonry chimneys, only interior venting configurations were considered, as shown in Exhibit S1.6. By definition, interior venting configurations are those that are not exposed to outdoor temperatures below the roofline. Above the roofline, only 3 ft (1 m) of vent or chimney is assumed to be exposed to outdoor temperatures.

Minimum vent capacities were calculated by assuming a 42°F (5.6°C) outdoor temperature and a 60°F (16°C) indoor temperature. Maximum vent capacities were calculated by assuming both the indoor and outdoor temperatures were 60°F (16°C). In both cases, zero house depressurization and no wind were assumed.

EXHIBIT S1.6



Ambient Conditions Assumed for Generating Venting Tables for Type B Vents and Interior Masonry Chimneys. (Courtesy of Gas Technology Institute)

Maximum Vent Capacities

For Category I fan-assisted appliances, the maximum vent capacity was calculated by VENT-II, Version 4.1, at the appliance input rating that results in a zero static vent pressure 1 ft (0.3 m) from the appliance outlet and 1 minute after the start of the third appliance cycle. These criteria were selected because Category I appliance vent systems are not designed to operate under positive static pressures. However, when the appliance burner first ignites, the vent system undergoes a pressure spike until the vent primes (i.e., becomes filled with warm vent gases). Therefore, a time of 1 minute into the third burner cycle was selected to allow the vent to prime. Additional checks were put into place to ensure that, when fan-assisted appliances are common vented with a draft hood appliance, spillage of vent gas due to vent priming will remain below 1.5 percent of the total vent gas. The Type B double-wall venting tables that were generated using earlier versions of VENT-II (prior to Version 4.1) used a slightly different location and time for determining the maximum vent capacity that corresponded to a zero static pressure. However, essentially the same maximum capacities will be calculated if these criteria are used for Type B double-wall vent systems using VENT-II, Version 4.1.

Maximum vent capacities are relatively insensitive to which appliance cycle is chosen, because gas temperatures in the vent tend to stay approximately the same from one cycle to the next. Therefore, the third appliance cycle was chosen for calculating maximum vent capacities for both Type B double-wall vent systems and masonry chimneys.

Minimum Vent Capacities

The minimum vent capacities of Category I fan-assisted appliances assume that the vent materials do not exceed the specified wet-time limits. If these wet-time limits are exceeded, a high potential exists for the vent materials to experience excessive corrosion (in the case of metal vents) or for water damage to occur in surrounding structures (in the case of masonry chimneys).

For metal vent systems, the wet-time limits are based on conventional vent conditions that have existed for many years, as well as on the existing data available for the corrosion of condensing heat exchanger materials in the presence of vent gases. For vent connectors made of galvanized steel, aluminum, Type B vent, or 300 series stainless steels, the wet-time limits are set so that these materials can dry out within 3.8 minutes from the start of the third appliance cycle. For vertical Type B double-wall vents, the wet-time limits are set so that these materials can dry out within 12 minutes from the start of the third appliance cycle. The wet-time limits for vent connectors are lower than the wet-time limits for vertical vents, because the vent connectors usually experience a higher concentration of corrosive contaminants (e.g., chlorides, nitrates, sulfates, and fluorides) in the vent gases. By the time the vent gases enter the vertical vent, many of the corrosive contaminants have already been removed from the gas as it passed through the vent connector. Therefore, the vertical vent can accommodate a longer wet time without necessarily experiencing excessive corrosion. In all cases, if the minimum vent capacity exceeds the maximum vent capacity, the specific vent configuration is not allowed (NA) for use with Category I fan-assisted appliances.

Masonry Chimneys

For vent systems employing masonry chimneys, wet-time limits cannot be set based on the materials' degradation, because of the lack of data available to make this determination. Therefore, the assumption was made that the increased wetness associated with Category I fan-assisted appliances did *not* increase the rate of degradation of the materials used to construct masonry chimneys. This assumption was confirmed through a series of spray chamber tests using masonry chimney material specimens exposed to synthetic vent gas condensate.

The criterion used to determine the adequacy of masonry chimneys is whether or not the chimney is wet continuously for long periods of time. Masonry chimneys built in accordance with NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*, are not watertight and are not required to have condensate drains. Clay tile liners are porous, and mortar joints between clay tile liners can crack, which can allow moisture and condensate to migrate into surrounding structures, causing water damage. A homeowner will notice this problem when plaster walls adjacent to the chimney become wet and discolored or when paint or wallpaper starts to peel. Condensate can also collect in the bottom of the chimney and seep out, potentially causing water damage to the floor or furnishings in the vicinity. All of these possibilities point to the need for venting guidelines that will limit the amount of condensate formation in existing masonry chimneys when Category I fan-assisted appliances are employed.

Interior Masonry Chimneys

For interior masonry chimneys, the wet-time limit is checked at the maximum vent capacity and at the maximum liner size. In the VENT-II simulation, the 3 ft (1 m) of chimney that extends through the roof is assumed to be exposed to a 42°F (5.6°C) ambient temperature. The remainder of the chimney is assumed to be located in the interior of the house and exposed to a 60°F (16°C) ambient temperature. The VENT-II simulation begins by allowing the Category I fan-assisted appliance to operate continuously at its input rating for 1 hour to heat up the chimney, followed by an off cycle lasting 13 minutes. Next, the appliance is allowed to cycle ON and OFF (according to the criteria stated earlier in this supplement) for 42 cycles (approximately 12 hours). At the end of this time period, if the clay tile in the chimney is still wet, the table entry is NA (not allowed). If the clay tile has dried out at the end of this time period, then the minimum vent capacity is determined based on the wet-time limit of the vent connector material.

Exterior Masonry Chimneys

The maximum capacity of an exterior chimney is identical to the maximum capacity of an interior chimney of the same dimensions. However, because exterior masonry chimneys are exposed to the outdoor environment over their entire length, the impact of climate on the potential for excessive condensation is greater than the impact of climate for interior chimneys. Therefore, the tables for exterior chimneys are indexed by outdoor temperature range, becoming increasingly restrictive with increasingly colder climates.

Explicit minimum capacities, based on the chimney dimensions and the climate, are listed for exterior masonry chimneys. These minimum capacities were determined from VENT-II analysis, assuming that the chimney was al-lowed to be continuously wet for up to 1000 hours during a single heating season and was used to vent an appliance operating at a steady-state thermal efficiency of 83 percent.

The appliance efficiency is the most critical parameter affecting exterior masonry chimney performance. GRI research shows that when the appliance efficiency is about 80.5 percent rather than 83 percent, the guidelines for exterior masonry chimneys can be relaxed significantly. Use

Table 13.1(f) or Tables 13.2(e) through 13.2(h) from Chapter 13 unless the installation instructions provide an alternate method.

SINGLE-APPLIANCE VENTING TABLES

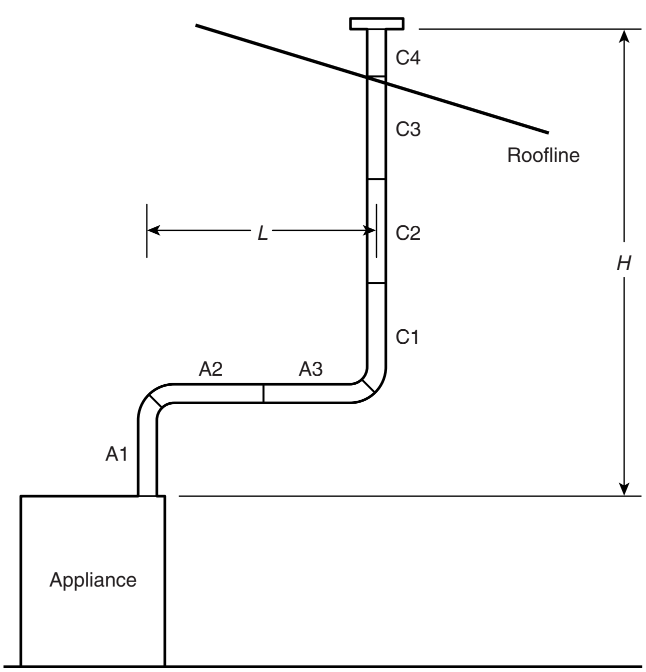
Single-appliance venting tables apply when only one appliance is connected to the vent system. This section de-scribes the rationale used to develop single-appliance venting tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances. Four separate venting tables have been generated that cover the use of either single-wall metal vent connectors or Type B double-wall metal vent connectors with either Type B double-wall metal vertical vents or masonry chimneys.

Vent Configuration for Single-Appliance Vents

For single-appliance vents, as shown in Exhibit S1.7, the basic configurations for interior vents have been modeled using VENT-II. The following guidelines have been used to model the venting systems:

1. Section A1 is 1 ft (0.3 m) in vertical height.
2. The total lateral length (*L*) is split evenly between Sections A2 and A3.
3. Section C4 is 3 ft (0.9 m) in vertical height.
4. The remaining vertical height [the total height less 4 ft (1.2 m)] is split evenly among Sections C1, C2, and C3.

EXHIBIT S1.7



VENT-II Configuration for Single-Appliance Venting Tables. (Courtesy of Gas Technology Institute)

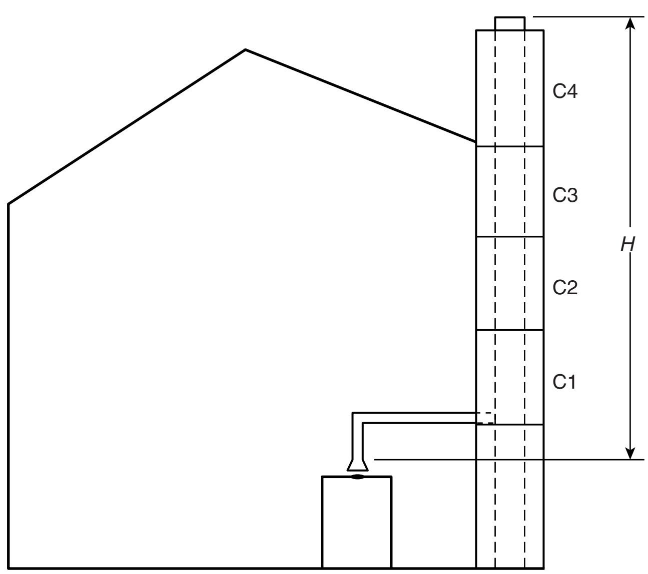
The A sections are used to designate the vent connector. These sections are modeled as either single-wall metal vent or Type B double-wall metal vent. All A sections are assumed to be exposed to a 60°F (16°C) indoor ambient temperature.

The C sections are used to designate the vertical vent. These sections are modeled as either Type B double-wall metal vent or as a tile-lined masonry chimney meeting NFPA 211 design requirements. The last vertical section extending through the roofline, C4, is assumed to be exposed to the outdoor air temperature, which is 42°F (5.6°C) when minimum vent capacities are calculated and 60°F (16°C) when maximum vent capacities are calculated. All other C sections (C1, C2, and C3) are assumed to be exposed to a 60°F (16°C) indoor ambient temperature.

For exterior chimneys, as shown in Exhibit S1.8, Sections C1, C2, and C3 are exposed on three sides to the outdoor air temperature while Section C4 is exposed on all sides. For exterior chimneys, calculations were made at a range of outdoor air temperatures corresponding to the major climates of the United States. (See Figure F.2.4 of the code.)

Although the exterior chimney calculations assumed three sides of the chimney were exposed, the potential for excessive condensation can exist even if only one side is exposed. The presence of any surface at a temperature below the dew point of the flue gases creates the potential for condensate formation. Therefore, the definition of an exterior

EXHIBIT S1.8



VENT-II Configuration for Exterior Masonry Chimney Venting Tables. (Courtesy of Gas Technology Institute) chimney encompasses any chimney with one or more sides exposed to the outdoors below the roofline.

Format of Single-Appliance Venting Tables

Venting tables for Category I draft hood appliances have been in place for many editions of the code and have withstood the test of time. These tables should be retained for venting conventional draft hood appliances. For easy understanding, the format for the venting tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances was chosen deliberately so that they resemble the format of the tables in editions of the code prior to 1992. At the suggestion of the Gas Research Institute's Technical Advisory Group, the venting tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances and Category I draft hood appliances were merged. However, the table entries for draft hood appliances were not changed from the existing code tables except where interpolation or extrapolation was required for consistency.

The following is an explanation of the terms and abbreviations used in the single-appliance venting tables:

Fan-Assisted Combustion System. An appliance equipped with an integral, mechanical means to either draw or force products of combustion through the combustion chamber and heat exchangers.

FAN Min. The minimum input rating of a Category I appliance with a fan-assisted combustion system that could be attached to the vent.

FAN Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I appliance with a fan-assisted combustion system that could be attached to the vent.

NAT Max. The maximum input rating of a Category I appliance equipped with a draft hood that could be attached to the vent. There are no minimum appliance input ratings for draft hood–equipped appliances.

NA. Vent configuration is not allowed due to potential for condensate formation or pressurization of the venting system, or not applicable due to physical or geometric restraints.

*** (following number).** Indicates potential for continuous condensation.

In Annex F of the code, Figure F.1(a) shows the configuration used to generate the venting table [Table 13.1(a)] when the entire vent system is composed of Type B double-wall metal vent. Figure F.1(b) shows the configuration used to generate the venting table [Table 13.1(b)] for Type B double-wall metal vents that are used with single-wall metal vent connectors. Figure F.1(c) shows the configuration used to generate the venting tables [Table 13.1(c) and Table 13.1(f)] for masonry chimneys that are used with Type B double-wall metal connectors. Figure F.1(d) shows the configuration used to generate the venting table [Table 13.1(d)] for masonry chimneys that are used with single-wall metal vent connectors.

In all of these tables, the NAT Max values were derived directly from the tables for draft hood appliances in editions of the code prior to 1992. The FAN Min and FAN Max values for fan-assisted Category I appliances were derived using the VENT-II computer program with the criteria described earlier in the Baseline Conditions for Category I Fan-Assisted Appliance Venting Tables section. In Table 13.1(a) and Table 13.1(b), single-appliance venting configurations with zero lateral lengths are assumed to have no elbows in the vent system. For vent configurations with lateral lengths, the venting tables include allowance for two 90-degree turns. For each additional turn up to and including 45 degrees, the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables should be reduced by 5 percent. For each additional turn greater than 45 degrees up to and including 90 degrees, the maximum capacity listed in the venting tables should be reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum table capacity). Two 45-degree turns are equivalent to one 90-degree turn.

Sea level input ratings should be used when determining maximum capacity for high-altitude installations. Actual input (derated for altitude) should be used to determine the minimum capacity for high-altitude installations. For appliances with more than one input firing rate, the minimum vent capacity that is determined from the tables should be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent capacity that is determined from the tables should be greater than the highest appliance input rating.

In generating the masonry chimney venting tables, the minimum flow area of the chimney was assumed to be one size equivalent round larger than the vent connector flow area. The vent connector flow area was assumed to be equal to the appliance vent outlet flow area. The maximum vent capacities for fan-assisted appliances were calculated based on the minimum chimney flow area. This assumption was also used in the existing code table entries for draft hood appliances. For either Type B double-wall vertical vents or masonry chimneys, the vent flow area was assumed to be less than or equal to seven times the appliance outlet flow area.

For a single appliance venting into an exterior masonry chimney, the code specifies the following criteria:

1. The appliance must be draft hood equipped.
2. The vent connector must be Type B double-wall.
3. The vent connector length must be less than 1½ ft per inch of vent connector diameter.
4. The appliance maximum input rate must be less than the rate listed in Table 13.1(c).
5. If the appliance is used for space heating, then its input rate must be greater than the rate listed in Table 13.1(f).

If the appliance is not used for space heating, then consult the appliance manufacturer, local gas supplier, or authority having jurisdiction. Table 13.1(f) lists space-heating appliance minimum input rates for exterior masonry chimneys for six climates (i.e., winter design temperatures).

COMMON VENTING TABLES FOR TWO APPLIANCES

Common venting tables apply when two appliances are connected to the same vent. This section describes the rationale used to develop common venting tables for Category I appliances. Venting tables have been generated that cover the use of either single-wall metal vent connectors or Type B double-wall vent connectors with either Type B double-wall metal vertical vents or masonry chimneys (interior and exterior).

Vent Size Combinations for Common Venting Tables

The common vent tables were generated assuming specific size combinations for the vent connectors on each appliance and for the common vent. For a Type B double-wall common vent, Table S1.6 lists the size combinations assumed for the vent connectors for each appliance and for the common vent. For a masonry chimney, Table S1.7 lists the size combinations used to generate common vent capacities, and Table S1.8 lists the size combinations used to generate vent connector capacities.

TABLE S1.6 Size Combinations of Type B Vent Used to Generate Common Venting Tables

Appliance 1 Vent Connector Diameter		*Appliance 2 Vent Connector Diameter*		*Type B Combined Vent Diameter*	
in.	*mm*	*in.*	*mm*	*in.*	*mm*
3	80	3	80	4	100
3	80	4	100	5	130
3	80	5	130	6	150
4	100	7	178	8	200
5	130	8	200	9	230
5	130	9	230	10	250
6	150	10	250	12	310
7	180	12	310	14	360
8	200	14	360	16	410
9	230	16	410	18	457
10	250	18	460	20	510
11	280	20	510	22	560
12	310	22	566	24	610
14	360	26	660	28	710
16	410	30	760	32	810
18	450	32	810	36	910
20	510	36	910	40	1020
22	560	40	1010	44	1120
24	610	44	1020	48	1220

Format of Common Venting Tables

The common venting tables for fan-assisted appliances were combined with the common venting tables for draft hood appliances and put in the same format as the tables in editions of the *National Fuel Gas Code* prior to 1992. The table entries for draft hood appliances were not changed from the pre-1992 edition code tables, except where interpolation or extrapolation was required for consistency.

The following is an explanation of additional terms and abbreviations (see Chapter 3) used in the common venting tables:

FAN+FAN. The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I fan-assisted appliances that are attached to a common vent.

FAN+NAT. The maximum combined appliance input rating of one or more Category I fan-assisted appliances and one or more Category I draft hood–equipped appliances that are attached to a common vent.

NAT+NAT. The maximum combined appliance input rating of two or more Category I draft hood–equipped appliances that are attached to a common vent.

NA. Vent configuration is not applicable due to physical or geometric constraints.

Figures F.1(f) and F.1(g) show the vent configuration used to generate the common venting tables for Type B double-wall vertical vents with either Type B double-wall connectors [Table 13.2(a)] or single-wall metal connectors [Table 13.2(b)]. Figures F.1(h) and F.1(i) show the vent configuration used to generate the common venting tables for masonry chimneys with either Type B double-wall connectors [Tables 13.2(c), 13.2(f), 13.2(g), or 13.2(h)] or single-wall metal connectors [Table 13.2(d)].

Vent Connector Capacity

In generating common venting tables, the vent connector capacities for each appliance were calculated by assuming that the appliance attached to the vent connector was on and that the other appliance was off the entire time. The lateral length of each vent connector was assumed to be equal to 1.5 ft per inch of connector diameter (see Table S1.9). The connector rise for appliance 1 was assumed to be equal to the value listed in the appropriate venting table, with the connector rise for appliance 2 set equal to the maximum value (either 3 ft or 6 ft) shown in the venting table for a given vent connector diameter. The maximum and minimum

TABLE S1.7 Size Combinations of Masonry Chimneys Used to Generate Common Vent Capacities in the Multiple-Appliance Venting Tables

Appliance 1 Vent Connector Diameter		*Appliance 2 Vent Connector Diameter*		*Minimum Masonry Chimney Flow Area*		*Maximum Masonry Chimney Flow Area*	
in.	*mm*	*in.*	*mm*	*in.²*	*mm²*	*in.²*	*mm²*
3	80	3	80	12	7,740	49	31,600
3	80	4	100	19	12,300	88	55,800
3	80	5	130	28	18,100	137	88,400
3.5	89	6	150	38	24,500	198	128,000
4	100	7	180	50	33,300	269	173,000
4.5	110	8	200	63	40,600	352	550,000
5	130	9	230	78	50,300	445	286,000
6	150	10	250	113	72,900	550	355,000

TABLE S1.8 Size Combinations of Masonry Chimneys Used to Generate Vent Connector Capacity in the Multiple-Appliance Venting Tables

Appliance 1 Vent Connector Diameter		*Appliance 2 Vent Connector Diameter*		*Masonry Chimney Flow Area*	
in.	*mm*	*in.*	*mm*	*in.²*	*mm²*
3	76	5	130	28	18,100
4	100	7	180	50	32,300
5	130	9	230	78	50,300
6	150	10	250	113	73,000
7	180	12	300	153	98,700
8	200	14	360	201	130,000
9	230	16	410	254	164,000
10	250	18	460	314	203,000

vent connector capacities were calculated as de-scribed earlier in this supplement.

The FAN Max column in the vent connector capacity tables refers to the maximum vent connector capacity when a Category I appliance with a fan-assisted combustion system is attached to the vent. The column labeled NAT Max refers to the maximum vent connector capacity for a draft hood–equipped appliance. The FAN Min column refers to the minimum vent connector capacity for use with fan-assisted appliances.

Common Vent Capacities

When determining common vent capacities for the tables, the size combinations assumed for the individual vent connectors affect the calculated capacities. Tables S1.6 and S1.7 list the size combinations used to generate the combined vent capacities. The connector rise for the first appliance is fixed at 1 ft, and the rise for the second appliance is fixed at 3 ft.

The common vent capacities are calculated assuming two Category I appliances are connected to the combined vent with both appliances cycling simultaneously. Only maximum capacity values are required for the common vent portion of the Type B double-wall venting tables. The FAN Min restrictions of the vent connector portion of the tables ensure that condensation in the common vent does not reach unacceptable levels.

In the venting tables, the column labeled FAN+FAN refers to the maximum combined vent capacity when two appliances with fan-assisted combustion systems are attached to the same vent. Both fan-assisted appliances are required to have zero static pressure in the first section of their respective vent connectors. The capacities of the two appliances are totaled to produce the value shown in the table.

The FAN+NAT column refers to the maximum combined vent capacity when one fan-assisted appliance and one draft hood–equipped appliance are connected to the same vent. The fan-assisted appliance is required to have

TABLE S1.9 Vent Connector Horizontal Length Used to Generate Common Venting Tables

Connector Diameter		*Maximum Connector Horizontal Length*	
in.	*mm*	*ft*	*m*
3	76	4	1.2
4	100	6	1.8
5	130	7.5	2.3
6	150	9	2.7
7	180	10.5	3.2
8	200	12	3.7
9	230	13.5	4.1
10	250	15	4.6
12	300	18	5.5
14	360	21	6.4
16	410	24	7.3
18	460	27	8.2
20	510	30	9.1
22	560	33	10.1
24	610	36	11.0

zero static pressure in the first section of its vent connector, while the draft hood–equipped appliance, which is assumed to operate at 78 percent thermal efficiency with an 8 percent CO_2 excess combustion air level, is required to have 29 percent dilution air entering through the draft hood. The capacities of the two appliances are added to produce the value shown in the table.

Finally, the column labeled NAT+NAT shows the maximum combined vent capacity when two appliances that are equipped with draft hoods are connected to the same vent. Common vent capacities for two draft hood–equipped appliances were not computed using VENT-II. Instead, the values from pre-1992 editions of the code were retained in the NAT+NAT column.

Exterior Masonry Chimneys

For two or more appliances, with common venting into an exterior masonry chimney, Tables 13.2(f), 13.2(g), 13.2(h), and 13.2(i) provide minimum and maximum appliance input rates. To use these tables for sizing an exterior masonry chimney, the vent connector must be Type B double-wall, at least one appliance must be draft hood–equipped, and at least one appliance must be used for space heating.

- Draft Hood–Equipped Appliances. Tables 13.2(f) and 13.2(g) are used when all appliances are draft hood–equipped. Table 13.2(f) provides combined appliance maximum input rates, and Table 13.2(g) provides minimum space-heating appliance input rates for five climates.
- Combination of Draft Hood–Equipped and Fan-Assisted Appliances. Tables 13.2(h) and 13.2(i) are used when at least one appliance (but not all) is fan-assisted. Table 13.2(h) provides combined maximum input rates, and Table 13.2(i) provides minimum space-heating appliance input rates for five climates.

Common Vent Connector Manifolds and Offsets

Connector manifolds in common vent systems result when the vent connectors of the appliances are combined before entering the vertical vent, as depicted in Figure F.1(k). The vertical vent may also be offset when going through the roof, as depicted in Figure F.1(l). These two cases are addressed separately in the following paragraphs. In Figures F.1(j) and F.1(l) the horizontal length is labeled L_0.

Case 1: Manifolding Vent Connectors. Based on the connector rise, the connector diameter, and the vent height, the vent connectors of both appliances are sized as for any common vent system. However, the common vent capacities listed in Table 13.2(a) through Table 13.2(d) are reduced by 10 percent to account for the additional restriction caused by the connector manifold. The horizontal length of the connector manifold should not exceed 1.5 ft per inch of common vent connector manifold diameter.

Case 2: Offsets in the Vertical Vent. Again, the vent connectors of both appliances are sized as for any common vent system. However, the common vent capacity is reduced by 20 percent for each offset. The horizontal length of the offset should not exceed 1.5 ft per inch of combined vent diameter.

Additional Guidelines for Multiple-Appliance Venting Tables

The multiple-appliance venting tables were generated by assuming a vent connector horizontal length of 1.5 ft (18 in.) (460 mm) for each inch of connector diameter, as shown in Table 13.2.2. The vent connector should be routed to the vent using the shortest possible route. Longer connectors than those listed above are permitted under the following conditions:

1. The maximum capacity (i.e., FAN Max or NAT Max) of the vent connector should be reduced 10 percent for each additional multiple of the length listed in Table 13.2.2 for Tables 13.2(a) through 13.2(e). For example, the maximum length listed in this table for a 4 in. (100 mm) connector is 6 ft (1.8 m). With a connector length greater than 6 ft (1.8 m) but not exceeding 12 ft (3.7 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 10 percent (0.90 × maximum vent connector capacity). With a connector length greater than 12 ft (3.7 m)

but not exceeding 18 ft (5.5 m), the maximum capacity must be reduced by 20 percent (0.80 × maximum vent capacity).

2. The minimum capacity (i.e., FAN Min) should be determined by referring to the corresponding single-appliance tables [Table 13.1(a) through Table 13.1(d)]. In this case, for each appliance the entire vent connector and common vent from the appliance to the vent termination should be treated as a single appliance vent — that is, as if the other appliance were not present.

When two or more appliances are connected to a vertical vent or chimney, the flow area of the largest section of vertical vent or chimney is assumed to be less than or equal to seven times the vent outlet flow area of the smallest appliance. For appliances with more than one input rate, the minimum vent connector capacity (i.e., FAN Min) determined from the tables should be less than the lowest appliance input rating, and the maximum vent connector capacity (i.e., FAN Max or NAT Max) determined from the tables should be greater than the highest appliance input rating.

Vent connectors should not be increased more than two table sizes greater than the listed appliance categorized vent diameter, flue collar diameter, or draft hood outlet diameter. Corrugated and smooth wall vent connectors for draft hood–equipped appliances should not be smaller than the listed appliance outlet diameter. Smooth wall vent connectors for fan-assisted appliances may be reduced one size in accordance with code-prescribed conditions (13.2.24).

SUMMARY

In 1987, the National Appliance Energy Conservation Act began to mandate higher minimum efficiency standards for nearly all gas appliances. Effective January 1, 1992, all fan-assisted central furnaces manufactured in the United States must have a minimum AFUE of at least 78 percent. (This percent corresponds to a steady-state thermal efficiency based on flue loss considerations of approximately 80.5 percent.) Also, the Department of Energy is evaluating minimum efficiency standards of gas-fired water heaters.

The furnace manufacturers have responded to these new regulations by developing higher-efficiency Category I gas furnaces with fan-assisted combustion systems. These new Category I furnaces have steady-state thermal efficiencies of up to 83 percent based on flue loss considerations. Revised venting guidelines and tables have been developed for these appliances because of the higher operating efficiencies and the presence of a fan-assisted combustion system.

The majority of gas appliances installed in homes prior to 1992 are draft hood–equipped models with steady-state thermal efficiencies around 75 percent. These appliances can be vented using recommendations found in the *National Fuel Gas Code*, which are also included with the tables in this report.

SUMMARY OF RESEARCH FINDINGS

Guidelines and tables found in editions of the *National Fuel Gas Code* prior to 1992 are still valid for lower-efficiency, Category I draft hood appliances and remain unchanged. The revised guidelines and tables developed herein apply only to higher-efficiency, Category I fan-assisted appliances currently being produced to meet the new minimum efficiency standards.

The VENT-II computer program has been used to develop venting guidelines and tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances with steady-state thermal efficiencies that are based on flue loss considerations of up to 83 percent. Experimental validation of the VENT-II program was performed using typical venting systems composed of Type B double-wall gas vents meeting Underwriters Laboratories Standard UL 441, *Gas Vents*, and also using an interior masonry chimney constructed to meet NFPA 211 requirements.

Venting guidelines and tables have been developed for venting either a single Category I fan-assisted appliance or for common venting Category I fan-assisted appliances with other Category I appliances. Vent systems covered by these guidelines and tables include Type B double-wall vents and interior and exterior masonry chimneys connected to Category I fan-assisted appliances by using either single-wall metal vent connectors or Type B double-wall vent connectors.

Compared with draft hood–equipped Category I appliances, Category I fan-assisted appliances have a greater potential for producing condensate in the vent system. This condensate can cause excessive corrosion in metal vent systems and water damage to surrounding structures if the condensate should leak from the vent system through joints or cracks. To limit condensate problems in vent systems with Category I fan-assisted appliances, wet-time limits have been established for various vent materials.

For a given vent size and configuration, wet-time limits are used to calculate minimum fan-assisted appliance input ratings, and vent static pressure limits are used to calculate maximum fan-assisted appliance input ratings. This information has been put into the same format as the venting guidelines and tables in previous editions of the code.

For the sake of completeness, the venting tables presented herein contain entries for sizing vents for both fan-assisted appliances and draft hood appliances. However, the table entries for draft hood appliances are identical (or interpolated) to those values in previous editions of the code. The scope of this supplement is limited to establishing venting guidelines and tables for Category I fan-assisted appliances.

REFERENCES

Agrawal, A. K., R. A. Cudnik, B. Hindin, D. W. Locklin, M. J. Murphy, J. H. Payer, R. Razgaitis, G. H. Stickford, and S. G. Talbert, "Technology Development for Corrosion-Resistant Condensing Heat Exchangers," GRI-85/0282 (NTIS No. PB86-172038), Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1985.

ANSI Z21.47, *Gas-Fired Central Furnaces (Except Direct Vent Central Furnaces)*, American Gas Association (Secretariat), 1990.

ANSI/ASHRAE 103, *Method of Testing for Annual Fuel Utilization Efficiency of Residential Central Furnaces and Boilers*, American National Standards Institute and American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 1982.

ASHRAE Equipment Handbook, "Chimney, Gas Vent, and Fireplace Systems," Chapter 26, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 1979.

ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook, "Combustion and Fuels," Chapter 15, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 1985.

ASHRAE HVAC Systems and Equipment Handbook, Chapter 30, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 2000.

Ball, D. A., and D. W. Locklin, eds., "Symposium on Condensing Heat Exchangers," Conference Proceedings, Battelle Laboratories, GRI-82/0009.3 (NTIS No. PB82-240078), Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1982.

Borgeson, R. A., D. W. DeWerth, V. Kam (A.G.A. Laboratories); and J. J. Crisafulli, A. L. Rutz, and S. G. Talbert (Battelle), "Development of Venting Guidelines for Category I Fan-Assisted Gas Appliances with Fan-Assisted Combustion Systems," GRI Venting Program, American Gas Association Laboratories, and Battelle Laboratories for Gas Research Institute, Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1992.

Connelly, S. M., and D. W. DeWerth (AGA Laboratories); and D. W. Locklin, D. D. Paul, and S. G. Talbert (Battelle), "Venting Requirements for High-Efficiency Gas-Fired Heating Equipment," American Gas Association Laboratories and Battelle Laboratories for Gas Research Institute, GRI Report No.83/0062 (NTIS No. PB84-159912), Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1983.

Crisafulli, J. J., R. D. Fischer, D. D. Paul, A. L. Rutz, S. G. Talbert, and G. R. Whitacre, "User's Manual for VENT-II (Version 3.0) with Diskette: A Dynamic Microcomputer Program for Analyzing Gas Venting Systems," GRI-88/0304, Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1988.

Crisafulli, J. J., R. D. Fischer, D. D. Paul, A. L. Rutz, S. G. Talbert, and G. R. Whitacre, "User's Manual for VENT-II (Version 4.0) with Diskette: A Dynamic Microcomputer Program for Analyzing Common Venting Systems for Two Gas Appliances," GRI-89/0094, Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1989.

Crisafulli, J. J., R. D. Fischer, D. D. Paul, A. L. Rutz, S. G. Talbert, and G. R. Whitacre, "User's Manual for VENT-II (Version 4.1) with Diskette: An Interactive Personal Computer Program for Design and Analysis of Venting Systems for One or Two Gas Appliances," GRI-90/0178 (NTIS No. PB91-509950), Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1990.

Cudnik, R. A., C. A. Farnsworth, D. W. Locklin, J. H. Payer, R. Razgaitis, G. H. Stickford, S. G. Talbert, and E. L. White, "Research on Heat-Exchanger Corrosion," Gas Research Institute for Battelle Laboratories, GRI-84/0157 (NTIS No. PB85-126316), Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1984.

NFPA 211, *Standard for Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents, and Solid Fuel–Burning Appliances*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2006 edition.

Paul, D. D., A. L. Rutz, and S. G. Talbert, "User's Manual for VENT-II: A Microcomputer Program for Designing Vent Systems for High-Efficiency Gas Appliances," Gas Research Institute Topical Report, GRI-85/0226 (NTIS No. PB86-20785), Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1985.

Paul, D. D., A. L. Rutz, and S. G. Talbert, "User's Manual for VENT-II (Version 2.0) with Diskette: A Microcomputer Program for Designing Vent Systems for Gas Appliances," GRI-88/0027, Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1988.

Philips, D. B., A. L. Rutz, S. G. Talbert, and G. R. Whitacre, "Venting Gas Appliances into Exterior Masonry Chimneys: Analysis and Recommendations," GRI-94/0193, Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1994.

Private communication with Richard Stone of Metalbestos Systems, Wallace Murray Corp., Belmont, CA, 1983.

Segeler, C. G., ed., *Gas Engineers Handbook*, 1st edition, New York: Industrial Press, 1965.

Talbert, S. G., "Evaluation of Masonry Chimney Materials for Venting Category I Gas Appliances," GRI-94/0338, Gas Research Institute, Des Plaines, IL, 1993.

UL 441, *Gas Vents*. Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 1991.

U.S. Department of Energy, Title 10, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 430, "Energy Conservation Program for Consumer Products: Final Rule Regarding Test Procedures and Energy Conservation Standards for Water Heaters," Federal Register, Part III, 55(201): 42162-42177, 1990.

U.S. Department of Energy, *National Appliance Energy Conservation Act of 1987*. Public Law 100-12, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, 1987.

U.S. Department of Energy and Brookhaven National Laboratory for Gas Research Institute, "1987 International Symposium on Condensing Heat Exchangers," Abstracts (GRI-87/0091.1) and Proceedings (GRI-87/0091.2 and /0091.3, BNL-52086), 1987.

Supplement 2

Fuel Gas Odorization

John S. Roberts, Ph.D.
Division Manager
Rimkus Consulting Group, Inc.
Houston, Texas

Editor's Note: *NFPA 54, National Fuel Gas Code, does not cover the subject of odorization of fuel gases; however, it is an important topic to many in the gas business and to users of fuel gases. Concise summaries of the history of odorization and practices are nonexistent; therefore, this supplement is provided to fill that void.*

INTRODUCTION

Fuel gases, liquefied petroleum gases (LP-Gases), and natural gas are odorized to allow a warning at 20 percent (1/5) of the lower flammable limit (LFL) of the gas being odorized in most areas of the world. For natural gas this concentration is about 1 percent gas in air (the LFL for methane is 5 percent; for natural gas, it will be somewhat less than 5), and for propane this concentration is 0.43 percent gas in air (the LFL for propane is 2.15 percent). Fuel gases have been odorized for well over 100 years, with much of the early experience being with the odorization of European coal gases. Although the odorants used have changed in this time, both types of gases (LP and natural) have used the same odorants for 50 years or more. The use of odorants in LP-Gas and natural gas has been successful in this time period. Odorization has protected lives and property by giving a warning that an otherwise odorless gas is escaping.

EARLY HISTORY OF FUEL GAS ODORIZATION

Fuel gases have been odorized since the 1880s [1]. In 1880, ethyl mercaptan was used to odorize water gas (hydrogen/carbon monoxide) using a shallow dish placed in the gas line. As this was unsatisfactory, a wick was finally used [2]. All of the original work in both Europe and the United States was directed at coal gas, as very little natural gas was being used. It should be noted that many coal gases in use in the United States and Europe contained significant amounts of carbon monoxide, which made them much more toxic than natural gas. The use of odorants as stenches for industrial purposes was suggested in 1919 by Allison and Katz [3]. Katz and Allison suggested odorants for use as warning agents for miners [4] and for use in stenching blue water gas (carbon monoxide and hydrogen) and natural gas [5]. An extensive summary of the early history of gas odorization in Europe and the United States is found in the work of Fieldner et al. [1].

In 1920, the American Gas Association (AGA) "requested the United States Bureau of Mines to make a comprehensive search for suitable substances that might be added to fuel gases . . ." [1, 6]. The Bureau of Mines study covered the following areas:

1. Warning properties: intensity, quality, and nature for suitability as a warning to conscious and sleeping persons
2. Toxic properties: danger to health in concentrations necessary for use of the unburned warning agent and its products of combustion
3. Corrosion: reaction with the distribution system, appliances, utensils, and household furnishings of the unburned warning agent and its products of combustion
4. Carrying power: ability to carry through distribution system without loss due to reaction with materials, other components of the gas, oil or water films and drips, oxidation, or polymerization
5. Cost: probable cost when considering the amount necessary to give the desired warning

The Bureau of Mines study covered a broad range of odorant candidates. Among the classes of compounds that were evaluated were hydrocarbons (mostly olefins), halogenated hydrocarbons, alcohols, mercaptans, sulfides, halogenated ethers, halogenated sulfides (mustards), aldehydes, ketones, esters, selenium compounds, and arsenic compounds. Many of these types of warning agents were ruled out on the basis that they were unsuitable due to corrosivity or toxicity.

The Bureau began testing candidate odorants by building an odorimeter for mixing the odorant candidate with the airstream to give a known concentration of odorant in the air. They also developed an intensity scale, still called the Bureau of Mines scale, which was used to measure the odor intensity. The scale ranged from 0 (no odor) to 5 (very strong), with 2 being a readily recognizable level. They also established scales for irritants (tear gas–type warning agents). They ran odorimeter tests on 57 different candidates. Sleep tests, wherein a candidate material was introduced into a room containing an observer (awake) and a subject (asleep), gave rather uneven results, due in part to the rather unnatural circumstances surrounding the tests. Irritants were found to be better at waking people.

A group of field tests was conducted at four different fuel gas companies. Ethyl mercaptan was tested at three of four companies, while crotonaldehyde was tested at only one company. One company tested nine different odorants. Interestingly, one of the odorants tested, pyridine, was described as having a "gassy" odor, which would not be true today. Pyridine was a component of many coal gases. Only one of the gas systems tested was not a coal-derived fuel gas. Ethyl mercaptan, of the compounds tested, gave the lowest concentration to give a warning effect. A final test of two towns in one gas system, where ethyl mercaptan was used to leak survey the towns, resulted in the isolation of many leaks. There were 1800 complaints regarding odor during these two town tests.

The study came to a number of conclusions, but the primary conclusion was that ethyl mercaptan was the most effective compound for causing complaints of leaks. Crotonaldehyde, an irritant, was found to be the next best compound tested. Crotonaldehyde is too toxic to be considered as an odorant candidate today.

While the Bureau of Mines was working on this study, a gas company had already instituted an odorization program [7, 8]. The product used in their program was called Cal-Odorant #3, a refinery by-product (with a 300°F boiling point range). The criteria for use as odorants, then as now, are that they be harmless and neither toxic nor nauseating, have a penetrating odor similar to the coal gas smell, be noncorrosive, be insoluble in water, be retained by the gas and not adsorbed by mains or meters, burn completely without harmful or odorous products of combustion, not set up chemical reactions, and be readily available [7].

During this same time period, the LP-Gas industry was expending significant effort to come up with a warning agent for propane. Propane, being a liquefied gas, had different requirements for a warning agent than did a gaseous fuel. Any warning agent had to vaporize from the liquid state to the gaseous state, in the presence of propane. Therefore, the effect of the warning agent concentrating in the liquid had to be taken into account. Much of the work resembled the work conducted by the Bureau of Mines, although the effect of a fractional distillation of the odorant was taken into account for each candidate odorant [9]. They concluded that ethyl mercaptan was the best choice for odorizing liquefied petroleum gases.

The explosion of the New London, Texas, high school on March 18, 1937, was the point where odorization became required in fuel gases. In this incident, 239 people lost their lives when unodorized gas from a nearby oil field was used as a fuel in the building. The day after the accident, the state of Texas proposed the first law requiring that fuel gases be odorized [10]. The requirement for odorizing propane was added to NBFU Pamphlet no. 58, the predecessor to NFPA 58, the *Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gas Code,* shortly thereafter [11].

In the period ending in the mid-1960s, the gas and gas odorant industries were developing hand-in-hand. New pipelines were beginning to move gas into the parts of the United States that did not have access to natural gas. During this time, natural gas odorants were moving from refinery by-products and ethyl mercaptan to designed products, containing primarily t-butyl mercaptan [10]. The LP-Gas industry stayed with ethyl mercaptan, moving almost completely away from thiophane. In the last 10 to 15 years, the use of thiophane in LP-Gas odorization in the United States has become nonexistent.

NATURAL GAS

Within the continental United States, natural gas is transported in pipes from the points of origin to the points of use. Natural gas transported in pipelines falls under either federal or state regulations regarding odorization. Transmission pipelines move gas from one area to another. Distribution pipelines move the gas from a receiving point (or points) to the ultimate consumer of the gas. Any transmission pipeline that moves gas between states is covered by federal regulations. It may also be covered by state regulations, if the state opts to regulate interstate pipelines. Each state has different regulations regarding odorization. Federal regulations require that gas in transmission pipelines be odorized when the population along the pipeline reaches a certain level [12]. All distribution systems (consumer systems) must be odorized. All states require that gas be detectable at 1/5 the LFL of gas in air as the minimum requirement, although some states require a lower level.

The typical odorant addition level necessary to achieve the 1/5 LFL is usually 0.5 to 1 pound of odorant per million standard cubic feet of gas. This addition level is strongly dependent on the type of odorant being used and may be different due to a multiplicity of factors. This concentration is monitored by smell testing, using an odorimeter. There are currently three different odorimeters being manufactured in the United States. An odorimeter is a mobile device that allows air and gas to be mixed, and then allows an operator to sniff the diluted gas. The gas flow is increased until the odorant is readily recognizable. The gas concentration is then determined from the flow rate of gas. This concentration is compared with regulatory and/or company requirements. There is an ASTM method [13] describing the correct procedures for using this equipment.

Natural gas, being a flowing, dynamic system, requires an odorization system that can vary with the flow rate. Over the years, a variety of odorizer systems have been utilized. It is outside the scope of this discussion to cover this area, but the AGA *Odorization Manual* [14] covers this topic.

The types of odorants used for natural gas vary significantly. Most of the odorant sold in the United States contains t-butyl mercaptan. This mercaptan has a high melting point (20.5°C) [15], so it is always mixed with other components to avoid handling difficulties. These other components have been dimethyl sulfide, thiophane, methyl ethyl sulfide, or light-mercaptan blends. Other odorant blends exist that contain either isopropyl mercaptan or thiophane as the primary odorant component.

Isopropyl mercaptan has a good vapor pressure, which makes it useful in situations where there is a significant amount of hydrocarbon liquids condensing in the gas system. This is a situation where it will help, but in the long run, it is still necessary to remove the liquids. Thiophane has been used alone, but is not nearly as effective as when it is blended with t-butyl mercaptan. There have been instances where gas systems changing from thiophane to thiophane/t-butyl mercaptan blends have been bombarded with odor complaints. Many of these complaints were leaks that had not been found previously.

LIQUEFIED PETROLEUM GAS

The odorization system for LP-Gases is different, as these fuels are distributed as liquids. Ethyl mercaptan (EM) is added to LP-Gas at a concentration of at least 1 pound per 10,000 gallons (16 ppmv) by DOT regulation [16]. NFPA 58 [17] contains a requirement that most propane be odorized, and it regulates uses of propane not covered by DOT regulations. Industry practice has been to add EM at a higher rate. Thiophane (tetrahydrothiophene or THT) had been used in certain areas of the country, but is currently not sold for odorizing propane in the United States. Ethyl mercaptan is added to trucks or rail cars as they leave refineries, gas plants, or pipeline terminals. The original system for adding the odorant to propane was to pour a container full of the odorant into the truck or the line filling the truck or rail car (this container was oftentimes a soft drink bottle). Many current systems use pumps to add EM to the propane as the truck or rail car is filled. Many of the new odorization systems are designed to shut off propane flow if there is a positive indication that the odorant is not being added.

The concentration of 1 pound per 10,000 gallons of ethyl mercaptan is higher than required. An industry-sponsored study in 1977, the so-called Bartlesville study [18], demonstrated that lower concentrations would function to warn that portion of the populace that can smell odorants. Individuals who cannot smell odorant (or anything) are termed anosmic. The number of anosmics is not well defined, but is thought to be 0.2 percent of the population [19, 20]. Although this study did not give any real clear-cut conclusions, the industry determined that 1 pound per 10,000 gallons was sufficient for the addition of EM and that THT needed to be added at 6.4 pounds per 10,000 gallons. Because THT had been added at 1 pound per 10,000 gallons and it was priced higher than EM, much of the interest in the use of this odorant disappeared.

The Bartlesville study evaluated the warning effect of ethyl mercaptan and thiophane and also evaluated the effect of temperature on the amount of odorant in the gas phase. As odorized LP-Gas is a mixture of propane [boiling point –44°F (–42°C)] and EM [boiling point 95°F (35°C)], the effect of temperature on vapor composition is quite important. A mixture of liquids with different boiling points will have a vapor composition that is different from the liquid composition. This fact is the basis of fractional distillation, wherein mixtures of different boiling points compounds are separated. This will occur in LP-Gas/odorant systems. The larger the difference in boiling point, the lower the concentration of higher boiling component in the vapor phase of the mixture. The amount of EM in the vapor of odorized propane versus the amount in the liquid propane has been measured at several temperatures [21]. A value, called a K-factor, was determined for EM and THT at three temperatures (see Table S2.1). A K-factor is defined as the concentration of the higher boiling component in the gas phase divided by the concentration of that component in the liquid phase. The K-factor will vary with temperature.

TABLE S2.1 K-Factors for Odorants in Propane [18]

Temperature		*Odorant Propane System*	
		Ethyl Mercaptan	*Thiophane*
(°C)	*(°F)*	*K-Factor*	*K-Factor*
–23	–10	0.11	0.007
0	32	0.18	0.029
35	95	0.22	0.033

As noted in Table S2.1, only 11 to 22 percent of the ethyl mercaptan in the liquid is available in the vapor. A higher boiling mercaptan (or odorant) will be present at lower concentrations in the vapor. The K-factor for thiophane indicates that only 0.7 to 3.3 percent of thiophane is available in the vapor. Thiophane has the highest vapor pressure of the compounds used as odorants. All other odorant compounds, although not used for propane, have K-factors between ethyl mercaptan and thiophane. The K-factors for several odorant components and propane have been measured [22].

In the mid-1980s, questions regarding the selection of ethyl mercaptan as the odorant for propane were brought forward by the Consumer Products Safety Commission (CPSC) [23]. The CPSC sponsored research into some of the facets of propane odorization that it felt were problem areas. They sponsored research on the adsorption of ethyl mercaptan on building materials, which showed that in a static system the ethyl mercaptan is depleted [24]. The experimental design in this study magnified the effect. In a dynamic system, the amount of odorant is being continually replaced. The static system would model filling a room with propane and then stopping the propane flow. The dynamic study modeled an ongoing gas leak and noted that the amount of odorant was not as strongly affected as observed in the static study [25].

The CPSC also funded research into the effect of propane tanks on the oxidation of ethyl mercaptan [26, 27]. They found that there was an effect. Further work by other parties indicated that although a tank will oxidize ethyl mercaptan, the odorant will not disappear as rapidly as reported in the previous studies [28]. The primary change created in the industry was that NFPA 58 was modified to require odorant verification upon product transfer. Gas detectors, another modification suggested by the CPSC, have not seen significant use in the United States. As of this writing, there is no standard on the placement and use of gas detectors, although a committee did exist for several years trying to work out the details of utilizing fuel gas detectors.

Research on the issue of propane odorization was conducted by the propane industry and reported at two special conferences (sponsored by the National Propane Gas Association, Gas Processors Association, and Propane Gas Association of Canada). This work was part of an industry-wide task force, which came to the conclusion that ethyl mercaptan was the best available odorant for LP-Gas [29].

ODORIZATION PROBLEMS

No odorant will ever be able to function to prevent 100 percent of all accidents. A gas could be perfectly odorized, and if no one is present in the area where gas is present, no warning will be given. It is also possible for an individual to have lost the sense of smell completely (anosmia) or to have a cold or some other condition involving the olfactory system. Some individuals have specific anosmia, which is the inability to smell certain substances. There are no documented cases involving gas odorants. Gas odorants can be oxidized when they come in contact with oxidizing agents, such as rust. Gas odorants can be adsorbed onto surfaces and absorbed into liquids.

Oxidation

The gas industry has recognized the problem with oxidation of mercaptan odorants by iron oxides [most particularly ferric oxides, iron (III) oxides] for a long time [30–32]. The inside of pipes and the inside of propane tankage contain rust, which has been identified as Fe_2O_3, FeOOH, Fe_3O_4, and FeO. Fe_3O_4 and FeO are not considered to be active in the oxidation of mercaptans [33, 34]. LP-Gas tank manufacturers are now requiring that tanks be filled to their maximum liquid level on the first fill to minimize oxidation in new tanks [35].

Sulfides are not oxidized under normal pipeline conditions. Of the three sulfides used in natural gas odorization, only thiophane is a component with odorization value. Dimethyl sulfide and ethyl methyl sulfide are not added at levels to have any significant impact on the odor of the gas. Experience has shown that any system using thiophane alone will discover significant gas leakage when moving to a blend of t-butyl mercaptan and thiophane.

Adsorption

Adsorption is defined as the adherence to a solid surface by a chemical compound. Any chemical with a vapor pressure will be adsorbed. Adsorption is a reversible process. Any compound that is adsorbed can be desorbed, and equilibrium between adsorbed and desorbed species can be established. This equilibrium is a function of temperature, the presence of chemical reactions occurring between the adsorbent (surface) and the adsorbate (compound adsorbed), and the concentration of the adsorbable species in the vapor space. Adsorption is the first step in any oxidation process.

When gas leaks underground, there may be an odorant loss due to adsorption and/or oxidation, assuming that there are suitable oxidants in the soil. The Bureau of Mines study [1] indicated that soil adsorption may be a difficulty in underground leaks. The only soil constituents that adsorb significant amounts of odorant are dry clays. Wet clay does not adsorb significant amounts of odorant, but all soils will become dry in the presence of a gas leak due to the extreme dryness of most fuel gases. A significant body of work on odorant loss due to soil adsorption has been published over the years [36–40]. The common odorant constituents are adsorbed on clay (montmorillonite) in the following order: t-butyl mercaptan (least), ethyl mercaptan, isopropyl mercaptan, thiophane (most). With the exception of t-butyl mercaptan, the order of adsorption is in the same order as the vapor pressure, which is the expected order for adsorption. The difference with t-butyl mercaptan is due to the nature of clay, where the size and shape of t-butyl mercaptan may exclude it from interacting with significant portions of the surface area of clay due to steric hindrance. Many types of clay have a smectite or zeolite structure, which gives a significant amount of internal surface area, which may not be accessible to a bulky compound.

Adsorption on environmental surfaces was investigated as part of the CPSC inquiry regarding propane odorization. A static study, in which odorized gas was inletted into an enclosure, showed that odorant was lost over time to the surfaces inserted into the chamber [24]. A chamber with no air exchange and only a short-term leak is not a realistic situation. If gas is inletted for only a short period of time, the air exchanges within the volume that the gas is in will bring the level of fuel gas below dangerous levels quite rapidly. Because the volume of the test chamber was quite small, when compared to normal areas in which propane leaks occur, the surface-to-volume ratio was too high. In other words, the distance to an adsorbing surface is much higher in a basement than in the test chambers. A second study, in which the odorized gas was continually inletted into a space, showed a lower loss of odor, as odorant that was lost to adsorption was being replaced [25]. The building materials that were studied were unpainted masonry, painted masonry, poured concrete, and painted drywall. The odorant was adsorbed most rapidly in the case of unpainted masonry and decreased in the above order. The author made no attempt to define the relative surface areas of these test specimens.

Absorption

Absorption is an effect that is important only in natural gas systems [41, 42]. In natural gas systems, there have been occasions when significant quantities of higher molecular-weight hydrocarbons have condensed out in the pipeline system, creating “puddles.” These “puddles” gather at low points in the system and act as a scrubber for the gas. The odorant in the gas will be absorbed by the liquid, significantly reducing the amount of odor in the gas phase. When the line dries out, the odorant will also evaporate, creating an overodorized system. Liquids in the pipeline are generally encountered in gas-producing areas, although historic, anecdotal evidence indicates that these problems can occur in gas that has been transported for significant distances. The presence of liquids in lines in gas transmission systems has not occurred for decades. Pipeline gas quality requirements and the availability of markets for natural gas liquids has eliminated this as a concern outside of gas producing areas.

Olfactory Fatigue or Adaptation

Olfactory fatigue or adaptation is another problem with any and all odorants. After a period of time, the human olfactory system saturates with an odor and one stops detecting the odor. Adaptation is discussed at length in the olfactory literature [43, 44], but has not been specifically addressed in any studies in the fuel gas industry. A classic example of this phenomenon is a visit to a house with an unfamiliar background odor. After a short period of time, the odor is forgotten. If one steps outside and refreshes one’s nose, the odor will again be readily detectable. In other words, for any odorant-type warning agent, the warning must be heeded early.

Anosmia

Anosmia, the lack of a sense of smell, is a condition that affects a small percentage (0.2 percent) [19, 20] of the population. Odorants cannot protect someone who cannot smell them. The use of scratch-and-sniff brochures or familiarizing a customer with the smell of gas through a stove burner should help to find those individuals who might not be warned. There are gas detectors available for these individuals. Age is also a factor in being able to detect odors. Cain [45, 46] noted that an elderly population required ten times higher concentration to detect the presence of ethyl mercaptan. Amoore estimated that up to 2 percent of the population may not be able to be warned by an odor-borne warning [19].

Specific anosmia is a condition where one has a normal sense of smell, except there are certain compounds that one cannot smell. This is a condition that Amoore [47] was attempting to use to find the “primary odors,” in an analogy to the light receptors in the eye, in which different types of receptors are used for certain colors. He had an extensive listing of compounds for which there is some report of specific anosmia [48]. There is some credible evidence for several different compounds, such as androstenone (sweaty, urinous odor) and isovaleric acid (goaty odor). The evidence for mercaptans and sulfides is minimal, with the only actual study showing only 0.1 percent of a test population being unable to detect n-butyl mercaptan [20]. The data in Amoore's reference for t-butyl mercaptan [49] do not demonstrate this effect. The report on thiophane is a verbal account of one individual who was unable to detect thiophane in natural gas. Interestingly, Wysocki et al. [50] have reported that the ability to smell androstenone can be acquired by those who were unable to detect it. A review of the literature for specific anosmia has been compiled [51].

Colds, Allergies, Smoking, and Alcohol

Conditions such as colds or allergies can also have a negative effect on the ability to smell. Although these effects are not considered to be an instance of anosmia, they do have the effect of reducing the ability to detect odors. The effect of drinking on olfactory senses has noted that there is little or no effect [52], although this study did not take into account the effect of alcohol on behavior. The effect of smoking has been noted to decrease sensitivity to odors [53], but there have been reports of no loss of sensitivity to ethyl mercaptan [54].

ODORANT SAMPLING AND ANALYSIS

The analysis and sampling of odorants can be performed in several fashions. Natural gas can be sampled by length-of-stain tube (stain tube), odorimeter, or gas chromatography. Stain tubes exist for most active odorant components [55]. The method for stain tube analysis for LP-Gas is covered by the ASTM [56] or the Canadian General Standards Board (CGSB) [57]. The ASTM method is for the vapor and requires that the temperature of the LP-Gas be known in order to calculate the liquid concentration. The CGSB method is a direct measurement of the liquid concentration. The accuracy of length-of-stain tube measurements can be a problem. Low values should be verified with a laboratory analysis. Natural gas odorant analysis by stain tubes is also covered by the ASTM [58].

Gas chromatographic analysis for odorants is covered by multiple ASTM standards, dependent upon the type of chromatographic detector available (flame photometric, sulfur chemiluminescence, or atomic emission) [59–61]. There is no standard for sampling natural gas for odorant concentration. Tedlar® bags [62], silicosteel cylinders [63], or Teflon-lined stainless steel cylinders [64] appear to give the best results. The cylinders should be DOT compliant. Many laboratories have the proper sample cylinders available. There is an ASTM standard for sampling LP-Gas [65].

Odorimeters are instruments that mix a set volume of air with a varying concentration of gas. At the point that the odor of gas becomes recognizable, the concentration of gas in air can be determined, either by graph or by the instrument itself. The odorimeters currently available range from fairly simple to sophisticated. Odorimeters normally require calibration annually, and they must be calibrated for the type of gas being measured.

It should be noted that odorimeters do not measure the concentration of odorant in the gas; they measure the concentration that gas can be detected in air. This concentration is then compared to the pertinent regulations for detectability of the gas.

SUMMARY

Fuel gases have been odorized throughout the world since the 1800s. The use of a fuel gas odorant was mandated in the United States following a tragic incident in Texas where an occupied high school suffered an explosion of unodorized natural gas. The use of odorants does not give a perfect warning system, but fuel gas odorization has proved effective for the identification of countless leaks within gas systems since its inception. Odorants provide warning to those with a sense of smell. Most everyone has a sense of smell most of the time, but it can be temporarily lost during an illness. Some people have a reduced or no sense of smell, and other means of warning of gas leaks should be considered for them.

REFERENCES

1. Fieldner, A. C., R. R. Sayers, W. P. Yant, S. H. Katz, J. B. Shohan, and R. D. Leitch, "Warning Agents for Fuel Gases," U.S. Bureau of Mines, Monograph 4, 1931.

2. Reitmeyer, K., *J. Gasbeleucbtung und Wasserversorgung*, **50** (318), 1907.

3. Allison, V. C., and S. H. Katz, "An investigation of stenches and odors for industrial purposes," *Ind. Eng. Chem.* **11** (336), 1919.

4. Katz, S. H., V. C. Allison, and W. L. Egy, U.S. Bureau of Mines Technical Paper 244, 1920.

5. Katz, S. H., and V. C. Allison, U.S. Bureau of Mines Technical Paper 267, 1920.

6. Katz, S. H., and E. J. Talbert, "Intensities of Odors and Irritating Effects of Warning Agents for Inflammable and Poisonous Gases," U.S. Bureau of Mines Technical Paper 480, 1931.

7. Holtz, Lee, "The Odorization of Natural Gas," *Gas Age-Record*, **66** (10), 341, 9/6/30.

8. Anon., "Odorization of Natural Gas," *Gas Age-Record*, **508**, 4/12/30.

9. Phillips Petroleum Memos.

10. Roberson, Seth, "History of Gas Odorization," *Odorization III*, G. G. Wilson and A. A. Attari, editors, 1, IGT, Chicago, 1993.

11. NBFU Pamphlet No. 58, "The Design, Installation and Construction of Containers and Pertinent Equipment for the Storage and Handling of Liquefied Petroleum Gases," page 3, July, 1937.

12. Code of Federal Regulations, 49 CFR 192.625.

13. ASTM D-6273-08, *Standard Test Methods for Natural Gas Odor Intensity*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2008.

14. American Gas Association, *Odorization Manual*, 2000.

15. Whidholz, Martha, *The Merck Index*, 10th Edition, Merck & Co, Inc., 218, Rahway, NJ, 1983.

16. Code of Federal Regulations, 49 CFR 173.315(b)(1).

17. NFPA 58, *Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code*, NFPA, Quincy, MA, 2011.

18. Whisman, M. L., J. W. Goetzinger, F. O. Cotton, D. W. Brinkman, and C. J. Thompson, "A New Look at Odorization Levels for Propane Gas," USERDA Document, BERC/R1-77/1, 1977.

19. Amoore, J. E., "Odor blindness as a problem in odorization," American Gas Association Operating Section Proceedings, Distribution Conference, pp. 242–247, 1968.

20. Patterson, P. M., and B. A. Lauder, "The incidence and probable inheritance of 'smell blindness' to normal butyl mercaptan," *J. Heredity* **39**, pp. 295–297, 1948.

21. Hankinson, R. W. and Grant W. Wilson, "Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium Data for Ethyl Mercaptan in Propane Vapors," Proceedings of the 53rd Annual Convention, 98–100, Gas Processors Association, 1974.

22. Ng, Heng-Joo, and Donald B. Robinson, "Vapor Liquid Equilibrium in Propane-Odorant Systems," Research Report RR-113, GPA/NPGA Project 876, 1989.

23. Switzer, Donald W., "CPSC Fuel Gas Study," Proceedings of the Symposium on LP-Gas Odorization, Dallas, Texas, 1989.

24. Beltis, Kevin J., and Daniel J. Ehntholt, "Characterization of LP-Gas Odorant Fade," Proceedings of the Symposium on LP-Gas Odorization, Dallas, Texas, 1989.

25. Kuhlman, Michael R., "LP-Gas Odorant Stability under Simulated Residential Conditions," Proceedings of the Symposium on LP-Gas Odorization, Dallas, Texas, 1990.

26. Marshall, M. D., and C. A. Palladino, "Ethyl Mercaptan Stability after Refill of New and Air-Exposed Used LP-Gas Storage Tanks," Proceedings of the Symposium on LP-Gas Odorization, Dallas, Texas, 1990.

27. Marshall, M. D., and C. A. Palladino, "Field Testing for Ethyl Mercaptan in LP-Gas Storage Tanks in Four Marketing Areas," Proceedings of the Symposium on LP-Gas Odorization, Dallas, Texas, 1990.

28. Johnson, S. J., "Ethyl Mercaptan Odorant Stability in Stored Liquid Propane," Proceedings of the Symposium on LP-Gas Odorization, Dallas, Texas, 1989.

29. Report of Investigations Odorization of LP Gas, October 1991, available from the Gas Processor Association, Tulsa OK.

30. Phillips Petroleum Company Internal Report.

31. Gill, Charles E., "Gas Odorizing," U.S. Patent 2,430,050, 11/4/47.

32. McClure, John S., "Warning Agent and Process for the Odorization of a Hydrocarbon Fuel Gas Therewith," U.S. Patent 2,823,104, assigned to California Research Corp., 2/11/58.

33. Campbell, Ian D., N. A. Chambers, and John Jacobus, "The Chemical Oxidation of Ethyl Mercaptan in Steel Vessels," Proceedings, International Symposium on Odorization, Chicago, IL, 1994.

34. Roberts, John S., and O. John Jacobus, "Odor Fade in Propane Tanks: A Case Study," Proceedings, International Symposium on Odorization, IGT, Chicago, IL,1997.

35. Warning labels from Trinity Containers, American Welding & Tank, and Quality Steel Tanks.

36. Williams, Ralph P., "Soil Penetrabilities of Natural Gas Odorants," *Pipeline & Gas Journal,* March 1976.

37. Parlman, Robert M., and R. P. Williams, "Penetrabilities of Gas Odorant Compounds in Natural Soils," Proceedings of the American Gas Association Conference, 1979.

38. Fraser, W. R., "The Odorization of Natural Gas for City Distribution," Proceedings of the American Gas Association Conference, 729, 1940.

39. Sullivan, Frederick, "New Gas Odorants," *Odorization II*, G. G. Wilson and A. A. Attari, editors, 459, IGT, 1987.

40. Taxman, P. B., and H. R. Linden, "Soil Adsorption of Odorant Compounds," IGT Research Bulletin # 33, July 1, 1961.

41. Cooper, L. S., A. B. Densham, A. J. DeRose, and B. Juren, "Some Aspects of the Reception and Transmission of North Sea Gas," Proceedings, 34th Autumn Meeting, Institution of Gas Engineers, November 12, 1968.

42. Jacobus, O. John, and John S. Roberts, "Relationship between Gas Composition and Odor Intensity," IGT Odorization Symposium, IGT, Chicago, IL, 1996.

43. Cain, W.S., "Perception of odor intensity and the time course of olfactory adaptation," *ASHRAE Transactions*, **80**(53), 1974.

44. Moncrieff, R. W., "Olfactory adaptation and odour intensity," *American Journal of Psychology*, **70**(1), 1957.

45. Cain, William S., Joseph C. Stevens, and David E. Weinstein, "Aging Impairs the Ability to Detect Gas Odor," *Fire Technology*, **23**(3) 198, 1987.

46. Stevens, Joseph C., and William S. Cain, "Detecting Gas Odor in Old Age," *Annals of the NY Academy of Science*, **510**(644), 1987.

47. Amoore, J. E., *Molecular Basis of Odor* (Charles C. Thomas, Springfield, IL, 1970), for a complete exposition regarding his theories involving specific anosmia.

48. Amoore, John E., "A Plan to Identify Most of the Primary Odors," in *Olfaction & Taste*, C. Pfaffman, editor, 158, Rockefeller Univ. Press, 1969.

49. Wilby, Frank V., "Variation in Recognition Odor Threshold of a Panel," *Journal of Air Pollution and Control Association*, **19**(96), 1969.

50. Wysocki, C. J., K. M. Domes, and G. K. Beauchamp, "Ability to perceive androstenone can be acquired by ostensibly anosmic people," *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*, **86**(7976), 1989.

51. Roberts, John S., "Natural Gas and LP Gas Odorants: A Review of the Basic Science," Natural Gas and LP Odorization Conference, GTI, Chicago, IL, August 2–4, 2004.

52. Engen, Trygg, Raymond A. Kilduff, and Nicholas J. Rummo, "The Influence of Alcohol on Odor Detection," *Chemical Senses and Flavor*, **1**, 323(1975).

53. Ahlstrom, R., B. Berglund, U. Berglund, T. Lindvall, and T. Engen, "A Comparison of Odor Perception in Smokers, Nonsmokers and Passive Smokers," *American Journal of Otolaryngology*, **8,** 1–6(1987).

54. Moncrieff, R. W., "Smoking: Its Effect on the Sense of Smell," *American Perfumer,* **60**, 40–43, 1957.

55. See for example: http://www.skcinc.com/detector/GV100_list.asp, http://www.raesystems.com/products/colorimetric-gas-detection-tubes, http://www.draeger.com/US/en_US/products/gas_detection/tubes_cms/draeger_tubes/cin_short-term_tubes.jsp

56. ASTM D-5305-97(2007), *Standard Test Method for Determination of Ethyl Mercaptan in LP-Gas Vapor*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2007.

57. Canadian General Standards Board, CAN/CGSB 3.0 NO. 18.5-2006, "Test for Ethyl Mercaptan Odourant in Propane, Field Method," 2006.

58. ASTM D-1988-06, *Standard Test Method for Mercaptans in Natural Gas Using Length-of-Stain Detector Tubes*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2006.

59. ASTM D-6228-10, *Standard Test Method for Determination of Sulfur Compounds in Natural Gas and Gaseous Fuels by Gas Chromatography and Flame Photometric Detection*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2010.

60. ASTM D-5504-08, *Standard Test Method for Determination of Sulfur Compounds in Natural Gas and Gaseous Fuels by Gas Chromatography and Chemiluminescence*, 2008.

61. ASTM D-6968-03(2009), *Standard Test Method for Simultaneous Measurement of Sulfur Compounds and Minor Hydrocarbons in Natural Gas and Gaseous Fuels by Gas Chromatography and Atomic Emission Detection*, ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2009.

62. See for example: http://www.skcinc.com/prod/231-01.asp

63. See for example: http://www.restek.com/pdfs/500-05-001.pdf

64. See for example: http://www.swagelok.com/downloads/WebCatalogs/EN/ms-02-193-e.pdf

65. ASTM D1265-05, *Standard Practice for Sampling Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gases (Manual Method),* ASTM International, West Conshohocken, PA, 2005.

Supplement 3

Procedure to Estimate Infiltration Rate for Residential Structures

Paul Cabot
American Gas Association

Editor's Note: *Users of the National Fuel Gas Code may select the Known Air Infiltration Rate (KAIR) Method in order to calculate the required volume of indoor combustion air to meet the needs of installed appliances. This supplement describes a method used by the American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) for calculating air changes per hour (ACH) and presents calculation examples.*

NFPA is grateful to Paul Cabot of the American Gas Association for preparing this supplement. We also appreciate the permission from ASHRAE to reproduce tables from its 2013 Fundamentals Handbooks.

INTRODUCTION

The 2015 *National Fuel Gas Code* contains two methods, the Standard Method and the Known Air Infiltration Rate (KAIR) Method, for calculating the required volume of indoor air to meet the combustion, dilution, and ventilation needs of appliances. The Standard Method is applicable to structures with an air infiltration rate of 0.40 air change rate per hour (ACH) or greater. The KAIR Method is applicable to all structures, but an upper air infiltration rate limit of 0.60 ACH is established. ACH is based on the effective air leakage area at 0.016 in. water column pressure difference.

A large number of building design and construction features impact the amount of air infiltration of a structure. These inherent features include the amount of window area, amount of exterior wall area, number of envelope penetrations, construction quality, and age. The American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE) provide methods to estimate ACH.

ASHRAE METHOD

ASHRAE is the HVAC industry's principal professional organization. ASHRAE develops and publishes state-of-the-art technical material for the benefit of design professionals and the well-being of the general public. This supplement provides a residential calculation method based on the ASHRAE tables, equations, and the basic model calculation method described in the 2013 *ASHRAE Fundamentals Handbook*, Chapter 16, "Ventilation and Infiltration." Tables S3.1, S3.2, and S3.3 and two equations are used to estimate ACH as follows:

$$Q = A_L = \sqrt{C_S \Delta t + C_W U^2}$$

Q = airflow rate, cfm

A_L = effective air leakage area, in.^{2}

C_S = stack coefficient, cfm^2/(in.^{4} · °F)

Δt = average indoor-outdoor temperature difference for time interval of calculation, °F

C_W = wind coefficient, cfm^2/(in.^{4} · mph^2)

U = average wind speed measured at local weather station for time interval of calculation, mph

TABLE S3.1 Stack Coefficient C_s

	House Height (Stories)		
	One	*Two*	*Three*
Stack coefficient	0.0150	0.0299	0.0449

Source: 2013 *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals*, Chapter 16, Table 4.

TABLE S3.2 Wind Coefficient (C_w)

	House Height (Stories)		
Shielding Class	*One*	*Two*	*Three*
1	0.0119	0.0157	0.0184
2	0.0092	0.0121	0.0143
3	0.0065	0.0086	0.0101
4	0.0039	0.0051	0.0060
5	0.0012	0.0016	0.0018

Source: 2013 *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals*, Chapter 16, Table 6.

To convert Q (cfm) to I (ACH):

$$I = \frac{Q \times 60 \text{ min/hr}}{V}$$

I = air exchange rate, ft^3/hr

Q = airflow rate, cfm

V = interior volume of space, ft^3

FACTORS IN ESTIMATING AIR INFILTRATION

Two of the most important factors in estimating ACH are the determination of the effective air leakage area (A_L) and selection of the appropriate indoor/outdoor temperature difference for time interval of calculation (Δt).

Effective Air Leakage Area

For built houses the preferred means to determine the Effective Air Leakage Area (A_L) is by conducting a whole-building pressurization test, commonly known as a blower door test. A qualified person must conduct this test since it requires skill and experience to set up and interpret the results.

For unbuilt houses the A_L can be estimated from its blueprints and Table S3.4. The effective air leakage areas for commonly used construction components for low-rise residential structures can be determined using Table S3.4 and the ASHRAE equations.

TABLE S3.3 Local Shielding Classes

Shelter Class	*Description*
1	No obstructions or local shielding
2	Typical shelter for an isolated rural house
3	Typical shelter caused by other buildings across the street from the building under study
4	Typical shelter for urban buildings on larger lots where sheltering obstacles are more than one building height away
5	Typical shelter produced by buildings or other structures that are immediately adjacent (closer than one house height): e.g., neighboring houses on the same side of the street, trees, bushes, etc.

Source: 2013 *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals*, Chapter 16, Table 5.

Indoor/Outdoor Temperature Difference

The ACH used to determine the required indoor volume is based on an average rate. Therefore, the user must select a time period within which to average the formula's indoor/outdoor temperature difference (t). For the purpose of determining combustion air, the time period chosen should be the coldest period of the season in which the building is likely to experience the highest Δt. This period is a baseline for the calculation and provides an indicator of a building's overall ability to supply combustion air. Its duration can vary and should be based on local weather conditions. Generally, a one-week period provides a conservative evaluation period.

Calculation Examples

EXAMPLE 1

Two-Story House — Average Temperature, 20°F

Calculate the ACH for a planned, rectangular two-story house that contains 1600 ft^2 of living space, with 8 ft ceilings. The house is located in a new subdivision, and there are adjacent structures or houses. The space will be maintained at 70°F. The average outdoor temperature is 20°F during the coldest, one-week period, and the average wind speed is 7 mph.

Solution

1. Determine the Effective Air Leakage Area (A_L). Estimate the effective air leakage area (A_L) of a residential structure based on the construction details shown in

Table S3.4. Examine the house blueprints and make a list of the construction details, their area or linear foot of crack, and the appropriate leakage area units. For all construction details in this example, the best estimate number was selected from Table S3.4. The list of calculated air leakage rates for this example is shown in Worksheet S3.1.

2. Calculate the ACH. The house has a volume of 10,240 ft^3 (1600 ft^2 × 8 ft × 0.80) and an effective air leakage area (A_L) of 66.4 in.^{2}. Note that for this example, an 80 percent reduction factor is used in the volume calculation to account for interior walls, cabinets, and other structures that reduce the interior air volume available for combustion air. The stack coefficient (C_S) for a two-story house is 0.0299 (see Table S3.1), and the local shielding class is #4 (see Table S3.3). The wind coefficient (C_W) is 0.0051 (see Table S3.2). The airflow rate calculation is shown in Worksheet S3.1.

EXAMPLE 2

Two-Story House — Average Outdoor Temperature, 30°F

Estimate the average ACH for a two-story house during a period when the average outdoor temperature is 30°F and the indoor space is maintained at 70°F. The house size is 50 ft × 30 ft, with 9 ft ceilings (volume = 21,600 with 80 percent reduction factor). The average wind speed over the period is 7 mph.

Solution

1. Determining the Effective Air Leakage Area (A_L). The effective air leakage area was determined using a blower door test and found to be 110 in.^{2}.

2. Calculate the ACH. The stack coefficient (C_S) for a two-story house is 0.0299 (see Table S3.1), and the local shielding class is #4 (see Table S3.3). The wind coefficient (C_W) is 0.0051 (see Table S3.2).

The airflow rate is calculated as follows:

$$Q = 110\sqrt{(0.0299)(70 - 30) + (0.0051)(7^2)}$$

$$Q = 132 \text{ cfm}$$

The ACH rate is calculated as follows:

$$I = \frac{(132)(60)}{21{,}600}$$

$$I = 0.37\ ACH$$

TABLE S3.4 Effective Air Leakage Areas (Low-Rise Residential Applications Only)†

	*Units**	*Best Estimate*	*Minimum*	*Maximum*
Ceiling				
General	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.026	0.011	0.04
Drop	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.0027	0.00066	0.003
Ceiling penetrations				
Whole-house fans	in.^{2} ea	3.1	0.25	3.3
Recessed lights	in.^{2} ea	1.6	0.23	3.3
Ceiling/Flue vent	in.^{2} ea	4.8	4.3	4.8
Surface-mounted lights	in.^{2} ea	0.13		
Chimney	in.^{2} ea	4.5	3.3	5.6
Crawl space				
General (area for exposed wall)	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.144	0.1	0.24
8 in. by 16 in. vents	in.^{2} ea	20		
Door frame				
General	in.^{2} ea	1.9	0.37	3.9
Masonry, not caulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.07	0.024	0.07
Masonry, caulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.014	0.004	0.014
Wood, not caulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.024	0.009	0.024
Wood, caulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.004	0.001	0.004
Trim	in.^{2}/lftc	0.05		
Jamb	in.^{2}/lftc	0.4	0.3	0.5
Threshold	in.^{2}/lftc	0.1	0.06	1.1

(continues)

TABLE S3.4 *Continued*

	*Units**	*Best Estimate*	*Minimum*	*Maximum*
Doors				
Attic/crawl space, not weather stripped	in.^{2} ea	4.6	1.6	5.7
Attic/crawl space, weatherstripped	in.^{2} ea	2.8	1.2	2.9
Attic fold down, not weather stripped	in.^{2} ea	6.8	3.6	13
Attic fold down, weather stripped	in.^{2} ea	3.4	2.2	6.7
Attic fold down, with insulated box	in.^{2} ea	0.6		
Attic from unconditioned garage	in.^{2} ea	0	0	0
Double, not weather stripped	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.16	0.1	0.32
Double, weather stripped	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.12	0.04	0.33
Elevator (passenger)	in.^{2} ea	0.04	0.022	0.054
General average	in.^{2}/lftc	0.015	0.011	0.021
Interior (pocket on top floor)	in.^{2} ea	2.2		
Interior (stairs)	in.^{2}/lftc	0.04	0.012	0.070
Mail slot	in.^{2}/lftc	0.2		
Sliding exterior glass patio	in.^{2} ea	3.4	0.46	9.3
Sliding exterior glass patio	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.079	0.009	0.22
Storm (difference between with and without)	in.^{2} ea	0.9	0.46	0.96
Single, not weather stripped	in.^{2} ea	3.3	1.9	8.2
Single, weather stripped	in.^{2} ea	1.9	0.6	4.2
Vestibule (subtract per each location)	in.^{2} ea	1.6		
Electrical outlets/Switches				
No gaskets	in.^{2} ea	0.38	0.08	0.96
With gaskets	in.^{2} ea	0.023	0.012	0.54
Furnace				
Sealed (or no) combustion	in.^{2} ea	0	0	0
Retention head or stack damper	in.^{2} ea	4.6	3.1	4.6
Retention head and stack damper	in.^{2} ea	3.7	2.8	4.6
Floors over crawl spaces				
General	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.032	0.006	0.071
Without ductwork in crawl space	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.0285		
With ductwork in crawl space	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.0324		
Fireplace				
With damper closed	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.62	0.14	1.3
With damper open	in.^{2}/ft^2	5.04	2.09	5.47
With glass doors	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.58	0.06	0.58
With insert and damper closed	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.52	0.37	0.66
With insert and damper open	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.94	0.58	1.3
Gas water heater	in.^{2} ea	3.1	2.3	3.9
Joints				
Ceiling-wall	in.^{2}/lftc	0.070	0.0075	0.12
Sole plate, floor/wall, uncaulked	in.^{2}/lftc	0.2	0.018	0.26
Sole plate, floor/wall, caulked	in.^{2}/lftc	0.04	0.0035	0.056
Top plate, band joist	in.^{2}/lftc	0.005	0.0035	0.018
Piping/Plumbing/Wiring penetrations				
Uncaulked	in.^{2} ea	0.9	0.31	3.7
Caulked	in.^{2} ea	0.3	0.16	0.3
Vents				
Bathroom with damper closed	in.^{2} ea	1.6	0.39	3.1
Bathroom with damper open	in.^{2} ea	3.1	0.95	3.4
Dryer with damper	in.^{2} ea	0.46	0.45	1.1
Dryer without damper	in.^{2} ea	2.3	1.9	5.3
Kitchen with damper open	in.^{2} ea	6.2	2.2	11
Kitchen with damper closed	in.^{2} ea	0.8	0.16	1.1
Kitchen with tight gasket	in.^{2} ea	0.16		

TABLE S3.4 *Continued*

	*Units**	*Best Estimate*	*Minimum*	*Maximum*
Walls (exterior)				
Cast-in-place concrete	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.007	0.0007	0.026
Clay brick cavity wall, finished	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.0098	0.0007	0.033
Precast concrete panel	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.017	0.0004	0.024
Lightweight concrete block, unfinished	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.05	0.019	0.058
Lightweight concrete block, painted or stucco	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.016	0.0075	0.016
Heavyweight concrete block, unfinished	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.0036		
Continuous air infiltration barrier	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.0022	0.0008	0.003
Rigid sheathing	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.005	0.0042	0.006
Window framing				
Masonry, uncaulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.094	0.082	0.148
Masonry, caulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.019	0.016	0.03
Wood, uncaulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.025	0.022	0.039
Wood, caulked	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.004	0.004	0.007
Windows				
Awning, not weather stripped	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.023	0.011	0.035
Awning, weather stripped	in.^{2}/ft^2	0.012	0.006	0.017
Casement, weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.011	0.005	0.14
Casement, not weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.013		
Double horizontal slider, not weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.052	0.0009	0.16
Double horizontal slider, wood, weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.026	0.0070	0.081
Double horizontal slider, aluminum, weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.034	0.027	0.038
Double-hung, not weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.12	0.040	0.29
Double-hung, weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.031	0.009	0.089
Double-hung with storm, not weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.046	0.023	0.080
Double-hung with storm, weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.037	0.021	0.05
Double-hung with pressurized track, weather stripped	in.^{2}/lftc	0.023	0.018	0.026
Jalousie	in.^{2}/louver	0.524		
Lumped	in.^{2}/lfts	0.022	0.00042	0.097
Single horizontal slider, weather-stripped	in.^{2}/lfts	0.031	0.009	0.097
Single horizontal slider, aluminum	in.^{2}/lfts	0.04	0.013	0.097
Single horizontal slider, wood	in.^{2}/lfts	0.021	0.013	0.047
Single horizontal slider, wood clad	in.^{2}/lfts	0.030	0.025	0.038
Single-hung, weather stripped	in.^{2}/lfts	0.041	0.029	0.058
Sill	in.^{2}/lftc	0.0099	0.0065	0.010
Storm inside, heat shrink	in.^{2}/lfts	0.00085	0.00042	0.00085
Storm inside, rigid sheet with magnetic seal	in.^{2}/lfts	0.0056	0.00085	0.011
Storm inside, flexible sheet with mechanical seal	in.^{2}/lfts	0.0072	0.00085	0.039
Storm inside, rigid sheet with mechanical seal	in.^{2}/lfts	0.019	0.0021	0.039
Storm outside, pressurized track	in.^{2}/lftc	0.025		
Storm outside, 2-track	in.^{2}/lftc	0.058		
Storm outside, 3-track	in.^{2}/lftc	0.116		

*Air leakage areas are based on values found in the literature. The effective air leakage area (in square inches) is based on a pressure difference of 0.016 in. of water and $C_S = 1$.

Abbreviations: ft^2 = gross area in square feet, ea = each, lftc = linear foot of crack, lfts = linear foot of sash.

Source: 2001 *ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals*, Chapter 26, Table 1. © American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc.

† *This table is no longer published in the current ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals. The preferred method to determine the effective air leakage area is through a whole-building pressurization test. However, this table can be used to provide a reasonable estimate where the building has not yet been constructed.*

WORKSHEET S3.1

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: AIR CHANGES PER HOUR

Step 1:

- Enter the building parameters in the spaces to the right.

Calculation parameters:
No. of stories: 2
Area of living space: 1600 ft^2
Ceiling height: 8 ft

Interior design temperature: 70°F
Coldest 1-week outdoor temperature: 20°F

Step 2:

- Determine the effective air leakage rate, A_L, by entering the number, area, or length of construction features in Table 1.
- Multiply by the factor in Table 1 and add to find the total A_L.

Table 1 Effective Air Leakage Area

Area	Component	Description	Size/No.	A_L/Unit	A_L
Ceiling		General	800 ft^2	0.026 in.^{2}/ft^2	20.8
Walls		Cont. air infilt. barrier	1857 ft^2	0.0022 in.^{2}/ft^2	4.1
Joints	Top plate	Band joist	120 ft^2	0.005 in.^{2}/lftc	0.6
	Sole plate	Caulked	120 ft^2	0.04 in.^{2}/lftc	4.8
Windows	Exterior	Double hung with pressurized	420 lftc	0.023 in.^{2}/lftc	9.7
	Framing	Wood, caulked	240 ft^2	0.004 in.^{2}/ft^2	1
Doors	Front exterior	Double	21 ft^2	0.12 in.^{2}/ft^2	2.5
	Patio	Sliding	42 ft^2	0.079 in.^{2}/ft^2	3.3
	Framing	Doors, wood	63 ft^2	0.004 in.^{2}/ft^2	0.3
	Attic	Fold down	1	3.4 in.^{2} ea.	3.4
Fireplace		With damper closed	9 ft^2	0.62 in.^{2}/ft^2	5.6
Exhaust vents	Kitchen	With damper closed	1	0.8 in.^{2} ea.	0.8
	Bathroom	With damper closed	2	1.6 in.^{2} ea.	3.2
	Dryer	With damper	1	0.46 in.^{2} ea.	0.5
Penetrations	Plumbing	Vent stacks	2	0.3 in.^{2} ea.	0.6
	Vent	Furnace/water heater	1	3.1 in.^{2} ea.	3.1
	Wiring	Caulked or gasketed	4	0.3 in.^{2} ea.	1.2
	Electrical	Interior outlets on outside walls	20	0.023 in.^{2} ea.	0.5
	Ceiling lights	Surface mounted	5	0.13 in.^{2} ea.	0.7
				A_L =	66.7

Step 3:

- Calculate the air changes per hour (ACH).
- Calculate the house volume. The 0.8 reduction factor corrects for interior spaces not available for combustion (i.e., closets, wall spaces, cabinets).
- Determine values for C_S and C_W (from Tables S3.2, S3.3, or S3.4 as appropriate), and U.

House volume = 1600 ft^2 x 8 ft x 0.8 = 10,240 ft^3

C_S = 0.0299, stack coefficient, from Table S3.2 for a two-story house

C_W = 0.0051, wind coefficient, from Tables S3.3 and S3.4

U = 7 mph average wind speed over a time interval (1 week in this example)

Step 4:

- Calculate the air flow through the house, Q.
- Calculate the air changes per hour, I.

$Q = A_L / C_S \Delta t + C_W U^2$
$= 66.7/0.0299 \times 0.0051 \times 7^2$
$= 88$ cfm

$I = Q \times 60$ min/hr/V
$= 88 \times 60/10{,}240$
$= 0.52$ ACH

Job: 25 Main Street **Prepared by:** TL **Date:** 1/1/15

Calculating Air Changes per Hour.

SUMMARY

The calculated method to estimate the air infiltration rate in low-rise residential buildings is relatively straightforward and can be easily accomplished if one knows the basic layout and features of the structure. The selection of "best estimate" effective leakage areas from Table S3.4 offers a realistic estimate for most typical construction.

REFERENCE

ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, "Ventilation and Infiltration," Chapter 16, American Society of Heating, Refrigerating, and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 2001 and 2013.

Supplement 4

Calculation Worksheets

Editor's Note: *This supplement contains a series of calculation worksheets in a reproducible format for use by the installer of gas piping, gas appliances, and gas venting systems. Duplication and use of these worksheets is encouraged. Writable PDFs of the worksheets are available for download at www.nfpa.org/54HB.*

This supplement consists of the following calculation worksheets, which the reader may reproduce and use. These worksheets may not be copied for commercial sale or distribution:

- Worksheet S4.1 — Calculating Pipe Size Using the Longest Length Method
- Worksheet S4.2 — Calculating Pipe Size Using the Branch Length Method
- Worksheet S4.3 — Sizing Combustion Air Openings Using the Standard Method
- Worksheet S4.4 — Sizing Combustion Air Openings Using the KAIR Method
- Worksheet S4.5 — Calculating the Size of Combustion Air Openings
- Worksheet S4.6 — Calculating the Size of Reduced Building Area Openings
- Worksheet S4.7 — Calculating Vent Size for Single Appliance
- Worksheet S4.8 — Calculating Vent Size for Two Appliances
- Worksheet S4.9 — Calculating Air Changes per Hour

WORKSHEET S4.1

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: PIPE SIZING, LONGEST LENGTH METHOD

Step 1:
- Draw a sketch of a piping system in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Step 2:
- Enter the system information. Note that demand is the amount of gas flowing through a section of pipe.
- Use total Btu/hr rating/1000 (ft^3/hr) for natural gas.
- Use total Btu/hr for propane.

Step 3:
- Determine the gas used and system pressure, and enter it to the right.
- Determine the piping material and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate pipe sizing table from Chapter 6 and enter it to the right.

Step 4:
- On the sketch, label the section of pipe from the point of delivery (meter or regulator) to the first tee as Section 1.
- Label the section from the first tee to the second tee as Section 3. Use similar section numbers for additional sections.

Step 5:
- Determine the longest length of piping from the point of delivery to the most remote appliance. Enter this length for all pipe sections in Table 1.

Pipe system sketch

Gas: ______________________

System pressure: ______________________

Piping material: ______________________

Table used: ______________________

Pressure drop: ______________________

Table 1 Piping System Table

Section	Demand	Section length	Size
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			

Step 6:
- Enter the input rating for each appliance in Table 2. For natural gas appliances, enter the input rating in Btu/hr/1000 (ft^3/hr). For propane appliances, enter the input rating in Btu/hr.

Step 7:
- From the table, determine the length of each pipe section using the appropriate table, using only the row with the longest length. Round up to the lengths in the table. Read across until a capacity equal to or greater than the required demand for the section is found. Read up to find the size. Repeat for each section of piping. Enter this size in Table 2.

Table 2 Appliances Table

Appliance	Demand	Section length	Size
Furnace			
Furnace			
Water heater			
Water heater			
Range			
Oven			
Dryer			
Other			
Other			
Other			
Other			
Total			

Job: ______________________ **Prepared by:** ______________________ **Date:** ______________

Calculating Pipe Size Using the Longest Length Method.

WORKSHEET S4.2

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: PIPE SIZING, BRANCH LENGTH METHOD

Step 1:
- Draw a sketch of a piping system in the space to the right.

Step 2:
- Enter the system information. Note that demand is the amount of gas flowing through a section of pipe.
- Use total Btu/hr rating/1000 (ft^3/hr) for natural gas.
- Use total Btu/hr for propane.

Step 3:
- Determine the gas used and system pressure, and enter it to the right.
- Determine the piping material and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate pipe sizing table from Chapter 6 and enter it to the right.

Pipe system sketch

Gas: ______________________

Pressure: ______________________

Piping material: ______________________

Table used: ______________________

Pressure drop: ______________________

Step 4:
- On the sketch above, label the section of pipe from the point of delivery (meter or regulator) to the first tee as Section 1.
- Label the section from the first tee to the second tee as Section 2. Use similar section numbers for additional sections.

Step 5:
- Determine the length of the branch serving each appliance. Enter this length in Table 1.

Table 1 Piping System Table

Section	Demand	Section length	Size
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			

Step 6:
- Enter the input rating for each appliance in Table 2. For natural gas appliances, enter the input rating in ft^3/hr. For propane appliances, enter the input rating in thousands of Btu/hr.

Step 7:
- From the table, determine the length of each pipe section using the appropriate table, using only the row with the longest length. Round up to the lengths in the table. Read across until a capacity equal to or greater than the required demand for the section is found. Read up to find the size. Repeat for each section of piping. Enter this size in Table 2.

Table 2 Appliances Table

Appliance	Demand	Section length	Size
Furnace			
Furnace			
Water heater			
Water heater			
Range			
Oven			
Dryer			
Other			
Other			
Other			
Other			
Total			

Job: ______________________ **Prepared by:** ______________________ **Date:** ______________________

Calculating Pipe Size Using the Branch Length Method.

WORKSHEET S4.3

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: COMBUSTION AIR, STANDARD METHOD

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume:
Room length: ________________
Room width: ________________
Room height: ________________

Room volume: = Length × width × height
= ______________

Step 2:

- Calculate the total input of all appliances in the room.
- Enter the input rating of all appliances in Table 1. (Per 9.3.1.1, Exception 2, dryers are not included.)
- Total the column.
- Divide the total by 1000 (of Btu/hr).

Table 1 Appliances Table

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Water heater	
Space heater	
Range	
Other	
Total	
Total/1000	

Step 3:

- Calculate the required volume. Divide room volume (Step 1) by total/1000 (Step 2).
- If less than 50, additional air is needed.
- If greater than or equal to 50, no additional air is needed.

Required volume:

Additional air needed? (Check one) Yes ❏ No ❏

ALTERNATE CALCULATION METHOD

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume = ________________ (from Step 1 above)

Step 2:

- Calculate the maximum appliance input.

Maximum appliance input: = Room volume × 20
= ___________ × 20
= ___________

Step 3:

- Determine if additional air is needed.
- If less than max., no additional air is needed.
- If greater than or equal to max., additional air is needed.

Total appliance input: = ___________

Additional air needed? (Check one) Yes ❏ No ❏

Job: ______________________ **Prepared by:** ________________ **Date:** ____________

Sizing Combustion Air Openings Using the Standard Method.

WORKSHEET S4.4

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: COMBUSTION AIR, KAIR METHOD

Step 1:
- Enter the input ratings of all non-fan-assisted appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.

Table 1 Ratings for Non-Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Water heater	
Space heater	
Refrigerator	
Other	
Other	
Total (I_{other})	

Step 2:
- Enter the air infiltration rate of the space. This can be determined by measurement or estimation. See Supplement 5 for an estimation method.
- If the air infiltration rate exceeds 0.6, use 0.6.

Air infiltration rate:________________ ACH (max. 0.6)

Step 3:
- Calculate the required volume for non-fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and in Step 6.

Required volume:

$$\frac{21\ ft^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{other}}{100{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right) = \frac{21\ ft^3}{\_\_\_}\left(\frac{\_\_\_\_\_\ Btu/hr}{100{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right)$$

$$\_\_\_\ (\_\_\_) = \_\_\_\_\_\ ft^3$$

Step 4:
- Enter the input ratings of all fan-assisted appliances in Table 2.
- Total the column.

Table 2 Ratings for Fan-Assisted Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Furnace	
Space heater	
Other	
Other	
Other	
Total	

Step 5:
- Calculate the required volume for fan-assisted appliances using the equation.
- Enter the required volume here and below.

Required volume:

$$\frac{15\ ft^3}{ACH}\left(\frac{I_{fan}}{100{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right) = \frac{15\ ft^3}{\_\_\_}\left(\frac{\_\_\_\_\_\ Btu/hr}{100{,}000\ Btu/hr}\right)$$

$$\_\_\_\ (\_\_\_) = \_\_\_\_\_\ ft^3$$

Step 6:
- Add the two required volumes calculated to find the total required volume for all appliances.

Required volume (Non-fan assisted) =_______________ ft^3
Required volume (Fan assisted) = _______________ ft^3
Total required volume = ___________ ft^3

Step 7:
- Enter the available room volume.

Available volume = ___________
Room volume = ___________ ft^3

Step 8:
- If the total required volume is greater than the available room volume, air openings are required. Check Yes and determine the opening size and location. If the total required volume is less than the available room volume, no air openings are required. Check No.

Air openings required? (Check one)

Yes ❏ No ❏

Job: ____________________ **Prepared by:** ____________________ **Date:** ______________

Sizing Combustion Air Openings Using the KAIR Method.

WORKSHEET S4.5

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: SIZING COMBUSTION AIR OPENINGS

Step 1:

- Enter the input ratings of all appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.
- Proceed to either Part A, Part B, or Part C.

Table 1 Ratings for Appliances

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Water heater	
Space heater	
Total	

A. All air from outdoors via two permanent openings (or vertical ducts).

Step 2:

- Where all air is to be taken from the outdoors, divide the total input of all gas appliances in the space by 4000.

Total input:

_________ /4000 = _________ in.²/opening

Step 3:

- Select a duct with the area needed.
- Use Table 2 to calculate for square or round ducts. For other sizes or rectangular shapes, the duct size can be calculated.

Square duct: ____ in. × ____ in. = ____ in.²

Round duct: ____ in. round = ____ in.²

Table 2 Sizes for Square and Round Ducts

Area of Square Ducts		Area of Round Ducts	
Side (in.)	Area (in.)	Diameter (in.)	Area (in.²)
3	9	3	7.1
4	16	4	12.6
5	25	5	19.6
6	36	6	28.3
7	49	7	38.5
8	64	8	50.2
10	100	10	78.5
12	144	12	113.0

B. All air from the outdoors via two horizontal ducts.

Step 2:

- Where all air is to be taken from the outdoors, divide the total input of all gas appliances in the space by 2000.

Total input:

_________ /2000 = _________in.²/opening

Step 3:

- Select a duct with the area needed.
- Use Table 2 to calculate for square or round ducts. For other sizes or rectangular shapes, the duct size can be calculated.

Square duct: ____ in. × ____ in. = ____ in.²

Round duct: ____ in. round = ____ in.²

C. All air from the outdoors via one opening.

Step 2:

- Where all air is to be taken from the outdoors using one opening, divide the total input of all appliances in the space by 3000.

Total input:

__________ /3000 = __________in.²

Provide one ____ in. square duct or one ____ in. round duct.

Step 3:

- Check minimum clearances: side and back, 1 in.; front, 6 in.

Side and back: ____ Clearances OK? (Check one)

Front: ____ Yes ❑ No ❑

Step 4:

- Check that total vent connector area is less than or equal to the opening area (Step 2).

Furnace connector diameter = ____

Divide by 2 = ____

Squared = ____ × 3.14 = ____

Water heater connector diameter = ____

Divide by 2 = ____

Squared = ____ × 3.14 = ____

Total vent connector area = ____

Job: ______________________ **Prepared by:** ______________________ **Date:** ______________

Calculating the Size of Combustion Air Openings.

WORKSHEET S4.6

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: SIZING REDUCED BUILDING AREA OPENINGS

Step 1:

- Calculate the room volume.

Room volume: Room length:______________
Room width: ______________
Room height:______________

Room volume: = Length × width × height
= __________

Step 2:

- Calculate the total input of all appliances in the room.
- Enter the input rating of all appliances in Table 1.
- Total the column.
- Divide the total (room volume) by 1000 (of Btu/hr).

Table 1 Appliances Table

Appliance	Input rating (Btu/hr)
Furnace	
Water heater	
Space heater	
Range	
Other	
Total	
Total/1000	

Step 3:

- Calculate the required volume.
- Enter the available room volume (Step 1).

Required volume:
= 50 ft^3 per 1000 Btu/hr (total/1000)
= 50 × ______
= __________

Available room volume:
= __________ ft^3

Step 4:

- Calculate the percentage of required volume that is available in the room.

Percentage of volume available: = $\frac{\text{Available volume}}{\text{Required volume}}$ 100
= __________ × 100
= __________ %

Step 5:

- Calculate the percentage of volume required.

Percentage of volume available: = 100% – _________ %
= __________ %

Step 6:

- Calculate the reduced opening area.

Reduced opening = Required area percentage reduction
= _________ $in.^2$ × _________ %
= _________ $in.^2$
or two _____ $in.^2$ by ________ $in.^2$ openings.

CAUTION: Do not apply to one opening.

Job: ______________________________ **Prepared by:** ______________________ **Date:** ________________

Calculating the Size of Reduced Building Area Openings.

WORKSHEET S4.7

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: VENT SIZING, SINGLE APPLIANCE

Step 1:

- Determine the type of chimney or vent used and enter it to the right.
- If used, determine the type of vent connector material and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate table and enter it to the right.

Type of vent: ______________________

Type of connector: __________________

Height: ___________________________

Lateral: __________________________

Table used: ________________________

Step 2:

- Draw a sketch of the proposed design in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Note: Factors such as combining connectors prior to entering the common vent will affect capacity.

Proposed design sketch

Step 3:

- Determine the common vent size using the single appliance vent table. Read across the row with the correct height and lateral offset. Use the NAT Min column for draft hood appliances and the FAN Min and Max columns for draft hood appliances.

Vent size: ____________________

Step 4:

- Check for vent downsizing.
- If the vent is smaller than the draft hood outlet or flue collar, see 13.1.2 for restrictions.

Draft hood outlet/
flue collar diameter: ___________________

Step 5:

- Check for excessive elbows.
- If more than two elbows are used, derate the single appliance vent table values by 10% for each elbow above 2 (see 13.1.3).

Number of elbows: ____________________

❑ Derating not required

❑ Derating required. Show calculation on a separate page.

Job: ____________________________ **Prepared by:** ____________________ **Date:** ________________

Calculating Vent Size for Single Appliance.

WORKSHEET S4.8

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: VENT SIZING, TWO APPLIANCES

Step 1:

- Determine the type of chimney or vent used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the type of vent connector material to be used and enter it to the right.
- Determine the number of appliances and enter it to the right.
- Select the appropriate table and enter it to the right.

Type of vent: ____________________

Type of connector: ____________________

Number of appliances: ____________________

Table used: ____________________

Step 2:

- Draw a sketch of the proposed design in the space to the right. Use the back of this page or a separate sheet if more space is needed.

Note: Factors such as combining connectors prior to entering the common vent will affect capacity.

Proposed design sketch

Step 3:

- Determine the vent connector size using the top portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 1.

Step 4:

- Check for vent connector size limits, 13.2.21.

Table 1 Top of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance	Connector rise	Vent height	Input rating	Fan or natural	Connector size	Table used
Furnace						
Water heater						
Total						

Step 5:

- Check for excessive connector horizontal length using Table 2.
- If any connector horizontal length in feet exceeds 1.5 times the diameter in inches, derate the table by 10% for each length unit and recalculate connector length (see 13.2.2).

Table 2 Connector Horizontal Length

Connector	Diameter	Max. length	Length	OK?

Step 6:

- Determine the common vent size using the bottom portion of the multiple appliance vent table, as shown in Table 3.

Table 3 Bottom of Multiple Appliance Vent Table

Appliance types	Vent height	Combined input	Common vent size	Table used

Job: ____________________ **Prepared by:** ____________________ **Date:** ____________________

Calculating Vent Size for Two Appliances.

WORKSHEET S4.9

CALCULATION WORKSHEET: AIR CHANGES PER HOUR

Step 1:

- Enter the building parameters in the spaces to the right.

Calculation parameters:
No. of stories: ______________
Area of living space: __________
Ceiling height: ______________

Interior design temperature: ____________
Coldest 1-week outdoor temperature: ____________

Step 2:

- Determine the effective air leakage rate, A_L, by entering the number, area, or length construction features in Table 1.
- Multiply by the factors in Table 1 and add to find the total A_L.

Table 1 Effective Air Leakage Area

Area	Component	Description	Size/No.	A_L/Unit	A_L
Ceiling		General		0.026 in.^{2}/ft^2	
Walls		Cont. air infilt. barrier		0.0022 in.^{2}/ft^2	
Joints	Top plate	Band joist		0.005 in.^{2}/lftc	
	Sole plate	Caulked		0.04 in.^{2}/lftc	
Windows	Exterior	Double hung with pressurized		0.023 in.^{2}/lftc	
	Framing	Wood, caulked		0.004 in.^{2}/ft^2	
Doors	Front exterior	Double		0.12 in.^{2}/ft^2	
	Patio	Sliding		0.079 in.^{2}/ft^2	
	Framing	Doors, wood		0.004 in.^{2}/ft^2	
	Attic	Fold down		3.4 in.^{2} ea.	
Fireplace		With damper closed		0.62 in.^{2}/ft^2	
Exhaust vents	Kitchen	With damper closed		0.8 in.^{2} ea.	
	Bathroom	With damper closed		1.6 in.^{2} ea.	
	Dryer	With damper		0.46 in.^{2} ea.	
Penetrations	Plumbing	Vent stacks		0.3 in.^{2} ea.	
	Vent	Furnace/water heater		3.1 in.^{2} ea.	
	Wiring	Caulked or gasketed		0.3 in.^{2} ea.	
	Electrical	Interior outlets on outside walls		0.023 in.^{2} ea.	
	Ceiling lights	Surface mounted		0.13 in.^{2} ea.	
				A_L =	

Step 3:

- Calculate the air changes per hour (ACH).
- Calculate the house volume. The 0.8 reduction factor corrects for interior spaces not available for combustion (i.e., closets, wall spaces, cabinets).
- Determine values for C_S and C_W (from Tables S3.2, S3.3, or S3.4 as appropriate), and U.

House volume = Area × ceiling height × 0.8 =

C_S = (from Table S3.2)

C_W = (from Tables S3.3 and S3.4)

U =

Step 4:

- Calculate the air flow through the house, Q.
- Calculate the air changes per hour, I.

$Q = A_L/C_S\, \Delta t + C_W\, U^2$

= ________________

= ______ cfm

$I = Q \times 60$ min/hr/V

= ________________

= ______ ACH

Job: ____________________ **Prepared by:** ____________________ **Date:** ____________

Calculating Air Changes per Hour.

Supplement 5

Clearance Distance for Gas Appliance Sidewall Venting

Editor's Note: *This supplement provides an overview of a research project conducted under the auspices of the Fire Protection Research Foundation and completed in December 2007. It attempted to provide information on the effects of sidewall venting where buildings are close together (5 ft and 10 ft). It is a preliminary study that was not intended to be a thorough review of all possible cases and variables. It is provided here to make readers of the handbook aware of it. The final report of the study can be downloaded from:*

www.nfpa.org/~/media/Files/Research/Research_Foundation/Research_Foundation_reports/gas_appliance_sidewall_venting.pdf

As with all NFPA Research Foundation Reports, there is no charge for downloading the Final Report.

INTRODUCTION

The objective of this work was to assess the effects of sidewall venting of flue gas from a high-efficiency, natural gas appliance in the presence of a neighboring home. The National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) and the American Gas Association (AGA) cosponsored this study as an initial attempt to identify basic criteria related to the dispersion of sidewall-vented flue gas between neighboring houses. For this study, Battelle performed a review of the literature for information on issues related to sidewall venting and a computational fluid dynamics (CFD) modeling study to investigate the effects of important parameters, such as the spacing between houses, wind direction, and vent terminal design.

APPROACH

A project technical panel was assembled to guide the project and evaluate the results in accordance with the policies of the Fire Protection Research Foundation. This panel was comprised of representatives from NFPA and AGA member organizations.

There are a vast number of parameters that could be important in determining how flue gas will disperse in the real world, so it was agreed to limit the work as follows:

- A single appliance input rating, excess air, and efficiency
- Three different vent terminal designs
- Two different spacings between the houses
- Two different wind speeds and the outdoor ambient temperatures

The fundamental objective of this study was to take a first step toward understanding the physics and to gather insight as to the factors that may be important in generating guidelines or codes for sidewall venting.

A typical Category IV appliance with a 100,000 Btu/hr input rating operating with 40 percent excess combustion air was chosen as the test subject. Such an appliance, assuming roughly 92 percent efficiency, would produce a flue gas with a flow rate of 23 acfm and a temperature of 115°F. Two identical houses, each 36 ft wide, 25 ft on the sides, 20 ft high to the bottom of the roof, and with a peak height of 28 ft were used. Two house separation distances, 5 ft and 10 ft, were used as well. The vent would be located 1 ft from the ground, centered horizontally and extend 1 ft from the face of the house with the vent. The vent would be 2 in. in diameter and have two terminal designs, one with no terminal (straight vent) and one with a 6 in. diameter plate facing the vent outlet to force a radial dispersion of flue gas as it exits the vent (radial vent). Winter (0°F) and summer (75°F) outdoor temperatures were investigated, with no wind and a 7 mph wind blowing perpendicular to the houses and parallel (between) the houses. This agreed-upon set of parameters resulted in the eleven initial CFD cases. The definition of two additional cases was held in reserve to allow for investigation of questions or opportunities that might arise from the results of the initially defined set of cases. Table S5.1 lists all of the CFD cases that were run in this study. Cases 12 and 13, which are highlighted in Table S5.1, are the two additional cases that were defined after completion of the first eleven.

PREVIOUS STUDIES

To begin work on the report, previous studies were reviewed to determine if any of the past work on venting of gas appliances could be used to form the basis for decision-making regarding the separation distance between buildings in the presence of a sidewall-vented appliance. Only a few relevant papers were found and these are summarized below.

The Gas Research Institute (GRI) funded research from 1988 to 1994 on the venting of gas appliances [1]. The objective of this program was to develop guidelines for the practical and safe venting of flue gases from mid- and high-efficiency gas-fired appliances. In 1992, the GRI venting program conducted a study to examine means to sidewall vent gas appliances in multistory buildings [2]. As part of this work, the issue of sidewall venting between closely spaced buildings was identified. Several European vent configurations were studied that allowed sidewall-vented appliances to be discharged into a manifold that ran vertically up the side of the building and exited above the roofline. The simplest design incorporated a vertical manifold with two openings, one at the top and one at the bottom. Sidewall vents could be discharged into the manifold, which would cause an upflow due to the buoyancy of the warm vent gases, while maintaining nearly atmospheric pressure in the vent due to the bottom opening. Several variations of this concept are currently in use in Europe, including a U-shaped vent with both openings above the roof. Vent gases are discharged into one leg of the manifold, and the other leg is used to supply combustion air to the appliance. These configurations allow sidewall venting to take place between buildings that are right next to each other because the manifold discharges the vent gases above the roofline.

From 1999 to 2002, Battelle examined the minimum clearance distances between sidewall vented gas appliances and adjacent building openings along the same wall as the sidewall vent [3, 4]. Dr. James Reuther used analytical expressions for gas jet dispersion to estimate dilution factors for vent gases being discharged horizontally from the side of a building. The results show that for a straight-out discharge of a sidewall vent, the minimum separation distance could be less than one foot between the vent outlet and any of the same building openings, and still provide adequate dilution to the vent gases to alleviate safety concerns for the occupants of the building. However, the study did not include the effects of wind on the vent discharge, the effect of different types of vent terminals, or the influence of adjacent buildings or structures on plume dispersion.

In 2006 and 2007, Battelle conducted a study for the Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association (GAMA) on the minimum separation distance between sidewall vents and adjacent building openings in which wind effects and

TABLE S5.1 Parameter Matrix for CFD Modeling Cases

Case Number	*Vent Type*	*House Separation (ft)*	*Outdoor Temperature (F°)*	*Wind Direction*	*Wind Speed (mph)*
1	Radial	5	0	NA	0
2	Radial	5	75	NA	0
3	Radial	10	0	NA	0
4	Radial	10	75	NA	0
5	2 in. Straight	5	0	NA	0
6	2 in. Straight	5	75	NA	0
7	2 in. Straight	10	0	NA	0
8	2 in. Straight	10	75	NA	0
9	2 in. Straight	5	75	East	7
10	2 in. Straight	5	75	North	7
11	2 in. Straight	5	75	South	7
12	45° Down	5	0	NA	0
13	3 in. Straight	5	0	NA	0

different types of vent terminals were examined [5]. This study used CFD models to compute plume dispersion and dilution factors, which include the effects of different wind speeds and directions, different types of vent terminals, different input ratings of appliances, and vent terminal height above grade. The findings indicated that the minimum separation distances between the vent discharge and the same wall openings currently in NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code,* could probably be reduced if the industry could agree on a reasonable dilution factor for the vent gases [6]. The GAMA study did not calculate dilution factors for adjacent buildings located in the vicinity of the sidewall vent.

CFD ANALYSIS

CFD simulations were used in this project to estimate the dispersion of flue gas from high-efficiency, sidewall-vented appliances. In CFD, a graphical representation of a fluid-dynamics problem is generated, and the fluid space in the domain is discretized using a computational mesh. CFD software is used to numerically solve the differential equations of fluid flow, energy, and species transport, three-dimensionally on the computational mesh, given conditions specified by the user on the boundaries of the fluid domain. If done correctly, the result is a reasonably accurate calculation of fluid velocity, pressure, temperature, and concentration on each node of the mesh. The solution can be examined and analyzed either graphically or with numerical calculations to determine the conditions anywhere in the domain. A commercial CFD software package was used for these analyses. Note that in the discussion that follows, House 1 refers to the house with the vent and House 2 refers to the neighboring house.

Model Setup and Boundary Conditions

Exhibit S5.1 contains a diagram of the model used in the simulations without wind. For the cases without wind, the two houses are enclosed in a hemispherical dome, centered on the ground halfway between the houses, with a radius of 400 ft. The surface of the dome represents the sky, far from the houses, and is set as an atmospheric pressure boundary in the model. A pressure boundary in CFD allows fluid to flow into and out of the domain such that the pressure everywhere on the boundary is held constant at a specified value (atmospheric pressure in this case). The bottom face of the dome represents the ground and is modeled as a wall boundary where the air velocity is fixed at zero. The two houses are visible in the center of the model. House 1 (with the vent) is on the left (south) side, and House 2 (the neighboring house) is on the right (north) side. The houses are separated by a distance of 5 ft in the diagram.

Exhibit S5.2 contains a diagram of the model used in the simulations with wind. For the cases with wind, the two houses are enclosed in a rectangular box that is 800 ft × 800 ft horizontally and 400 ft high. The bottom face of the box represents the ground and is modeled as a wall boundary where the air velocity is fixed at zero. The top face of the box is modeled as a free-stream boundary far from all walls and obstacles where it is assumed that the velocity is not changing (zero shear stress). There is no friction or loss of mechanical energy (pressure) on a free-stream boundary. The side walls are used to generate a wind with a specified velocity at the outdoor ambient temperature. To generate a south wind, for example, the left side of the box is assigned a wind velocity where air will enter the domain uniformly. The opposing right face is assigned atmospheric pressure. The two sides of the box that run parallel with the wind direction (east and west, or front and back faces) are specified as free-stream boundaries, similar to the top face of the box.

Exhibit S5.3 shows a diagram of four vent designs that were modeled in this study. In each diagram, the flow

EXHIBIT S5.1

- Dome has radius of 400 ft.
- Dome surfaces are set as atmospheric pressure boundaries.
- Ground and all other surfaces are set as standard walls (fluid velocity is zero).

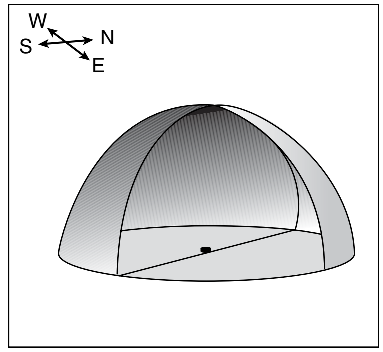


Diagram of Model Used in Simulations Without Wind. (Courtesy of Battelle)

EXHIBIT S5.2

- Rectangular box is 800 ft × 800 ft horizontally and 400 ft high.
- Top surface is set as a free stream boundary (zero shear stress).
- For a south wind, the left face is set as a velocity boundary and the right face is set as an atmospheric pressure boundary. The east and west (front and back) faces are set as free stream boundaries (zero shear stress).
- Similar procedure is used for an east/west wind.

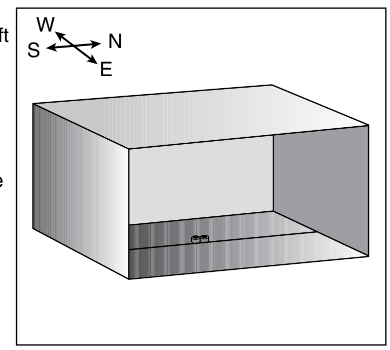
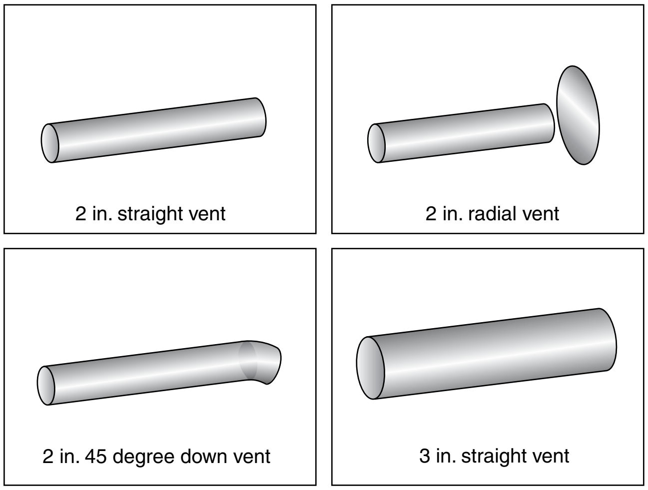


Diagram of Model Used in Simulations with Wind. (Courtesy of Battelle)

EXHIBIT S5.3



Four Vent Designs Used in the Study. (Courtesy of Battelle)

direction is from left to right. The straight vent (top left) and radial vent (top right) were the designs decided upon in the initial meetings on this project. The 45 degree down (bottom left) and three-inch straight (bottom right) vents were decided upon after completion of the first eleven cases shown in Table S5.1. The boundary condition set at the vent outlet, where the venting gas enters the fluid domain, depends on the appliance being modeled. The input rating, excess combustion air, and efficiency of the appliance determine the flow rate, composition, and temperature at the outlet of the vent. In this study, the appliance was fixed at 100,000 Btu/hr, 40 percent excess air, and 92 percent efficiency, resulting in a constant flow rate and temperature of 23 acfm and 115°F, respectively. The velocity of flue gas through a 2 in. vent, at a volumetric flow rate of 23 acfm, is 6.1 m/sec (20 ft/sec).

The concentration of carbon dioxide and water vapor in the flue gas are certainly important variables in these analyses and can be computed from combustion calculations using the fuel composition, excess air, and their associated temperatures. There is, however, a degree of complexity to modeling the flue gas as a multi-component gas in the CFD simulation. In order to track the concentration of each component of the flue gas through the fluid domain surrounding the house, the multi-component diffusion coefficient of each component would need to be known or calculated. The uncertainties in performing the multi-component calculations do not warrant the added complexity and computational cost. In similar analyses on past projects, we have chosen to model the flue gas as a single component, which we'll call "flue gas," with a representative diffusion coefficient in air and an ideal-gas density based on the temperature. The mass fraction of flue gas, by definition, has a value of one at the vent outlet. By tracking the concentration of flue gas in the domain surrounding the house, the model computes the degree to which the flue gas is diluted by the outside air at every point in the domain. The concentration of a given component, such as carbon dioxide, at every point in the domain can then be estimated with reasonable accuracy by assuming a concentration at the vent outlet and multiplying by the normalized concentration from the CFD calculation. Modeling the flue gas as a single-component gas with a maximum concentration at the vent outlet, which is defined as one, normalizes the concentration profile in the domain. It assumes that the concentration of any component of the flue gas is dispersed and diluted by the same amount as the flue gas itself.

Method of Analyzing the Results

A parametric study was conducted using CFD simulations to determine the concentration profile of flue gas everywhere in the fluid domain, with emphasis on the region surrounding the vent and between the two houses. In each of the cases, the steady-state concentration profile of flue gas was computed on the face of House 1 (with the vent) and the face of House 2 (neighboring house) opposite the vent. The objective of the simulations was to determine the maximum concentration of flue gas (or carbon monoxide) on the surface of each house. The point of maximum concentration is also the point of minimum dilution, which is defined as the reciprocal of the maximum normalized concentration. It measures the degree to which the flue gas has been diluted in the worst case position on each house (e.g., a minimum dilution of 1000 means that the flue gas has been diluted by a factor of 1000 in the worst case location). The point of minimum dilution on House 1 was determined at distances greater than 4 ft from the vent because existing guidelines state that doors or windows should be located at least this distance from the vent location. The point of minimum dilution on House 2 could occur anywhere. No assumptions about the location of doors or windows on either house were made.

The contour plots in the presentation shown in Appendix A of the full report (*http://www.nfpa.org/~/media/Files/Research/Research_Foundation/Research_Foundation_reports/gas_appliance_sidewall_venting.pdf*) show the normalized concentration of flue gas. The plots are scaled by color, from blue to red, with blue representing the lowest concentration and red representing the highest concentration. The scale is from a normalized concentration (or mole fraction) of 0.001 (dilution factor 1000 on the blue end) to 0.2 (dilution factor 5 on the red end), and is the same in all of the plots. Setting low and high limits for the contour plots allows for a view of the shape and trajectory of the plumes. There is no color in the plots where the concentration is outside the limits. In other words, at positions outside the edge of the plumes shown in the contour plots, the normalized concentration is below 0.001 and the dilution factor is greater than 1000.

Results of Cases Initially Agreed Upon

The value and location of minimum dilution (maximum concentration) on the face of each house was recorded for each of the CFD cases run in this study. Table S5.2 lists the cases, their input parameters, and the results for Houses 1 and 2. The two cases that are highlighted at the bottom of the table are the two additional cases that were decided upon after completion of the initial eleven cases. The rationale for selecting those cases is discussed in the section titled Results for Two Final Cases of this report. The X and Y coordinates for the location of maximum concentration are given in feet, with the origin at the base of the house vertically and centered horizontally. The X coordinate measures how far horizontally the location of maximum concentration is from the center of the house, while the Y coordinate measures how far the location of maximum concentration is from the ground.

With the exception of the case with an east wind of 7 mph (Case 9), which is the direction that runs between the houses, the horizontal location of maximum concentration is within 4 ft from the center of either house. Unless deflected horizontally by wind, the plume generally rises directly in plane with the vent. The vertical location is affected most by the outdoor temperature (or more specifically, the difference in temperature between the flue gas and ambient air) and house separation distance. Temperature difference and separation distance influence the vertical location of maximum concentration because of the competing rates of flue gas convection and buoyancy. When the outdoor temperature is low, the flue gas will be more buoyant and rise more rapidly relative to the rate that it is forced horizontally by the vent. The opposite is true when the outdoor temperature is warmer. When the houses are separated by a greater distance, the plume has more time to rise before impacting the neighboring house.

The effects of parameters that varied in the first eleven cases are discussed in the sections that follow. These parameters include house separation distance, outdoor temperature, vent terminal design, and wind speed and direction.

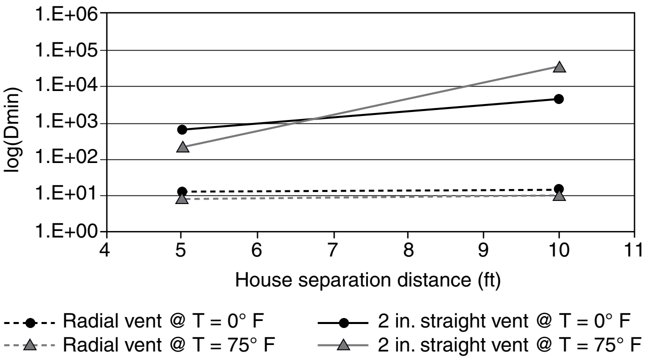
Effect of House Separation Distance. Exhibit S5.4 shows very little effect of separation distance on the House 1 minimum dilution factor with a radial vent (dotted lines). The radial vent design traps the flue gas nearer to House 1 regardless of house separation distance. There is an effect of separation distance on the dilution factor for House 1 with the 2 in. straight vent (solid lines) because the straight vent design throws the flue gas away from House 1 toward House 2. When the separation distance is higher, the gas is allowed to disperse away from House 1 and is more diluted near House 1. Regardless of separation distance, however, the flue gas is diluted by more than a factor of 100 before reaching the surface of House 1.

Exhibit S5.5 shows a similar plot of minimum dilution factor on House 2, which is the neighboring house.

TABLE S5.2 Matrix of Results for All CFD Cases

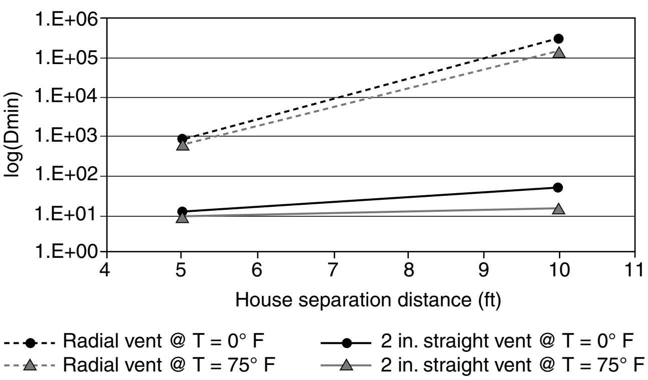
	Parameters					Results for House 1				Results for House 2			
Case	*Vent*	*Bldg. Sep. (ft)*	*Wind Dir*	*Wind Speed (mph)*	*Amb Temp (°F)*	*Max Conc X Pos (ft)*	*Max Conc Y Pos (ft)*	*Max Conc*	*Min Dilution*	*Max Conc X Pos (ft)*	*Max Conc Y Pos (ft)*	*Max Conc*	*Min Dilution*
1	Radial	5	NA	0	0	0.15	7.25	8.00E-02	13	−0.05	19.50	1.15E-03	869
2	Radial	5	NA	0	75	−0.08	7.40	1.17E-01	9	0.45	19.73	1.62E-03	616
3	Radial	10	NA	0	0	−0.15	7.25	7.55E-02	13	−0.49	17.76	3.29E-06	304,300
4	Radial	10	NA	0	75	−0.15	7.25	1.04E-01	10	0.03	14.99	6.40E-06	156,200
5	2 in. Straight	5	NA	0	0	2.01	19.63	1.61E-03	622	−0.46	1.53	8.46E-02	12
6	2 in. Straight	5	NA	0	75	4.39	19.74	4.55E-03	220	0.32	1.07	9.91E-02	10
7	2 in. Straight	10	NA	0	0	−0.17	19.57	2.41E-04	4,145	0.15	10.14	2.05E-02	49
8	2 in. Straight	10	NA	0	75	0.59	7.20	3.18E-05	31,420	−0.06	2.30	5.93E-02	17
9	2 in. Straight	5	East	7	75	17.85	0.82	6.68E-03	150	17.39	2.08	9.40E-04	1,064
10	2 in. Straight	5	North	7	75	−2.28	7.48	2.63E-02	38	−2.38	1.51	6.60E-02	15
11	2 in. Straight	5	South	7	75	3.66	17.48	8.57E-03	117	0.32	1.07	7.20E-02	14
12	45° Down	5	NA	0	0	−0.50	19.82	1.77E-03	564	0.49	0.28	1.20E-01	8
13	3 in. Straight	5	NA	0	0	0.97	19.59	1.23E-03	813	0.31	3.53	8.48E-02	12

EXHIBIT S5.4



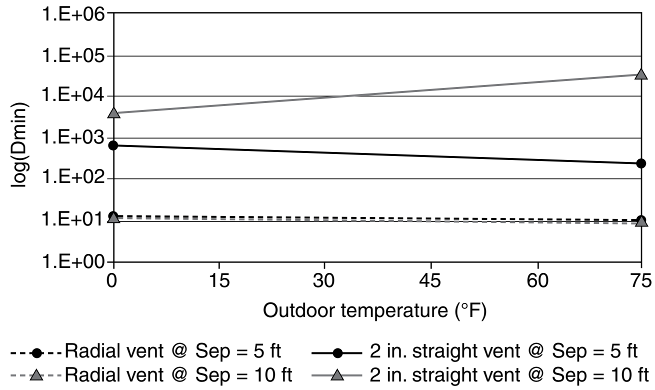
Effect of House Separation Distance on the Minimum Dilution Factor for House 1.

EXHIBIT S5.5



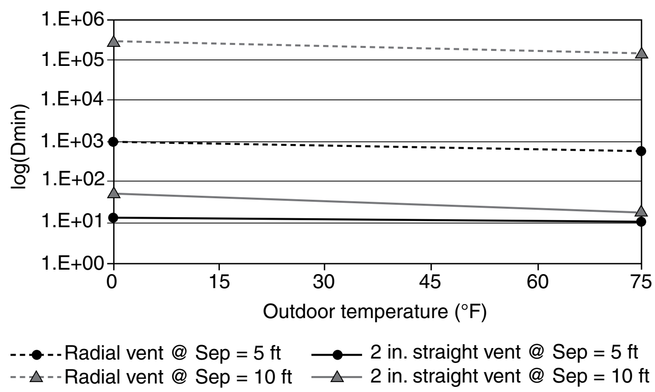
Effect of House Separation Distance on the Minimum Dilution Factor for House 2.

EXHIBIT S5.6



Effect of Outdoor Temperature on the Minimum Dilution Factor for House 1.

EXHIBIT S5.7



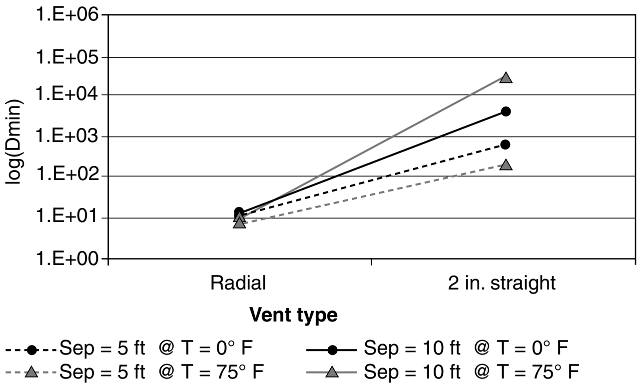
Effect of Outdoor Temperature on the Minimum Dilution Factor for House 2

The results are virtually opposite those in Exhibit S5.4 for House 1. Because the radial vent traps the flue gas nearer to House 1, the dilution factors are much higher, and well above the threshold, on House 2. Because the straight vent throws the flue gas toward House 2, the dilution factors are much lower on House 2. The case with a 2 in. straight vent, an outdoor temperature of 0°F, and a house separation distance of 10 ft (Case 7) is the only straight vent case with no wind that meets the threshold requirement for the neighboring house. In that case, the rate of buoyancy (rise) is just sufficient to allow the flue gas to disperse and be diluted by a factor of more than 44 before reaching House 2.

Effect of Outdoor Temperature. Exhibits S5.6 and S5.7 show plots of minimum dilution factor versus out-door temperature, without wind, for Houses 1 and 2, respectively. As discussed previously, outdoor temperature determines the rate of buoyancy or rise. When the outdoor temperature is cooler, the flue gas will rise more rapidly. Both plots show that temperature has a relatively small effect on dilution at the surface of either house. All of the plots thus far indicate that the dilution factors are governed more by vent design than by temperature. The effect of vent design is discussed in the next section.

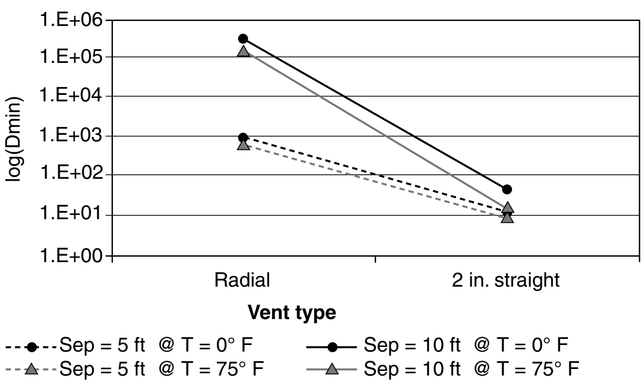
Effect of Vent Terminal Design. Exhibits S5.8 and S5.9 show plots of minimum dilution factor versus vent terminal design, without wind, on Houses 1 and 2, respectively, for the two vent designs considered in the initial set of cases (radial vent and 2 in. straight vent). In these plots, the dotted lines are for cases at a house separation distance of 5 ft and the solid lines represent cases with a separation distance of 10 ft. These plots clearly show that in the absence of wind,

EXHIBIT S5.8



Effect of Vent Terminal Design on the Minimum Dilution Factor for House 1.

EXHIBIT S5.9

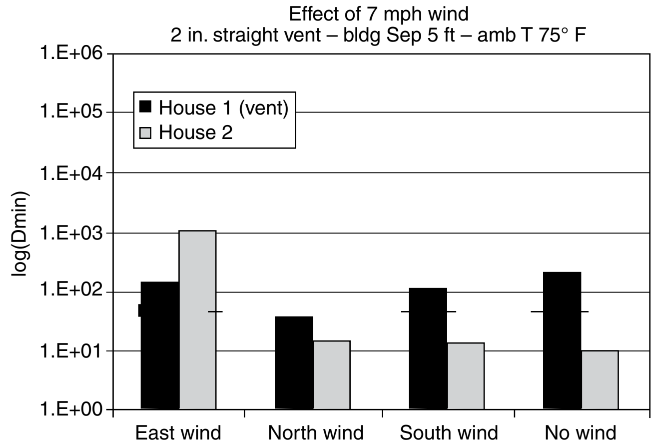


Effect of Vent Terminal Design on the Minimum Dilution Factor for House 2.

the dilution factor is most dependent on vent terminal design. The radial vent clearly traps the flue gas nearer to House 1 (low dilution factor) and protects House 2 (high dilution factor). The 2 in. straight vent produces the opposite effect. It throws the flue gas toward House 2 (low dilution factor) and protects House 1 (high dilution factor).

Effect of Wind Speed and Direction. Two wind cases, both at a wind speed of 7 mph, were initially selected for analysis in this study, one perpendicular to the houses and one parallel, or between the two houses. After some discussion among members of the technical review committee, it was decided to run the perpendicular wind cases in both directions (i.e., wind from behind House 1 and wind from behind House 2) because it was not clear the effects would be the same. When the wind blows over a building, there is

EXHIBIT S5.10



Effect of Wind on the Minimum Dilution Factor for Both Houses.

a zone of recirculation (recirculation shadow) on the downwind side of the building. There is turbulence on the downwind side that forces the air downward in a circular fashion and back toward the downstream face of the building. It was not clear that the effect of a shadow cast by House 1 in the presence of a south wind (from behind House 1) would be the same as a shadow cast by House 2 in the presence of a north wind (from behind House 2).

Exhibit S5.10 shows a bar chart that shows the dilution factor on both House 1 (blue bars) and House 2 (red bars) in each of the three wind cases. In each of the cases, the vent is a 2 in. straight vent, the house separation distance is 5 ft, and the outdoor temperature is 75°F. Case 6, which is the similar case with no wind, is included in the plot for comparison. The east wind, which is the direction between the houses and parallel to them, carries the flue gas away and dilutes the space between the houses considerably.

The effects of wind perpendicular to the houses are similar in each direction. As seen in Exhibit S5.10, the straight vent tends to carry the flue gas away from House 1 and toward House 2, resulting in higher dilution factors on House 1 (blue bar) and lower dilution factors on House 2 (red bar). The bars for the north and south wind cases are similar, but the dilution factor on House 1 is decreased compared to the case with no wind, and the dilution factor on House 2 is slightly increased compared to the case with no wind. Generally speaking, the turbulence that is created between the houses as a result of wind perpendicular to the houses tends to mix and disperse the flue gas. As a result, it reaches the surface of House 1 at a slightly higher concentration, and House 2 at a lower concentration, than it would without wind.

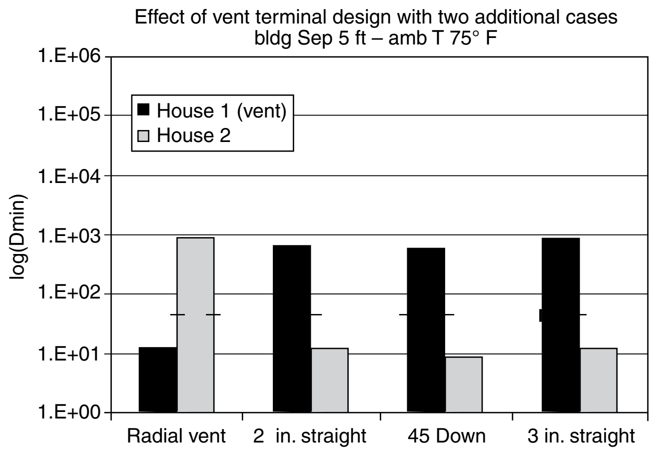
Results for Two Final Cases

The definition of two final cases was held in reserve pending the insight that might be gained from the analysis of the results of the eleven cases initially defined. From those initial cases, it was determined that wind certainly can have a profound effect on, and in most cases be helpful with, flue gas dispersion. Wind helps disperse and sweep the flue gas away, particularly in this application where the vent is located between two buildings and the wind is forced to approach the vent at an angle. Outdoor temperature had little effect, and no real determination could be made as to a limit for house separation distance for safe venting. Vent design emerged as the dominant factor. It is also a factor over which code bodies, manufacturers, and installers have some control. Regardless of house separation distance, the radial vent design protects the neighboring house and traps the flue gas near the house with the vent, while the 2 in. straight vent sends the flue gas away from House 1 toward House 2. The two final cases were designed to begin answering whether it is possible to achieve sufficient dilution on both houses at a separation distance of 5 ft with different vent terminal designs. It was further decided to run the two cases with no wind and at a winter outdoor temperature of 0°F.

The two vent terminal designs selected for the final cases are shown in Exhibit S5.3. The 45-degree down vent has a nominal diameter of 2 in. and directs the flue gas downward at a 45-degree angle. It was selected because the interaction of the flue gas with the ground could create turbulence and allow the gas to disperse more before reaching House 2. The 3 in. straight vent design was chosen to decrease the momentum of the flue gas as it exits the vent. Increasing the diameter from 2 in. to 3 in. decreases the flue-gas velocity by a factor of 55 percent and could perhaps allow the gas to disperse more before reaching House 2.

Exhibit S5.11 shows a bar chart of minimum dilution factors on House 1 (blue bars) and House 2 (red bars) for the four vent designs modeled in this study. In all of the cases there is no wind, the house separation distance is 5 ft, and the outdoor temperature is 0°F. Both the 45-degree down vent and the 3 in. straight vent produce results similar to the 2 in. straight vent. The 45-degree down vent sends the flue gas along the ground, but it still reaches House 2 at a concentration similar to the 2 in. straight vent. Similarly, the 3 in. straight vent does not slow the flue gas down enough to lower the concentration as it reaches House 2.

EXHIBIT S5.11



Effect of Vent Terminal Design on the Minimum Dilution Factor for Both Houses.

SUMMARY

This study takes the first steps toward understanding the physics and identifying the important factors in sidewall venting of gas appliances between buildings. It provides an initial foundation for building a sound technical basis for establishing codes and guidelines. Fluid-dynamics modeling by itself is rarely sufficient for answering important real-world questions, particularly when those questions relate to safety, potential damage to property, or the success or failure of commercial products. To move forward, it will be important to establish the validity of these results, and to extend the modeling analyses to more real-world conditions.

There are a number of ways that one might consider to accomplish the necessary validation, extend the modeling, and move toward a more detailed, comprehensive, and technically sound justification for sidewall venting guidelines. It is possible to conduct experimental studies using a controlled environment and an appliance or set of appliances, and by constructing walls and/or inexpensive buildings. It would be possible then to visualize the plumes under various conditions and measure plume dispersion using tracer gas. CFD models of the experiments could be conducted in parallel to validate the models and refine the modeling procedures.

Another approach would be for the industry participants to note field cases where sidewall venting between houses resulted in problems such as ice buildup or infiltration of vent gases. If the industry participants were to note the conditions in the problem cases, such as appliance details, vent design, house separation, outdoor temperature, etc., then Battelle could use that information to construct and validate fluid-dynamics models. It would probably require a heating season to accumulate problem cases of interest, after which a set of them could be selected for analysis by Battelle. After validation, the modeling could then be used with confidence to answer questions related to conditions for which no direct data are available. While there would be lag time in generating the needed results, the cost of this approach is likely to be far lower than a detailed experimental study.

The results of this limited study do show that vent design is important for safely venting flue gas between buildings. This study showed that the radial vent design could possibly cause problems for the house with the vent, while straight vent designs could cause problems for a neighboring house that is less than 10 ft away. It seems reasonable that there are alternative vent-terminal designs between these limits that could prevent problems on both houses. There is an opportunity for industry to meet this need by designing new vent terminals that will disperse and dilute sidewall-vented flue gas between buildings.

REFERENCES

1. Rutz, A. L., D. D. Paul, D. W. DeWerth, and R. A. Borgeson, "GRI's Venting Research Program: Activities at Battelle and A.G.A. Laboratories (1988–1994)," Final Report No.: GRI-94/0371, Gas Research Institute, October 1994.
2. Barrett, R. E., "Venting Gas-Fired Appliances in Multistory Buildings: A Review of the State of the Art," Gas Research Institute Report No. GRI-92/0529, June 1992.
3. Reuther, J., N. Leslie, and R. Hemphill, "Justification for Sidewall Vent-Terminal Locations for Gas Appliances," 50th Proceeding of the International Appliance Technology Conference, pp. 231–242, IATC, 1999.
4. Reuther, J. J., and R. Hemphill, "Vent-terminal locations as related to air infiltration and indoor air quality," American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning, *ASHRAE Transactions*, 108(1), pp. 563–571, 2002.
5. Paul, D., S. Ricci, S. Talbert, and J. Reuther, "Minimum Clearances for Sidewall Venting of Gas-Fired Appliances," Gas Appliance Manufacturers Association, Final Report prepared by Battelle, April 2007.
6. NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code,* National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2009 edition.

Supplement 6

Purging

Theodore C. Lemoff, P.E.

Editor's Note: *Purging is the process of replacing air in a gas piping system with fuel gas prior to use after construction or repairs, or replacing the fuel gas in a piping system with air or inert gas prior to removal, modification, or repair. A significant change in the 2012 edition of NFPA 54 was an extensive revision to Section 8.3, Purging. The changes were made pursuant to recommendations by the U. S. Chemical Safety Board (CSB) as a result of its investigation of an incident on June 9, 2009, at a ConAgra food processing plant in Garner, North Carolina. The incident caused 4 fatalities, 67 injuries, and significant damage to the building, which ultimately led to the closing of the plant. The incident resulted from the ignition of gas released during purging of a new water heater into the building during a normal work shift.*

CONAGRA INCIDENT

Both natural gas and propane are odorless, and a readily identifiable odor called mercaptan is added to natural gas and propane to assist in identifying leaks. The odor is similar to skunk odor and is widely recognized as the "gas smell." The use of odor has significant value but also limitations. Odor fade can occur, especially in new gas piping systems where the gas remains stagnant for some time. Odor fatigue can also occur, where after a period of time the sense of smell becomes used to the odor, and it is not recognized. In addition, some people have a reduced ability to smell odors, either all the time or at certain times such as during a cold or flu.

On the day of the incident the new natural gas fired water heater was being placed into service in the ConAgra Slim Jim[1] plant in Garner, North Carolina. The contractor was purging the new gas line into an interior utility room in the production area. There were problems in lighting the new water heater, and purging continued intermittently for approximately 2½ hours. No provisions were made to remove gas from the building while purging was in process. The over 200 employees in the plant were not formally notified of the purging, nor were they removed from the area. Plant workers were aware that the installation was nearing completion and that start-up was in progress. Several plant workers noticed the smell of gas in the area of the construction, which was in a large production area. They were not concerned because they believed that the gas odor was a normal part of the start-up of the new water heater. It is not clear how the contractor was determining the concentration of purged gas in either the mechanical room in which the water heater was installed or the production area that surrounded the mechanical room. The CSB report states that the sense of smell was being used, while an OSHA report[2] states that a combustion analyzer was being used to monitor gas levels in the mechanical room. A combustion analyzer is not capable of detecting fuel gas, but the gas concentration could be inferred from reduced oxygen concentration. Because the contractor conducting the purging did not survive the explosion, it is not possible to determine what method of gas detection was being used. Exhibit S6.1 shows the damage to the plant following the ignition. Note the collapsed roof and blown-out wall. In addition to the damage caused by the explosion, there was a significant release of ammonia from the plant's refrigeration equipment, which hampered rescue activity.

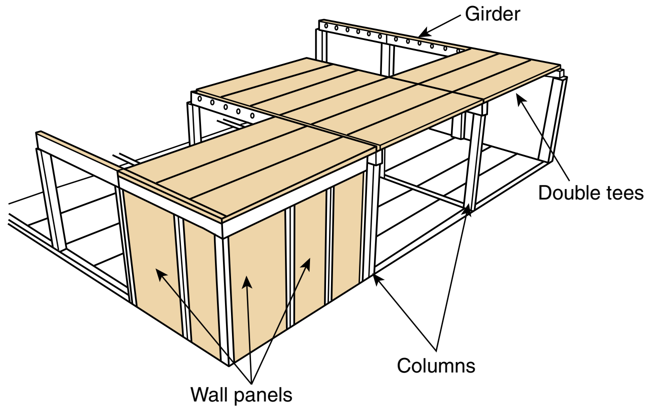
[1] A "Slim Jim" is a dried beef sausage snack food.

[2] Transcript of ConAgra Foods Public Meeting 2-4-20, Page 103

EXHIBIT S6.1

View of the ConAgra Plant after the Explosion.

EXHIBIT S6.2



ConAgra Plant Construction.

The new water heater had natural gas delivered by a new 3 in. pipe, 120 ft (37 m) long. It was tied into an existing 6 in. plant gas line on the roof. Because of the difficulties in lighting the water heater, it was perceived that the gas line was not effectively purged of air. Therefore, purging was conducted intermittently over a period of approximately 2½ hours. During this time natural gas accumulated in the utility room and in the plant production area in which the utility room was located. It is well known that the odorant used in fuel gas can fade when odorized gas is in contact with steel, as any rust on the pipe can provide oxygen to react with the odorant and the odorant can be adsorbed onto the steel surface. In addition, the nose can become saturated by exposure to any odor over a period of time. As workers in the plant smelled the gas, it must be concluded that odor fade was not a factor in this incident.

The natural gas ignited at 11:25 AM, causing an explosion. The explosion resulted in building failure due to the type of construction. The building was constructed of concrete with concrete walls and ceiling panels. The wall panels were formed in sections and moved to a vertical position. Concrete columns supported notched girders in which the roof panels were installed, as shown in Exhibit S6.2.

The roof panels were a precast concrete "double tee" type, which weighed about 12 tons (10,900 kg) each. After installation, the roof was covered with insulation and roofing material to prevent water from entering the building. The force of the explosion moved the columns and girders that held the roof panels, and about one-third of the double tee roof panels fell. Many of the roof panels rested on storage racks, equipment, and other items in the building. The falling panels crushed three workers to death, and four workers were severely burned. One worker died later. An additional 71 people were hospitalized, including three fire fighters who were exposed to toxic anhydrous ammonia from the plant's refrigeration system.

The Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) supports Urban Search and Rescue teams that are available in emergencies. One such team is located in Raleigh, North Carolina, and they participated in the initial search of the building immediately after the explosion. Because of the released anhydrous ammonia from the refrigeration system, they wore protective suits and self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA), which limited their mobility (see Exhibit S6.3). The fallen roof panels and other machinery further slowed rescue efforts, as shown in Exhibit S6.4. The plant personnel were able to provide information on missing workers, which aided the rescue efforts. Over 600 man-hours of search and rescue operations resulted in the rapid identification of workers trapped and their removal.

Following the incident the plant was returned to service, but has subsequently been closed. For more details on the ConAgra incident, see the video produced by the CSB and available on its website.[3]

CSB INVESTIGATION AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The CSB conducts root cause investigations of chemical accidents at fixed industrial facilities. The agency does not issue fines or citations, but does make recommendations to plants; regulatory agencies such as the Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA), the Environmental

[3] www.csb.gov

EXHIBIT S6.3

Emergency Responder at the ConAgra Incident in a Protective Suit with SCBA.

EXHIBIT S6.4

Interior of the ConAgra Plant after the Explosion.

Protection Agency (EPA), and the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA); industry organizations; and labor groups. Congress established the CSB to be non-regulatory and independent of other agencies so that its investigations might, where appropriate, review the effectiveness of regulations and regulatory enforcement. CSB recommendations do not have the force of law as the CSB is not a regulatory agency. However, their recommendations are taken seriously by most of the organizations that receive them. Changes are usually made in response to the CSB recommendations, either by making the changes proposed by CSB or by taking other actions that have the same effect using a different method. Occasionally, the recommendations are not accepted and reasons for not accepting are provided.

On February 4, 2010, CSB recommended that NFPA revise NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*, as follows:

> Enact a Tentative Interim Amendment as well as permanent changes to NFPA 54, National Fuel Gas to require that during the purging of fuel gas piping at industrial, commercial, and public facilities:
>
> (a) Purged fuel gases shall be directly vented to a safe location outdoors, away from personnel and ignition sources
>
> (b) If it is not possible to vent purged gases outdoors, purging gas to the inside of a building shall be allowed only upon approval by the authority having jurisdiction of a documented risk evaluation and hazard control plan. The evaluation and plan shall establish that indoor purging is necessary and that adequate safeguards are in place such as:
>
> - Evacuating nonessential personnel from the vicinity of the purging
> - Providing adequate ventilation to maintain the gas concentration at an established safe level, substantially below the lower explosive limit; and
> - Controlling or eliminating potential ignition sources
>
> (c) Combustible gas detectors be used to continuously monitor the gas concentration at appropriate locations in the vicinity where purged gases are released
>
> (d) Personnel are trained about the problems of odor fade and odor fatigue and warned against relying on odor alone for detecting releases of fuel gases

CHANGES TO NFPA 54

The National Fuel Gas Code committee met later in February and acted on the CSB recommendations. The committee agreed that more prescriptive requirements for gas purging were needed; however, they proposed an alternate approach. The committee agreed that the more stringent purging requirements were needed for industrial and similar facilities, but that these stricter requirements would be onerous for residential and residential-like installations, because there has been no indication of fatalities or injuries while purging these smaller facilities. The committee therefore issued a Tentative Interim Amendment on August 4, 2010. The TIA establishes different sets of requirements for fuel gas purging depending on the size of the piping system. Where a fuel gas piping system has a design operating pressure greater than 2 psig or consists of piping larger than 2 in. nominal pipe and exceeds the prescribed lengths in Table 8.3.1 of the code, then it must comply with the following requirements:

1. The point of discharge must be controlled with a shutoff valve.
2. The point of discharge must be located at least 10 ft (3.0 m) from sources of ignition, at least 10 ft (3.0 m) from building openings, and at least 25 ft (7.6 m) from mechanical air intake openings.
3. During discharge, the open point of discharge must be continuously attended and monitored with a combustible gas indicator
4. Purging operations introducing fuel gas must be stopped when 90 percent fuel gas by volume is detected within the pipe.
5. Persons not involved in the purging operations must be evacuated from all areas within 10 ft of the point of discharge.

For all other piping systems, the point of discharge may be located indoors if it is connected to a continuous ignition source, such as an appliance burner (that is not located in a combustion chamber) or a burner designed specifically for such purpose, or if the point of discharge is continuously monitored with a combustible gas detector so that the purging operation is stopped immediately when fuel gas is detected. (See Section 8.3 of the code for additional requirements related to the combustible gas indicator and the combustible gas detector.)

Following the issuance of the TIA, the CSB issued a statement commending the National Fuel Gas Code committee for their prompt action on CSB's recommendation. While NFPA 54 is not adopted in all states, the other model code groups with fuel gas coverage issued identical amendments to their codes.

NFPA 54 contains purging requirements that are essentially the same as the TIA, but have further editorial revisions. See Section 8.3 of NFPA 54 for the complete requirements.

GAS BLOWING

On February 7, 2010, an explosion occurred at a construction site where a natural gas–fueled electric generating plant was being built. High-pressure (approximately 650 psig) natural gas was being used to "blow out" the weld slag, dirt, and debris from the fuel gas piping system in preparation for commissioning. The point of discharge was open to atmosphere with the intent that atmospheric air flow would dissipate the flammable gas. On the day of the incident, the gas was not dissipated in the atmosphere, but migrated into the unfinished structure where it found a source of ignition and caused an explosion. While this incident was caused by an uncontrolled release of fuel gas, it is not related to purging and is therefore not addressed by NFPA 54. In response to urgent recommendations issued by CSB following this incident, NFPA developed a new standard, NFPA 56, *Standard for Fire and Explosion Prevention During Cleaning and Purging of Flammable Gas Piping Systems*. The requirements for purging in NFPA 56 do not apply to systems already covered by NFPA 54, but are intended to provide coverage for many similar applications that are not covered by NFPA 54.

Supplement 7

Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing (CSST)

Theodore C. Lemoff, P.E.

Author's Note: *The author recognizes the valuable input of Mr. Robert Torbin of Omega Flex, who was involved in the planning and oversight of the research project summarized in this supplement.*

LIGHTNING DAMAGE TO CSST

Reports of electrical arcing damage to corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) products caused by lightning strikes was reported during the early 2000s. This damage typically resulted in a perforation of the side wall, as shown in Exhibit S7.1. Industry concerns resulted in the performance of several technical studies [1, 2, 3] regarding the means to minimize lightning-related damage. Electrical bonding and grounding are known as effective methods to dissipate lightning energy.

Lightning energy is one of the most destructive forces on earth. Electrical energy levels can reach millions of volts when lightning directly strikes a building, causing havoc with all metallic and non-metallic materials within the structure. However, it is important to note that the arcing damage caused to CSST products is not a result of being energized by the lightning strike directly, but from an imbalance of voltage potential on neighboring metallic systems. Lightning energy will travel to ground using all possible pathways whether the building is directly or indirectly struck. Furthermore, lightning energy can enter a structure from underground through the grounding electrode system because of the direct connection to earth of the grounding electrodes. In either case, the pertinent feature of these metallic systems is not their robustness, but rather their collective electrical connection to ground. Bonding is the intentional electrical connection of metallic systems to create what is known as an "equipotential" state, where all conductors in a building are at the same electrical energy level (or voltage).

Given that all metallic systems may become energized by the lightning strike, the bonding together of these metallic systems will minimize the differences in voltage build-up on each system. However, in accordance with the *National Electrical Code*® (*NEC*®), metallic systems are not required to be bonded in this equipotential manner. The *NEC* permits different levels of bonding depending on the type and/or use of the metallic system. Because metallic systems are bonded to the grounding system differently (or not at all), when the

EXHIBIT S7.1

CSST with Jacket Removed Showing Typical Lightning Damage.

voltage build-up is great enough, any significant differences in electrical potential between two metallic systems in close proximity to each other can result in arcing. The electrical energy in one metallic system will "jump" through the air from one system to another at a lower electrical potential. It is this arcing that can melt through the metallic wall of the CSST and cause a perforation. Achieving the equipotential state will help balance the magnitude and rate-of-rise of electrical energy induced onto the various metallic systems from the lightning strike and, thus, minimize the likelihood of arcing.

The bonding now required for CSST systems is an acknowledgment that the equipotential state is not achieved in typical residential construction. The additional bonding required for CSST is an attempt to address this shortcoming by requiring that CSST bonding be robust enough to better match the requirements for bonding stipulated for copper water service, structural steel, and various electrical and communication cables. These metallic systems are commonly installed in close proximity to CSST systems and represent situations where an imbalance in voltage potential is likely to exist.

CODE REVISION SUMMARY

Recommendations were made by CSST manufacturers in their installation instructions to utilize traditional direct bonding methods (on the CSST) similar to those applied in earlier editions of NFPA 54, *National Fuel Gas Code*, after lightning-related damage was reported. Beginning with the 2009 edition of NFPA 54, specific additional bonding instructions were included to minimize damage from nearby lightning strikes based on technical studies and manufacturer instructions. The revisions to the 2009 and later editions of NFPA 54 reflect the knowledge gained through years of industry experience with bonding of gas piping systems, input from the NFPA Technical Committee on Lightning Protection, and comprehensive industry-sponsored research. A synopsis of these changes can be summarized as follows:

- *2009 edition:* Mandatory requirements for direct bonding CSST in buildings were added, requiring CSST piping systems to be directly bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system at the gas service entrance using a 6 AWG copper wire (or equivalent). The gas service entrance was selected because other metallic systems in the house, including the water service, electrical service, and communications systems, were also bonded to the grounding system near this location.
- *2012 edition:* The bonding conductor requirement was revised to permit the connection of the bonding conductor to the piping system at a location between the entrance of the gas service into the building and the first downstream CSST fitting, with a bonding clamp, as shown in Exhibit S7.2. The bonding requirement was extended to include any existing or new piping system containing even a short segment of CSST.
- *2015 edition:* The bonding requirements were further revised to allow the bonding conductor to be connected to any appropriate location (rigid pipe segment or fitting or CSST fitting) within the CSST system; limit the length of the bonding conductor to 75 feet; and allow the bonding conductor to terminate either on the building grounding electrode system, or on the grounding electrode system for a lightning protection system, if installed in the building. Due to the corrugated design of CSST, a bonding clamp cannot be attached to tubing directly, and it must be connected to a fitting or a section of pipe or rigid tubing. If an additional grounding electrode is installed, this grounding electrode must be bonded to all other grounding electrodes used as part of the grounding system for the building.

EXHIBIT S7.2

Bonding to Steel Pipe Near a Section of CSST, Using a Bonding Clamp.

A research program was initiated following the publication of the 2012 edition of NFPA 54 following a review of the code requirements by the NFPA Standards Council. The Council directed that independent third-party research be conducted to verify that the installation method specified in NFPA 54 provides an adequate level of protection for CSST systems from "lightning induced failure with consequent gas leakage" [Standards Council Decision D#10-2].

The peer-reviewed research was conducted in two phases described below, and included a comprehensive review of the global state-of-the-art technology, understanding the impact of lightning events on metallic systems, evaluation of the electrical properties of CSST, computer simulations of lightning strikes to typical houses with CSST systems, and physical testing of simulated lightning strikes to CSST systems to validate the computer model results. The Final Reports from these research efforts were submitted to the National Fuel Gas Code committee for consideration and have been used to substantiate the modifications made in the 2015 edition of NFPA 54.

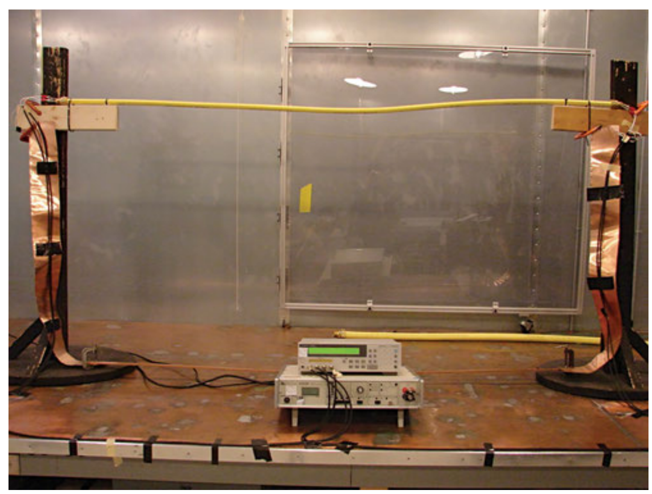
RESEARCH INTO LIGHTNING EFFECTS ON CSST

As previously stated, the NFPA Standards Council directed that the CSST industry demonstrate through independent third-party testing that the bonding requirements stipulated in the *National Fuel Gas Code* are effective in mitigating lightning-induced failure. This was accomplished through a two-phase research project. The first phase was completed by SEFTIM (a lightning consulting company in Paris, France) and entailed a complete engineering review of the state-of-the-art technology in lightning protection, bonding requirements, a search for lightning damage to gas piping around the world, and recommendations on the need for physical testing to verify the effectiveness of bonding as required for CSST systems. Included in their Final Report [4], SEFTIM recommended the performance of a testing program that included the determination of the pertinent electrical properties of CSST products and their associated jackets through laboratory testing; the development and analysis of computer simulations of a typical CSST piping system within a residential setting, including the flow of energy when energized by an indirect lightning strike; the evaluation of different lightning profiles and bonding conductor lengths and locations; the validation of the computer model through the physical testing of a full-sized CSST piping system under laboratory conditions of lightning; and the publication of a Final Technical Report. Indirect lightning strikes are strikes that first hit something other than the building or the gas piping in the building. Indirect strikes can first strike a tree, the earth, or another object near the building in which the gas piping is installed, and be carried into the building through some metallic pathway located in the foundation or underground.

Phase II of the research project was conducted by the Gas Technology Institute of Chicago and included a team comprised of SEFTIM, PowerCET Corporation (consultants in computer simulation of lightning effects), and Lightning Technologies Inc. (the lightning testing laboratory that conducted the tests). The Phase I research plan developed by SEFTIM was adopted, and the research was performed accordingly. Three critical technical areas were addressed in the Phase II program plan. First, the electrical behavior of CSST and the yellow insulating jacket was experimentally determined. The dielectric strength of the jacket was measured for all CSST products commercially available at that time. The minimum level of energy necessary to perforate the CSST wall was also measured. The resistivity and inductance of the various brands of CSST were also determined based on physical testing. Exhibit S7.3 shows experimental set-up for electrical properties testing of CSST.

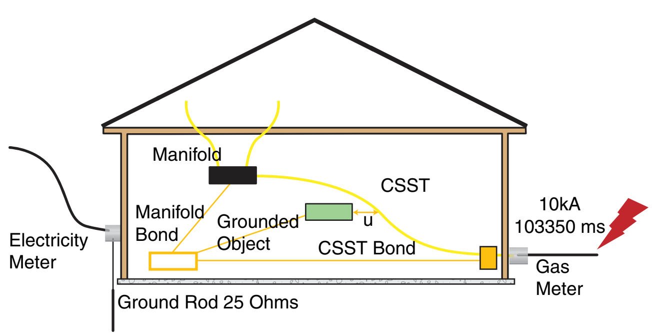
Second, a computer-based simulation of a typical residential home with a 100 foot CSST run from a gas meter to a gas appliance was modelled based on previous research performed by PowerCET. The model also simulated the effect of the bonding conductor and allowed for various locations and lengths (a # 6 AWG copper conductor was used for all simulations). Exhibit S7.4 shows a diagram of a typical test scenario. The model also accommodated different lightning energy profiles representative of both indirect and partial direct strikes. Energy levels were also varied throughout the simulations, as was the entry level of the lightning energy

EXHIBIT S7.3



A Test Cell at LTI Measuring Electrical Properties of CSST.

EXHIBIT S7.4



Typical CSST Test Scenario.

onto the gas piping system. The electrical performance data previously collected were populated into the model, and several "scenarios" were simulated using the model. The output from these simulated scenarios calculated the level of energy imposed onto the CSST from the lightning strike and determined whether that energy level was sufficient to perforate the tubing wall.

The third element of the research effort was a validation of the computer model output. This was accomplished by building a full-scale mockup of a gas system and testing it at the LTI facility. (The full-scale mockup was limited in length by the capabilities of the test facility.) LTI was able to input lightning energy profiles similar to those studied through the computer simulations. The full-scale mockup was recreated as a computer simulation in the same fashion as the other generic simulations. The output from the computer model was directly compared to the output from the physical mockup. The results from both the physical and computer models were within 5 percent. This result provided confidence and validation to the predictions made through the complete system simulations.

A draft Final Report was presented to the NFGC Committee in January 2013. Based on comments received from the committee, additional research was performed to answer concerns expressed by the committee during their discussions and deliberations. The Final Report [5] was issued in September 2013 and formed the basis for the modifications that were adopted into the 2015 edition of NFPA 54. The fundamental results from this extensive research effort can be summarized as follows:

- The basic bonding requirements included in the 2009 and 2012 editions of NFPA 54 are effective in mitigating the damage caused by electrical arcing induced from indirect lightning strikes.
- The research confirmed the long standing belief that a shorter bonding conductor performs better in reducing the amount of energy that is imposed on the CSST when energized by lightning.
- A bonding conductor length up to 150 feet eliminates any arcing damage that would result in a perforation of the CSST wall.
- The use of multiple bonding conductors placed at different locations within the piping system did not make any meaningful improvement in the effectiveness compared to the single bonding conductor/location.

The CSST industry submitted public comments to the NFPA 54 committee to revise NFPA 54 consistent with the findings of the research project. The committee accepted most of the proposed revisions, but limited the length of the bonding conductor to 75 feet (instead of the 150 feet shown to be effective in the research) to be conservative. With the 75 feet length limit, the committee also recognized the need to revise the requirements for locating the bonding connection to the piping system, as many residential and commercial buildings have segments of CSST in the gas piping systems more than 75 feet from an appropriate connection to ground. Based on the results from the computer simulations, the location of the bonding connection within the piping system was not a significant design variable compared to the benefits of a shorter conductor. Therefore, any specific location of the bonding connection to the piping system was eliminated, and the connection was permitted to be made at an appropriate location (on rigid pipe, fitting, or CSST fitting) that is consistent with the 75 feet limitation.

The committee also added a requirement that when an extra grounding electrode is installed (to meet the 75 feet restriction), the new grounding electrode must be bonded to all other grounding electrodes used, including any electrodes associated with a lightning protection system (if provided). This is consistent with the requirements of the *National Electrical Code.*

REFERENCES

1. Kraft, Brian and Robert Torbin, "Evaluation of CSST Gas Piping Subjected to Electrical Insult," Technical Report, October 2009.
2. Tobias, Dr. John, "Analysis of Lightning Protection for Metal Gas Piping Systems," GAMA Technical Report, March 27, 2006.
3. NAHB Research Center, "Corrugated Stainless Steel Tubing for Fuel Gas Distribution in Buildings and Concerns Over Lightning Strikes," Report Number 5737-01_080307, August 2007.
4. SEFTIM, "Validation of Installation Methods for CSST Gas Piping to Mitigate Lightning Related Damage," Fire Protection Research Foundation, Phase I Final Report, April 2011.
5. Gas Technology Institute, "Validation of Installation Methods for CSST Gas Piping to Mitigate Indirect Lightning Related Damage," Phase II Final Report, September 5, 2013.

Supplement 8

Technical/Substantive Changes from the 2012 Edition to the 2015 Edition of NFPA 54

Editor's Note: *Supplement 8 is included in the handbook as a guide to the user. The 2015 edition of the National Fuel Gas Code is compared here with the 2012 edition of the code to identify major code changes. These major code changes are also explained in the Comments column.*

2012 Edition	***2015 Edition***	***Comments***
Chapter 3 Definitions		
Not in 2012 edition	**3.3.25 Copper Alloy**. A homogenous mixture of two or more metals in which copper is the primary component, such as brass and bronze.	A new definition for *copper alloy* has been added to clarify its use in the code. "Brass" and "bronze" have been replaced throughout the code with "copper alloy."
3.3.67.1 Combustible Material. As pertaining to materials adjacent to or in contact with heat-producing appliances, vent connectors, gas vents, chimneys, steam and hot water pipes, and warm air ducts, materials made of or surfaced with wood, compressed paper, plant fibers, or other materials that are capable of being ignited and burned. Such material shall be considered combustible even though flame-proofed, fire-retardant treated, or plastered.	**3.3.64.1 Combustible (Material).** A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will ignite and burn; a material that does not meet the definition of noncombustible. [***101****,* 2012]	The definition for *combustible material* has been revised to reflect the definition in NFPA *101*.
3.3.67.2 Noncombustible Material. A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will not ignite, burn, support combustion, or release flammable vapors when subjected to fire or heat. Materials that are reported as passing ASTM E 136, *Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C,* are considered noncombustible materials.	**3.3.64.2 Noncombustible Material.** A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will not ignite, burn, support combustion, or release flammable vapors when subjected to fire or heat.	The definition for *noncombustible material* has been revised to be consistent with changes made to NFPA *101*. The test requirements have been relocated to Chapter 4.

2012 Edition	***2015 Edition***	***Comments***
Chapter 4 General		
Not in 2012 edition	**4.4 Noncombustible Material.** A material that complies with any of the following shall be considered a noncombustible material. (1) A material that, in the form in which it is used and under the conditions anticipated, will not ignite, burn , support combustion, or release flammable vapors when subjected to fire or heat (2) A material that is reported as passing ASTM E 136, *Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Vertical Tube Furnace at 750 Degrees C.* (3) A material that is reported as complying with the pass/fail criteria of ASTM E 136 when tested in accordance with the test method and procedure in ASTM E 2652, *Standard Test Method for Behavior of Materials in a Tube Furnace with a Cone-shaped Airflow Stabilizer, at 750 Degrees C.*	Test requirements for noncombustible material have been removed from the definition and relocated to be consistent with NFPA *101* language.
Chapter 5 Gas Piping System Design, Materials, and Components		
5.4.2.1 The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided [in cubic feet (cubic meters) per hour] shall be calculated using the manufacturers' input ratings of the appliances served, adjusted for altitude. Where the input rating is not indicated, the gas supplier, appliance manufacturer, or a qualified agency shall be contacted, or the rating from Table 5.4.2.1 shall be used for estimating the volumetric flow rate of gas to be supplied.	**5.4.2.1** The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided shall be the sum of the maximum input of the appliances served.	This requirement was reworded because manufacturer's ratings are not always available. The committee moved the advisory text and table to the annex, and altitude adjustment was relocated to a separate paragraph for greater visibility.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.4.2.2** The volumetric flow rate of gas to be provided shall be adjusted for altitude where the installation is above 2,000 ft.	See commentary on 5.4.2.1.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.4.1.3** Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) and chlorinated polyvinyl chloride (CPVC) plastic pipe, tubing, and fittings shall not be used to supply fuel gas.	This requirement was added to prevent the use of PVC and CPVC piping for conveying fuel gas. Such materials can become brittle over time and unable to maintain integrity under pressure.
5.6.8.4(8)(c) Installed or braced to prevent separation of the joint by gas pressure or external physical damage.	Not in 2015 edition	Item 8(c) was deleted because it is vague and unenforceable.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.8.4(9)** When pipe fittings are drilled and tapped in the field, the operation shall be in accordance with the following: (a) The operation shall be performed on systems having operating pressures of 5 psi or less. (b) The operation shall be performed by the gas supplier or their designated representative.	This item was added to provide prescriptive requirements for drilling and tapping operations.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
	(c) The drilling and tapping operation shall be performed in accordance with written procedures prepared by the gas supplier. (d) The fittings shall be located outdoors. (e) The tapped fitting assembly shall be inspected and proven to be free of leaks.	
5.6.10 Flanges. All flanges shall comply with ANSI/ASME B16.1, *Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings*, *Class 25, 125, and 250;* ANSI/ASME B16.20, *Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges, Ring Joint Spiral Wound and Jacketed*; or MSS SP-6, *Standard Finishes for Contact Faces of Pipe Flanges and Connecting-End Flanges of Valves and Fittings*. The pressure–temperature ratings shall equal or exceed that required by the application.	**5.6.10 Flanges.**	This requirement was expanded to include all applicable flange specifications.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.10.1 Flange Specifications.** **5.6.10.1.1** Cast iron flanges shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.1, *Gray Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Classes 25, 125, and 250.*	See commentary on 5.6.10.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.10.1.2** Steel flanges shall be in accordance with the following: ANSI/ASME B16.5, *Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: NPS 1/2 through NPS 24 Metric/Inch Standard*, or ANSI/ASME B16.47, *Large Diameter Steel Flanges: NPS 26 though NPS 60 Metric/Inch Standard*.	See commentary on 5.6.10.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.10.1.3** Non-ferrous flanges shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.24, *Cast Copper Alloy Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings: Classes 150, 300, 600, 900, 1500, and 2500.*	See commentary on 5.6.10.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.10.1.4** Ductile iron flanges shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.42, *Ductile Iron Pipe Flanges and Flanged Fittings, Classes 150 and 300*.	See commentary on 5.6.10.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.10.2 Dissimilar Flange Connections.** Raised-face flanges shall not be joined to flat-faced cast iron, ductile iron or non-ferrous material flanges.	See commentary on 5.6.10.
5.6.11.1 Acceptable materials shall include the following: (1) Metal (plain or corrugated) (2) Composition (3) Aluminum "O" rings and spiral-wound metal gaskets	**5.6.11.1** Acceptable materials shall include the following: (1) Metal (plain or corrugated) (2) Composition (3) Aluminum "O" rings (4) Spiral-wound metal gaskets (5) Rubber-faced phenolic (6) Elastomeric	The committee expanded 5.6.11 to include all acceptable gasket materials and related specifications.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.11.2 Gasket Specifications.**	See commentary on 5.6.11.1.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.11.2.1** Metallic flange gaskets shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.20, *Metallic Gaskets for Pipe Flanges: Ring-Joint, Spiral-Wound and Jacketed.*	See commentary on 5.6.11.1.

2012 Edition	***2015 Edition***	***Comments***
Not in 2012 edition	**5.6.11.2.2** Non-metallic flange gaskets shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME B16.21, *Nonmetallic Flat Gaskets for Pipe Flanges.*	See commentary on 5.6.11.1.
5.6.11.3 Full-face gaskets shall be used with all bronze and cast-iron flanges.	**5.6.11.3** Full-face flange gaskets shall be used with all non-steel flanges.	See commentary on 5.6.11.1.
5.6.11.2 When a flanged joint is opened, the gasket shall be replaced.	**5.6.11.4** When a flanged joint is separated, the gasket shall be replaced.	See commentary on 5.6.11.1.
5.9.1 General. Overpressure protection devices shall be provided to prevent the pressure in the piping system from exceeding that value that would cause unsafe operation of any connected and properly adjusted appliances.	**5.9.1 Where Required.** Where the serving gas supplier delivers gas at a pressure greater than 2 psi for piping systems serving appliances designed to operate at a gas pressure of 14 in. w.c. or less, overpressure protection devices shall be installed. Piping systems serving equipment designed to operate at inlet pressures greater than 14 in. w.c. shall be equipped with overpressure protection devices as required by the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.	The revised text eliminates requirements applicable to certain limited applications (e.g., utility service regulators). The revisions provide assurance that appliances with a maximum inlet pressure of 14 in. w.c. are not subjected to more than 2 psig even with a line regulator failure. Overpressure protection has also been extended to appliances designed to operate with maximum inlet pressures greater than 14 in. w.c.
5.8.3 Overpressure Protection. Where the gas supply design pressure in piping systems located indoors exceeds 2 psi (14 kPa) and line pressure regulators are installed to reduce the supply pressure to 14 in. w.c. (3.4 kPa) or less, all of the following shall apply: (1) Regulators shall be provided with factory-installed overpressure protection devices. (2) Overpressure protection devices shall limit the pressure downstream of the line pressure regulator to 2 psi (14 kPa) in the event of failure of the line pressure regulator.	**5.9.2.1** Where piping systems serving appliances designed to operate with a gas supply pressure of 14 in. w.c. or less are required to be equipped with overpressure protection by 5.9.1, each overpressure protection device shall be adjusted to limit the gas pressure to each connected appliance to 2 psi or less upon a failure of the line pressure regulator.	Relocated from 5.8.3 and revised. See commentary on 5.9.1.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.9.2.2** Where piping systems serving appliances designed to operate with a gas supply pressure greater than 14 in. w.c. are required to be equipped with overpressure protection by 5.9.1, each overpressure protection device shall be adjusted to limit the gas pressure to each connected appliance as required by the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions.	See commentary on 5.9.1.
5.9.1.1 The requirements of this section shall be met and a piping system deemed to have overpressure protection where a service or line pressure regulator plus one other device are installed such that the following occur: (1) Each device limits the pressure to a value that does not exceed the maximum working pressure of the downstream system. (2) The individual failure of either device does not result in overpressure of the downstream system.	**5.9.2.3** Each overpressure protection device installed to meet the requirements of this section shall be capable of limiting the pressure to its connected appliance(s) as required by this section independently of any other pressure control equipment in the piping system.	See commentary on 5.9.1.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
5.9.1.2 The pressure regulating, limiting, and relieving devices shall be maintained, inspection procedures shall be devised or instrumentation installed to detect failures or malfunctions of such devices, and replacements or repairs shall be made.	**5.9.2.4** Each gas piping system for which an overpressure protection device is required by this section shall be designed and installed so that a failure of the primary pressure control device(s) is detectable.	See commentary on 5.9.1.
Not in 2012 edition	**5.9.2.5** If a pressure relief valve is used to meet the requirements of this section, it shall have a flow capacity such that the pressure in the protected system is maintained at or below the limits specified in 5.9.2.1 under the following conditions: (1) The line pressure regulator for which the relief valve is providing overpressure protection has failed wide open. (2) The gas pressure at the inlet of the line pressure regulator for which the relief valve is providing overpressure protection is not less than the regulator's normal operating inlet pressure.	See commentary on 5.9.1.
5.9.2.1(2) Pilot-loaded back pressure regulator used as a relief valve designed so that failure of the pilot system or external control piping causes the regulator relief valve to open	**5.9.3.1(1)** Pressure relief valve	See commentary on 5.9.1.
5.9.2.1(3) A monitoring regulator installed in series with the service or line pressure regulator	**5.9.3.1(2)** Monitoring regulator	See commentary on 5.9.1.
5.9.2.1(4) A series regulator installed upstream from the service or line regulator and set to continuously limit the pressure on the inlet of the service or line regulator to the maximum working pressure of the downstream piping system.	**5.9.3.1(3)** Series regulator installed upstream from the line regulator and set to continuously limit the pressure on the inlet of the line regulator to the maximum values specified by 5.9.2.1 or less.	See commentary on 5.9.1.
5.9.2.1(5) An automatic shutoff device installed in series with the service or line pressure regulator and set to shut off when the pressure on the downstream piping system reaches the maximum working pressure or some other predetermined pressure less than the maximum working pressure. This device shall be designed so that it will remain closed until manually reset.	**5.9.3.1(4)** Automatic shutoff device installed in series with the line pressure regulator and set to shut off when the pressure on the downstream piping system reaches the maximum values specified by 5.9.2.1 or less. This device shall be designed so that it will remain closed until manually reset.	See commentary on 5.9.1.
5.13 Excess Flow Valve(s) Where automatic excess flow valves are installed, they shall be listed and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.	**5.13 Excess Flow Valve(s).** Where automatic excess flow valves are installed, they shall be listed to ANSI Z21.93/CSA 6.20, *Excess Flow Valves for Natural and LP-Gas with Pressures Up to 5 psig,* and shall be sized and installed in accordance with the manufacturers' instructions.	A reference to the ANSI/CSA excess flow valve standard is added. ANSI Z21.93/CSA 6.20 was issued March 2013.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
Chapter 7 Gas Piping Installation		
7.1.3 Protection Against Corrosion. Gas piping in contact with earth or other material that could corrode the piping shall be protected against corrosion in an approved manner. When dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used. Piping shall not be laid in contact with cinders. Uncoated threaded or socket welded joints shall not be used in piping in contact with soil or where internal or external crevice corrosion is known to occur.	**7.1.3. Corrosion Protection of Piping.** Steel pipe and steel tubing installed underground shall be installed in accordance with 7.1.3.1 through 7.1.3.9.	The revision provides specific requirements for protection of underground steel pipe from corrosion. The new requirements provide several steel installation options and require cathodic protection where bare steel is used. Where cathodic protection is used there are new requirements for periodic inspection to ensure the cathodic protection system is operating or to determine if it needs to be replaced.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.1** Zinc coating (galvanizing) shall not be deemed adequate protection for underground gas piping.	See commentary on 7.1.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.2** Underground piping shall comply with one or more of the following unless approved technical justification is provided to demonstrate that protection is unnecessary: (1) The piping shall be made of corrosion-resistant material that is suitable for the environment in which it will be installed. (2) Pipe shall have a factory-applied, electrically insulating coating. Fittings and joints between sections of coated pipe shall be coated in accordance with the coating manufacturer's instructions. (3) The piping shall have a cathodic protection system installed, and the system shall be maintained in accordance with 7.1.3.3 or 7.1.3.6.	See commentary on 7.1.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.3** Cathodic protection systems shall be monitored by testing and the results shall be documented. The test results shall demonstrate on of the following: (1) A pipe-to-soil voltage of –0.85 volts or more negative is produced, with reference to a saturated copper-copper sulfate half cell (2) A pipe-to-soil voltage of –0.78 volts or more negative is produced, with reference to a saturated KCl calomel half cell (3) A pipe-to-soil voltage of –0.80 volts or more negative is produced, with reference to a silver-silver chloride half cell (4) Compliance with a method described in Appendix D of Title 49 of the Code of Federal Regulations, Part 192	See commentary on 7.1.3.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.4** Sacrificial anodes shall be tested in accordance with the following: (1) Upon installation of the cathodic protection system, except where prohibited by climatic conditions, in which case the testing shall be performed not later than 180 days after the installation of the system (2) 12 to 18 months after the initial test (3) Upon successful verification testing in accordance with (1) and (2), periodic follow-up testing shall be performed at intervals not to exceed 36 months	See commentary on 7.1.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.5** Systems failing a test shall be repaired not more than 180 days after the date of the failed testing. The testing schedule shall be restarted as required in 7.1.3.4(1) and (2), and the results shall comply with 7.1.3.3.	See commentary on 7.1.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.6** Impressed current cathodic protection systems shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the following schedule: (1) The impressed current rectifier voltage output shall be checked at intervals not exceeding two months. (2) The pipe-to-soil voltage shall be tested at least annually.	See commentary on 7.1.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.7** Documentation of the results of the two most recent tests shall be retained.	See commentary on 7.1.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.8** Where dissimilar metals are joined underground, an insulating coupling or fitting shall be used.	See commentary on 7.1.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.1.3.9** Steel risers, other than anodeless risers, connected to plastic piping shall be cathodically protected by means of a welded anode.	See commentary on 7.1.3.
7.1.7.3 Tracer Wire. An electrically continuous corrosion-resistant tracer wire (minimum AWG 14) or tape shall be buried with the plastic pipe to facilitate locating. One end of the tracer wire or tape shall be brought aboveground at a building wall or riser.	**7.1.7.3 Tracer Wire.** An electrically continuous corrosion-resistant tracer shall be buried with the plastic pipe to facilitated locating. **7.1.7.3.1** The tracer shall be one of the following: (1) A product specifically designed for that purpose (2) Insulated copper conductor not less than 14 AWG **7.1.7.3.2** Where tracer wire is used, access shall be provided from aboveground or one end of the tracer wire or tape shall be brought aboveground at a building wall or riser.	The paragraph was revised to allow systems other than tracer wire to be used for locating underground piping. Revisions clarify the required properties of tracer wires and tapes.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.3.6 Shutoff Valves in Tubing Systems.** Shutoff valves in tubing systems in concealed locations shall be rigidly and securely supported independently of the tubing.	A requirement was added to ensure that shutoff valves in tubing systems are being independently supported to ensure that installation or operation of the shutoff valve will not cause any damage to the tubing system.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
7.13.2* CSST. CSST gas piping systems shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system. The bonding jumper shall connect to a metallic pipe or fitting between the point of delivery and the first downstream CSST fitting. The bonding jumper shall not be smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent. Gas piping systems that contain one or more segments of CSST shall be bonded in accordance with this section.	**7.13.2* CSST.** CSST gas piping systems, and gas piping systems containing one or more segments of CSST, shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system or, where provided, lightning protection grounding electrode system. **7.13.2.1** The bonding jumper shall connect to a metallic pipe, pipe fitting, or CSST fitting. **7.13.2.2** The bonding jumper shall not be smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent.	The committee revised 7.13.2 after review of a final research report by GTI, indicating that bonding a CSST piping system to the building's grounding electrode system with a 6 AWG copper wire will reduce the likelihood of perforation or failure. Revisions allow bonding to a lightning protection system where one is installed as an alternate bond location in some cases. See also Supplement 7 for a discussion of the research program and results.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.13.2.3** The length of the jumper between the connection to the gas piping system and the grounding electrode system shall not exceed 75 ft (22 m). Any additional electrodes shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system or, where provided, lightning protection grounding electrode system.	See commentary on 7.13.2.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.13.2.4** Bonding connections shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70, National Electrical Code.*	The new section provides criteria for the installation of the bonding connection and the devices used.
Not in 2012 edition	**7.13.2.5** Devices used for the bonding connection shall be listed for the application in accordance with ANSI/UL 467, *Grounding and Bonding Equipment.*	See commentary on 7.13.2.4.
Chapter 8 Inspection, Testing, and Purging		
8.1.1.5 A piping system shall be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a valve in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the piping system and test medium in an adjacent section, unless two valves are installed in series with a valved "telltale" located between theses valves. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the pressure.	**8.1.1.5** A piping system shall be tested as a complete unit or in sections. Under no circumstances shall a valve in a line be used as a bulkhead between gas in one section of the piping system and test medium in an adjacent section, unless a double block and bleed valve system is installed. A valve shall not be subjected to the test pressure unless it can be determined that the valve, including the valve closing mechanism, is designed to safely withstand the pressure.	The paragraph was updated to reflect current industry terminology, "double block and bleed."
8.1.5.2 The leakage shall be located by means of an approved gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid, or other approved leak detection methods. **Matches, candles, open flames, or other methods that provide a source of ignition shall not be used.**	**8.1.5.2** The leakage shall be located by means of an approved gas detector, a noncorrosive leak detection fluid, or other approved leak detection methods.	Subsection 8.1.2 prohibits the use of a flammable gas for the pressure test, therefore the prohibition on sources of ignition is not needed.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
Chapter 9 Appliance, Equipment, and Accessory Installation		
9.1.11.2 Repair Garages. Appliances installed in repair garages shall be installed in a detached building or room, separated from repair areas by walls or partitions, floors, or floor–ceiling assemblies that are constructed so as to prohibit the transmission of vapors and that have a fire resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, and that have no openings in the wall separating the repair area within 8 ft (2.4 m) of the floor. Wall penetrations shall be firestopped. Air for combustion purposes shall be obtained from the outdoors. The heating room shall not be used for the storage of combustible materials.	**9.1.11.2 Repair Garages.** Appliances installed in repair garages shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 30A, *Code for Motor Fuel Dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages*.	The requirement has been revised to refer to NFPA 30A, which provides more detailed installation requirements regarding heating systems.
9.3.1.2 Appliances of other than natural draft design and other than Category I vented appliances shall be provided with combustion, ventilation, and dilution air in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.	**9.3.1.2** Appliances of other than natural draft design, appliances not designated as Category I vented appliances, and appliances equipped with power burners shall be provided with combustion, ventilation, and dilution air in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.	The requirement was revised to address power burners. The intent is for manufacturers of power burner–type appliances to provide specific instructions for providing combustion and ventilation air.
Not in 2012 edition	**9.6.1(7)** Unlisted gas hose connectors for use in laboratories and educational facilities in accordance with 9.6.3.	The new requirement recognizes a common application in laboratories where Bunsen burners are connected to gas cocks with a simple hose.
9.6.1(7) In 9.6.1(2), 9.6.1(3), 9.6.1(4), 9.6.1(5), and 9.6.1(6), the connector or tubing shall be installed so as to be protected against physical and thermal damage. Aluminum alloy tubing and connectors shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where they are in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or are subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as water (except rain water), detergents, or sewage.	**9.6.1.1 Protection of Connectors.** Connectors and tubing addressed in 9.6.1(2), 9.6.1(3), 9.6.1(4), 9.6.1(5), and 9.6.1(6) shall be installed to be protected against physical and thermal damage. Aluminum alloy tubing connectors shall be coated to protect against external corrosion where they are in contact with masonry, plaster, or insulation or are subject to repeated wettings by such liquids as detergents, sewage, or water other than rainwater.	Relocated from 9.6.1(7) because it does not describe a specific connector.
9.6.1(8) Materials addressed in 9.6.1(2), 9.6.1(3), 9.6.1(4), 9.6.1(5), and 9.6.1(6) shall not be installed through an opening in an appliance housing, cabinet, or casing, unless the tubing or connector is protected against damage.	**9.6.1.2** Materials addressed in 9.6.1(2), 9.6.1(3), 9.6.1(4), 9.6.1(5), and 9.6.1(6) shall not be installed through an opening in an appliance housing, cabinet, or casing, unless the tubing or connector is protected against damage.	Relocated from 9.6.1(8) because it does not describe a specific connector.
Not in 2012 edition	**9.6.3** Injection (Bunsen) burners used in laboratories and educational facilities shall be permitted to be connected to the gas supply by an unlisted hose.	The new subsection recognizes the temporary connection to a gas supply by an unlisted hose in laboratories and classrooms.

2012 Edition	***2015 Edition***	***Comments***
Chapter 10 Installation of Specific Appliances		
10.12.5 Combustible Material Adjacent to Cooking Top. Any portion of combustible material adjacent to a cooking top section of a food service range, even though listed for close-to-wall installation, that is not shielded from the wall by a high shelf, warming closet, and so on, shall be protected as specified in 10.12.2 for a distance of at least 2 ft (0.6 m) above the surface of the cooking top.	**10.12.5 Combustible Material Adjacent to Cooking Top.** Listed and unlisted food service ranges shall be installed to provide clearance to combustible material of not less than 18 in. (460 mm) horizontally for a distance up to 2 ft (0.6 m) above the surface of the cooking top where the combustible material is not completely shielded by high shelving, warming closet, or other system. Reduced combustible material clearances are permitted where protected in accordance with Table 10.2.3.	The revision clarifies the intent for minimum clearances to combustible materials for all appliances up to 2 ft above the cooking top and condenses the requirement to a single location. See also commentary on A.10.12.5.
10.14 Hot Plates and Laundry Stoves.	Not in 2015 edition	The section was removed because hot plates and laundry stoves are not being readily produced and installed.
10.15.1 Floor-Mounted Units. **10.15.2 Built-In Units.**	**10.14.1 Installation.** Listed floor-mounted and built-in household cooking appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.	Sections on floor-mounted and built-in appliances were consolidated into one to remove antiquated and duplicative language.
Not in 2012 edition	**10.14.2(4)** Unlisted built-in household cooking appliances shall not be installed in, or adjacent to, unprotected combustible material.	See commentary on 10.14.2.
Chapter 12 Venting of Appliances		
12.5.2 Plastic Piping. Plastic piping used for venting appliances listed for use with such venting materials shall be approved.	**12.5.2 Plastic Piping.** Where plastic piping is used to vent an appliance, the appliance shall be listed for use with such venting materials and the appliance manufacturer's installation instructions shall identify the specific plastic piping material.	The paragraph was revised to align with Z21 and Z83 gas appliance standards requirements to identify appropriate venting materials in the manufacturer's installation instructions. In addition, the reference to AHJ approval was removed because the AHJ often doesn't have sufficient information to approve a specific plastic vent material.
12.7.3.3 Category II, Category III, and Category IV Appliances. The sizing of gas vents for Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.	**12.7.3.3 Category II, Category III, and Category IV Appliances.** The sizing of gas vents for Category II, Category III, and Category IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions. The sizing of plastic pipe specified by the appliance manufacturer as a venting material for Category II, III, and IV appliances shall be in accordance with the appliance manufacturer's instructions.	Guidance was added for sizing of plastic piping used to vent appliances because plastic piping does not meet the definition of a gas vent.
Annex A Explanatory Material		
Not in 2012 edition	**A.3.3.53 Gas Vent.** This definition does not apply to plastic plumbing piping that is specified as a venting material in the manufacturer's instructions for gas-fired appliances that are listed for venting with such piping.	Paragraph A.3.3.53 was added to clarify that plastic pipe is not a gas vent as defined by this code.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
Not in 2012 edition	**A.3.3.64.1 Combustible Material.** Materials are considered to be combustible even if they have been fire-retardant treated.	See commentary on 3.3.63.1.
Not in 2012 edition	**A.4.4** The provisions of 4.4 do not require noncombustible materials to be tested in order to be classified as noncombustible materials. Materials such as steel, concrete, and cement blocks are generally accepted to be noncombustible.	Paragraph A.4.4 was added to clarify that not all materials need to be tested in order to be classified as noncombustible.
Not in 2012 edition	**A.5.4.2.1** Some older appliances do not have a nameplate. In this case Table A.5.4.2.1 or an estimate of the appliance input should be used. The input can be based on the following: (1) A rating provided by the manufacturer (2) The rating of similar appliances (3) Recommendations of the gas supplier (4) Recommendations of a qualified agency (5) A gas flow test (6) Measurement of the orifice size of the appliance The requirement of 5.4.1 that the piping system provide sufficient gas to each inlet must be complied with.	See commentary on 5.4.2.1.
Table A.5.6 Pipe, Tube, Fittings, and Joints for Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum Gas Applications	**Table A.5.6 Pipe, Tube, Fittings, and Joints for Natural Gas and Liquefied Petroleum Gas Applications**	The table has been updated to replace brass and bronze with the more appropriate term, copper alloy. In addition, polyamide piping material was added to be consistent with requirements in 5.6.4.1.2.
A.7.13.2 The required bonding connection may be made from the piping to the electrical service equipment enclosure, to the grounded conductor at the electrical service, to the grounding electrode conductor (where of sufficient size), or directly to the grounding electrode. Listed clamps are manufactured to facilitate attachment of the bonding conductor to either a segment of rigid pipe or to a CSST brass fitting. Clamps should be installed so as to remain accessible when building construction is complete.	**A.7.13.2** The required bonding connection may be made from the piping to the electrical service equipment enclosure, to the grounded conductor at the electrical service, to the grounding electrode conductor (where of sufficient size), or directly to the grounding electrode. The bond may also be made to a lightning protection system grounding electrode (but not to down conductors) if the resulting length of the bonding conductor is shorter. Lightning protection grounding systems are bonded to the electrical service grounding electrodes, in accordance with NFPA 780, using a method to minimize impedance between the systems. Listed clamps are manufactured to facilitate attachment of the bonding conductor to either a segment of rigid pipe or to a CSST-copper alloy fitting. Clamps should be installed to remain accessible when building construction is complete.	The annex text was revised to convey that shorter lengths provide some improved bonding and that the required size of the bonding conductor is a minimum safety standard. The study that led to the development of the bonding connector requirement has also been cited. See also Supplement 7.

2012 Edition	*2015 Edition*	*Comments*
Clamps should be suitable for the location where they will be installed.	The maximum length of the bonding connection was established based on studies conducted by the Gas Technology Institute in Project Number 21323, *Validation of Installation Methods for CSST Gas Piping to Mitigate Indirect Lightning Related Damage*. The shortest practical length should always be used. State and local laws can limit who can attach the bonding connection to the building grounding system.	
Bonding conductors should be protected from physical damage and can be installed outdoors above grade or below grade or can be installed indoors.	The size of the bonding conductor, a 6 AWG copper wire, is a minimum size, and larger wire can be used. The requirement also permits conductors of different materials (of equivalent size) and both single wire and multi-strand.	
Not in 2012 edition	**A.8.1.1.7** Fuel gas piping operating above 125 psi should be cleaned in accordance with NFPA 56, *Standard for Fire and Explosion Prevention During Cleaning and Purging of Flammable Gas Piping Systems*.	A reference to NFPA 56 was added to aid users of high-pressure fuel gas systems.
Not in 2012 edition	**A.9.6.3** Laboratory burners, commonly called Bunsen burners, are a type of burner used in laboratories. The original Bunsen burner was invented by Robert Bunsen in 1852. The use of the term in NFPA 54 is intended to include all types of portable laboratory burners used in laboratories and educational facilities.	Paragraph A.9.6.3 was added to clarify the use of the term *Bunsen burner* in 9.6.3.
Not in 2012 edition	**Figure A.10.14.1 Separation Requirements for Cooktops.**	An illustrative diagram was added to help explain the vertical clearance requirements.
Annex C Suggested Method of Checking for Leakage		
C.3 (2) *For Gas Systems Using Undiluted LP-Gas System Preparation for Propane.*	**C.3(2)** *For Gas Systems Using Undiluted LP-Gas System Preparation for Propane.*	This section has been revised to incorporate leak checking of systems utilizing various gauge/regulator test assemblies. The type of test for each assembly installed has been included. Test requirements and procedures for systems with second-stage regulators supplied from one first-stage regulator have also been clarified.
Not in 2012 edition	**C.3(2)(b)** Insert a gauge/regulator test assembly between the container gas shutoff valve and first-stage regulator or integral two-stage regulator in the system. If a gauge/regulator test assembly with an inches water column gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (c) below; if a gauge/regulator test assembly with a 30 psi gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (d).	See commentary on C.3(2).

2012 Edition	***2015 Edition***	***Comments***
C.3(2)(c) By inserting a 30 psi (207 kPa) pressure gauge on the downstream side of the first-stage regulator, admitting normal operating pressure to the system and then closing the container valve. Enough pressure should be released from the system to lower the pressure gauge reading by 5 psi (34.5 kPa). The system should be allowed to stand for 3 minutes without showing an increase or a decrease in pressure gauge reading.	**C.3(2)(d)** When testing a system that has a first-stage regulator, or an integral two-stage regulator, insert a 30 psi (207 kPa) pressure gauge on the downstream side of the first-stage regulator or at the intermediate pressure tap of an integral two-stage regulator, admitting normal operating pressure to the system and then closing the container valve. Enough gas should be released from the system to lower the pressure gauge reading by a minimum of 2 psi (13.8 kPa) so that the first-stage regulator is unlocked. The system should be allowed to stand for 3 minutes without showing an increase or a decrease in pressure gauge reading.	Paragraph C.3(2)(c) has been moved and revised. The revision adds testing information for states utilizing 5 psi first-stage regulators. The minimum pressure reduction change to 2 psi ensures that 5 or 10 psi first-stage regulators are unlocked when the leak check is performed.
Not in 2012 edition	**C.3(2)(e)** Insert a gauge/regulator test assembly on the downstream side of the first-stage regulator or at the intermediate pressure tap of an integral two-stage regulator. If a gauge/regulator test assembly with an inches water column gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (c) above; if a gauge/regulator test assembly with a 30 psi gauge is inserted, follow the test requirements in (d) above.	See commentary on C.3(2).
Annex G Recommended Procedure for Safety Inspection of an Existing Appliance Installation	**Annex G Recommended Procedure for Safety Inspection of an Existing Appliance Installation**	Annex G has been rewritten and expanded to provide guidance on procedures to follow when inspecting gas appliances. It now reflects modern appliances and installation practices, and includes more inspection details.
Annex J Other Useful Definitions	Not in 2015 edition	Annex J has been removed because it is not being used.

Index

-W-

-Z-

IMPORTANT NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS CONCERNING NFPA® STANDARDS

NOTICE AND DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY CONCERNING THE USE OF NFPA STANDARDS

NFPA® codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards"), of which the NFPA document contained herein is one, and AGA's Z223, are developed through a consensus standards development process approved by the American National Standards Institute. This process brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve consensus on fire and other safety issues. While the AGA and NFPA administer the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, they do not independently test, evaluate, or verify the accuracy of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in AGA and NFPA Standards.

The AGA and NFPA disclaim liability for any personal injury, property or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance on AGA and NFPA Standards. The AGA and NFPA also make no guaranty or warranty as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published herein.

In issuing and making AGA and NFPA Standards available, the AGA and NFPA are not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity. Nor are the AGA and NFPA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using this document should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances.

The AGA and NFPA have no power, nor do they undertake, to police or enforce compliance with the contents of AGA and NFPA Standards. Nor do the AGA and NFPA list, certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for compliance with this document. Any certification or other statement of compliance with the requirements of this document shall not be attributable to the AGA and NFPA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

ADDITIONAL NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS

Updating of AGA AND NFPA Standards

Users of NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Standards") and AGA Z223.1 should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the issuance of new editions or may be amended from time to time through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments or corrected by Errata. An official AGA or NFPA Standard at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document together with any Tentative Interim Amendments and any Errata then in effect. In order to determine whether a given document is the current edition and whether it has been amended through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments or corrected through the issuance of Errata, consult appropriate NFPA publications such as the National Fire Codes® Subscription Service, visit the NFPA website at www.nfpa.org, or contact the AGA or NFPA at the addresses listed below.

Interpretations of NFPA Standards

A statement, written or oral, that is not processed in accordance with the interpretation procedures of the Z223 Committee or Section 6 of the Regulations Governing the Development of NFPA Standards shall not be considered the official position of the Z223 Committee or NFPA or any of its Committees and shall not be considered to be, nor be relied upon as, a Formal Interpretation.

Patents

AGA and NFPA do not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights referenced in, related to, or asserted in connection with an AGA or NFPA Standard. The users of AGA and NFPA Standards bear the sole responsibility for determining the validity of any such patent rights, as well as the risk of infringement of such rights, and the AGA and NFPA disclaim liability for the infringement of any patent resulting from the use of or reliance on AGA and NFPA Standards.

AGA and NFPA adhere to the policy of the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) regarding the inclusion of patents in American National Standards ("the ANSI Patent Policy"), and hereby gives the following notice pursuant to that policy:

> **NOTICE:** The user's attention is called to the possibility that compliance with an AGA or NFPA Standard may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. AGA and NFPA take no position as to the validity of any such patent rights or as to whether such patent rights constitute or include essential patent claims under the ANSI Patent Policy. If, in connection with the ANSI Patent Policy, a patent holder has filed a statement of willingness to grant licenses under these rights on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms and conditions to applicants desiring to obtain such a license, copies of such filed statements can be obtained, on request, from AGA and NFPA. For further information, contact the AGA or the NFPA at the addresses listed below.

Law and Regulations

Users of AGA and NFPA Standards should consult applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations. AGA and NFPA do not, by the publication of its codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and these documents may not be construed as doing so.

Copyrights

AGA and NFPA Standards are copyrighted. They are made available for a wide variety of both public and private uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation, standardization, and the promotion of safe practices and methods. By making these documents available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, the AGA and NFPA do not waive any rights in copyright to these documents.

Use of AGA and NFPA Standards for regulatory purposes should be accomplished through adoption by reference. The term "adoption by reference" means the citing of title, edition, and publishing information only. Any deletions, additions, and changes desired by the adopting authority should be noted separately in the adopting instrument. In order to assist NFPA in following the uses made of its documents, adopting authorities are requested to notify the NFPA (Attention: Secretary, Standards Council) in writing of such use. For technical assistance and questions concerning adoption of AGA and NFPA Standards, contact the AGA or the NFPA at the addresses below.

For Further Information

All questions or other communications relating to NFPA Standards and all requests for information on NFPA procedures governing its codes and standards development process, including information on the procedures for requesting Formal Interpretations, for proposing Tentative Interim Amendments, and for proposing revisions to NFPA standards during regular revision cycles, should be sent to NFPA headquarters, addressed to the attention of the Secretary, Standards Council, NFPA, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101; email: stds_admin@nfpa.org.

For more information about NFPA, visit the NFPA website at www.nfpa.org. For more information about AGA, visit the AGA website at www.aga.org.